

# Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 User Guide

# Legal Notices

Toon Boom Animation Inc.  
4200 Saint-Laurent, Suite 1020  
Montreal, Quebec, Canada  
H2W 2R2

Tel: +1 514 278 8666

Fax: +1 514 278 2666

[toonboom.com](http://toonboom.com)

## Disclaimer

The content of this guide is covered by a specific limited warranty and exclusions and limit of liability under the applicable License Agreement as supplemented by the special terms and conditions for Adobe® Flash® File Format (SWF). For details, refer to the License Agreement and to those special terms and conditions.

The content of this guide is the property of Toon Boom Animation Inc. and is copyrighted.

Any reproduction in whole or in part is strictly prohibited.

## Trademarks

Toon Boom® is a registered trademark, and Animate Pro™ and the Toon Boom logo are trademarks of Toon Boom Animation Inc.

## Credits

Art Development: Shabana Ali, Marie-Eve Chartrand, Christopher Diaz, Tania Gray, Annie Rodrigue, Anouk Whissell

Technical Editor: Peter Cawthorne, Pamela Grimaud, Liven Tam

Technical Reviewer: Joel Baril, Lindsay Brown, Steven Masson, Lori Sponagle, Elke Starck, Lilly Vogelesang

Technical Writer: Shabana Ali, Marie-Eve Chartrand, Christopher Diaz, Annie Rodrigue, Liven Tam, Phoebe Wang-Chao, Anouk Whissell

## Publication Date

2013-07-08

Copyright © 2013 Toon Boom Animation Inc., a Corus® Entertainment Inc. company. All rights reserved.

PUSG101ANP3EN

# Contents

<b>Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 User Guide</b> .....	<b>1</b>
Legal Notices .....	2
Contents .....	3
<b>Chapter 1: Introduction</b> .....	<b>47</b>
Visual Markers .....	49
Related Topics .....	49
Note .....	49
<b>Chapter 2: Getting Started</b> .....	<b>51</b>
Topics Covered .....	51
Starting Toon Boom Animate Pro .....	52
Preference Style .....	52
Welcome Screen .....	54
Accessing the Documentation .....	54
Creating and Opening a Scene .....	56
Creating a Scene Using the Welcome Screen .....	56
Creating a Scene Using the File Menu .....	57
Saving a Scene .....	59
Setting the Scene Length .....	60
Scene Settings .....	61
Resolution Tab .....	61
Resolution .....	62
Alignment Tab .....	63
Alignment Rules .....	64
Advanced Tab .....	65
Adding a Drawing Layer .....	66
Basic Commands .....	67
Preferences .....	71
Preference Highlights .....	72
Getting Started Preferences .....	73
General Tab .....	73
Auto-Save .....	73
Timeline Tab .....	74
Keyboard Shortcuts .....	74
Selecting a Keyboard Shortcut Set .....	74

Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut .....	74
<b>Chapter 3: Interface .....</b>	<b>77</b>
Topics Covered .....	77
User Interface .....	78
Views and Toolbars .....	78
Views .....	78
Top Toolbars .....	78
View Toolbars .....	79
Interface Highlights .....	79
Camera View .....	80
Update Preview .....	81
OpenGL View Mode .....	82
Render View Mode .....	82
Matte View Mode .....	83
Camera View Options Menu .....	83
Safe Area .....	84
Camera Mask .....	84
BBox Selection Style .....	84
Outline Locked Drawings .....	84
Current Drawing On Top .....	85
Show Strokes .....	85
Show Strokes with Colour Wash .....	85
Light Table .....	85
Reset View .....	85
Reset Rotation .....	85
Zoom Drop-down Menu .....	85
Toggle Quick Close-up .....	86
Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode .....	86
Drawing Name .....	86
Tool Name .....	86
Frame Number .....	86
Editing Stack Menu .....	87
Tools Toolbar .....	87
Tool Properties View .....	88
Timeline View .....	89
Enable/Disable All .....	90

---

Show Selection and Hide All Others .....	90
Add Layers .....	91
Delete Layers .....	91
Add Drawing Layer .....	91
Add Peg .....	91
Show/Hide Data View .....	92
Hidden Data View .....	92
Visible Data View .....	92
Current Drawing Displayed .....	92
Current Frame .....	92
Split .....	93
Show/Hide Children .....	93
Show/Hide Functions .....	93
Change Track Colour .....	93
Lock/Unlock Layer .....	94
Onion Skin .....	95
Drawing Substitution .....	95
Keyframe Value .....	96
Zoom .....	96
Keyframe .....	97
Drawing Exposure .....	97
Symbol Exposure .....	97
Timeline View Modes .....	97
Dragging and Pasting Modes .....	97
Menus .....	98
Top Menu .....	98
View Menu .....	99
Quick Access Menu .....	100
Colour View .....	100
Add Colour .....	101
Remove Colour .....	101
Add Texture .....	102
Set Current Brush Colour .....	102
Set Current Pencil Colour .....	102
Set Current Paint Colour .....	103
Link/Unlink Three Colours .....	103

Show/Hide Palette List View .....	103
Colour Swatch Name .....	103
Colour Swatch .....	104
Colour View Menu .....	104
Library View .....	104
Library View Menu .....	105
Preview Window .....	105
Preview Playback .....	105
Library Folder List .....	105
Template/Symbol List .....	105
Playback Toolbar .....	106
Play Menu .....	106
Managing the Views .....	108
Adding a New View .....	108
Closing a View .....	109
Swapping Views .....	109
Resizing a View .....	110
Managing the Toolbars .....	112
Showing or Hiding Toolbars .....	112
Moving Toolbars .....	113
Flat Tool Toolbar Preference .....	113
Toolbar Manager .....	114
Managing the Workspace .....	116
Loading a Workspace .....	116
Workspace Manager .....	116
Creating a New Workspace .....	117
Renaming a Workspace .....	118
Saving a Workspace .....	118
Deleting a Workspace .....	119
Showing and Hiding a Workspace .....	119
Reordering the Workspace List .....	120
Restoring the Default Workspaces .....	120
Interface Navigation .....	121
Zoom .....	121
Zoom Tool Properties .....	122
Zoom In .....	122

Zoom Out .....	122
Perform Zoom In .....	122
Perform Zoom Out .....	122
Reset Zoom .....	122
Reset View .....	122
Interface Preferences .....	123
User Interface Preferences - General Tab .....	123
Automatically Save Workspace .....	123
Focus on Mouse Enter .....	124
Flat Tool Toolbar .....	124
Levels of Undo .....	125
Colours .....	125
Current View Border .....	125
Current View Border in Template Edit .....	125
Edit Colours Button .....	125
User Interface Preferences - Camera Tab .....	127
Zoom Settings .....	127
Full Scene Antialiasing Preference in the OpenGL tab .....	127
<b>Chapter 4: Drawing .....</b>	<b>129</b>
Topics Covered .....	129
How to Draw .....	131
Tool Properties View .....	132
Options .....	132
Operations .....	132
Drawing View .....	133
Drawing Area .....	133
Zoom Drop-down Menu .....	133
Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode .....	134
Drawing Name .....	134
Tool Name .....	134
Current Frame .....	134
Cursor Coordinates .....	135
Drawing Name .....	135
Colour Picker .....	135
Camera View .....	136
Zoom Drop-down Menu .....	137

Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode .....	138
Drawing Name .....	138
Tool Name .....	138
Current Frame .....	139
Current Colour .....	139
Show Current Drawing on Top .....	139
Drawing with the Brush or the Pencil .....	141
Working with Tool Presets .....	143
The Tool Presets Toolbar .....	143
Viewing the Final Lines as you Draw .....	146
Full Scene Antialiasing .....	146
Drawing Using the Pencil Tool .....	148
Pencil Tool Options .....	149
Draw Behind .....	150
Auto-Flatten Mode .....	150
Auto-Close Gap .....	151
Line Building Mode .....	151
Auto Adjust Thickness .....	152
Line Pushing Mode .....	153
Pencil Thickness Stencils .....	153
Minimum and Maximum Size .....	153
Central Line Smoothness .....	154
Contour Optimization .....	154
Changing the Line Shape .....	154
Previewing the Stroke .....	155
Pencil Line Texture .....	155
Working with Thickness Stencils .....	155
Selecting a Thickness Stencil .....	156
Creating a Thickness Stencil .....	156
Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool .....	157
Renaming a Thickness Stencil .....	157
Deleting a Thickness Stencil .....	157
Locking a Thickness Stencil .....	158
Pencil Line Texture .....	158
Applying Texture to a Pencil Line .....	159
Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Pencil Tool .....	160



---

Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool .....	161
Adding a Texture to the Preferences .....	162
Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line .....	163
Drawing with the Brush Tool .....	164
Brush Tool Options .....	165
Normal Brush Mode .....	166
Previewing the Stroke .....	166
Maximum Size and Smoothing .....	166
Brush Presets .....	166
Draw Behind .....	167
Repaint Brush Mode .....	167
Create Colour Art Automatically .....	167
Auto-Flatten Mode .....	167
Respect Protected Colour .....	168
Use Stored Colour Gradient .....	168
Drawing Magnifier .....	168
Brush Styles .....	169
Dynamic Brush .....	169
Brush Tips .....	169
Line Texture .....	169
Brush Styles .....	169
Selecting a Brush Style .....	170
Adding a Brush Style .....	170
Deleting a Brush Style .....	171
Dynamic Brush .....	171
Drawing with Line Texture .....	174
How to Draw with Texture .....	174
Creating Texture Brushes .....	176
Erasing Textured Lines .....	177
Hiding the Line Texture .....	179
Adjusting the Line Texture Opacity .....	180
Selecting Drawing Objects .....	181
Inverting a Selection .....	182
Repositioning a Pivot Point .....	183
Selection on Single or Multiple Layers .....	184
Select Tool Properties .....	184

Lasso and Marquee .....	186
Snap Options .....	186
Permanent Selection .....	187
Apply to All Drawings in Layer .....	187
Apply to All Visible Drawings .....	187
Apply to Line and Colour Art .....	188
Select by Colour .....	188
Flip Horizontal and Vertical .....	189
Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW .....	189
Pencil to Brush .....	189
Smooth .....	190
Flatten .....	190
Store Colour Gradient .....	190
Merge Pencil Lines .....	191
Reverse Pencil Thickness .....	191
Create Colour Art from Line Art .....	191
Distribute to Layers .....	192
Width and Height .....	193
Offset X and Y .....	193
Angle .....	193
Adjusting the Pencil Line Thickness .....	193
Adjusting the Pencil Line Style .....	194
Pencil Stencils .....	194
Adding Texture to a Pencil Line .....	194
Adjusting the Text Selection .....	195
Erasing Parts of a Drawing .....	196
Eraser Tool Options .....	196
Tip Style .....	197
Previewing the Stroke .....	198
Maximum Size and Smoothing .....	198
Brush Presets .....	199
Eraser Styles .....	199
Eraser Blur Parameters .....	199
Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool .....	200
Contour Editor Tool Properties .....	202
Lasso and Marquee .....	202

---

Show Contour Editor Controls .....	203
Apply to Line and Colour Art .....	203
Snap to Contour .....	203
Snap and Align .....	204
Smooth Selection .....	204
Reshaping Pencil Lines with the Pencil Editor Tool .....	206
Pencil Editor Properties .....	208
Lasso and Marquee .....	208
Smooth .....	209
Pump Pencil Pressure .....	209
Deflate Pencil Pressure .....	209
Merge Pencil Lines .....	210
Reverse Pencil Thickness .....	210
Adjusting the Pencil Line Style .....	210
Thickness Stencils .....	211
Adding Texture to a Pencil Line .....	211
Drawing with Shapes .....	212
Shape Tool Options .....	213
Line, Rectangle and Ellipse .....	214
Draw Behind .....	214
Snap Options .....	214
Line Building Mode .....	215
Automatic Filling .....	215
Create Colour Art Automatically .....	216
Auto-Flatten Mode .....	216
Auto-Close Gap .....	216
Use Stored Colour Gradient .....	217
Keep Proportion .....	217
Pencil Templates .....	217
Thickness Adjustment .....	217
Adjusting the Pencil Line Style .....	217
Applying Texture to a Pencil Line .....	218
Drawing with the Polyline Tool .....	219
Polyline Tool Options .....	220
Previewing the Stroke .....	220
Size .....	220

Polyline Presets .....	221
Size and Smoothness .....	221
Adjusting Polyline Style .....	221
Working with Line Textures .....	221
Snap to Contour .....	221
Create Colour Art Automatically .....	222
Auto-Flatten Mode .....	222
Pencil Templates .....	222
Drawing Using Invisible Lines .....	223
Pencil Tool .....	223
Stroke Tool .....	224
Stroke Tool Options .....	224
Draw Stroke as Straight Lines .....	225
Connect Line Ends .....	225
Auto-Flatten Mode .....	225
Central Line Smoothness .....	225
Deforming a Drawing Using the Perspective Tool .....	226
Perspective Tool Properties .....	227
Lasso and Marquee .....	227
Snap to Contour .....	228
Snap and Align .....	228
Snap to Grid .....	228
Apply to Line and Colour Art .....	228
Flip Horizontal and Vertical .....	228
Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW .....	229
Cutting Drawing Parts .....	230
Cutter Tool Options .....	231
Lasso and Marquee .....	231
Apply to Line and Colour Art .....	231
Use Mouse Gesture .....	231
Use Mouse Gesture Breaker Mode .....	232
Tip Style .....	232
Flip Horizontal and Vertical .....	233
Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW .....	233
Smoothing Lines .....	234
Smooth Editor Tool Options .....	235

---

Brush, Marquee and Lasso Smoothing Style .....	235
Show Control Points .....	235
Minimum Size and Maximum Size .....	235
Smoothness .....	236
Colour .....	236
Working With Text .....	238
Formatting the Text .....	238
Font Type .....	239
Font Style .....	239
Alignment .....	240
Font Size .....	240
Kerning .....	240
Indent .....	241
Line Spacing .....	241
Resizing the Text Box .....	241
Converting Text into Separate Objects .....	242
Override Tool .....	243
More Drawing Tools .....	244
Arrange .....	244
Convert Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines .....	245
Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes .....	245
Strokes to Pencil Lines .....	245
Optimize .....	246
Remove Extra Strokes .....	246
Reduce Drawing Texture Resolution .....	246
Crop Brush Textures .....	247
Create Contour Stroke .....	248
Remove Contour Stroke .....	248
Grid .....	248
Group/Ungroup .....	249
Hand .....	249
Rotate View .....	249
Drawing Pivot Tool .....	250
Setting the Drawing Pivot for Symbols on All Frames .....	250
Snapping .....	251
Reset Pivot .....	251

Copying Pivot on Parent Symbol .....	251
Drawing Preferences .....	252
OpenGL Drawing Preferences .....	252
Full Scene Antialiasing .....	252
Support Transparency in Pencil Lines .....	253
Drawing .....	253
Light Table .....	253
Options .....	254
Zoom .....	254
Advanced Tab Preferences .....	254
Advanced Options .....	255
<b>Chapter 5: Traditional Animation .....</b>	<b>257</b>
Topics Covered .....	257
Traditional Animation Tools .....	258
Onion Skin .....	258
Light Table .....	260
Drawing Identification .....	261
Custom Marks in the Xsheet View .....	262
Create Empty Drawing .....	264
Reposition All Drawings .....	264
Basic Traditional Animation .....	267
Animating .....	267
Cleaning Up .....	271
Setting the Timing .....	273
Advanced Traditional Animation .....	274
Flip and Easy Flipping Toolbars .....	274
Onion Skin Toolbar .....	276
Enabling the Onion Skin in Other Layers .....	277
Shift and Trace .....	278
Shift and Trace Linked Drawings .....	285
Enabling and Disabling Individual Drawing Shift and Trace Onion Skin .....	287
More Drawing Layers .....	288
Overlay .....	288
Line Art .....	289
Colour Art .....	290
Underlay .....	290

Generating a Matte for Your Animation .....	290
Multiple Drawings in the Drawing View .....	292
Preview Selected Drawings .....	293
Cleaning Scanned Drawings .....	295
Remove Dirt .....	295
Remove Art Outside Selection .....	296
Remove Art Inside Selection .....	297
Remove Hair .....	298
Traditional Animation Preferences .....	299
General > Edit Colours .....	299
Edit Colours for Onion Skin in Other Elements .....	299
Exposure Sheet .....	300
Current Frame as Drawing Name .....	300
<b>Chapter 6: Colour .....</b>	<b>301</b>
Topics Covered .....	301
How to Paint .....	302
Colours .....	304
Adding a Colour Swatch .....	304
Solid Colour Swatch .....	305
Default Colour Swatch .....	307
Gradient Colour Swatch .....	308
Bitmap Texture Swatch .....	310
Deleting a Colour Swatch .....	312
Colour Display Modes .....	314
Switching Between Thumbnails and List Display modes .....	314
Displaying Colour Values .....	314
Selecting the Current Colour of a Tool .....	316
Painting Using the Paint Tool .....	318
Create Breaking Triangles to Paint Brush Strokes .....	319
Paint Tool Properties .....	320
Lasso and Marquee .....	320
Painting Mode .....	321
Paint Mode .....	321
Paint Unpainted Mode .....	321
Repaint Mode .....	322
Unpaint Mode .....	322

Automatic Close Gap .....	322
Paint and Remove Texture .....	323
Apply to Multiple Drawings .....	323
Apply to All Visible Drawings .....	324
Respect Protected Colour .....	324
Use Stored Colour Gradient .....	325
Select Newly Painted/Repainted/Unpainted Contours/Lines .....	325
Painting Pencil Lines with the Ink Tool .....	326
Ink Tool Properties .....	327
Lasso and Marquee .....	327
Show Inkable Lines .....	328
Be Smart on Connecting Lines .....	328
Select Mode .....	328
Arrange Ink Lines .....	328
Mitre .....	328
Tip Style .....	328
Advanced Painting Features .....	329
Repaint Selection .....	330
Repaint Selection On All Drawings .....	330
Repaint Outside Selection .....	331
Repaint Outside Selection On All Drawings .....	331
Unpaint Selection .....	332
Unpaint Selection On All Drawings .....	332
Unpaint Outside Selection .....	333
Unpaint Outside Selection On All Drawings .....	333
Selecting a Colour in a Drawing .....	334
Editing Gradients and Textures .....	336
Storing Your Favourite Gradient or Texture Settings .....	340
Closing Gaps Manually .....	342
Close Gaps .....	343
Protecting Colours .....	345
Line Art and Colour Art Layers .....	346
Underlay and Overlay Layers .....	347
Underlay .....	347
Overlay .....	347
Creating Strokes to Paint Your Drawings on a Separated Layer .....	348



Verifying Zones are Painted .....	351
Palettes .....	352
Displaying the Palette List .....	353
Basic Mode .....	353
Advanced Mode .....	353
Scene Palette List and Element Palette List .....	354
Scene Palette List .....	354
Element Palette List .....	355
Creating a Colour Palette .....	355
Basic Palette Lists Mode .....	356
Renaming a Colour Palette .....	356
Managing Palettes .....	357
Copying and Pasting Colours .....	357
Copying Colours from Another Palette .....	358
Removing a Colour Palette .....	358
Duplicating a Colour Palette .....	359
Cloning a Colour Palette .....	360
Cloning a Colour Swatch .....	361
Mixing the Colours .....	362
Importing Palettes .....	364
Importing a Colour Palette .....	364
Ordering the Palette List .....	365
Colour Model .....	366
Loading a Colour Model .....	366
Cutting, Copying and Pasting from a Colour Model .....	369
Colour Preferences .....	371
Drawing Tab .....	371
Default Multiwheel Colour Picker .....	371
Sticky Eye Dropper .....	372
Create New Colour Pots Using Default Colour .....	372
Auto Gap Closing on Startup .....	372
Auto Gap Closing in Pixel Units .....	372
General Tab .....	373
Colour Management .....	373
Advanced Tab .....	374
Advanced Palette Lists .....	374

Shortcuts Tab .....	374
Go to Next/Previous Colour in the Colour Palette .....	374
<b>Chapter 7: Timing .....</b>	<b>375</b>
Topics Covered .....	375
Understanding the Timeline View .....	376
Timeline View .....	376
Layer Section .....	376
Timing Selection .....	377
Data View Section .....	377
Xsheet View .....	378
Xsheet Main Section .....	379
Functions Section .....	380
Column List Section .....	381
Xsheet View Toolbar .....	382
Column Header .....	382
Current Drawing .....	383
Current Frame .....	383
Frame Numbers .....	384
Drawing Exposure .....	385
Current Frame Display .....	385
Function Column .....	385
Increase/Decrease Exposure .....	386
Overwrite/Insert Modes .....	386
Frames .....	387
Adding Frames .....	387
Setting the Scene Length .....	387
Extending the Timeline View .....	387
Adding Frames Before or After a Selection .....	388
Adding Frames to the Beginning or at the End of a Scene .....	388
Deleting Frames .....	389
Reducing the Timeline Length .....	389
Removing Selected Frames .....	389
Deleting a Selected Frame Range .....	390
Layers and Columns .....	391
Related Topics .....	391
Layer and Column Concepts .....	391

Layer Types .....	392
Drawing Layer .....	393
Bitmap Layer .....	393
Camera Layer .....	393
Effect Layer .....	394
Colour-Card Layer .....	394
Group Layer .....	394
Peg Layer .....	395
Quadmap Layer .....	395
Sound Layer .....	396
Layer Content .....	396
Adding New Drawing Layers .....	397
Adding Drawing Layers in the Timeline View .....	397
Adding a Drawing Layer from the Top Menu .....	398
Adding Drawing Columns in the Xsheet View .....	398
Deleting Layers And Columns .....	401
Deleting a Layer from the Timeline View .....	401
Deleting a Column from the Xsheet View .....	401
To delete layers in the Xsheet view: .....	402
Modifying Layers .....	403
Ordering Layers and Columns .....	403
Reordering Layers in the Timeline View .....	403
Reordering Columns in the Xsheet View .....	403
To reorder columns in the Xsheet view: .....	403
Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View .....	404
Showing and Hiding Columns .....	406
To show and hide columns in the Xsheet view: .....	406
To show a hidden column from the Xsheet view: .....	406
To hide and entire column type: .....	407
Column Types Manager .....	407
To show and hide column types: .....	407
Layer Properties .....	409
Renaming Layers and Columns .....	410
Duplicating Layers and Columns .....	411
Related Topics .....	411
Cloning Layers And Columns .....	412

Xsheet Thumbnails .....	413
To display the thumbnails: .....	413
Related Topics .....	413
Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column .....	413
Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns .....	416
Modifying the Look of the Column .....	417
To modify the look of an empty cells: .....	417
To modify the row units: .....	417
To modify the held exposure's look: .....	418
To modify the column's width: .....	418
Filling Exposure .....	420
Filling Exposure Mode .....	420
Overwrite Mode .....	420
Insert Mode .....	421
Typing Exposure .....	421
Typing a Value in the Timeline View .....	421
Typing a Value in the Xsheet View .....	422
To type values in the Xsheet view: .....	422
Holding Exposure .....	423
Extending a Single Exposure .....	424
Extending an Exposure Sequence .....	424
Dragging Cells .....	425
To drag a cell to another location in the Xsheet view: .....	426
Increasing and Decreasing Exposure .....	428
Increasing Exposure .....	428
Decreasing Exposure .....	429
Increase/Decrease Exposure Field .....	430
Clear Exposure and Pull .....	430
Deleting Exposure .....	431
To delete selected exposures: .....	431
Related Topics .....	431
Inserting Blank Cells .....	432
Setting the Exposure .....	433
Filling a Selection with a Single Exposure .....	434
Filling a Selection with a Sequence .....	435
Filling a Selection Randomly .....	437

---

Creating Cycles .....	438
To use the Paste Cycle command: .....	438
To use the Paste Reverse command: .....	440
Related Topics .....	441
Navigating between Frames and Columns .....	442
Managing Drawings .....	444
Renaming a Drawing .....	444
To rename a drawing: .....	444
Renaming Drawings with a Prefix .....	445
Renaming Drawings by Frame Position .....	445
Deleting a Drawing .....	446
Duplicating a Drawing .....	447
To duplicate a drawing: .....	447
Copying and Pasting Drawings .....	448
Tempo Markers .....	450
Annotation Columns .....	452
Adding an Annotation Column .....	452
Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column .....	453
Drawing in the Annotation Column .....	453
Typing in the Annotation Column .....	454
Erasing Annotation Column Content .....	454
Changing the Drawing Settings .....	456
Importing an Annotation File .....	457
Printing the Xsheet .....	458
To print your exposure sheet: .....	458
Element Manager .....	460
To open the Element Manager dialog box: .....	460
Timing Preferences .....	461
Exposure Sheet Preferences .....	461
Filtering .....	462
Options .....	462
New Element .....	462
Apply/Next .....	462
Timeline Preferences .....	463
Defaults .....	463
Paste/Drag & Drop .....	463

Advanced Preferences .....	464
<b>Chapter 8: Morphing .....</b>	<b>465</b>
Topics Covered .....	465
Understanding Morphing .....	466
Ideas Behind Morphing .....	466
Source and Destination Drawings .....	467
Morphing Rules .....	468
Closest Similar Shape .....	468
Pencil Line to Pencil Line .....	468
Fill Shape to Fill Shape .....	470
Colour Swatch to Same Colour Swatch .....	470
Vanishing and Appearing .....	471
Colour Art to Colour Art and Line Art to Line Art .....	471
Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence .....	472
Deleting a Morphing Sequence .....	474
Tool Properties View .....	475
Hint Type .....	476
Hide Hints .....	476
Show Morphing in Place .....	476
Suggest Hints .....	477
Switch Between Drawings .....	477
Flatten .....	477
Quality .....	477
Morphing Layers .....	478
Easing .....	478
Convert Hints .....	478
Time .....	479
Adjusting the Velocity and Timing .....	480
Changing the Morphing Sequence Length .....	480
Adjusting the Velocity in the Layer Properties Editor .....	480
Morphing Tool and Hints .....	484
Using the Morphing Tool .....	485
Hints .....	487
Contour Hint .....	488
Zone Hint .....	488
Pencil Hint .....	489

---

Vanishing Point Hint .....	489
Appearing Point Hint .....	490
Copying Hint Points from One Drawing to Another .....	490
Morphing Layers .....	493
Identifying Problem Zones .....	493
Morphing Layer Properties .....	494
Creating a Morph with Morphing Layers .....	495
Morphing Two Sequences in a Row .....	500
Inserting a Morphing Key Drawing .....	501
Converting Morphing In-betweens to Drawings .....	503
Morphing Holes and Transparencies .....	504
Adjusting the Morphing Quality .....	507
Tips and Tricks .....	508
Morphing Similar Shapes .....	508
Avoiding Crossing Zones During Morphing .....	508
Using the Brush Tool as a Beginner .....	508
Flattening Drawings .....	508
Cleaning-up your Drawings .....	508
Using the Same Colour Swatch .....	508
Morphing Preferences .....	509
Drawing Tab .....	509
Morphing Quality .....	509
<b>Chapter 9: Import .....</b>	<b>511</b>
Topics Covered .....	511
Importing Bitmap Images .....	512
Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization .....	512
Adding Images to a Bitmap Layer .....	516
Bitmap Image Quality .....	517
Importing and Vectorizing Images .....	517
Importing PSD Files as Separate Layers .....	521
Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout .....	524
Exporting a Layout .....	524
Importing a Layout .....	528
Scanning Images .....	531
Importing AI and PDF Files .....	536
Importing from Adobe Flash .....	539

Distribute To Layers .....	541
Importing QuickTime Movies .....	543
Custom Vectorization Parameters .....	545
Options Tab .....	545
Input .....	546
Output .....	546
Optical Registration .....	547
Post Processing .....	547
Miscellaneous .....	547
Preview .....	547
Help Tab .....	547
File IO Options .....	548
Registration Options .....	548
Filtering Options .....	549
Options for bitmap that has no registration information .....	550
RGB Keying Options .....	551
Colour Vectorization Options .....	551
Bubble Usage (implemented only for colour vectorization's line art) .....	552
4 Colour Vectorization .....	552
Creating a Vectorization Style .....	553
Setting the VectOptions.conf File .....	554
Setting the VectOptions.conf File on Windows and Mac OS X .....	555
Import Preferences .....	558
Advanced Option .....	558
<b>Chapter 10: Scene Setup .....</b>	<b>559</b>
Topics Covered .....	559
Importing the Scene Components .....	560
Backgrounds, Sounds and Movie .....	560
Templates and Symbols .....	560
Setting the Camera Frame .....	561
Adding a Camera Layer .....	561
Setting the Camera Using the Translate and Rotate Tools .....	562
Setting the Camera using the Camera Layer Properties .....	563
Resetting the Camera Position .....	565
Camera List .....	565
Positioning the Scene Components .....	566



---

Animate Mode .....	566
Selecting a Layer .....	566
Selecting a Layer from the Camera View using the Transform Tool .....	567
Bounding Box Selection Style .....	567
Finding the Selected Layer in the Timeline View .....	568
Finding the Selected Layer in the Network View .....	568
Selecting an Element from the Timeline or Xsheet View .....	569
Selecting all Elements Within a Group at the Same Time .....	569
Transform Tool Properties .....	570
Lasso and Marquee .....	570
Peg Selection Mode .....	571
Snap Option .....	571
Hide Manipulator Controls .....	571
Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical .....	571
Width and Height .....	572
Offset X and Y .....	572
Angle .....	572
Locking Layers in the Timeline View .....	573
Lock .....	573
Unlock .....	573
Lock All .....	574
Unlock All .....	574
Lock All Others .....	575
Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool .....	575
Repositioning the Pivot Point Temporarily .....	576
Panning a Drawing Layer .....	577
Rotating a Drawing Layer .....	577
Scaling an Element .....	578
Skewing an Element .....	578
Using Advanced Animation Tools to Position a Layer .....	579
Permanently Repositioning the Pivot Point .....	579
Panning an Element using the Translate Tool .....	580
Rotating an Element using the Rotate Tool .....	580
Scaling an Element using the Scale Tool .....	581
Skewing an Element using the Skew Tool .....	581
Flipping an Element .....	582

Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical .....	582
Flip Scale X and Flip Scale Y .....	582
Positioning an Element Using the Layer Properties .....	583
Drawing Layer Properties Advanced Tab .....	585
Animation .....	586
Angle Limit Value .....	586
Spline Offset .....	587
Alignment .....	587
Clipping .....	588
Line Thickness .....	589
Drawing Layer Properties Drawing Tab .....	590
Vector Options .....	591
Bitmap Options .....	591
Auto-Apply Option .....	592
Resetting a Transformation .....	593
Cloning and Duplicating Layers .....	595
Clone Layer .....	595
Duplicate Layer .....	596
Setting Up the Network .....	598
Network View .....	599
Network Navigation and Basic Rules .....	599
Modules .....	600
Input and Output Ports .....	601
Adding Modules .....	602
Composite Module .....	602
Organizing Modules .....	603
Connecting and Disconnecting Modules .....	604
Cable Styles .....	604
Bezier .....	604
Line .....	605
Navigator Display .....	605
Showing and Hiding the Navigator .....	606
Positioning the Navigator .....	606
Composite Layer Properties .....	607
Grouping Modules .....	609
Grouping a Selection .....	609

---

Grouping a Selection with Composite .....	610
Ungrouping Selected Group .....	612
Entering and Exiting a Group Module .....	613
Moving a Selected Module to its Parent Group .....	614
Enabling and Disabling Modules .....	615
Enabling a Module .....	615
Enabling All Modules .....	616
Disabling a Module .....	616
Disabling All Other Modules .....	616
Module Thumbnails .....	617
Show Thumbnails .....	617
Hide Thumbnails .....	618
Hide All Thumbnails .....	619
Display Concepts .....	621
Display Modules .....	621
Global Display .....	622
Display All .....	622
Display Modes .....	623
Basic Display .....	623
Advanced Display .....	623
Timeline View Modes .....	624
Normal View Mode .....	624
Selection Only Mode .....	625
View Tagged Modules .....	625
Tagging and Untagging Elements .....	625
Working in View Tagged Modules mode .....	626
Creating a Multiplane .....	627
Top View and Side View .....	627
Perspective View .....	628
Setting Up the Multiplane .....	630
Distributing Elements on the Z-Axis .....	631
Positioning Elements in the Top and Side Views .....	631
Scene Setup Preferences .....	634
General Tab Preferences .....	634
Options .....	635
Settings .....	635

Camera Tab Preferences .....	636
Tools .....	636
Zoom Settings .....	636
Settings .....	637
Wash Background .....	637
Preview Wash .....	637
Network Tab Preferences .....	638
Navigator .....	638
Options .....	638
Element Module Drawing Options .....	638
Timeline Tab Preferences .....	639
Defaults .....	639
OpenGL Tab Preferences .....	640
Settings .....	640
Drawings .....	641
Advanced Tab Preferences .....	641
Advanced Options .....	641
<b>Chapter 11: Library .....</b>	<b>643</b>
Topics Covered .....	643
Understanding the Library Concept .....	644
What is a Library? .....	644
What is a Symbol? .....	644
What is a Template? .....	645
Library View .....	646
Library View Menu .....	646
Preview and Drawing Substitution .....	646
Library Search Tool .....	647
Library List .....	647
Templates and Symbols List .....	648
Structuring the Library .....	649
Creating a Library .....	649
Opening a Library .....	650
Closing a Library .....	651
Creating a Folder .....	651
Deleting a Folder .....	652
Renaming a Folder .....	652

---

Refreshing the Library .....	652
Generating Thumbnails .....	653
Symbols .....	654
Creating a Symbol .....	654
Creating a Symbol from a Drawing Selection .....	654
Creating a Symbol from the Timeline View .....	656
Creating a Symbol from the Network View .....	656
Creating an Empty Symbol .....	657
Deleting a Symbol .....	658
Editing a Symbol .....	659
Symbol Hierarchy .....	660
Duplicating a Symbol .....	660
Sharing a Symbol .....	661
Templates .....	663
Creating a Template .....	663
Master Template .....	663
Creating a Template from the Network View .....	663
Action Templates .....	665
Creating a Template from the Timeline View .....	666
Deleting a Template .....	667
Editing a Template .....	667
Importing Symbols and Templates .....	668
Importing a Template .....	668
Importing a Symbol .....	669
Importing a Template with Symbols .....	669
Importing a Network Template .....	670
Previewing a Symbol in the Network View .....	672
Opening a Template as a Folder .....	672
Using Paste Special .....	673
Paste Special - Basic Tab .....	675
Drawings .....	675
Cycle .....	675
Paste Special - Advanced Tab .....	675
Drawings .....	675
Add/Remove Keyframes .....	676
Option .....	676

Expanding a Symbol .....	678
Library Preferences .....	680
Paste/Drag and Drop .....	680
Editing a Template .....	680
<b>Chapter 12: Character Building .....</b>	<b>681</b>
Topics Covered .....	681
Importing a Model .....	683
Model Alignment .....	683
Photo Puppets .....	684
Relative Sizes .....	685
Line Up .....	685
Field Chart .....	686
Brush Size .....	686
Studying the Model .....	687
Eyelids and Pupils .....	687
Creating Mouth Shapes Directly on the Head .....	688
Keeping Fingers Attached to the Hand .....	688
Mixing Hand-Drawn Animation .....	688
Flipping Logos .....	690
Complete and Overlapping Pieces .....	690
Setting the Default Separate Position Preference .....	691
Naming Conventions .....	693
Adding a Prefix or Suffix to a Layer .....	693
Naming the Drawings .....	693
Disabling the Animation on Drawing Layers .....	696
Layer Properties View .....	696
Preferences Panel .....	697
Breaking Down the Character .....	698
Tracing the Model .....	698
Articulations .....	702
Classical Articulation .....	702
Auto-patch Articulations .....	704
Ordering the Layers .....	708
Ordering the Timeline Layers .....	708
Ordering Layers in the Network View .....	709
Nudging Parts Backwards and Forwards .....	710

---

Rigging .....	712
About Rigging .....	713
Simple Rigging .....	713
Parenting Layers .....	714
Rigging Using Pegs .....	716
Adding Pegs .....	717
Rigging the Head .....	719
Rigging the Body .....	721
Connecting Modules to a Composite Module .....	722
Creating a Hierarchy .....	723
Adding the Master Peg .....	725
Creating the Keyframes .....	726
Masking .....	727
Adding Extra Drawings .....	730
Setting the Pivots .....	732
.....	733
Setting the Pivots Using the Rotate Tool .....	733
Setting the Master Peg Pivot .....	735
Skeleton Optimization .....	737
Deleting the Write Module .....	737
Renaming the Display Module .....	737
Changing the Composite Type .....	739
Grouping your Modules .....	739
Storing the Character in the Library .....	742
Network Template .....	742
Key Pose Template .....	743
Appendix .....	745
Break Down: Cutting the Character in Pieces .....	746
Breaking Down the Main Parts .....	746
Breaking Down the Secondary Parts .....	749
Selecting and Incorporating to an Existing Layer .....	752
Breaking Down the Extra View Main Parts .....	752
Breaking Down Secondary Parts in the Extra Views .....	753
Completing the Parts and Articulation .....	754
Cleaning the Parts .....	755
Break Down: Distribute to Layers .....	757

Break Down: Creating Ghost Drawings .....	759
Adding a Ghost Drawing .....	759
Converting the Layers into Symbols .....	763
Clearing the Main Timeline .....	764
Patch Articulation .....	765
Setting Different Pivots for a Puppet Using Symbols .....	771
Setting Pivots on a Frame Range .....	773
Adding the New Drawings to an Existing Template in the Library .....	775
<b>Chapter 13: Deformation .....</b>	<b>777</b>
Topics Covered .....	777
About the Deformation Effect .....	778
Creating a Basic Deformation Rig .....	779
Modifying a Deform Rig .....	781
Manipulating a Deformer to Create Animation .....	784
Manipulating a Bone and Articulation Deformer .....	784
Deformation Basics .....	788
Setting the Performance Preferences .....	788
Displaying the Deformation Controls .....	788
Deformation in the Network and Timeline Views .....	789
Deformation Toolbar .....	791
Rigging Tool .....	791
Rigging Tool Properties .....	792
Mode .....	793
Options .....	793
Operations .....	794
Setup Mode .....	794
Show All Manipulators .....	795
Show All Zones of Influence .....	795
Show Simplified Manipulators .....	796
Show Selected Manipulators and Hide All Others .....	796
Insert Deformation Above .....	796
Insert Deformation Under .....	797
Create Kinematic Output .....	797
Copy Resting Position to Current .....	797
Convert Ellipse .....	798
Convert to New Drawing and Add Pose .....	798



---

Storing the Character in the Library .....	799
Converting your Deformation Animation to Drawings .....	800
Deformer Effects .....	801
Articulation .....	801
AutoFold .....	804
Deformation-Composite .....	804
Deformation-Root .....	806
Deformation-Scale .....	807
Deformation-Switch .....	810
Deformation-Uniform-Scale .....	811
Fold .....	812
Offset .....	814
Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig .....	817
Preparing the Character .....	817
Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference .....	819
Renaming the Drawings .....	820
Rigging the Parts .....	821
Linking Extra Drawings to a Single Rig .....	822
Assembling the Parts .....	823
Setting Up the Pivots .....	829
Optimizing the Skeleton .....	831
Setting Up The Resting Position .....	831
Setting up a Bone and Articulation Chain .....	831
Zones of Influence .....	835
Selecting the Zone Type .....	836
Setting up the Elliptic Zone of Influence .....	838
Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped .....	840
Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence .....	841
Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius .....	843
Deformation Preferences .....	845
General .....	845
Colours .....	845
Deformation .....	846
Scale Controls .....	846
Deformation Creation .....	847
Deformation Convert Deformed Drawings .....	847

<b>Chapter 14: 3D Space</b> .....	<b>849</b>
Enabling the 3D Option .....	850
3D Parameters .....	851
Scale .....	851
Rotation .....	853
Quaternion Rotation .....	853
Euler Angles Rotation .....	853
Pivot .....	854
3D Tools .....	856
3D Translate Tool .....	856
3D Rotate Tool .....	858
3D Scale Tool .....	858
3D Transform Tool .....	859
Positioning Elements in 3D Space .....	861
Planning Your Pieces .....	862
Using Complex Sets in Production Scenes .....	864
Positioning the Layers .....	865
3D Camera Motion .....	868
Playing Back Your 3D Camera Moves .....	870
Locking Flat Drawings to the Camera Angle .....	871
Managing a Network with a 3D Scene Setup .....	872
Input and Output Options .....	872
3D Input Ordering Option .....	873
2D Input Ordering Option .....	873
How to Organize your 3D Composite Modules .....	874
<b>Chapter 15: Sound</b> .....	<b>877</b>
Topics Covered .....	877
Importing a Sound File .....	878
Sound Layer Properties .....	880
Sound Displays .....	882
Sound Playback .....	883
Mute .....	883
Sound Scrubbing .....	884
Analog Sound Scrubbing .....	884
Performing an Analog Sound Scrub in Animate Pro .....	885
Editing a Sound File .....	887

Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound .....	889
Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File .....	891
Looping a Sound .....	892
Mixing the Sound Volume .....	893
Customizing the Playback Range .....	894
Add Empty Sound Layer .....	896
Lip-sync .....	898
Generating a Lip-sync Detection .....	900
Timeline and Xsheet Views .....	900
Sound Element Editor .....	900
Layer Properties View .....	901
Mapping the Lip-Sync Detection .....	901
Modifying the Lip-sync Detection .....	903
Recomputing the Mouth Chart .....	904
Manual Lip-sync .....	905
Sound Preferences .....	906
Timeline Tab .....	906
Show Sound Waveform .....	906
Sound Tab .....	906
Analog Sound Scrubbing .....	906
Analog Jog Speed .....	906
Analog Jog Dampening .....	906
<b>Chapter 16: Animation Paths .....</b>	<b>907</b>
Topics Covered .....	907
Animating a Layer .....	909
Animate Mode .....	909
Animating a Layer .....	909
Enabling the Playback .....	911
Differences between Pegs and Animated Layers .....	912
Animated Layers .....	912
Prevent Drawing Layers from being Animated .....	913
Pegs .....	914
Why Use a Peg Layer? .....	914
The Origins of the Peg .....	915
Adding a Peg to the Timeline View .....	916
Adding a Peg to the Network View .....	916

Making an Automatic Connection to a Parent Peg in the Network View .....	917
Peg Selection Mode .....	918
Layer Parameters .....	919
3D Path .....	921
Separate Positions .....	921
Locked Scales and Separated Scales .....	922
Setting the Parameters .....	922
Adding and Deleting Keyframes .....	924
Coordinate Keyframe .....	924
Add Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing .....	924
Position Keyframe .....	925
Delete Keyframe .....	925
Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes .....	927
Stop-motion Keyframes .....	927
Motion Keyframes .....	927
Toggling between Motion and Stop-motion Keyframes .....	928
Setting a Different Colour for Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes .....	930
Constant Z .....	931
Animating the Camera .....	932
Basic Camera Move .....	932
Camera Truck-ins and Line Thickness .....	935
Related Topics .....	936
Modifying a Path in the Camera View .....	937
Displaying a Path in the Camera View .....	937
Shaping a Path .....	939
Coordinates and Control Points View .....	939
Adding Control Points .....	940
Toggling Between Keyframe and Control Points .....	941
Adjusting the Tension, Bias and Continuity .....	942
Toggling between a Linear or Curved Motion .....	944
Cumulative Z Value .....	945
Offsetting a Trajectory .....	945
Modifying a Path in the Timeline View .....	947
Creating a Function .....	947
Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Timeline View .....	948
Changing Keyframe Values .....	948

Flipping Between Keyframes .....	950
Modifying a Path in the Function View .....	951
Function View .....	951
Editing a Function in the Function View .....	953
Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Function View .....	953
Changing a Keyframe's Values .....	955
Modifying a Path in the Xsheet View .....	956
Function Curves .....	958
Creating Function Curves .....	958
Sharing Functions .....	960
Function Drop-down Menu .....	963
Function Types .....	964
Ease and Bezier Functions .....	964
Velobased Functions .....	965
Converting Ease and Bezier Functions .....	965
Copying and Pasting a Motion .....	967
Paste Special .....	967
Paste Special Dialog Box .....	968
Paste Special - Basic Tab .....	969
Drawings .....	969
Cycle .....	969
Paste Special - Advanced Tab .....	970
Drawings .....	970
Add/Remove Keyframes .....	971
Option .....	971
Paste Special .....	973
Pasting Cycles .....	973
Adjusting the Ease .....	976
Displaying the Velocity Curve .....	976
Reshaping a Velocity Function using Bezier Controls .....	977
Reshaping a Velocity Function using Ease Controls .....	978
Creating a Stepped Velocity .....	979
Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time .....	980
Expression Columns .....	983
Operators and Operands .....	983
Creating an Expression for an Effect .....	985

Animation Path Preferences .....	989
General Preferences .....	989
Options .....	989
Settings .....	990
Camera Preferences .....	990
Tools .....	990
Control Points .....	991
Exposure Sheet Preferences .....	991
Function Editors .....	991
Timeline Preferences .....	992
Defaults .....	992
<b>Chapter 17: Cut-out Animation .....</b>	<b>993</b>
Topics Covered .....	993
Getting the Character .....	995
Importing a Character from the Library .....	995
Importing Network Templates .....	996
Selecting the Pose .....	997
Extending the Exposure .....	998
Keyframes and Drawing Blocks .....	999
Timeline Behaviour .....	999
Creating a Drawing in the Timeline View .....	999
Creating a Keyframe in the Timeline View .....	1000
Creating a Drawing and a Keyframe in the Timeline View at the Same Time .....	1000
Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation .....	1001
Selecting Layers to Animate or Position .....	1004
Animate Mode .....	1004
Selecting Drawing Layers using the Transform Tool .....	1005
Selecting an element in the Camera View using the Transform Tool .....	1006
Selecting a Layer in the Timeline View .....	1006
Navigating the Hierarchy .....	1008
Animating using the Transform Tool .....	1010
Animating using Inverse Kinematics .....	1013
Topics Covered .....	1013
IK Hierarchy Chains .....	1014
Single Chains .....	1014
Direct Chains .....	1014

All Chains .....	1015
Where to Start with Inverse Kinematics? .....	1015
Inverse Kinematics Tool Properties .....	1017
IK Modes .....	1017
Bone Selection Mode .....	1017
Chain Menu .....	1018
IK Manipulation Mode .....	1018
Apply IK Constraints Mode .....	1018
Edit Min/Max Angle Mode .....	1018
Bone Editing Mode .....	1018
IK Tool Options .....	1018
IK Keyframe .....	1018
Ease Shape .....	1019
Selection .....	1019
Enable Translation If Top of Hierarchy .....	1020
Enable Rotation .....	1020
Exclude From IK .....	1020
IK Nails .....	1021
Stiffness .....	1021
Setting up the Character to use IK .....	1021
Connecting any Hierarchy Chain .....	1022
Excluding Extra Elements from IK .....	1023
Setting Up the Bones for the Extremities .....	1023
Nails .....	1025
Minimum and Maximum Angle .....	1026
IK Keyframes .....	1028
When to use the Inverse Kinematics Tool .....	1029
Inverse Kinematics in Toon Boom Animate Pro .....	1030
IK Tool and Rigging .....	1030
Animating with the Tools .....	1031
Inverse Kinematics Philosophy .....	1031
Tips and Tricks for Inverse Kinematics .....	1031
Animating in Stop-motion .....	1033
Creating a Stop-motion Keyframe .....	1033
Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation .....	1035
Creating a Motion Keyframe .....	1035

Adjusting the Ease .....	1036
Adjusting the Velocity in the Function View .....	1037
Adjusting the Velocity on Multiple Elements Concurrently .....	1038
Flipping Through Poses .....	1041
Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation .....	1043
Add to Onion Skin .....	1044
Remove from Onion Skin .....	1044
Remove Unselected from Onion Skin .....	1044
Add All to Onion Skin .....	1045
Remove All from Onion Skin .....	1045
Flipping Parts .....	1046
Animating Using Symbols .....	1048
Creating a Blink Symbol .....	1048
Importing a Template with Symbols .....	1052
Duplicating a Symbol .....	1052
Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions .....	1054
Swapping Images .....	1057
Adding a New Drawing .....	1060
Duplicating a Drawing .....	1060
Ordering Layers Over Time .....	1061
Resetting a Transformation .....	1063
Reset .....	1063
Reset All .....	1063
Reset All Except Z .....	1064
Creating Cycles .....	1065
Copying and Pasting Animation .....	1068
Adding Pegs .....	1070
Offsetting Part of an Animation .....	1072
Cut-out Animation Preferences .....	1074
Camera .....	1074
Inverse Kinematics .....	1074
Advanced .....	1074
Animate Using Animation Tools .....	1074
<b>Chapter 18: Effects .....</b>	<b>1075</b>
Topics Covered .....	1075
Adding Effects .....	1076



---

Network View .....	1076
Drawing Module .....	1077
Write and Display Modules .....	1078
Composite Module .....	1078
Effect Module .....	1078
Matte Drawing .....	1079
Position Ports .....	1079
Peg Module .....	1079
Module Library View .....	1079
Module Library View Toolbar .....	1080
Module Tabs .....	1080
Importing a Module .....	1081
Adding Effects Through the Timeline View .....	1082
Grouping from the Timeline View .....	1083
Previewing Effects .....	1085
Animating an Effect Over Time .....	1087
How Does an Effect Work? .....	1090
Using Effects .....	1092
Anti-Flicker .....	1093
Apply Peg Transformation .....	1094
Advanced Apply Peg Transformation .....	1098
Apply Image Transformation .....	1099
Auto Patch .....	1102
Blending .....	1104
Blend Mode and SWF Blend Mode .....	1105
Blur-Directional .....	1107
Blur-Radial .....	1109
Blur-Variable .....	1111
Brightness and Contrast .....	1112
Channel Selector .....	1113
Chroma-Keying .....	1114
Colour-Art .....	1119
Colour Banding .....	1120
Colour-Card .....	1122
Colour-Override .....	1123
Colour-Override Editor Interface .....	1125

Palettes .....	1125
Colours .....	1126
Palette Overrides .....	1126
Colour Overrides .....	1126
Overriding a Colour .....	1127
Overriding a Colour With a Texture .....	1128
Texture - Original matrix .....	1130
Texture - Global bbox matrix .....	1130
Texture - Global bbox centered .....	1130
Texture - Contour bbox matrix .....	1130
Texture - scale to screen .....	1130
Override with this Texture Centered on Overridden Objects Centre .....	1130
Texture - Use Input Peg .....	1131
Animating a Texture Override with a Peg .....	1131
Rendering Selected Colours Only .....	1132
Modifying a Texture Fill's Transformation .....	1132
Overriding a Colour with a Bitmap Image Sequence .....	1134
Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line .....	1136
Modifying a Texture Fill on a Pencil Line .....	1136
Modifying a Pencil Texture .....	1139
Colour-Scale .....	1141
Composite-Generic .....	1142
Colour Operation .....	1144
Alpha Operation .....	1146
Output Z .....	1146
Contrast .....	1147
Cutter .....	1148
Dither .....	1149
External .....	1151
Focus .....	1153
Focus Multiplier .....	1155
Glow .....	1156
Glue .....	1158
Gradient .....	1160
Controlling the Gradient in the Camera View .....	1161
Grain .....	1162

---

Greyscale .....	1164
How to Use the Matte Output Option .....	1165
Grid / Field Chart .....	1166
Size .....	1167
Display Text .....	1168
Red/Green/Blue/Alpha .....	1168
Fill .....	1168
Fit Vertical .....	1169
Aspect Ratio .....	1169
Highlight .....	1170
Layer Selector .....	1172
Line Art .....	1174
Matte-Blur .....	1175
Matte-Resize .....	1177
Motion-Blur .....	1178
Multi-Port-In .....	1180
Multi-Port-Out .....	1180
Negate .....	1181
Note .....	1182
Overlay Layer .....	1183
Pixelate .....	1185
Placeholder .....	1186
Quadmap .....	1186
Refract .....	1188
Remove Transparency .....	1190
Shadow .....	1191
Sparkle .....	1194
Tone .....	1196
Transparency .....	1198
Underlay Layer .....	1200
Previewing and Playing Back Effects .....	1202
Preview Resolution .....	1202
Extra Commands .....	1204
Effects Preferences .....	1205
General .....	1205
Options .....	1205

OpenGL .....	1206
Drawings .....	1206
Effects .....	1206
<b>Chapter 19: Export .....</b>	<b>1207</b>
Topics Covered .....	1207
Exporting a QuickTime Movie .....	1208
Exporting a QuickTime Movie with Transparency .....	1212
Exporting an SWF Movie (Flash) .....	1213
Exporting OpenGL Frames .....	1215
Rendering Movies and Image Sequences .....	1217
Write Module .....	1217
Image Sequences .....	1218
QuickTime Movie .....	1220
Multiple Renders .....	1222
Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions .....	1223
Write Module .....	1223
Scale-Output Module .....	1223
Crop Module .....	1225
Connecting the Required Modules .....	1229
Rendering Images and Movies from the Network .....	1232
Export Preferences .....	1234
Preview Options .....	1234
Image Management .....	1234
Cache Options .....	1235
Multi Threading .....	1235
<b>Chapter 20: Scripting .....</b>	<b>1237</b>
Topics Covered .....	1237
Creating a Qt Script .....	1238
Importing Scripts .....	1241
Linking a Script to a Toolbar Button .....	1241
<b>Chapter 21: Keyboard Shortcuts for Animate Pro .....</b>	<b>1243</b>
<b>Toon Boom Animate Pro 3Toon Boom Utilities Guide .....</b>	<b>1275</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Introduction to Utilities .....</b>	<b>1277</b>
Topics Covered .....	1277
Running a Utility .....	1279
<b>Chapter 3: Utilities .....</b>	<b>1281</b>

Pdfimport Utility .....	1282
How to Vectorize With Bubbles .....	1283
Examples .....	1283
Swf2tvg Utility .....	1287
Swfimport Utility .....	1289
uinfo Utility .....	1290
utransform Utility .....	1291
Output a Layout to a Bitmap Format .....	1294
Render Network .....	1295
utransform and Exporting a Panoramic Background .....	1295
As Is .....	1298
<b>Toon Boom Animate Pro 3Toon Boom Play User Guide .....</b>	<b>1305</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Using Toon Boom Play .....</b>	<b>1306</b>
Topics Covered .....	1306
Launching Toon Boom Play .....	1307
About Toon Boom Play .....	1308
Top Menu .....	1308
Playback Toolbar .....	1309
Loading an Image Sequence .....	1311
Toon Boom Play Commands .....	1313
File .....	1313
Load From Folder .....	1313
Reload Frames .....	1313
Unload Frames .....	1313
Quit Play .....	1314
View .....	1314
Zoom In .....	1314
Zoom Out .....	1314
Reset Zoom .....	1314
Loaded File Properties .....	1314
Image .....	1314
Matte .....	1315
Play .....	1315
Enable Sound .....	1315
Enable Sound .....	1315

Enable Sound Scrubbing .....	1316
First Frame .....	1316
Go to Frame .....	1316
Last Frame .....	1316
Next Frame .....	1316
Previous Frame .....	1316
Start Frame .....	1316
Stop Frame .....	1316
Loop .....	1317
Play Scene Backward .....	1317
Play Scene Forward .....	1317
Playback Speed .....	1317
Stop .....	1317
Help .....	1317
Help .....	1317
About .....	1317
Mac OS X Play .....	1317
About .....	1318
Quit Play .....	1318

# Chapter 1: Introduction

Toon Boom Animate Pro is a complete animation software with advanced features for all your animation projects. Animate Pro is the ideal cut-out animation solution. Made specifically for creating and animating cut-out characters.

No matter your preferred animation work-style, Animate Pro manages your entire project, from importing assets and content creation, all the way to animation, compositing and multi-platform rendering. Animate Pro boasts a 64-bit engine, allowing you to export content faster, including elaborate scenes, large bitmaps, gradients and complex backgrounds. Output sophisticated scenes at full resolution with effects.



Animate Pro works in conjunction with Toon Boom Storyboard Pro, which allows you to plan your project, and time the scenes to audio before animating in Animate or Animate Pro.

---

To learn all about the features available in Toon Boom Animate Pro and how to use them in a production context, refer to the following chapters:

- [Getting Started](#) on page 51
- [Interface](#) on page 77
- [Drawing](#) on page 129
- [Traditional Animation](#) on page 257
- [Colour](#) on page 301
- [Timing](#) on page 375
- [Morphing](#) on page 465
- [Import](#) on page 511
- [Library](#) on page 643
- [Character Building](#) on page 681
- [Scene Setup](#) on page 559
- [3D Space](#) on page 849
- [Sound](#) on page 877
- [Animation Paths](#) on page 907
- [Cut-out Animation](#) on page 993
- [Deformation](#) on page 777
- [Effects](#) on page 1075
- [Export](#) on page 1207



In all Animate Pro documentation, the default keyboard shortcuts used are the Toon Boom Animate Pro set.

---



# Visual Markers

## Related Topics

The Related Topics sections, located at the end of each section, indicate that there is another section extant in this guide, one that provides further information regarding the current topic. If you are reading the digital version of this guide, you can click on the link to go directly to that section.

## Note



This Note gives important information regarding the current topic.

---



# Chapter 2: Getting Started

Once the software is installed, you are ready to start the application and animate!



## Topics Covered

- [Starting Toon Boom Animate Pro on the next page](#)
- [Welcome Screen on page 54](#)
- [Creating and Opening a Scene on page 56](#)
- [Setting the Scene Length on page 60](#)
- [Scene Settings on page 61](#)
- [Adding a Drawing Layer on page 66](#)
- [Basic Commands on page 67](#)
- [Preferences on page 71](#)

# Starting Toon Boom Animate Pro

You can run the software on Mac OS X or Windows operating systems.

To start Animate Pro, do one of the following:

- ▶ Windows: Double-click on the Animate Pro  icon or select **Start > Programs/All Programs > Toon Boom Animation > Toon Boom Animate Pro 3**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Double-click on the Animate Pro  icon or select **Applications > Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 > Animate Pro**.

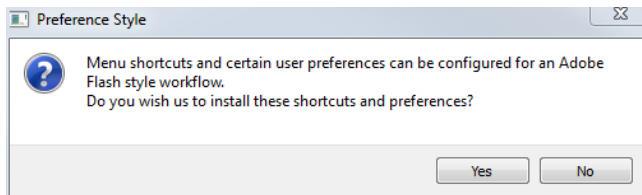
Toon Boom Animate Pro opens.

## Related Topics

- [Preference Style](#) below
- [Welcome Screen](#) on page 54

## Preference Style

When you start Animate Pro for the first time, the Preference Style dialog box will open. This is the only time you will see this dialog box, however, you can change the styles later on if you like using the Preference panel.



You have two choices. Select the one which fits your work style:

- **Yes:** Sets Animate Pro's default shortcut scheme and preferences to fit the Adobe® Flash® software workflow style. For example, the Select tool is set to Marquee mode.
- **No :** Sets Animate Pro's default shortcut scheme and preferences to fit the Toon Boom professional products workflow style. The Select tool is set to Lasso selection mode.

Once your choice is made, the Welcome Screen is displayed



You can always return to the Preference Style window later on to change the shortcut style.

---

Refer to the following topics to learn more about preferences and customizing the shortcuts:

- [Preferences](#) on page 71

- [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) on page 74
- [Preference Highlights](#) on page 72

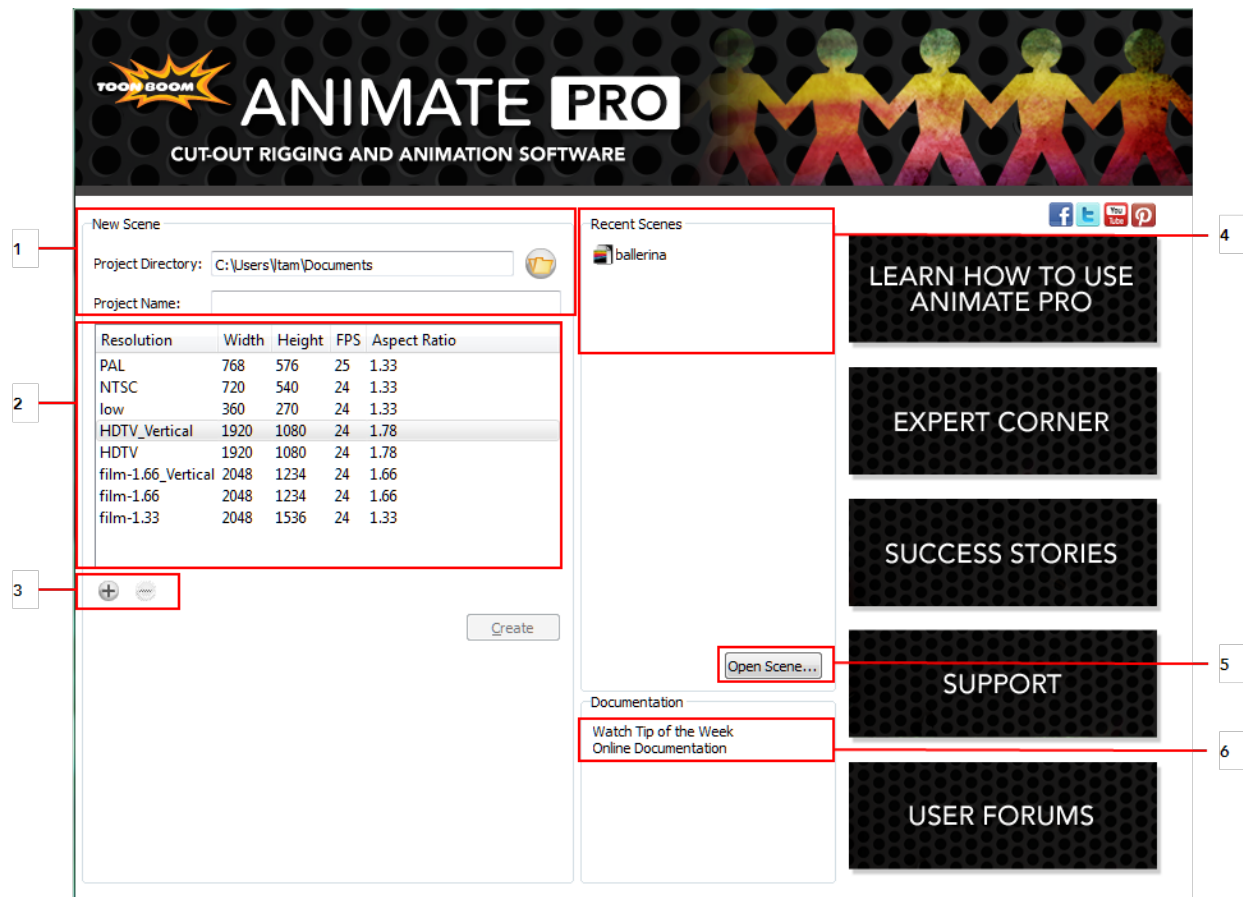
## Related Topics

- [Starting Toon Boom Animate Pro](#) on the previous page

# Welcome Screen



When you open Toon Boom Animate Pro, the Welcome Screen appears. If a scene is already open, you can display the Welcome Screen by selecting **Help > Show Welcome Screen**.



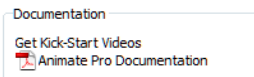
The Welcome Screen allows you to:

1. Create scenes.
2. Choose the scene resolution.
3. Add or delete a custom scene resolution.
4. Open recent scenes from a list.
5. Open scenes by browsing.
6. Open the Help documentation.

## Accessing the Documentation

To access the Animate Pro documentation:

- ▶ In the Documentation section, click **Animate Pro Documentation**.



All the Animate Pro guides can also be opened directly in the software, from the top menu, by selecting **Help > Help** or press [F1].

## Related Topics

- [Starting Toon Boom Animate Pro on page 52](#)

# Creating and Opening a Scene

All scenes created via Animate Pro are independent and local to the computer.


You can either create a new scene using the Welcome Screen or the File menu:

- [Creating a Scene Using the Welcome Screen](#) below
- [Creating a Scene Using the File Menu](#) on the facing page


## Creating a Scene Using the Welcome Screen

To create a scene from the Welcome screen:

1. To select the scene's location, in the Project Directory section, browse the files by clicking **Browse**  button.


Project Directory:    
 Project Name:

2. In the Project Name field, type the scene's name.

Project Directory:    
 Project Name:



The scene name **cannot** exceed 23 characters.

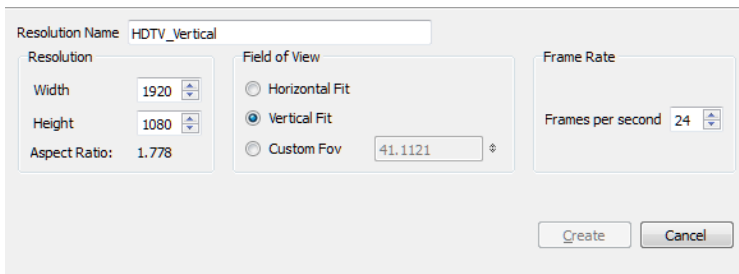
3. Set the scene resolution by doing one of the following:
  - In the Resolution window, select the scene's resolution and click **Create**.
 Your new scene is created.
  - Add a new resolution to list by clicking the **Add**  button.

Resolution	Width	Height	FPS	Aspect Ratio
PAL	768	576	25	1.33
NTSC	720	540	24	1.33
low	360	270	24	1.33
HDTV_Vertical	1920	1080	24	1.78
HDTV	1920	1080	24	1.78
film-1.66_Vertical	2048	1234	24	1.66
film-1.66	2048	1234	24	1.66
film-1.33	2048	1536	24	1.33



In the New Resolution dialog box, fill in the following fields and click **Create**.





**Resolution Name:** Name your new resolution.

**Resolution:** Set the width, height and aspect ratio of the resolution.

**Field of View:** Set the horizontal fit, vertical fit, or custom Fov.

**Frame Rate:** Type the scene's frame rate per second.



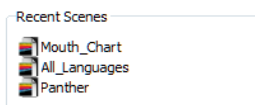
You can delete a custom resolution from the Resolution list by selecting it, and clicking the Delete button under the Resolution window.

#### To open a scene from the Welcome screen:

1. In the Recent Scenes section, click **Open Scene**.  
The Open Scene browser opens.
2. Browse and select the desired \* .anim file.
3. Click **Open** to open the scene.

#### To open a recent scene from the Welcome screen:


- In the Recent Scenes section, select a scene from the list.



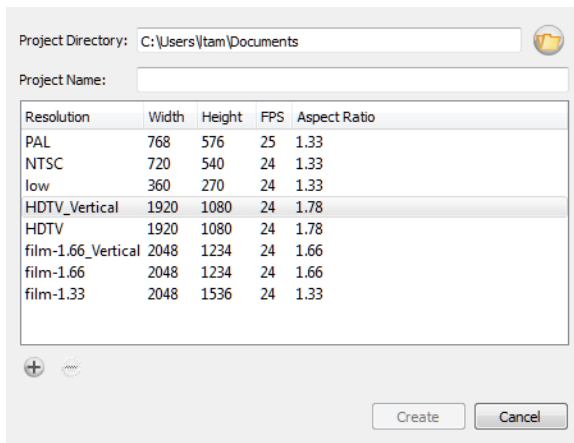
## Creating a Scene Using the File Menu


If a scene is already open and you want to create a new one, you can use the File menu.

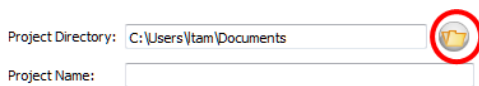
#### To create a scene from the File menu:

1. Do one of the following:
  - From the top menu, select **File > New**.
  - In the File toolbar, click the **New**  button.
  - Press [Ctrl] + [N] (Windows) or [⌘] + [N] (Mac OS X).

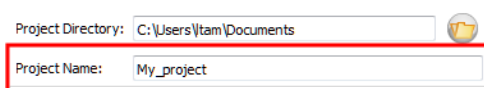
The New Scene dialog box opens.




2. Select a scene directory by clicking the **Browse**  button.

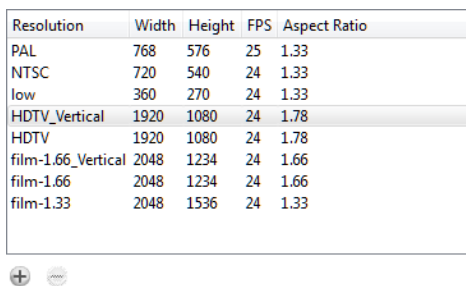


3. In the Project Name field, type the scene's name.

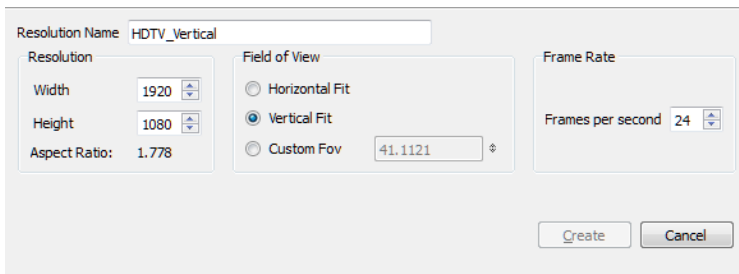


The scene name **cannot** exceed 23 characters.

4. Set the scene resolution by doing one of the following:
  - In the Resolution window, select the scene's resolution and click **Create**.
 Your new scene is created.
  - Add a new resolution to list by clicking the **Add**  button.



In the New Resolution dialog box, fill in the following fields and click **Create**.




**Resolution Name:** Name your new resolution.

**Resolution:** Set the width, height and aspect ratio of the resolution.

**Field of View:** Set the horizontal fit, vertical fit, or custom Fov.

**Frame Rate:** Type the scene's frame rate per second.

#### To open a scene from the File menu:

1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ From the top menu, select **File > Open**.
  - ▶ In the File toolbar, click the **Browse**  button.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [N] (Windows) or [⌘] + [N] (Mac OS X).

The Open Scene browser opens.

2. Browse and select the desired **\*.anim** file.
3. Click **Open**.

## Saving a Scene

It is important to regularly save your scene. As you make changes to a scene, an asterisk (\*) appears in the title bar beside the scene name to indicate that the scene contains unsaved changes.

#### To save a scene, do one of the following:

- ▶ Select File > Save.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [S] (Windows) or [⌘] + [S] (Mac OS X).

#### Related Topics

- [Welcome Screen on page 54](#)

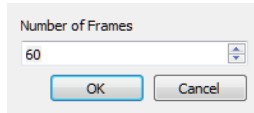
# Setting the Scene Length

Once you have created your scene, you can set its length.

**To set the scene length from the top menu:**

1. From the top menu, select **Scene > Scene Length**.

The Set Scene Length dialog box opens.



2. In the Number of Frames field, type the number of frames needed.

Refer to the following topics to learn more about adding and removing frames, and extending the scene's length:

- [Adding Frames on page 387](#)
- [Deleting Frames on page 389](#)

## Related Topics

- [Getting Started on page 51](#)
- [Creating and Opening a Scene on page 56](#)

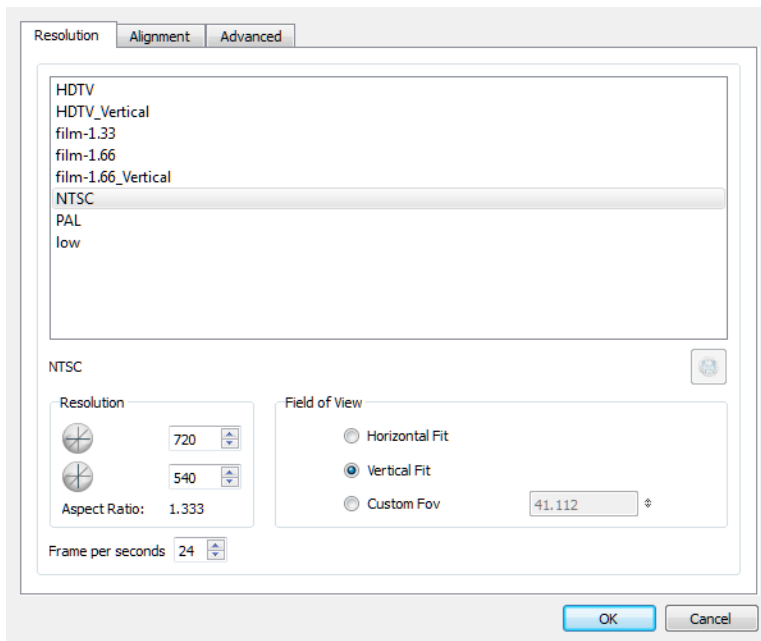
# Scene Settings

When you created your new scene, you set up the resolution and the alignment. However, if you want to change these initial settings later, you can.

To change the scene settings:

From the top menu, select **Scene > Scene Settings**.

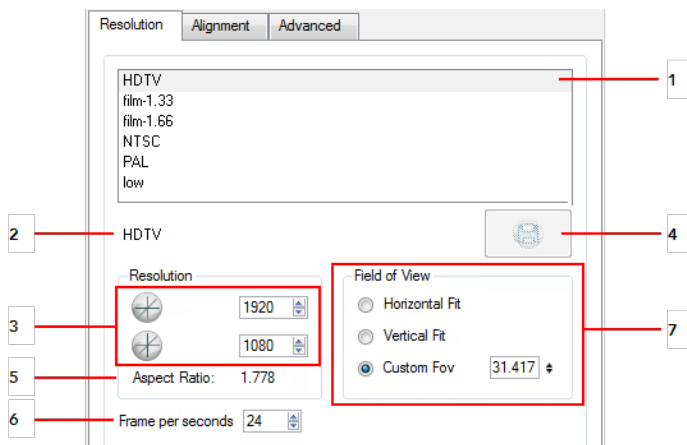
The Scene Settings dialog box opens.



The different Scene Settings options are separated into three tabs.

- [Resolution Tab](#) below
- [Alignment Tab](#) on page 63
- [Advanced Tab](#) on page 65

## Resolution Tab



1. Project Resolution Type
2. Scene Resolution Setting
3. Pixel Dimensions
4. Save Custom Resolution
5. Aspect Ratio
6. Project Frame Rate
7. Field of View

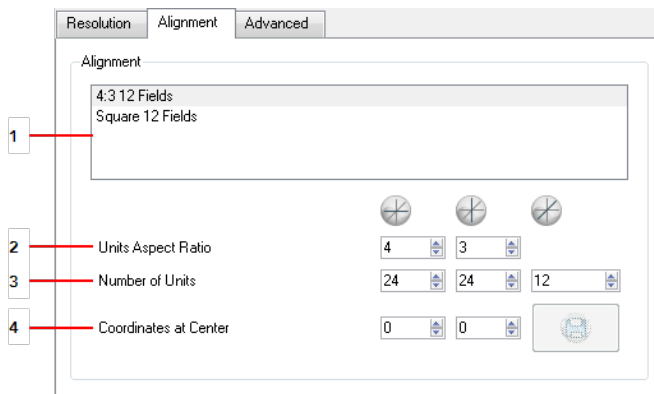
## Resolution

1. You can select your project's resolution type from this area so it matches your intended output.
  - **HDTV:** High definition television delivers a higher quality image than standard television does, because it has a greater number of lines of resolution. To take advantage of the superior quality your output device must be compatible with HDTV technology to make this resolution setting useful.
  - **HDTV\_Vertical:** The "vertical resolution" of HDTV\_Vertical refers to how the drawing grid is fit into the camera frame. When working with 12 or 16 field drawing grids, the grid is a different aspect ratio from the camera frame. When you fit vertically, you fit the grid with the top and bottom of the camera frame.
  - **film-1.33:** Use this resolution setting for the academy film format that conforms to the standard 4:3 aspect ratio.
  - **film-1.66:** Use this resolution setting for the widescreen film format that conforms to the 16:9 aspect ratio.
  - **film-1.66\_Vertical:** This is essentially the same as film-1.66. Refers to how the drawing grid is fit into the camera frame. When working with 12 or 16 field drawing grids, the grid is a different aspect ratio from the camera frame. When you fit vertically, you fit the grid with the top and bottom of the camera frame.
  - **NTSC:** This is the standard analogue television broadcasting system used in North America and conforms to the North American standards on how rectangular pixels are displayed for computer and television screens.
  - **PAL:** This resolution works best with the European format for television and computer screens, as the rectangular pixels are displayed at a different orientation.
  - **Low:** This format is ideal for videos destined for the web, where size and fast download of a video file might take precedence over quality.
2. Displays the scene resolution setting selection.
3. Displays the pixel dimensions for your resolution selection.

If you decide to type in the pixel dimensions, or use the up and down arrows to change the pixel increments, you will have to save your custom selection in order to make it active (4). It will then appear in the resolution selection list (1).
4. Click **Save** to save and create your custom resolution as a setting. This button becomes active when you create a custom resolution type (3).
5. The aspect ratio is the ratio between the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the Camera framing. Each resolution setting has a preset aspect ratio that cannot be changed.
6. Select the frame rate for your project. The higher the frame rate, for example 30 fps, the smoother your animation will look, but the heavier it will become, the lower the frame rate, for example 12 fps, the choppier your animation may look, but the lighter it will be.

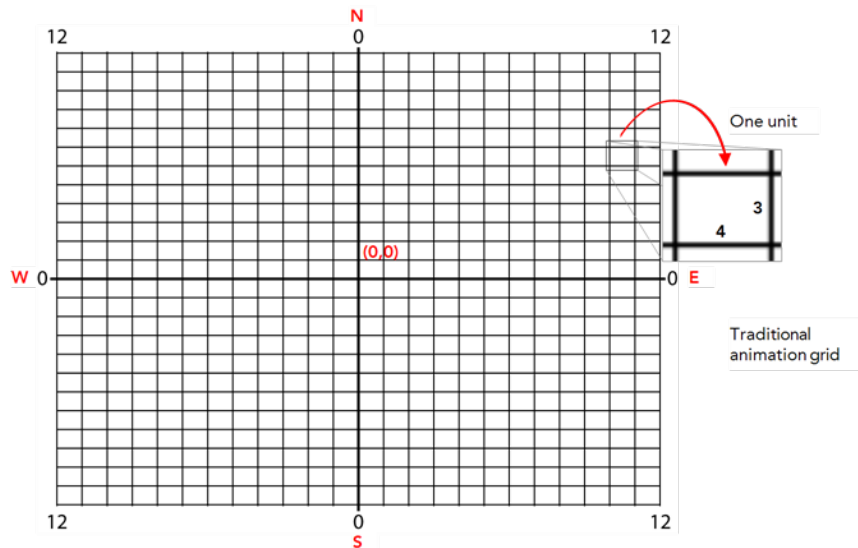
7. Use these options to define the FOV of the camera and how the drawing elements (and drawing grid) align to the camera. The drawing grid is always scaled proportionally to a 4:3 (1.33) ratio, therefore changing the Field of View setting may not show a visible difference if your project resolution is also 4:3, such as NTSC.
  - **Horizontal Fit:** The drawing grid is fitted to the vertical (side) edges of the Camera view, so that the width of the grid matches the width of your project resolution.
  - **Vertical Fit:** The drawing grid is fitted to the horizontal (top and bottom) edges of the Camera view, so that the height of the grid matches the height of your project resolution.
  - **Custom Fov:** After selecting this option, use the now-active field to the right to enter in a value, in degrees, of the angle that you want the camera cone to be. Increasing this value will make the camera cone wider (the angle is more obtuse), widening the FOV and making the grid and all elements appear farther away. Decreasing the default value will create the opposite effect.

## Alignment Tab



1. Alignment Presets
2. Units Aspect Ratio
3. Number of Units
4. Coordinates at Centre

## Alignment Rules



- The Alignment Presets give you two preset options:
  - ▶ **4:3 12 Fields:** Defines the units of your project to have a 4:3 ratio and sets up 12 of these units to run both vertically and horizontally in four cardinal quarters (NW, NE, SW, SE). This Alignment preset is visible in the FOV and drawing grids.
  - ▶ **Square 12 Fields:** Defines the units of your project to have a 1:1 or square ratio and sets up 12 units to run both vertically and horizontally in four cardinal quarters (NW, NE, SW, SE). This Alignment preset is NOT visible in the FOV and drawing grids.
- In the Units Aspect Ratio fields, enter the aspect ratio of the grid you will use. The aspect ratio describes the shape of the grid unit. A square grid unit would have the ratio 1:1, whereas a grid unit of aspect ratio 4:3 is a unit with one side 1.33 times as big as the other side.
  - ▶ If the aspect ratio you want to use is 1:1, enter 1 in the Left/Right field (X-axis) and 1 in the Up/Down field (Y-axis). The default Aspect Ratio is set to 4:3 as it is the one used by traditional animators, who are accustomed to working with the grid system described above.
- In the Number of Units fields, enter the number of horizontal, vertical and depth units for your scene's grid.

Animators who prefer to work traditionally will understand the default setting of 24 units horizontal by 24 units vertical as it, once again, corresponds to the grid above. Twelve is a common setting for the field depth.

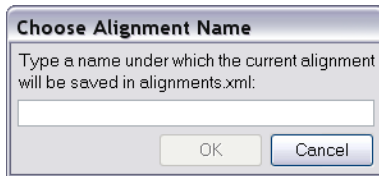
Those who prefer to work in pixels should enter the pixel dimensions (3) of their project. This way if you want to move something over 600 pixels you just need to type in 600 units.

- In the Coordinates at Centre, you can enter a new coordinate for the centre of your scene.
 

By default, the (0,0) centre is set in the middle of the grid as shown in the grid above. If you want to change the centre of your grid, for example to the upper left corner, you would enter (-12, 12), -12 units across and 12 units up. That is of course unless you changed the number of units to match the pixel dimensions of your scene. Then you would enter negative half the width and positive half the height.
- Click **Save** button to save your current Alignment settings and be able to select them later from the list.
 

The Choose Alignment Name dialog box opens.



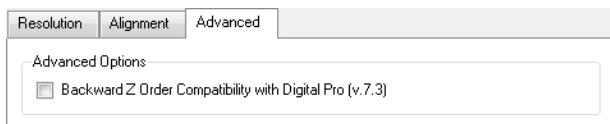


Type in a name for your new alignment settings and click **OK**.



If you change your scene's alignment from 4:3 12 Fields to Square 12 Fields part way through your project, you may find that the Animation grid becomes offset. To correct this, choose the following setting from the Layer Properties panel's **Advanced** tab: **Alignment > Alignment Rule > Centre First Page**.

## Advanced Tab



The Advanced tab contains an option for Toon Boom Digital Pro release 7.3 and Animate Pro release 7.3.

Since version 7.8, the method in which Z-Ordering is calculated has been optimized. Enable this option if you want to use the version 7.3 system.

Toon Boom Digital Pro and Toon Boom Animate Pro 7.3 allowed smaller values on the Z-axis such as 0.0001. Since version 7.8, the Z-ordering calculation is now optimized and allows only larger values such as 0.001.

### Related Topics

- [Creating and Opening a Scene on page 56](#)
- [Setting the Scene Length on page 60](#)

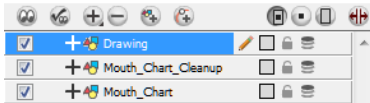
# Adding a Drawing Layer

Now that your scene is set up, you can add drawing layers.

**To add a drawing layer from the Timeline view:**

1. In the Timeline view, click the **Add Drawing Layer**  button.

A new drawing layer is added to the Timeline view.



Refer to the following topics to learn more about layers and how to add them.

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Adding New Drawing Layers on page 397](#)
- [Deleting Layers And Columns on page 401](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns on page 411](#)
- [Cloning Layers And Columns on page 412](#)

---

## Related Topics

- [Getting Started on page 51](#)

# Basic Commands

This table lists the most common commands used in Animate Pro.

Command	Action	Access Methods
New	Starts a new scene while closing any scene already open. The New Scene dialog box opens, asking for directory, name, and resolution information.	<b>File &gt; New</b> Press [Ctrl] + [N] (Windows) or [⌘] + [N] (Mac OS X).
Open	Displays the Open Scene dialog box. Browse your file system for a scene file.  The Open command is not disabled when a scene is opened. You can open a new scene from the current one and the previous scene will be closed.	<b>File &gt; Open</b> Press [[[Undefined variable Keyboard_Shortcuts.Open1]]].
Open Recent	Displays a quick access list to view and open recently used Animate Pro files.	<b>File &gt; Open Recent</b>
Open Recent > Clear	Clears the recently opened Animate Pro files list.	<b>File &gt; Open Recent &gt; Clear</b>
Close	Closes the currently opened scene, but does not close the Animate Pro application.	<b>File &gt; Close</b>
Save	Saves all changes made to the opened scene, drawings, palettes, and palette lists.	<b>File &gt; Save</b> Press [Ctrl] + [S] (Windows) or [⌘] + [S] (Mac OS X). [[[Undefined variable Keyboard_Shortcuts.New1]]]
Save As	Saves the current state of a scene as another scene. The Save As window prompts you to give a new name and choose a different location to this scene before saving it. This will create a complete scene directory for the new scene.  The scene name <b>cannot</b> exceed 23 characters.	<b>File &gt; Save As</b>

<b>Command</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Access Methods</b>
Removed Unused Files		
Import and Export		
Quit	Closes Animate ProHarmony Stage.	Windows: <b>File &gt; Quit</b> Mac OS X: <b>Animate Pro &gt; Quit</b>
Show Scan Information	Displays a status bar showing the scanning information at the bottom of the Drawing and Camera view.	<b>Drawing View Menu &gt; View &gt; Show &gt; Show Scan Information</b>
Cut	Removes selected objects. You can then paste the object or its properties to another object.	<b>Edit &gt; Cut</b> Press [Ctrl] + [X] (Windows) or [⌘] + [X] (Mac OS X).
Copy	Copies selected objects and properties.	<b>Edit &gt; Copy</b> Press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
Paste	Places an object you cut or copied into the location you select in the Camera, Drawing and Timeline View.	<b>Edit &gt; Paste</b> Press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).
Delete	Removes selected objects.	<b>Edit &gt; Delete</b> [Delete]
Select All	Selects all drawing objects in the current drawing window in the Drawing, Timeline and Camera view. This helps you manage multiple objects as one when moving them.	<b>Edit &gt; Select All</b> Press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
Deselect All	Deselects all selected objects in the Drawing and Camer views.	<b>Edit &gt; Deselect All</b> [Esc]
Undo	Removes remove the last change made to your project. Animate Pro supports multiple undo, so you can undo changes you made in the order you made	<b>Edit &gt; Undo</b> Press [Ctrl] + [Z] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Z] (Mac OS X).

Command	Action	Access Methods
	them.	
Redo	Redoes and operation you have undone that you later decide to keep. This command is active only after you use the Undo command.	<b>Edit &gt; Redo</b>  Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [Z] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [Z] (Mac OS X).
Select Children	Lets you select all elements parented to the selected peg element in the Timeline view.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Children</b>
Select Child	Lets you select the first element parented to the selected peg element in the Timeline View.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Child</b>
Select Parent Skipping Effects	Lets you select the parent of the selected element in the Timeline view skipping effects in the hierarchy.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Parent Skipping Effects</b>  Press [B].
Select Parent	Lets you select the parent of the selected element in the Timeline view.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Parent</b>
Select Previous Brother	Lets you select the next element (above current element) in the Timeline view.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Previous Brother</b>  Press [/.].
Select Next Brother	Lets you select the next element (below current element) in the Timeline view.	<b>Animation &gt; Select Next Brother</b>  Press [?].
Auto Render Write	Use the Auto Render Write command to render a frame each time the current frame is changed.  You must have a Write module in your network to use this command.	<b>Scene &gt; Render &gt;Auto Render Write</b>
Message Log	The Message log view displays information gathered during a render task, like which frames and at what time they were each rendered.	<b>Windows &gt; Message Log</b>

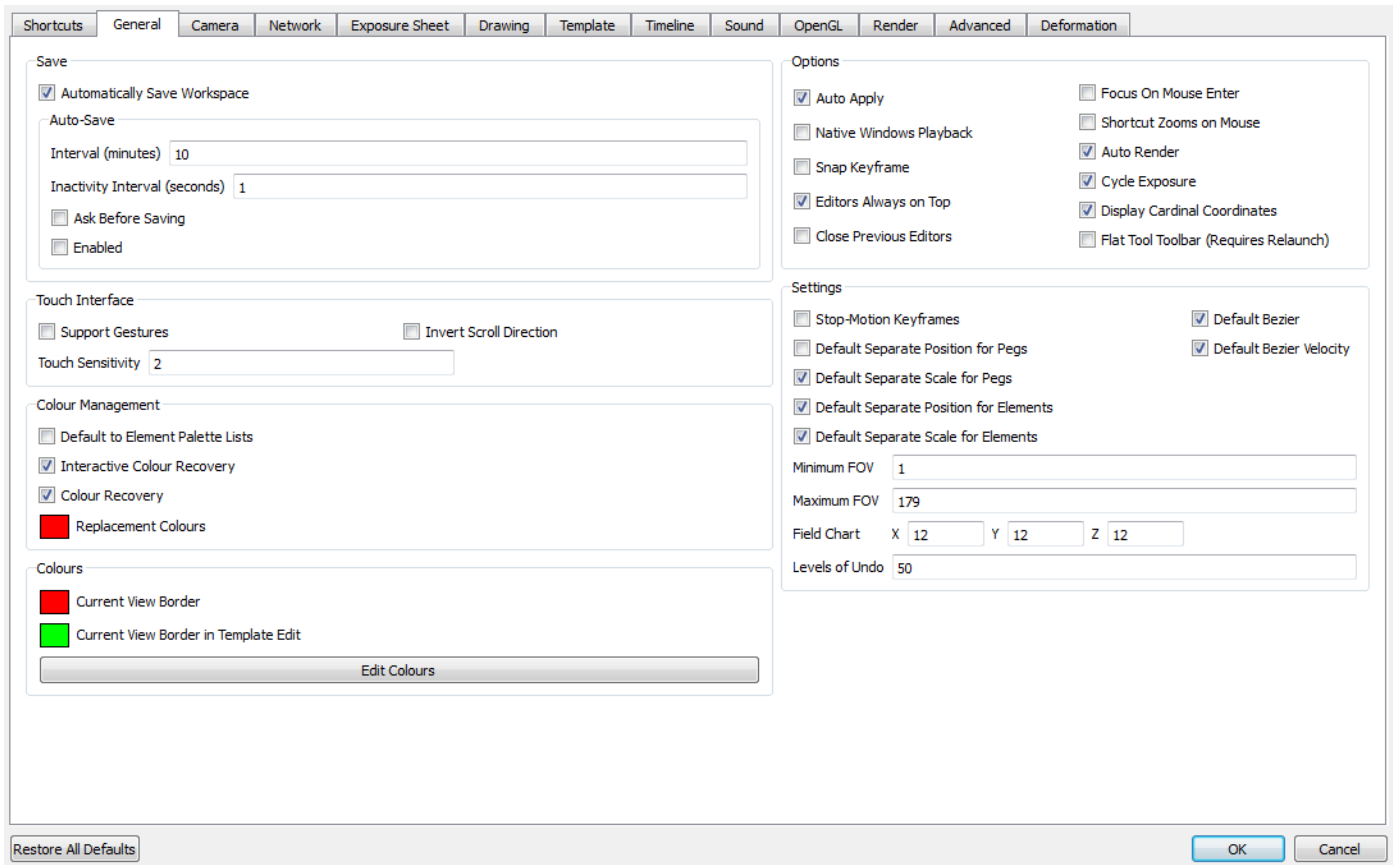
<b>Command</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Access Methods</b>
Debug Mode	Enable the Debug Mode option to gather and display precise information about each rendering frame such as the modules encountered and action taken.	<b>Help &gt; Debug Mode</b>
Help	Launches the Toon Boom Animate Pro Help System PDF, complete with instructions on how to use the system.	<b>Help &gt; Help</b>
Toon Boom Animate Pro on the Web	Launches the Toon Boom Animate Pro website, which features a Support and <b>Community &gt; Forum</b> section.	<b>Help &gt; Toon Boom Animate Pro on the Web</b>
About	Use the About command to access general information about the software.	Windows: <b>Help &gt; About</b> Mac OS X: <b>Animate Pro &gt; About</b>
Show Welcome Screen	Brings back the Welcome screen—see <a href="#">Welcome Screen on page 54</a>	<b>Help &gt; Show Welcome Screen</b>

## Related Topics

- [Getting Started on page 51](#)

# Preferences

An important feature of Toon Boom Animate Pro is the Preferences dialog box. From here you can customize your interface, tool behaviour and shortcuts. Throughout this guide, you are often required to go to the Preferences dialog box to set parameters and options.



In this section, you will learn how to access the Preferences panel and also find a general description of its functionality.

To learn about the different preferences available and how they are used in a production context, refer to the following topics:

- [Getting Started Preferences](#) on page 73
- [Interface Preferences](#) on page 123
- [Drawing Preferences](#) on page 252
- [Traditional Animation Preferences](#) on page 299
- [Colour Preferences](#) on page 371
- [Timing Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Morphing Preferences](#) on page 509
- [Import Preferences](#) on page 558
- [Library Preferences](#) on page 680
- [Scene Setup Preferences](#) on page 634

- [Sound Preferences](#) on page 906
- [Animation Path Preferences](#) on page 989
- [Cut-out Animation Preferences](#) on page 1074
- [Deformation Preferences](#) on page 845
- [Effects Preferences](#) on page 1205
- [Export Preferences](#) on page 1234

## Related Topics

- [Preference Highlights](#) below
- [Getting Started Preferences](#) on the facing page
- [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) on page 74

# Preference Highlights

You can set over 80 preferences in the Preferences dialog box. You will learn about them as you read through this guide and find out how they apply in a production context.

The Preferences panel is divided into the following tabs:

- Shortcuts
- General
- Camera
- Network
- Exposure Sheet
- Drawing
- Template
- Timeline
- Sound
- OpenGL
- Render
- Advanced
- Deformation



Some preferences require you to exit and restart the application or to close a view and reopen it.

---

## To access the Preferences dialog box:

Do one of the following:



- ▶ From the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X).
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Preferences](#) on page 71
- [Getting Started Preferences](#) below
- [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) on the next page

# Getting Started Preferences

In this section, you will find useful preferences to get you started in the General tab.

- [General Tab](#) below

## General Tab

The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of the Preferences dialog box. The tabs at the top are: Shortcuts, General, Camera, Network, Exposure Sheet, Drawing, Template, Timeline, Sound, OpenGL, Render, Advanced, and Deformation. The 'General' tab is selected.

**Save**

- Automatically Save Workspace
- Auto-Save
  - Interval (minutes)
  - Inactivity Interval (seconds)
  - Ask Before Saving
  - Enabled

**Options**

- Auto Apply
- Native Windows Playback
- Snap Keyframe
- Editors Always on Top
- Close Previous Editors
- Focus On Mouse Enter
- Shortcut Zooms on Mouse
- Auto Render
- Cycle Exposure
- Display Cardinal Coordinates
- Flat Tool Toolbar (Requires Relaunch)

**Touch Interface**

- Support Gestures
- Invert Scroll Direction
- Touch Sensitivity

**Colour Management**

- Default to Element Palette Lists
- Interactive Colour Recovery
- Colour Recovery
- Replacement Colours

**Colours**

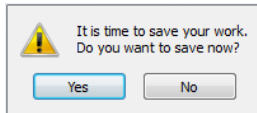
- Current View Border
- Current View Border in Template Edit

**Settings**

- Stop-Motion Keyframes
- Default Separate Position for Pegs
- Default Separate Scale for Pegs
- Default Separate Position for Elements
- Default Separate Scale for Elements
- Minimum FOV
- Maximum FOV
- Field Chart X  Y  Z
- Levels of Undo
- Default Bezier
- Default Bezier Velocity

## Auto-Save

- **Interval (minutes):** This is the frequency at which the auto-save takes place.
- **Inactivity Interval (seconds):** When Auto-save is about to take place, it verify if you are drawing or doing anything in the application. If so, Auto-save waits this number of seconds before attempting another save.
- **Ask Before Saving:** Before performing an auto-save, the system will prompt you with a message to confirm if you want to save or not. You can choose to turn off this option.



- **Enabled:** This enables the Auto-save feature. If you do not want the system to automatically save your work, deselect this option. The auto-save is off by default.

## Timeline Tab

### Related Topics

- [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) below

## Keyboard Shortcuts

To speed up your work, all of Toon Boom Animate Pro's keyboard shortcuts can be customized. You can even choose other software keyboard shortcut sets.

- [Selecting a Keyboard Shortcut Set](#) below
- [Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut](#) below

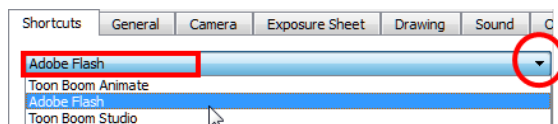
## Selecting a Keyboard Shortcut Set

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can choose a set of default keyboard shortcuts you are familiar with. You can choose between the following:

- Adobe Flash
- Toon Boom Animate Pro
- Toon Boom Studio

To switch keyboard shortcut sets:

1. Select **Edit > Preferences** or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences dialog box, select the **Shortcuts** tab.
3. From the Shortcut Set list, select the desired set.



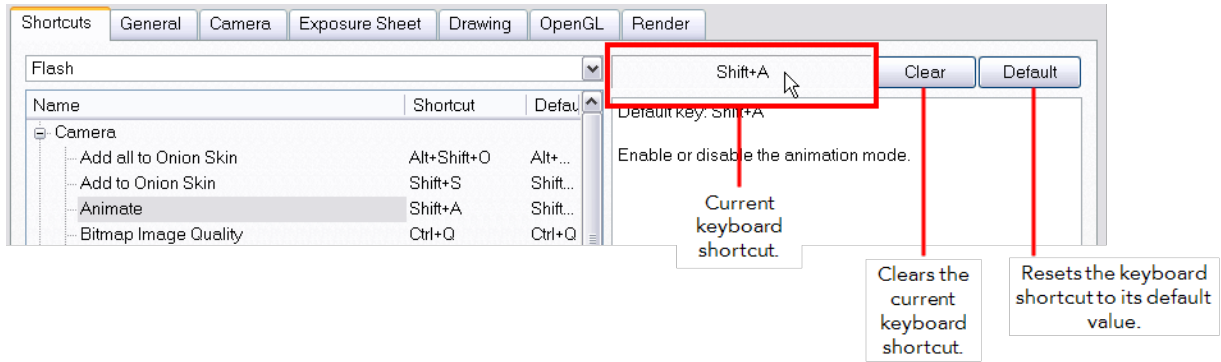
## Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut

You can also customize most of the shortcuts.

To set a shortcut:

1. Select **Edit > Preferences** or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences dialog box, select the **Shortcuts** tab.
3. In the left pane, select a category and then select a command to modify.

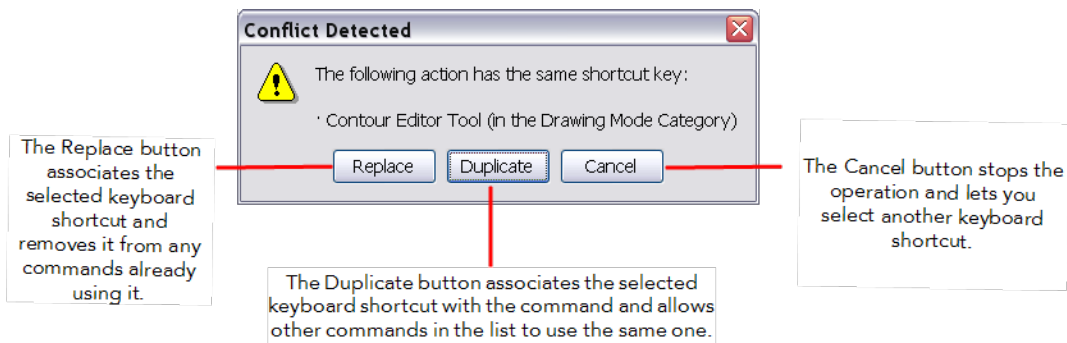
- Click on the shortcut rectangle (above the right pane).



- On your keyboard, click the desired shortcut.
  - To remove any keyboard shortcut associated to a command, click **Clear**.
  - To reset a command's default keyboard shortcut, click **Default**.
- Click **OK**.



If a keyboard shortcut is already in use, the **Conflict Detected** dialog box will appear notifying you of the command to which it is already associated. You can continue to associate the shortcut or cancel the operation and choose another command.

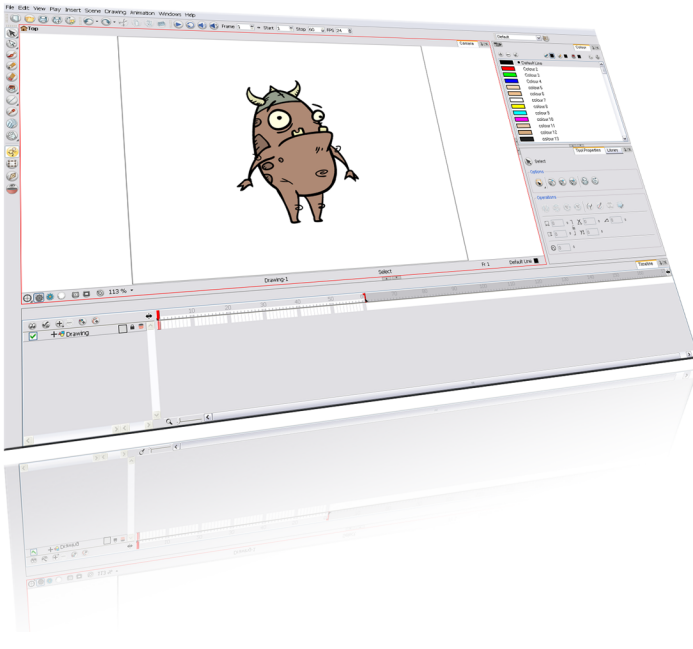


## Related Topics

- [Preferences](#) on page 71



# Chapter 3: Interface

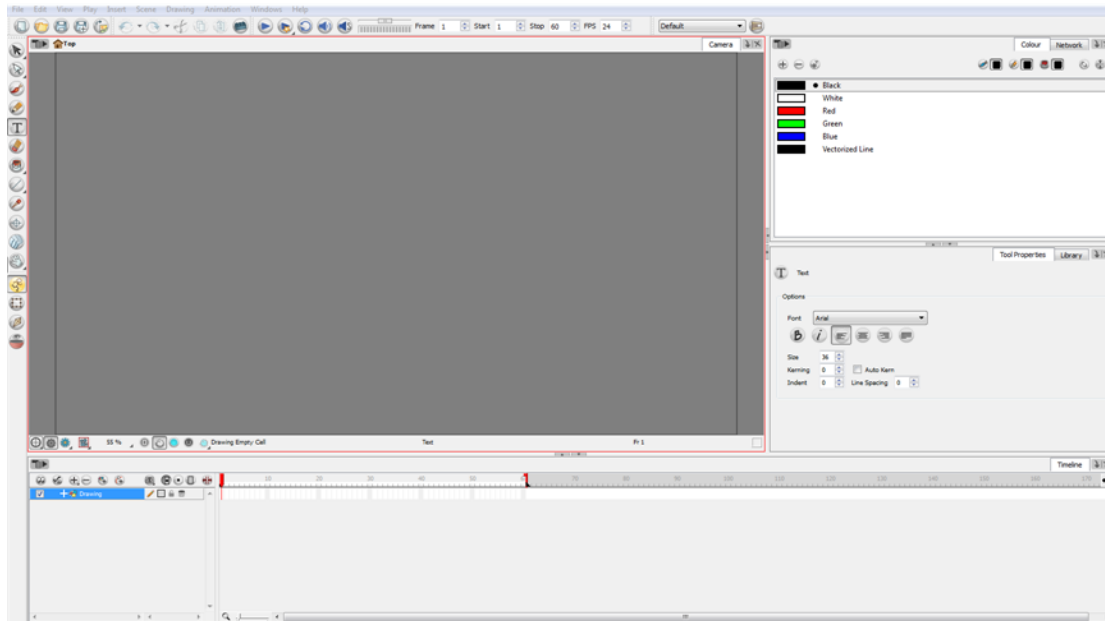


Knowing how to manage the Toon Boom Animate Pro interface helps you to work efficiently and organize your workspace conveniently. There are a series of views and toolbars you can use as you perform different operations. Each user has a preferred way of working in the interface and which views and toolbars they will use. In this chapter, you will learn about the main elements of the interface and how to manage them.

## Topics Covered

- [User Interface on the next page](#)
- [Managing the Views on page 108](#)
- [Managing the Toolbars on page 112](#)
- [Managing the Workspace on page 116](#)
- [Interface Navigation on page 121](#)
- [Preferences on page 71](#)

# User Interface



This section takes you through the most common elements of the User Interface. Throughout the user guide, you will learn about each view and toolbar and how and where to use them:

- [Views and Toolbars](#) below
- [Interface Highlights](#) on the facing page

## Views and Toolbars

Toon Boom Animate Pro has several views and toolbars. The Top toolbars are available at the top of the interface and the View toolbars are in individual windows. View toolbars are only shown if the particular view is displayed in the workspace.

This is a complete list of the views and toolbars available in Toon Boom Animate Pro.

<p><b>Views</b></p> <p><a href="#">Camera View</a> on page 80</p> <p><a href="#">Colour View</a> on page 100</p> <p><a href="#">Coordinates and Control Points View</a> on page 939</p> <p><a href="#">Drawing View</a> on page 133</p> <p><a href="#">Function View</a> on page 951</p> <p>Layer Properties View</p> <p><a href="#">Library View</a> on page 104</p>	<p><b>Top Toolbars</b></p> <p>Advanced Animation Toolbar</p> <p>Control Point Toolbar</p> <p>Coordinate Toolbar</p> <p>Deformation Toolbar</p> <p>Display Toolbar</p> <p>Easy Flipping Toolbar</p> <p>Edit Toolbar</p>
---	--

Message Log View

Model View

[Module Library View on page 1079](#)

[Network View on page 599](#)

[Perspective View on page 628](#)

Script Editor View

Side View

[Timeline View on page 89](#)

Tool Preset View

[Tool Properties View on page 88](#)

Top View

[Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## View Toolbars

Camera View Toolbar

Colour View Toolbar

Deformation Toolbar

Drawing View Toolbar

Model View Toolbar

Timeline View Toolbar

Xsheet View Toolbar

Network View Toolbar

File Toolbar

Flip Toolbar

Library Toolbar

Mark Drawing Toolbar

Onion Skin Toolbar

[Playback Toolbar on page 106](#)

Rendering Toolbar

Scripting Toolbar

Tools Toolbar

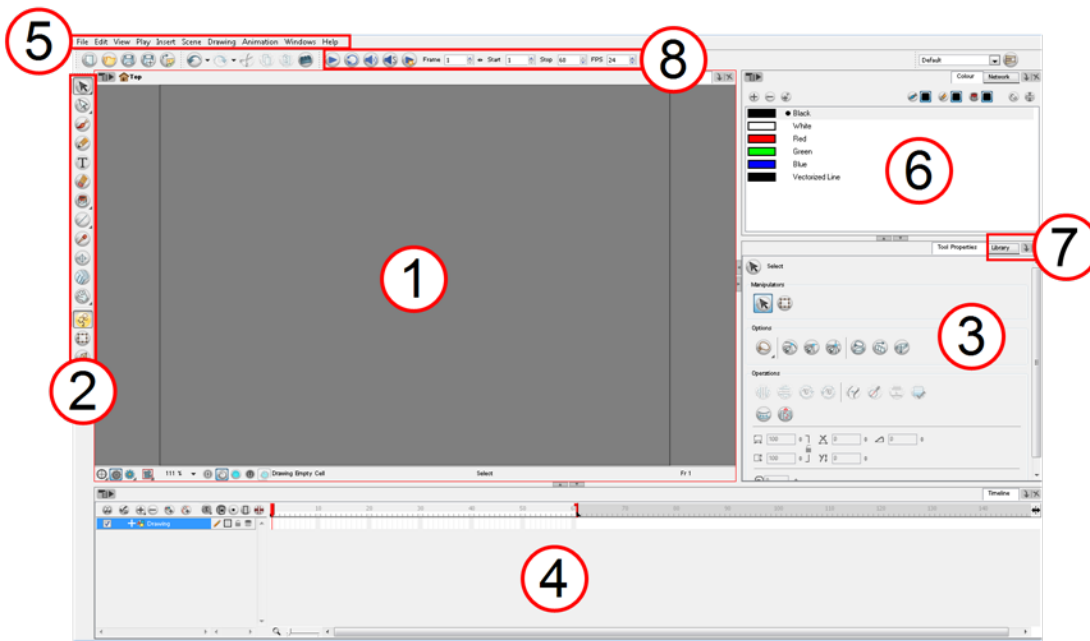
Tool Presets Toolbar

Workspace Toolbar

## Interface Highlights

It's important that you become familiar with the following elements of the user interface, this will help you to start using Toon Boom Animate Pro. You can learn more about the highlights described here, and how to use them in a production context, throughout this guide.

When you start Toon Boom Animate Pro for the first time, the default workspace is displayed. It contains all of the main elements you need to use.



1. [Camera View](#) below
2. [Tools Toolbar](#) on page 87
3. [Tool Properties View](#) on page 88
4. [Timeline View](#) on page 89
5. [Menus](#) on page 98
6. [Colour View](#) on page 100
7. [Library View](#) on page 104
8. [Playback Toolbar](#) on page 106

## Related Topics

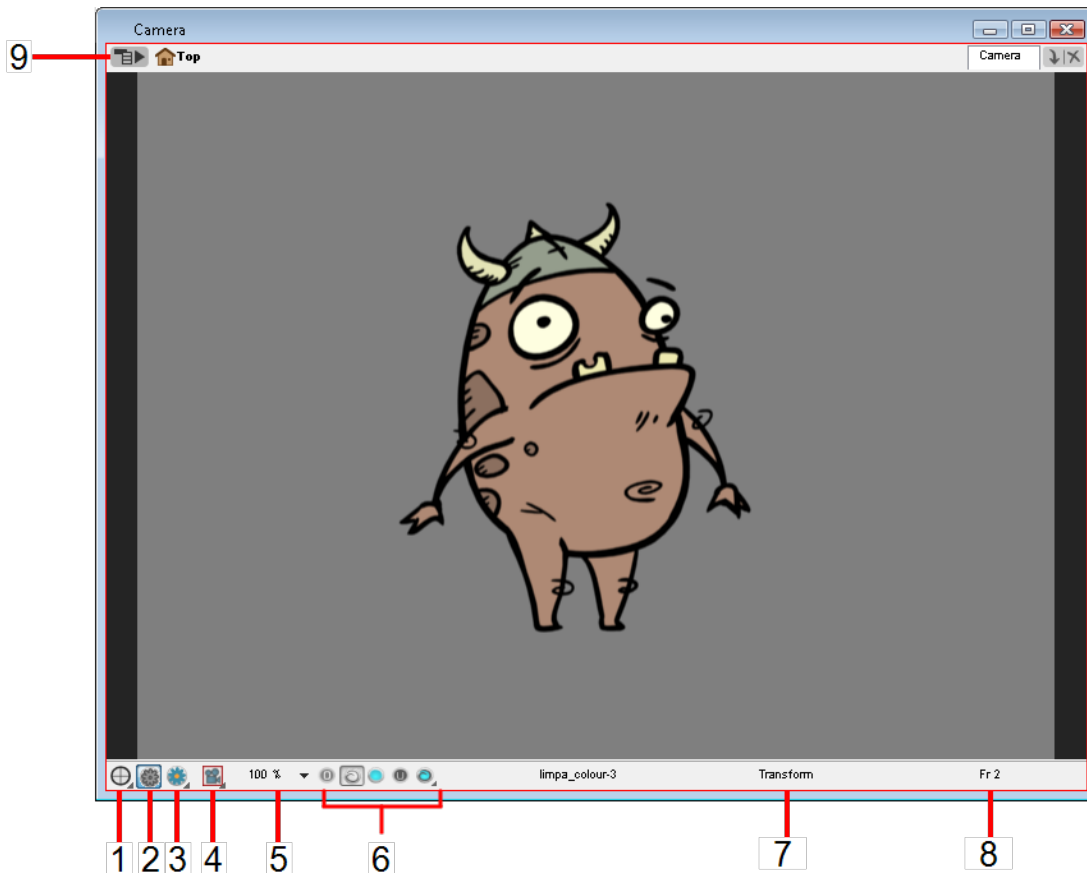
- [Managing the Workspace](#) on page 116
- [Managing the Views](#) on page 108

## Camera View

The Camera view is the centre of operations in Toon Boom Animate Pro. It is in this view that you will draw, paint, animate, create animation paths and see your results. You can also move through your symbol's hierarchy.


The Camera view has a top and bottom toolbar that you can use to either navigate in the view, change the display mode or go back up your symbols hierarchy.






1. [Update Preview](#) below
2. [OpenGL View Mode](#) on the next page
3. [Render View Mode](#) on the next page and [Matte View Mode](#) on page 83
4. [Camera View Options Menu](#) on page 83
5. [Zoom Drop-down Menu](#) on page 85 and [Toggle Quick Close-up](#) on page 86
6. [Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode](#) on page 86
7. [Drawing Name](#) on page 86
8. [Tool Name](#) on page 86
9. [Frame Number](#) on page 86
10. [Editing Stack Menu](#) on page 87

## Update Preview

The Update Preview  button lets you check the final look of your effects and fully antialiased image. When you click the button, Toon Boom Animate Pro calculates the current frame final image. It displays the result in the Render View Mode of the Camera view, it does not output an image.


## OpenGL View Mode



The OpenGL View Mode  button switches the Camera view to fast display, letting you see your animation play in real time. The OpenGL display requires less memory. The final look of your effects is not shown in the OpenGL View Mode. Switch to the Render View Mode to see your effects.

## Render View Mode




The Render View Mode  button switches the Camera view to a fully rendered display showing the final image of the current frame. If a modification is done to your current frame or if you move to a different frame, click on the **Update Preview** button to update the display.

Use the Render View Mode display to see the final look of your frames including effects and antialiasing. You cannot play back your scene in Render View Mode. To see your scene fully rendered and play it back, you must select **File > Export > Render Network** and enable the **Preview** option in the Render Network dialog box.


## Matte View Mode



The Matte View Mode  button switches the Camera view to a matte display showing the alpha channel of the elements in your scene. The transparency level ranges from 0 to 100 percent. Zero percent is completely transparent and represented by black and 100 percent is completely opaque and represented by white. Everything in between these extremes has a transparency level somewhere between 1 and 99 percent and is represented in various shades of grey.

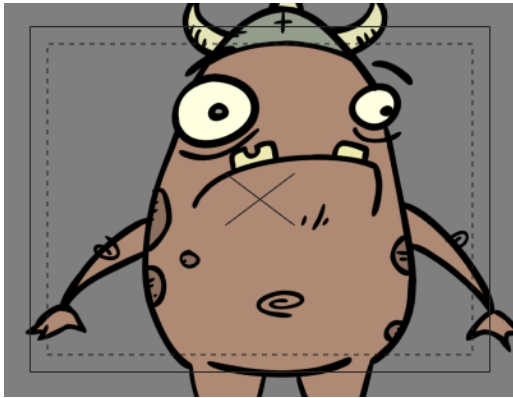
- ▶ To access the Matte View mode, click on the **Render View Mode**  button and select **Matte View** from the drop-down menu.


## Camera View Options Menu

The Camera View Option  menu contains several options related to the camera view display modes. Here are the options contained in the menu:

- Safe Area
- Camera Mask
- [BBox Selection Style on the next page](#)
- Outline Locked Drawings
- Current Drawing On Top
- Show Strokes
- Show Strokes with Colour Wash
- Light Table
- Reset View
- Reset Rotation

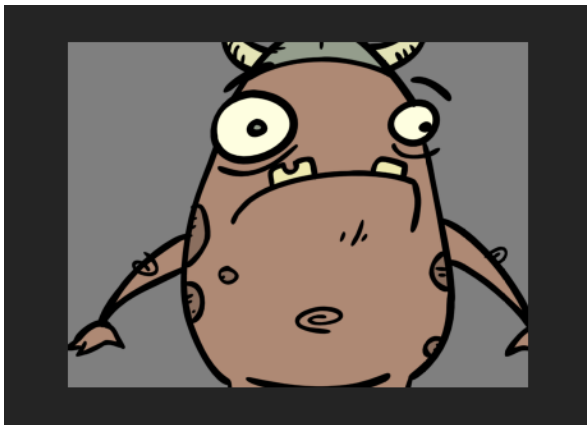
## Safe Area




The Safe Area  button shows or hides the TV safety zone and the centre of the camera frame. The Safe Area will adapt to the scene resolution as well as the safety zone and frame's centre.

You can also access this feature from the top menu by selecting **View > Show > Safe Area**.

## Camera Mask



The Camera Mask  button shows or hides a black mask around the scene's frame to avoid seeing the unnecessary artwork. This option is handy when you are animating and setting up the scene. It allows you to see your scene's composition better.

You can also access this feature from the top menu by selecting **View > Show > Camera Mask**.

## BBox Selection Style

Selecting an object in the Camera view with the Transform tool will make a bounding box appear around the object rather than causing the selected object to be tinted in fuchsia, red or yellow along with the bounding box.

## Outline Locked Drawings

Drawings that are locked in the Timeline view (cannot be selected in the Camera view) will be displayed as wire frames.

## Current Drawing On Top

If this option is enabled, the drawing that is being currently edited with a drawing tool will be temporarily displayed in front of all the other elements. The actual scene is not modified by this option.

## Show Strokes

When drawing with invisible lines such as with the Pencil tool and a line thickness with a value of "0", the invisible strokes will be displayed as thin blue lines and the tips of the strokes will be displayed as yellow squares which helps indicating where the strokes end and where there are gaps in the outline.


## Show Strokes with Colour Wash

When drawing with invisible lines such as with the Pencil tool and a line thickness with a value of "0", the invisible strokes will be displayed as thin blue lines and the tips of the strokes will be displayed as yellow squares which helps indicating where there are gaps in the outline. The drawing colours will also be washed out to make the invisible lines stick out better.


## Light Table

By default, while using a drawing tool in the Camera view, the layers that are not being edited are washed out. If the Light Table option is disabled, the drawings will all be displayed in normal colours even though they are not being edited.

## Reset View

The Reset View  button will reset any panning, zooming or rotation done in the Camera view and return the display to the initial settings or press [Shift] + [M].

## Reset Rotation

The Reset Rotation  button will reset any rotation done in the Camera view and return the display to the initial rotation settings or press [Shift] + [X].

## Zoom Drop-down Menu

The Zoom menu lets you enlarge or reduce the Camera or Drawing view display.



To make the camera frame size always match the size of your view, select the **Fit to View** option. Click the drop-down arrow and select a zoom level or press [1] and [2].

---






## Toggle Quick Close-up

Use the Magnifier tool to quickly center on the mouse position and zoom in to a pre-defined value such as 4X. Then you can zoom out again. Hold the shift key and press [Z] to zoom in and back out again. Replacing the Reset Zoom by pressing [Shift] + [Z].

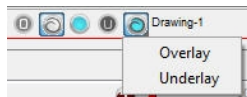


The area where you zoom in or out is dependent on the cursor location in the Camera view. If you zoom in and then move the cursor to a different location when you zoom out the mouse will be centered on that location.

## Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode

-  **Overlay:** Switches to the drawing's Overlay layer. This layer is located above the Line Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [:].
-  **Line Art:** Switches to the Line Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [L].
-  **Colour Art:** Switches to the Colour Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [L].
-  **Underlay:** Switches to the drawing's Underlay layer. This layer is located under the Colour Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [:].
-  **Preview mode:** Switches to Preview mode, so you can see both Line Art and Colour Art layers simultaneously. The default keyboard shortcut is [Shift] + [P].

You can display the Preview mode drop-down menu and select the Underlay and Overlay layers if you want to show all four of them at the same time.



## Drawing Name

The Drawing Name field displays the name of the selected drawing, as well as the layer containing it. If the cell does not contain any drawing, an **Empty Cell** text is shown in the field.

## Tool Name

The Tool Name field displays the name of the selected tool. If you override a tool using an overriding keyboard shortcut, the tool's name will be highlighted in red letters—see [Override Tool on page 243](#) to learn how to temporarily override a tool.

## Frame Number

The Frame Number field displays the number of the current frame.

## Editing Stack Menu

🏠 Top - 🗂️ lp\_head - 🗂️ lp\_mouth

The Editing Stack menu displays the names of the symbols and their hierarchy when you are editing a symbol. You can click on the different names to go back up to the different parent symbols or the top/current project.

### Related Topics

- [Interface Highlights on page 79](#)

## Tools Toolbar

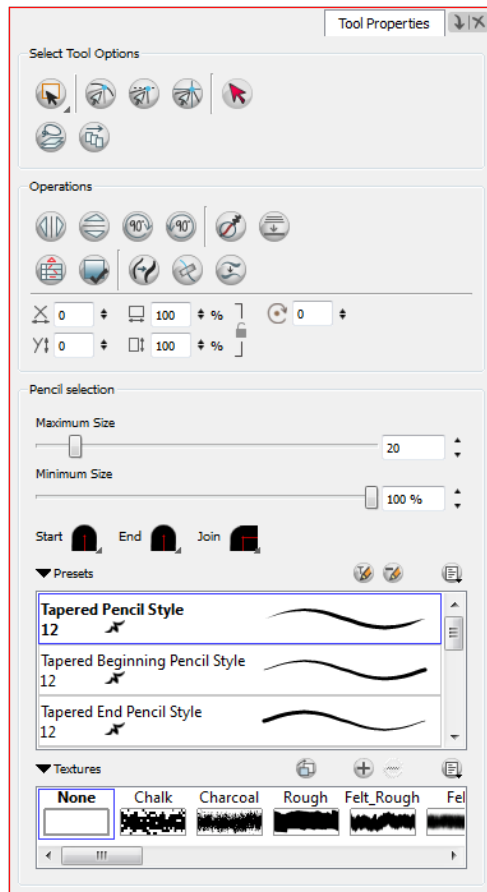


The Tools toolbar contains all of the main tools you will use while working in Toon Boom Animate Pro. In the default workspace, you will find this toolbar on the left-most side of the interface.


### Related Topics

- [Drawing on page 129](#)
- [Traditional Animation on page 257](#)
- [Colour on page 301](#)
- [Morphing on page 465](#)
- [Character Building on page 681](#)
- [Scene Setup on page 559](#)
- [Animation Paths on page 907](#)
- [Cut-out Animation on page 993](#)

## Tool Properties View



The contextual Tool Properties view contains the most common options and operations related to the currently selected tool. As soon as you select a tool from the Tools toolbar, the Tool Properties view will be updated.

For example, if you choose the Select  tool in the Tools toolbar, the Tool Properties view will display the options and operations related to the Select tool such as Snap to Contour, Apply to All Drawings, Flip Horizontal and Flatten.

### To open the Tool Properties view:

- ▶ Select **Windows > Tool Properties**.

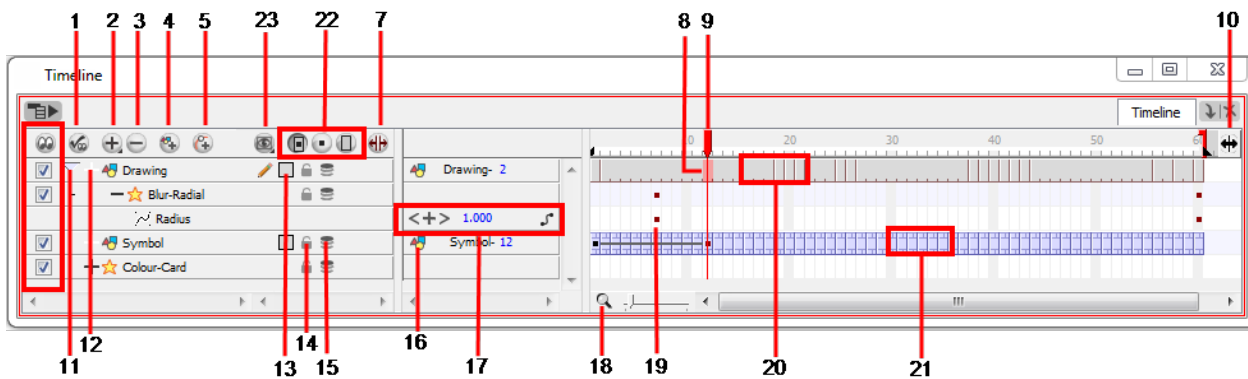


The content of the Tool Properties view is explained in detail in the following chapters:

- [Drawing](#) on page 129
- [Traditional Animation](#) on page 257
- [Colour](#) on page 301
- [Scene Setup](#) on page 559
- [Cut-out Animation](#) on page 993



## Timeline View




These are described later in this section.

1. [Enable/Disable All](#) on the next page
2. [Show Selection and Hide All Others](#) on the next page
3. [Add Layers](#) on page 91
4. [Delete Layers](#) on page 91
5. [Add Drawing Layer](#) on page 91
6. [Add Peg](#) on page 91
7. [Show/Hide Data View](#) on page 92
8. [Current Drawing Displayed](#) on page 92
9. [Current Frame](#) on page 92
10. [Split](#) on page 93
11. [Show/Hide Children](#) on page 93
12. [Show/Hide Functions](#) on page 93
13. [Change Track Colour](#) on page 93
14. [Lock/Unlock Layer](#) on page 94
15. [Onion Skin](#) on page 95
16. [Drawing Substitution](#) on page 95
17. [Keyframe Value](#) on page 96
18. [Zoom](#) on page 96
19. [Keyframe](#) on page 97
20. [Drawing Exposure](#) on page 97
21. [Symbol Exposure](#) on page 97
22. [Dragging and Pasting Modes](#) on page 97
23. [Timeline View Modes](#) on page 97

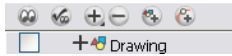
The Timeline view is the main view used when adjusting the timing of your drawings, connect effects and order your layers. The Timeline view displays the following:

- Layers
- Effects
- Sounds
- Keyframe Values
- Scene Length
- Layer Names
- Drawings
- Keyframes
- Timing
- Frames

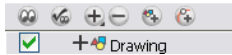
## Enable/Disable All

The Enable/Disable All  button is used to show or hide all your layers simultaneously.

To disable a particular layer, uncheck the layer's checkbox or press [D]



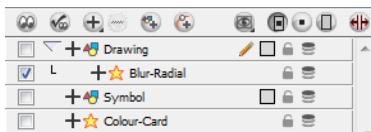
To enable a particular layer, place a checkmark (tick) the layer's checkbox or press [A].




When you disable a layer in the Timeline view, the corresponding column is hidden in the Xsheet view. When a column is hidden in the Xsheet view, the corresponding layer is disabled in the Timeline view.


---









## Show Selection and Hide All Others




The Show Selection and Hide All Others  button is used to show only the currently selected layer in the Timeline view and disable all the other layers.

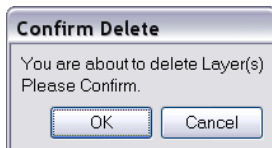
## Add Layers

The Add Layers  button is used to add new layers to the timeline. When you click on the Add Layers button, a drop-down menu will appear displaying the layer types available. You can add several different types of layers:


-  Camera
-  Colour-Card
-  Drawing
-  Group
-  Peg
-  Quadmap
-  Sound
- An effect layer made in Animate will appear with this symbol  when opened in Toon Boom Animate Pro.

## Delete Layers


The Delete Layers  button is used to delete the currently selected layers in the Timeline view. When you click on the Delete Layers button, a Confirm Delete dialog box appears. Click OK to delete the layers or Cancel to stop the operation.

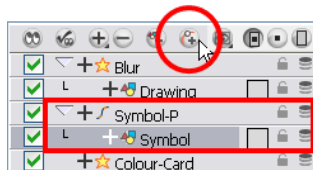


## Add Drawing Layer


The Add Drawing Layer  button is used to automatically add a new drawing layer to your timeline. By default, the layer is named **Drawing**.

## Add Peg

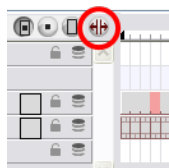
The Add Peg  button is used to add a peg layer to your timeline. There are several ways to use the Add Peg button. Refer to [Animation Paths on page 907](#) for more information about pegs and how to use them.



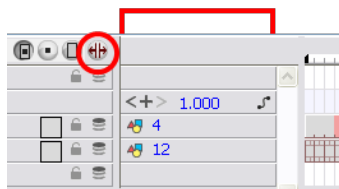
## Show/Hide Data View

The Show/Hide Data View  button is used to display the current frame's drawing exposure and keyframe values corresponding to each individual layer.

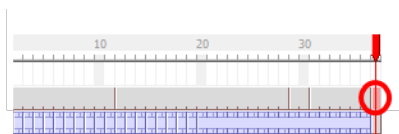
### Hidden Data View



### Visible Data View

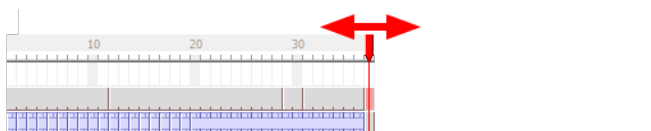


## Current Drawing Displayed



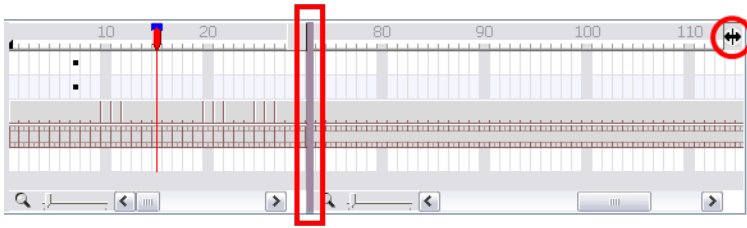
The drawing selected in red represents the drawing currently displayed and is linked to play head position.


## Current Frame



The red play head represents the current frame displayed and marked in the Playback toolbar. If you slide the play head to the left or the right it will scrub through your frames and update the Camera view display.


## Split



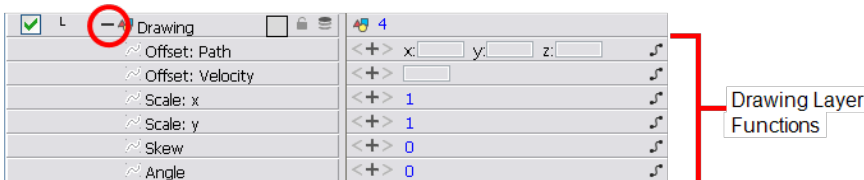
The Split  button is used to split the Timeline view in two sections allowing you to see two different portions of your Timeline view. This way, if your scene length is very long, you can see the beginning and the end at once.


## Show/Hide Children



The Show/Hide Children  button is used to display the children layers of a parent layer. Once a layer is parented to another layer, it is indented to the right and the Show/Hide Children button appears on the parent layer allowing you to show or hide the child layer.


## Show/Hide Functions

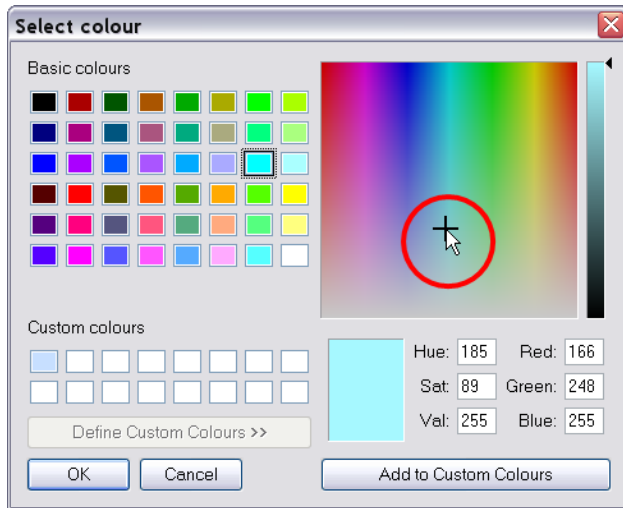


The Show/Hide Functions  button is used to display the functions embedded in each layer. The Functions are the different position and intensity information used to remember a layer's position, scale or rotation as well as an effect's look on each frame. This information is stored on the function curves using keyframes. Refer to [Animation Paths on page 907](#) for more information about the function layers.

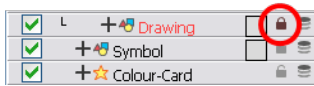
## Change Track Colour



The Change Track Colour  button is used to change the colour of the exposed frames, this helps you to quickly locate a layer in the Timeline view. Double-click on the swatch to open the picking window and choose a new colour.








## Lock/Unlock Layer



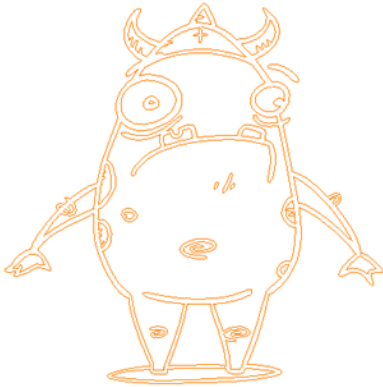
The Lock/Unlock Layer   button is used to prevent the selection or editing of a layer in the Camera view.

To select some of the layers without selecting others, in the Timeline view, lock the layers you do not want to select.

In the top menu, there are a series of locking options. Select **Animation > Lock > select one of the following actions**:

-  **Lock**  
This option locks the currently selected element.
-  **Unlock**  
This option unlocks the currently selected element.
-  **Lock All**  
This option locks all the elements in the Camera view.
-  **Unlock All**  
This option unlocks all the elements in the Camera view.
-  **Lock All Others**  
This option locks all the elements in the Camera view except the currently selected one.

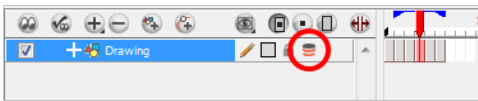
You can display the locked drawings as outlines in the Camera view if you want to quickly find out which drawings are locked.




To display locked drawings as outline:

1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences panel, go to the Camera tab.
3. In the Tools section, enable the **Show Locked Drawings As Outlines** option.



## Onion Skin

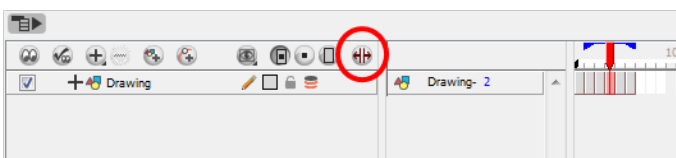



The Onion Skin  button is used to enable the Onion Skin option on a particular layer. If you want to see the previous and next frames of a specific layer, go to the Timeline view and click on the Onion Skin button for that particular layer. Blue arrows appear on both sides of the play head. Pull on these blue arrows to add more frames to the onion skin display.

To activate the general Onion Skin preview, in the Tools toolbar, click on the **Onion Skin**  button.

## Drawing Substitution

The Drawing Substitution  field is used to change the drawing exposed at the current frame. To access the Drawing Substitution field, you must first expand the Data view by clicking on the **Show/Hide Data View**  button.

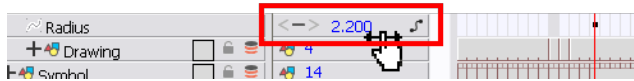



To change the current drawing either click and slide your cursor left or right when you see the hand  cursor, or double-click on the drawing name and type a new value.









The drawing exposure will be changed for the entire block it is exposed, not just the current frame.

## Keyframe Value



The Keyframe Value field is used to add, remove or modify a keyframe at the current frame. To access the Keyframe Value field, you must first expand the Data view by clicking on the **Show/Hide Data View**  button.

- To add a keyframe at the current frame, click on the **Add Keyframe**  button.
- To remove an existing keyframe at the current frame, click on the **Delete Keyframe**  button.
- To change the current keyframe, either click and slide your cursor left or right when you see the hand  cursor, or double-click on the keyframe value and directly type a new value.
- To navigate through the existing keyframes, click on the **Previous Keyframe**  and the **Next Keyframe**  buttons.
- To link your layer to an existing function or to create a new function, click on the **Show Function Menu**  button to display the drop-down Function menu.



Refer to [Modifying a Path in the Timeline View on page 947](#) to learn more about using the Data view and the Keyframe Value field.

## Zoom



The Zoom tool is used to increase or reduce the width of the frames in the Timeline view. Drag the cursor to the right to increase the width or to the left to reduce it. You can also press [1] and [2].



## Keyframe

A black square is displayed in the Timeline view when a keyframe exists. You are able to select these keyframes and drag them wherever you want on the timeline. You can also copy, cut and delete them.

- To delete a keyframe without deleting the drawing exposure, go to the Timeline view and select the keyframe to be deleted and then select **Animation > Delete Keyframes** from the top menu.

When a parent layer is collapsed and a child layer contains a keyframe, a white square will be displayed.

## Drawing Exposure



In the Timeline view, when a drawing is exposed, it is represented as a grey block. If the drawing is exposed for several frames, the block is extended. When a second drawing is exposed, a new grey block is displayed.

- The exposure's colour can be changed. To pick a new colour, double-click on the **Change Track Colour**  button in the corresponding layer.

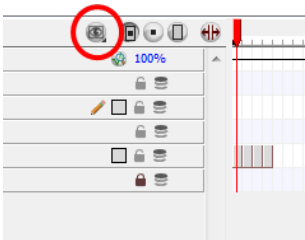
## Symbol Exposure



In the Timeline view, when a symbol is exposed it is represented as a small film frame. If the symbol is exposed for several frames, the film frame is extended. When a second symbol's frame is exposed, a new film frame is displayed.

## Timeline View Modes




To streamline the process of working with elements in the Timeline, there are three different view modes you can choose to work in. With each mode you select, certain elements may or may not be visible in the Timeline. Depending on your workflow, this can come in useful to quickly hide elements when you want to focus on specific ones. To select a view mode, use the drop down menu located in the Timeline view.



## Dragging and Pasting Modes

As you animate you will find that you may reuse a lot of positions, drawings and keys. However, you may only want to paste the drawings, or just the keys or maybe everything. There are different paste options available in the Timeline view which will give you the maximum flexibility when reusing and pasting.

There are three different modes for pasting your selection:

-  Paste Mode: All Drawing Attributes  
Pastes the drawing exposure and keyframes.
-  Paste Mode: Keyframes Only  
Pastes only the keyframes.
-  Paste Mode: Exposures Only  
Pastes only the drawing exposure.

Refer to [Copying and Pasting Animation](#) on page 1068

## Related Topics

- [Timing](#) on page 375
- [Character Building](#) on page 681
- [Scene Setup](#) on page 559
- [Animation Paths](#) on page 907
- [Cut-out Animation](#) on page 993
- [Effects](#) on page 1075

## Menus

You can access the commands from the following menus:

- [Top Menu](#) below
- [View Menu](#) on the facing page
- [Quick Access Menu](#) on page 100

## Top Menu

File Edit View Play Insert Scene Drawing Animation Windows Help

The top menu contains most of the commands. Depending on the view you are working in and the element, some commands are available and others not. The top menu is always located at the very top of the user interface.

The top menu contains the following categories:

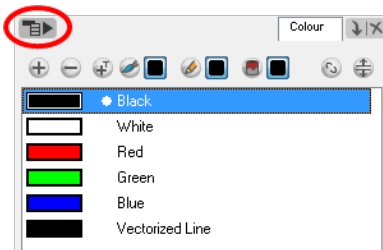
- File
- Edit
- View
- Play
- Insert
- Scene
- Drawing

- Animation
- Windows
- Help

In the Mac OS X version, there is a Animate Pro category containing the following commands:

- Preferences
- About
- Quit

## View Menu



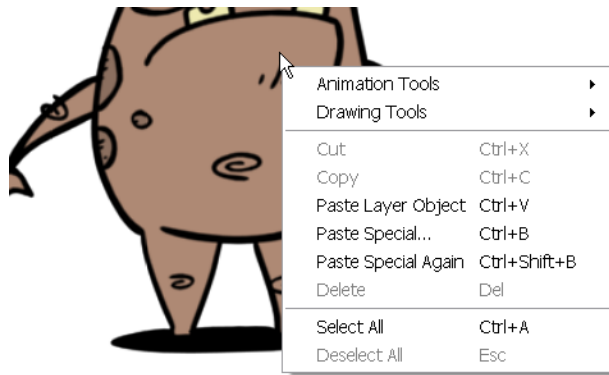
Some views have their own menu. These menus contain commands specifically related to that view.

You can find a View menu in the following views:

- Colour View
- Camera View
- Drawing View
- Function View
- Library View
- Model View
- Module Library View
- Network View
- Perspective View
- Script Editor View
- Side View
- Top View
- Xsheet View

To access the view menu, click on the **Menu**  button in the view's top left corner.

## Quick Access Menu

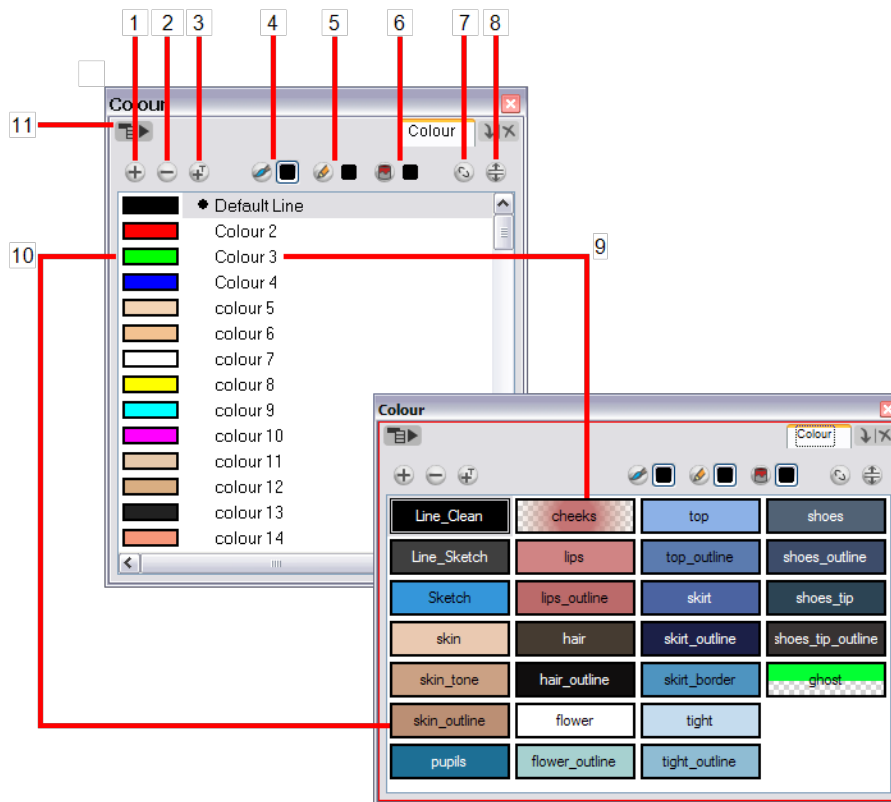


Each view has a Quick Access menu containing recurring actions. This menu is accessed by right-clicking anywhere in the view.

## Related Topics

- [Interface Highlights on page 79](#)

## Colour View



1. [Add Colour](#) on the facing page
2. [Remove Colour](#) on the blue page
3. [Add Texture](#) on page 102

4. [Set Current Brush Colour](#) on the next page
5. [Set Current Pencil Colour](#) on the next page
6. [Set Current Paint Colour](#) on page 103
7. [Link/Unlink Three Colours](#) on page 103
8. [Show/Hide Palette List View](#) on page 103
9. [Colour Swatch Name](#) on page 103
10. [Colour Swatch](#) on page 104
11. [Colour View Menu](#) on page 104

The Colour View is where you create colours and palettes and import existing palettes into your project. The Colour View is also necessary for drawing, painting and creating colour styling.


The Colour View has two display modes:

- List Mode
- Swatch Mode


**To toggle between the display modes:**

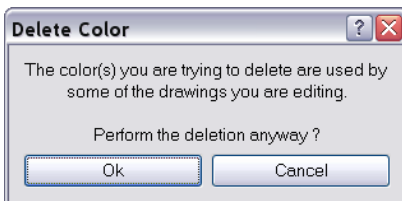
1. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Swatch Mode**.
  - Enable the option to display the swatches.
  - Disable the option to display the colour list.

## Add Colour

The Add Colour  button is used to add a colour swatch to your palette. Click on the Add Colour button to add a new swatch to the bottom of your colour list.

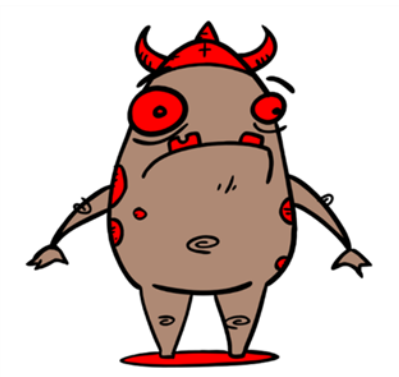
## Remove Colour

The Remove Colour  button is used to delete the currently selected colour swatches. If the colour swatch is used in your project, the Delete Colour dialog box will pop and will ask you to confirm the operation.

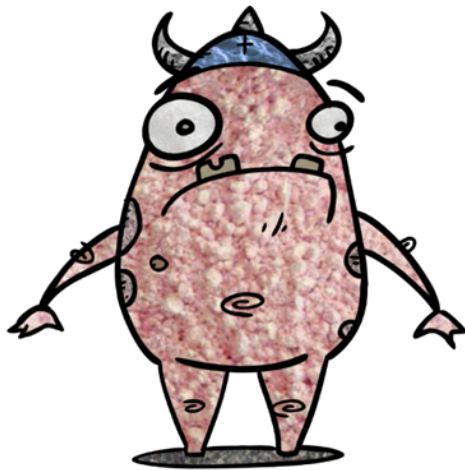



- Click **OK** to confirm the operation or **Cancel** to cancel it.

Zones painted with colour swatches which have been deleted will turn red, easily identifying them so you can repaint them with another colour swatch.





## Add Texture









The Add Texture  button is used to add a bitmap colour swatch to your palette. Use this to load photos and textures and paint your drawings with it. The bitmap image must be a TGA or PSD file format.



## Set Current Brush Colour

The Set Current Brush Colour  button is used to set the currently selected colour swatch as the colour used by the Brush  tool. If you select a new colour in the Colour view while using the Brush tool, the Set Current Brush Colour swatch will be updated.

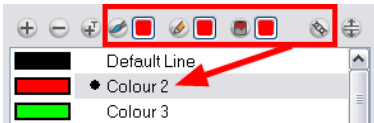
## Set Current Pencil Colour


The Set Current Pencil Colour  button is used to set the currently selected colour swatch as the colour used by the Pencil , Polyline , Ellipse , Rectangle  and Line  tools. If you select a new colour in the Colour view while using any of these tools, the Set Current Pencil Colour swatch will be updated.

## Set Current Paint Colour

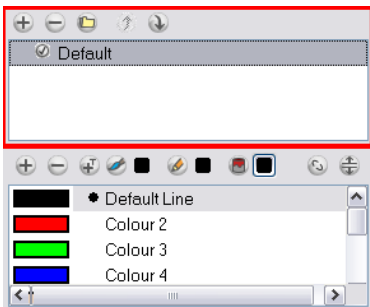
The Set Current Paint Colour  button is used to set the currently selected colour swatch as the colour used by the Brush  tool. If you select a new colour in the Colour view while using the Paint tool, the Set Current Paint Colour swatch will be updated.


## Link/Unlink Three Colours



The Link/Unlink Three Colours  button is used to link the Set Current Brush Colour, Set Current Pencil Colour and Set Current Paint Colour swatches to the currently selected colour swatches in the Colour view.

## Show/Hide Palette List View



The Show/Hide Palette List View  button is used to display the Palette List view in the Colour view. This option is for the advanced user who wants to create colour palettes for their props and characters.

## Colour Swatch Name

	Skin
	Teeth
	Horns
	Helmet

Each colour swatch available in the Colour view can have its own name, making it easy to identify which colour is used to paint what part of your character or background.




Two colours can have the same name.

## Colour Swatch



A colour swatch is a specific colour used to paint a certain zone of a character or background. Colour palettes are composed of colour swatches. They can also be called colour pots. When you paint a zone with a colour swatch, the zone is linked to the swatch. So if you update the swatch's tint, the zone will be updated along with it. This allows you to modify your animation colours even after it is completely painted.

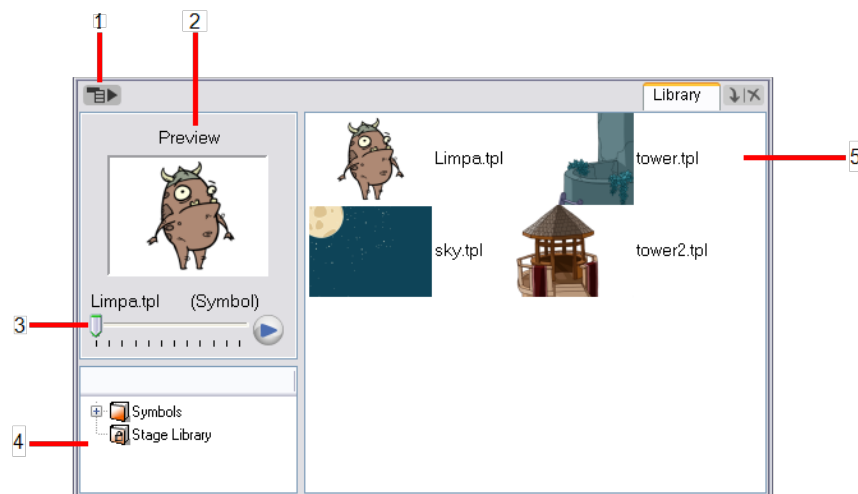
## Colour View Menu

The Colour View  menu allows you to access commands that are specifically related to the Colour view such as creating new palettes, adding new colour swatches and displaying the Tint panel. The commands listed in the Colour View menu can also be found following a similar path from the top menu categories Colours and Palettes.

## Related Topics

- [Colours on page 304](#)

## Library View



1. [Library View Menu](#) on the facing page
2. [Preview Window](#) on the facing page
3. [Preview Playback](#) on the facing page
4. [Library Folder List](#) on the facing page
5. [Template/Symbol List](#) on the facing page

The Library view is used to store elements such as animation, drawings, backgrounds and puppets to reuse them in your different projects. You also use the Library view to create and store your symbols.




To reuse an element in another project, you must create a template out of your drawings. A template is a mini scene that you import in your other project. A template has no link to the original scene. When you create a template, the full content of your selection is copied in the template.

When you are creating a series of layers all using the same drawings or building puppets, you will create symbols. These can be used as drawing containers when you are creating puppets so that you can store different mouth shapes or hands to use while animating. You can also use symbols when you are building props, such as a skateboard and you want to use the same wheel drawing for the four skateboard wheels.



Refer to [Library on page 643](#) to learn more about using the library, symbols and templates in context.


## Library View Menu

The Library View  menu allows you to access commands that are specifically related to the Library view such as importing SWF movies and Illustrator files, adding a new folder and refreshing the library's content.

## Preview Window

The Preview window is used to see the content of the currently selected template or symbol in the Template/Symbol list.

## Preview Playback

The Preview Playback button is used to play back the content of the selected template or symbol if it contains more than one frame. Press the Play  button to play back the preview.

## Library Folder List

The Library Folder List displays all of the folders linked to the Library view. There are two default folders:

- **Symbols**  
The Symbols folder is the only folder containing symbols. The user can organize it by adding subfolders inside.
- **Animate Pro Library**  
The Animate Pro Library folder is a default library found on the hard drive in the user's documents. This folder can contain templates, but no symbols.

The user can link new library folders to the Library view and organize them with subfolders.

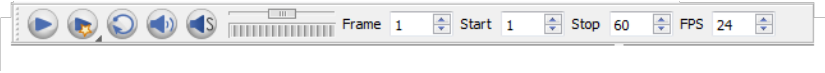
## Template/Symbol List

The Template/Symbol list displays the templates or symbols contained in the selected library folder. If you right-click, you can display the templates and symbols' thumbnails by selecting **View > Thumbnails**.






## Related Topics

- [Library on page 643](#)

## Playback Toolbar

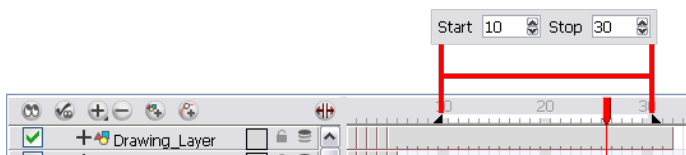


Use it to play back your animation and sound. Use it to scrub your sound to create your lip-sync, looping your playback, navigating through your frames, change the playback range and speed.

- Click on the **Play**  button to play and stop the animation. You can also do this from the top menu by selecting **Play > Play Scene Forward** or **Stop**.
- Click on the **Loop**  button to repeat your playback indefinitely. Or do this from the top menu by selecting **Play > Loop**.
- Click on the **Sound**  button to enable sound in the playback. Or do this from the top menu by selecting **Play > Enable Sound**.
- Click on the **Sound Scrubbing**  button to enable sound scrubbing in the play back. Or do this from the top menu by selecting **Play > Enable Sound Scrubbing**.
- Click on the **Render and Play**  button to create a render of your scene to play back the final result including the effects.
- Scroll through the playback's frames using the Jog Frames right and left arrows.



- To change the playback frame range enter new values in the Start and Stop fields.




- Enter a new value in the **FPS** field to change the speed of the playback.



## Play Menu

Select any of the following from the top menu Play heading:

- **First Frame** jumps to the first frame. You can also press [**<**].
- **Next Frame** jumps to the frame after the currently selected frame in the Timeline view. You can also press [**.**].

- **Last Frame** jumps the last frame. You can also press [>].
- **Previous Frame** jumps to the frame before the frame currently selected in the Timeline view. You can also press [,].
- **Go to Frame** or use the **Go**  button, which can be added to the Timeline View toolbar through the Toolbar Manager. Open the Go to Frame dialog box so you can type in the frame number to jump to.
- **Enable Playback** view from either the Top, Side or Perspective views.

# Managing the Views

The Toon Boom Animate Pro user interface is composed of different views, each one designed for a specific purpose. This section explains how you can modify the location and accessibility of the views by adding a new view as a tab or as a window, you can also swap the view locations around.



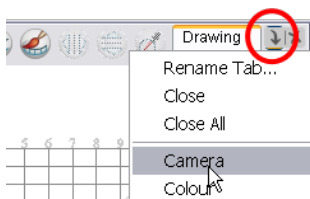
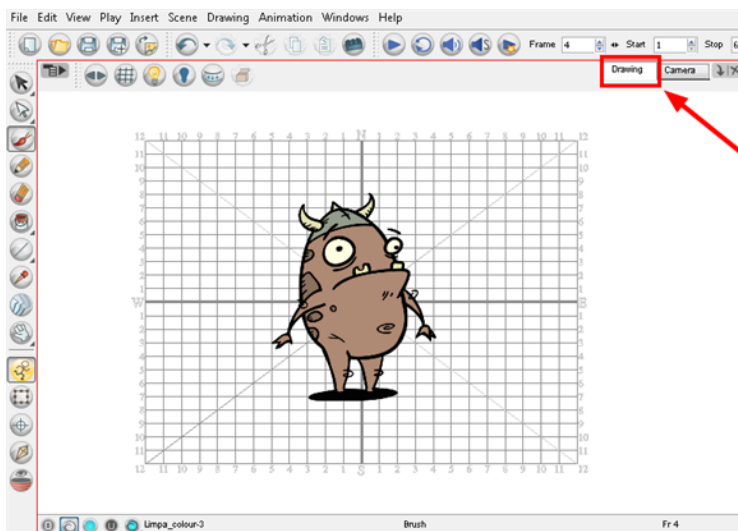
Workspace modifications are automatically saved when you exit the application unless you disabled the Automatically Save Workspace preference in the Preferences panel.

- [Adding a New View](#) below
- [Closing a View](#) on the facing page
- [Swapping Views](#) on the facing page
- [Resizing a View](#) on page 110

## Adding a New View

To add a view:

1. Select the view you want to add from **Windows** > *The desired view*.

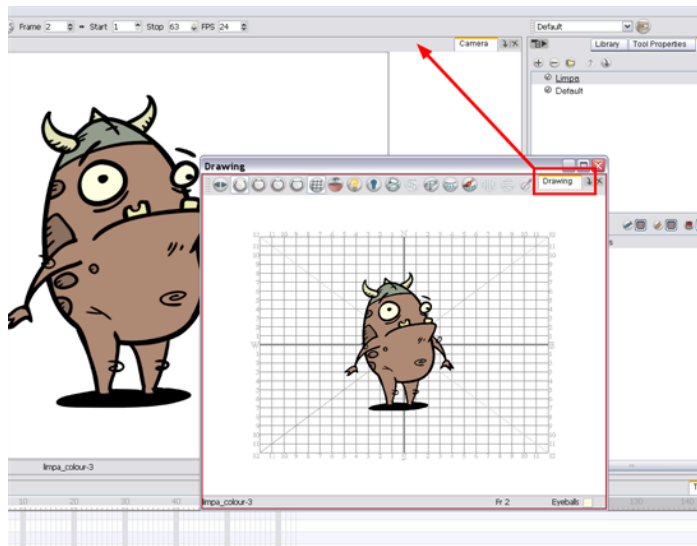


You can also use the Window drop-down menu button included in each view already available in the workspace. Click on the button and select a view from the list. You can only open one instance of the

same view. In other words, you cannot have two Camera views open at the same time.



You can open several instances of the same view except for the Timeline, Tool Properties, Colour and Drawing views.

2. To dock a floating window in your workspace, drag the window's tab onto one of the workspace's views.



## Closing a View

To close a view:

1. In the view to close, click on the **Close View**  button.
  - ▶ If you have several tabs in the same window, hold [Shift] down and click on the **Close View**  button to close all tabs together.

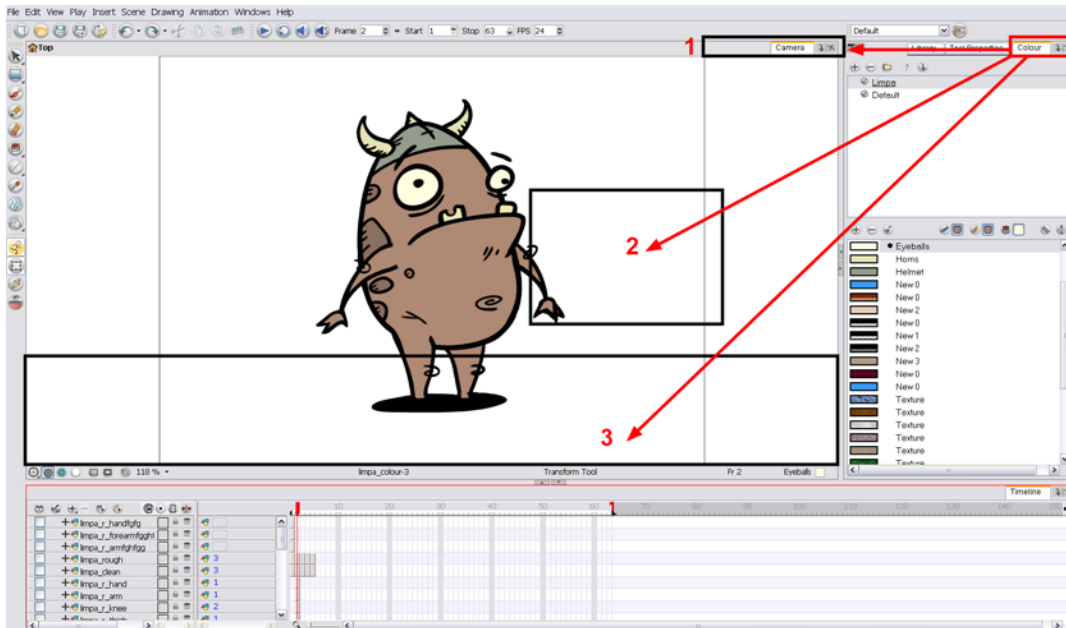


## Swapping Views

With Animate Pro, you can easily swap views around.

To swap views around:

1. Select the view tab and drag it onto one of the view's separators, top area or onto another view's tab.
2. When a rectangle outline appears showing an available location for the view, release the mouse button and drop the view tab into position. One of three things will happen:



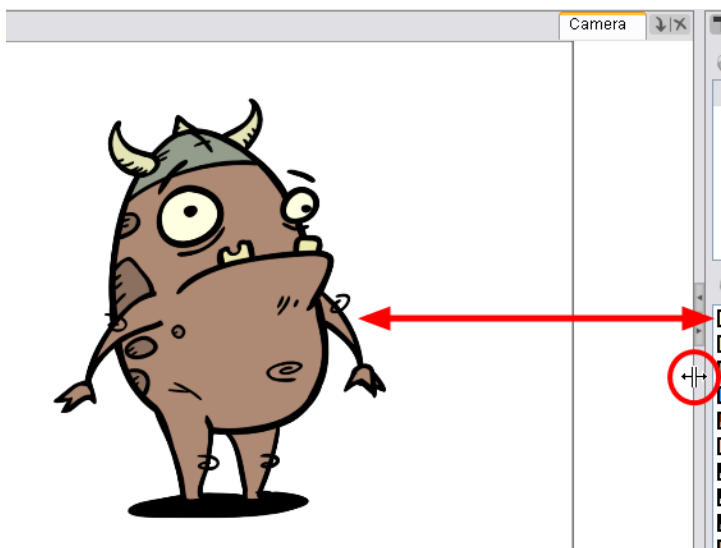
- 1. The view becomes a tabbed window.
- 2. The view becomes a floating window.
- 3. The view becomes a new docked window.

## Resizing a View

To change the width and height of the views in the workspace, drag the side of the view.

To resize a view:

1. In the interface, position your cursor on the edge of the view you want to resize.
2. When you see the Resizing  $\pm$  cursor, click and drag the side of the window to the desired width or height.



You can also temporarily hide a view to get more working space.

**To temporarily hide a view:**

1. On the edge of the window you want to hide click on the **Collapse/Expand** button. The view is compressed and only the Collapse/Expand button is visible.
2. Click on the same **Collapse/Expand** button to display the view again.

**Related Topics**

- [Managing the Toolbars on the next page](#)
- [Managing the Workspace on page 116](#)

# Managing the Toolbars

The Toon Boom Animate Pro user interface contains toolbars which, by default, are located at the top of the interface. Some of the workspace's views also have their own toolbars. These toolbars can be moved around. You can reposition the toolbars to suit your work style or hide unused ones.

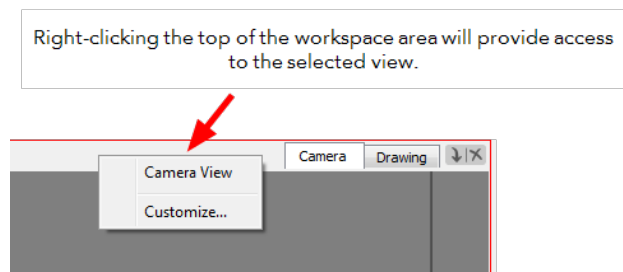
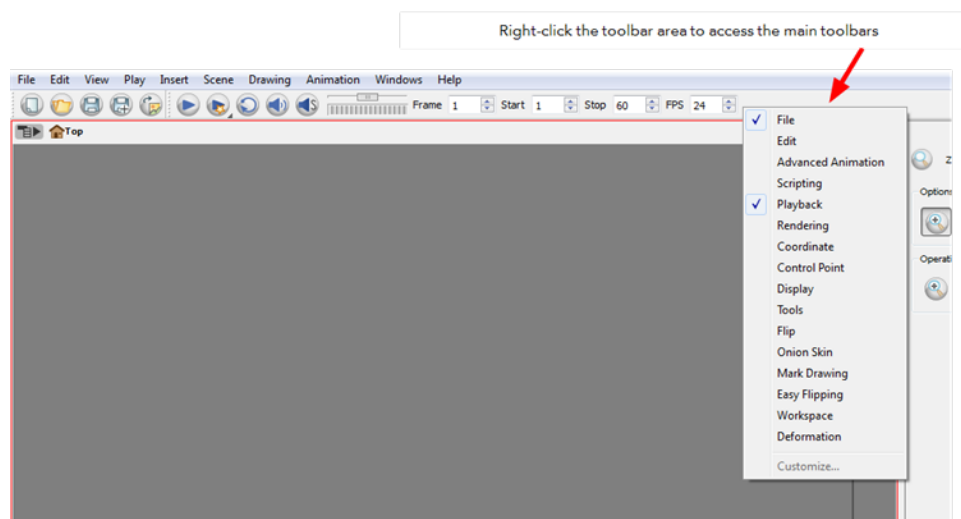
- [Showing or Hiding Toolbars](#) below
- [Moving Toolbars](#) on the facing page
- [Flat Tool Toolbar Preference](#) on the facing page
- [Toolbar Manager](#) on page 114

## Showing or Hiding Toolbars

To show or hide a toolbar:

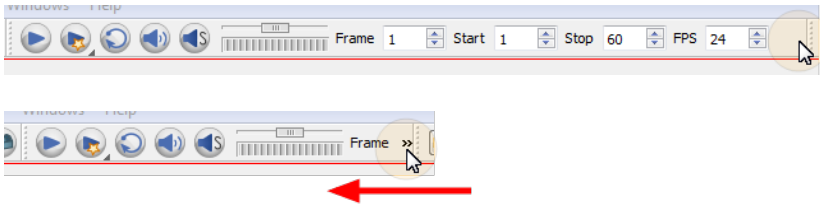
- ▶ Select **Windows > Toolbars > the desired toolbar**.

You may right-click anywhere in the toolbar area to access Toon Boom Animate Pro toolbars. View toolbars, however, are not available by right-clicking the toolbar area. You can access the toolbar of any open and active view by right-clicking in the workspace area.



You may also hide a portion of a toolbar by dragging another open toolbar over its tail-end.




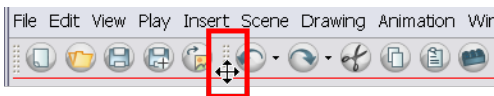


The Toolbar menu only contains the View toolbars of the views that are open in the workspace. As you show or hide views in your workspace, the Toolbar menu will update.

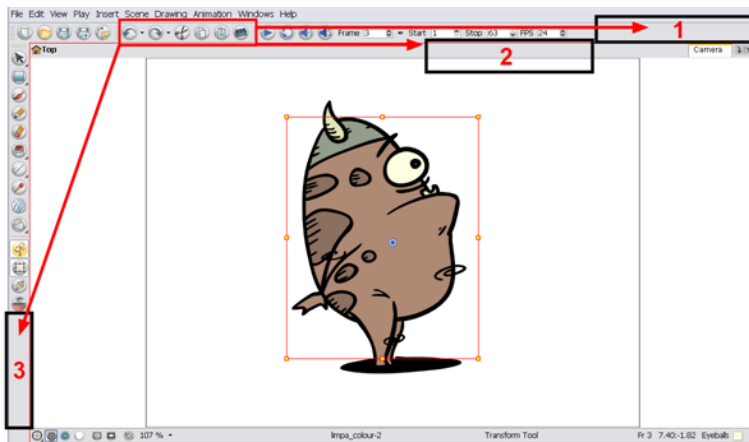
## Moving Toolbars

To move a toolbar:

1. Select the toolbar you want to move by clicking on its anchor point  and dragging it into a view toolbar area or another position in the top or side interface toolbar area.



2. When a rectangle outline appears showing an available location for the toolbar, release the mouse button and drop the toolbar into position.

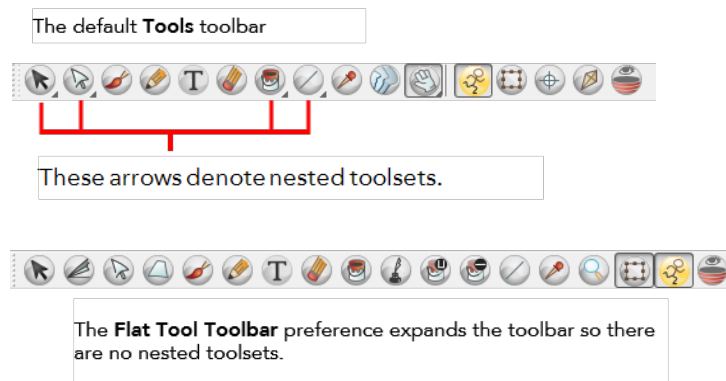


- ▶ 1. Dock to the top toolbar area.
- ▶ 2. Move a toolbar down a row.
- ▶ 3. Dock to the left toolbar area.

## Flat Tool Toolbar Preference

By checking on this option you can expand the toolbar so that there are no nested toolsets in the toolbar. When you check this option you will need to close Animate Pro and relaunch it for the new interface to be displayed. A

default set of tools will appear in the toolbar. However, you can customize which tool icons appear in the toolbar to fit your own work pattern.



### To use the Flat Tool Toolbar:

1. Open the Preferences window, **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X) and click on the General tab.
2. Enable the **Flat Tool Toolbar** preference by clicking on its checkbox.
3. Click on the **OK** button to apply the change.
4. Save your work and close Toon Boom Animate Pro.
5. Relaunch Toon Boom Animate Pro. You will notice that the Tools toolbar has changed and no longer contains nested tools.

If the default toolbar does not contain the tools you require, you can custom-build the toolbar.

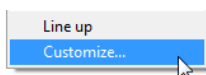
Once you have enabled the Flat Tool Toolbar preference, you can customize the tools which appear in the toolbar. This means that you can change the default set of tools and replace the tools which you use less frequently with ones which are used more often. This customizing is done through the Toolbar Manager.

## Toolbar Manager


The View toolbars can be customized to contain your favourite tools and options. Use the Toolbar Manager window to organize your different toolbars to suit your working preferences.

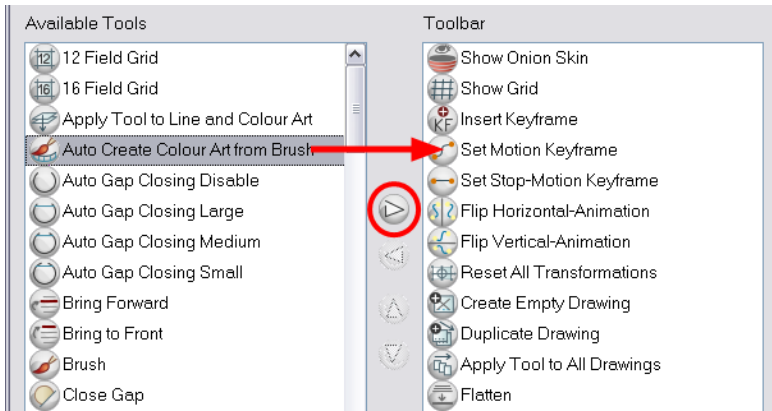
### To customize your toolbars:

1. In the chosen view, right-click on any button in the toolbar where you wish to add or subtract a new button.
2. From the pop-up menu, select **Customize**.

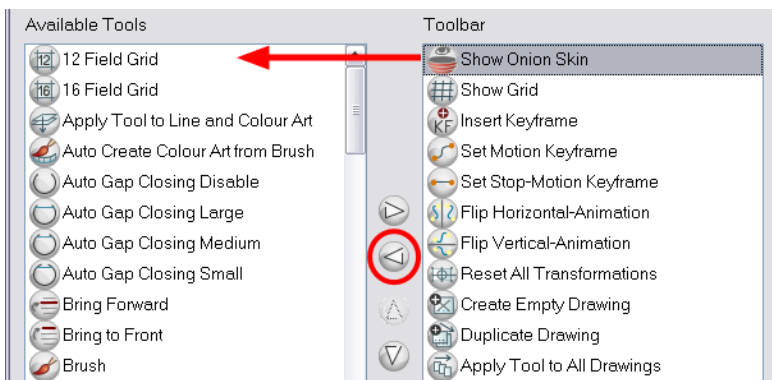


The Toolbar Manager window opens.

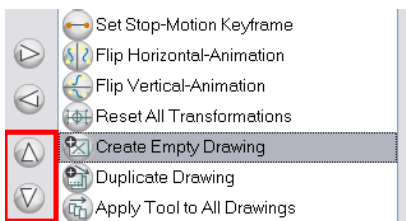
3. To add a new icon to your toolbar, select the tool or command from the Available Tools list and click on the **Right Arrow**  button to switch it to the Toolbar list.



- To remove an icon from your toolbar, select the tool or command in the Toolbar list and click on the **Left Arrow** button to switch to the Available Tools list.



- To reorder your icons in your toolbar, select the command to be moved in the Toolbar list and click on the **Up** or **Down** buttons to move it to the correct location.



- Click on the **OK** button when you are finished.

## Related Topics

- [Managing the Workspace on the next page](#)
- [Managing the Views on page 108](#)

# Managing the Workspace

Toon Boom Animate Pro's user interface is composed of several views. You can customize your workspace to suit your working preferences, save it as a new workspace, and load it from the Workspace toolbar.

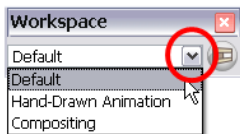
- [Loading a Workspace below](#)
- [Workspace Manager below](#)
- [Restoring the Default Workspaces on page 120](#)

## Loading a Workspace

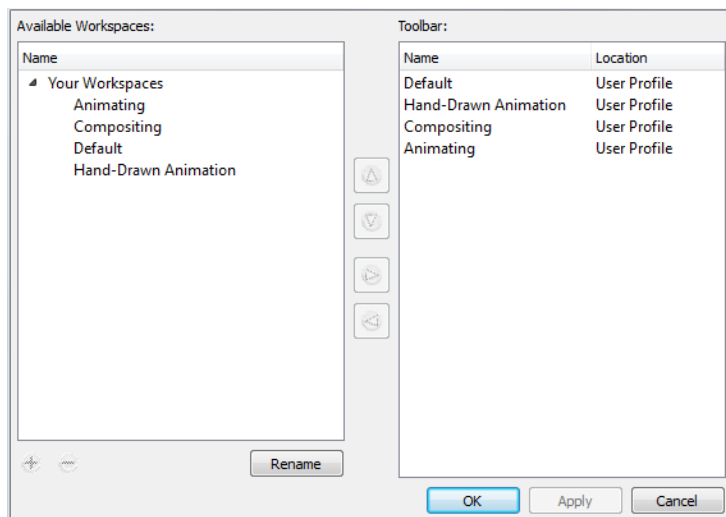
The first time you open Toon Boom Animate Pro, the default workspace is loaded. Other workspaces are available such as the Hand-Drawn Animation and the Compositing workspaces, these display different views and toolbars. You can access these workspaces and any you create, from the Windows menu and the Workspace toolbar.

**To load a workspace:**


1. In the top menu, select **Windows > Workspace > Workspace** or click on the drop-down arrow in the Workspace toolbar and select a workspace from the list.



## Workspace Manager



**To open the Workspace Manager:**

- In the Workspace toolbar, click on the  button.
- In the top menu select **Windows > Workspace > Workspace Manager**.

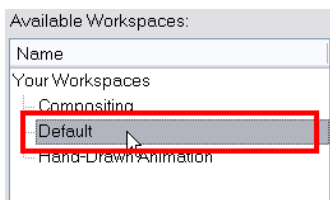
The Workspace Manager allows you to modify, create, delete, rename and reorder your workspaces.


- [Creating a New Workspace](#) below
- [Renaming a Workspace](#) on the next page
- [Saving a Workspace](#) on the next page
- [Deleting a Workspace](#) on page 119
- [Showing and Hiding a Workspace](#) on page 119
- [Reordering the Workspace List](#) on page 120

## Creating a New Workspace

To create a new workspace:

1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. In the Available Workspaces list, select an existing workspace.



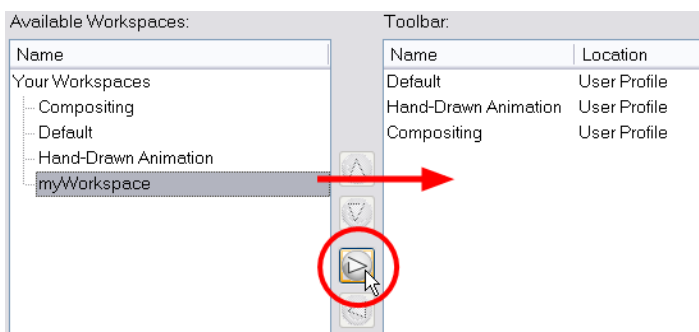
3. At the bottom of the Available Workspaces list, click on the **Add**  button to add a workspace.



4. Select the new workspace option, then click on the **Rename** button and give it a new name.



5. Select the new workspace and click on the **Right Arrow**  button to send it to the Workspace toolbar.

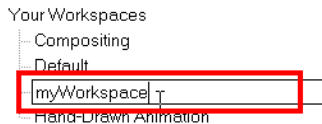


6. Click on the **OK** button.

## Renaming a Workspace

To rename a workspace:

1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. Choose the workspace to be renamed from the list.
3. Double-click on the workspace to be renamed or click on the **Rename** button. This allows you to edit the name.



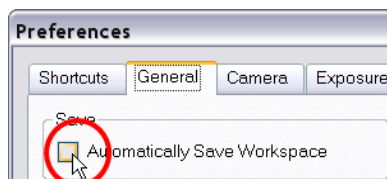
4. Type in the new name of the workspace.
5. Press the [Enter/Return] key to validate the name.
6. Click on the **OK** button.

## Saving a Workspace


By default, when you modify the look of a workspace, it is automatically saved. If you prefer to keep your workspaces as they are and only save the modifications when you really want to, you have to disable the Automatically Save Workspace preference.

To disable the Automatically Save Workspace preference:


1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X) to open the Preferences panel.
2. Go to the **General** tab.
3. In the **Save** section, disable the **Automatically Save Workspace** preference.



4. Press the **OK** button.

The **Save Workspace**  button appears in the **Workspace** toolbar.

To save a workspace manually:

1. In the **Workspace** toolbar, click on the **Save Workspace**  button.

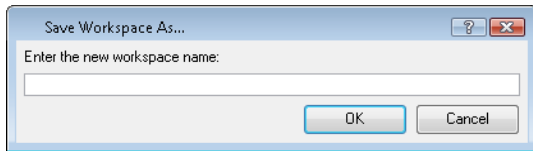
You can also select **Windows > Workspace > Save Workspace**.

You can save your workspace as a new version to avoid over-writing the current one.

To save your workspace as a new version:

1. Select **Windows > Workspace > Save Workspace As**.


The **Save Workspace As** dialog box opens.

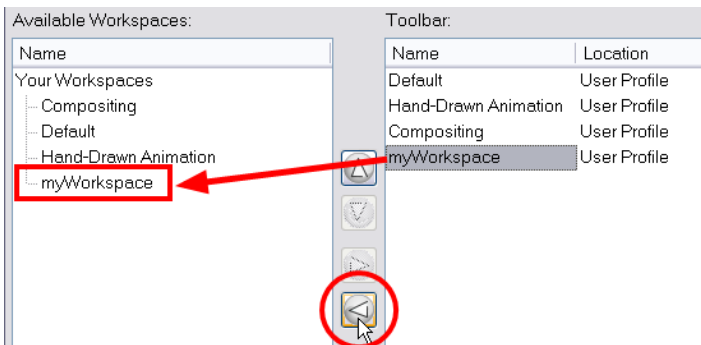



2. In the text field, enter the new workspace name.
3. Click on the **OK** button to validate.

## Deleting a Workspace

### To delete a workspace:


1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. In the Workspace Manager, select the workspace to be deleted and click on the **Left Arrow**  button to send it to the Available Workspaces list.




3. Select the workspace in the Available Workspaces list then click on the **Delete**  button to delete the workspace.
4. Click on the **OK** button.

## Showing and Hiding a Workspace

### To show a workspace:

1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. In the Available Workspaces list, select the workspace to be displayed and click on the **Right Arrow**  button to send it to the Workspace toolbar.
3. Click on the **OK** button.



### To hide a workspace:

1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. In the Workspace Manager, select the workspace to be hidden and click on the **Left Arrow**  button to send it to the Available Workspaces list.
3. Click on the **OK** button.

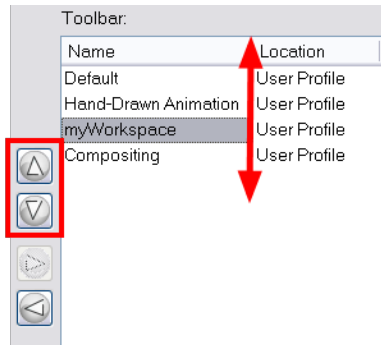
If you do not want to modify the current workspace, use the Workspace Manager to create another one and then modify that one.

## Reordering the Workspace List

To reorder workspaces:

1. Open the Workspace Manager.
2. In the Workspace toolbar, select the workspace to be reordered and click on the **Up**  or **Down** 

buttons to move it up or down.



3. Click on the **OK** button.

## Restoring the Default Workspaces

You can restore modified workspaces to their original default layout.

To restore the default workspaces:

- ▶ In the top menu select **Windows > Restore Default Workspace**.

### Related Topics

- [Managing the Views](#) on page 108
- [Managing the Toolbars](#) on page 112



# Interface Navigation


Toon Boom Animate Pro supports zoom in, zoom out, rotate, pan and reset view position for easy interface navigation.

- **Zoom In:** Zooms into the view. From the top menu, select **View > Zoom In** or press [2].
- **Zoom Out:** Zooms out of the view. From the top menu, select **View > Zoom Out** or press [1].
- To zoom in and zoom out, hold down [Spacebar] and your middle mouse button while moving the mouse up or down.
- To pan the view, hold down the keyboard shortcut [Spacebar] and drag your mouse in the direction you want to pan the view.
- **To Recentre the view:** recentres the view on your mouse cursor or press [N].
- **Reset View:** Resets the view to its default position. From the top menu, select **View > Reset View** or press [Shift] + [M].
- **Reset Rotation:** Resets the view's rotation to its default position. From the top menu, select **View > Reset Rotation** or press [Shift] + [X].
- **Reset Pan:** Resets the view's pan to its default position. From the top menu, select **View > Reset Pan** or press [Shift] + [N].
- **Reset Zoom:** Resets the view's zoom to its default position. From the top menu, select **View > Reset Zoom**.
- **Toggle Full Screen:** Enlarges the selected view to full screen. The full screen process is done in three stages. From the top menu, select **View > Toggle Full Screen** or press [Ctrl] + [F] (Windows) or [⌘] + [F] (Mac OS X).
  - First, the selected view enlarges to the maximum width or height, but keeps the tool views such as Colour or Tool Properties view.
  - Second, the view enlarges to full screen.
  - Third, the view returns to its original size.
- **Rotate 90 CW:** Rotates the Camera view 90 degrees clockwise, like an animation table. From the top menu, select **View > Rotate View CW**.
- **Rotate 90 CCW:** Rotates the Camera view 90 degrees counter-clockwise, like an animation table. From the top menu, select **View > Rotate View CCW**.

## Related Topics

- [Zoom below](#)

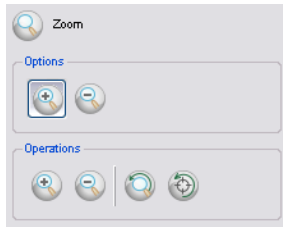
## Zoom

From the Tools toolbar, use the Zoom  tool to zoom in and zoom out in the Camera or Drawing view.


- The keyboard shortcuts are [1] and [2].
- When the Zoom In mode is selected, hold [Alt] as you click to zoom out.

## Zoom Tool Properties


When you select the Zoom tool, its properties are displayed in the Tool Properties view.




### Zoom In

Enable the Zoom In  mode in the Options section to zoom in when using the Zoom tool.

### Zoom Out


Enable the Zoom Out  mode in the Options section to zoom out when using the Zoom tool.

### Perform Zoom In

Use the Zoom In  operation to perform a zoom in the Camera or Drawing view.


- The keyboard shortcut is [2].

### Perform Zoom Out

Use the Zoom Out  operation to perform a zoom out in the Camera or Drawing view.

- The keyboard shortcut is [1].

### Reset Zoom

Use the Reset Zoom  operation to restore the current zoom level to 100%.

### Reset View

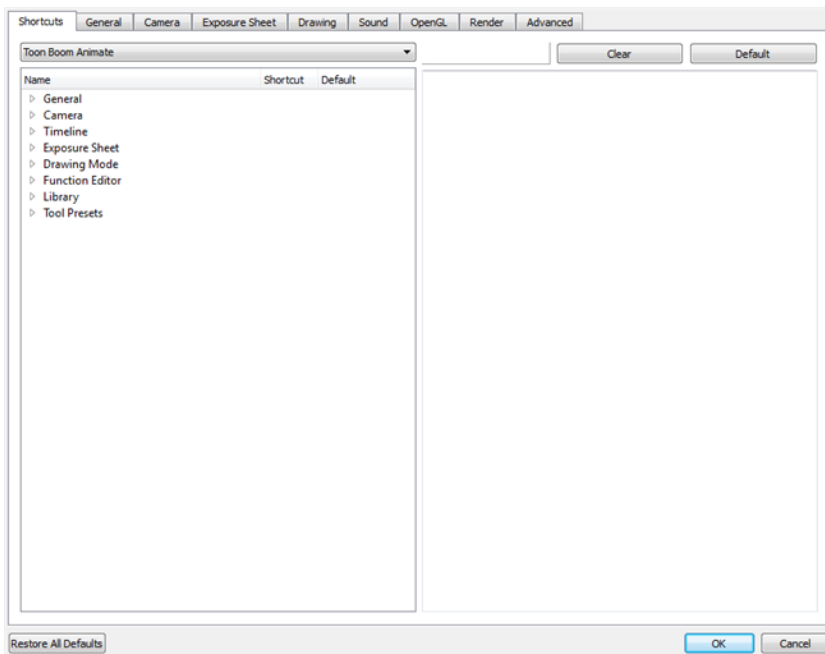
The Reset View  restores the original display by resetting pan, rotation or zoom actions.

### Related Topics

- [Interface Navigation](#) on the previous page
- [Zoom](#) on page 254

# Interface Preferences

Adjusting preferences to suit your work style allows you to work more efficiently.



To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

In the Preferences panel, you will find the preference related to the interface in the Camera, OpenGL and General tab.

## Related Topics

- [User Interface Preferences - General Tab](#) below
- [User Interface Preferences - Camera Tab](#) on page 127
- [Full Scene Antialiasing Preference in the OpenGL tab](#) on page 127

## User Interface Preferences - General Tab

To customize your interface, you will use some of the preferences located in the General tab as well as the Camera tab.

### Automatically Save Workspace

The Automatically Save Workspace preference is enabled by default. Every time you add a view to your workspace, remove a toolbar or change a view's width, these modifications are saved when you quit the application. If you do not want the system to save these modifications, disable the preference.

This preference does not require you to restart the application.



Refer to the [Managing the Workspace on page 116](#) section to learn more about this preference.

## Focus on Mouse Enter

The **Focus on Mouse Enter** preference is disabled by default.

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, for the operations or keyboard shortcuts to work in the view in which you are working, the focus must be in that view. When the focus is on a particular view, a red rectangle appears around its frame. You must click in the view or on the view's header for the focus to be done.

If you enable the Focus on Mouse Enter preference, you will not need to click in the view to get the focus. It will be done as soon as your mouse enters the view.

This preference does not require you to restart the application.

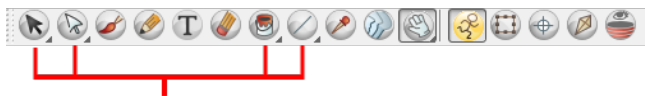


If you enable the Focus On Mouse Enter preference, certain operations from the top menu may not be available since the view focus may change as you make your way to the top menu. In this case use keyboard shortcuts and quick access menus (right-click menus).

## Flat Tool Toolbar

By checking on this option you can expand the toolbar so that there are no nested toolsets in the toolbar. When you check this option you will need to close Animate Pro and relaunch it for the new interface to be displayed. A default set of tools will appear in the toolbar. However, you can customize which tool icons appear in the toolbar to fit your own work pattern.

The default **Tools** toolbar



These arrows denote nested toolsets.



The **Flat Tool Toolbar** preference expands the toolbar so there are no nested toolsets.

Once you have enabled the Flat Tool Toolbar preference, you can customize the tools which appear in the toolbar. This means that you can change the default set of tools and replace the tools which you use less frequently with ones which are used more often. This customizing is done through the Toolbar Manager.



To customize the toolbars refer to [Toolbar Manager on page 114](#).

---

## Levels of Undo

The Levels of Undo preference determines the number of actions retained by the Undo list. By default, 50 actions are stored in the list. You can alter the number if you want to.

This preference does not require you to restart the application.

## Colours

The Colours preference allows you to modify the colours of the different user interface views and elements. For example, you can change the Camera view's background colour from grey to white.

Altering these preferences requires you to restart the application or to close a view and reopen it for the modifications to be applied.

## Current View Border

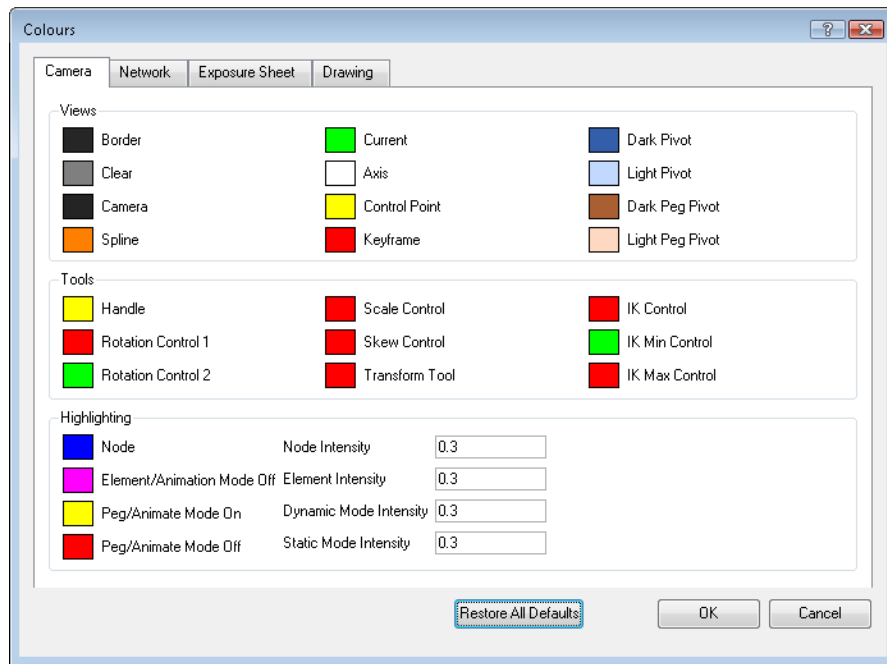
The Current View Border preference sets the colour of the frame around the workspace view you are currently using, also known as focus. By default, the colour is red. Click on the red colour swatch to select a new colour in the Colour Picker window.

## Current View Border in Template Edit

The Current View Border preference sets the colour of the frame around the workspace view you are currently using when editing a template from your library view. By default, the colour is green. Click on the green colour swatch to select a new colour in the Colour Picker window.

## Edit Colours Button

Click on the Edit Colours button to open the Colours window.



In the Colours window, you can modify any of the colours from the list. Most of the modifications will require you to restart the application or close the view and reopen it to see them.

- To restore all of the default interface's colours, click on the Restore All Defaults button.

The Colours window is divided into the following categories:

- Camera
- Network
- Exposure Sheet
- Drawing

Click on any of the colour swatches and select a new colour from the Colour Picker window.

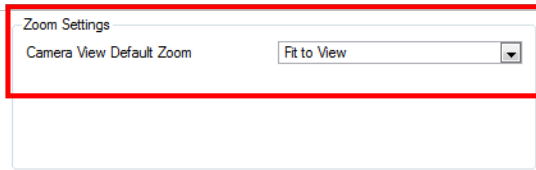
- **Onion Skin**
  - **Onion Skin After:** Changes the colour display of the next drawing when using the Onion Skin feature.
  - **Onion Skin Before:** Changes the colour display of the previous drawing when using the Onion Skin feature.
- **Others**
  - **Background:** Changes the background colour of the Drawing and Model view.
  - **Backlight:** Changes the display colour of the Backlight option.
  - **Grid:** Changes the display colour of the grid when using the Show Grid option.
  - **Colour View Background:** Changes the background colour of the colour list area of the Colour view.
  - **Colour Highlight Mode Opacity:** Changes the opacity value of the washed out art when using the Highlight Selected Colour option.

To restore all of the default interface's colours, click on the **Restore All Defaults** button.

## Related Topics

- [User Interface Preferences - Camera Tab](#) below
- [Full Scene Antialiasing Preference in the OpenGL tab](#) below

# User Interface Preferences - Camera Tab



## Zoom Settings

In the Zoom Settings section, you can change the Camera View Default Zoom value from the drop-down menu. This selection sets the Reset View value in the Camera, Top and Side views.

## Related Topics

- [User Interface Preferences - General Tab](#) on page 123
- [Full Scene Antialiasing Preference in the OpenGL tab](#) below

# Full Scene Antialiasing Preference in the OpenGL tab

The Full Scene Antialiasing is generated by your computer's graphic card it provides a smooth line display in OpenGL. This antialiasing will not only antialias your drawings but all your different views in the interface.

This preference can be turned on or off, Full Scene Antialiasing preference is disabled by default.

This option lets you see smooth lines as you draw as well as an antialiased drawing area. You can change the value of the Full Scene Antialiasing using the Preferences dialog box to fit the current level used in the Camera or Drawing view.

### To use Full Scene Antialiasing do the following:

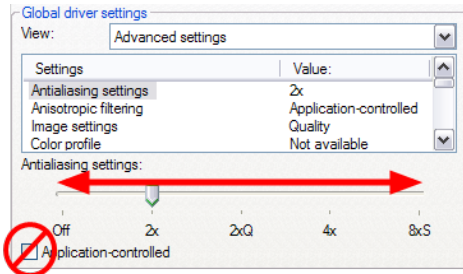
1. Full Scene Antialiasing is accessible from **Edit > Preferences > OpenGL** tab (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences > OpenGL** tab (Mac OS X), go to the **Full Scene Antialiasing** section.
  - **Enable:** Click on the Enable check box to turn on Full Scene Antialiasing. To disable it uncheck the box.
  - **Number or samples (For Mac OS):** If you are using a Mac computer;

You must enter the number of samples you want to be used for the antialiasing process. the number of samples is basically equivalent to the amount of time a pixel will be enlarged to calculate the antialiasing. This technique is called supersampling. The higher the number of samples, the better the antialiasing quality will be, but the longer it will take to calculate. The recommended value is 4.

2. Once done, you must restart Toon Boom Animate Pro.



If you are using Windows or Linux, you must enable your graphic card's antialiasing parameter. Refer to your graphics card manufacturers user guide to learn how to do so. For example, the parameters for an NVIDIA GeForce card may look like this:



---

## Related Topics

- [User Interface Preferences - Camera Tab](#) on the previous page
- [User Interface Preferences - General Tab](#) on page 123



# Chapter 4: Drawing



In Toon Boom Animate Pro, many powerful tools, views and features are available so you can design, draw and animate with ease. This chapter explains the main assets needed when drawing and animating in the software as well as tips on how to start and use these tools efficiently.

## Topics Covered


- [How to Draw](#) on page 131
- [Tool Properties View](#) on page 132
- [Drawing View](#) on page 133
- [Camera View](#) on page 136
- [Drawing with the Brush or the Pencil](#) on page 141
- [Working with Tool Presets](#) on page 143
- [Viewing the Final Lines as you Draw](#) on page 146
- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148
- [Drawing with the Brush Tool](#) on page 164
- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174
- [Selecting Drawing Objects](#) on page 181
- [Erasing Parts of a Drawing](#) on page 196
- [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool](#) on page 200
- [Reshaping Pencil Lines with the Pencil Editor Tool](#) on page 206

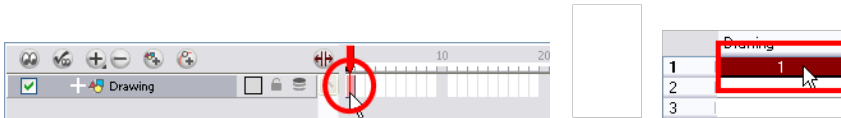
- [Drawing with Shapes](#) on page 212
- [Drawing with the Polyline Tool](#) on page 219
- [Drawing Using Invisible Lines](#) on page 223
- [Deforming a Drawing Using the Perspective Tool](#) on page 226
- [Cutting Drawing Parts](#) on page 230
- [Smoothing Lines](#) on page 234
- [Working With Text](#) on page 238
- [Override Tool](#) on page 243
- [More Drawing Tools](#) on page 244
- [Drawing Pivot Tool](#) on page 250
- [Drawing Preferences](#) on page 252

# How to Draw

As soon as Toon Boom Animate Pro is started, you can start to draw straight away using the default drawing layer.

## How to draw:

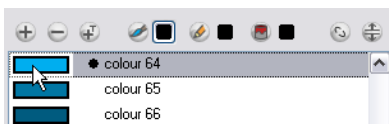
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Brush  tool or press [Alt] + [B].
2. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, click in the first cell of the drawing layer.



3. In the Drawing or Camera view, start drawing.



4. To select a different colour, in the Colour view, select the a different colour swatch. Double-click on the colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and modify the colour. Remember that anything already painted with that colour swatch will update to the new colour.

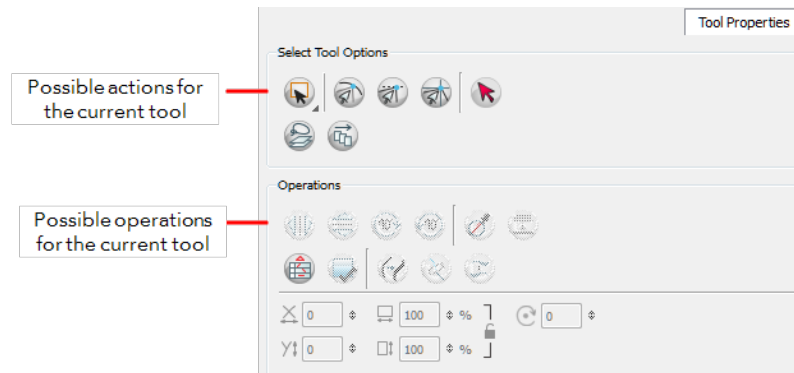


## Related Topics

- [Adding a Colour Swatch](#) on page 304
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Tool Properties View](#) on the next page

# Tool Properties View

The **Tool Properties** view is where you can customize the currently selected tool. The options and operations displayed changes according to each tool you select.



## Options

Options are different modes you can apply to a selected tool to modify its behaviour to fit the current task's needs.

## Operations

Operations are actual actions you can perform while using the selected tool.

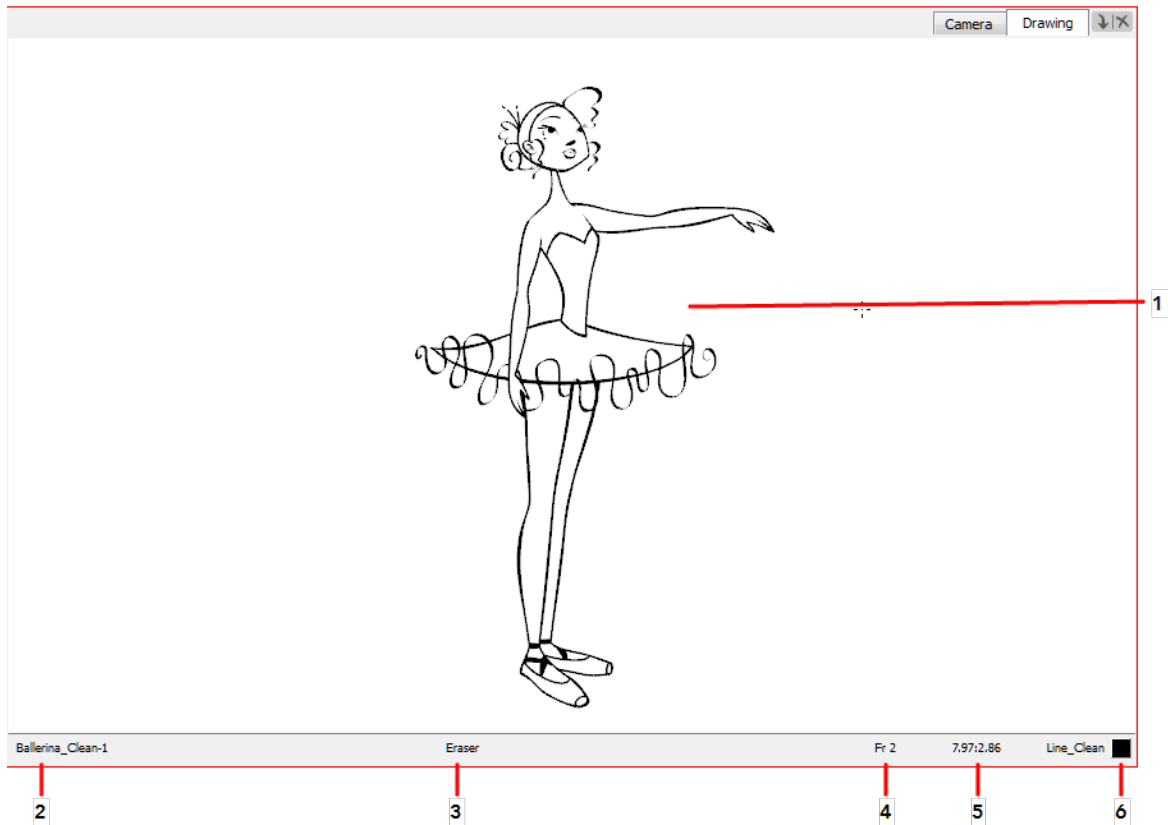
### Related Topics

- [How to Draw](#) on the previous page

# Drawing View

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can draw in the Drawing or Camera view. Although the two views are similar, when it comes to drawing, there are some differences.

Only the selected drawing is displayed by default in the Drawing view. You can use features, such as the light table to display the current frame drawing of all the enabled layers of your scene in washed-out colours, or the Onion Skin to display the previous and next drawings of the currently selected drawing layer.



1. [Drawing Area](#) below
2. [Drawing Name](#) on the next page
3. [Tool Name](#) on the next page
4. [Current Frame](#) on the next page
5. [Cursor Coordinates](#) on page 135
6. [Colour Picker](#) on page 135

## Drawing Area

This is the Drawing view's main space, it is where you draw, and where the drawings are displayed.






## Zoom Drop-down Menu

The Zoom menu lets you enlarge or reduce the Camera or Drawing view display.

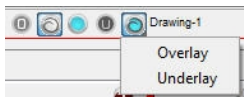


To make the camera frame size always match the size of your view, select the **Fit to View** option. Click the drop-down arrow and select a zoom level or press [1] and [2].

## Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode

-  **Overlay:** Switches to the drawing's Overlay layer. This layer is located above the Line Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [:].
-  **Line Art:** Switches to the Line Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [L].
-  **Colour Art:** Switches to the Colour Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [L].
-  **Underlay:** Switches to the drawing's Underlay layer. This layer is located under the Colour Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [:].
-  **Preview mode:** Switches to Preview mode, so you can see both Line Art and Colour Art layers simultaneously. The default keyboard shortcut is [Shift] + [P].

You can display the Preview mode drop-down menu and select the Underlay and Overlay layers if you want to show all four of them at the same time.



## Drawing Name

The Drawing Name field displays the name of the selected drawing, as well as the layer containing it. If the cell does not contain any drawing, an **Empty Cell** text is shown in the field.

## Tool Name

The Tool Name field displays the name of the selected tool. If you override a tool using an overriding keyboard shortcut, the tool's name will be highlighted in red letters—see [Override Tool on page 243](#) to learn how to temporarily override a tool.

## Current Frame

This field displays the current frame of the animation you are working on.

## Cursor Coordinates

This indicates the position of your mouse cursor in the drawing area.

## Drawing Name

Displays the name of the currently selected drawing.

## Colour Picker

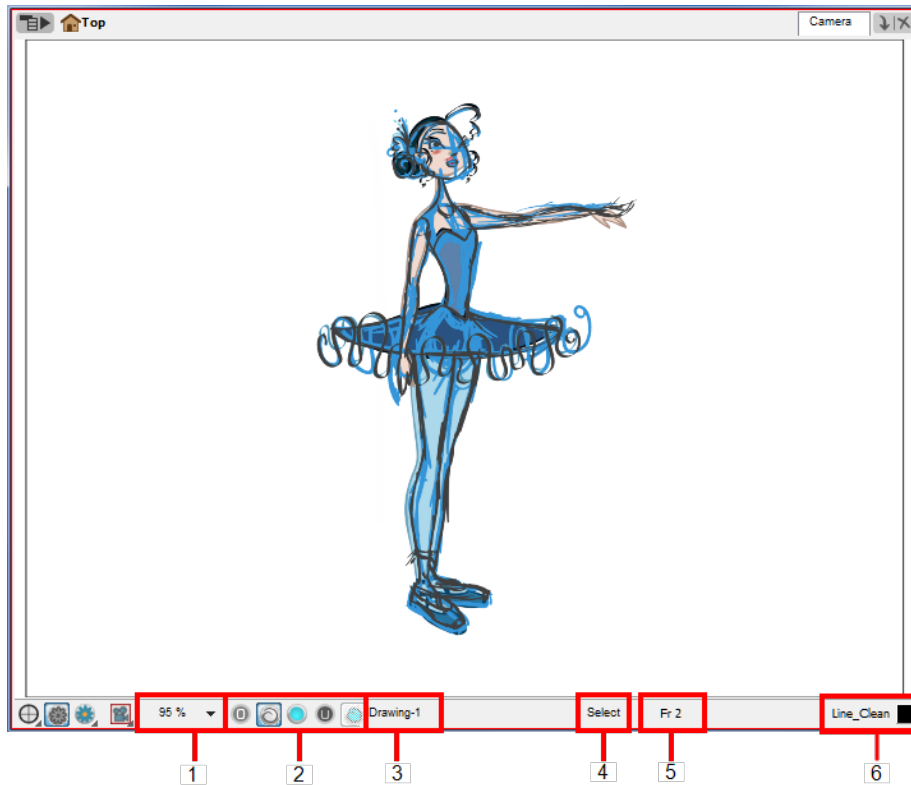
The Colour Picker allows you to select a colour to draw with.

### Related Topics

- [Camera View on the next page](#)

# Camera View


In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can draw in either the Drawing view or Camera view. Although the two views are similar, when it comes to drawing, there are some differences.



1. [Zoom Drop-down Menu](#) on the facing page
2. [Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode](#) on page 138
3. [Drawing Name](#) on page 138
4. [Tool Name](#) on page 138
5. [Current Frame](#) on page 139
6. [Current Colour](#) on page 139



For more details about the Camera view's interface, see [Camera View](#) on page 80

In the Camera view, you can use the Onion Skin feature to display previous and next drawings. By default, all the enabled drawing layers in the selected objects frame are displayed, letting you edit them together. This way, you can use the **Select**  tool to select many objects from individual layers at once.

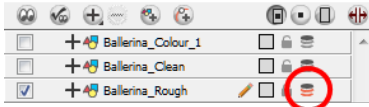




To make easier to select objects on a single drawing, you can set a preference. Select **Edit > Preferences** and select the **Camera** tab, then select the **Select tool Works on Single Drawing** option.

### To enable the onion skin from the Timeline view:

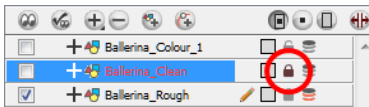
- ▶ In the Timeline view, click the **Onion Skin**  icon of the desired layer.



By locking a layer, you can prevent yourself from being able to select it in the Camera view, while keeping the drawing visible as a reference and disabling the layers you don't want to display in the **Camera** view.

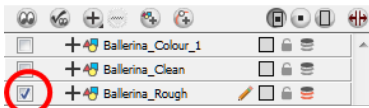
### To lock a drawing layer:

- ▶ In the Timeline view, click the **Lock**  icon of the layer you don't want to edit.



### To hide a drawing layer:

1. In the Timeline view, click the check box corresponding to the layer you want to hide.








## Zoom Drop-down Menu

The Zoom menu lets you enlarge or reduce the Camera or Drawing view display.

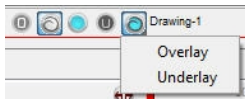


To make the camera frame size always match the size of your view, select the **Fit to View** option. Click the drop-down arrow and select a zoom level or press [1] and [2].

# Overlay, Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay and Preview Mode

-  **Overlay:** Switches to the drawing's Overlay layer. This layer is located above the Line Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [:].
-  **Line Art:** Switches to the Line Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [L].
-  **Colour Art:** Switches to the Colour Art layer of the drawing. The default keyboard shortcut is [I].
-  **Underlay:** Switches to the drawing's Underlay layer. This layer is located under the Colour Art layer. The default keyboard shortcut is [U].
-  **Preview mode:** Switches to Preview mode, so you can see both Line Art and Colour Art layers simultaneously. The default keyboard shortcut is [Shift] + [P].

You can display the Preview mode drop-down menu and select the Underlay and Overlay layers if you want to show all four of them at the same time.



To activate the Preview Mode button in the Camera view bottom toolbar, you must enable the Current Drawing on Top option.

### To enable the Current Drawing On Top option:

1. In the Camera bottom toolbar, click on the **Camera Option** button.
2. In the drop-down menu, enable the **Current Drawing on Top** option.

See [Show Current Drawing on Top on the facing page](#).

## Drawing Name

The Drawing Name field displays the name of the selected drawing, as well as the layer containing it. If the cell does not contain any drawing, an **Empty Cell** text is shown in the field.

## Tool Name

The Tool Name field displays the name of the selected tool. If you override a tool using an overriding keyboard shortcut, the tool's name will be highlighted in red letters—see [Override Tool on page 243](#) to learn how to temporarily override a tool.

## Current Frame

This field displays the current displayed frame of the animation.

## Current Colour

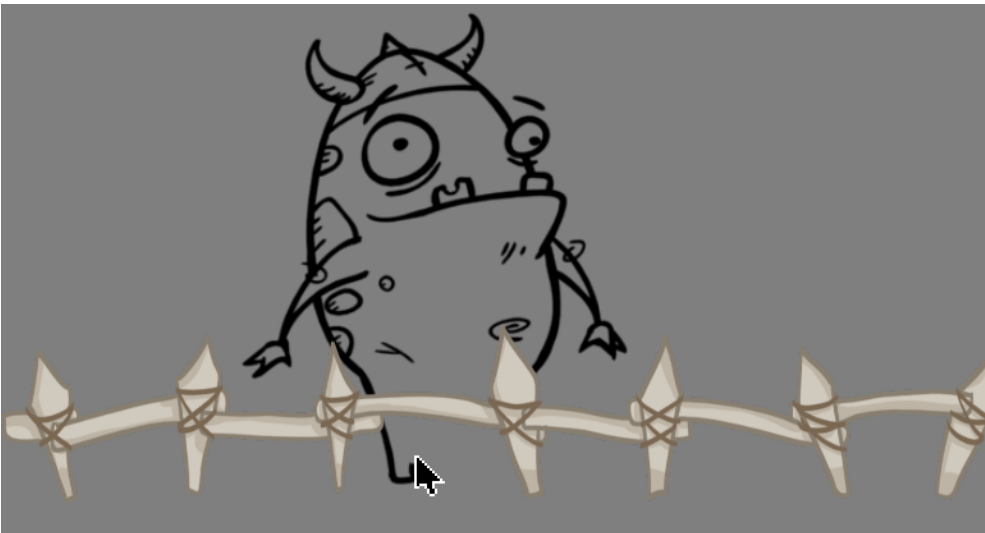
This field displays the current colour name and its colour swatch. You can open the Colour Picker by double-clicking the colour swatch—see [Colour](#) on page 301.

### Related Topics

- [Show Current Drawing on Top](#) below
- [Drawing View](#) on page 133

## Show Current Drawing on Top

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, when you draw on a layer, the artwork is displayed in the correct order. For example, if the layer on which you are drawing is located behind an object on another layer, the lines you are drawing will be hidden behind that object.



This option lets you display the selected drawing on top of everything while your draw. By enabling this option, each time you select a drawing tool, the selected drawing is displayed in front of everything in the Camera view. The Timeline and Network view ordering remain unchanged.

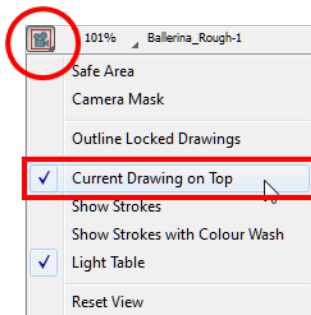


The **Show Current Drawing on Top** status (enabled or disabled) is remembered when you exit Animate Pro. When you restart the application, the last status will be used.

### To display your drawing on top:

1. Do one of the following:
2. From the top menu, select **View > Show > Current Drawing on Top**.

3. In the Camera toolbar, click the **Camera Option** button and select the **Current Drawing on Top** option.



4. In the Tools toolbar, select a drawing tool.
5. In the Camera view, start drawing.



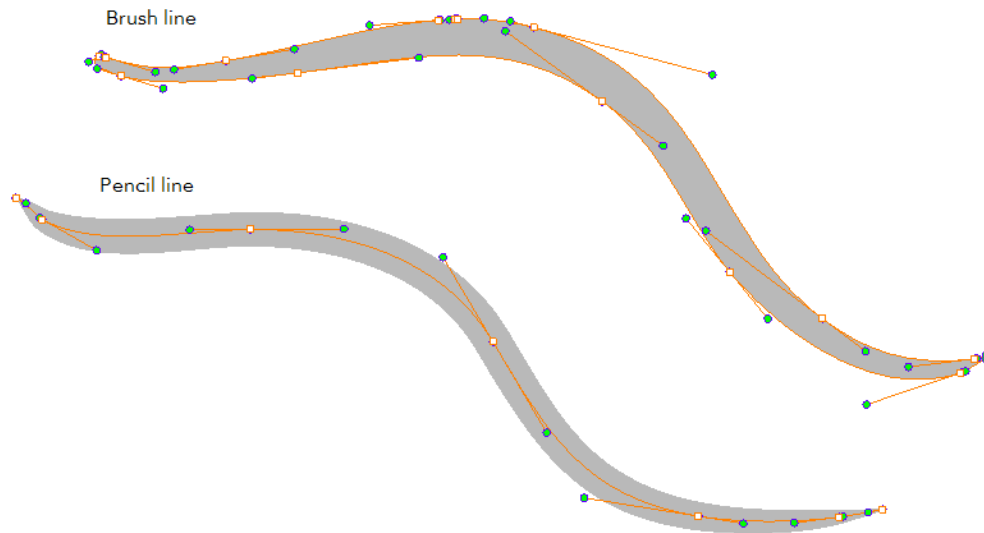
You only need to enable this option once, it is not necessary to do it each time you select a drawing tool.



---




## Related Topics

- [Camera View](#) on page 136
- [How to Draw](#) on page 131

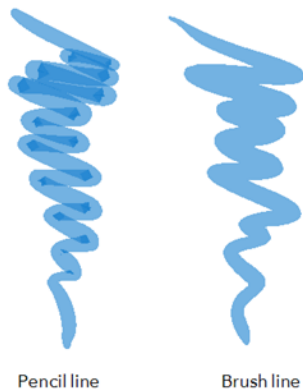
# Drawing with the Brush or the Pencil



The Brush  and Pencil  tools are used to draw and sketch with. Both tools support pressure sensitivity, allowing you to create lines with variable thickness. The Pencil and shape tools produce central vector lines. The Brush tool produces contour vector lines. This means that a pencil line's control points (used to deform its shape) are located along the length of the central spine and the Brush line's control points are located along the contour.

- If you draw with the **Pencil** tool and want to modify the thickness variation, use the **Pencil Editor**  tool.
- If you draw with the **Brush** tool and want to modify the thickness, use the **Contour Editor**  tool.
- You can also convert a brush zone into a pencil line with the **Brush Stroke to Pencil Line**  option.

If you sketch a drawing using a semi-transparent colour to get a paper-like feel, you should use the **Brush** tool as it produces a more realistic and natural feel. The pencil line is very useful for tracing, clean or final drawings.



Also, it is recommended to use brush lines when designing cut-out puppets' articulations which use patches.

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148
- [Drawing with the Brush Tool](#) on page 164
- [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool](#) on page 200
- [Drawing with Shapes](#) on page 212
- [Patch Articulation](#) on page 765
- [How to Draw](#) on page 131

# Working with Tool Presets

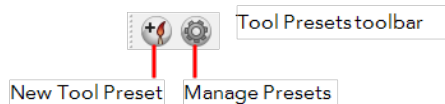
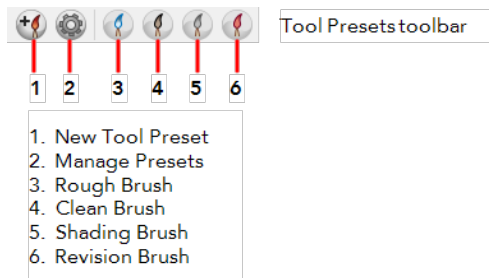
Tools presets let you saving a variety of settings and are very handy and efficient for accessing the tools you use most often. That way, the tool is already set with the desired properties, such as colour, line thickness, whether to enable Draw Behind or Auto Flatten mode, and so on. You can create presets for these tools and many more: Brush, Pencil, Eraser, Rectangle, Ellipse, and Line. First, select a tool, adjust the properties, and then create a tool preset for it. Once you have created a tool preset, you can always make adjustments to fine-tune it, as well as create a keyboard shortcut for it.

## The Tool Presets Toolbar


The Tool Presets toolbar lets you create new tool presets and manage them. There are four default brush presets to get you started—Rough Brush, Clean Pencil, Fill Paint, and Inking Brush. By default, this toolbar is not displayed.

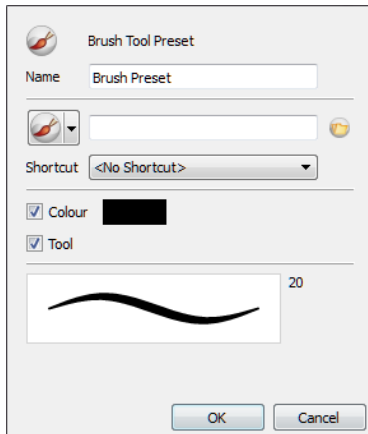
**To display the Tool Presets toolbar:**


- ▶ Select **Windows > Toolbars > Tool Presets**.
- ▶ Right-click an empty area below the top menu and select **Tool Presets**.

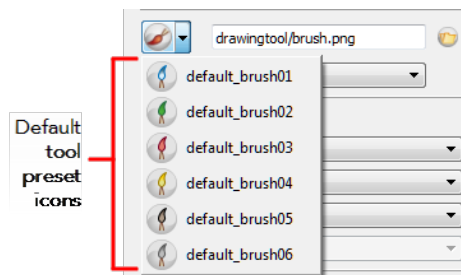


**To create a tool preset:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select a tool.
2. In the Panel view, use the Tool Properties view and/or the Brush Properties window to customize the tool. Use the Tool Properties view to customize the tool.
3. In the Tool Presets toolbar, click the New Tool Preset  button.
4. In the New Tool Preset dialog box, type a new name for your tool.





- From the Brush list, select an icon to quickly identify your preset or upload your own by clicking the File  button.




- (Optional) Set a keyboard shortcut to quickly access your preset.
- When you select any of the following options, they will take effect when you use the tool preset. If an option is deselected, then using a tool preset will not override your current settings.
  - ▶ **Colour:** Saves the current colour into the Tool Preset.

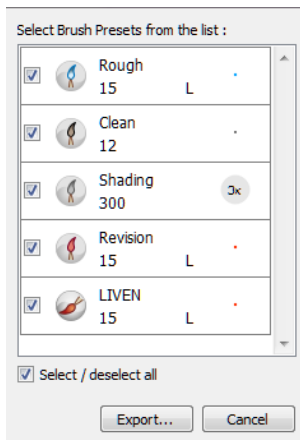
**To delete a tool preset:**

- In the Tool Presets toolbar, click the Manage Tool Presets  button.
- From the list of tool presets on the left, select a preset to delete and click the Trash  icon.

**To import a tool preset:**


- In the Tool Presets toolbar, click the Manage Tool Presets  button.
- In the Manage Tool Presets dialog box that opens, click **Import**.

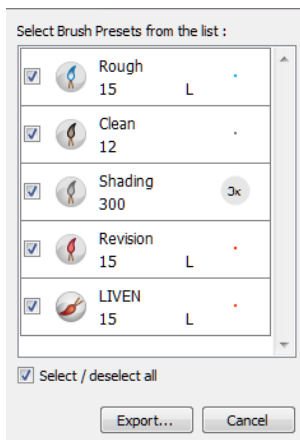




3. In the Import Brush Presets window that opens, locate and select the preset(s) to import and click **Open**. In the Select Folder window that opens, locate and select the preset(s) to import and click **Select Folder**.


#### To export a tool preset:

1. In the Tool Presets toolbar, click the Manage Tool Presets  button.
2. In the Manage Tool Presets dialog box that opens, click **Export**.



3. In the Export Brush Presets window that opens, click **Export**.
4. Select a folder and click **Select Folder**.

#### To update a tool preset:

1. In the Tool Presets toolbar, click the Manage Tool Presets  button.
2. In the Manage Tool Presets dialog box that opens, select the tool preset from the left side of the dialog box.
3. Make any changes you would like to the preset.
4. Click **Update**.

## Viewing the Final Lines as you Draw



Everything you draw in Toon Boom Animate Pro is vector-based. Although, when you draw in the Camera or Drawing view, you will notice that your lines may be jagged, this is caused by the fast real-time display called OpenGL.

If you prefer to see smooth lines as you draw, you can enable the antialiasing.

## Full Scene Antialiasing

*Not available in Harmony Paint.*

The Full Scene Antialiasing is generated by your computer's graphics card. This antialiasing will not only antialias your drawings, but all your different views in the interface.

Full Scene Antialiasing is a preference you can turn on and off. By default, the Full Scene Antialiasing preference is disabled.



Full Scene Antialiasing parameters are only valid while you work in your scene. The scene will be rendered out to 100% of its resolution regardless of your settings in the preferences or graphic card panel.

---

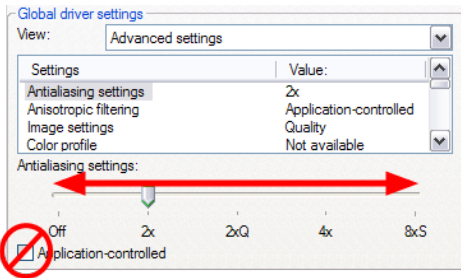
### To customize the full scene antialiasing parameters:



This procedure requires that if you have a Mac OS you must restart the Animate Pro after you have changed the parameters.

---

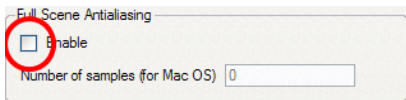
1. If you are using Windows or Linux, you must enable your graphic card's antialiasing parameter. Refer to your graphics card manufacturers user guide to learn how to do so. For example, the parameters for an NVIDIA GeForce card may look like this:



2. In the Animate Pro, do one of the following:
  - ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
  - ▶ Mac OS X: **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

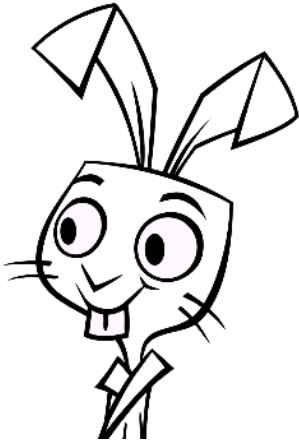
The Preferences dialog box opens.


3. In the OpenGL tab, go to the **Full Scene Antialiasing** section.



- ▶ **Enable:** Select this option to enable/disable the **Full Scene Antialiasing**.
  - ▶ **Number or samples (For Mac OS):** If you are using a Mac OS X computer, enter the number of samples you want to be used for the antialiasing process. The number of samples is basically equivalent to the amount of time a pixel will be enlarged to calculate the antialiasing. This technique is called *supersampling*. The higher the number of samples, the better the antialiasing quality will be, but the longer it will take to calculate.
4. Restart the Animate Pro.

# Drawing Using the Pencil Tool




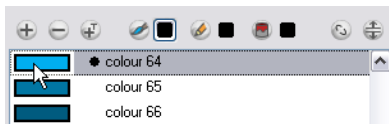
The **Pencil**  tool creates a centreline shape. Pencil lines now support pressure sensitivity and texture.

To draw with the **Pencil** tool:

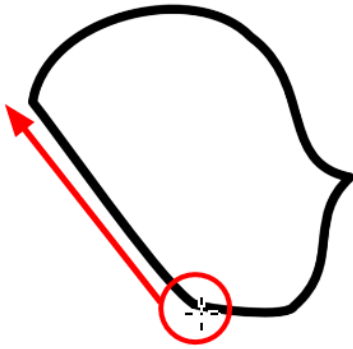
In the **Timeline** or **Xsheet** view, select the cell on which you want to draw.  
In **Harmony Paint**, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool or press [Alt] + [/].
2. In the Colour view, click a colour swatch to select a colour.




3. In the **Drawing** or **Camera** view, start drawing.
  - ▶ When you get close to an existing pencil line, hold [Alt] to draw connect your stroke to the existing one. Pencil lines are central vector lines and you might think your line is connected, but in fact, only the contour is touching the other one. Also, make sure the central vector crosses the other one. You can use the [Alt] key to connect the start of your stroke or the end of it by holding it when you start drawing or when you finish your line.
  - ▶ To draw a straight line, press [Shift] + [Alt] as you draw.

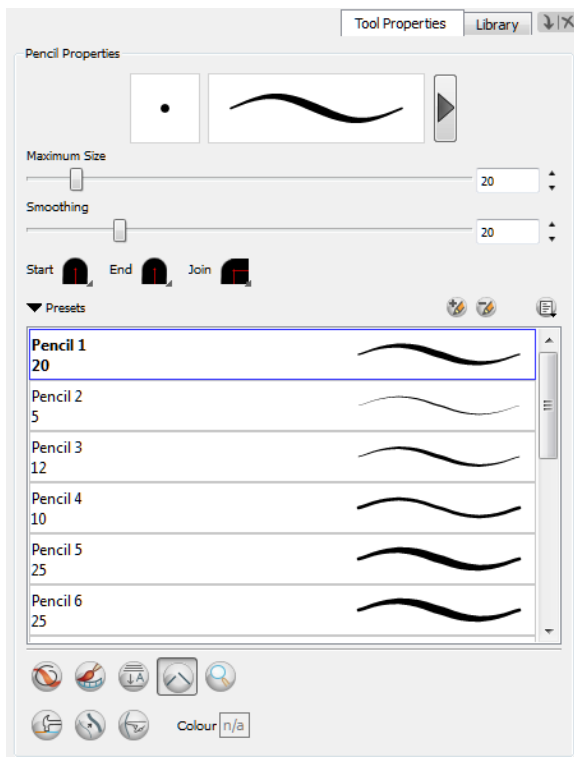


## Related Topics

- [Pencil Tool Options](#) below
- [Drawing with the Brush or the Pencil](#) on page 141
- [Drawing with Shapes](#) on page 212

## Pencil Tool Options

When you select the **Pencil**  tool, its properties and options appears in the **Tool Properties** view.



These are the options available for the Pencil tool:

- [Draw Behind](#) on the next page
- [Pencil Tool Options](#) above

- [Auto-Flatten Mode](#) below
- [Auto-Close Gap](#) on the facing page
- [Line Building Mode](#) on the facing page
- [Auto Adjust Thickness](#) on page 152
- [Line Pushing Mode](#) on page 153
- [Pencil Thickness Stencils](#) on page 153
- [Minimum and Maximum Size](#) on page 153
- [Central Line Smoothness](#) on page 154
- [Contour Optimization](#) on page 154
- [Changing the Line Shape](#) on page 154
- [Previewing the Stroke](#) on page 155
- [Pencil Line Texture](#) on page 155

## Draw Behind



When drawing on vector layers, the Draw Behind mode lets you paint behind existing art. By default, strokes will appear over your work until you release the tool. If you want to have live preview of your stroke in draw behind mode, you must activate the Realistic Preview option.

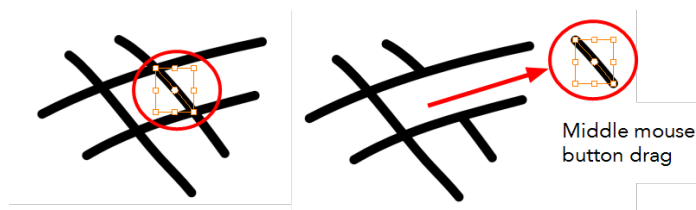
## Auto-Flatten Mode

When drawing on vector layers, lines do not usually become one object. The Auto-Flatten mode automatically merges lines created with the existing ones into one single object as you draw.

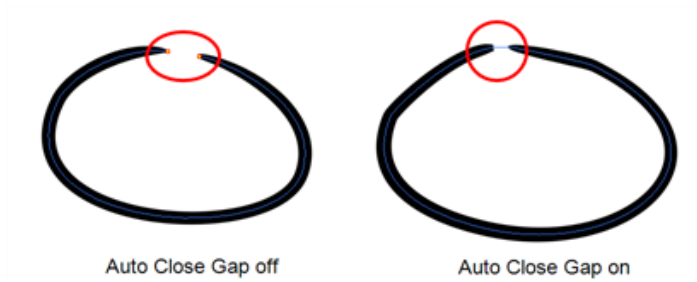


Using the Select tool, you can use the middle mouse button to select a segment of a flattened pencil line to create a nice finish on the lines and corners of your artwork.

---



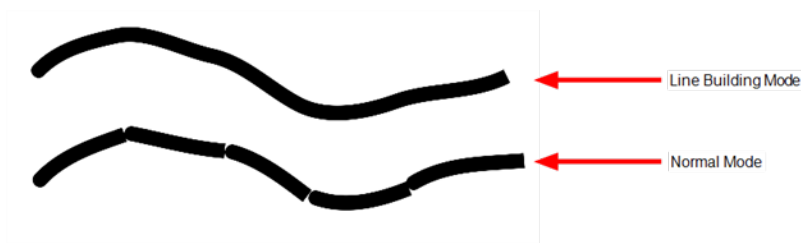
## Auto-Close Gap



When using the pencil tool, you can automatically close strokes with an invisible stroke.

It is recommended to keep this option enabled when drawing with the Pencil tool.

## Line Building Mode



The **Line Building**  mode is very useful when drawing long lines and curves in small increments with pencil

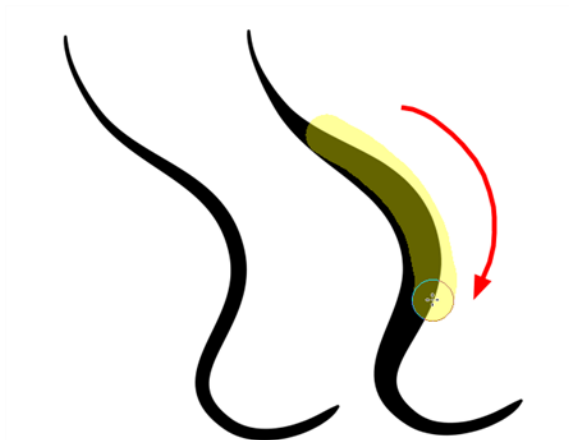
lines. As the pencil lines are central vector lines and it may be difficult to align the line tips perfectly to create a uniform stroke and close all gaps.


In this mode, you can draw lines in small increments and the tips merge into one single stroke.



This mode only works with pencil lines.



## Auto Adjust Thickness



The **Auto Adjust Thickness**  tool is useful when you want to render a portion of a line thicker. When tracing a drawing on paper, you will often go back to a section of a curve to make it thicker to add dynamism to the line. Using the Auto Adjust Thickness tool, you can draw highlight strokes over the section to make thicker. Once you release the pen or the mouse, the line gets thicker following the shape and curve of the original stroke. This way is much faster and smoother than using the Pencil Editor tool. You do not have to add extra points and adjust the position and Bezier handles.

The default overlay colour is light yellow. If this colour is difficult to see because of your background or drawing colour, you can adjust the colour.

### To change the Auto Adjust Thickness Colour:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, select the **Auto Adjust Thickness**  button.
3. Click the colour swatch.

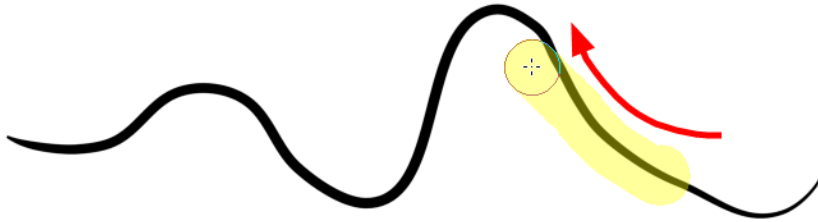



The Colour Picker window opens.

4. In the Colour Picker window, select a new colour.





## Line Pushing Mode



The **Line Pushing Mode**  option lets you draw highlight strokes over your existing pencil lines. You can reshape the curves. Depending how you draw the pushing stroke over your line, the highlighted section will be reshaped in one direction or the other.

The default overlay colour is light yellow. If this colour is difficult to see because of your background or drawing colour, you can adjust the colour.

**To change the Line Pushing Mode colour:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, select the **Line Pushing Mode**  button.
3. Click the colour swatch.



The Colour Picker window opens.

4. In the Colour Picker window, select a new colour.

## Pencil Thickness Stencils

Toon Boom Animate Pro provides a variety of thickness stencils and also lets you create and save your own. It is a good idea to create and save pencils with precise sizes and parameters when you draw and design.

A thickness stencil saves a preset of how the thickness information looks across the length of the line. When drawing with a thickness stencil, the pressure sensitivity of the tablet is discarded in order to apply the thickness stencil.

A thickness stencil can be used while drawing, or applied afterwards.

You also have the possibility to apply different textures to your lines by either using the preset ones or importing your own—see [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#)


## Minimum and Maximum Size

This is where you set the minimum and maximum sizes of your drawing tool which will produce the thick and thin effect on your stroke. This works with the pressure sensitivity of a pen tablet.



1. **Minimum Size** field: Type a value in this field to set the minimum width of the line.
2. **Maximum Size** field: Type a value in this field to set the maximum width of the line.
3. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set the minimum size value.
4. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set the maximum size value.

## Central Line Smoothness

You can modify the **Central Line Smoothness**  of your line using this option. This parameter smoothes the initial movement of your line. Increasing the value will result in a smoother line with fewer control points.

## Contour Optimization

You can optimize the **Contour Line Smoothness** of you line using this option. This parameter will smooth the contour of your line once the line has been traced, the higher the value the less control points will compose your line.



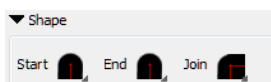
1. **Smoothness** field: Type a value to set the smoothness of the line.
2. **Contour Optimization** field: Type a value to set the contour optimization of the line.
3. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set smoothness value.
4. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set the contour optimization value.

## Changing the Line Shape

There are several line shape to choose from. You can select how the start, end, and joints in the pencil line are drawn.

### To change the line shape:

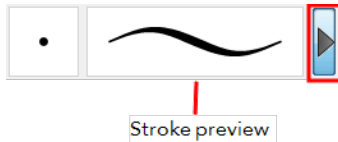
In the Pencil Properties window, click a line shape in the Shape section and select a shape from the menu.



- **Start**: Make the beginning of the line round or flat.
- **End**: Make the end of the line round or flat.
- **Join**: Make joints round, mitred, or bevelled.

## Previewing the Stroke

The Preview area lets you see a preview of the stroke that will be produced after you customize the different parameters in the Tool Properties view.



## Pencil Line Texture

You can apply a bitmap texture on your pencil line and adjust it as needed—see [Pencil Line Texture on page 158](#)

### Related Topics

- [Drawing with Line Texture on page 174](#)
- [Pencil Line Texture on page 158](#)
- [Working with Thickness Stencils below](#)
- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool on page 148](#)

### Working with Thickness Stencils



A thickness stencil is a preset that already set with specific properties. There are two types of thickness stencils.

A Regular thickness stencils allow you to set the size and smoothing of the line or shape. As you draw, the thickness of the line varies according the amount of pressure you use with a pen and tablet.

Thickness stencils that are indicated with this icon ✖ are also set with specific properties but disregards the pressure you use with your pen and tablet. The line thickness varies

You can access thickness stencils from the list of preset on the Tool Properties view, or create your own.

- [Selecting a Thickness Stencil on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Thickness Stencil on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool on page 157](#)
- [Renaming a Thickness Stencil on page 157](#)

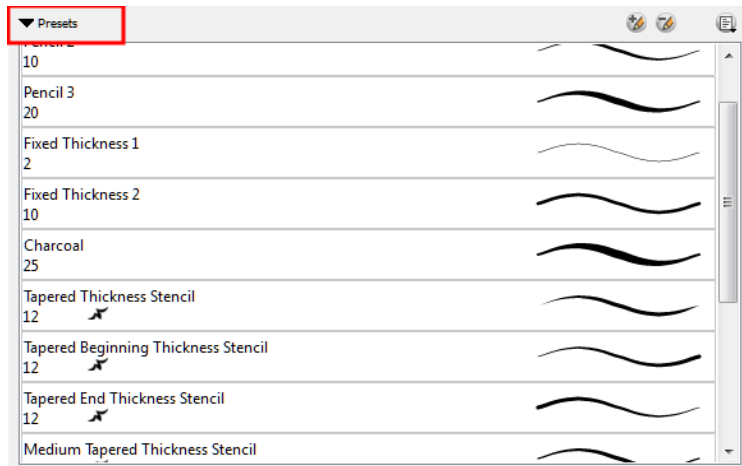
- [Deleting a Thickness Stencil](#) on the facing page
- [Locking a Thickness Stencil](#) on page 158
- [Working with Thickness Stencils](#) on the previous page

## Selecting a Thickness Stencil

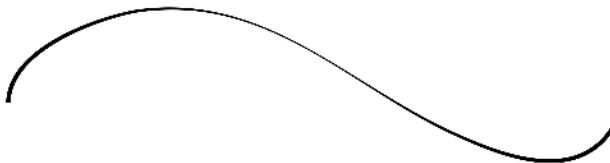
Using the drop-down menu, you can select an existing thickness stencil.

To select a pencil thickness stencil:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil** , **Line** , **Ellipse** , or **Rectangle**  tool.
2. In the **Tool Properties** view, in the **Presets** drop-down menu, select the thickness stencil you want to use.




3. In the Drawing or Camera view, draw your pencil line or shape.



## Creating a Thickness Stencil

To create a thickness stencil:


1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil** , **Line** , **Ellipse** , or **Rectangle**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the **New Pencil** or **New Brush**  button.

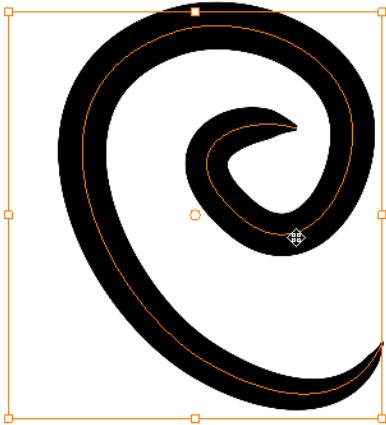
The New Preset dialog box opens.


3. Enter a name for your new pencil thickness stencil and click OK.
4. Start drawing in the Camera or Drawing view.

## Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool

To create a pencil thickness stencil with the Select tool:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select the pencil line or shape you want to take the style from.







3. In the Tool Properties view, click the **New Preset**  button.

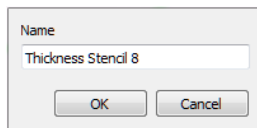
A new thickness stencil is added to the end of the list in the Presets drop-down menu.

4. In the Presets drop-down menu, select your new thickness stencil and click on a line or shape in the Camera view to apply the thickness stencil you created.

## Renaming a Thickness Stencil

To rename a thickness stencil:


1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil** , **Line** , **Ellipse** , or **Rectangle**  tool.
2. In the Presets drop-down menu, select the thickness stencil you want to rename.
3. From the Brush menu, select **Rename Pencil** or **Rename Brush**, depending on the tool you selected.  
The Rename Preset dialog box opens.



4. In the Name field, type in a name for the selected thickness stencil you are renaming.


## Deleting a Thickness Stencil

To delete a thickness stencil:


1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Presets drop-down menu, select the thickness stencil to delete.

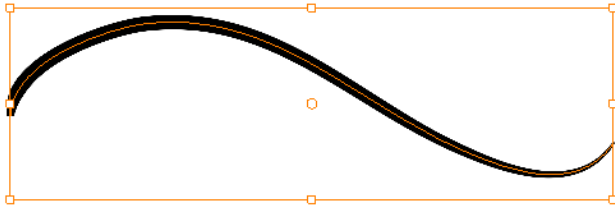
3. Click the **Delete Preset**  button.

## Locking a Thickness Stencil

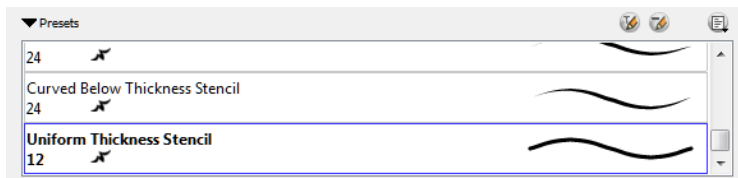
To avoid modifying your thickness stencil inadvertently, you can lock them by enabling the **Lock Pen**  option.

To apply a thickness stencil to a pencil line or shape:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the pencil line or shape on which you want to apply a style.



3. In the Tool Properties view, select the style you want to apply from the **Presets** list.



The style you selected is applied to your selection.



## Related Topics

- [Pencil Tool Options](#) on page 149
- [Shape Tool Options](#) on page 213
- [Select Tool Properties](#) on page 184

## Pencil Line Texture

You can apply a texture on a pencil line.

- [Applying Texture to a Pencil Line](#) on the facing page
- [Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Pencil Tool](#) on page 160

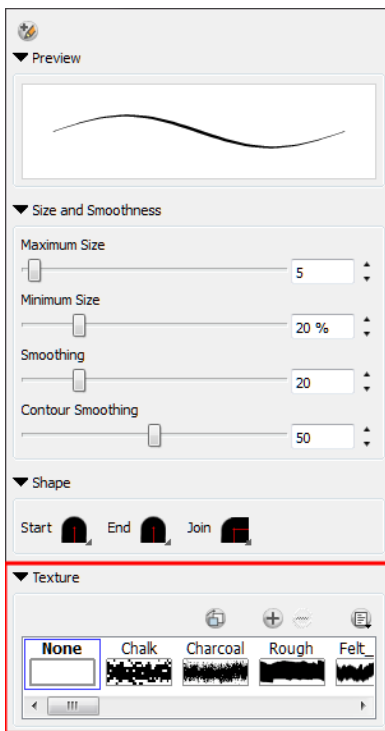
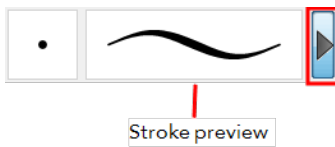
- [Adding a Texture to the Preferences](#) on page 162
- [Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line](#) on page 163
- [Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool](#) on page 161

## Applying Texture to a Pencil Line

Pencil lines support texture. Before drawing, you can select or import a texture and apply it to your lines. You can also change it afterwards using the Select tool. Textures are independent from pencil templates.

To apply a preset texture to a pencil line:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, the preview area displays the stroke that will be produced after you customize the different parameters in the Tool Properties view. Click the arrow button.



In the Pencil Properties property editor displays.

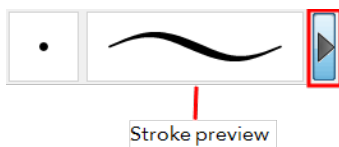
3. In the Texture section, select a texture for your pencil.
4. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw your pencil line.





## Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Pencil Tool

To create a pencil texture template with the Pencil tool:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the arrow button beside the stroke preview area.

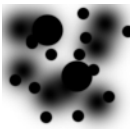


3. In the Pencil Properties property editor, click the **New Texture**  button or select **New Texture** from the Texture menu.
  - To delete a preset style, click the **Delete Texture**  button.
4. Browse for your bitmap texture file.

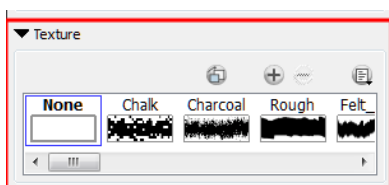


The file must be a TGA or PSD. Your texture **MUST HAVE** an alpha channel.

5. Click **Open**.  
The imported texture is saved in your scene texture list.

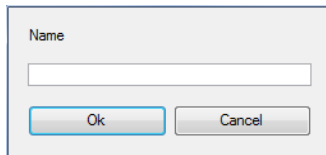


6. In the Pencil Properties property editor, select your new texture.



7. In the Tool Properties view, click the Texture menu and select **Rename Texture**.  
The Rename Opacity Texture dialog box opens.








8. In the **Name** field, type the template name and click OK.
9. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw your pencil lines.



### Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool

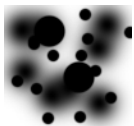
To create a pencil texture template with the Select tool:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select a pencil line on which to apply a texture.
3. In the Pencil Properties property editor, click the **New Texture**  button or select **New Texture** from the Texture menu.
  - To delete a preset style, click on the **Delete Texture**  button. Note that you cannot delete the textures stored in your preferences.
4. Browse for a bitmap texture file.

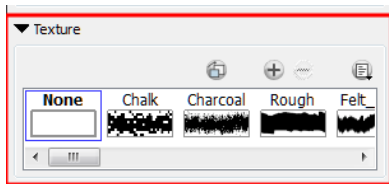


The file must be a TGA or PSD. Your texture **MUST HAVE** an alpha channel.

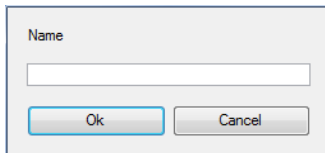
5. Click **Open**.  
The imported texture is saved in your scene texture list.



6. In the Pencil Properties property editor, select your new texture template.



7. In the Tool Properties view, click the Texture menu and select **Rename Texture**.  
The Rename Opacity Texture dialog box opens.



8. In the **Name** field, type the template name and click OK.

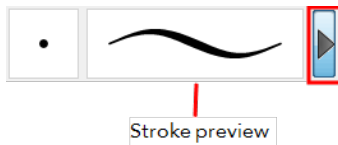



### Adding a Texture to the Preferences

When you import a texture in your pencil styles, it is saved in your scene. If you want to add that texture to a bank that you will be able to reuse in different scenes, you can add that texture to your preferences.

**To add a texture to your preferences:**


1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the arrow button beside the stroke preview area.

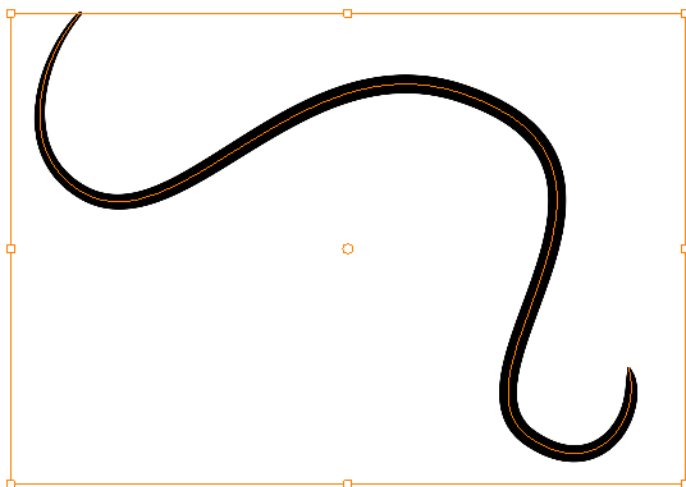


3. In the Pencil Properties property editor, select a texture from the Textures area to add to your preferences.
4. Click the **Copy to Preference**  button.

## Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line

To apply a preset texture to a pencil line:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select a pencil line.



3. In the Tool Properties view, select a texture from the Textures area to apply to the selected stroke.




## Related Topics

- [Pencil Tool Options](#) on page 149
- [Select Tool Properties](#) on page 184
- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174

# Drawing with the Brush Tool




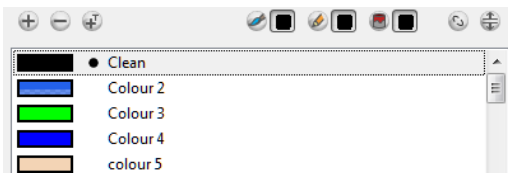
The **Brush**  tool is pressure sensitive and can create a contour shape which gives a thick and thin line effect, as if the drawing was made with a brush.

## To draw with the Brush tool:

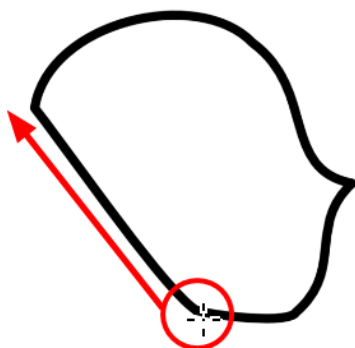
1. In the **Timeline** or **Xsheet** view, select the cell on which you want to draw.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*



2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Brush**  tool or press [Alt] + [B].
3. In the Colour view, click a colour swatch to select a colour.



4. In the Drawing or Camera view, start drawing.
  - Hold [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) to force a line to join the end and start of your shape while drawing.






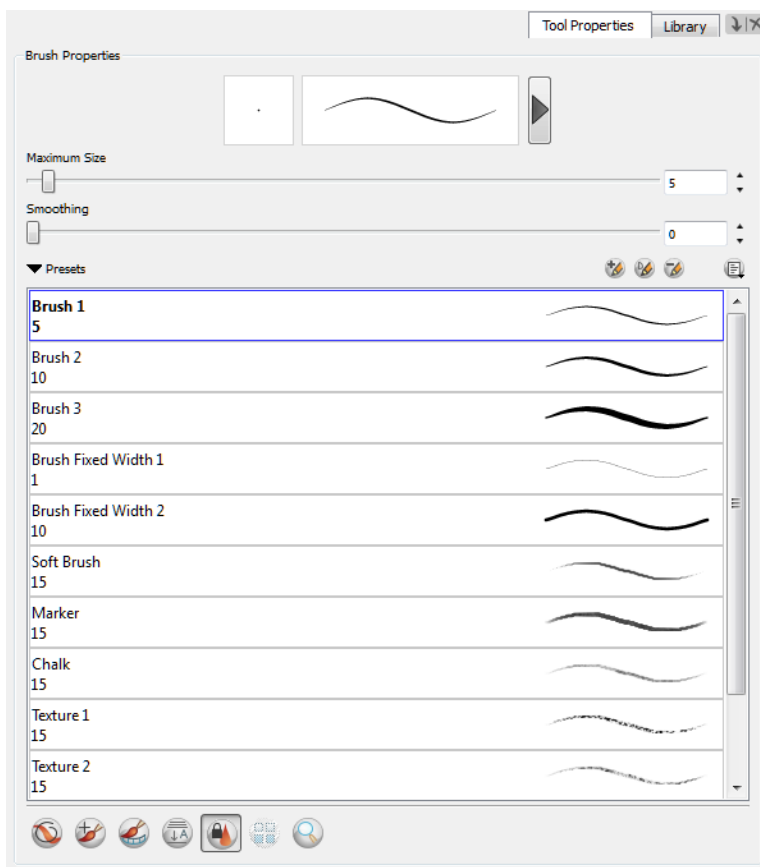
The last colour you select while using the **Brush** tool is recalled the next time you select the **Brush** tool.

## Related Topics

- [Brush Tool Options](#) below

# Brush Tool Options

When you select the **Brush**  tool, its properties and options appear in the **Tool Properties** view.




These are the options available for the Brush tool:

- [Normal Brush Mode](#) on the next page
- [Draw Behind](#) on page 167
- [Repaint Brush Mode](#) on page 167
- [Create Colour Art Automatically](#) on page 167
- [Auto-Flatten Mode](#) on page 167
- [Respect Protected Colour](#) on page 168
- [Use Stored Colour Gradient](#) on page 168

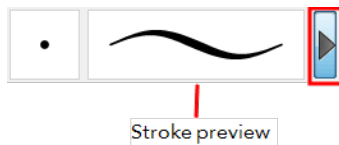
- [Drawing Magnifier](#) on page 168
- [Brush Styles](#) on page 169
- [Dynamic Brush](#) on page 169
- [Brush Tool Options](#) on the previous page
- [Brush Tool Options](#) on the previous page
- [Brush Tool Options](#) on the previous page
- [Brush Tips](#) on page 169
- [Brush Tool Options](#) on the previous page
- [Line Texture](#) on page 169

## Normal Brush Mode

The **Normal Brush Mode**  creates contour lines as you draw, adding each brush lines on top of the last ones.

## Previewing the Stroke

The Preview area lets you see a preview of the stroke that will be produced after you customize the different parameters in the Tool Properties view.



## Maximum Size and Smoothing

This is where you set the minimum and maximum sizes of your drawing tool which will produce the thick and thin effect on your stroke. This works with the pressure sensitivity of a pen tablet.


- **Maximum and Minimum Size:** Defines the maximum width of the stroke.
- **Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the centre line.

## Brush Presets

Brush presets are created by saving the properties of the current brush to a new preset, which you can reuse for repeated tasks. You can create as many brush presets as you need.


## Draw Behind



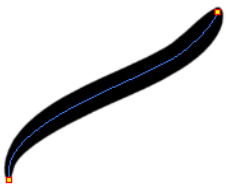
When the **Draw Behind**  mode is enabled, the lines you draw will appear behind the art that already exists.

## Repaint Brush Mode



The **Repaint Brush**  is used to repaint zones that have already been painted, it will not affect empty zones or pencil lines. It also automatically flattens each of its brush lines so it does not add new brush lines on top of existing ones. You can use this mode to paint tones or highlights onto your character.

## Create Colour Art Automatically




As you draw in the **Line Art** layer, the **Create Colour Art Automatically**  automatically creates the corresponding strokes in the **Colour Art** layer.

## Auto-Flatten Mode

When enabled, the **Auto-Flatten** mode automatically flattens the new lines created with the existing artwork as you draw in the Drawing or Camera view. Brush strokes will flatten with brush strokes and pencil lines will flatten with pencil lines.

## Respect Protected Colour


The **Respect Protected Colour**  option prevent the colours you marked as protected in the **Colour** view to be repainted using the **Repaint Brush** mode or any of the painting tools.



Refer to [Protecting Colours](#) on page 345 to learn how to use the **Protect Colour** feature.

---

## Use Stored Colour Gradient

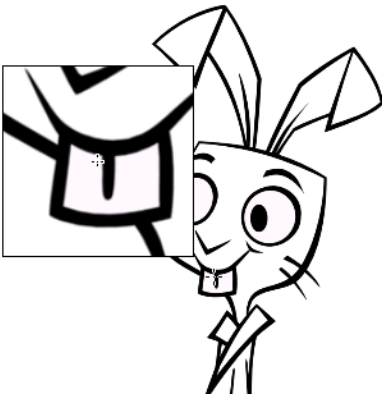
The **Use Stored Colour Gradient**  option makes your tool use the previously stored gradient position. This way, every new brush line or colour fill will use the stored gradient position.




Refer to [Storing Your Favourite Gradient or Texture Settings](#) on page 340 to learn how to use the Store Colour Gradient option.

---

## Drawing Magnifier



The **Drawing Magnifier**  tool allows you to magnify portions of your drawing. When this option is enabled, you can hover over your drawings to see a close up of your lines in the **Magnifier** box.



This feature only works in the **Drawing** view.


---



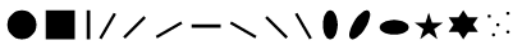
## Brush Styles

A variety of brush styles are provided allowing you to create and save your own. This way you can create brushes with precise sizes and parameters and save them so you can draw and design—see [Brush Styles](#) below

## Dynamic Brush

A **Dynamic Brush**  can be created to allow you to draw using patterns created from your artwork—see [Dynamic Brush](#) on page 171

## Brush Tips



In this drop-down menu, you can find a variety of tip shapes from round and square ones to star shaped, select the one you need.

## Line Texture

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can draw with a textured line. Textured lines are a mixed bitmap image contained in a vector frame. This allows you to sketch as if you are drawing on paper.



Refer to the [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174 topic to learn everything about line texture and its parameters.

## Related Topics

- [How to Draw](#) on page 131
- [Drawing with the Brush Tool](#) on page 164
- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174
- [Working with Thickness Stencils](#)

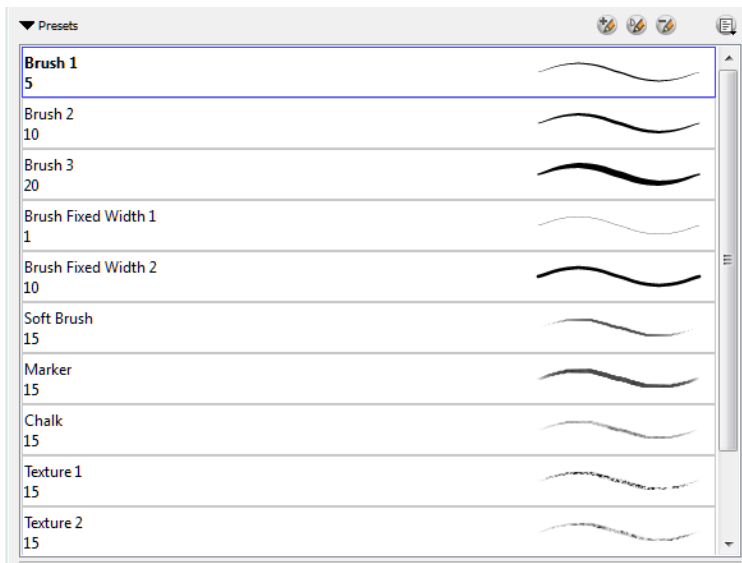
## Brush Styles

You can create your own brush styles.

- [Selecting a Brush Style](#) on the next page
- [Adding a Brush Style](#) on the next page
- [Brush Styles](#) above
- [Deleting a Brush Style](#) on page 171
- [Brush Styles](#) above

## Selecting a Brush Style

A variety of brush styles are provided allowing you to create and save your own. This way you can create brushes with precise sizes and parameters and save them so you can draw and design.



To select a brush style:




- In the Tool Properties, select a brush style from the Brush Presets section.

## Adding a Brush Style

To create a brush preset:



Make sure your current brush has the settings you would like in your preset.


1. Do one of the following:
  - In the Brush view, click the New Brush  button.
  - From the Brush  menu, select **New Brush Preset**.
  - In the Properties window of the tool you are using, click the  button in the upper-left corner—see [Viewing Tool Properties on page 1](#).
2. In the New Preset window, type a name for your new brush preset.  
The new brush is added to the end of the list of brush preset.



Brush presets cannot be updated. However you can select a preset, which applies those properties to the current brush. Then you can modify the properties, and create a new preset with the new properties. If desired, you can delete the old preset.



Renaming a brush can make it easier to identify and access the brushes you use most frequently.

#### To rename a brush:

1. In the Tool Properties view, select a brush to rename.
2. From the Brush  menu, select **Rename Brush**.
3. Type in a new name for the brush.

#### Deleting a Brush Style


##### To delete a brush preset:

1. Select the brush preset you want to delete.
2. Do one of the following:
  - In the Brush Preset view, click the Delete Brush  button.
  - From the Brush Preset  menu, select **Delete Brush**.

#### Related Topics

- [Brush Tool Options on page 165](#)

#### Dynamic Brush

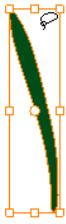
A **Dynamic Brush**  can be created to allow you to draw using patterns created from your artwork. Create a new **Dynamic Brush** to copy a pattern you have drawn to reproduce it quickly. You can create dynamic brushed using either a single pattern or a multiple one that will automatically switch through the patterns as you draw.




##### To create a new dynamic brush:

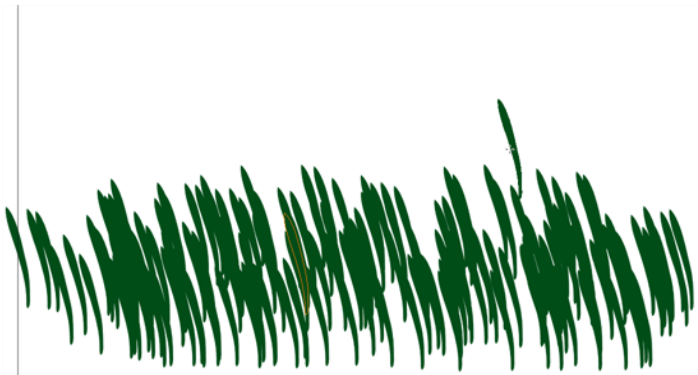
1. In the Tools toolbar, select a drawing tool.
2. In the Drawing or Camera view, draw the pattern you want to use as your **Dynamic Brush** stamp.




3. In the Tools toolbar, click the **Select**  tool and select the parts of the drawing you want to repeat.

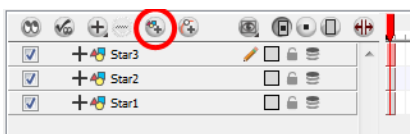


4. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Brush**  tool.
5. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Add Dynamic Brush**  button to add your selection as a new dynamic brush preset.
6. Click the **Rename Brush Style**  button. From the Brush menu, select **Rename Brush**.  
The Rename Preset dialog box opens.
7. Type in a name for the new dynamic brush and click OK.
8. In the Camera or Drawing view, start drawing with your dynamic brush to quickly repeat a pattern.

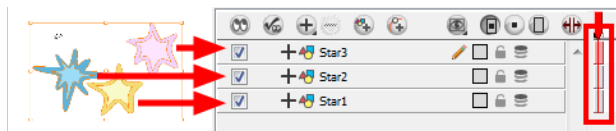


**To create a dynamic brush with multiple drawings:**

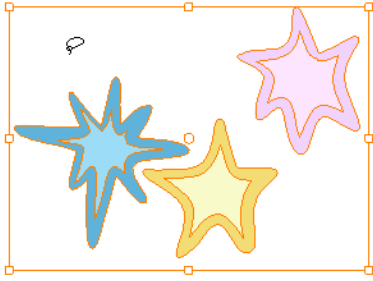
1. In the Timeline view, click the **Add Drawing Layers**  button to create as many layers as patterns you want in your dynamic brush. It is recommended to rename your layers.




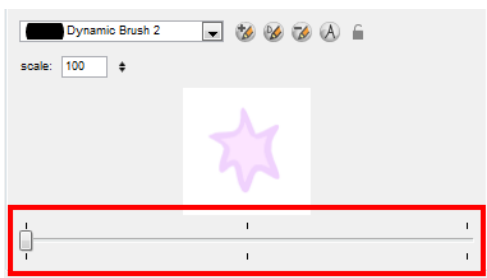
2. In the Camera view, draw your individual pattern on a separated layer.



3. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
4. In the Camera view, select all the drawings you want to add to your new dynamic brush.



5. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Brush**  tool.
6. Click the **Add Dynamic Brush**  button to add your selection as a new Dynamic Brush preset.



7. Click the **Rename Brush Style**  button. From the Brush menu, select **Rename Brush**.

The Rename Preset dialog box opens.

8. Type in a name for the new dynamic brush and click OK.
9. In the Camera or Drawing view, start drawing with your dynamic brush to quickly repeat a pattern. When you use this brush, you will cycle through the drawings.



## Related Topics

- [Brush Tool Options](#) on page 165

# Drawing with Line Texture



In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can use the **Brush**  tool to draw with bitmap textured lines.

In the Brush Tool Properties view, you will find a series of default textured brushes but you can also create your own collection by importing either PSD or TGA files in the **Pen** list.



The textured brush only work with the Brush tool. It does not work with the Pencil, Line, Ellipse, Polyline or Rectangle tools.

---


## Related Topics

- [How to Draw with Texture](#) below
- [Adjusting the Line Texture Parameters](#) on page 1
- [Creating Texture Brushes](#) on page 176
- [Erasing Textured Lines](#) on page 177
- [Hiding the Line Texture](#) on page 179
- [Adjusting the Line Texture Opacity](#) on page 180

## How to Draw with Texture

To draw with textured lines, use the **Brush** tool and the correct pen in the list. You can also draw with pencil line texture—see [Pencil Line Texture](#) on page 158

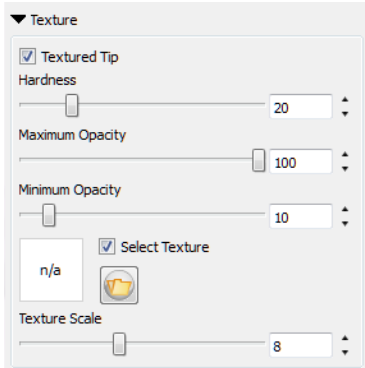
**To draw with textured lines:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Brush  tool or press [Alt]+[B].

- In the Tool Properties view, select a brush and click the Arrow button to open the Brush Properties view.



- In the Texture section, select the **Select Texture** option.



- Set the following parameters:

- ▶ **Hardness:** The hardness value corresponds to the smoothness of the line edge. The lower the value, the more blurry and smooth the line edge will be. The higher the value, the sharper the line edge will be.



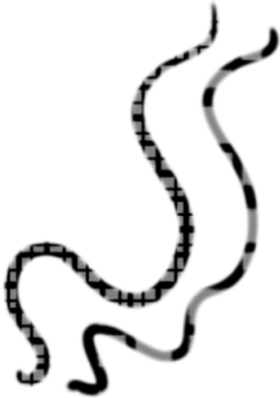
- ▶ **Minimum Opacity:** This value corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is very light. Values closer to 0 produce a more transparent line.



- ▶ **Maximum Opacity:** This value corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is heavy. Values closer to 1 produce a more opaque line.
- ▶ **Select Texture:** Lets you use and select a texture for your brush. The thumbnail displays the texture currently in use. You can also browse for a texture file to import. Browsing for a texture file in a brush already using texture will replace the file currently in use, although it will not replace the texture in the lines already drawn.



- ▶ **Texture Scale:** Changes the size of the texture in the lines you draw. If you are using a plaid texture, the squares will be larger if you increase the value and smaller if you decrease it.



5. In the Camera or Drawing view, start drawing.



## Related Topics

- [Drawing with the Brush Tool on page 164](#)
- [Pencil Line Texture on page 158](#)

## Creating Texture Brushes


To create your own texture brush, you must prepare your tiled texture file in a third-party software, such as Adobe Photoshop. If your image has transparency in it, it will be supported. The texture file must be either a .PSD or .TGA file.

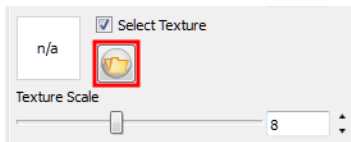




It is recommended that you maintain your texture resolution between 100 x 100 pixels and 400 x 400 pixels.

### To create a texture brush:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Brush  tool or press [Alt]+[B].
2. In the Texture section, select the **Select Texture** option.
3. Click the Folder button and browse for a bitmap texture file.



4. In the Tool Properties view, click the New Brush  button to add a new brush to your list.




The colour of your texture will not be used. Instead, the dark and light areas will be used to determine the alpha in your texture. The current colour swatch will be used in conjunction with the pattern and alpha in your texture.


5. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw some lines and adjust the parameters to fit the style you are looking for.

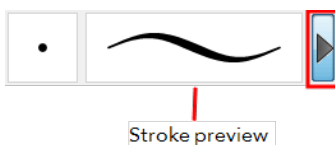
### Related Topics

- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174

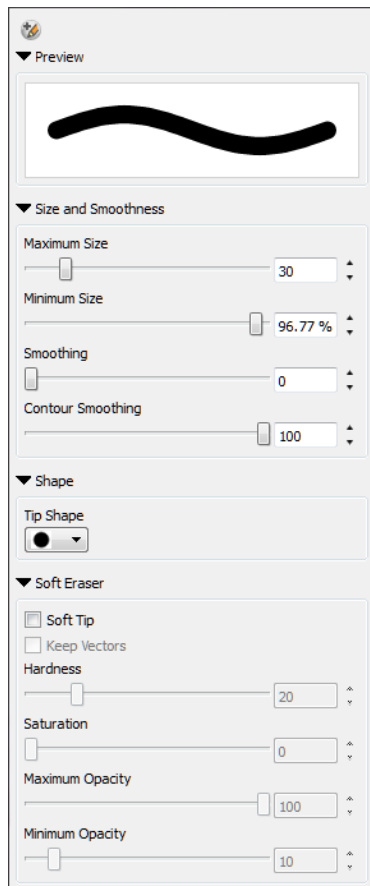
## Erasing Textured Lines

When you use the **Eraser** tool to erase a portion of a textured line, the vector frame is cut straight and you lose the feather created while drawing with the **Brush** tool. In Toon Boom Animate Pro, a special option in the **Eraser**  tool lets you create a soft edge on your textured lines. You can also cut or keep the vector frame as is.

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Eraser**  tool, press [Alt] + [E].
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the arrow button.

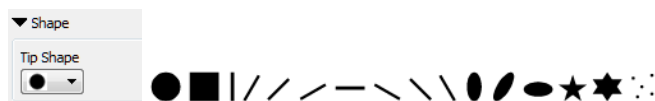


The Brush Properties panel opens.



### 3. Adjust the following:

- ▶ **Maximum/Minimum Size:** Defines the minimum and maximum width of the stroke.
- ▶ **Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the centre line.
- ▶ **Contour Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the contour boundaries (around the line). Lower values mean that the line will appear as you draw it (with more control points added along the centre line). Higher values mean that the line will be smoothed out (removing control points from the centre line).
- ▶ **Tip Shape:** Lets you select a shape for the tip of the eraser. There are a variety of tips to choose from: round, square, oval, star-shaped and more.



- ▶ **Soft Tip:** Gives the tip of your stroke a soft edge.
- ▶ **Keep Vectors:** Keeps your vector frames and does not cut them.
- ▶ **Hardness:** The hardness value corresponds to the smoothness of the line edge. The lower the value, the more blurry and smooth the line edge will be. The higher the value, the sharper the line edge will be.
- ▶ **Saturation:** Corresponds to the intensity of line color.
- ▶ **Maximum Opacity:** Corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is heavy. Values closer to 1 produce a more opaque line.
- ▶ **Minimum Opacity:** Corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is very light. Values closer to 0 produce a more transparent line.

4. In the Camera or Drawing view, erase your textures lines.

## Related Topics

- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174

## Hiding the Line Texture




Sometimes you need to hide the line texture to see the complete vector frame around your lines. This is useful to help you see any dirt floating around your drawing.



To hide the line texture in the **Camera** view, you must enable the **Show Drawing on Top** option. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Current Drawing on Top**. Refer to the [Show Current Drawing on Top](#) on page 139 section to learn more about this option.

### To hide the line texture:

1. If you are in the Camera view, select the **Show Current Drawing on Top** option.
2. In the Camera or Drawing View  menu, select **View > Show > Hide Line Texture** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [H] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [H] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Drawing with Line Texture](#) on page 174

## Adjusting the Line Texture Opacity



At some point, you may want to modify the look of a textured drawing. Maybe you find that your line is too smooth or too faint. You can adjust those parameters by using the **Adjust Line Texture Opacity** command.



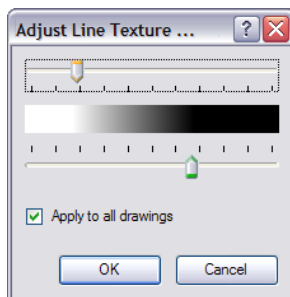
To be able to adjust the line texture in the **Camera** view, you must select the **Show Drawing on Top** option. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Current Drawing on Top**.

Refer to the [Show Current Drawing on Top on page 139](#) section to learn more about this option.

### To adjust the line texture opacity:

1. If you are in **Camera** view, select the **Show Current Drawing on Top** option.
2. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawing whose opacity you want to adjust.
3. In the Camera or Drawing view menu, select **Drawing > Adjust Line Texture Opacity**.

The Adjust Line Texture Opacity dialog box opens.

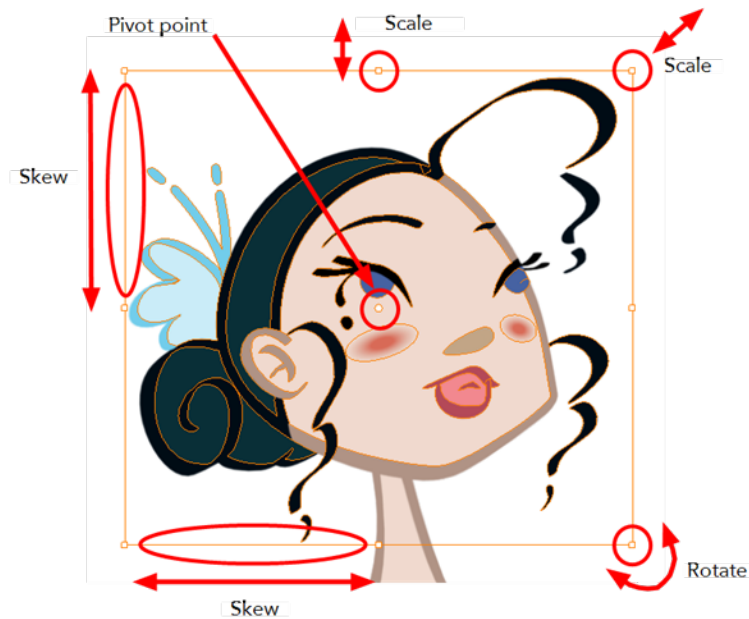



4. Drag the sliders toward the middle to increase the contrast and opacity of the textured lines.
5. If you want to apply the changes to all drawings exposed on the layer, select the **Apply to All Drawings** option and click OK.

### Related Topics


- [Drawing with Line Texture on page 174](#)

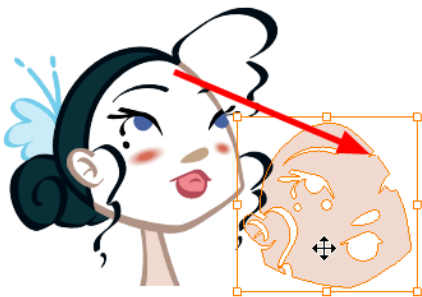
# Selecting Drawing Objects



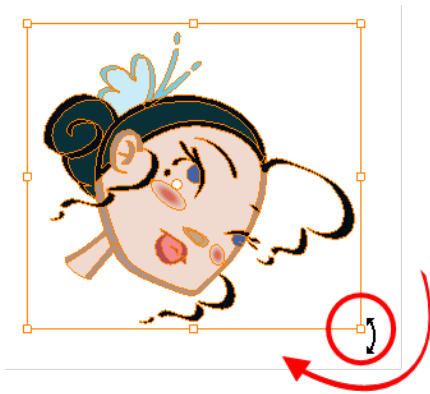
The **Select**  tool is used to select drawing strokes in both the Drawing and Camera views, and apply basic transformations, such as repositioning, rotating, scaling or skewing, using the different handles of the bounding box.

## To select with the Select tool:

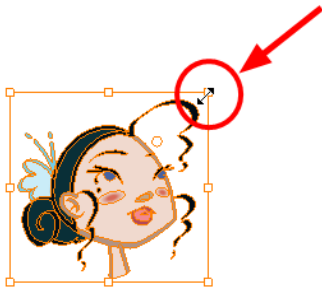
1. In the Timeline view, select the cell on which you want to select drawing objects.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
3. In the **Camera** or **Drawing** view, select the drawing objects.
  - You can select all the drawing objects in a drawing by using the **Select All** command or press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
4. To deform or reposition a selection:
  - To **reposition**, click on the selected drawing object and drag the selection to a new area.



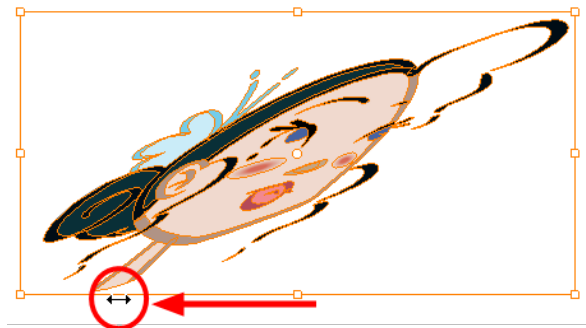
- To **rotate**, grab the selection box handle and rotate it.



- ▶ To **scale**, pull or push either on the top, side, bottom or corner control point. Hold down [Shift] to lock the selection's ratio.



- ▶ To **skew**, drag sideways or up and down the sides or top and bottom segments, between the control points.



## Inverting a Selection

*Not available in Harmony Paint.*

Sometimes, when you want to select multiple objects, while leaving one unselected, it can be handy to select only the stroke, or line, that you do not want included in your selection. Then, you can invert that selection so that everything else becomes selected. This can be quite a time saver.

### To invert a selection:

1. From the top menu, select **Edit > Invert Selection** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [I] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [I] (Mac OS X).




You can also find the Invert Selection option in the **Camera View** or **Drawing View** menu by selecting **Edit > Invert Selection**.

## Related Topics

- [Repositioning a Pivot Point](#) below
- [Selection on Single or Multiple Layers](#) on the next page
- [Select Tool Properties](#) on the next page

## Repositioning a Pivot Point

Some of the transformations such as rotation, scale, skew and flip, are done relative to the position of the pivot point. You can temporarily reposition this pivot point for a transformation using the **Select**  tool.

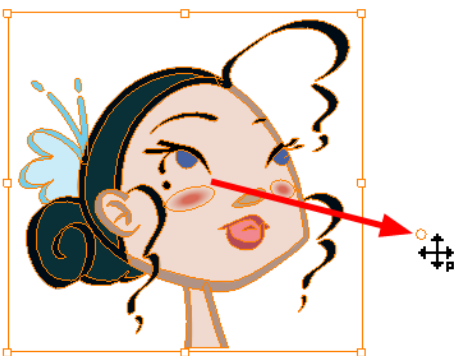
**To temporarily reposition the pivot point:**

1. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the drawing object you want to transform.  
The pivot point appears in the middle of your selection.



2. Click the pivot point and drag it to a new position.

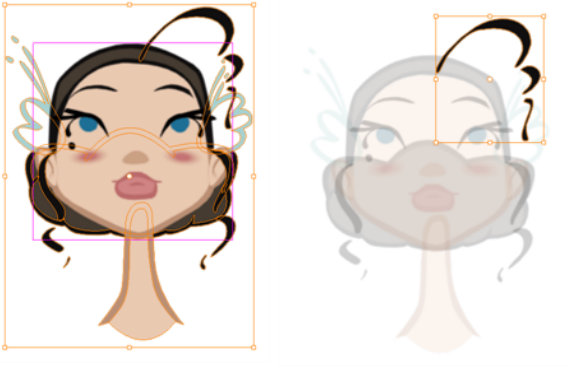
This becomes the new position of the pivot point for the current transformation and will remain there until you make a new selection.



## Related Topics


- [Selecting Drawing Objects on page 181](#)
- [Select Tool Properties below](#)

# Selection on Single or Multiple Layers



By default, when you draw a selection box in the Camera view, the Select tool will select all the drawing strokes and symbols in its path. If you would prefer the Select tool to only select the current drawing and not the other visible drawings, you can enable the Select Tool Works on Single Drawing preference.

### To enable the Select Tool Works on Single Drawing preference:

1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X). The Preferences dialog box opens.
2. In the Camera tab, go to the **Tools** section and select the **Select Tool Works on Single Drawing** preference and click OK.
3. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or select [Alt] + [S].
4. In the Camera view, select your drawing.

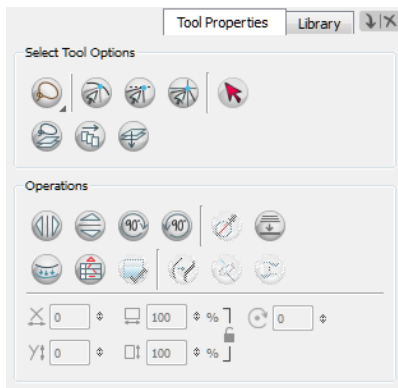
## Related Topics

- [Selecting Drawing Objects on page 181](#)
- [Select Tool Properties below](#)

# Select Tool Properties

When you choose the **Select**  tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.





## Related Topics

- [Lasso and Marquee on the next page](#)
- [Snap Options on the next page](#)
- [Permanent Selection on page 187](#)
- [Apply to All Drawings in Layer on page 187](#)
- [Apply to All Visible Drawings on page 187](#)
- [Apply to Line and Colour Art on page 188](#)
- [Select by Colour on page 188](#)
- [Flip Horizontal and Vertical on page 189](#)
- [Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW on page 189](#)
- [Pencil to Brush on page 189](#)
- [Smooth on page 190](#)
- [Flatten on page 190](#)
- [Store Colour Gradient on page 190](#)
- [Merge Pencil Lines on page 191](#)
- [Reverse Pencil Thickness on page 191](#)
- [Create Colour Art from Line Art on page 191](#)
- [Distribute to Layers on page 192](#)
- [Width and Height on page 193](#)
- [Offset X and Y on page 193](#)
- [Angle on page 193](#)
- [Adjusting the Pencil Line Thickness on page 193](#)
- [Adjusting the Pencil Line Style on page 194](#)
- [Pencil Stencils on page 194](#)
- [Adding Texture to a Pencil Line on page 194](#)
- [Adjusting the Text Selection on page 195](#)




## Lasso and Marquee

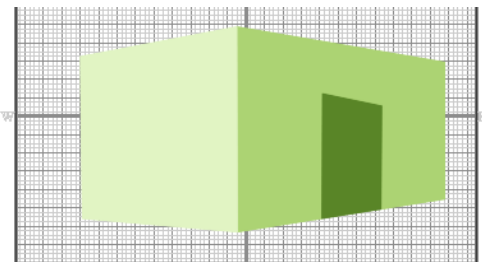
Choose between the **Lasso**  and **Marquee**  options to change the selection style of the tool.

- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current mode to the other.



## Snap Options

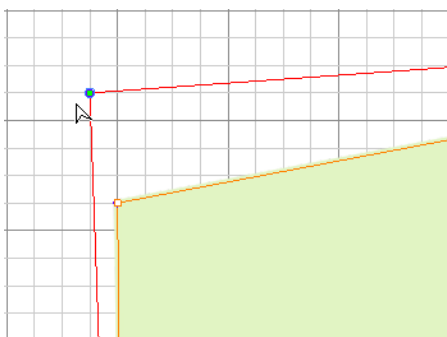
You can enable different snapping modes to help you when repositioning your drawings using the **Select** tool.

-  **Snap to Contour:** Snaps your selection or point to any line you position it on. As soon as you move it close enough to another line, your point or selection will snap to it.
-  **Snap and Align:** Snaps the selected anchor point to any existing line while displaying temporary rulers as a guide that you can also snap your anchor point to.
-  **Snap to Grid:** Snaps your selection following the currently enabled grid.



### To snap to grid:

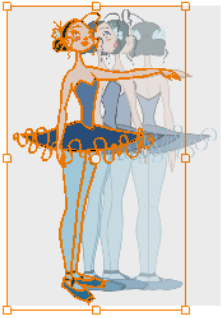
- Select **View > Grid > Show Grid** to display the grid in the **Camera** or **Drawing** view or press [Ctrl] + ['] (Windows) or [⌘] + ['] (Mac OS X).
  - Select **View > Grid > Square Grid, 12 Field Grid** or **16 Field Grid** for your current needs.
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Contour Editor**  tool or press [Alt] + [Q].
  2. In the Contour Editor Tool Properties view, click the **Snap to Grid**  button.
  3. In the Camera or Drawing view, click on an anchor point you want to snap following the grid, and drag it to the desired position and release.






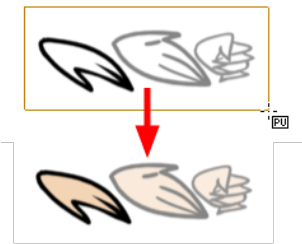
Refer to the [Grid on page 248](#) topic to learn more about the **Grid** feature.


## Permanent Selection



The **Permanent Selection**  option is used to maintain a selection over multiple drawings. Once this option is enabled, the selection zone made using the **Select** tool will remain as you navigate through drawings from a layer and drawings from other drawing layers. This option can be used to simultaneously delete artwork inside or outside of the selection on several drawings when combined with the **Apply to Multiple Drawings** option.

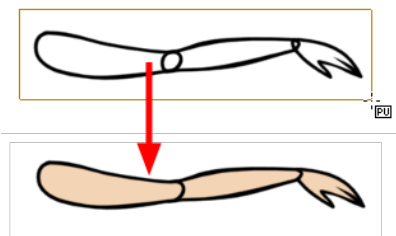
## Apply to All Drawings in Layer




The **Apply to All Drawings in Layer**  option is used to perform an action on all the drawings contained in a


layer. For example, you could enable the option to paint a section on all the drawings simultaneously. The **Apply Tool to All Drawings** option must be activated before performing the action and will stay enabled only for the next action.

## Apply to All Visible Drawings

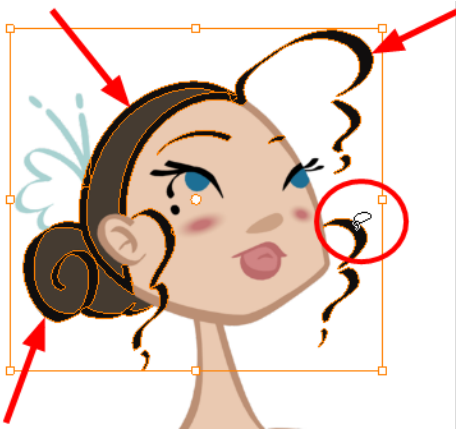


The **Apply to All Visible Drawings**  option is used to perform an action on all the visible drawings in the Camera view. This option is not available in the Drawing view.

## Apply to Line and Colour Art

The **Apply to Line and Colour Art**  option uses the concept of Line Art and Colour Art layers. Use this option to apply an action such as selecting or resizing a drawing on both Line Art and Colour Art layers, as well as the Overlay and Underlay layers.

## Select by Colour





The **Select by Colour** mode lets you select all the zones in your drawing painted with the same colour.



Only the zones painted with the **SAME** colour swatch will be selected. If another zone is coloured with the exact same RGB value (same colour), but not painted with the same colour swatch, it will not be selected.

---

### To select areas by colour:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Select by Colour**  button.
3. In the view, click on any zone in your drawing.  
All zones of the same colour are selected.
4. Click the Select tool again to return to the regular Select mode.

## Flip Horizontal and Vertical



The **Flip Horizontal**  and **Flip Vertical**  operations flip the current selection horizontally or vertically.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Flip Horizontal** and **Flip Vertical**.

## Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW

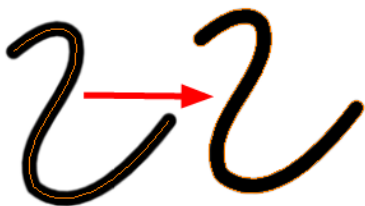



The **Rotate 90 Degrees CW**  and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**  operations rotate the current selection 90 degrees clockwise or counter-clockwise.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Rotate 90 Degrees CW** and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**.

Or press [Ctrl] + [7] and [Ctrl] + [9] (Windows) or [⌘] + [7] and [⌘] + [9] (Mac OS X).

## Pencil to Brush




The **Pencil to Brush**  operation converts the selected centreline pencil strokes into contour strokes brush lines.

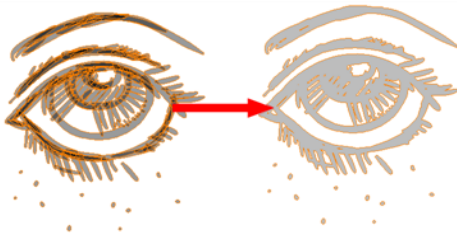
From the top menu, select **Drawing > Convert > Pencil Lines to Brush** or press [&].


## Smooth



The **Smooth**  operation lets you smooth out selected drawing strokes and remove extra points. You can also access this feature through the top menu, by selecting **Drawing > Optimize > Smooth** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [S].



## Flatten



The **Flatten**  operation is used to merge drawing objects and brush strokes into a single layer. If you draw new lines to fix a drawing or a line with many brush strokes, it can be useful to flatten them all into a single shape. By default, lines are drawn one on top of each other, if you intend repainting the lines or modifying their shape, it will be easier if they are flattened.

You can also access this feature through the top menu, by selecting **Drawing > Optimize > Flatten**. The [Alt] + [Shift] + [F].

## Store Colour Gradient

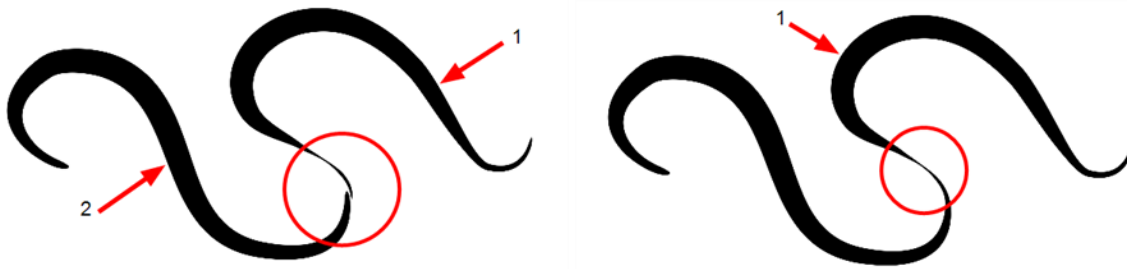
Use the **Store Colour Gradient**  operation to record the selected gradient's position. This reuses the stored position of the gradient when drawing new brush lines or painting colour zones. Enable the **Use Stored Colour Gradient**  option in the **Paint** or **Brush Tool Properties** view to do this.




Refer to [Drawing with the Brush Tool on page 164](#) or [Painting Using the Paint Tool on page 318](#) to learn how to use the **Use Stored Colour Gradient** option.

---

## Merge Pencil Lines

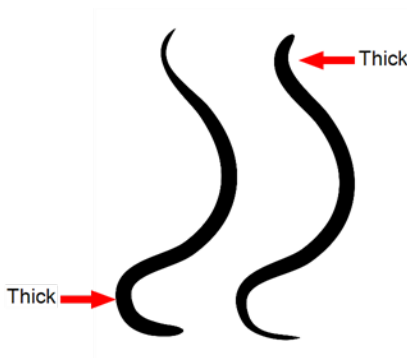



Pencil lines are central vector lines and it might be difficult to match pencil line's tips properly to align them and make it look like it is one single line. With the **Select** tool, you can select several pencil lines and merge them as one single object using the **Merge Pencil Lines**  option. It will take your lines and adjust the ends to form one single line.



Points have to be close enough to be merge. If there is a big gap between the lines, they will not be merged.

## Reverse Pencil Thickness



The **Reverse Pencil Thickness**  option will invert the thick and thin section on a selected pencil line. This option will take the thickest size on the line and apply it to the thinnest, and it will apply the thinnest to the thickest.

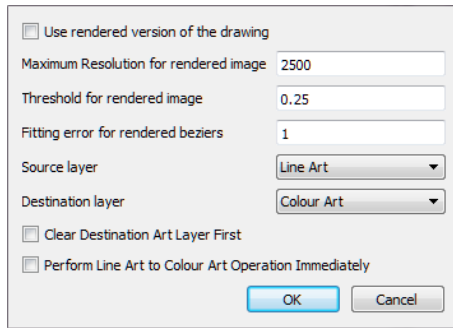
## Create Colour Art from Line Art

You can configure the **Create Colour Art from Line Art** option to suit your requirements.

**To configure the Create Colour Art from Line Art option:**

1. In the Select tool Tool Properties view, [Shift] + click the **Create Colour Art from Line Art**  button.

The Configure Line Art to Colour Art dialog box opens.






- ▶ **Use rendered version of the drawing:** This option will render the drawing and vectorize it to calculate the position of the centreline that will produce the colour art stroke.
- ▶ **Maximum Resolution for rendered image:** The size of the rendered image.
- ▶ **Threshold for rendered image:** The value of grey processed to create the rendered vectorized arts.
- ▶ **Fitting error for rendered beziers:** This value represents how precise the fitting of the colour art zone in relation to the line art will be.
- ▶ **Source layer:** Select the layer (**Line Art**, **Colour Art**, **Underlay** or **Overlay**) you want the colour art to be created from.
- ▶ **Destination layer:** Select the layer (**Line Art**, **Colour Art**, **Underlay** or **Overlay**) you want the colour art to be created on.
- ▶ **Clear Destination Art Layer First:** Enable this option if you already have artwork on the destination layer and you want the content to be deleted before the colour art is added into it.
- ▶ **Perform Line Art to Colour Art Operation Immediately:** Enable this option to perform the **Create Colour Art from Line Art** command when you click OK.



Refer to [Line Art and Colour Art Layers](#) on page 346 to learn more about the **Line Art** and **Colour Art** concept.

## Distribute to Layers

The **Distribute to Layers**  option is used to separate the selected art strokes and send them to new drawing layers. In the Camera view, once you have drawn your artwork, you can select the strokes you want to distribute using the **Select**  tool and click on the **Distribute to Layer**  button, you can also select **Drawing >**

**Distribute to Layer.** It will automatically take every stroke from the drawing selection made in the **Camera** view and separate them into a different layer for each. If an artwork is composed of several strokes, you must group them using **Edit > Group > Group** before using the **Distribute to Layer** option. This option cannot be done from the **Drawing** view.

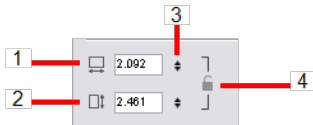


Refer to [Break Down: Distribute to Layers](#) on page 757 to learn more about the **Distribute to Layer** option.



## Width and Height

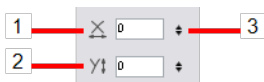
Use the **Width** and **Height** operation fields to enter specific values to resize the selected shape with precision.



1. **Width:** Type a width value in this field to resize the width of your selection.
2. **Height:** Type a height value in this field to resize the height of your selection.
3. **Up/Down arrows:** Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in either the Width or Height value field.
4. **Lock icon:** Click on the lock icon to lock or unlock the ratio between the width and height values.

## Offset X and Y

Use the **Offset X** and **Offset Y** operation fields to enter specific values and precisely reposition the selected shape.



1. **X:** Type an offset value in this field to reposition your selection along the X-axis.
2. **Y:** Type an offset value in this field to reposition your selection along the Y-axis.
3. **Up/Down arrows:** Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in either the X or Y value field.

## Angle

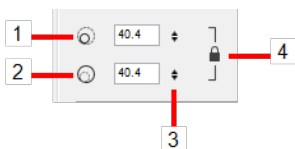
Use the **Angle** operation fields to enter specific values and accurately rotate the selected shape.



1. **Angle:** Type a degree value in this field to rotate your selection.
2. **Up/Down arrows:** Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in the **Angle** value field.

## Adjusting the Pencil Line Thickness

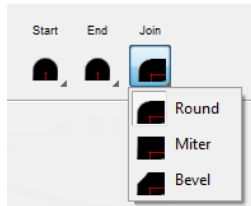
Use the **Adjusting the Pencil Line Thickness** operation field to resize the selected centreline strokes. This operation is not permitted on contour line shapes, such as brush strokes or shape fills.



1. **Minimum Size:** Type a value in this field to set the minimum thickness of the selected centreline stroke.
2. **Maximum Size:** Type a value in this field to set the maximum thickness of the selected centreline stroke.

3. **Up/Down arrows:** Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in the Thickness value field.
4. **Lock Proportions:** Enable the Lock option for the minimum and maximum size to increase and decrease in proportion.

## Adjusting the Pencil Line Style



You can adjust the start, end, and joint style of a selected pencil line.

- **Start:** Lets you select the style of the start tip, which is the first tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **End:** Lets you select the style of the end tip, which is the last tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **Join:** Lets you select the joint style. The joints are where the line curves abruptly. You could also define the Join style as the corner style. You can choose between Round, Mitre and Bevel style.

## Pencil Stencils



Toon Boom Animate Pro gives you the flexibility to change the style and thickness of your pencil lines even after they are drawn. You can apply preset pencil stencils or create your own.



Refer to [Working with Thickness Stencils](#) on page 155, [Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool](#) on page 157 and [Working with Thickness Stencils](#) on page 155.

---

## Adding Texture to a Pencil Line

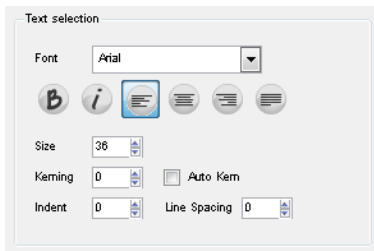
Pencil lines support texture. Once a pencil line is drawn, you can apply a preset texture or load your own. Textures are independent from pencil stencils.



Refer to [Pencil Line Texture](#) on page 158, [Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line](#) on page 163 and [Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool](#) on page 161.

## Adjusting the Text Selection

When you select text with the Select tool, the tool properties will display the Text tool options on the bottom of the view. You can also press [Alt] + [9] to display only the Text properties in the Tool Properties view.

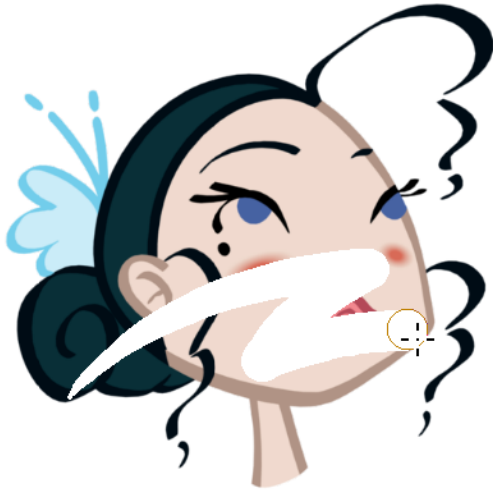


Refer to [Formatting the Text](#) on page 238 to learn more about the **Text** tool **Tool Properties**.

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148
- [Pencil Tool Options](#) on page 149
- [Working with Thickness Stencils](#) on page 155
- [Pencil Line Texture](#) on page 158

# Erasing Parts of a Drawing




The **Eraser** tool is pressure sensitive, like the Brush tool, giving you more precision when erasing parts of a drawing.

**To erase with the Eraser tool:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want to erase.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*



2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Eraser**  tool or press [Alt] + [E].
3. In the Camera or Drawing view, start erasing.



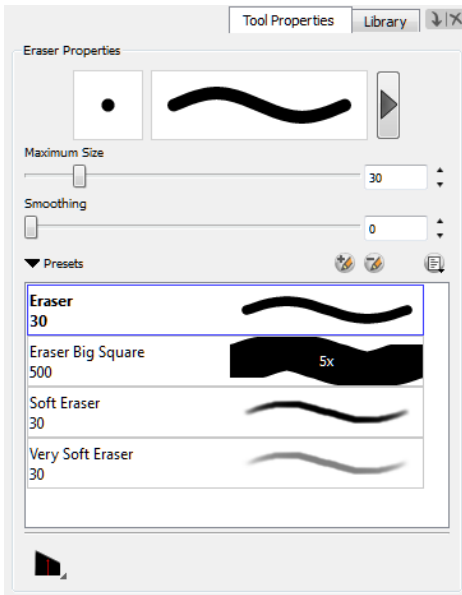
You can also use the Select tool to select drawing objects and delete them instead of erasing.

## Related Topics

- [Eraser Tool Options](#) below
- [Selecting Drawing Objects](#) on page 181

## Eraser Tool Options

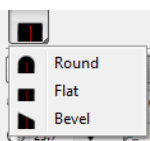
When you select the **Eraser**  tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.



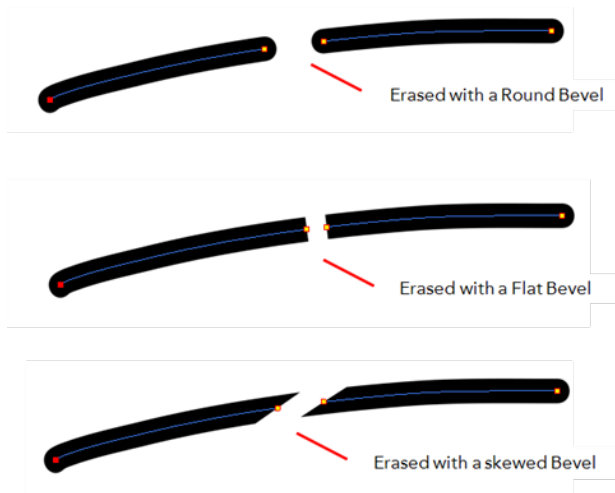
## Related Topics

- [Tip Style below](#)
- [Eraser Tool Options on the previous page](#)
- [Eraser Tool Options on the previous page](#)
- [Eraser Tool Options on the previous page](#)
- [Eraser Tool Options on the previous page](#)
- [Eraser Tool Options on the previous page](#)
- [Eraser Styles on page 199](#)
- [Eraser Blur Parameters on page 199](#)

## Tip Style

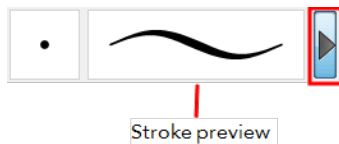


The Tip Style option affects the erased tip of pencil lines made with the Pencil, Ellipse, Rectangle, Line, and Polyline tools.



## Previewing the Stroke

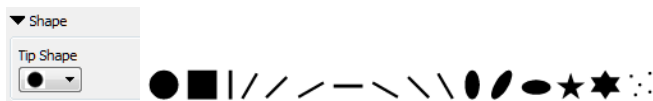
The Preview area lets you see a preview of the stroke that will be produced after you customize the different parameters in the Tool Properties view.



## Maximum Size and Smoothing

This is where you set the minimum and maximum sizes of your drawing tool which will produce the thick and thin effect on your stroke. This works with the pressure sensitivity of a pen tablet.

- ▶ **Maximum/Minimum Size:** Defines the minimum and maximum width of the stroke.
- ▶ **Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the centre line.
- ▶ **Contour Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the contour boundaries (around the line). Lower values mean that the line will appear as you draw it (with more control points added along the centre line). Higher values mean that the line will be smoothed out (removing control points from the centre line).
- ▶ **Tip Shape:** Lets you select a shape for the tip of the eraser. There are a variety of tips to choose from: round, square, oval, star-shaped and more.



- ▶ **Soft Tip:** Gives the tip of your stroke a soft edge.
- ▶ **Keep Vectors:** Keeps your vector frames and does not cut them.
- ▶ **Hardness:** The hardness value corresponds to the smoothness of the line edge. The lower the value, the more blurry and smooth the line edge will be. The higher the value, the sharper the line edge will be.
- ▶ **Saturation:** Corresponds to the intensity of line color.

- **Maximum Opacity:** Corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is heavy. Values closer to 1 produce a more opaque line.
- **Minimum Opacity:** Corresponds to the transparency of the brush when the pressure is very light. Values closer to 0 produce a more transparent line.

## Brush Presets

Brush presets are created by saving the properties of the current brush to a new preset, which you can reuse for repeated tasks. You can create as many brush presets as you need.

## Eraser Styles

The Eraser tool uses the same Brush Styles as the Brush tool. Toon Boom Animate Pro provides a variety of eraser styles and allows you to create and save your own. It is a good idea to create and save eraser brushes with precise sizes and parameters to draw and design—see [Brush Styles on page 169](#)

## Eraser Blur Parameters

Since Toon Boom Animate Pro lets you draw with textured lines and create feathered edges on them, you may also want to erase with smooth edges instead of the solid vector based eraser. The Eraser Blur Parameters allow you to adjust the smoothness of your eraser for the textured lines—see [Erasing Textured Lines on page 177](#)






# Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool

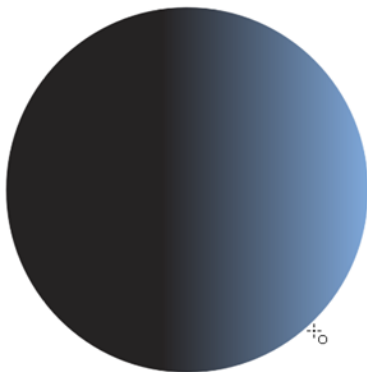


The **Contour Editor** tool is powerful, it allows you to add, remove or modify points on a vector line and to control them with Bezier handles. It is used to correct line shapes and to modify a single part of a colour zone. If a line is too thin or has a gap in it, you can modify and correct it with the **Contour Editor** tool. This tool can also be used to create elaborate shapes.

The Contour Editor displays vector points around a shape and the central vector points in a pencil line. Pulling or pushing on these points adjusts the brush's line thickness. Points can be selected and deleted. Each point has two Bezier handles used to correct the curves between two points. Shapes can be modified by pulling and pushing directly on the segment between the points. You can use it to perfect a central shape pencil line, a contour shape brush line or even create an elaborate shape from a basic ellipse, or square.

## To reshape with the Contour Editor tool:

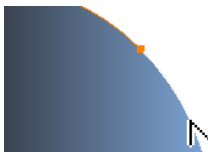
1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell in which you want to draw.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
2. In the Tools toolbar, select a shape    tool.
3. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Ellipse** mode  button, click the **Auto Fill** mode  button and set the pencil size to 0.
4. In the Drawing or Camera view, draw a circle.



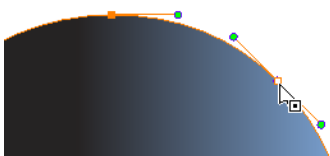
5. In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Contour Editor**  tool or press [Alt] + [Q].



6. In the Drawing or Camera view, click the line to reshape it.



7. Select one or several points by clicking on them or circling around.

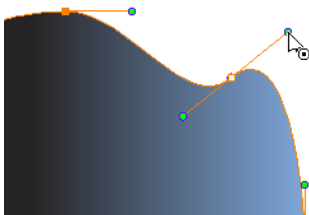


8. Press [Delete] to delete a selected point.

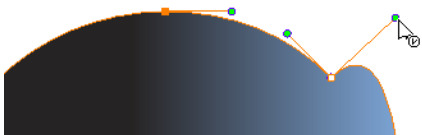
Press [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click on the contour to add a new point to adjust the contour.

9. To modify the shape, you can:

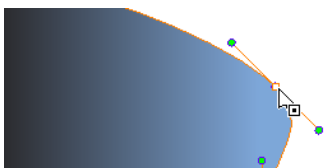
- ▶ Pull on the Bezier handle. Both point's handles will move as one.



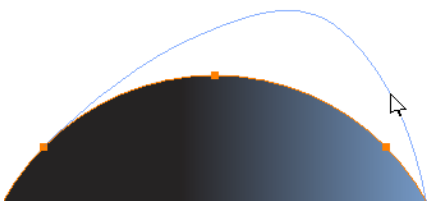
- ▶ Hold down the [Alt] key and pull on one of the Bézier handles. The point's handle will move independently from the other one.



- ▶ Move the selected points to a new area.



- ▶ Pull directly on the line between two points. No selection is necessary. Holding down the [Shift] key will limit the contour modification to the curve between the two first points.



- ▶ If an anchor point has no visible Bezier, hold down the [Alt] key to get them.



To add control points, press [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click the line.  
To remove control points, select the control point and press [Delete].

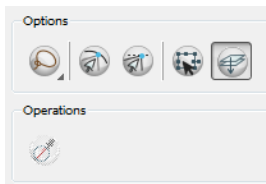
---

## Related Topics

- [Contour Editor Tool Properties](#) below

# Contour Editor Tool Properties

When you select the **Contour Editor**  tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.



These are the options available for the Contour Editor tool:

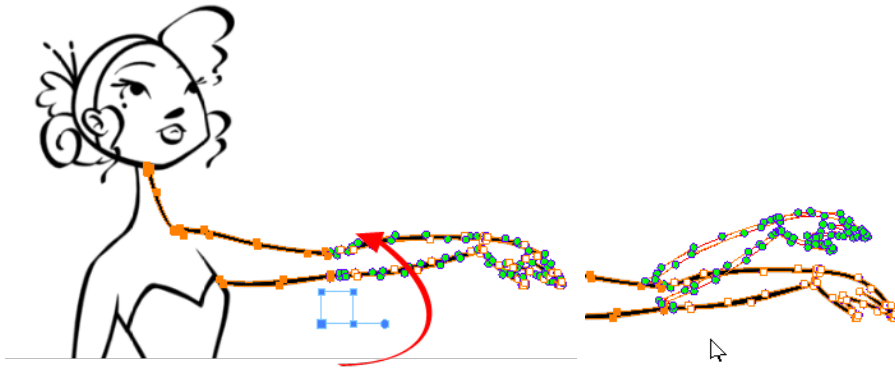
- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Show Contour Editor Controls](#) on the facing page
- [Apply to Line and Colour Art](#) on the facing page
- [Snap to Contour](#) on the facing page
- [Snap and Align](#) on page 204
- [Smooth Selection](#) on page 204


## Lasso and Marquee

Choose between the **Lasso**  and **Marquee**  options to change the selection style of the tool.


- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current mode to the other.

## Show Contour Editor Controls

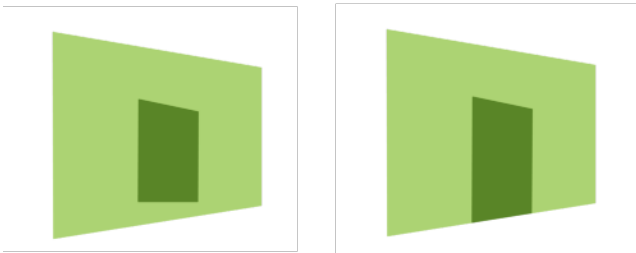



Use the **Show Contour Editor Controls**  option to show the contour editor controls. You can use these controls to scale, reposition and rotate the selected anchor points.

## Apply to Line and Colour Art



The **Apply to Line and Colour Art**  option uses the concept of Line Art and Colour Art layers. Use this option to apply an action such as selecting or resizing a drawing on both Line Art and Colour Art layers, as well as the Overlay and Underlay layers.

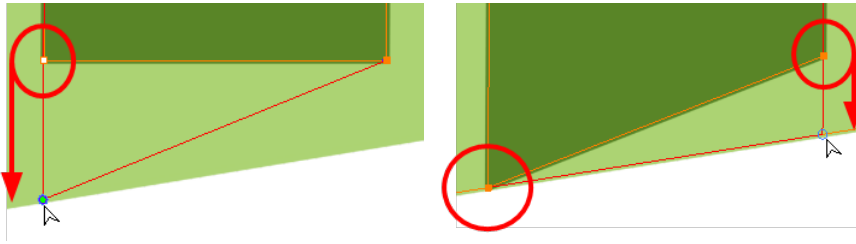
## Snap to Contour



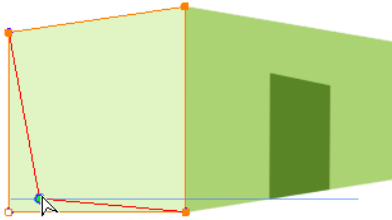
The **Snap to Contour**  option will snap the selected anchor point to any line you position it on.


**To snap two shapes together:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Contour Editor**  tool or press [Alt] + [Q].
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Snap to Contour**  button.
3. In the Camera or Drawing view, click on an anchor point you want to snap to the other shape, drag it on top of the contour line area and release it.





## Snap and Align



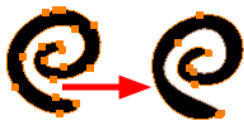
The **Snap and Align**  option lets you snap the selected anchor point to any existing line while displaying temporary rulers as a guide that you can also snap your anchor point to.


**To snap and align:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Contour Editor**  tool or press [Alt] + [Q].
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Snap and Align**  button.
3. In the Camera or Drawing view, click on an anchor point you want to snap, drag it until a ruler is displayed, position it on the ruler or on the contour line and release.



## Smooth Selection

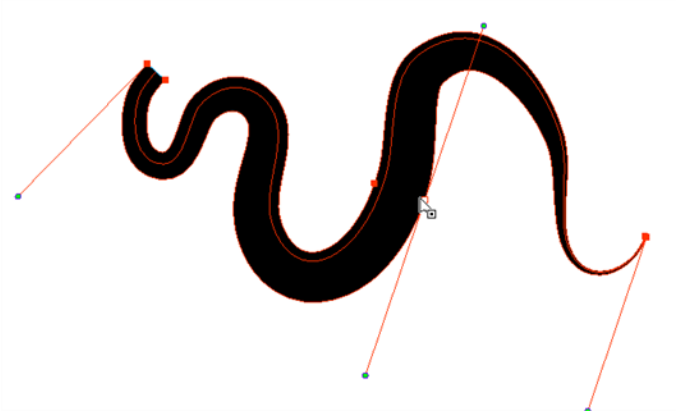



The **Smooth**  operation lets you smooth out selected drawing strokes and remove extra points. You can also access this feature through the top menu, by selecting **Drawing > Optimize > Smooth** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [S].

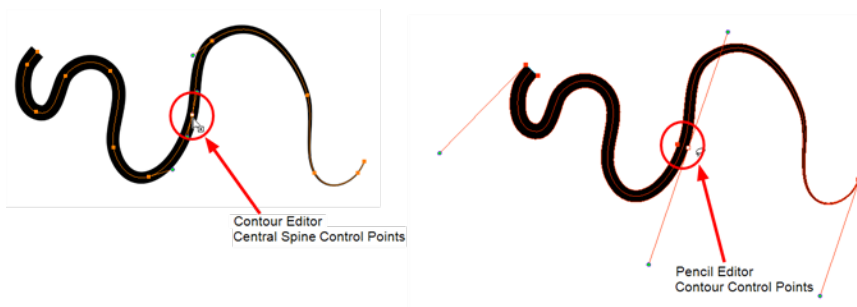
## Related Topics

- [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool](#) on page 200


# Reshaping Pencil Lines with the Pencil Editor Tool

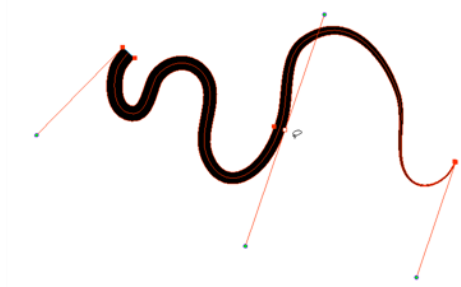


The **Pencil Editor**  tool is used to modify the thick and thin contour of a pencil line. A pencil line is a central vector shape. The shape control points are located all along the central spine allowing to adjust the stroke curve and position. When using the **Contour Editor** tool, you will be able to reposition the spine of the stroke. When using the **Pencil Editor** tool, you will be able to adjust the thick and thin areas of the line.

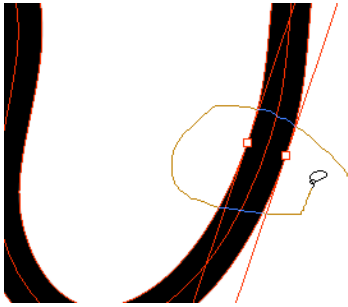


## To use the Pencil Editor tool:

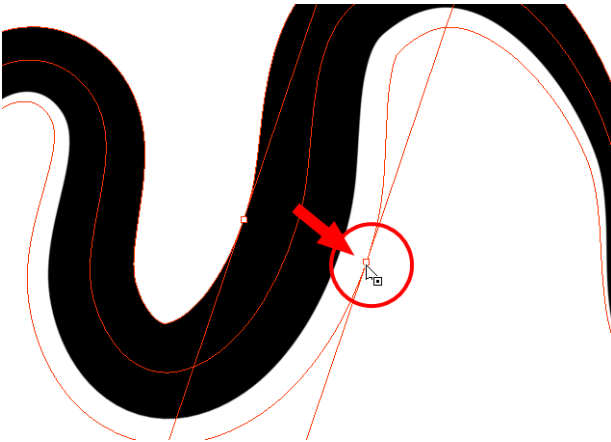
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil Editor**  tool located in the **Contour Editor** drop-down menu or press [Alt] + [W].
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select a pencil line and click the line to reshape it.



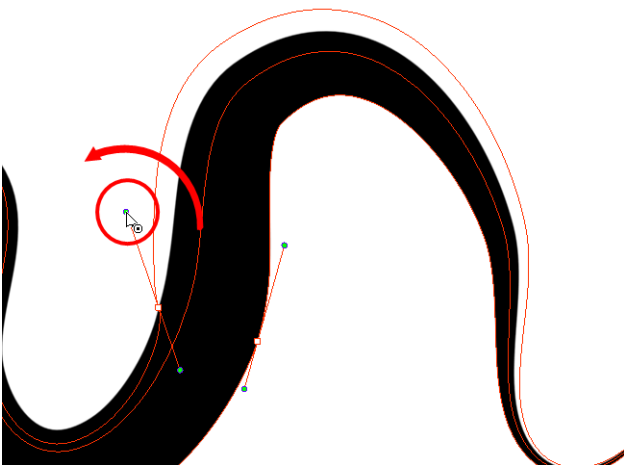
3. Select one or several points by clicking them or circling around.



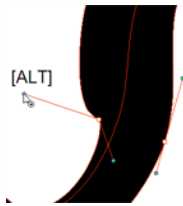
4. Press [Delete] to delete a selected point.
5. Press [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click the central spine to add a set of points to adjust the contour.
6. To modify the shape, you can:
  - ▶ Move the selected points to a new area. If you select matching points on each side of the line, holding the Shift key will move them both. This way you can thicken or thin a line from both side at the same time.



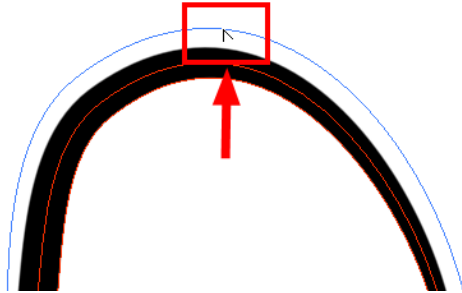
- ▶ Pull on the Bezier handle. Both points' handles will move as one.



- ▶ Hold [Alt] down and pull on one of the Bezier handles. The point's handle will move independently from the other one.



- ▶ Pull directly on the line in-between two points. No selection is necessary. Holding down the [Shift] key will limit the contour modification to the curve between the two first points.



- ▶ If an anchor point has no visible Bezier, hold down the [Alt] key to get them.

## Related Topics

- [Pencil Editor Properties](#) below

# Pencil Editor Properties

When you select the **Pencil Editor** tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.

These are the options available for the Pencil Editor tool:

- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Smooth](#) on the facing page
- [Pump Pencil Pressure](#) on the facing page
- [Deflate Pencil Pressure](#) on the facing page
- [Merge Pencil Lines](#) on page 210
- [Reverse Pencil Thickness](#) on page 210
- [Adjusting the Pencil Line Style](#) on page 210
- [Working with Thickness Stencils](#) on page 155
- [Adding Texture to a Pencil Line](#) on page 211

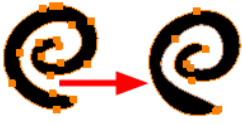
## Lasso and Marquee


Choose between the **Lasso**  and **Marquee**  options to change the selection style of the tool.

- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current mode to the other.

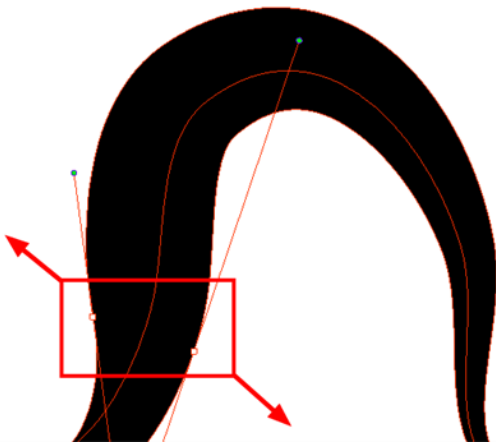



## Smooth



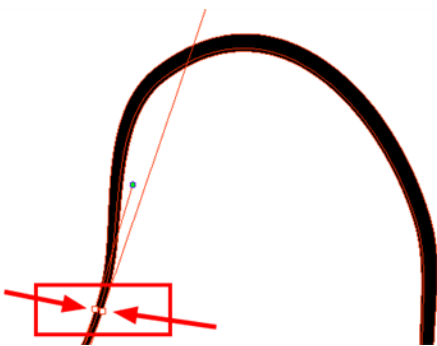
The **Smooth**  operation lets you smooth out selected drawing strokes and remove extra points. You can also access this feature through the top menu, by selecting **Drawing > Optimize > Smooth** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [S].


## Pump Pencil Pressure



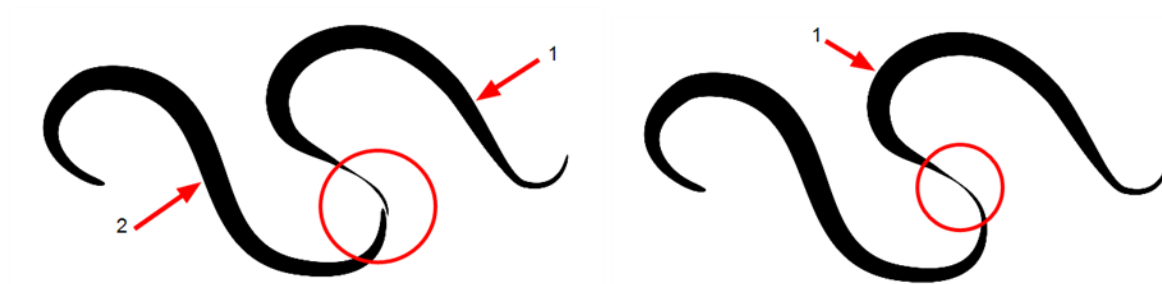
The **Pump Pencil Pressure**  option is used to increase the line thickness of a selected area on a pencil line.


## Deflate Pencil Pressure



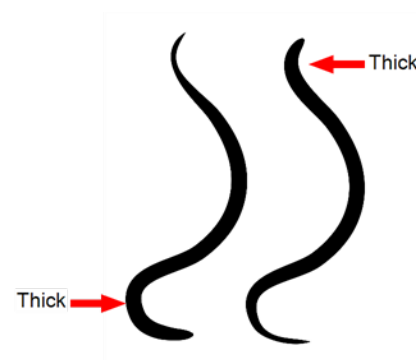
The **Deflate Pencil Pressure**  option is used to decrease the line thickness of a selected area on a pencil line.


## Merge Pencil Lines



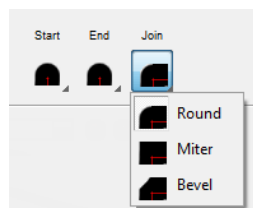
Pencil lines are central vector lines and it might be difficult to match pencil line's tips properly to align them and make it look like it is one single line. With the **Select** tool, you can select several pencil lines and merge them as one single object using the **Merge Pencil Lines**  option. It will take your lines and adjust the ends to form one single line.

## Reverse Pencil Thickness



The **Reverse Pencil Thickness**  option will invert the thick and thin section on a selected pencil line. This option will take the thickest size on the line and apply it to the thinnest, and it will apply the thinnest to the thickest.

## Adjusting the Pencil Line Style

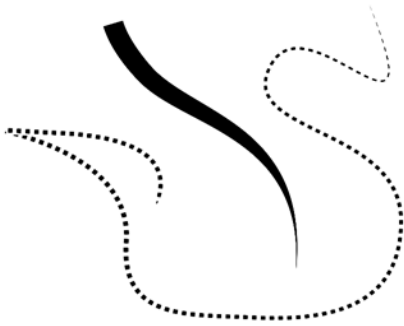


You can adjust the start, end, and joint style of a selected pencil line.

- **Start:** Lets you select the style of the start tip, which is the first tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.

- **End:** Lets you select the style of the end tip, which is the last tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **Join:** Lets you select the joint style. The joints are where the line curves abruptly. You could also define the Join style as the corner style. You can choose between Round, Mitre and Bevel style.

## Thickness Stencils



Toon Boom Animate Pro gives you the flexibility to change the style and thickness of your lines even after they are drawn. You can apply preset thickness stencils or create your own.



Refer to [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#), [Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool on page 157](#) and [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#).

---

## Adding Texture to a Pencil Line

Pencil lines support texture. Once a pencil line is drawn, you can apply a preset texture or load your own. Textures are independent from Pencil thickness stencils.



Refer to [Pencil Line Texture on page 158](#), [Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line on page 163](#) and [Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool on page 161](#).

---

## Related Topics

- [Reshaping Pencil Lines with the Pencil Editor Tool on page 206](#)

# Drawing with Shapes






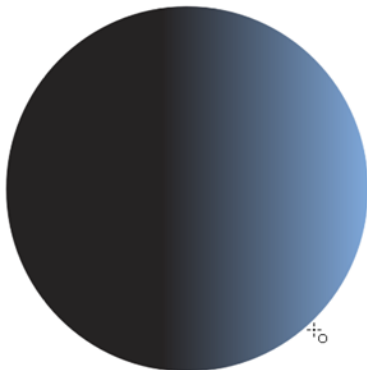
In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can use the shape tools to draw with circles, lines and squares. You can also easily reshape a square or circle into a much more complex drawing such as these butterfly wings.



Refer to [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool on page 200](#) and [Reshaping Pencil Lines with the Pencil Editor Tool on page 206](#) topics to learn more about the Contour Editor and Pencil Editor tools.

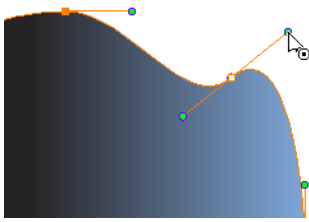
## To draw with a Shape tool:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want to draw.
2. In the Tools toolbar, select a shape  tool.
3. In the Tool Properties view, you can switch between the different shapes mode.. Select either the **Ellipse**  or **Rectangle**  tool.
4. In the Camera view, click and drag your mouse to draw the shape.



- ▶ Hold down [Shift] to lock the rectangle or the ellipse ratio to 1:1.
- ▶ Hold down [Alt] to draw the rectangle or ellipse from its centre.
- ▶ Hold down [Shift] to snap the line every 15 degrees.
- ▶ Hold down [Alt] to snap the starting or end point of the line to a close by stroke.

5. Use the **Contour Editor**  tool to deform your shape and create your drawing.

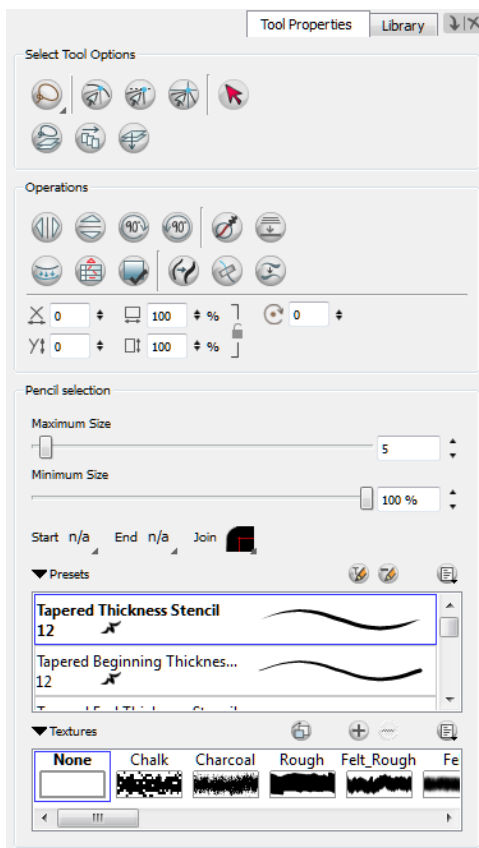


## Related Topics

- [Shape Tool Options](#) below

# Shape Tool Options

When you select a shape tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.






These are the options available for the shape tools:

- [Line, Rectangle and Ellipse](#) on the next page
- [Draw Behind](#) on the next page
- [Snap Options](#) on the next page
- [Line Building Mode](#) on page 215

- [Automatic Filling on the facing page](#)
- [Create Colour Art Automatically on page 216](#)
- [Auto-Flatten Mode on page 216](#)
- [Auto-Close Gap on page 216](#)
- [Use Stored Colour Gradient on page 217](#)
- [Keep Proportion on page 217](#)
- [Pencil Templates on page 217](#)
- [Thickness Adjustment on page 217](#)
- [Adjusting the Pencil Line Style on page 217](#)
- [Applying Texture to a Pencil Line on page 218](#)

## Line, Rectangle and Ellipse




Click on the    button corresponding to the shape you want. Click and drag your mouse to draw the selected shape. The shape tools create centre lines.

Using the **Ellipse** or **Rectangle** option, press [Shift] to create a perfect round or a perfect square and press [Alt] to create the shape from its centre.

Using the **Line** tool, press [Shift] to create a line which snaps-to every 15 degrees and then press [Alt] to connect the start or end point of that line to another nearby line. To create a curve in the line as you draw, hold down [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and drag to create a bend in the line.




## Draw Behind



When the **Draw Behind**  mode is enabled, the lines you draw will appear behind the art that already exists.

## Snap Options

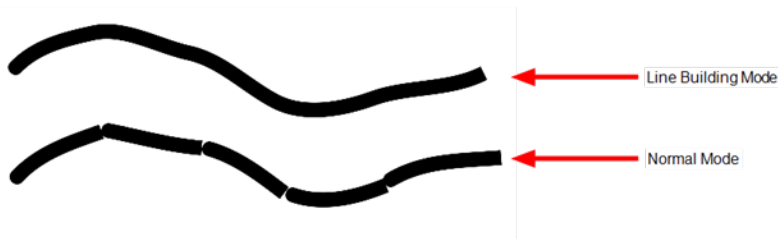
When drawing a shape, you can enable different snap modes to help you create your shape.


- The **Snap to Contour**  option snaps your shape to any line you position it on.
- The **Snap and Align**  option snaps the selected anchor point to any existing line, while displaying temporary rulers as a guide that you can also snap your anchor point to.
- The **Snap to Grid**  snaps your shape to the currently enabled grid.



Refer to the topic to learn more about the Grid feature.

## Line Building Mode



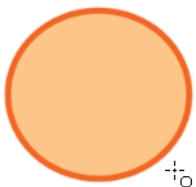
The **Line Building**  mode is very useful when drawing long lines and curves in small increments with pencil lines. As the pencil lines are central vector lines and it may be difficult to align the line tips perfectly to create a uniform stroke and close all gaps.


In this mode, you can draw lines in small increments and the tips merge into one single stroke.



This mode only works with pencil lines.

## Automatic Filling

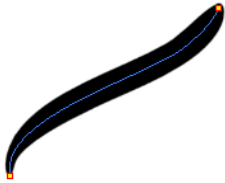


Use the **Automatic Filling**  option to automatically fill your shape with the selected colour as you draw. By default, the Shape tool creates the contour of an empty shape that you can later fill using the Paint tool.



Refer to [Selecting the Current Colour of a Tool](#) on page 316 to learn more about selecting a fill colour.

## Create Colour Art Automatically

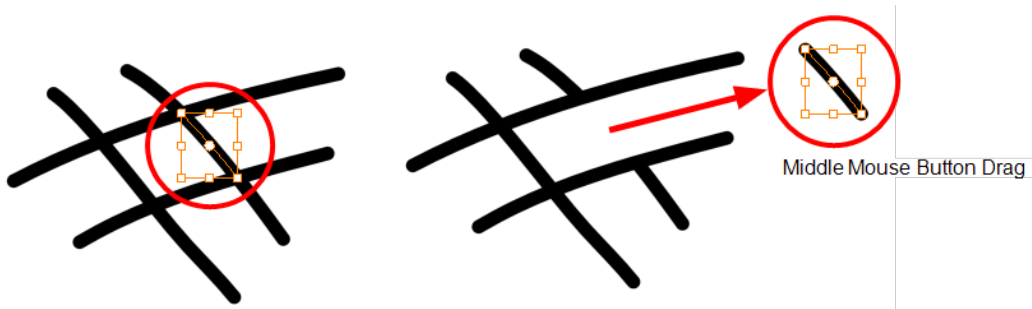


As you draw in the **Line Art** layer, the **Create Colour Art Automatically**  automatically creates the corresponding strokes in the **Colour Art** layer.

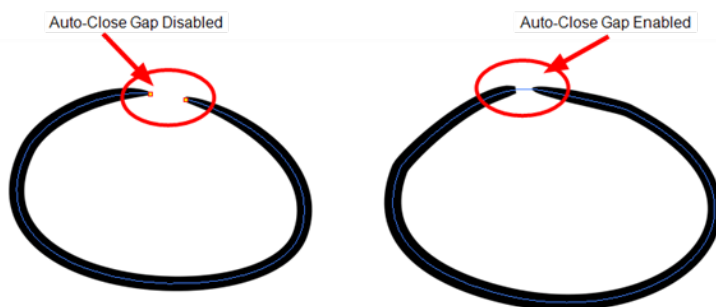
## Auto-Flatten Mode

When enabled, the **Auto-Flatten** mode automatically flattens the new lines created with the existing artwork as you draw in the Drawing or Camera view. Brush strokes will flatten with brush strokes and pencil lines will flatten with pencil lines.


Using the **Select** tool, you can use the **middle** mouse button to select a segment of flattened pencil line. Use this technique to create a nice finish to lines and corners in your artwork.



## Auto-Close Gap






When enabled, the **Auto-Close Gap**  mode automatically connects, with an invisible stroke, the pencil lines you draw close to each other in the Camera or Drawing view.



It is recommended to leave this option **ENABLED** when drawing with the Pencil tool.

## Use Stored Colour Gradient

The **Use Stored Colour Gradient**  option makes your tool use the previously stored gradient position. This way, every new brush line or colour fill will use the stored gradient position.

## Keep Proportion

Draw Circle

Draw Square

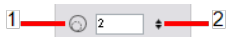
When the **Ellipse** or **Rectangle** mode is enabled in the **Tool Properties** view, the **Draw Circle** or **Draw Square** option appears. When selecting these options, the shape produced will either be a circle or a square. Holding down the [Shift] key as you create your shape will maintain proportion.

## Pencil Templates

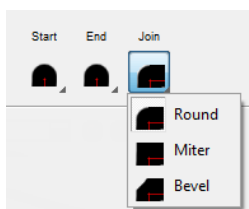
Toon Boom Animate Pro provides a variety of pencil templates and also lets you create and save your own. It is a good idea to create and save pencils with precise sizes and parameters when you draw and design.

You also have the possibility to apply different textures to your lines by either using the preset ones or importing your own—see [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#)

## Thickness Adjustment



### Adjusting the Pencil Line Style



You can adjust the start, end, and joint style of a selected pencil line.

- **Start:** Lets you select the style of the start tip, which is the first tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.

- **End:** Lets you select the style of the end tip, which is the last tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **Join:** Lets you select the joint style. The joints are where the line curves abruptly. You could also define the Join style as the corner style. You can choose between Round, Mitre and Bevel style.

## Applying Texture to a Pencil Line

Pencil lines support texture. Once a pencil line is drawn, you can apply a preset texture or load your own. Textures are independent from Pencil templates.



Refer to [Pencil Line Texture](#) on page 158, [Applying a Preset Texture to a Pencil Line](#) on page 163 and [Creating a Pencil Texture Template with the Select Tool](#) on page 161.

---

### Related Topics


- [Working with Thickness Stencils](#)

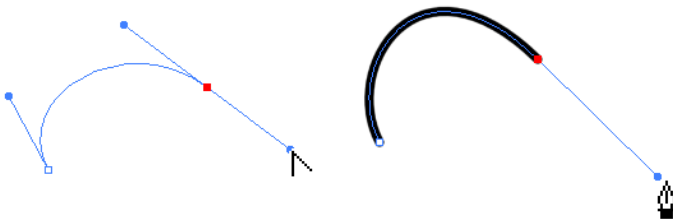
# Drawing with the Polyline Tool




The **Polyline** tool is used to draw shapes. It is a central vector type of line. To form a shape, you click to add a point and then, without releasing the mouse, pull the handle in the desired direction before adding the next point and repeat the operation. To edit the shape, you can use the Contour Editor tool.

## To draw with the Polyline tool:

1. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to draw.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Polyline**  tool or press [Alt] + [L].
3. In the Camera view, click and drag your mouse to create a point and a Bezier handle to shape your line.
  - Press [Alt] to pull only one handle, instead of two.
  - Press [Shift] to snap the handles to 45, 90, or 180 degrees.
4. Click again into a new area and drag the mouse to create a second point and Bezier handle.



5. Repeat the previous step until your shape is completed.
6. Press [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click to release the Polyline tool from the current path or shape that it is creating. Continue to use the tool to make multiple, independent paths or shapes.
7. If necessary, reshape the lines using the **Contour Editor**  tool.



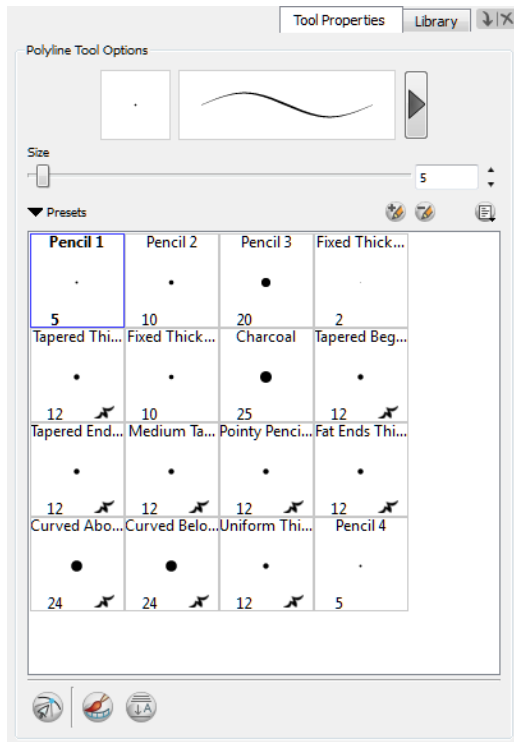
Refer to [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool on page 200](#) to learn more about the **Contour Editor** tool.

## Related Topics

- [Polyline Tool Options](#) below

# Polyline Tool Options

When you select the **Polyline** tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.

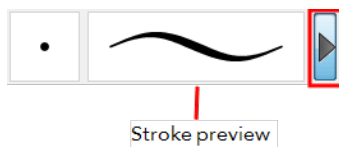


These are the options available for the Polyline tool:

- [Snap to Contour](#) on the facing page
- [Create Colour Art Automatically](#) on page 222
- [Auto-Flatten Mode](#) on page 222
- [Pencil Templates](#) on page 222

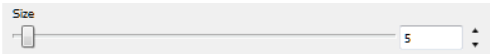
## Previewing the Stroke

The Preview area lets you see a preview of the stroke that will be produced after you customize the different parameters in the Tool Properties view.



## Size

The Size parameter lets you set the size of the polyline that you will draw.



## Polyline Presets

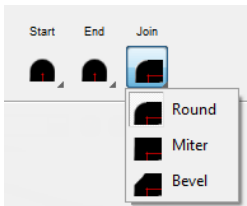
Polyline presets are created by saving the properties of the current tool to a new preset, which you can reuse for repeated tasks. You can create as many presets as you need.

## Size and Smoothness

This is where you set the minimum and maximum sizes of your drawing tool which will produce the thick and thin effect on your stroke. This works with the pressure sensitivity of a pen tablet.

- ▶ **Maximum/Minimum Size:** Defines the minimum and maximum width of the stroke.
- ▶ **Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the centre line.
- ▶ **Contour Smoothing:** Defines the number of control points added to the contour boundaries (around the line). Lower values mean that the line will appear as you draw it (with more control points added along the centre line). Higher values mean that the line will be smoothed out (removing control points from the centre line).

## Adjusting Polyline Style




You can adjust the start, end, and joint style of a selected pencil line.

- **Start:** Lets you select the style of the start tip, which is the first tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **End:** Lets you select the style of the end tip, which is the last tip you drew. You can choose between Round or Flat style.
- **Join:** Lets you select the joint style. The joints are where the line curves abruptly. You could also define the Join style as the corner style. You can choose between Round, Mitre and Bevel style.

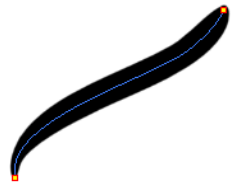
## Working with Line Textures

Like pencil lines, polylines support texture. Before drawing, you can select or import a texture and apply it to your lines. You can also change it afterwards using the Select tool. Textures are independent from pencil templates—see [Pencil Line Texture on page 158](#).

## Snap to Contour

The **Snap to Contour**  option will snap your selection to any line you position it on.

## Create Colour Art Automatically

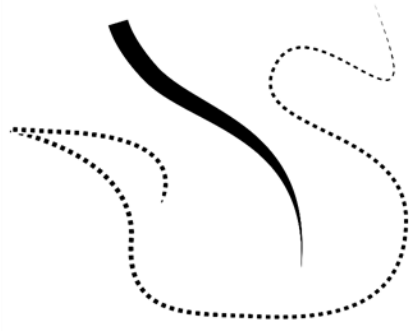


As you draw in the **Line Art** layer, the **Create Colour Art Automatically**  automatically creates the corresponding strokes in the **Colour Art** layer.

## Auto-Flatten Mode

When enabled, the **Auto-Flatten** mode automatically flattens the new lines created with the existing artwork as you draw in the Drawing or Camera view. Brush strokes will flatten with brush strokes and pencil lines will flatten with pencil lines.

## Pencil Templates



Toon Boom Animate Pro gives you the flexibility to change the style and thickness of your pencil lines even after they are drawn. You can apply preset templates or create your own.



Refer to [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#), [Creating a Pencil Thickness Stencil with the Select Tool on page 157](#) and [Working with Thickness Stencils on page 155](#).

---

## Related Topics

- [Drawing with the Polyline Tool on page 219](#)

# Drawing Using Invisible Lines





There are two different ways to draw invisible lines:

- [Pencil Tool](#) below
- [Stroke Tool](#) on the next page

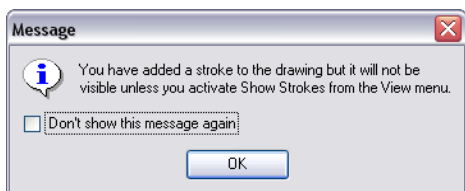
## Pencil Tool

Using the **Pencil** tool, you can draw as strokes only, meaning that the line will be invisible. This can be useful to draw tones and highlights directly on the character.

To draw invisible lines with the **Pencil** tool:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want to draw.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**  tool or press [Alt] + [/].
3. In the top menu, select **View > Drawing > Show Strokes**  or press [K].  
*In Harmony Paint, select **View > Show Strokes**.*
4. In the Tool Properties view, set the Pen Style size to 0. You can also adjust the smoothness.
5. In the Camera or Drawing view, start drawing.


If you forgot to enable the **Show Strokes** option before drawing, as soon as you draw a first stroke, a Message dialog box opens.





Select the **Don't Show This Message Again** option if you do not want the dialog box to notify you about the Show Strokes option. Click OK.

6. You can modify the stroke shape with the **Contour Editor**  tool.

# Stroke Tool

The **Stroke**  tool draws invisible lines only. You cannot add thickness to the line.

## To draw invisible lines with the Stroke Pencil tool:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want to draw.  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Stroke**  tool or press [Alt] + [V].
3. In the top menu, select **View > Show Drawing > Show Strokes**  or press [K].  
*In Harmony Paint, select a drawing in the **Drawing** panel.*
4. In the Tool Properties view, you can adjust the smoothness.
5. In the Camera or Drawing view, start drawing.

If you forgot to enable the **Show Strokes** option before drawing, as soon as you draw a first stroke, a Message dialog box opens.



Select the **Don't Show This Message Again** option if you do not want the dialog box to notify you about the Show Strokes option. Click OK.

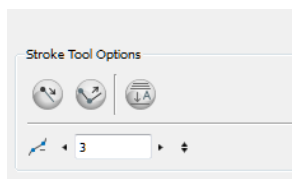
6. You can modify the stroke shape with the **Contour Editor**  tool.

## Related Topics

- [Stroke Tool Options](#) below
- [Show Strokes as Washed-out Colours](#)

# Stroke Tool Options

When you select the **Stroke** tool, its properties and options appears in the Tool Properties view.




Here are the options available for the Stroke tool:

- [Draw Stroke as Straight Lines](#) on the facing page
- [Connect Line Ends](#) on the facing page
- [Auto-Flatten Mode](#) on the facing page




- [Central Line Smoothness](#) below

## Draw Stroke as Straight Lines

Enable the **Draw Stroke as Straight Lines**  option if you want the new strokes that you will draw to be a perfect straight line. Disable the option if you want the stroke to follow the mouse gesture.


## Connect Line Ends

Enable the **Connect Line Ends**  option if you want the start or end point of your new stroke to connect to your existing strokes to make sure no gaps are left in your drawing.

## Auto-Flatten Mode

When enabled, the **Auto-Flatten** mode automatically flattens the new lines created with the existing artwork as you draw in the Drawing or Camera view. Brush strokes will flatten with brush strokes and pencil lines will flatten with pencil lines.

## Central Line Smoothness

You can modify the **Central Line Smoothness**  of your line using this option. This parameter smoothes the initial movement of your line. Increasing the value will result in a smoother line with fewer control points.

### Related Topics

- [Drawing Using Invisible Lines on page 223](#)
- [Show Strokes as Washed-out Colours](#)

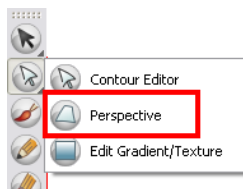
# Deforming a Drawing Using the Perspective Tool



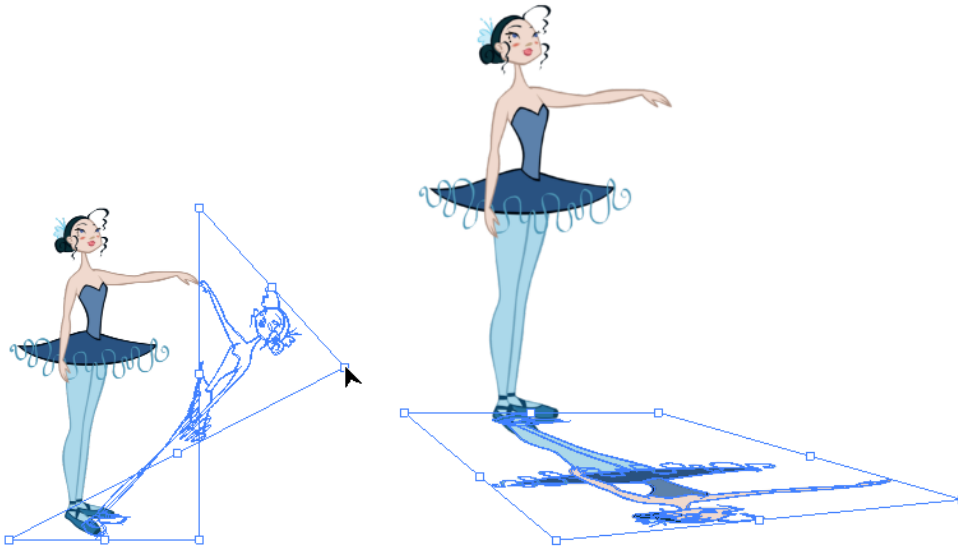
The Perspective tool lets you deform a drawing selection and alter its perspective.

**To deform a drawing with the Perspective tool:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Perspective**  tool or press [Alt] + [0].



2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the drawing you want to deform.
3. Click and drag the different anchor points to deform the shape.

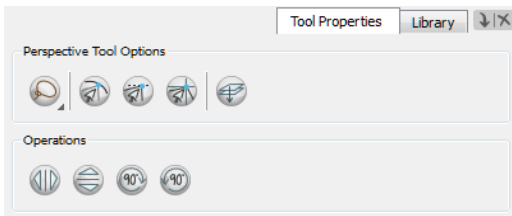


## Related Topics

- [Perspective Tool Properties](#) below

# Perspective Tool Properties

Selecting the Perspective tool displays its properties and options in the **Tool Properties** view.




- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Apply to Line and Colour Art](#) on the next page
- [Flip Horizontal and Vertical](#) on the next page
- [Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW](#) on page 229

## Lasso and Marquee


Choose between the **Lasso**  and **Marquee**  options to change the selection style of the tool.

- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current mode to the other.

## Snap to Contour

The **Snap to Contour**  option will snap the selected anchor point to any line you position it on—see [Contour Editor Tool Properties](#) on page 202.


## Snap and Align

The **Snap and Align**  option lets you snap the selected anchor point to any existing line while displaying temporary rulers as a guide that you can also snap your anchor point to—see [Contour Editor Tool Properties](#) on page 202.

## Snap to Grid



The **Snap to Grid**  option snaps your selection according to the currently enabled grid.

## Apply to Line and Colour Art

The **Apply to Line and Colour Art**  option uses the concept of Line Art and Colour Art layers. Use this option to apply an action such as selecting or resizing a drawing on both Line Art and Colour Art layers, as well as the Overlay and Underlay layers.

## Flip Horizontal and Vertical



The **Flip Horizontal**  and **Flip Vertical**  operations flip the current selection horizontally or vertically.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Flip Horizontal** and **Flip Vertical**.

## Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW



The **Rotate 90 Degrees CW**  and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**  operations rotate the current selection 90 degrees clockwise or counter-clockwise.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Rotate 90 Degrees CW** and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**.

Or press [Ctrl] + [7] and [Ctrl] + [9] (Windows) or [⌘] + [7] and [⌘] + [9] (Mac OS X).

### Related Topics


- [Deforming a Drawing Using the Perspective Tool](#) on page 226

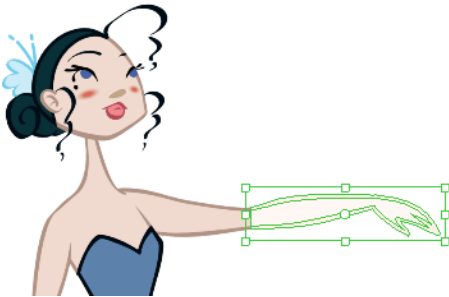
# Cutting Drawing Parts



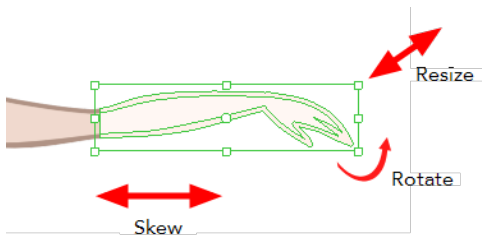
The Cutter tool is used to cut a drawing area to move, copy, cut or delete it.

**To cut with the Cutter tool:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Cutter**  tool or press [Alt] + [T].
2. In the Camera view, trace a selection around the part to cut away.




- ▶ To delete the selected zone, press[Delete].
- ▶ To move the selection, click the selection and drag it to a new area.
- ▶ Use the bounding box controls to scale, skew, or rotate the cut piece.

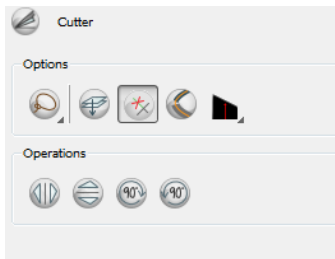


## Related Topics

- [Cutter Tool Options on the facing page](#)

# Cutter Tool Options

When you select the **Cutter**  tool, its properties and options appear in the **Tool Properties** view.



Here are the options available for the **Cutter** tool:


- [Lasso and Marquee below](#)
- [Apply to Line and Colour Art below](#)
- [Use Mouse Gesture below](#)
- [Use Mouse Gesture Breaker Mode on the next page](#)
- [Tip Style on the next page](#)
- [Flip Horizontal and Vertical on page 233](#)
- [Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW on page 233](#)

## Lasso and Marquee



Choose between the **Lasso**  and **Marquee**  options to change the selection style of the tool.

- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current mode to the other.

## Apply to Line and Colour Art

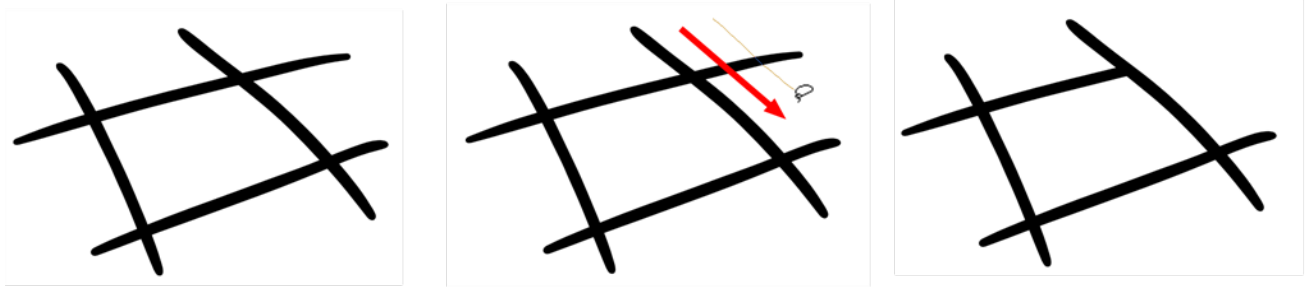
The **Apply to Line and Colour Art**  option uses the concept of Line Art and Colour Art layers. Use this option to apply an action such as selecting or resizing a drawing on both Line Art and Colour Art layers, as well as the Overlay and Underlay layers.

## Use Mouse Gesture



When using the **Lasso**  selection type, the **Use Mouse Gesture**  option lets you automatically delete any extra sections of line in your artwork by simply dragging your mouse over it.

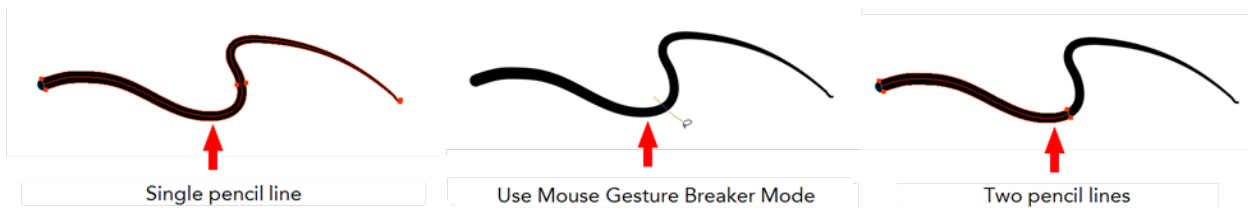


For this operation to work, you lines **CANNOT** be flattened.



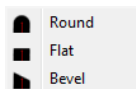
## Use Mouse Gesture Breaker Mode

When using the **Lasso**  selection type, the **Use Mouse Gesture Breaker Mode**  option lets you draw an invisible stroke on a pencil line to cut it in two individual objects. Once a pencil line is cut with this option, you will be able to select the two portions independently with either the **Cutter** tool, **Pencil Editor** tool or **Select** tool.



This option only works with pencil lines.

## Tip Style



Use the **Tip Style** option to customize the tip of the pencil line you are cutting.



## Flip Horizontal and Vertical



The **Flip Horizontal**  and **Flip Vertical**  operations flip the current selection horizontally or vertically.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Flip Horizontal** and **Flip Vertical**.

## Rotate 90 Degrees CW and CCW



The **Rotate 90 Degrees CW**  and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**  operations rotate the current selection 90 degrees clockwise or counter-clockwise.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Transform > Rotate 90 Degrees CW** and **Rotate 90 Degrees CCW**.

Or press [Ctrl] + [7] and [Ctrl] + [9] (Windows) or [⌘] + [7] and [⌘] + [9] (Mac OS X).


### Related Topics

- [Cutting Drawing Parts on page 230](#)

# Smoothing Lines



When drawing in a digital application, it is not like drawing on a sheet of paper, sometimes the lines you draw may look as if they were drawn with an unsteady hand. When this occurs, you may need to correct the look of your lines.

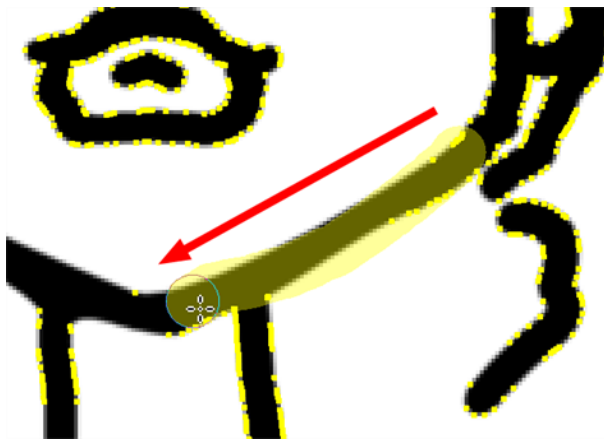
Toon Boom Animate Pro has a very powerful tool you can use to optimize contours and reduce the number of points on the lines, the Smooth Editor  tool.

**To optimize lines with the Smooth tool:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Smooth Editor**  tool or select **Drawing > Tools > Smooth Editor**.

*In Harmony Paint, select **Tools > Smooth Editor**.*

2. In the Camera or Drawing view, place your pointer over the lines to smooth. You may need to pass over the same line several times to remove more points and make the line smoother.

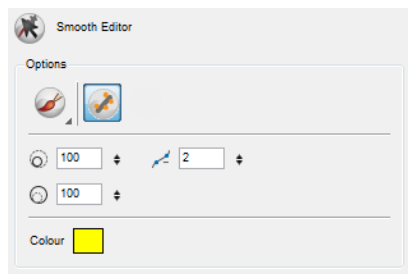


## Related Topics

- [Smooth Editor Tool Options](#) on the facing page

# Smooth Editor Tool Options

When you select the Smooth Editor tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.



Here are the options available for the **Smooth Editor** tool:

- [Brush, Marquee and Lasso Smoothing Style](#) below
- [Show Control Points](#) below
- [Minimum Size and Maximum Size](#) below
- [Smoothness](#) on the next page
- [Colour](#) on the next page

## Brush, Marquee and Lasso Smoothing Style

The Smoothing Style options allows you to smooth a portion of your drawing either by tracing a smoothing stroke over the zone to optimize or by selecting an area of the drawing with the Marquee or the Lasso.



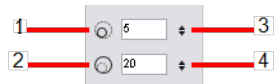
## Show Control Points

The **Show Control Points**  option allows you to show or hide the Bezier points around your lines. When the


Bezier points are displayed, you can see the result of your smoothing and the number of points left on your curve. When it is turned off, you will only see the original artwork.

## Minimum Size and Maximum Size


This is where you set the minimum and maximum sizes of your drawing tool which will produce the thick and thin effect on your stroke. This works with the pressure sensitivity of a pen tablet.



1. **Minimum Size** field: Type a value in this field to set the minimum width of the line.
2. **Maximum Size** field: Type a value in this field to set the maximum width of the line.
3. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set the minimum size value.
4. **Up/Down arrows**: Use the up and down arrows to set the maximum size value.

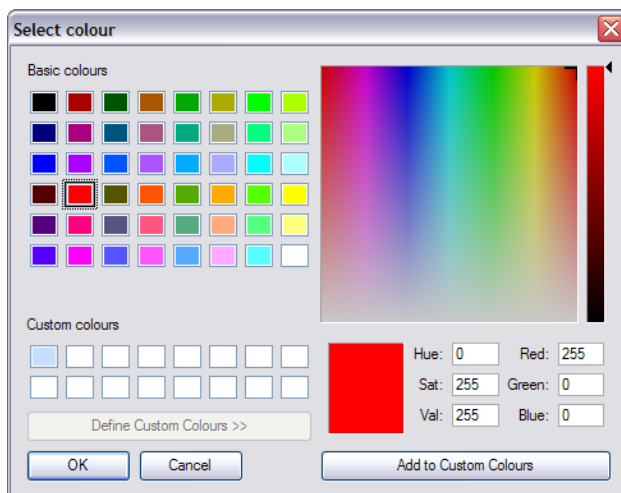
This options is available while using the **Brush Smoothing**  style.

## Smoothness

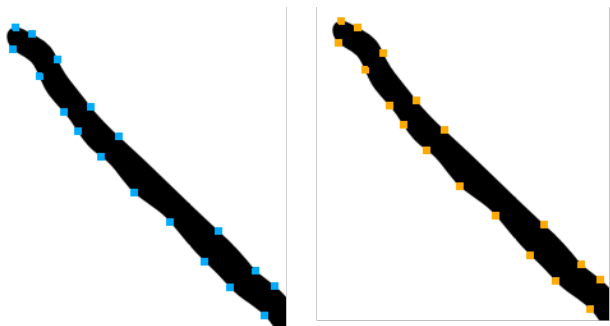
The **Smoothness**  impacts the strength of the smoothing result. The higher the value, the more points are removed and the smoother the curve is. The Smoothness range is from 0 to 100; the default value is 20.



## Colour



You can modify the colour of the control points displayed on the artwork while working with the **Smooth Editor** tool by double-clicking on the colour swatch.




## Related Topics

- [Smoothing Lines](#) on page 234

# Working With Text

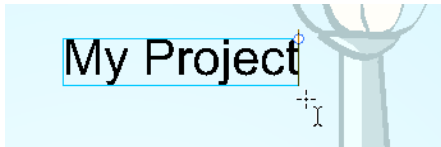
With the Text tool, you can type text in your project, using various fonts and text attributes. Text objects are part of a drawing, so you can manipulate them the same way.


## To add text to your drawings:

1. Do one of the following:
  - In the Tools toolbar, select the **Text**  tool.
  - Select **Drawing > Tools > Text**.
  - Press [Alt] + [9].  
*In Harmony Paint, select a **Tools > Text**.*
2. In the Timeline view, select the cell containing the drawing you want to add text to.
3. In the Drawing or Camera view, click on the location you want your text to begin.



4. You can use the **Tool Properties** view to select the font, font size and format the text you will type—see [Formatting the Text](#) below.
5. Type in the desired text.



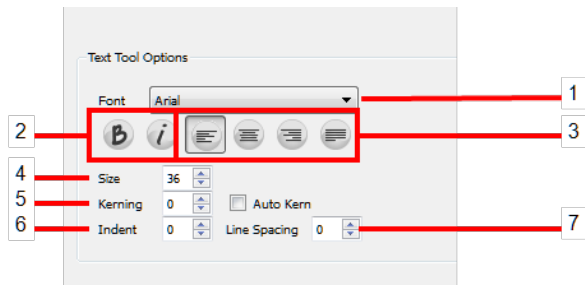
6. Click outside the text box to exit the typing mode.  
If you want to create another text object, click outside the currently active text box. You can always return to edit the text by selecting the **Text**  tool and clicking in the text.

## Related Topics

- [Formatting the Text](#) below

# Formatting the Text

Use the Text tool Tool Properties view to select the font type and other formatting options you want to apply to the text.



1. [Font Type](#) below
  2. [Font Style](#) below
  3. [Alignment](#) on the next page
  4. [Font Size](#) on the next page
  5. [Kerning](#) on the next page
  6. [Indent](#) on page 241
  7. [Line Spacing](#) on page 241
- [Resizing the Text Box](#) on page 241
  - [Converting Text into Separate Objects](#) on page 242



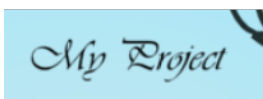
If you already wrote your text, you must first use the Text tool and select the text portion you want to format.

## Font Type

Use this drop-down menu to select the desired font, from the list of fonts available in your system.

Vivaldi Font

Copperplate Gothic Light



## Font Style

Use these buttons to select a desired style for your text:

-  Bold





-  Italic

# My Project

## Alignment

Use these buttons to align the paragraph.

<p> Left</p> <p>LOREM IPSUM DOLOR SIT AMET,          CONSECTETUR ADIPISCING          ELIT. AENEAN VESTIBULUM,          METUS AC FERMENTUM          PORTTITOR, ODIO TURPIS          PORTTITOR NIBH, ID          CONSEQUAT MAGNA LIGULA ET          ELIT. CURABITUR SOLLICITUDIN          ELIT AC LOREM MOLLIS ACC          UMSAN.</p>	<p> Centred</p> <p>LOREM IPSUM DOLOR SIT AMET,          CONSECTETUR ADIPISCING          ELIT. AENEAN VESTIBULUM,          METUS AC FERMENTUM          PORTTITOR, ODIO TURPIS          PORTTITOR NIBH, ID          CONSEQUAT MAGNA LIGULA ET          ELIT. CURABITUR SOLLICITUDIN          ELIT AC LOREM MOLLIS ACC          UMSAN.</p>
<p> Right</p> <p>LOREM IPSUM DOLOR SIT AMET,          CONSECTETUR ADIPISCING          ELIT. AENEAN VESTIBULUM,          METUS AC FERMENTUM          PORTTITOR, ODIO TURPIS          PORTTITOR NIBH, ID          CONSEQUAT MAGNA LIGULA ET          ELIT. CURABITUR SOLLICITUDIN          ELIT AC LOREM MOLLIS ACC          UMSAN.</p>	<p> Justified</p> <p>LOREM IPSUM DOLOR SIT AMET,          CONSECTETUR ADIPISCING          ELIT. AENEAN VESTIBULUM,          METUS AC FERMENTUM          PORTTITOR, ODIO TURPIS          PORTTITOR NIBH, ID          CONSEQUAT MAGNA LIGULA ET          ELIT. CURABITUR SOLLICITUDIN          ELIT AC LOREM MOLLIS ACC          UMSAN.</p>

## Font Size

Type the desired size for the text in this field. You can also use the up and down arrow buttons to set the desired value.

small text **big text**

## Kerning

Use the kerning field to modify the spacing between letters and characters. You can select the **Auto Kern** option to set the kerning automatically, based on the font's predefined standard. A negative value decreases spacing between each character creating a letter overlap and a positive value increases it.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.

### Indent

Enter a value in the **Indent** field to increase or decrease the indentation on the first line of your text. A positive value sets the first line of your paragraph farther to the right and a negative value sets it farther to the left.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.


### Line Spacing

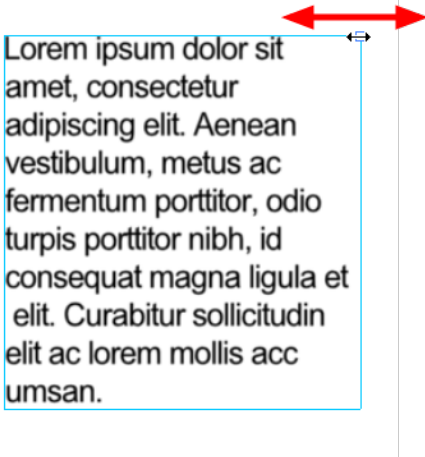
Enter a value in the **Line Spacing** field to decrease or increase the space between each line of text.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean vestibulum, metus ac fermentum porttitor, odio turpis porttitor nibh, id consequat magna ligula et elit. Curabitur sollicitudin elit ac lorem mollis acc umsan.

### Resizing the Text Box

You can resize the text box by selecting your text box with the **Text**  tool and moving the anchor point right or left.




Using the **Select** tool will distort and scale your text itself rather than changing the width and height of your text box.

## Converting Text into Separate Objects

Text contained in a text field is treated as a single drawing object. You can easily separate the text so that each character becomes an individual drawing object that you can select and modify independently.

**To break a text object:**

1. In the **Tools** toolbar, click on the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the **Drawing** or **Camera** view, select the text object you want to break.

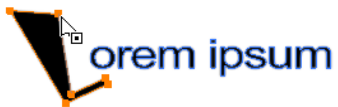


3. Select **Drawing > Convert > Break Apart Text Layers**.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Convert > Break Apart Text Layers**.*



Each character is now surrounded by its own bounding box that you can modify, they remain text objects that you can edit.

4. If you want to convert your independent letter to a complete vector object that you can deform, using the **Select** tool, select the letters to convert.
5. Select **Drawing > Convert > Break Apart Text Layers** to break the selection into a regular drawing object, with no more text attributes.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Convert > Break Apart Text Layers**.*



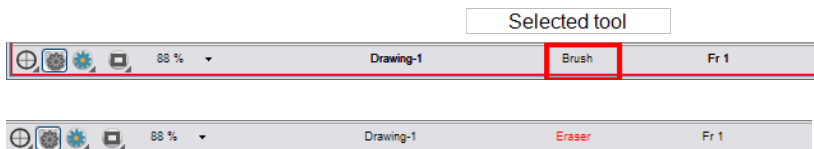
### Related Topics

- [Working With Text](#) on page 238

# Override Tool

The Override Tool lets you increase productivity by rapidly switching between tools used for short tasks and your previous tool. Most drawing tool shortcuts are accessed using the [Alt] key followed by another key, such as the Eraser tool which is accessed by pressing [Alt] + [E].

If you are drawing with the Brush tool and need to briefly switch to the Eraser before continuing, hold down the [E] key while you are erasing. Once done, release [E] to return to the previous tool, in this case, the Brush tool. You can do the same for most drawing tools that have a shortcut composed of [Alt] followed by another key.



## Related Topics

- [Keyboard Shortcuts on page 74](#)
- [Tools Toolbar on page 87](#)

# More Drawing Tools





Animate Pro offers a wide variety of useful tools to optimize your drawings and work more efficiently; tools such as Group, Arrange, and the animation disk to rotate your workspace.

## Related Topics

- [Arrange below](#)
- [Convert Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines](#) on the facing page
- [Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes](#) on the facing page
- [Strokes to Pencil Lines](#) on the facing page
- [Optimize](#) on page 246
- [Remove Extra Strokes](#) on page 246
- [Reduce Drawing Texture Resolution](#) on page 246
- [Crop Brush Textures](#) on page 247
- [Create Contour Stroke](#) on page 248
- [Remove Contour Stroke](#) on page 248
- [Grid](#) on page 248
- [Group/Ungroup](#) on page 249
- [Hand](#) on page 249
- [Rotate View](#) on page 249


## Arrange

Use the different **Arrange** options to reorder drawing objects inside a single layer in the **Drawing** or **Camera** view.

-  **Bring to Front** button or select **Drawing > Arrange > Bring to Front** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [PgUp] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [PgUp] (Mac OS X).  
The selected art is moved to the top.
-  **Bring Forward** button or select **Drawing > Arrange > Bring Forward** or press [Ctrl] + [PgUp] (Windows) or [⌘] + [PgUp] (Mac OS X).  
The selected art is moved one level higher.
-  **Send Backward** button or select **Drawing > Arrange > Send Backward** or press [Ctrl] + [PgDown] (Windows) or [⌘] + [PgDown] (Mac OS X).  
The selected art is moved one level lower.
-  **Send to Back** button or select **Drawing > Arrange > Send to Back** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [PgDown] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [PgDown] (Mac OS X).  
The selected art is moved to the bottom.

## Convert Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines



The **Brushes Strokes to Pencil Lines**  operation converts the selected contour strokes into centreline pencil strokes. This command is only available from the top menu.


Select **Drawing > Convert > Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines**.

*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

The [^].

## Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes



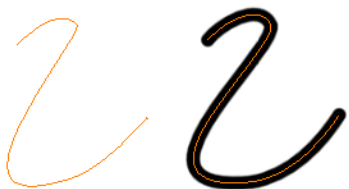
The **Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes**  operation converts the selected centreline pencil strokes into contour strokes brush lines.

From the top menu, select **Drawing > Convert > Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes**.

*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

The [&].

## Strokes to Pencil Lines



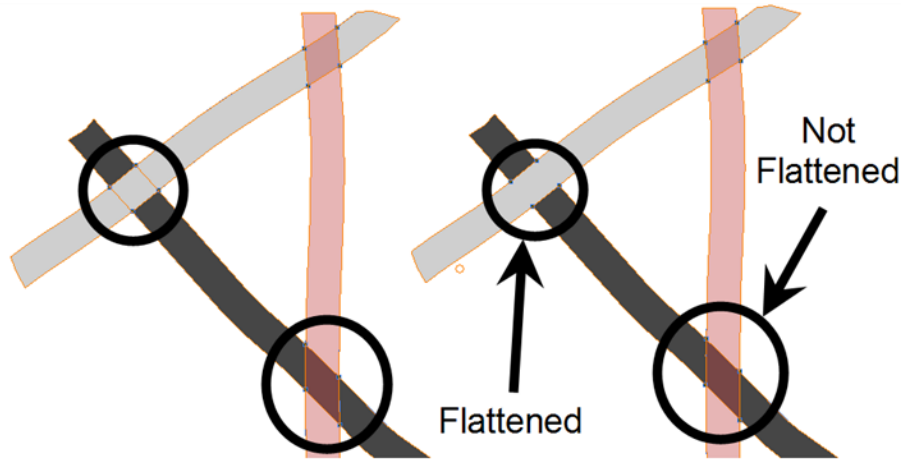
The **Strokes to Pencil Lines**  operation converts the selected invisible line to a pencil line.

Select **Drawing > Convert > Strokes to Pencil Lines**.

In *Harmony Paint*, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.

The [Shift] + [F12] (Windows only).

## Optimize



The **Optimize** command reduces the number of layers, such as overlapping brush strokes, in the selected drawing objects. Drawing objects will only be flattened and optimized if the selected objects will not change the appearance of the final image when they are merged.

For example, if you have selected a number of partially transparent objects, which you layered to create an additive colour effect, the selected transparent drawing objects will not be merged. This is because merging the transparent drawing objects will cause them to lose the effect of the layered transparent colours.

- Use the **Select** tool to select the drawing objects you want to optimize.
- Select **Drawing > Optimize > Optimize**.

*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

## Remove Extra Strokes

The **Remove Extra Strokes** option is used to remove the invisible lines in your selection.

- Use the **Select** tool to select the drawing objects you want to remove invisible lines from.
- Select **Drawing > Optimize > Remove Extra Strokes**.

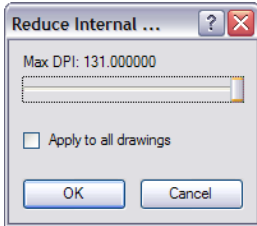
*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

## Reduce Drawing Texture Resolution

If you import and vectorize as texture (colour) a high resolution image, the size of your drawing can be heavy. This option is used to reduce the size and resolution of the textures in your drawing. When you import and vectorize drawings using the grey or colour preset styles, you don't have control on the size of the bitmap texture. This tool allows you to reduce that bitmap texture.

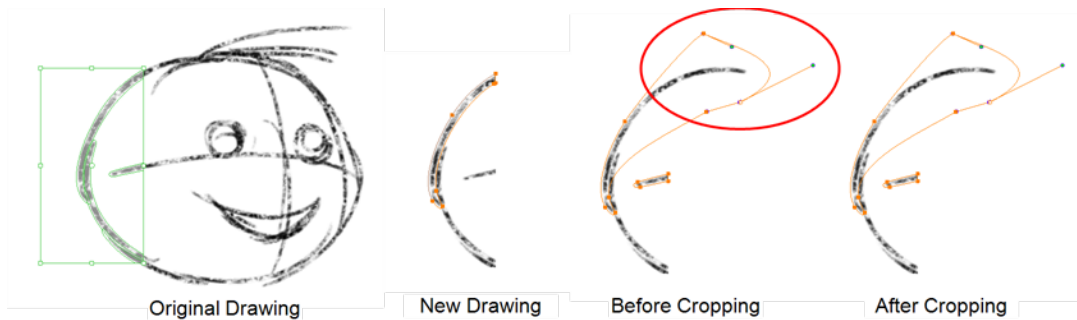
### To reduce the drawing texture resolution:

- In the **Timeline** or **Xsheet** view, **Select** tool to select the drawing objects you want to reduce the texture resolution for. remove invisible lines from.
- Select **Drawing > Optimize > Reduce Drawing Texture Resolution**.  
*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*



1. In the dialog box, drag the slider toward the left to reduce the texture resolution.
2. Enable the **Apply to All Drawings** option if you want the modification to be applied to all the drawings in your layer.
3. Click OK.

## Crop Brush Textures





The **Crop Brush Textures** option is used to crop an unnecessarily large texture bitmap that lies, unseen, beneath the vector contour of a textured line. This often occurs when you cut and paste textured lines from one drawing into another. If you cut a portion from a textured line and paste it into a different drawing, Toon Boom Animate Pro pastes the entire unseen texture bitmap from the source drawing into the new one, even if you only took a small portion of the source drawing. Using the **Crop Brush Texture** command will crop away extraneous texture that does not touch the vector area. If there are many textured lines in your scene, this will greatly reduce the file size.


In the example shown above, a textured line is cut from a drawing and pasted into a new drawing. At first glance, it appears as if only a cropped section of the underlying texture bitmap was cut and pasted as well. However, using the **Contour Editor** tool to expand the vector envelope of the textured line, it is revealed that more texture bitmap exists beyond the cropped boundary. If you use the **Crop Brush Texture** command the bitmap texture is cropped to the boundaries of the textured line's vector contour (as seen in the fourth image where the vector envelope has been pulled out to reveal empty space).

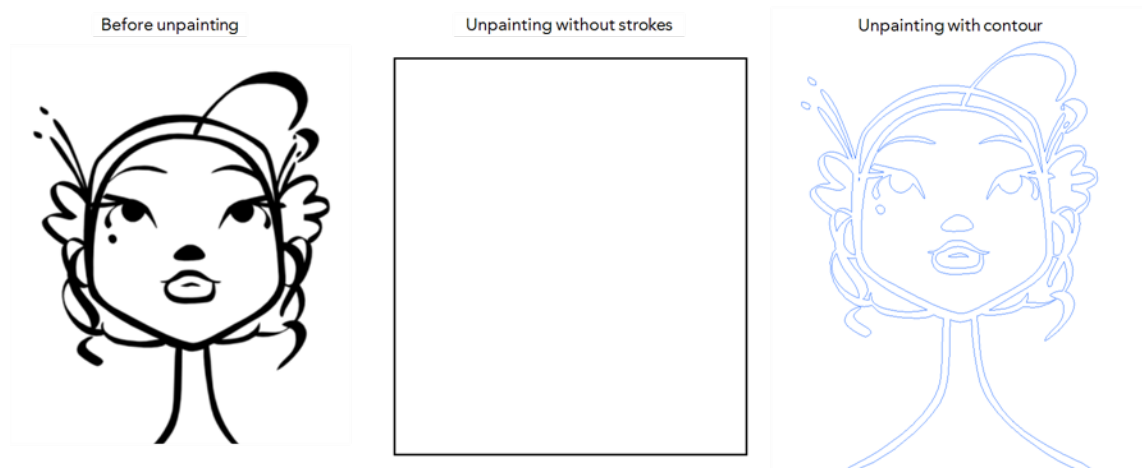
### To crop the brush texture:

1. In the **Timeline** or **Xsheet** view, select the drawing you want to crop the texture for.
2. Select **Drawing > Optimize > Crop Brush Textures**.  
*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

## Create Contour Stroke

The **Create Contour Stroke**  option is used to add a permanent invisible line around a shape that was drawn directly in the application. This allows you to unpaint your lines with the **Paint**  tool but to maintain the shape of the lines should you need to repaint later.

This command is useful when inking and painting and using the **Apply to All Drawings in Layer**  option.



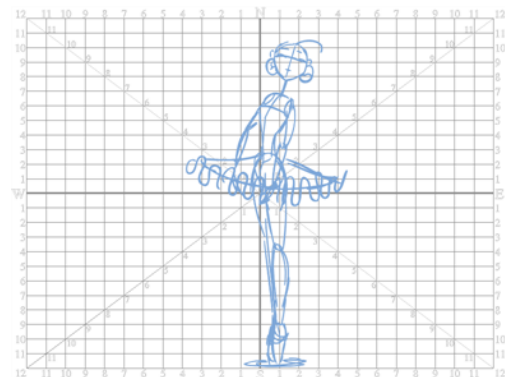
*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

## Remove Contour Stroke

The **Remove Contour Stroke** option is used to remove any permanently invisible lines that were either created while scanning and vectorizing drawings or manually adding contour strokes. This is useful if you want to remove the intersection triangles created during vectorization.







*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*

## Grid




Use the **Show Grid** option to display a grid in the **Drawing** or **Camera** view.



-  Select **View > Grid > Show Grid**. The [Ctrl] + ['] (Windows) or [⌘] + ['] (Mac OS X).
-  Select **View > Grid > Square** to display a standard square grid.
-  Select **View > Grid > 12 Field Grid** to display a 12 field size grid.
-  Select **View > Grid > 16 Field Grid** to display a 16 field size grid.
-  Select **View > Grid > Underlay** to display the grid behind the drawing elements.
-  Select **View > Grid > Overlay** to display the grid over the drawing elements.

## Group/Ungroup


Use the **Group**  option to group the selected drawing objects. This can help in the selection, repositioning, re-scaling and other transformations to be applied to multiple objects of a drawing.

*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Selected** menu rather than the **Edit** menu.*


- Select **Edit > Group > Group** or **Edit > Group > Ungroup**.
- Press [Ctrl] + [G] and [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [G] (Windows) or [⌘] + [G] and [⌘] + [Shift] + [G] (Mac OS X).

## Hand

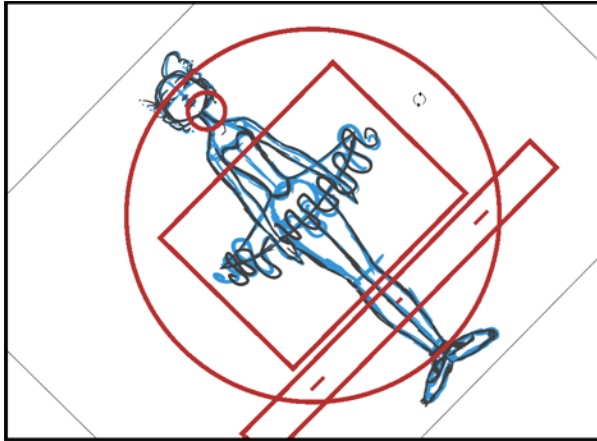
Use the **Hand** tool to pan through the **Drawing** and **Camera** view.

- In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Hand**  tool, click in the **Drawing** or **Camera** view and drag your cursor.
- You can also Hold down the keyboard shortcut [Spacebar], click in the **Drawing** or **Camera** view and move your mouse in the direction you want to pan the view.

## Rotate View

Use the **Rotate View**  tool to rotate the **Drawing** or **Camera** view, the same way as you would do with a real animation disc.

- Select **Drawing > Tools > Rotate View**.  
*In Harmony Paint, this options is found in the **Tools** menu rather than the **Drawing** menu.*
- Press [Ctrl] + [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Alt] (Mac OS X).




This tool can also be used in the **Perspective** view.

---

## Related Topics


- [How to Draw on page 131](#)

# Drawing Pivot Tool

The Drawing Pivot  tool lets you set the pivots on your character. You can set the drawing pivots on drawings and symbols.

- [Setting the Drawing Pivot for Symbols on All Frames](#) below
- [Snapping on the facing page](#)
- [Reset Pivot on the facing page](#)
- [Copying Pivot on Parent Symbol on the facing page](#)

## Setting the Drawing Pivot for Symbols on All Frames

The Set the Pivot for Symbol on All Frames  option is enabled by default. When you set a drawing pivot on a symbol, all of its cells use the same drawing pivot. This means you do not have to set a drawing pivot on all frames. Once you set it, it is done.

If you prefer to set a different drawing pivot for a series of cells, you can deselect the option and set your pivots on each cell or cell range.



If you have already set several different pivots on your symbol's cells and selected the Set the Pivot for Symbol on All Frames option, once you set a new pivot on the same symbol, all of its pivots will be reset and will use your new pivot.

## Snapping




When you drag the drawing pivot around, you can enable a snap option so that when the drawing pivot is released, it either snaps to the reference grid, drawing's contour, or aligns with an existing drawing stroke.




Refer to [Snap Options](#) on page 186.

## Reset Pivot

When you click the Reset Pivot  option, the drawing pivot of the selected drawing or symbol is reset to the centre of the Camera view (stage).

## Copying Pivot on Parent Symbol

When you import new extra drawings, such as hands and mouths, you can use the drawing pivot that was set on your drawings and report them to the symbol's cells. Use the Copy Pivot to Parent Symbol  command for this.



When you copy drawing pivots to the parent symbol, there is no link between the drawings' pivots and the symbol's pivots. If you modify the drawing pivot later, it will not link to the symbol. You would need to do the operation again. If you need to modify the symbol's pivots, you can do it directly on the symbol's cells.

## Related Topics

- [Setting the Pivots](#) on page 732
- [Setting Pivots on a Frame Range](#) on page 773

# Drawing Preferences

When drawing or animating traditionally in Toon Boom Animate Pro, there are preferences you can set to help you work more efficiently.

To open the Preferences dialog box:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [OpenGL Drawing Preferences](#) below
- [Drawing](#) on the facing page
- [Advanced Tab Preferences](#) on page 254

## OpenGL Drawing Preferences

Shortcuts	General	Camera	Network	Exposure Sheet	Drawing	Template	Timeline	Sound	OpenGL	Render	Advanced	Deformation
Settings												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Conservative Texture Management <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Smooth Textures <input type="checkbox"/> Alternate Gradient and Cutter <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use PBuffer for Picking <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Support Triple Buffer <input type="checkbox"/> Support Desktop Effects												
Maximum Texture Size: <input type="text" value="2048"/> Texture Memory: <input type="text" value="1622"/> MB Vector Drawing Maximum Texture Size : <input type="text" value="1024"/>												
<b>Full Scene Antialiasing</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Number of samples (for Mac OS) <input type="text" value="0"/>												
<b>Drawings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Support Transparency in Pencil Lines (requires restart) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Variable Line Thickness												
<b>Effects</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Tone and Highlight <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Colour Override <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Cutter <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable composite passthrough for all effects <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Glue Module												

## Full Scene Antialiasing

By default, the Full Scene Antialiasing preference is disabled. This option lets you see smooth lines as you draw as well as an antialiased drawing area. You can change the value of the Full Scene Antialiasing using the Preferences dialog box, to fit the current level used in the Camera or Drawing view.



Refer to the [Viewing the Final Lines as you Draw](#) on page 146.

## Support Transparency in Pencil Lines

When the option is enabled, the pencil lines are displayed normally. The lines will be opaque (unless there are transparencies). Disabling this option will reduce rendering times, but will display additive opacities for overlapping pencil lines and unevenly filled curved pencil lines.

## Drawing

These are the preferences you can find in the **Drawing** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Drawing' tab preferences. The 'Light Table' section is highlighted with a red box. It includes the following settings:

- Onion Skin Render Style: Enable Shade
- Light Table: Enable Shade:
- Light Table: Shade in Camera View:
- Enable Onion Skin for Other Layers:
- Onion Skin: Maximum Wash Value (0.0-1.0): 0.8
- Onion Skin: Minimum Wash Value (0.0-1.0): 0.4
- Onion Skin: Maximum Opacity (0.0-1.0): 0.8
- Onion Skin: Minimum Opacity (0.0-1.0): 0.2
- Light Table: Wash (0.0-1.0): 0.2
- Light Table: Opacity (0.0-1.0): 0.5

The 'Options' section has the following settings:

- Grid On By Default:
- Select Tool Is Lasso:
- Brush Size Cursor:
- Default Multiwheel Colour Picker:
- Auto Save Pencil Styles:
- Multi-Click Eye Dropper:
- Thumbnail View location: Right
- Default Pencil Line Tip: Bevel Tip

The 'Settings' section has the following settings:

- Create New Colour Pots Using Default Colour:
- Morphing Quality: 0.2

The 'Paint' section has the following settings:

- Auto Gap Closing on Startup:
- Auto Gap Closing in Pixel Unit:

The 'Zoom' section is highlighted with a red box and has the following settings:

- Enable Paper Zoom:
- Number of pixels per inch: 72
- Maximum Zoom Factor: 4
- Quick Close Up Zoom Factor: 4

## Light Table

- **Onion Skin Render Style:**
  - **Normal:** The onion skinned drawings is displayed in washed out colours.
  - **Enable Shade:** The previous onion skinned drawings are displayed in washed out red shades and the next onion skinned drawings are displayed in washed out green shades.
  - **Outlines Only:** The onion skinned drawings are displayed as outlines only.
- **Light Table: Enable Shade:** When enabled, the drawings appearing in the Light Table are displayed in washed out colours in the Drawing view. When this option is disabled, the drawings appearing in the Light Table are displayed using normal colours. This option is for the Drawing view only.
- **Light Table: Shade in Camera View:** When enabled, the drawings appearing on other layers are displayed in washed-out colours in the Camera view. When this option is disabled, the drawings appearing on other layers are displayed using normal colours. This option is for the Camera view only.

- **Enable Onion Skin for Other Elements:** When both Onion Skin and Light Table options are enabled, the drawings appearing in the Light Table also display their previous and next onion skinned drawings. This option is for the Drawing view only.
- **Onion Skin: Maximum Wash Value (0,0-1,0):** The maximum washed-out value for onion skinned drawings.
- **Onion Skin: Minimum Wash Value (0,0-1,0):** The minimum washed-out value for onion skinned drawings.
- **Onion Skin: Maximum Opacity (0,0-1,0):** The maximum opacity value for onion skinned drawings. (0 = transparent).
- **Onion Skin: Minimum Opacity (0,0-1,0):** The minimum opacity value for onion skinned drawings. (0 = transparent).
- **Light Table: Wash (0,0-1,0):** The washed-out value for the light table display.
- **Light Table: Opacity (0,0-1,0):** The opacity value for the light table display. (0 = transparent).

## Options

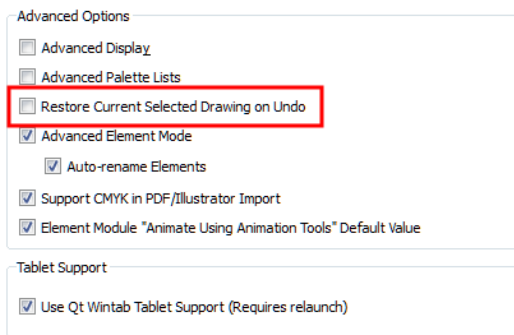
- **Grid On By Default:** When opening the **Drawing** view, the grid displays automatically.
- **Select Tool is Lasso:** When this option is enabled, the **Select** tool behaves as a lasso selector. When this option is disabled, the Select tool behaves as a rectangle selector.
- **Brush Size Cursor:** When this option is enabled, the brush tool displays the brush size as a circle around the cursor.
- **Auto Save Pen Styles:** When this option is enabled, new pens and pen styles are automatically saved.
- **Thumbnails View location:** When sending a series of drawings to the **Drawing** view, the drawing list appears in a **Side** panel. This preference changes the location of the **Side** panel in the **Drawing** view. By default, the panel is displayed on the right-hand side of the **Drawing** view. You must restart the application for this change to be applied.
- **Default Pencil Line Tip:** Sets the default pencil line tip to either **Round**, **Flat**, or **Bevel**.

## Zoom

- **Enable Paper Zoom:** Enabling this option allows you to set the 100% Zoom level onscreen, in order to physically match the measurements of your paper drawing.
  - **Number of Pixels per Inch:** Enter the PPI for your monitor. To obtain the PPI of your screen, divide the height or width of your monitor's resolution setting by the corresponding physical height or width of your monitor screen (resolution height divided by physical height, or resolution width divided by physical width) in inches.
  - **Maximum Zoom Factor:** Sets the maximum zoom level for the paper zoom.
- **Quick Close Up Zoom Factor:** Sets the zoom level for the Quick Close up Zoom keyboard shortcut. The default shortcut is [Shift] + [Z].

## Advanced Tab Preferences

These are the related preferences you can find in the **Advanced** tab.



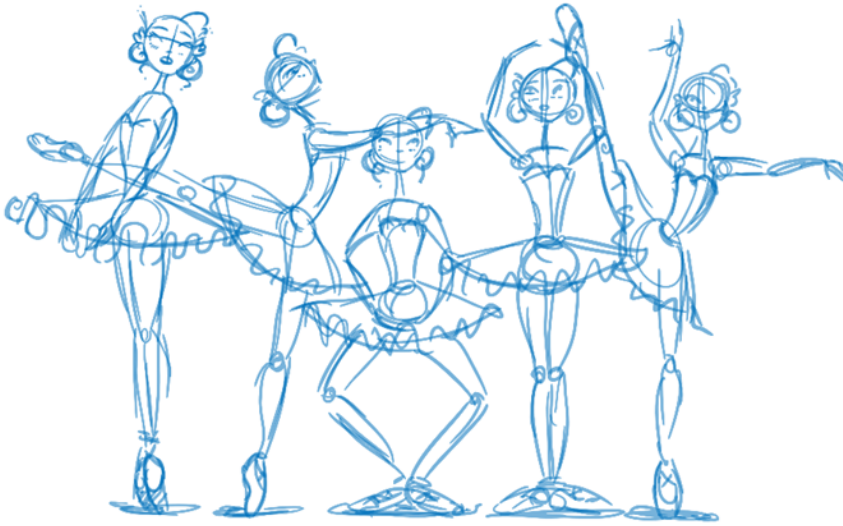
## Advanced Options

- **Restore Current Selected Drawing On Undo:** If a drawing other than the current one is being affected by an **Undo** command, the affected affected drawing is displayed.





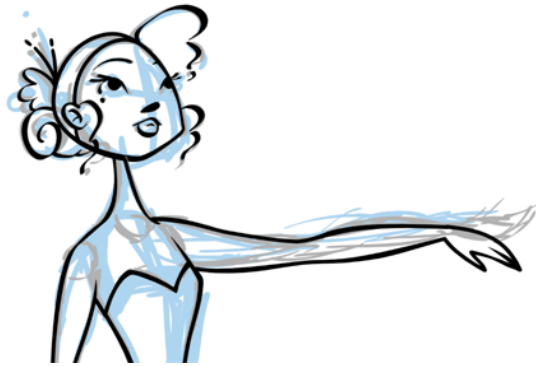
# Chapter 5: Traditional Animation



## Topics Covered

- [Traditional Animation Tools](#) on the next page
- [Basic Traditional Animation](#) on page 267
- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on page 274
- [Cleaning Scanned Drawings](#) on page 295

# Traditional Animation Tools




When you animate digitally using traditional techniques, there are certain tools you require in order to work efficiently, as you would do with an animation table, paper and pencils. These tools are described in this section:

- [Onion Skin](#) below
- [Light Table](#) on page 260
- [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261
- [Create Empty Drawing](#) on page 264
- [Reposition All Drawings](#) on page 264

## Onion Skin



The Onion Skin  tool is used to preview the previous and subsequent drawings. When designing or

animating, it is useful to be able to see your previous drawings. By default, the previous drawings will appear with a shade of red and the next drawings will be displayed with a shade of green but you can change the display options in the Preferences panel.



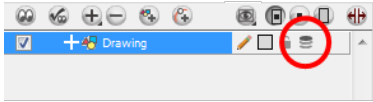
Refer to the [Drawing Preferences](#) on page 252 topic to learn about the Onion Skin preferences.

---

## To use the Onion Skin feature:

### 1. Enable the Onion Skin feature:

- ▶ In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Show Onion Skin**  button.
- ▶ In the Timeline view, click on the **Onion Skin**  icon. When enabled, the icon will turn red .











- ▶ From the top menu, select **View > Onion Skin > Show Onion Skin**.
- ▶ Or press [Alt] + [O].

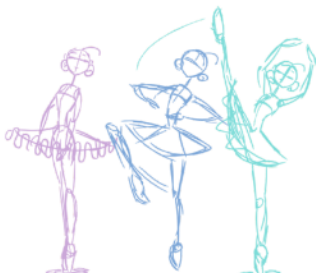
### 2. You can select the number of previous and next drawings you want to show:

- ▶ In the Timeline view, click and drag the Onion Skin blue markers to choose how many previous and next drawings will be displayed.



- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > No Previous Drawing** or press [~].
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Previous Drawing** or press [!].
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Previous Two Drawings** or press [@].
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Previous Three Drawings** or press [#].
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > No Next Drawing** or press [Ctrl] + [ ] (Windows) or [⌘] + [ ] (Mac OS X).
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Next Drawing** or press [Ctrl] + [1] (Windows) or [⌘] + [1] (Mac OS X).
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Next Two Drawings** or press [Ctrl] + [2] (Windows) or [⌘] + [2] (Mac OS X).
- ▶  Select **View > Onion Skin > Next Three Drawings** or press [Ctrl] + [3] (Windows) or [⌘] + [3] (Mac OS X).

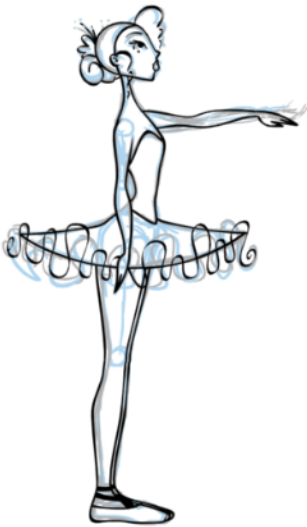
### 3. The previous and next drawings will appear in both the Camera and Drawing view.




## Related Topics

- [Traditional Animation Tools](#) on page 258

# Light Table




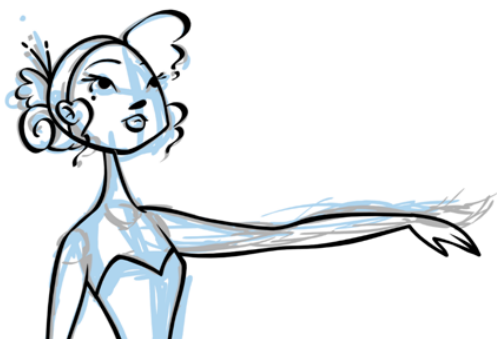
The Light Table  is used to preview the previous and subsequent active layers in washed-out colours. It is useful to be able to see the other layers when designing, animating or cleaning up your animation.

In the Camera view, when the Light Table is activated all layers apart from the currently selected one are shown washed-out. The display returns to the normal mode when the Select tool or a scene setup tool is selected.

Only the currently selected drawing is displayed by default in the Drawing view. When enabling the Light Table, the other layers appear as a washed-out display and are used as a reference. You can not select or manipulate them.

### To use the Light Table feature:

1. Enable the Light Table feature:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **View > Light Table**.
  - ▶ In the Drawing View toolbar, click on the **Light Table**  button.
  - ▶ Or press [Shift] + [L].
2. The drawings for the other layers are displayed as washed-out colours in the Camera and Drawing view.



3. In the Timeline view, you can disable the layers you wish to hide from the Light Table.



Refer to the [Drawing Preferences on page 252](#) topic to learn about the Light Table preferences.

## Related Topics

- [Traditional Animation Tools on page 258](#)

## Drawing Identification

In the Xsheet view, you can identify your drawings as Key, Breakdown or In-between. This helps to keep your Xsheet well organized while animating.




When working with several animators, directors, or even other studios, the necessity for retakes will often arise. Animate Pro also gives you the possibility to mark your new drawings as either Retake Key, Retake Breakdown, or Retake Inbetweens.

If your production requires you to mark your drawing with a custom marker, you also have the option to create your own.

### To mark a drawing as Key, Breakdown or In-between:

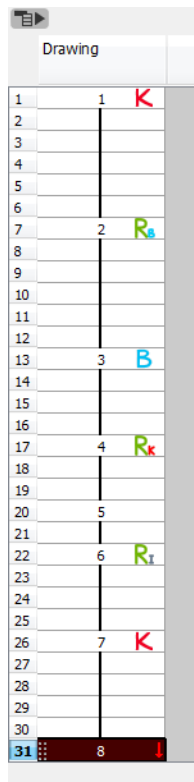
1. In the top menu, select **Windows > Toolbars > Mark Drawing** to display the **Mark Drawing** toolbar.



2. In the Xsheet view, select the cell you want to identify. This option is not available in the Timeline view.
3. In the Mark Drawing toolbar, press on the Mark as Key Drawing , Mark as Breakdown Drawing  or Mark as In-between Drawing  buttons. In the Xsheet View menu, you can also select **Drawing > Mark Drawing As > Key Drawing, Breakdown Drawing, In-between Drawing, Retake Key, Retake BD and Retake IB.**

- ▶ If you select Mark as Key Drawing, a **K** icon appears in the cell.
- ▶ If you select Mark as Breakdown Drawing, a **B** icon appears in the cell.

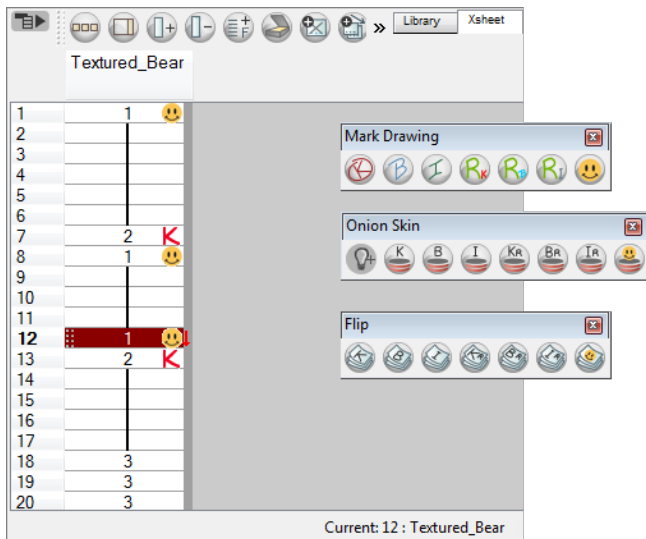
- ▶ If you select Mark as In-Between Drawing, there is no icon displayed in the cell since it is used to remove a Key or Breakdown marker.



You can create your own custom shortcuts for the Drawing Identification options by going in the Preferences panel. Refer to [Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut on page 74](#) to learn how to customize keyboard shortcuts.

## Custom Marks in the Xsheet View

Make custom marks for the Xsheet by creating your own icons, then cutting, pasting and changing a bit of code. Not only is it possible to have your custom mark appear in the Xsheet and Mark Drawing toolbar, but also in the Onion Skin and Flip toolbars.



### To create your custom markers:


- With a bitmap editing software, create the following icons in PNG format:
  - Mark Drawing Toolbar icon (24 x 24 pixel)
  - Onion Skin Toolbar icon (24 x 24 pixel)
  - Flip Toolbar icon (24 x 24 pixel)
  - Xsheet Column icon (16 x 16 pixel)
- Close Animate Pro.
- Once your icons are ready, go to the Toon Boom Animate Pro `resources/drawingTypes.d` directory:
  - Stand-alone**
    - Mac OS X: `/Applications/Toon Boom Animate Pro 3/resources/drawingTypes.d`
    - Windows: `C:/Program Files (x86)/Toon Boom Animation/Toon Boom Harmony 10.0/resources/drawingTypes.d`
- Paste your icons in the `resources/drawingTypes.d` directory.
- In that same directory, open the `drawingTypes.xml` file in a text editor.
- For each custom icon you want to create, add the following line. Make sure it is placed before the closing `</DrawingTypes>` tag.
  - `<DrawingType text="NewButtonName" pixmapFile="XsheetIcon.png" commandIcon="MarkDrawingIcon.png" flipIcon="FlipIcon.png" onionIcon="OnionIcon.png" />`
- In that line, replace the following information with your new icon information:
  - `NewButtonName`: Write the name of your new marker. This name will appear in the button tooltip.
  - `XsheetIcon.png`: Write the name of the icon that you created to appear in the Xsheet column. Include the file extension.
  - `MarkDrawingIcon.png`: Write the name of the icon that you created to appear in the Mark Drawing toolbar. Include the file extension.
  - `FlipIcon.png`: Write the name of the icon that you created to appear in the Flip toolbar. Include the file extension.
  - `OnionIcon.png`: Write the name of the icon that you created to appear in the Onion Skin toolbar. Include the file extension.
- Save the file and close it.

9. Launch Animate Pro.


## Related Topics

- [Traditional Animation Tools on page 258](#)

# Create Empty Drawing



The Create Empty Drawing  command automatically creates a drawing in the selected cell of the Timeline and Xsheet view, replacing any drawing that may already be exposed in that cell and the following ones until it meets another drawing.

### To create an Empty Drawing:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell you want to create an empty drawing in.
2. In the Xsheet View toolbar, click on the **Create Empty Drawing**  button or select

**Animation > Create Empty Drawing** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [R].

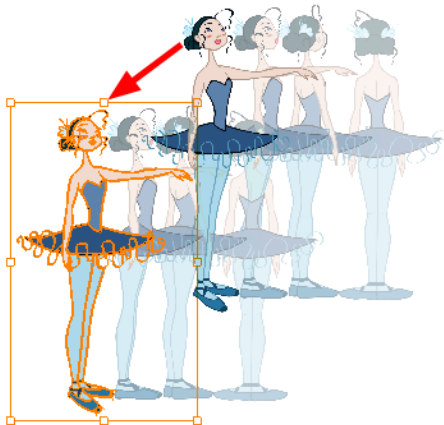
3. The new drawing will be created in the Xsheet and Timeline views.


1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	

## Related Topics

- [Traditional Animation Tools on page 258](#)


# Reposition All Drawings

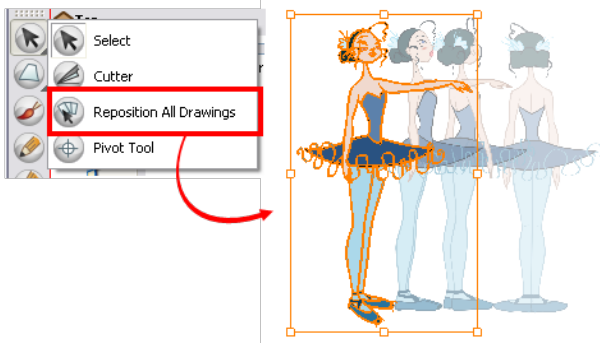


The Reposition All Drawings  option is used to reposition, scale, rotate or skew all drawing strokes on every drawing included in a layer.

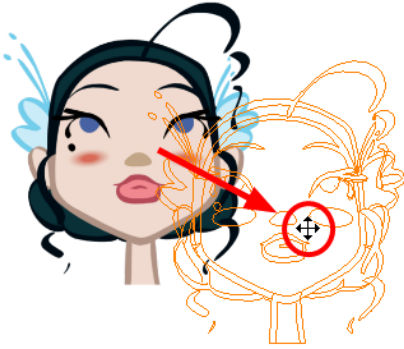


### To reposition all drawings:

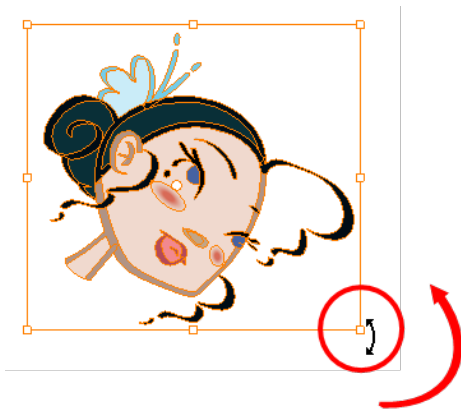
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Reposition All Drawings**  tool. This also automatically selects every stroke in your drawing in the Drawing and Camera view.



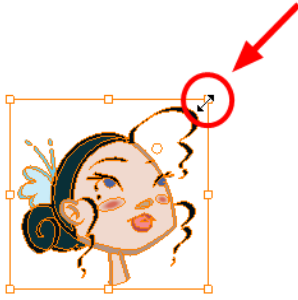
2. To deform or reposition a selection:
  - ▶ To reposition, click and drag your selection to a new area.



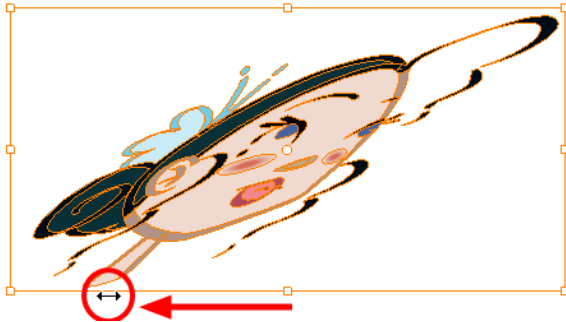
- ▶ To rotate, rotate the selection box handle.



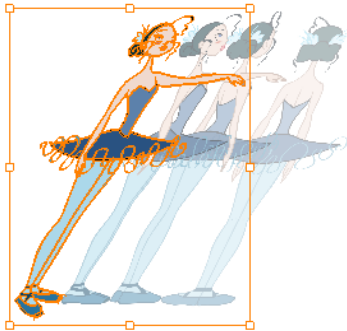
- ▶ To scale, pull or push either on the top, side, bottom or corner control points. Hold down [Shift] to lock the selection's ratio.



- ▶ To skew, drag the sides or top and bottom segments, between the control points.



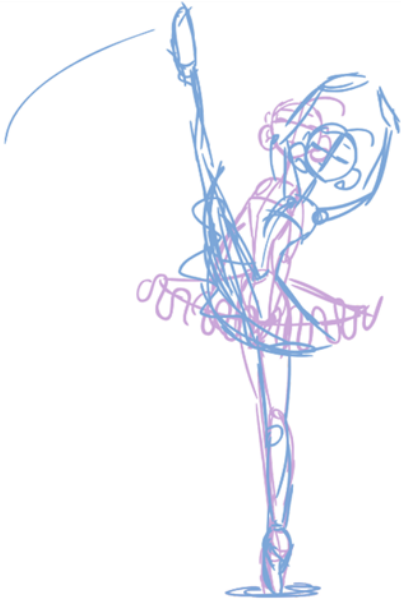
3. When you release your cursor, every drawing contained in the drawing layer you repositioned, scaled, rotated or skewed will follow the same transformation.



## Related Topics

- [Traditional Animation Tools on page 258](#)

# Basic Traditional Animation



Toon Boom Animate Pro lets you animate traditionally, but work entirely digitally. Many tools and features are supplied to help you achieve that traditional animation look easily and efficiently.

## Related Topics

- [Animating below](#)
- [Cleaning Up on page 271](#)
- [Setting the Timing on page 273](#)

## Animating




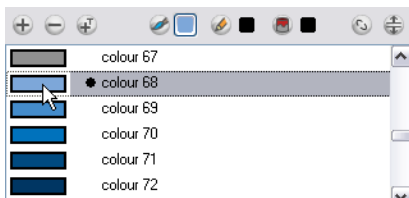
Now that you know about the existing tools, you can start your animation.

The first step to complete is the rough animation, which is the skeleton of your animation. You would usually start with the main action. For example, to animate a walk-cycle, you will start with the torso moves and the legs. Head, arms and clothes will be added later, during the secondary animation.

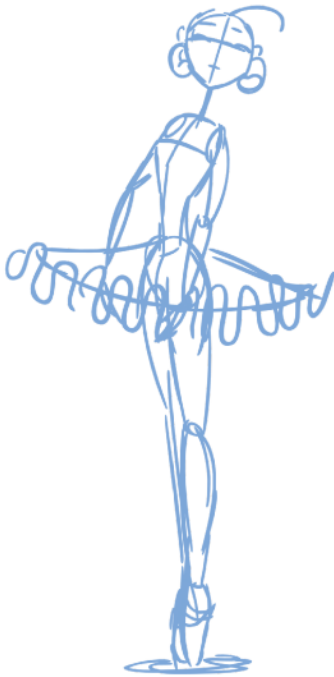
For a satisfactory animation, complete the main action before adding all of the details. If you start animating all of the details right away, you will lose a lot of time if you have to do corrections, and your animation will often look too rigid.

#### To animate:

1. In the Preferences panel, you can set your preferences to Use Current Frame as Drawing Name. Refer to [Exposure Sheet on page 300](#) to learn more about this preference.
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the Brush  tool or press [Alt] + [B].
3. In the Colour view, select the colour you will use to draw. It is a good idea to choose a light colour for your rough animation to help for the following task, the clean up process.




4. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where the first drawing will appear.
5. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw the first key drawing.



6. Make sure your first key drawing is still selected, and in the Mark Drawing toolbar, click on the **Mark Selected Drawings as Key** button.
  - In the Xsheet view, you can also select **Animation > Mark Drawing As > Key Drawing** to identify your drawing.

Drawing	
1	1 K
2	
3	
4	
5	

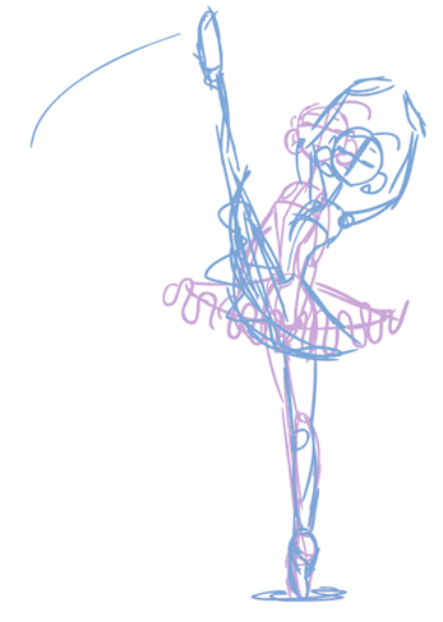
- In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Enable Onion Skin**  button.
- In the Timeline view, click and drag the onion skin blue markers to extend the number of previous and next visible drawings to fit your need.



- In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where your next key drawing will appear.



- In the Camera or Drawing view, draw your second key drawing.




- In the Xsheet view, identify the drawing as a key drawing.

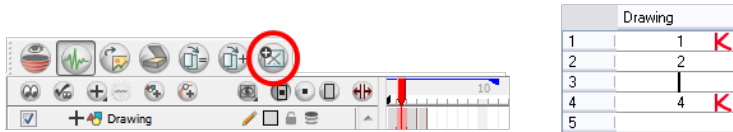
Drawing	
1	1 K
2	
3	
4	4 K
5	

- In the Xsheet view, select a cell between your two key drawings.



13. From the Timeline View toolbar, click  to create an empty drawing or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [R].

- ▶ In the Xsheet view, right-click and select **Drawings > Create Empty Drawing** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [R].



14. Draw your new drawing.



15. If necessary, in the Xsheet view, identify the new drawing as a Key, Breakdown or In-between drawing.

Drawing		
1	1	K
2	2	B
3		
4	4	K
5		

16. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a new cell and repeat step 9 to step 15 for each new drawing.

17. In the Timeline view, disable the layers you do not want to show during playback.

18. In the Playback toolbar, click on the **Loop**  button if you want the playback to loop.

19. In the Playback toolbar, click on the **Play**  button to start the animation.

## Related Topics

- [Cleaning Up on the facing page](#)
- [Setting the Timing on page 273](#)

## Cleaning Up




When your rough animation is ready, it is time to clean it up and ink it. The clean-up is also called *tracing*. It consists of tracing solid and clean lines over the rough animation to get closed zones. This is the final paperless animation step before the ink and paint step.

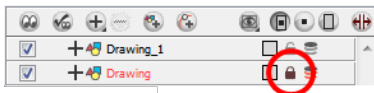
You will need to add a new drawing layer to draw your clean. This is the equivalent of adding a sheet of paper and tracing the rough using the animation disk.




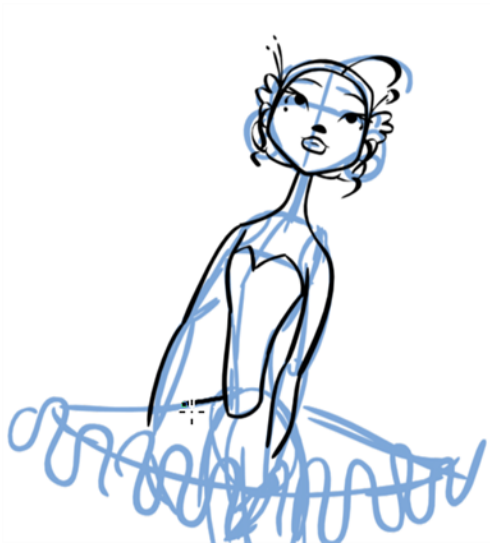
If you plan on tracing your animation in the Drawing view, you will need to enable the Light Table feature in order to display all the layers of your project.


### To trace your animation in a new layer:

1. In the Timeline View toolbar, click on the **Add Drawing Layer**  button.
2. In the Timeline view, click the lock icon of the layer containing your rough animation to prevent selecting the layer in the Camera view.



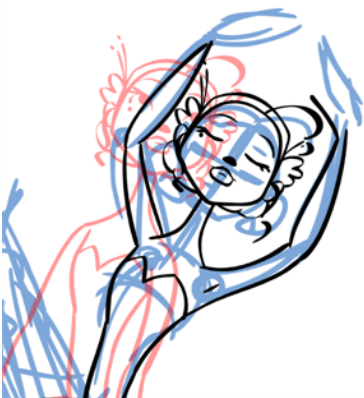
- 1.
2. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the new layer's cell corresponding to the first key drawing of your rough animation.
3. In the Tools toolbar, select the drawing tool of your choice. We recommend the Pencil  tool.
4. In the Colour view, select the colour you will use to trace your animation. Pick a dark bold colour such as black to make sure it contrasts well with the light colour of your rough animation.
5. In the Camera or Drawing view, start tracing the first key drawing.



6. If you have some other layers in the way, you can disable them temporarily from the Timeline view so that only your rough animation and your clean up layer are displayed in the Camera view.
7. In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Enable Onion Skin**  button and extend the Onion Skin in the Timeline view.



8. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the next cell corresponding to a rough drawing.
9. In the Camera view, trace your next drawing.



10. Repeat the previous steps for each drawing.



This method allows you to keep the roughs and the cleans intact. You only need to disable the rough layer to prevent it from appearing in the scene.

---



## Related Topics

- [Animating on page 267](#)
- [Setting the Timing below](#)

# Setting the Timing

---



Refer to the following topics in the [Timing on page 375](#) chapter to learn how to set the timing of your animation:

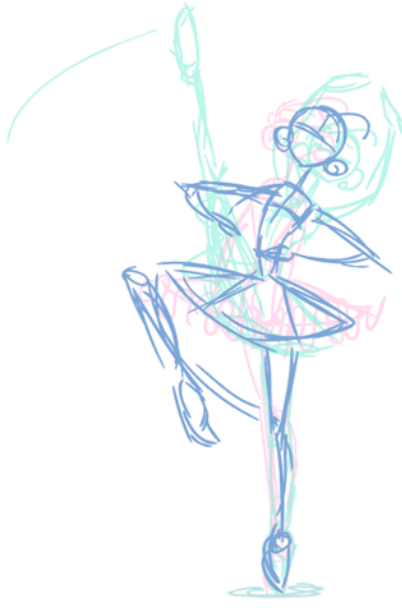
---

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)
- [Filling Exposure Mode on page 420](#)
- [Typing Exposure on page 421](#)
- [Extending a Single Exposure on page 424](#)
- [Extending an Exposure Sequence on page 424](#)
- [Dragging Cells on page 425](#)
- [Increasing and Decreasing Exposure on page 428](#)
- [Deleting Exposure on page 431](#)
- [Inserting Blank Cells on page 432](#)
- [Setting the Exposure on page 433](#)
- [Filling a Selection with a Single Exposure on page 434](#)
- [Filling a Selection with a Sequence on page 435](#)
- [Filling a Selection Randomly on page 437](#)
- [Creating Cycles on page 438](#)

## Related Topics

- [Animating on page 267](#)
- [Cleaning Up on page 271](#)

# Advanced Traditional Animation



Toon Boom Animate Pro has many useful features such as the Flipping toolbar, enhanced Onion Skin, extra drawing layers, automated matte and more.

## Related Topics

- [Flip and Easy Flipping Toolbars](#) below
- [Onion Skin Toolbar](#) on page 276
- [Shift and Trace](#) on page 278
- [More Drawing Layers](#) on page 288
- [Multiple Drawings in the Drawing View](#) on page 292
- [Preview Selected Drawings](#) on page 293

## Flip and Easy Flipping Toolbars

Toon Boom Animate Pro provides a Flip feature which allows you to rapidly flip through the drawings as one would with paper drawings. You can flip through the Key, Breakdown or In-between drawings individually, or view a combination.

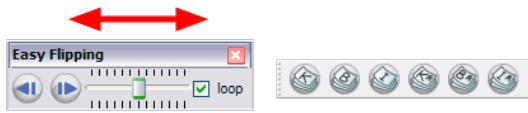




The Flipping features only work in the Drawing view.

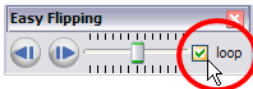
---

## To flip through your drawings:

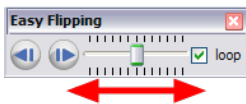
1. In the top menu, select **Window > Toolbars > Easy Flipping and Flip**.



2. In the Easy Flipping toolbar, click on the **Previous**  or **Next**  button to see the previous or next drawing of your animation.
3. Enable the **Loop** option to loop your animation during the flip. This way, when you reach the end of your animation, the first drawings will show up again.

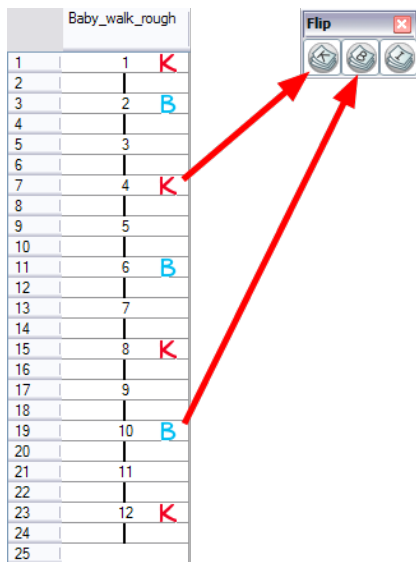


4. Move the slider to the right to flip forward and to the left to flip backward through your drawings.



▸ The more that you move the slider to the left or the right, the faster the drawings will flip.

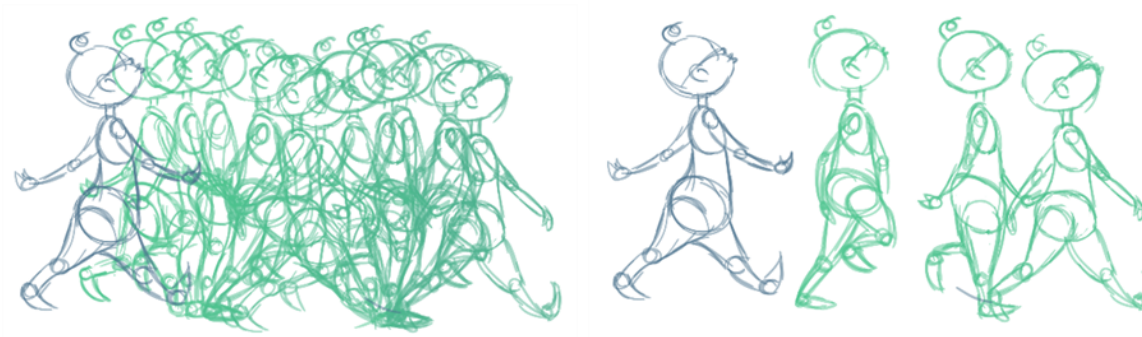
5. If you marked some of your drawings as Key, Breakdown or In-between, you can flip through the markers and avoid seeing all the in-betweens. Enable the Flip Key, Breakdown or In-between option in the Flip toolbar, to see only one type or a combination. [See \*Drawing Identification\* on page 261.](#)



## Related Topics

- [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261
- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on the previous page

## Onion Skin Toolbar



You can setup your onion skin to display only the marked drawings, in the same way that you flip through your drawings marked as Key, Breakdown or Inbetween drawings. See [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261.




This Onion Skin feature only operates in the Drawing view.

### To display the marked drawings in the onion skin:

1. In the top menu, select **Window > Toolbars > Onion Skin**.

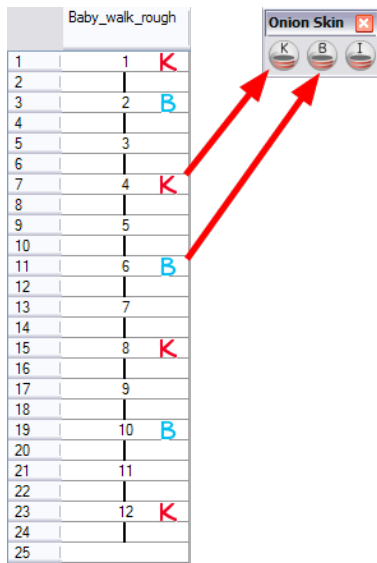


2. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Onion Skin**  feature.

3. In the Timeline view, pull on the blue arrows to extend the number of drawings displayed in the onion skin preview.



4. In the Onion Skin toolbar, enable the markers you want to see in your Onion Skin preview.



## Related Topics

- [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261
- [Enabling the Onion Skin in Other Layers](#) below
- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on page 274
- [Flip and Easy Flipping Toolbars](#) on page 274

## Enabling the Onion Skin in Other Layers

Sometime, you might need to refer to previous and next drawings in other layers than the current one. You can activate the Enable Onion Skin in Other Elements option to see the previous and next drawings of the layers visible in Light Table mode.





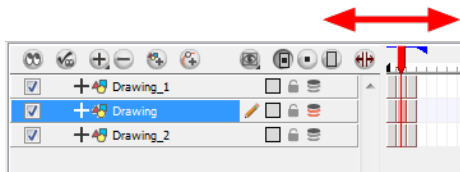
This Onion Skin feature only operates in the Drawing view.

### To enable the onion skin in other layers:

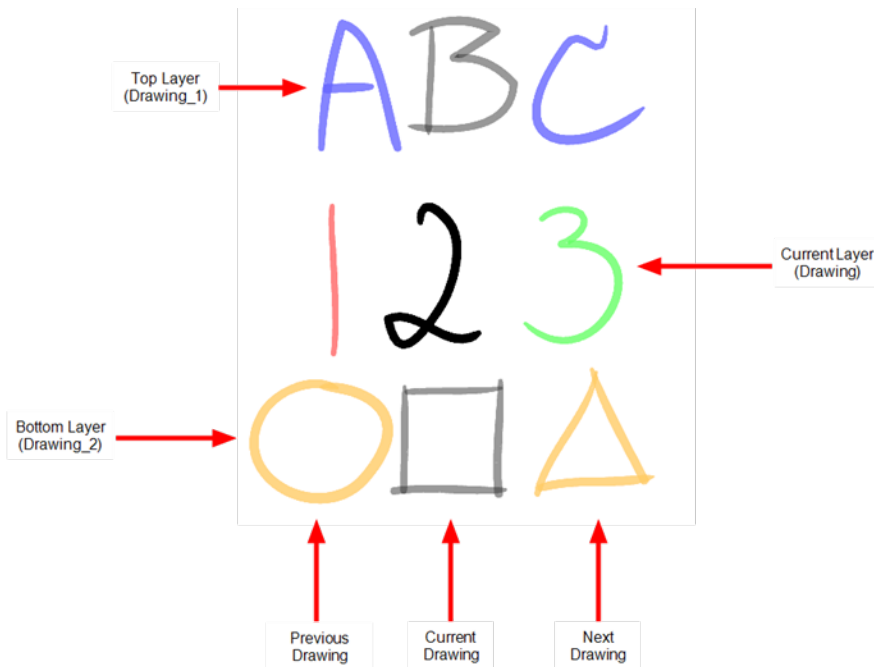
1. In the top menu, select **Window > Toolbars > Onion Skin**.



2. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Onion Skin**  feature.
3. In the Drawing view, enable the **Light Table**  option. This option is not available in the Camera view.
4. In the Timeline view, pull on the blue arrows to extend the number of drawings displayed in the onion skin preview.



5. In the Onion Skin toolbar, enable the **Enable Onion Skin in Other Elements** option.



- By default, layers located on top (in the Timeline view) of the current layer will be displayed as shades of blue.
- By default, layers located below (in the Timeline view) of the current layer will be displayed as shades of yellow.
- By default, the current layer will be displayed in shades of green and red.



You can change the Onion Skin display default colours in the Preferences panel. See [General > Edit Colours](#) on page 299.

## Related Topics

- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on page 274
- [Flip and Easy Flipping Toolbars](#) on page 274
- [Onion Skin Toolbar](#) on page 276

## Shift and Trace

When animating traditionally, it is very important to stay on model. Losing the proportions or features of a character is easy to do. The Shift and Trace feature makes it possible to temporarily move a drawing so that you

can trace it on another one. This is similar to animators working on an animation light table and using cut-out pieces of a character to move it underneath the new drawing and trace it.

The Shift and Trace option will not modify your drawing, it will only allow it to be moved, rotated or scaled in the **Shift and Trace** mode. As soon as you disable the Shift and Trace option, the repositioned drawing returns to its normal state.




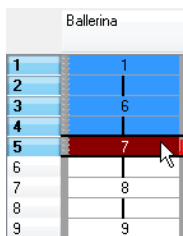
If you use the Shift and Trace feature a lot, you can assign custom shortcuts to the following operations:

- Shift and Trace Drawing Move Down
- Shift and Trace Drawing Move Up
- Shift and Trace Drawing Reset Position
- Shift and Trace Drawing Toggle Peg State
- Shift and Trace Drawing Toggle Visibility
- Shift and Trace Move Tool
- Shift and Trace Rotate Tool
- Shift and Trace Scale Tool
- Shift and Trace Toggle Manipulator
- Shift and Trace Toggle View

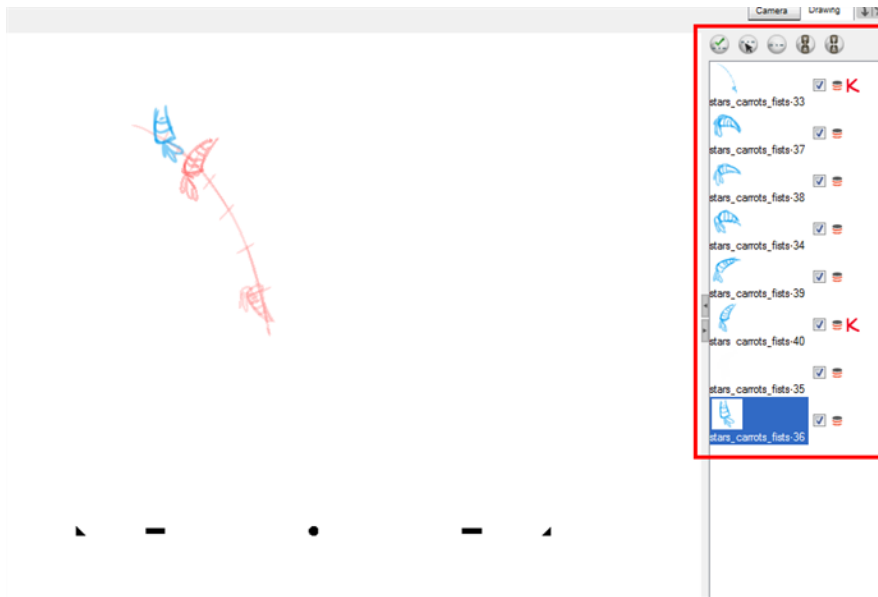
Refer to [Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut on page 74](#) to learn how to customize keyboard shortcuts.

### To shift and trace:

1. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Onion Skin**  feature.
2. Open a Drawing view.
3. In the Xsheet view, select the range of drawings you need to shift and trace. This selection should include at least the layer containing the piece you need to trace and the new drawing in which you will trace.



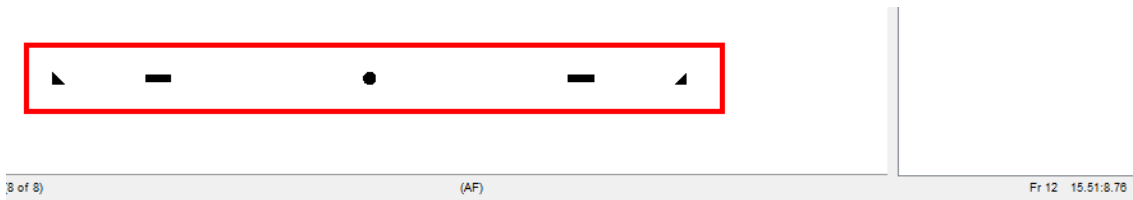
4. In the Xsheet view, right-click on your drawing selection and select **Drawings > Send to Drawing view**. The selected drawings are sent to the Thumbnail view which appears in the Drawing view.



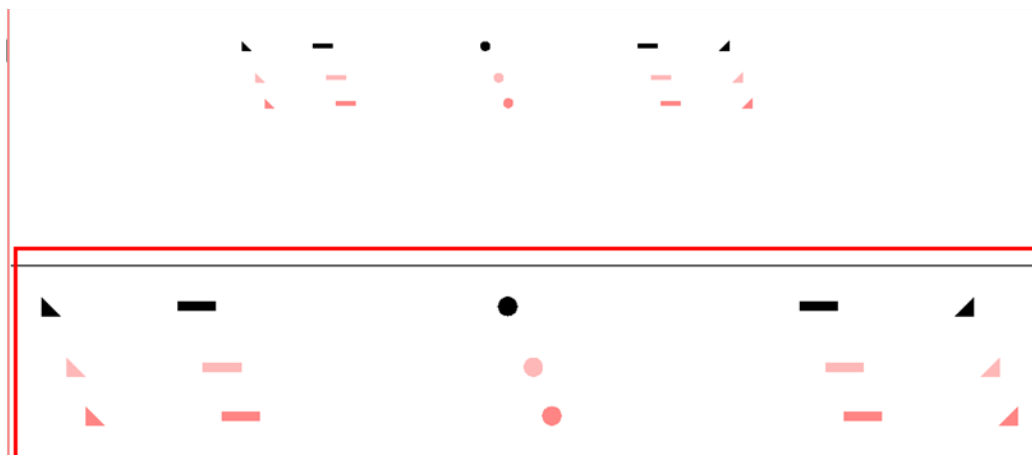
The Thumbnail view is situated by default on the right side of the Drawing view. You can change its positioning via the Preferences panel.

5. Press on the **Shift and Trace Enable**  button to enable the option.


Registration holes appears at the bottom of your drawings.

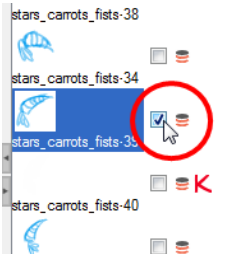


At the bottom of the Drawing view, a close up window appears to display the registration marks up close to be able to move and reposition them easier if you are zoomed out quite a bit while working on your drawings.

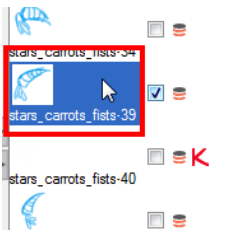




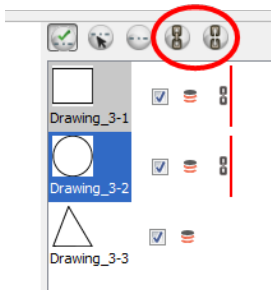
6. Select the **Shift and Trace**  tool.
7. Enable the **Onion Skin**. Select **View > Onion Skin > Show Onion Skin** or press [Alt] + [O].
8. If not done already, enable the check box corresponding to the drawing you want to allow to be transformed temporarily. All drawings are enabled for Shift and Trace operations by default.



9. Select the drawing you want to move.



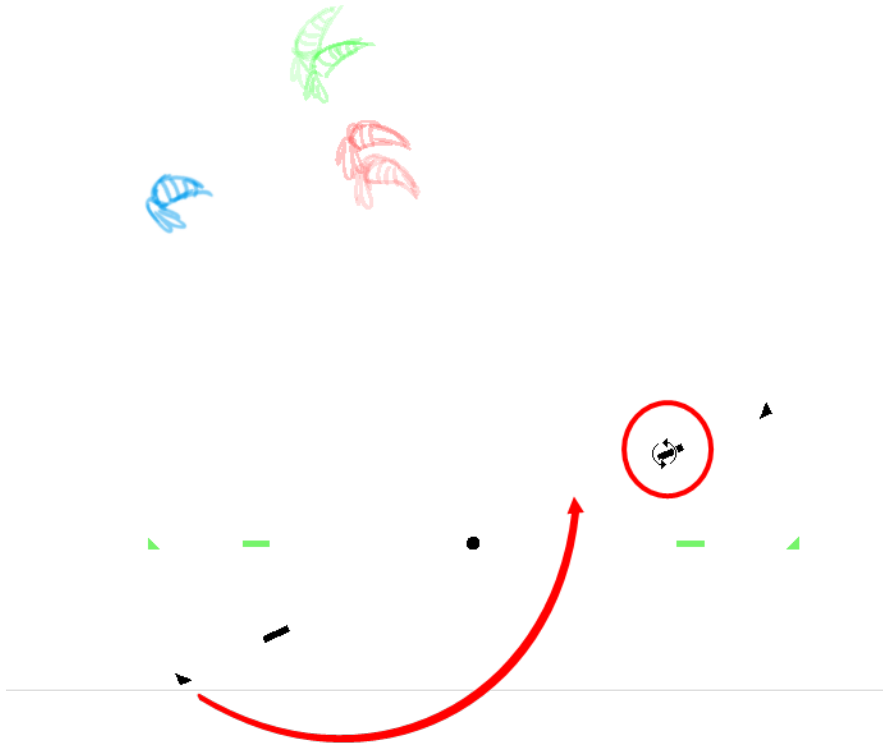
10. If you want to draw more than one drawing at once, you can link them together. In the Shift and Trace panel, select several drawings and click on the Link Drawings and Unlink Drawings buttons to lock their position together.



11. In the Drawing view, transform the drawing as needed, to position it between you two key poses:
  - To reposition, click and drag the drawing to a new area.



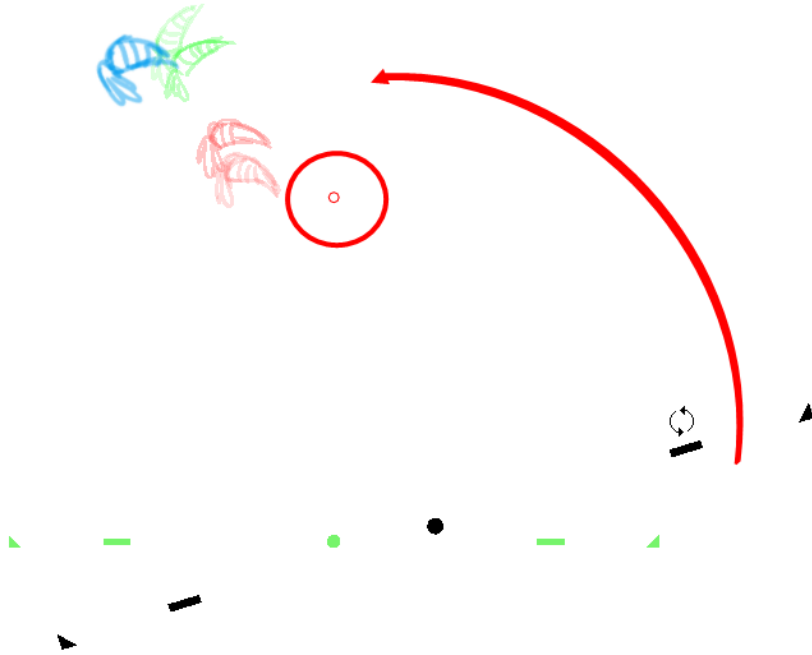
- To rotate from the centre peg, click on the flat peg hole and rotate.



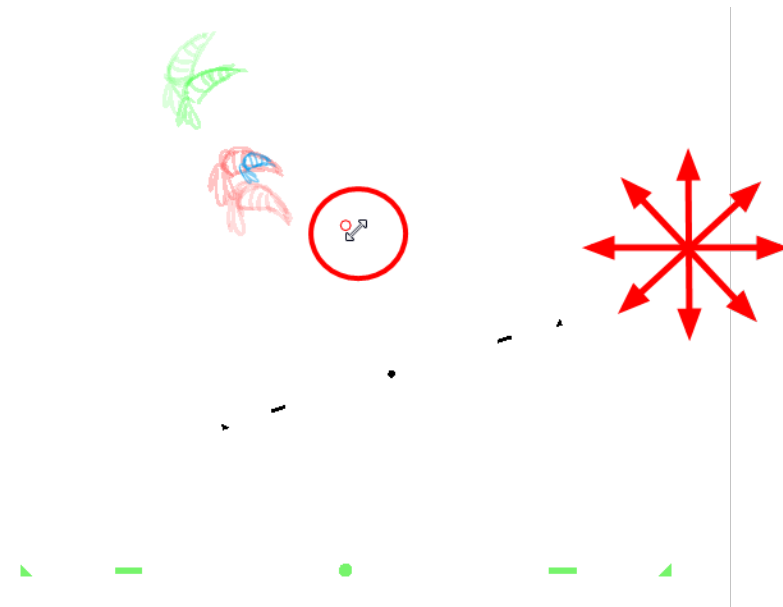
- ▶ To scale, pull or push on the triangle control.



- ▶ Hold [Alt] to show the pivot point. The pivot point is situated in the middle of your current drawing view. To rotate from the pivot point. Hold [Alt] and rotate



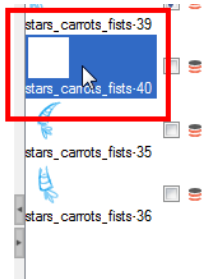
- ▶ To scale from the pivot point, hold [Shift] and move your cursor.



- ▶ Click and drag the pivot point to move it to a new position. Once the pivot point have been moved, you need to hold [Alt] and move your drawing in order to show it again.



12. Once your drawing is repositioned, select the drawing into which you want to trace.

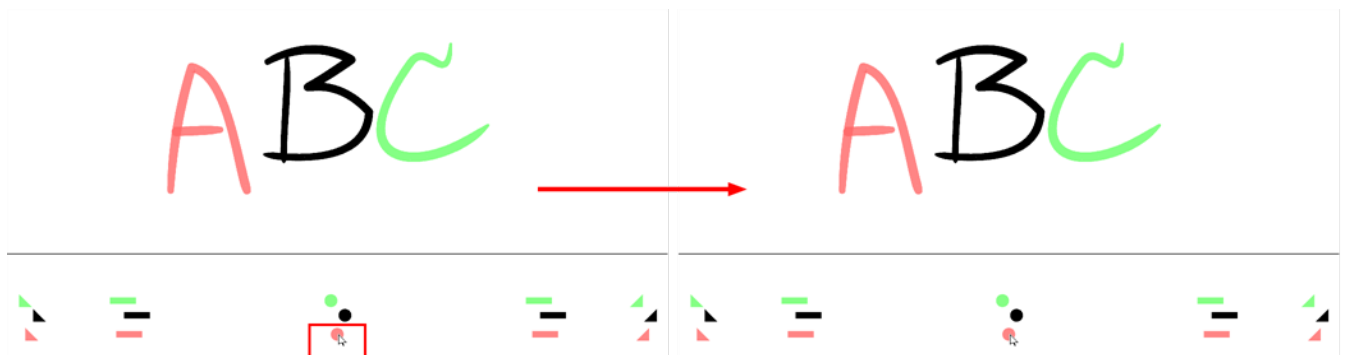


13. Select the drawing tool of your choice.

14. In the Drawing view, trace your drawing.



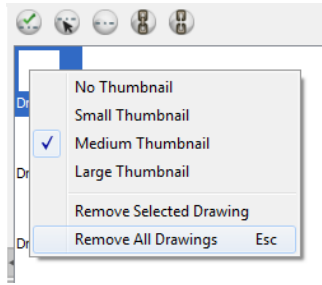
15. If you want to select another drawing and reposition it, you can hold down [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click on the **Shift and Trace Registration** marks (Peg holes).



16. If necessary, click on the **Shift and Trace Reset**  button to reset the position of the modified drawing.

17. Right-click in the drawing list column and select Remove All Drawings to close the drawing list.

- ▶ To remove one, or several, drawings from your selection without clearing the entire list, select the drawings you want to remove using [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X), right-click in the drawing list column and select Remove Selected Drawing.



## Related Topics

- [Shift and Trace Linked Drawings](#) below
- [Enabling and Disabling Individual Drawing Shift and Trace Onion Skin](#) on page 287

## Shift and Trace Linked Drawings

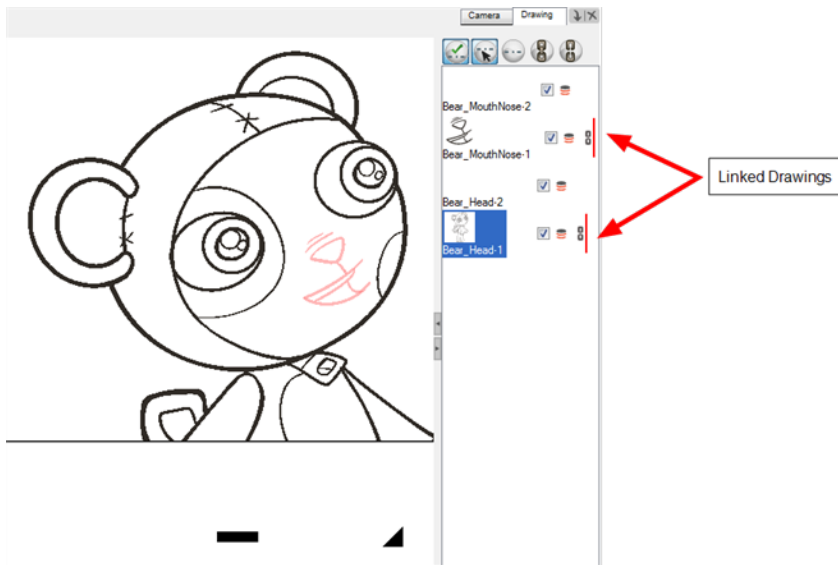
When using the Shift and Trace feature, you can link different drawings from the Drawing List so that they move together when dragging or scaling. These drawings can be from different columns in the Xsheet view. Bars in differing colours will appear beside the chain link icon to easily identify different linked groups.

### To link your Shift and Trace Drawings:

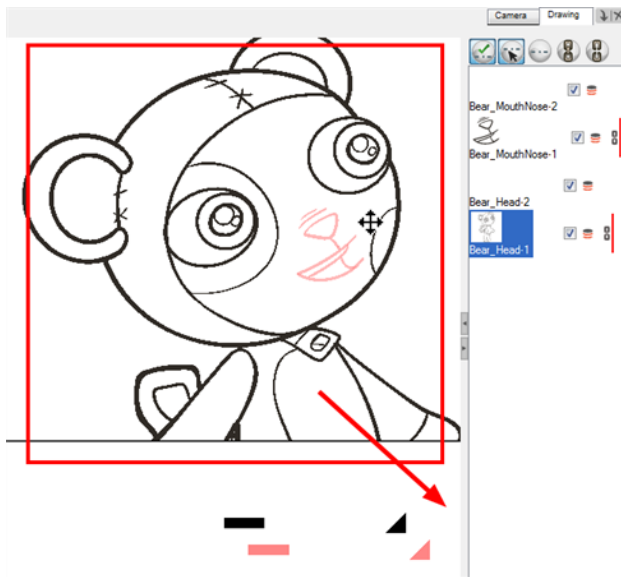
1. In the Drawing view's Thumbnail area, display the drawings you want to use to perform your Shift and Trace operation.
2. In the Thumbnail area, hold down [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and select the drawings you want to link together.
3. In the Thumbnail area's toolbar, click on the Link Drawings button to link your selection.



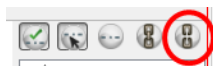
A coloured bar and a link icon appear beside the linked drawings.



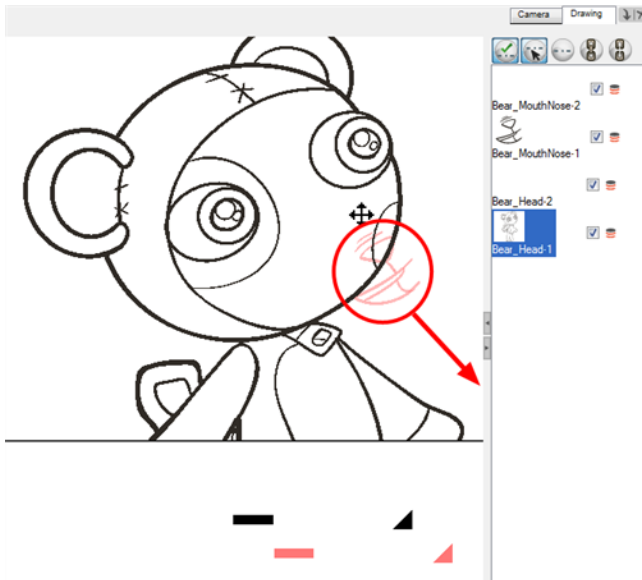
4. Enabling the **Shift and Trace** feature, move your linked drawings.



5. If you want to unlink your drawings, in the Thumbnails area, select one of the linked drawings and click on the **Unlink Drawing** button.



6. You can now move your drawings independently.



## Related Topics

- [Shift and Trace](#) on page 278

## Enabling and Disabling Individual Drawing Shift and Trace Onion Skin

It is possible that you would end up with a lot of drawings in your onion skin display while working with the Shift and Trace feature. You can disable individual drawings from the Onion Skin display without deactivating them.

To enable and disable individual drawing shift and trace onion skin display:

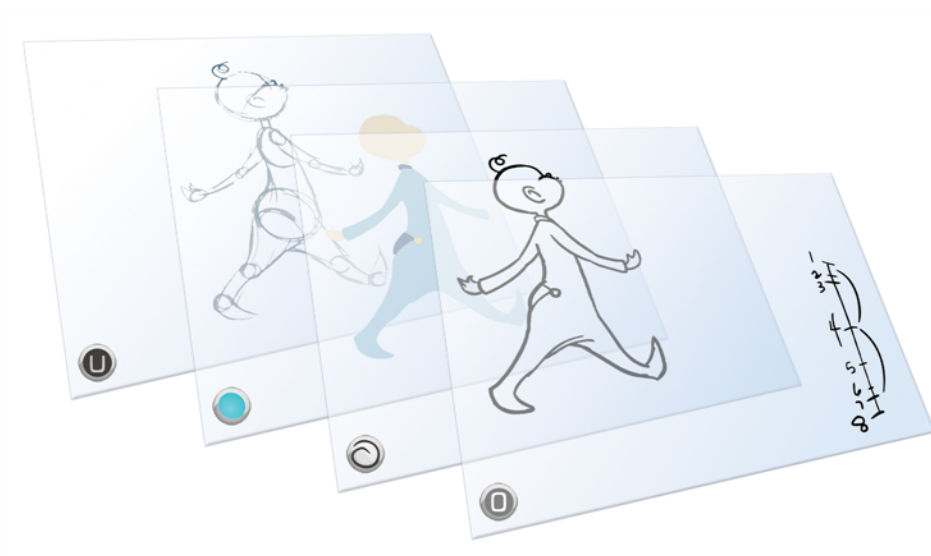
1. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Onion Skin**  feature.
2. In the Drawing view's Shift and Trace panel, click on the drawing's onion skin icon to enable or disable it.






## Related Topics

- [Shift and Trace](#) on page 278

## More Drawing Layers








Toon Boom Animate Pro has four layers included in its drawings:

-  [Overlay below](#)
-  [Line Art on the facing page](#)
-  [Colour Art on page 290](#)
-  [Underlay on page 290](#)

Each layer can be used for a traditional animation task, this helps to organize your work and make things easier.

**To switch between the drawing layers:**

1. In the Camera or Drawing view bottom toolbar, click on either the **Overlay** , **Line Art** , **Colour Art**  or **Underlay**  buttons.
2. Click on the **Preview**  button to display all the layers together. Select **Overlay** and **Underlay** in the Preview button's drop-down menu, to display all four layers.

## Overlay

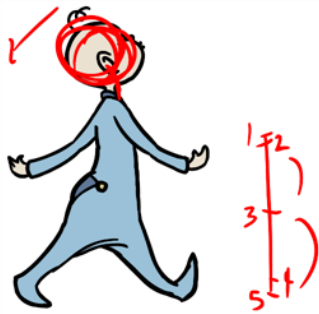
The Overlay layer can be used for a lot of different things:

- Highlights and Tones





- Annotations and Corrections



- Sketching

You can also simply draw in the Overlay layer, it is a regular layer.



## Line Art

In traditional animation, you mainly use the Line Art layer to trace and clean up your animation. The outline is drawn in the Line Art layer and you paint in the Colour Art layer.



## Colour Art

In traditional animation, you use the Colour Art layer to paint your animation. The outline is drawn in the Line Art layer and you paint in the Colour Art layer. You need to generate invisible lines out of your Line Art to be able to do so.



## Underlay



The Underlay layer can be used for several things but mainly for sketching your rough animation or generating a matte colour when doing line testing. See [Generating a Matte for Your Animation](#) below.

## Related Topics

- [Line Art and Colour Art Layers](#) on page 346
- [Generating a Matte for Your Animation](#) below

## Generating a Matte for Your Animation



When you are doing rough animation, you may want to send a clip to somebody for feedback or approval before carrying on with your work. If you have several characters in your project that are overlapping, it may be difficult

to understand what is going on as you can see through the characters. Toon Boom Animate Pro can generate a matte automatically in the Underlay, or even in the Colour Art layer, and fill all the zones inside your characters making them opaque. This process is fast and easy and allows you to send easy to understand movies.

### To generate a matte:

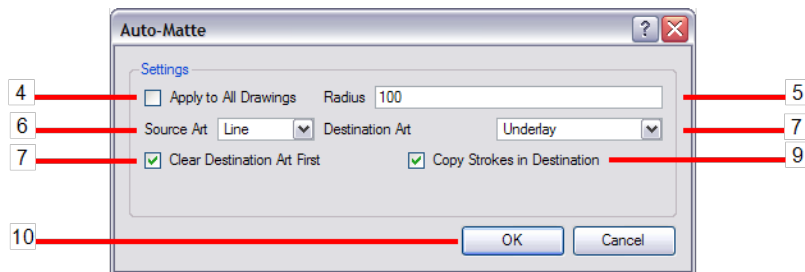
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the drawing you want to create a matte for.



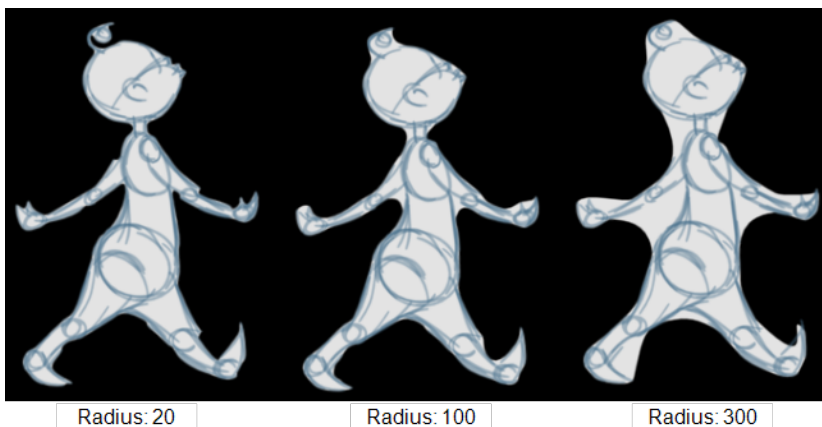
You will also be able to apply the operation to all the drawings in the layer at the same time.

3. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Generate Auto-Matte**. You can also select the option in the Camera or Drawing view menu under **Drawing > Generate Auto-Matte**.

The Auto-Matte dialog box opens.



4. If you want to create a matte for all the drawings included in your layer, enable the **Apply to All Drawings** option.
5. Depending on how precise or rough your line is, you will need to increase or decrease the radius value. The lower the value is, the closer to your lines' contours the matte will be shaped and the higher the value is, the looser the matte will be shaped.



6. In the Source Art drop-down menu, select the layer (**Line Art**, **Colour Art**, **Underlay** or **Overlay**) you want the matte to be created from.
7. In the Destination Art drop-down menu, select the layer (**Line Art**, **Colour Art**, **Underlay** or **Overlay**) you want the matte to be created on.

8. If you already have artwork on the destination layer and you want the content to be deleted before the matte is added into it, enable the Clear Destination Art First option.
9. If you want the contour of your lines to be also copied as invisible lines in your matte drawing in case you ever need to keep them for later, enable the Copy Stroke in Destination option.
10. Click on the **OK** button to validate the operation.

## Related Topics

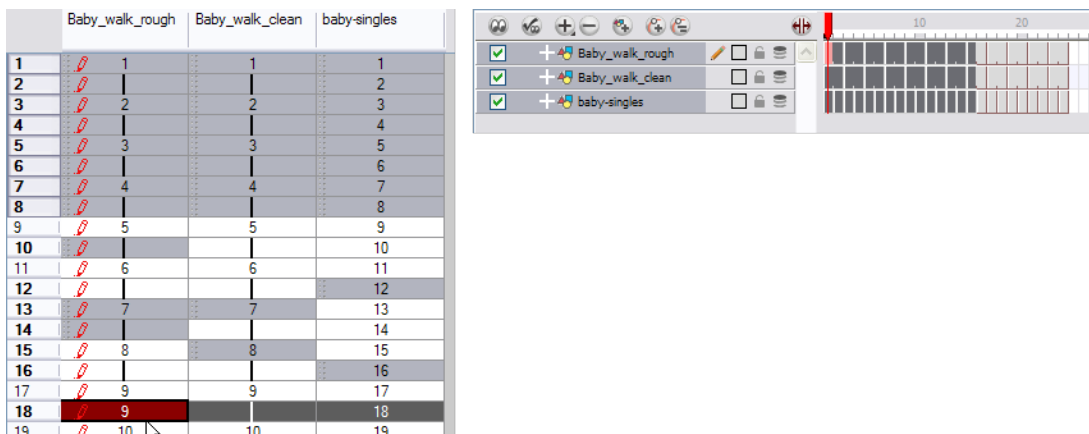
- [More Drawing Layers](#) on page 288

# Multiple Drawings in the Drawing View

If you only want to work on a portion of an animation sequence or many drawings from different layers, you can. To do this, select the segment needed in one or more layers in the Xsheet or Timeline view and then, use the Send to Drawing View and Add Drawings to Drawing View options to send the selection to the Drawing view and allow you to work only on these drawings.

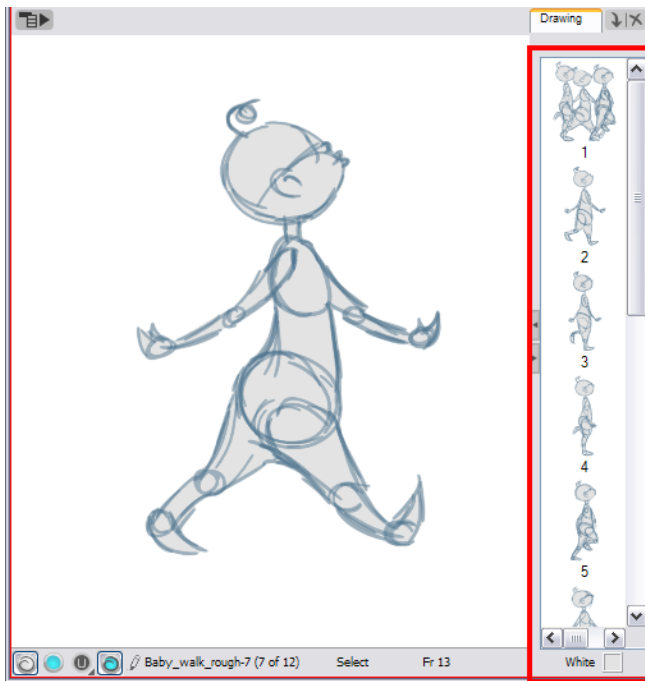
### To send several drawings to the Drawing View:

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select a consecutive cell range from one or several layers. In the Xsheet view, using [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X), you can click on any cell to add it on the selection, even if it is not consecutive.

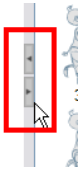


2. In the Timeline View or Xsheet View menu, select **Drawings > Send to Drawing View**. In the Xsheet view, you can also hold down the [Alt] key and click on the selection.

The drawings appear at the side of the Drawing view.



3. If the Drawing view side panel is hidden, click on the Arrow button, located to the right side of the view.



4. If you want to add some extra drawings to the Drawing view without having to start over, in the Xsheet view, select the desired drawings to be added.
5. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Drawings > Add Drawings to Drawing View** or press [Alt] + click.
6. If you want to send a new drawing selection to the Drawing view and remove the current one, select a new range of drawings in the Timeline or Xsheet view.
7. In the Timeline View or Xsheet View menu, select **Drawings > Send to Drawing View**.
8. To change the size of the thumbnails displayed in the side panel, right-click in the side panel and select **No Thumbnail**, **Small Thumbnail**, **Medium Thumbnail** or **Large Thumbnail**.
9. To empty the drawing list accumulated in the Drawing view, right-click in the side panel and select **Remove Selected Drawings** or **Remove All Drawings**.



## Related Topics

- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on page 274

## Preview Selected Drawings

To check your animation ink and paint, to verify that there are no colour mistakes or to see your animation in real time, you can scroll through your drawings or press [F] and [G]. You may also use the Preview option available in the Xsheet view.

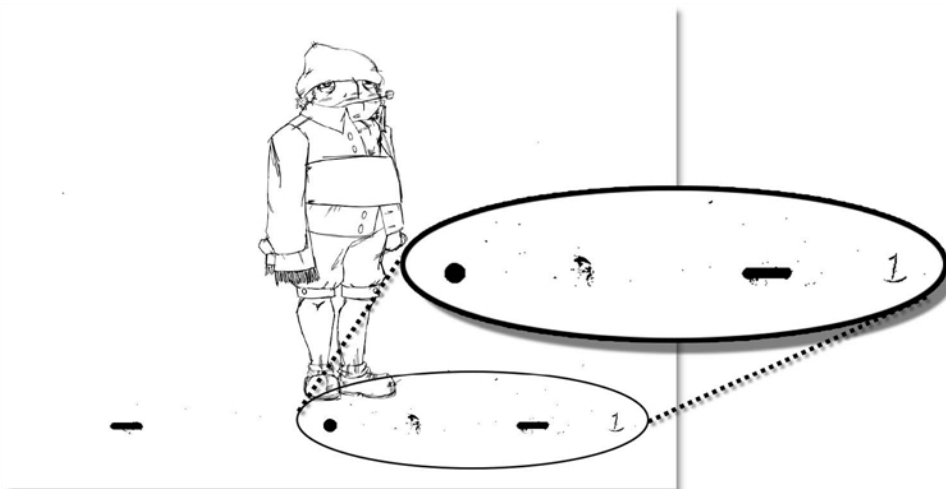
### To preview drawings from the Xsheet view:

1. Save your scene. In the top menu select **File > Save** or click on the **Save**  button or press [Ctrl] + [S] (Windows) or [⌘] + [S] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Xsheet view, select the range of drawings or the whole column to preview.
3. In the Xsheet View menu, select **View > Preview Selected Drawings**.  
The Toon Boom Play opens.
4. In the Play window, press the **Play**  button to play back your drawings.
5. Enable the **Preroll** option to see blank frames at the beginning and at the end of the animation sequence while looping the playback.

### Related Topics

- [Advanced Traditional Animation](#) on page 274

# Cleaning Scanned Drawings

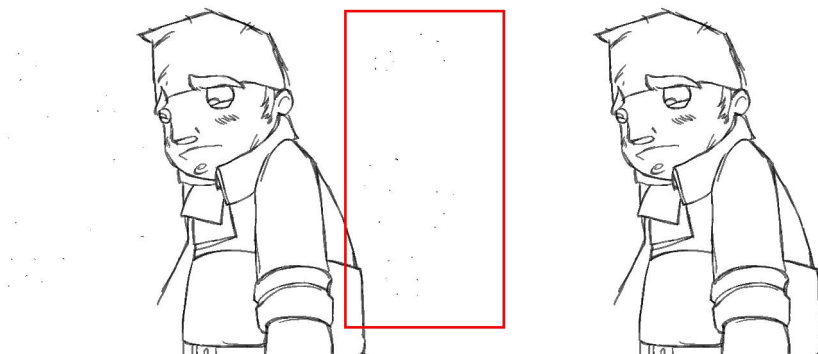


As paper drawings are passed through a scanner they may pick up dirt, hairs or dust. These foreign bodies register as part of the drawing and will appear as unwanted marks on the scanned drawing. These marks need to be cleaned. Toon Boom Animate Pro provides different features to remove them quickly.

Each of the removal features are described in the following sections:

- [Remove Dirt](#) below
- [Remove Art Outside Selection](#) on the next page
- [Remove Art Inside Selection](#) on page 297
- [Remove Hair](#) on page 298

## Remove Dirt



The Remove Dirt tool selects small dots and hairs on the drawing. Increasing the Remove Dirt level selects larger dots for removal, but be careful not to lose small details like pupils and nostrils. Once the removal level is chosen, you can apply it to either the current drawing or to the whole animation sequence.

This is a fast way to get rid of most dirt and dust.

**To use the Remove Dirt tool:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawing to clean.

2. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Clean Up > Remove Dirt** or press [Shift] + [D].  
In *Harmony Paint*, select **Drawing > Remove Dirt**.

The Remove Dirt dialog box opens.

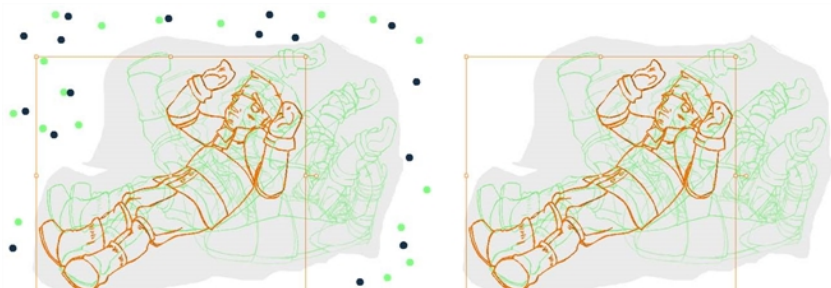


3. Increase the Remove Dirt value by moving the slider to the right. As you increase the tolerance, larger speckles will become highlighted to indicate that they have been included in the selection.
4. Enable the **Apply to All Drawings** option if you want to apply the operation to all the drawings in the layer.
5. Click on the **OK** button.

## Remove Art Outside Selection




The Remove Art Outside Selection option is used to delete any art existing outside a selection. If you have an accumulation in your Colour Art, it can result in large output files, especially if you work in high definition resolution. Simultaneously apply this operation to all of your drawings in the layer by using the Remove Art Outside Selection On All Drawings command.



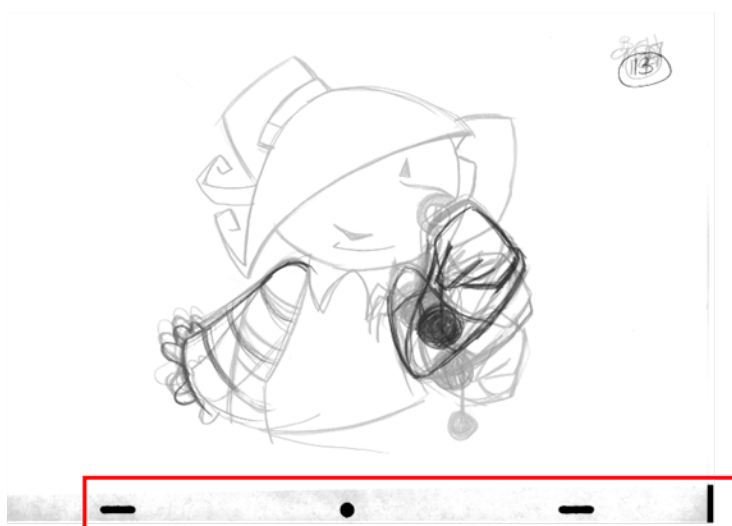
**To clean dirt with the Remove Art Outside Selection:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].



2. If you want to apply the action to your entire animation, enable the **Permanent Selection**  option in the Tool Properties view.
3. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw a selection around the animation. (Make the area large enough to include the whole animation sequence).
4. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Clean up > Remove Art Outside Selection** option to delete artwork outside your selection on one single drawing.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Remove Art Outside Selection**.*
  - To apply the action to all the drawings contained in the layer, select the **Drawing > Clean up > Remove Art Outside Selection on All Drawings** option from the top menu.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Remove Art Outside Selection On All Drawings**.*

## Remove Art Inside Selection





The Remove Art Inside Selection option is used to delete any art inside a selection.

We recommend that you clean your Colour Art level as well. If you have an accumulation of strokes (almost invisible, accidental or leftover marks) in your Colour Art, it can result in large output files, especially if you work in high definition resolutions.

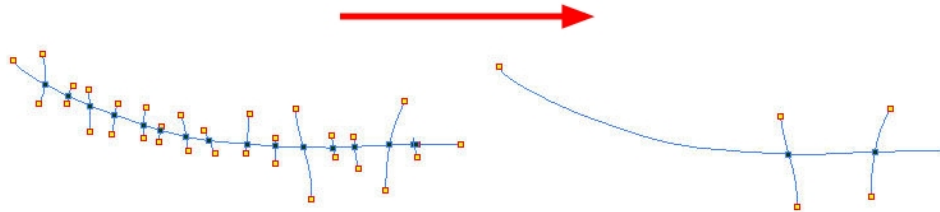
You can simultaneously apply this operation to all of your drawings in the layer by using the Remove Art Inside Selection On All Drawings command.

### To clean dirt with Remove Art Inside Selection:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. If you want to apply the action to your entire animation, in the Tool Properties view, enable the **Permanent Selection**  option in the Tool Properties view.
3. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw a selection around the animation. (Make sure to make the area large enough to include all the zones to be cleaned up on all drawings).
4. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Clean up > Remove Art Inside Selection** option to delete artwork inside your selection on one single drawing.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Remove Art Inside Selection**.*

- ▶ To apply the action on all your drawings contained in the layer, in the top menu, select **Drawing > Clean up > Remove Art Inside Selection on All Drawings** option to delete artwork inside your selection on all the drawings.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Selected > Remove Art Inside Selection on All Drawings**.*

## Remove Hair



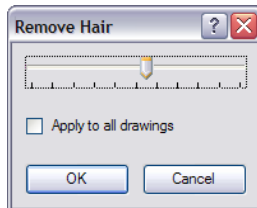
The Remove Hair command is used to remove any small strokes created in the Colour Art from very thick lines or filled zones.

Increasing the Remove Hair level value will select larger strokes for removal from the drawing. You can also select the **Apply to All Drawings** option to remove them on all drawings.

### To use the Remove Hair tool:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawing containing the drawing to clean.
2. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Show Strokes** to display the invisible lines or press [K].
3. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Clean Up > Remove Hair**.  
*In Harmony Paint, select **Drawing > Remove Hair**.*

The Remove Hair dialog box opens.



4. Move the **Hair Selection** slider to the right to increase the number and length of hairs to be selected.
5. Enable the **Apply to All Drawings** option if you want to apply the operation to all the drawings in the layer.
6. Click on the **OK** button.

## Related Topics

- [Scanning Images](#) on page 531

# Traditional Animation Preferences

When animating traditionally in Toon Boom Animate Pro, there are preferences you can set to help you work more efficiently.

To open the Preferences panel:

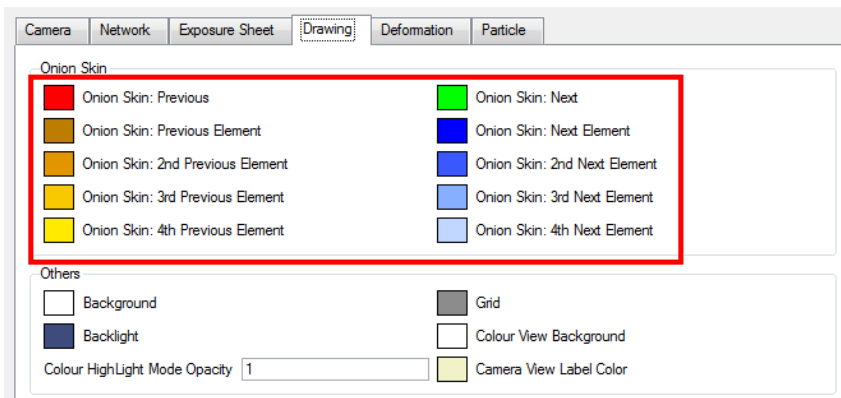
- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [General > Edit Colours](#) below
- [Exposure Sheet](#) on the next page

## General > Edit Colours

You can change the colours for the Onion Skin for Other Elements option.



## Edit Colours for Onion Skin in Other Elements

To change the onion skin display colour:

1. In the Preferences panel, go to the **General** tab.
2. In the General tab, click on the **Edit Colours** button.
3. In the Edit Colours window, go to the Drawing tab.
4. In the Drawing tab, in the Onion Skin section, click on the colour swatch of the onion skin display you want to change.
5. In the Colour Picker window, select the colour.
6. Click OK to confirm the colour.
7. Click OK to confirm and close the **Edit Colours** window.
8. Click OK to confirm the changes and close the **Preferences** panel.

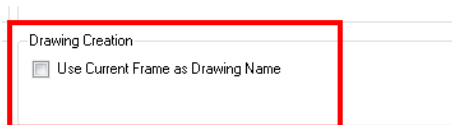


Refer to [Enabling the Onion Skin in Other Layers on page 277](#) to learn more about the Onion Skin for other Layers option.

## Related Topics

- [Exposure Sheet](#) below

# Exposure Sheet



## Current Frame as Drawing Name

The Current Frame as Drawing Name option can be enabled in the Preferences panel, under the Exposure Sheet tab. Use this preference to automatically name the drawing corresponding to the frame position, this avoids numbering conflicts while animating.

	Drawing
1	1
2	9
3	4
4	6
5	3
6	8
7	5
8	7
9	10
10	2

For example, using the default preferences, you start with the first drawing on frame 1, this drawing is called 1. You then draw the extreme position drawing on frame 10, this drawing is called 2. Next, the in-between pose is drawn on frame 5, this drawing is called 3 and so on.

At the end, you have a sequence like this: 1-9-4-6-3-8-5-7-10-2.

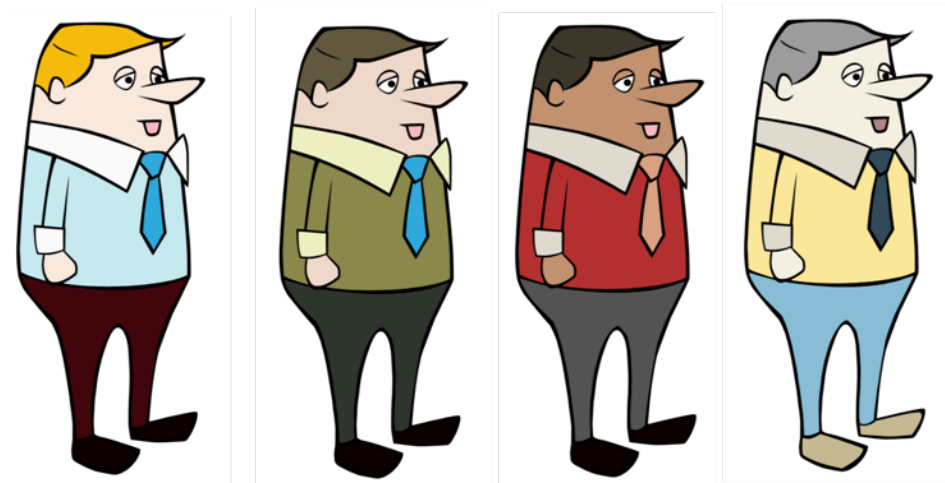
	Drawing
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10

Instead, using the Use Current Frame as Drawing Name preference, each drawing is automatically named by its frame number and the sequence looks like: 1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8-9-10.

## Related Topics

- [General > Edit Colours on the previous page](#)

# Chapter 6: Colour



With Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can add colour to your projects and even create sets of colours for your characters. With Toon Boom Animate Pro's colour palette concept, painting and colour styling has never been easier!


## Topics Covered

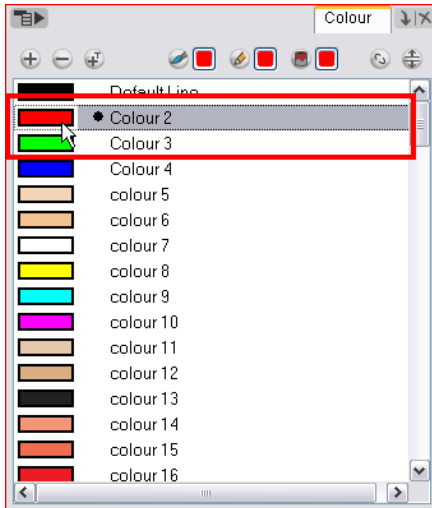
- [How to Paint on the next page](#)
- [Colours on page 304](#)
- [Colour Display Modes on page 314](#)
- [Selecting the Current Colour of a Tool on page 316](#)
- [Painting Using the Paint Tool on page 318](#)
- [Painting Pencil Lines with the Ink Tool on page 326](#)
- [Selecting a Colour in a Drawing on page 334](#)
- [Editing Gradients and Textures on page 336](#)
- [Closing Gaps Manually on page 342](#)
- [Protecting Colours on page 345](#)
- [Line Art and Colour Art Layers on page 346](#)
- [Verifying Zones are Painted on page 351](#)
- [Palettes on page 352](#)
- [Colour Model on page 366](#)
- [Colour Preferences on page 371](#)

# How to Paint

Learn how to paint your drawings by following these instructions.

## To paint your drawings:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Paint  tool or press [Alt] + [I].
2. In the Colour view, select a colour from the palette.
  - Double-click on a colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and modify the colour.



The colour palette will only appear in the Colour view once a drawing element has been selected.

3. In the Camera or Drawing view, start painting the colours on your drawing.



## Related Topics

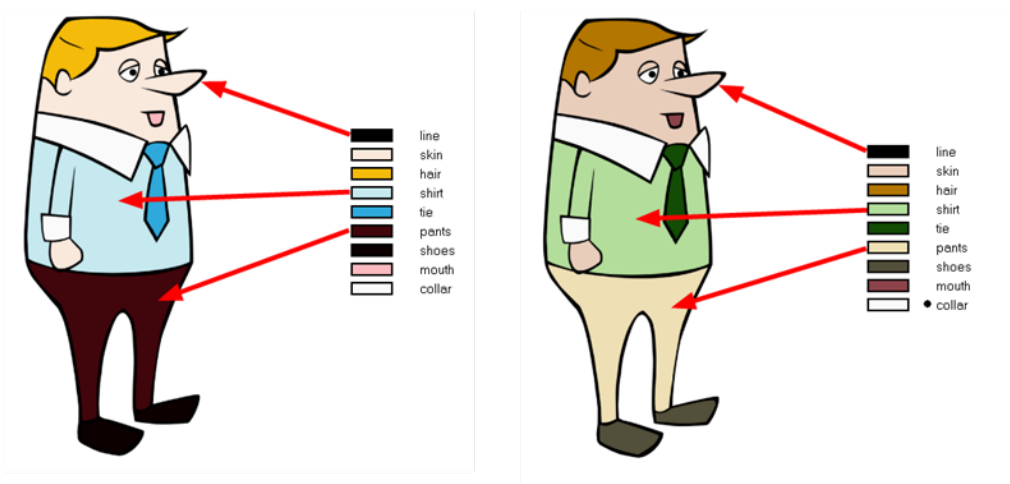
- [Colours on the next page](#)
- [Colour View on page 100](#)

# Colours

Toon Boom Animate Pro has some very powerful colouring features when it comes to painting. To paint your drawings you will use different colour swatches, unlike some paint programs where you modify one swatch each time you want to paint with a different colour.



In the Colour view, you choose a different colour swatch for each colour you want to paint in your drawing. You can add as many swatches as you want. You can also rename them and modify existing ones.



When you modify the colour of an existing swatch it automatically updates all the zones painted with this swatch throughout the entire project. The colour swatch has a unique ID number that associates it with the painted zones. This way, you can change the look of your character at anytime without having to repaint it!

## Related Topics

- [Adding a Colour Swatch](#) below
- [Deleting a Colour Swatch](#) on page 312

## Adding a Colour Swatch

You can use three different types of colour swatches, these are described in the following sections:

- [Solid Colour Swatch](#) on the facing page




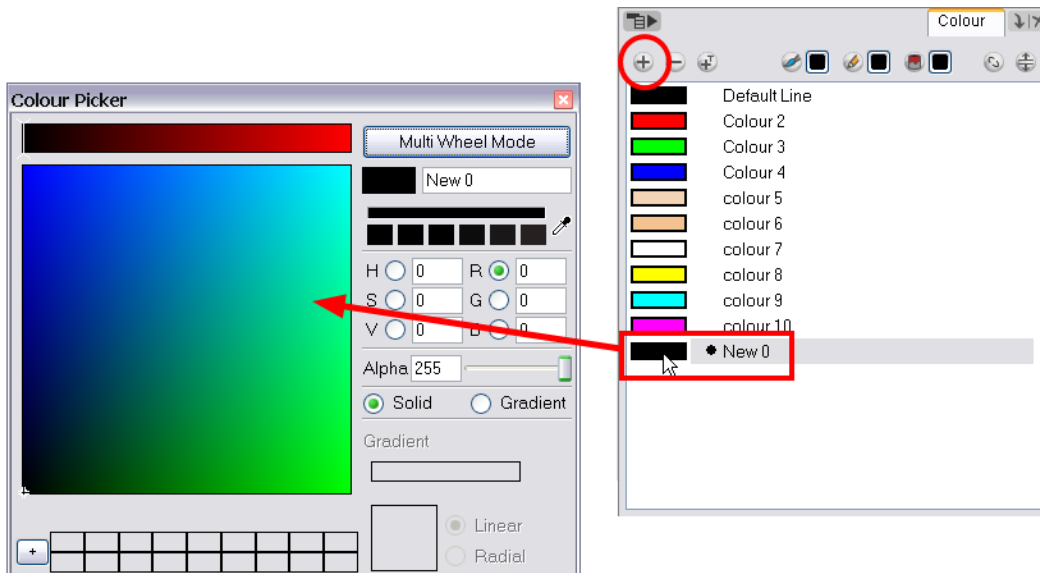
- [Default Colour Swatch](#) on page 307
- [Gradient Colour Swatch](#) on page 308
- [Bitmap Texture Swatch](#) on page 310

## Solid Colour Swatch



To add or modify a solid colour swatch:

1. In the Colour view, click on the **New Colour**  button.
2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Edit**. You can also double-click on the colour pot. The Colour Picker window opens.




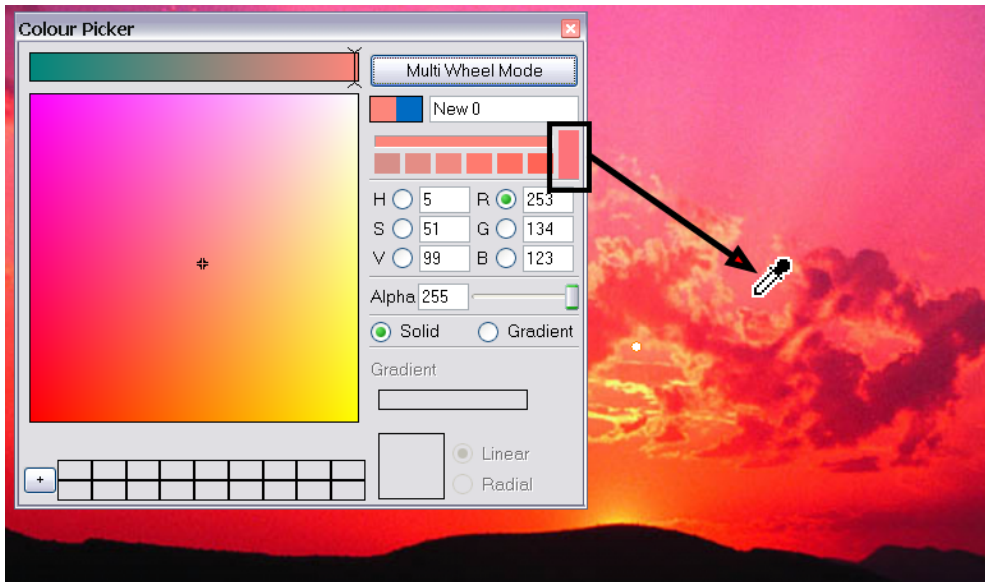
3. To set your colour:
  - In the colour wheel, select the desired colour.
 OR

- ▶ Type in the HSV or RGB values in the corresponding fields. Click on the **R,G,B,H,S** or **V** radio buttons to change the look of the colour picking area.

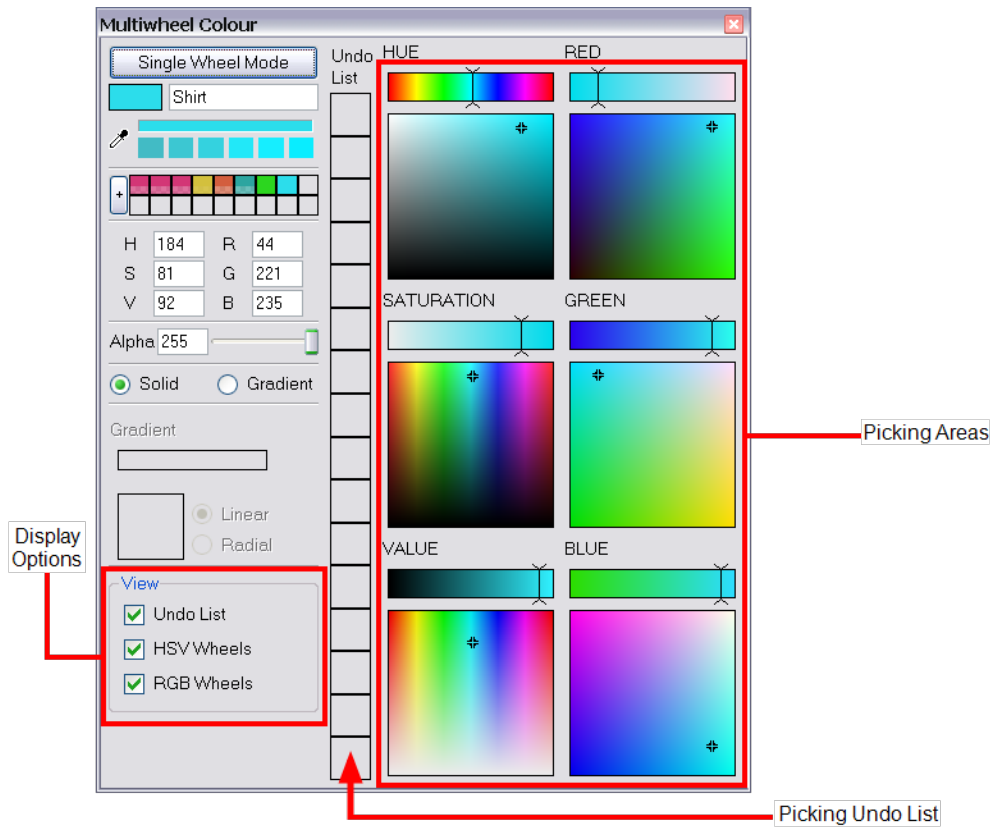
H	<input type="text" value="207"/>	R	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
S	<input type="text" value="100"/>	G	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="107"/>
V	<input type="text" value="76"/>	B	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="text" value="194"/>

OR

- ▶ Click on the **Dropper**  button to select any colour on your screen. It can be from the Toon Boom Animate Pro's interface, your Operating System or any other open application.



You can also click on the **Multi Wheel Mode** button to open the Multiwheel Colour dialog box. This displays all the picking area styles together and also contains a picking undo list. Click on the **Single Wheel Mode** button to go back to the regular Colour Picker window.



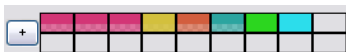
4. If needed, click on the **Shade Scale**'s swatches to modify the shade of the selected colour.



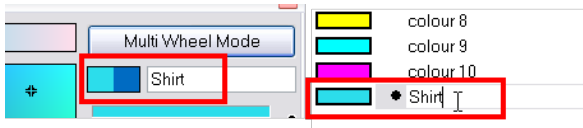
5. If necessary, adjust the desired level of transparency with the Alpha slider, or type the value directly in the Alpha field.




6. If necessary, click on the **Add** button to add the current selected colour to the Colour Storage Library, so you can quickly access it later.



7. You can rename the colour swatch in the Colour Picker window or directly in the colour list by double-clicking on its name.



## Default Colour Swatch

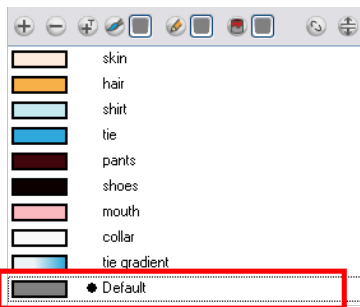
In Toon Boom Animate Pro, when you click on the **Add Colour**  button, a new colour swatch is created using the colour of the currently selected swatch from your palette. However, you can set a Default colour to be used

every time you create a new colour in your colour palette. This might be useful if you want to create different shades of the same basic colour.

#### To change the default swatch colour for all your colour palettes:

1. In the top menu, go to **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences panel, under the Drawing tab, enable the **Create New Colour Pot Using the Default Colour** option. In addition, You can click on the colour swatch, located just beside, to change the Default colour.

The default colour is also the colour used when you choose to vectorize images that you are scanning into your scene, however you add the Default colour swatch to your palette in a different way, so that it is unique. It has a unique ID number that makes it recognizable from all the other colours in your colour palettes. Being able to change this colour allows you to change the basic colour of all scanned drawings. This can be useful on more than just an aesthetic level as sometimes when you go to NTSC or PAL, pure colours, such as pure black, can create problems.



#### To add a new colour swatch using the default colour:

1. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > New**.

A new swatch will be added to your palette using the default colour pot colour. The new swatch created with the New command will be named **New 0**.



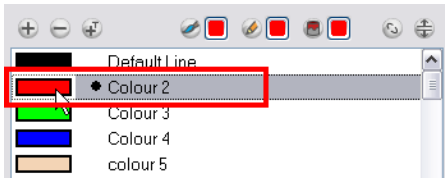
Refer to [Colour Preferences](#) on page 371 to learn more on the Create New Colour Pot Using The Default Colour preference and how to customize the default colour pot colour.

## Gradient Colour Swatch

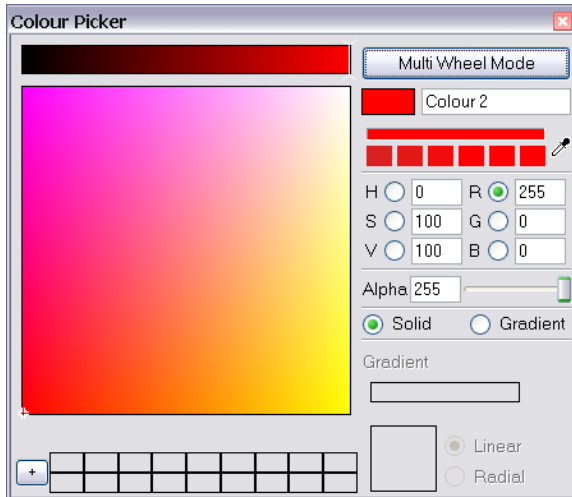


### To create a gradient colour swatch:

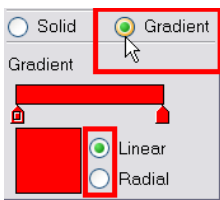
1. In the Colour view, select the colour to be modified.



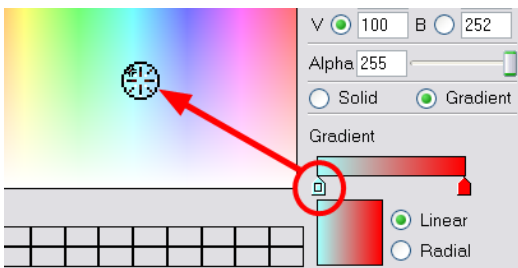
2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Edit**. You can also double-click on the colour pot. The Colour Picker window opens.



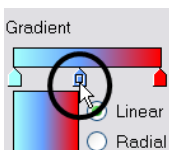
3. Enable the **Gradient** option.



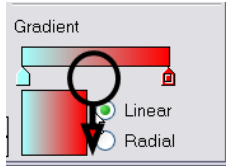
4. Select the **Linear** or **Radial** option.
5. Select the **Gradient** arrows to modify the colours.



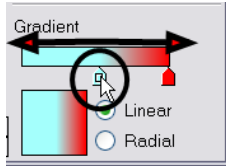
- ▶ Click between the arrows to add extra colours.



- ▶ Pull down the arrows to remove them.



- ▶ Move the arrows left and right to modify the gradient distance.



Refer to the [Editing Gradients and Textures](#) on page 336 topic to learn how to reposition your gradient zones in your drawings.

## Bitmap Texture Swatch

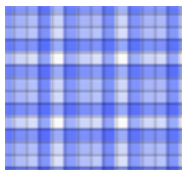


To create a texture colour:

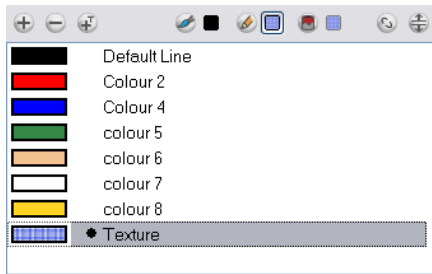
1. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > New Texture** or click on the **New Texture**  button.

The Browser window opens.

2. Browse for a PSD or TGA bitmap file created in a third party software.

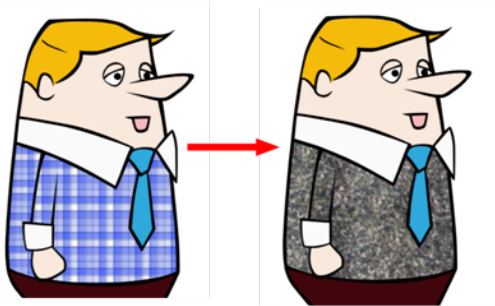


3. Click on the **Open** button to create the colour swatch.



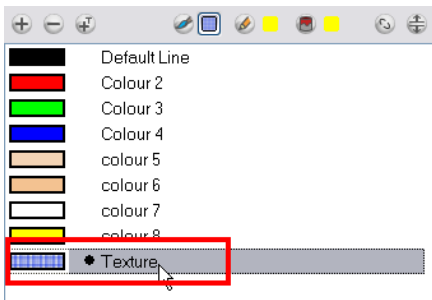
Refer to the [Editing Gradients and Textures on page 336](#) topic to learn how to reposition your textured zones in your drawings.

You can also replace a texture once it is painted. If you decide to make the character's shirt wool instead of plaid, just update the texture file in the swatch and the entire project updates. Any transformation previously applied to the texture's position in your drawings will be kept.



#### To replace a texture swatch:

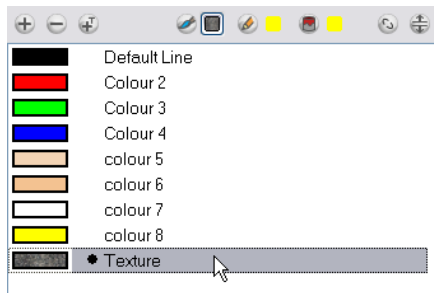
1. In the Colour view, select the texture swatch you want to change the embedded bitmap texture file in.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Edit Texture**. You can also double-click on the swatch. The Browser window opens.
3. Browse for the new PSD or TGA bitmap file created in a third party software.



- Click on the **Open** button to update the colour switch.



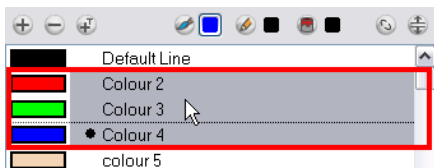
## Related Topics


- [How to Paint on page 302](#)
- [Deleting a Colour Swatch below](#)

# Deleting a Colour Swatch

To delete a colour swatch:

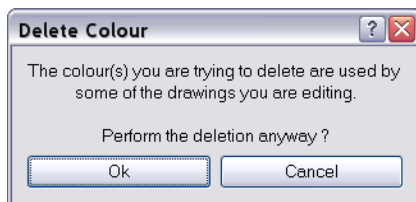
- In the Colour view, select the colour swatches to delete.



- In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Delete**. You can also click on the **Delete Colour**  button.

The default keyboard shortcut is [Delete].

If the colour swatch is used in a drawing, the Delete Colour dialog box opens.



- Click **OK** to delete the colours or click **Cancel** to abort the operation.
  - If you delete colour swatches already in use, the zones painted with them turn red so you can easily identify them.





### Related Topics

- [Adding a Colour Swatch](#) on page 304

# Colour Display Modes

This section describes the colour modes.

- [Switching Between Thumbnails and List Display modes](#) below
- [Displaying Colour Values](#) below

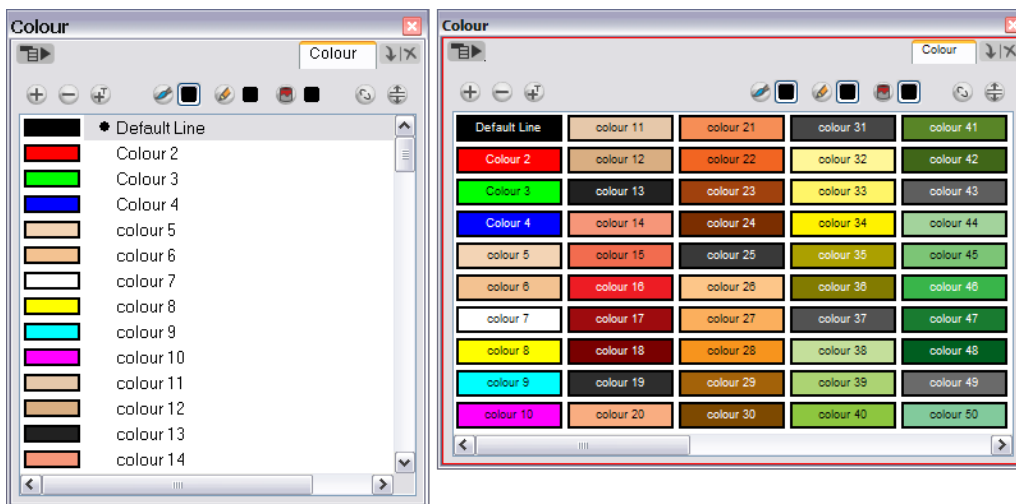
## Switching Between Thumbnails and List Display modes

The **Colour** view has two display modes:

- List Mode
- Swatch Mode

To toggle between the display modes:

1. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Swatch Mode**.
  - Enable the option to display the swatches.
  - Disable the option to display the colour list.

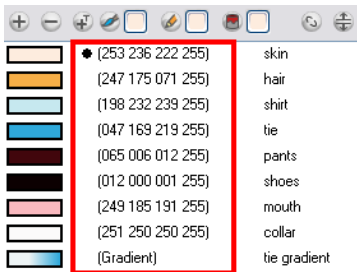


## Displaying Colour Values

When using Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can display the RGB values and names of your solid colour swatches.



This option is not available when displaying the colours in Swatch mode.



### To display the swatch colour values:

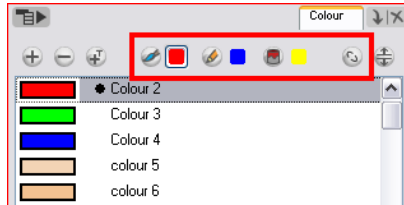
- ▶ In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Display Colour Values**.

The solid colour swatches' RGB values will be displayed between the colour swatch and its name. The gradient colour swatches will be identified as (gradient).

### Related Topics




- [Colour View on page 100](#)

# Selecting the Current Colour of a Tool



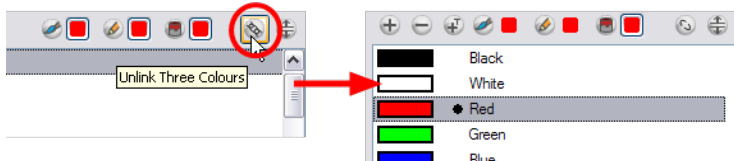
While drawing and painting, you can let Animate Pro retain the last colour you selected for each one of the following tools:

- Brush
- Paint
- Pencil, Ellipse, Line, Rectangle, Polyline

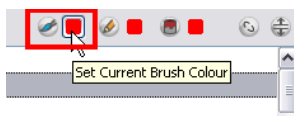
The Colour view has three switches where you can set a colour for the Brush , Paint  and Pencil  tools.


**To unlink the storage swatches:**

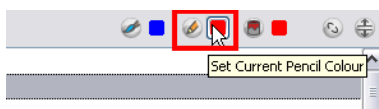
1. In the Colour view, if the storage swatches are linked, click on the **Linking**  button to unlink them.




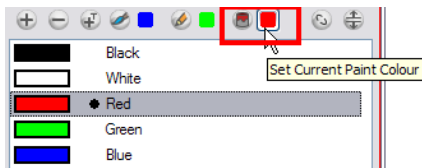
2. Click on the **Brush**  storage switch.



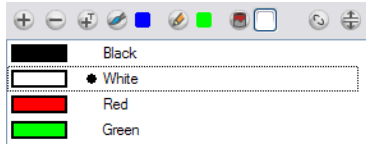
3. In the Colour list, select the desired colour.
4. Click on the **Pencil**  storage switch.



5. In the Colour list, select the desired colour.
6. Click on the **Paint**  storage switch.











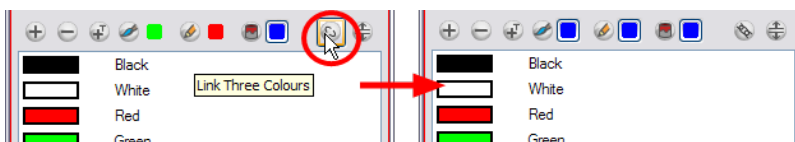
7. In the Colour list, select the desired colour.



If you prefer not to use this behaviour and have Toon Boom Animate Pro use the same colour swatches regardless of the selected tool, you can link the three swatches together.

### To link the storage swatches:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select one of the following tool:
  - ▶  Brush tool
  - ▶  Paint tool
  - ▶ Pencil tools:
    -  Pencil tool
    -  Polyline tool
    -  Line tool
    -  Ellipse tool
    -  Rectangle tool
2. In the Colour view, if the storage swatches are linked, click on the **Linking**  button to link them.

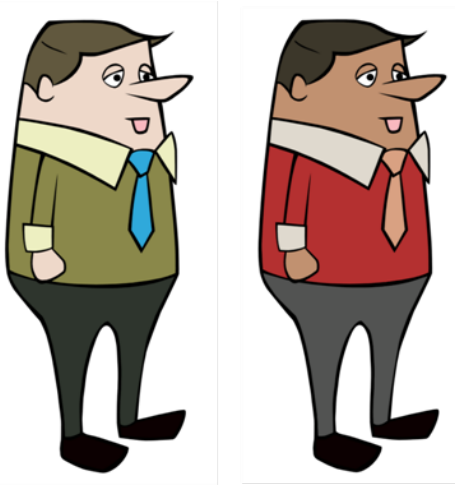



Each time you select a new colour for your current tool, all the storage swatches are updated.

### Related Topics

- [How to Paint on page 302](#)

# Painting Using the Paint Tool

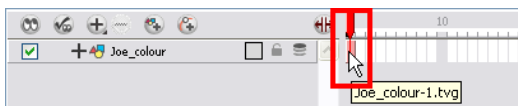



The main tool you will use to paint your drawings with is the Paint  tool. The Paint tool can be used in several different modes, these can be customized in the Tool Properties view.

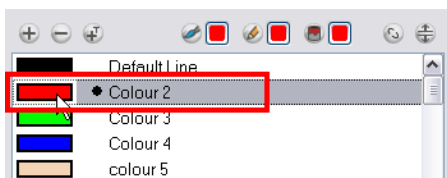
The Paint tool paints closed zones, this includes brush strokes, as well as pencil lines. If you have gaps in the lines defining a zone, you will have to close them using either the Brush, Pencil, Close Gap tools or the Automatic Close Gap option.

## To paint with the Paint tool:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want to paint.



2. In the Tools toolbar, click on the Paint  tool or press [Alt] + [I]. You can also select the Paint tool in the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Paint**.
3. In the Colour view, select a colour.



4. In the Camera view, start painting. You can click on a zone or pencil line to paint it, or you can trace a lasso or marquee selection to paint several zones or pencil lines at once.



The last colour you select while using the Paint tool will be remembered the next time you select the Paint tool.

## Related Topics

- [Paint Tool Properties](#) on the next page

# Create Breaking Triangles to Paint Brush Strokes

The Brush tool is often the most intuitive and rapid tool for creating rough sketches and clean lines. A single colour, such as black, is often used when tracing a clean version of a rough sketch. However, when it comes time to soft trace the lines in different colours, the flattened or unflattened clean brush strokes can suddenly become time consuming to ink.

Toon Boom Animate Pro provides a solution by creating triangular breaks at natural line intersections. These intersections are the probable locations of where colour line breaks may occur, such as where a sleeve meets a hand.


To create breaking triangles on a drawing:

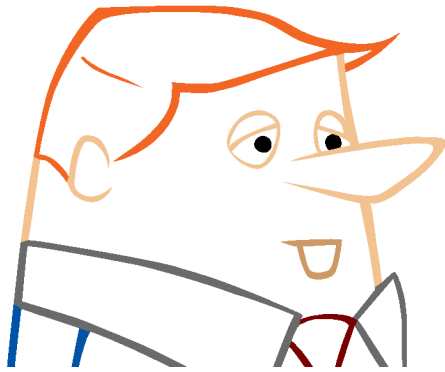
1. In the Camera or Drawing view, use the Select tool to select part or all of the drawing to be broken.



2. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Create Breaking Triangles**. If your brush strokes are not flattened, they will be flattened automatically before the breaking occurs.

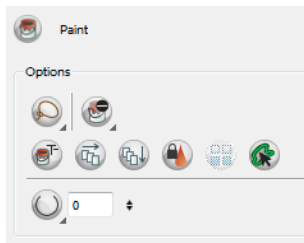


3. Use the Repaint tool  to paint the outline of different colour zones with different colours.



## Paint Tool Properties



When you select the Paint tool, its properties and options appears in the Tools Properties view.



- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Painting Mode](#) on the facing page
- [Automatic Close Gap](#) on page 322
- [Paint and Remove Texture](#) on page 323
- [Apply to Multiple Drawings](#) on page 323
- [Apply to All Visible Drawings](#) on page 324
- [Respect Protected Colour](#) on page 324
- [Use Stored Colour Gradient](#) on page 325
- [Select Newly Painted/Repainted/Unpainted Contours/Lines](#) on page 325

## Lasso and Marquee

The Lasso and Marquee options let you choose what type of selection the Paint tool will do when you will click and drag your cursor to paint your drawings. The default selection mode is Marquee.

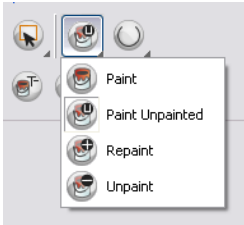
- The Marquee  option makes a rectangle selection box. Everything inside the selection will be painted according to the painting mode you selected.
- The Lasso  option lets you draw a custom selection box around the zones to be painted. Everything inside the selection will be painted according to the painting mode you selected.


Hold down the [Alt] key to switch to the opposite mode of your selection.



## Painting Mode

The Paint tool has four different modes available:



 Paint Mode

 Paint Unpainted Mode


 Repaint Mode

 Unpaint Mode

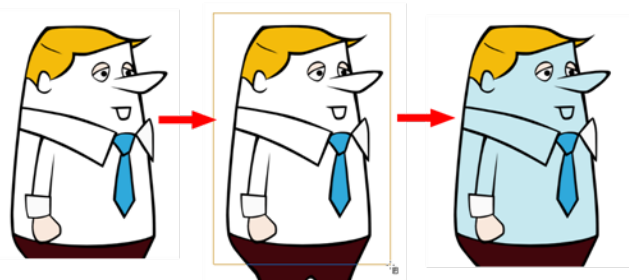
You can also find these tools directly in the Tools toolbar and in the Drawing Tools menu.


### Paint Mode



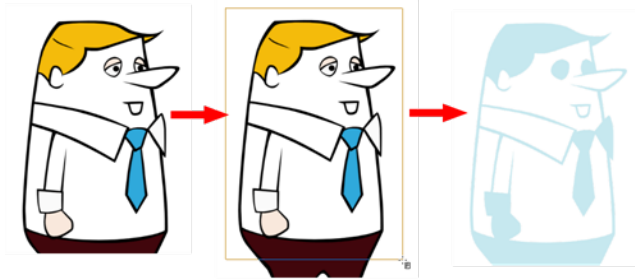
The Paint  mode paints everything it touches, including empty and filled zones.


### Paint Unpainted Mode



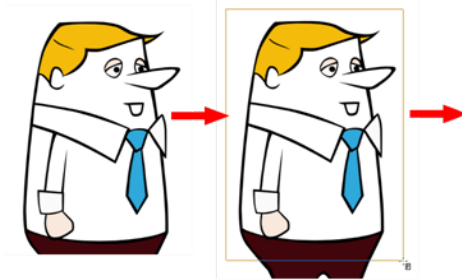
The Paint Unpainted  mode paints only empty zones. Any line or filled zone will remain unchanged.


## Repaint Mode



The Repaint  mode paints everything it touches except empty zones. Any zone that is not painted will remain intact.

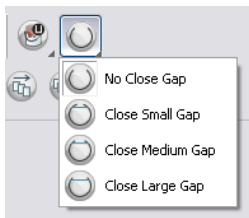
## Unpaint Mode




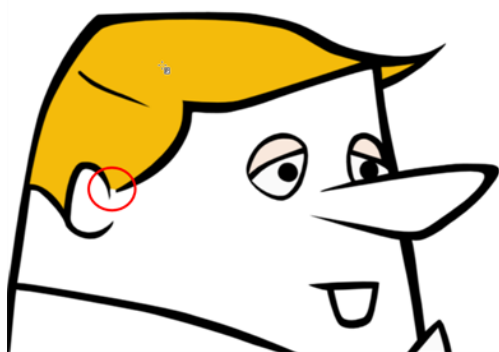
The Unpaint  mode unpaints everything it touches, including empty and filled zones.

## Automatic Close Gap

The Automatic Close Gap option has four modes available:

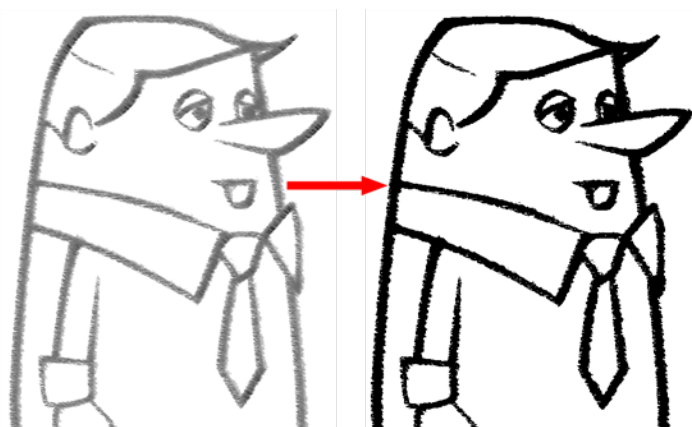



The Automatic Close Gap  option is used while painting drawings with small gaps. Instead of having to close them manually either with the Brush tool or Close Gap tool, Toon Boom Animate Pro will analyze the drawing and close the gaps while you paint according to the selected mode.



The automated gap closing should be done using the zoom function setting of your Camera or Drawing view. If your eye does not see the gap, Toon Boom Animate Pro won't either.

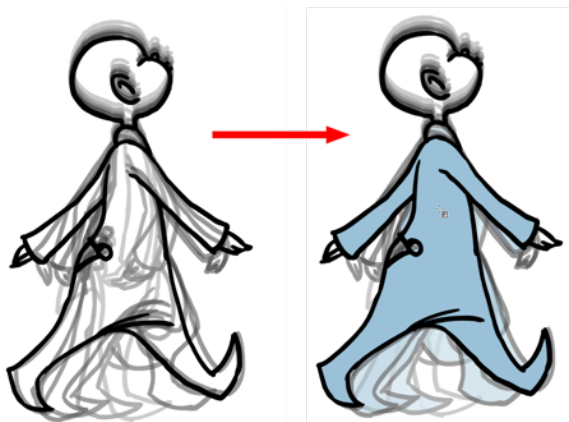
## Paint and Remove Texture




The Paint and Remove Texture  option is used when you vectorized some images as greyscale texture style.

An image vectorized as texture is a mix of bitmap filling encapsulated in a vector based frame. Painting a textured zones with the Paint tool will change the tint of the textured lines. Painting the textured zones using the Paint and Remove Texture option transforms the bitmap filling into a 100% vector based zone and fills it with a solid colour.

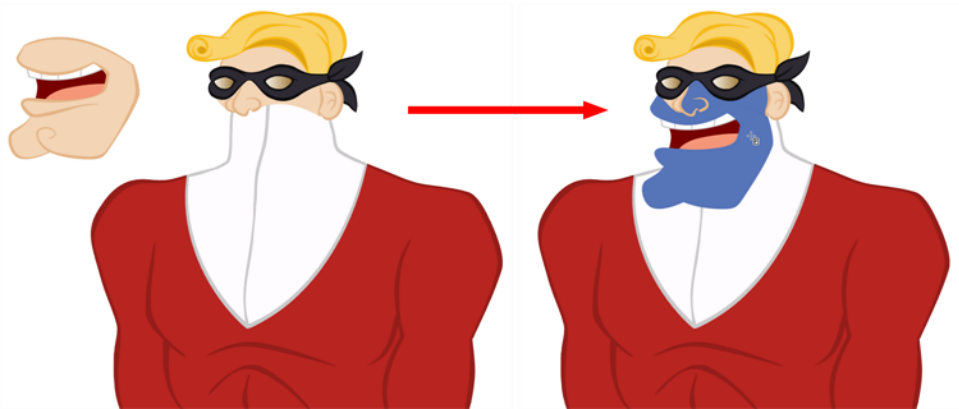
## Apply to Multiple Drawings




The Apply to Multiple Drawings  option is used for hand-drawn animation fast painting. When you want to paint several drawings in a same layer at once, such as a walk cycle, you can enable this option and make a selection in your Camera or Drawing view. All the closed zones located within your Paint tool selection are painted with the selected colour swatch.

You do not need to enable the Onion Skin preview to use this option. The option will stay enabled only for the next action. If you want to use it again, you must click on the Apply to Multiple Drawings button again, or press [Alt] + [A].

## Apply to All Visible Drawings




The Apply to All Visible Drawings  option is used to paint several drawings on separated layers on the current frames. If you have a character broken in several layers, you can enable this option to paint all your layers at once. The operation is only applied on the current frame.

The option will stay enabled only for the next action. If you want to use it again, you must click on the **Apply to All Visible Drawings** button again.

This option is only available in the Camera view and does not affect symbols.

## Respect Protected Colour

The Respect Protected Colour  option is enabled by default. In your Colour view, you can protect some colour swatches to avoid repainting or unpainting the zones linked to that swatch.

If you disable this option the Paint tool will not follow the protect colour rule and will repaint or unpaint the protected colours on your drawings until you enable the option again.





Refer to the [Protecting Colours on page 345](#) topic to learn how to lock your colours.

---

## Use Stored Colour Gradient



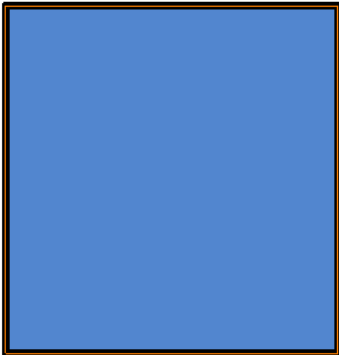
When you paint a zone with a gradient or textured colour swatch, the gradient or texture's position is set relative to the size of the zone you are painting. If you want the Paint tool to use a particular size and position, you must first store your desired position and size using the Select  tool and then enable the **Use Stored**


**Colour Gradient**  option in the Paint tool Tool Properties view.



Refer to the [Storing Your Favourite Gradient or Texture Settings](#) on page 340 topics to learn how to store your gradient or texture position.

## Select Newly Painted/Repainted/Unpainted Contours/Lines



In the Paint  tool Tool Properties view, engaging this option will keep a selection highlighted around the latest painted zone after using either the Paint, Repaint, Unpaint, or Paint Unpainted tool.

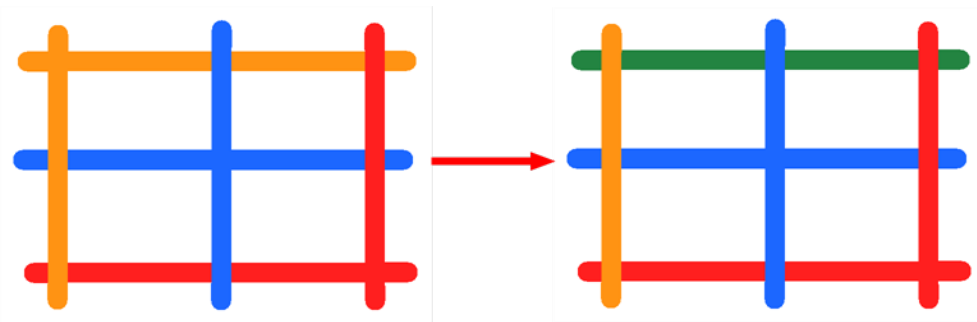
### Related Topics


- [Painting Using the Paint Tool](#) on page 318

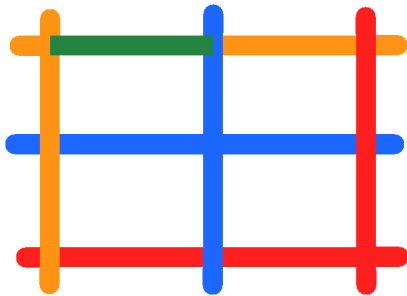
# Painting Pencil Lines with the Ink Tool

Although pencil lines can be painted in much the same way as closed zones, you can use the Paint, Repaint, Repaint Brush, and Ink tools to make painting segmented lines easier.

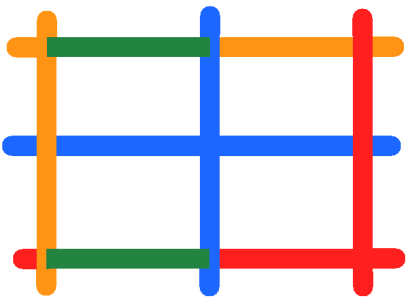
Normally when you have a drawing, such as the one below, and you use the Paint tool to paint one of the lines, the entire line is painted.



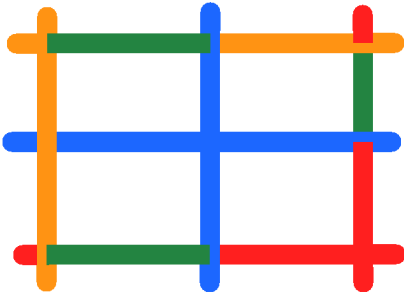
However, if you select the **Ink**  tool instead and click on the same pencil line, only the segment that you clicked on between two intersections will be painted.



The newly inked segment will always be moved to the front of all other pencil strokes, even if it was behind all other pencil strokes before it was inked.



That is, unless you hold down [Alt] while clicking a segment. Then the opposite becomes true. The inked segment will be sent to the back, even if it was in front of all other segments to begin with.



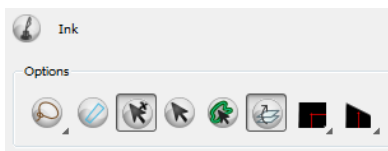
Painting and Inking can be used in combination depending on what it is that you need to paint. If you need to ink a character's outline in black, it might be easier to use the Paint tool. If you need to paint the outline of a character's neck with a tan colour and its shirt outline blue and both the neck and shirt belong to the same continuous outline, then the Ink tool might prove more useful.

## Related Topics

- [Ink Tool Properties](#) below

## Ink Tool Properties



When you select the **Ink** tool, its properties and options appears in the **Tools Properties** view.



- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Show Inkable Lines](#) on the next page
- [Be Smart on Connecting Lines](#) on the next page
- [Select Mode](#) on the next page
- [Arrange Ink Lines](#) on the next page
- [Mitre](#) on the next page
- [Tip Style](#) on the next page


## Lasso and Marquee

The Lasso and Marquee options let you choose what type of selection the Paint tool will do when you will click and drag your cursor to paint your drawings. The default selection mode is Marquee.


- The Marquee  option makes a rectangle selection box. Everything inside the selection will be painted according to the painting mode you selected.
- The Lasso  option lets you draw a custom selection box around the zones to be painted. Everything inside the selection will be painted according to the painting mode you selected.

Hold down the [Alt] key to switch to the opposite mode of your selection.

## Show Inkable Lines

The **Show Inkable Lines**  option highlights all pencil lines (so no brush strokes) on the selected layer. Pencil line segments that are already inked with the selected swatch colour from the colour palette are also not highlighted.


## Be Smart on Connecting Lines

With this  option selected, as you hover and move the cursor across intersecting pencil lines, the path that you create will get highlighted. When you click on your mouse or stylus the highlighted segments will get inked.


With this option disabled, all the intersecting segments that your cursor comes near will get highlighted and become part of the selection, even if they were not situated in the direction of the chosen path.

This option only works if the **Ink** tool is in **Hover Mode** and not **Select Mode**.

## Select Mode

Use this  mode instead of the **Hover Mode**. In the **Hover Mode**, any potentially inkable pencil line will have its central vector line highlighted as the **Ink** tool's cursor hovers over it. Use [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) to toggle between the two modes.

## Arrange Ink Lines

Use this  option to have every newly inked line be brought to the front. Disable this option to have every newly inked line be sent to the back. Use [Alt] to toggle between the two options.

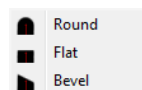
## Mitre

As you hover over two perpendicular or nearly perpendicular segments a highlighted path with a corner is created. Clicking on these highlighted segments inks both segments and makes them appear as a single stroke with a corner or bend.

Click on the **Mitre**  button to reveal four options from its drop down menu. Select either **Round**, **Mitre**,

**Bevel** or **As Is** before creating corner selections to make a bend in the path either round, sharp, bevelled or gapped.

## Tip Style



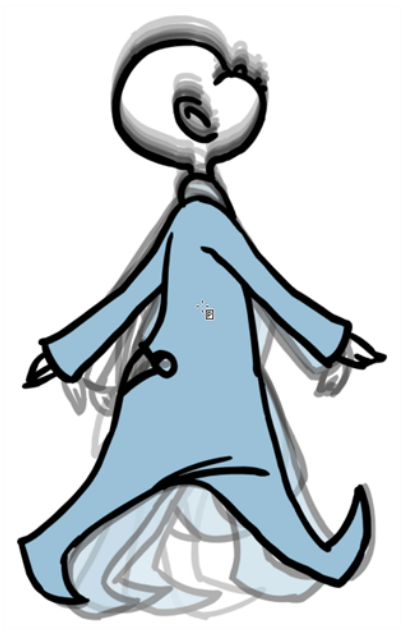
Use the **Tip Style** option to customize the edge of the **Ink** tool.



## Related Topics

- [Painting Pencil Lines with the Ink Tool on page 326](#)

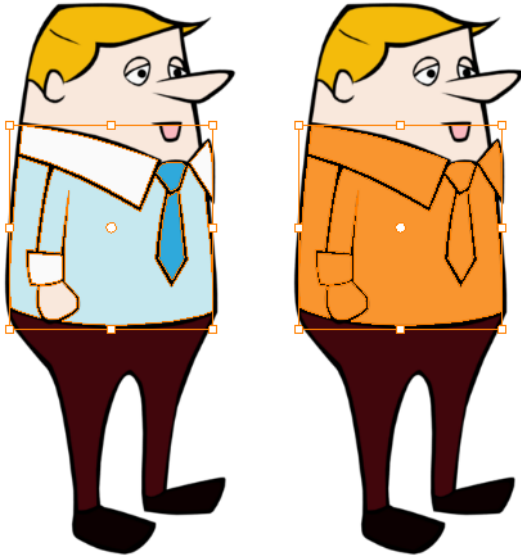
# Advanced Painting Features




The following advanced painting features are available in Toon Boom Animate Pro and are described in this section:

- [Repaint Selection on the next page](#)
- [Repaint Selection On All Drawings on the next page](#)
- [Repaint Outside Selection on page 331](#)
- [Repaint Outside Selection On All Drawings on page 331](#)
- [Unpaint Selection on page 332](#)
- [Unpaint Selection On All Drawings on page 332](#)
- [Unpaint Outside Selection on page 333](#)
- [Unpaint Outside Selection On All Drawings on page 333](#)

## Repaint Selection

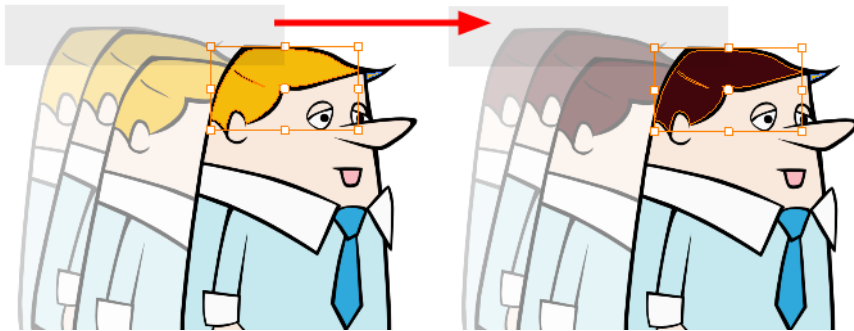



The Repaint Selection command is used to repaint any art inside a selection. You must first draw a selection using the Select  tool in order for this command to be available.


To use the Repaint Selection command:

- Select Drawing > Paint > Repaint Selection.

## Repaint Selection On All Drawings



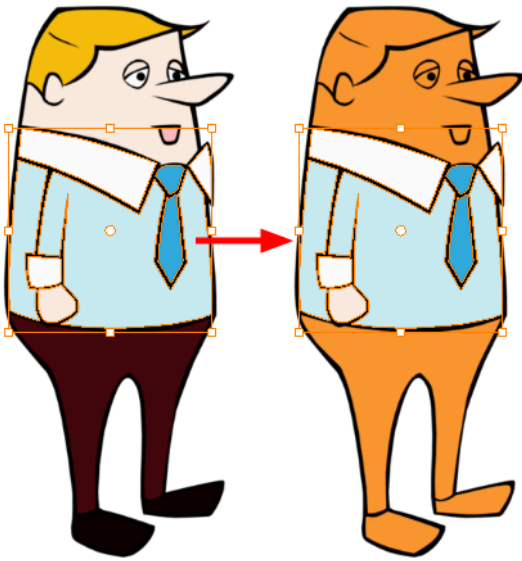
The Repaint Selection On All Drawings command is used to repaint any art inside a selection on all the drawings contained within the same layer. You must enable the Permanent Selection  option in the Select tool Tool


Properties view and then draw a selection in your drawing using the Select  tool in order for this command to be available. The Permanent Selection option is used to maintain the same selection throughout the drawings of a same layer.

To use the Repaint Selection On All Drawings command:

- Select Drawing > Paint > Repaint Selection On All Drawings.

## Repaint Outside Selection

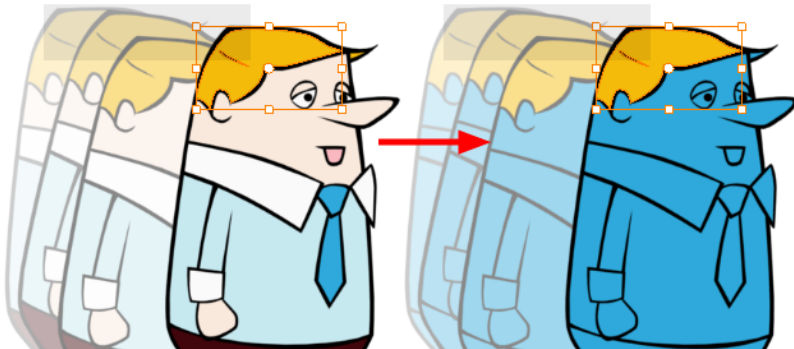



The Repaint Outside Selection command is used to repaint any art outside a selection. If no selection has been drawn using the Select  tool, the entire drawing will be repainted.


To use the Repaint Outside Selection command:

- Select Drawing > Paint > Repaint Outside Selection.

## Repaint Outside Selection On All Drawings



The Repaint Outside Selection On All Drawings command is used to repaint any art outside a selection on all the drawings contained within the same layer. You must enable the Permanent Selection  option in the Select

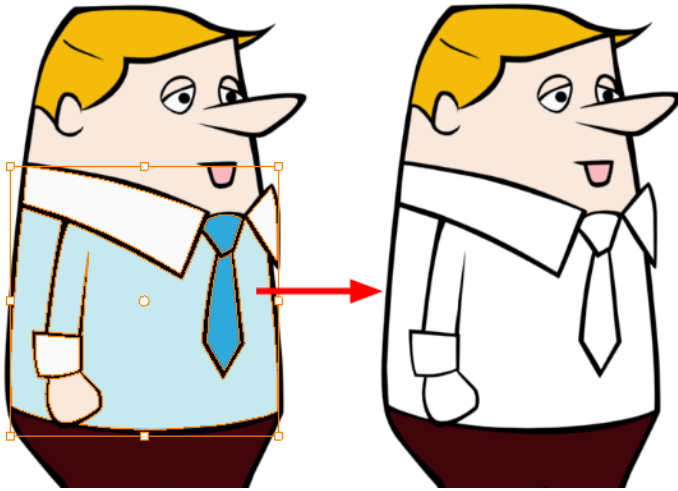
tool Tool Properties view and then draw a selection in your drawing using the Select  tool in order for this


command to be available. The Permanent Selection option is used to maintain the same selection throughout the drawings of a same layer.

To use the Repaint Outside Selection on All Drawings command:

- Select Drawing > Paint > Repaint Outside Selection on All Drawings.

## Unpaint Selection

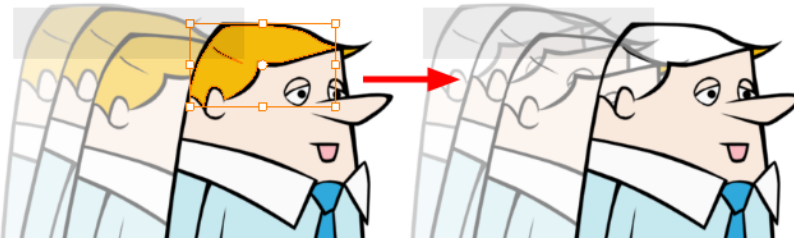



The Unpaint Selection command is used to unpaint any art existing inside a selection. You must first draw a selection using the Select  tool in order for this command to be available.


**To use the Unpaint Selection command:**

- Select **Drawing > Paint > Unpaint Selection**.

## Unpaint Selection On All Drawings



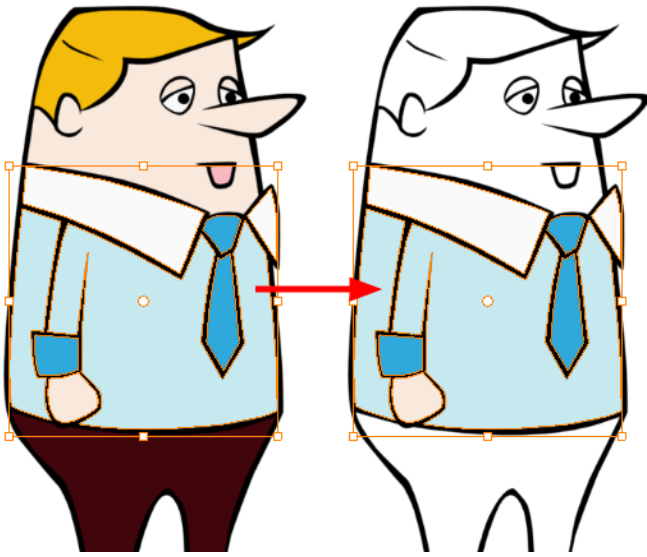
The Unpaint Selection on All Drawings command is used to unpaint all art contained inside a selection on all the drawings within the same layer. You must enable the Permanent Selection  option in the Select tool Tool


Properties view and then draw a selection in your drawing using the Select  tool in order for this command to be available. The Permanent Selection option is used to maintain the same selection throughout the drawings of a same layer.

**To use the Unpaint Selection On All Drawings command:**

- Select **Drawing > Paint > Unpaint Selection On All Drawings**.

## Unpaint Outside Selection

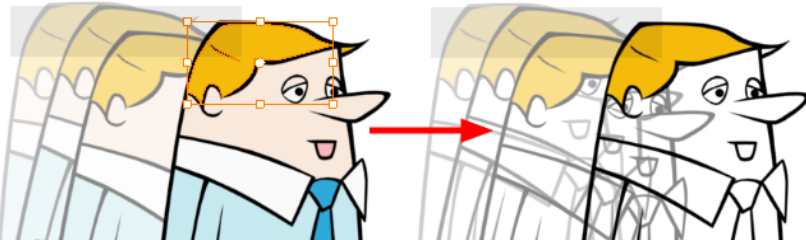



The Unpaint Outside Selection command is used to unpaint any art existing outside a selection. If no selection have been drawn using the Select  tool, the entire drawing will be unpainted.


To use the Unpaint Selection command:

- Select **Drawing > Paint > Unpaint Outside Selection**.

## Unpaint Outside Selection On All Drawings



The Unpaint Outside Selection on All Drawings command is used to unpaint all art outside a selection on all the drawings within the same layer. You must enable the Permanent Selection  option in the Select tool Tool

Properties view and then draw a selection in your drawing using the Select  tool in order for this command to be available. The Permanent Selection option is used to maintain the same selection throughout the drawings of a same layer.

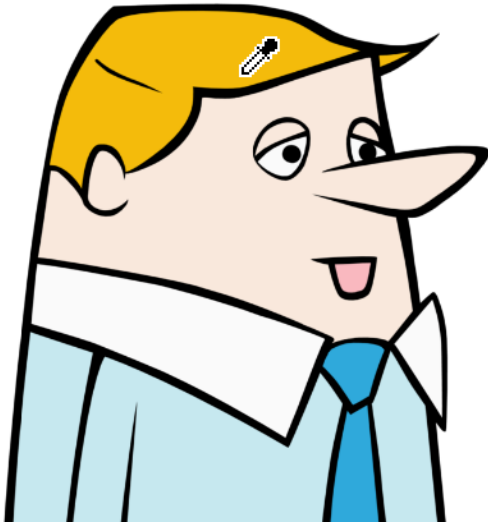
To use the Unpaint Outside Selection On All Drawings command:


- Select **Drawing > Paint > Unpaint Outside Selection On All Drawings**.

## Related Topics


- [Select Tool Properties on page 184](#)

# Selecting a Colour in a Drawing



While working in your Camera or Drawing view, you can use the Dropper  tool to pick a colour from your drawing without going to the Colour view.

## To use the Dropper tool:

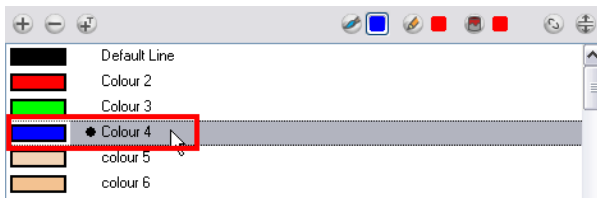
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Dropper**  tool or press [Alt] + [D]. You can also select the Dropper tool from **Drawing > Tools > Dropper** in the top menu.
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, click on the desired colour.
  - If you are using another drawing tool such as the Paint tool, you can temporarily hold down the [D] key and click in your drawing before releasing the key to pick your colour. Once you let go the hot key, Toon Boom Animate Pro will go back to your previous tool.

You may also want to select the zones painted with the colour currently selected in the Colour view. This can be useful to remove rough lines from a clean drawing.



**To select the zones painted with the current colour:**

1. In the Colour view, select the colour you want to select the corresponding zones from.




2. Select **Drawing > Select Strokes with Current Colour**.  
Or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [A] (Mac OS X).

**Related Topics**


- [How to Paint on page 302](#)

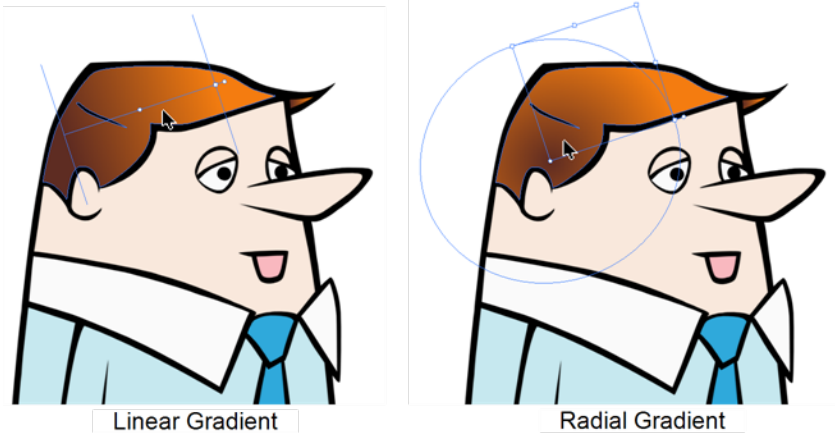
# Editing Gradients and Textures



If you paint a zone or pencil line with a gradient or texture you can use the Edit Gradient/Texture  tool to modify its position in the zone. You can move, scale, rotate and skew. If you have to match the transformations performed on a gradient or texture from one zone or pencil line to many others, you can copy and paste the Edit Gradient/Texture position. When moving to the next drawing, you can select the next texture and paste the previous position to continue the modifications.

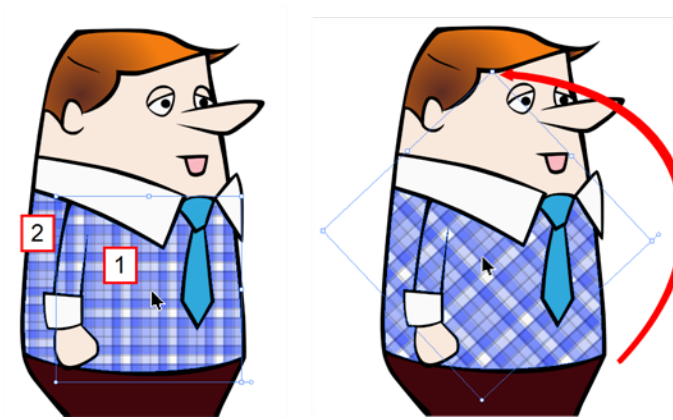
## To use Edit Gradient/Texture tool on a zone:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Edit Gradient/Texture**  tool. You can also select this tool from the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Edit Gradient/Texture** or press [Shift] + [F3].
2. Click on the Gradient or Texture zone to be modified.





- ▶ If you want to modify several areas at once, hold down the [Shift] key and click on the zones to be modified.




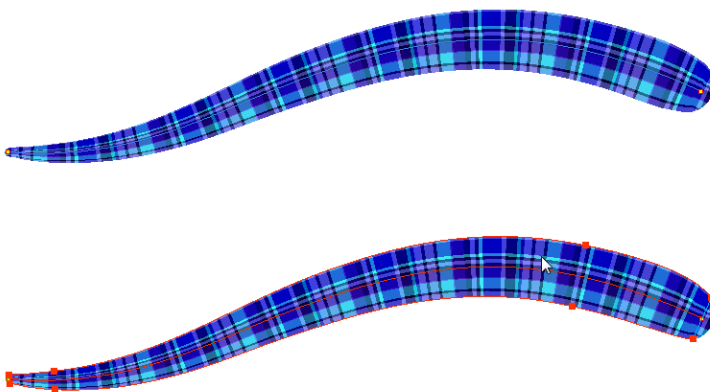


3. Move the edit texture's anchor points to the desired result.
  - ▶ If the same modification needs to be applied to another gradient in another drawing or texture zone, you can select the modified zone and select **Edit > Copy**. Select the zone to be modified in the other drawing and select **Edit > Paste**.

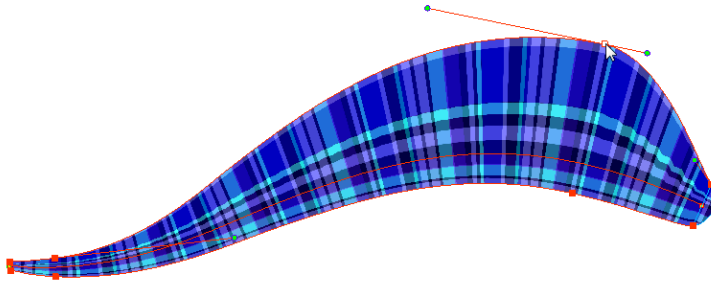
A pencil line can have its gradient, texture or texture's gradient edited in two different ways, either with the Pencil Editor  or with the Edit Gradient/Texture  tool.

#### To use Pencil Editor tool to edit the texture or gradient on a pencil line:

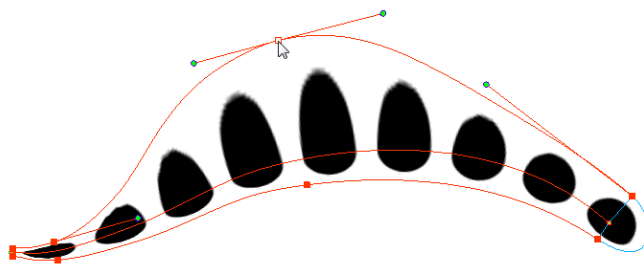
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Pencil Editor  tool. You can also select this tool from the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Pencil Editor** or press [Alt] + [W].
2. Click on the pencil line to be modified to bring up its contour envelope.



3. Select one of the contour points around the envelope and move its position to change the size of the tiled texture or gradient. You can also pull directly on the lines of the contour envelope or play with the bezier handles of any given point in order to continue to modify the envelope form.



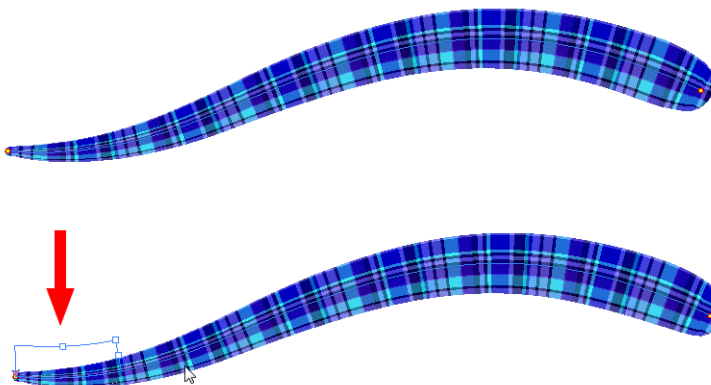
Expanding the width of the envelope parallel to the pencil line's central vector will cause the tiled texture to be stretched. Conversely, reducing the envelope's width will cause the tiled texture to look squashed. Reducing the contour's width perpendicular to the pencil line's central vector will reduce the number of tiles, while expanding it will increase the number of tiled images.



This editing technique does not just work on texture fills, but can also be applied to pencil lines drawn with a textured "brush".

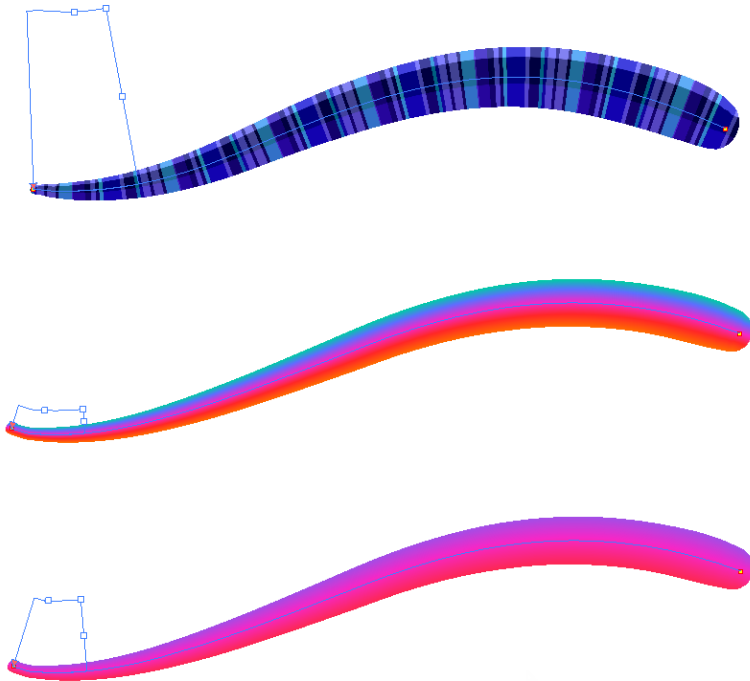
#### To use Edit Gradient/Texture tool to edit the texture or gradient on a pencil line:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Edit Gradient/Texture**  tool. You can also select this tool from the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Edit Gradient/Texture** or press [Shift] + [F3].
2. Click on the pencil line to be modified to bring up the editor controls.

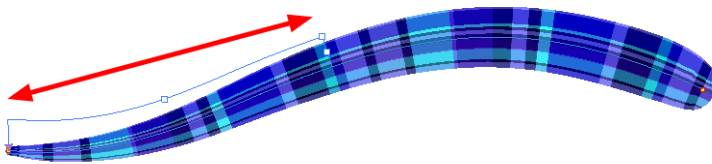


3. The editor controls delineate a single tile in the texture. For gradients, this is less applicable. Pull on the top of the editor controls to stretch the tiled texture throughout the length of the stroke.

As gradients are parallel to the stroke's central vector, this will stretch the way that the gradient is distributed in the pencil line's envelope. The envelope still acts as a boundary for the texture or gradient.



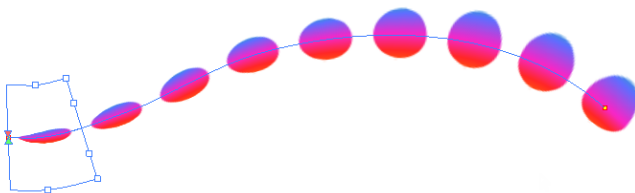
4. Drag the editor control perpendicular to the stroke. You will feel it glide along the stroke's central vector line. This is another way to resize the texture tile. Instead of stretching or shrinking it vertically, this motion stretches or shrinks it vertically. As gradients are parallel to the pencil line's central vector, stretching them vertically gives no visual result.



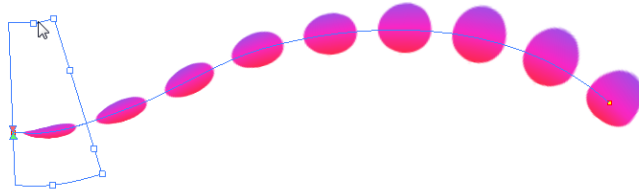
This way of editing a texture using the Edit Gradient/Texture tool also works with pencil lines drawn with textured "brushes". If you then paint your textured pencil line with a gradient, you can do so and then edit both elements independently at the same time.

#### To use Edit Gradient/Texture tool to edit both the texture and the gradient of a pencil line:

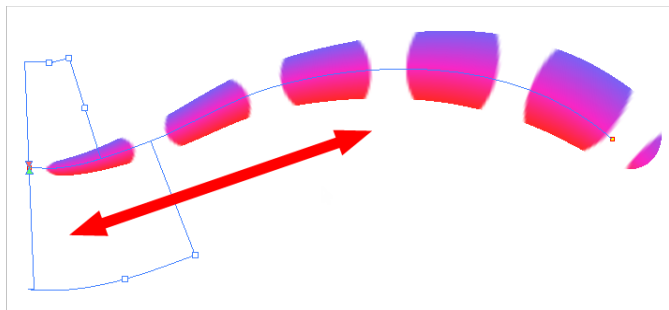
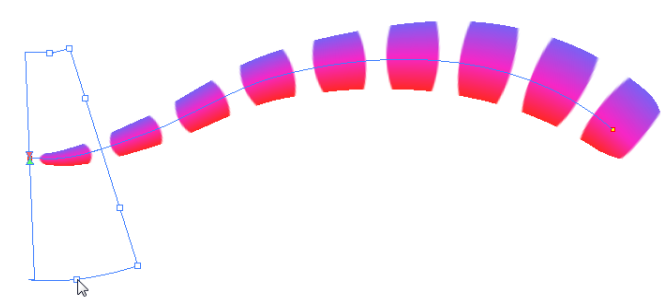
1. In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Edit Gradient/Texture**  tool. You can also select this tool from the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Edit Gradient/Texture** or press [Shift] + [F3].
2. Click on the pencil line to be modified to bring up the editor controls.



3. Use the top editor controls edit the gradient.



4. Use the bottom controls edit the “brush” texture.




## Related Topics

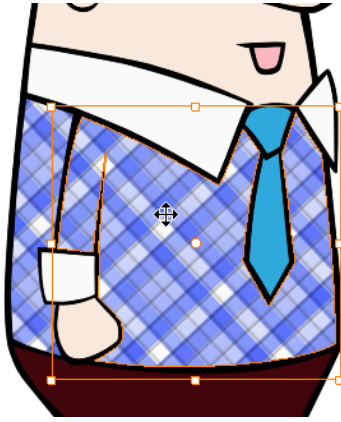
- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148
- [Storing Your Favourite Gradient or Texture Settings](#) below


# Storing Your Favourite Gradient or Texture Settings

If you are painting a hand-drawn animation or if you want the Brush tool and Paint tool to use your gradient’s position, angle and scale settings instead of the default ones, you can store your own settings and reuse them afterward.




**To store your gradient and texture settings:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the gradient or texture zone to store.



3. In the **Tool Properties** view, click on the **Store Colour Gradient**  button.

#### To use the stored gradient and texture settings:


1. In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Brush**  or **Paint**  tool.
2. In the **Tool Properties** view enable the **Use Stored Colour Gradient**  button.
3. In the **Camera** or **Drawing** view, draw and paint.

#### Related Topics

- [Editing Gradients and Textures](#) on page 336



# Closing Gaps Manually



When painting, you will notice that some of your drawing areas are not closed. To close the zone you can either draw the missing line with the Brush or Pencil tool, but you can also close the gap with an invisible line. To do so, you will use the Close Gap  tool.

The Close Gap tool is used to close small gaps in a drawing. The Paint tool only paints closed areas. The Close Gap tool will create a small, invisible stroke between the two closest points to close the colour zone. You do not need to trace directly over the gap. You can draw it a few millimetres away and the Close Gap will automatically choose the two closest points and close the gap.

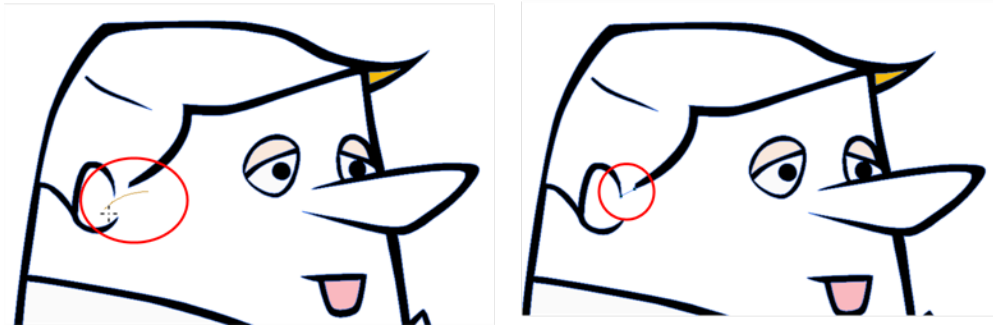
## To use the Close Gap tool:

1. In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Close Gap**  tool. You can also select the **Close Gap** tool from the top menu under **Drawing > Tools > Close Gap** or press [Alt] + [C].
  - ▶ Enable the **Auto-Flatten**  option in the Tool Properties view if you want the stroke you will draw to be flattened in your drawing instead to be on top.
  - ▶ You can display the invisible lines with the Show Strokes option under **View > Show Strokes** or press [K].
  - ▶ If you do not display the strokes, a Message dialog box will appear.



Enabling the Don't Show This Message Again option prevents this Message dialog box from appearing.

2. In the Camera or Drawing view, trace an invisible line near to the gap to be closed. The gap will automatically close.

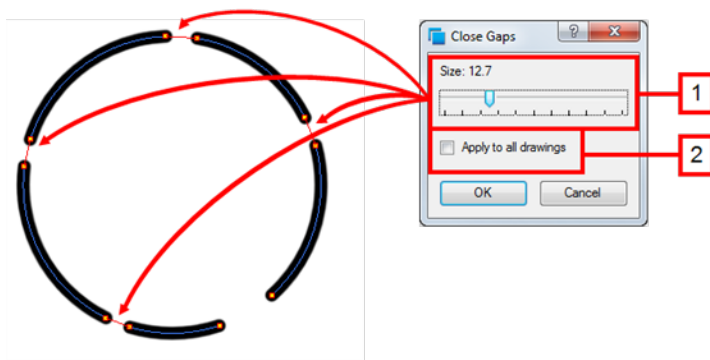


## Related Topics

- [Close Gaps](#) below
- [How to Paint](#) on page 302

## Close Gaps

When you have too many gaps in your drawings, you can use the Close Gaps feature in Toon Boom Animate Pro



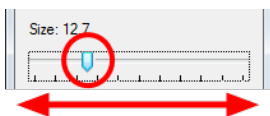
1. Close Gaps slider: Use this slider to determine the size of the gap you want to be closed. Move the slider to the left for smaller gaps and move it to the right for bigger gaps.
2. Apply to all drawings: Enable this option so that the **Close Gaps** feature is applied to all the drawings of the selected layer.

### To use the Close Gaps feature:

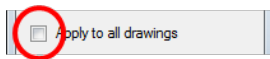
1. Select the **Show Strokes** option to see a preview of the result.
2. Select **View > Show Strokes** or press [K].
3. Select **Drawing > Clean Up > Close Gaps** or press [Shift] + [F10] (Windows only).

The Close Gaps dialog box opens.

4. Adjust the slider.



5. Select the **Apply to all drawings** option if needed.



6. Click OK.



Refer to [Colour Preferences](#) on page 371 at the end of this chapter to learn more about the Close Gap options.

---

## Related Topics

- [Closing Gaps Manually](#) on page 342

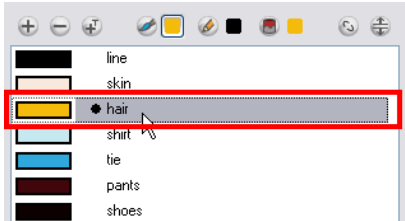


# Protecting Colours

When you are finished painting some zones, you can protect the colour swatch they are associated with so the work cannot be accidentally painted over.

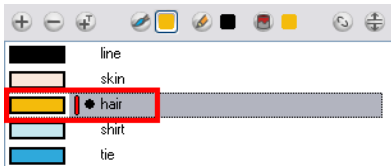
## To use Protect Colour:

1. In the Colour view, select the colour to be protected.



2. In the Colour view menu, select **Colours > Protect Colour**. You can also right-click on the selected colour and select **Protect Colour**.

A red bar will appear on the side of the colour, notifying you that it is locked.



## Related Topics

- [Respect Protected Colour](#) on page 324

# Line Art and Colour Art Layers

Toon Boom Animate Pro has an option allowing you to paint the lines and the colour fills separately.

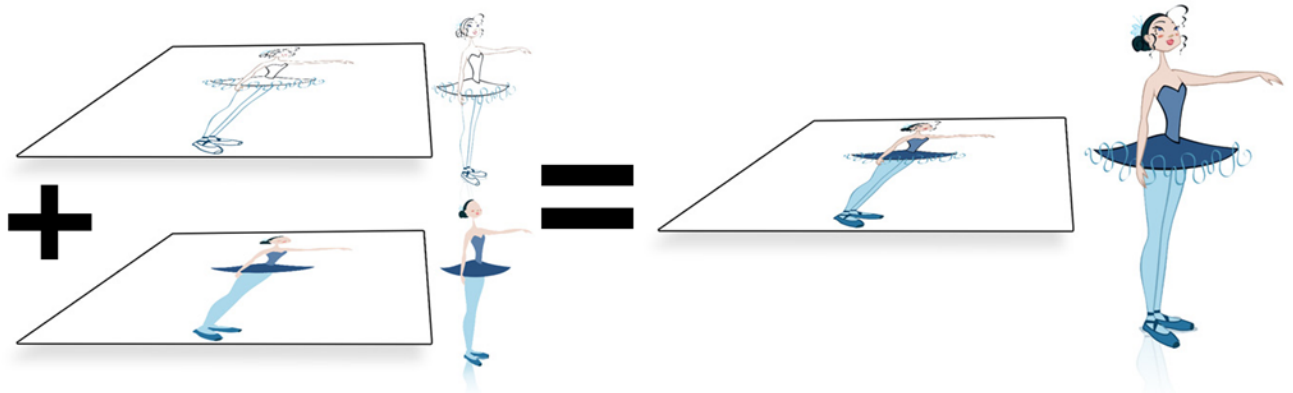
In Toon Boom Animate Pro, a drawing is composed of four embedded layers:

- Overlay Layer
- Line Art Layer
- Colour Art Layer
- Underlay Layer

In general, use the Line Art and Colour Art layers. The Underlay and Overlay layers are used for advanced purposes.

Refer to the topic to learn more about these layers.

By default, you draw on the Line Art layer. The colour layer is always placed under the Line Art layer. These layers are accessible in the Drawing or Camera view (using drawing tools). When you look at your final drawing in the Timeline, Xsheet or Network view, you will not see four layers; instead you will see the final composition of the lines and colours.



You can draw and paint in all layers, but if you prefer working in a single layer, you can do everything in Line Art.

The main advantage of using the Line Art and Colour Art option is so you can repaint the lines easily. If your colour fills are separated from the lines, it allows you to use the repaint tool and paint the lines without affecting the colour zones. Also, it allows you to paint tones and highlights in line art and then add some transparency to see the Colour Art through it.






In order to paint in the Colour Art, you must first use the Create Colour Art from Line Art option to create colour zones in the Colour Art. You need to use this option to paint drawings vectorized as greyscale texture style.

---

**To toggle between Line Art and Colour Art and enable the Preview mode:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select any drawing tool.
2. To toggle between Line Art and Colour Art:

- ▶ In the Drawing view, right-click and select **Switch to Colour Art/Switch to Line Art** or s[L].
  - ▶ In the Drawing or Camera bottom toolbar, click on the **Colour Art**  button.
  - ▶ In the Drawing or Camera bottom toolbar, click on the **Line Art**  button.
3. To preview the Line Art and Colour Art at the same time:
- ▶ In the Drawing view, right-click and select **Preview Line Art and Colour Art**. While using the Preview mode, you still edit one mode at a time or press [Shift] + [P].
  - ▶ In the Drawing or Camera bottom toolbar, click on the **Preview**  button. To be able to see only one of the layers at a time in the Camera view, you must enable the **Current Drawing on Top** option, available from the Camera bottom toolbar drop-down menu. If this option is not enabled, you will see the final composition of all four layers.




In order to edit both Line Art and Colour Art at the same time, you must enable the Apply to Line Art and Colour Art button in the Tool Properties of the tools supporting the operation.


## Underlay and Overlay Layers

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you have two extra art layers available beside the Line Art and the Colour Art, the Underlay and the Overlay layers. The Underlay is situated at the very bottom and the Overlay at the very top.

### Underlay

The Underlay  layer can be used like any other of the art layers available in the drawing, but since it is situated behind everything else, you can use it to create a matte for a quick line-test, write notes or store your rough animation.

### Overlay

The Overlay  layer can be used as any other of the art layers available in the drawing, but since it is situated on top of every other, it can be useful for writing notes about the colour model or animation or to draw the highlight and tone shapes.

### Related Topics


- [Generating a Matte for Your Animation](#) on page 290
- [Creating Strokes to Paint Your Drawings on a Separated Layer](#) on the next page
- [More Drawing Layers](#) on page 288

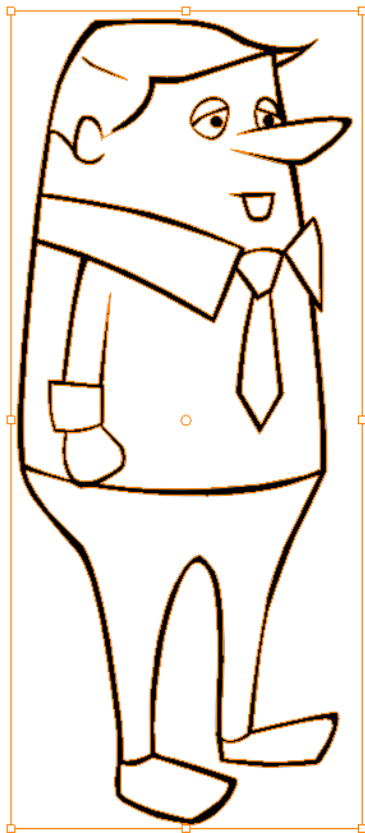
## Creating Strokes to Paint Your Drawings on a Separated Layer

You can use the outline you traced on one of the four embedded layers and create invisible strokes to paint your drawings on separate layers, this provides more inking and painting flexibility.

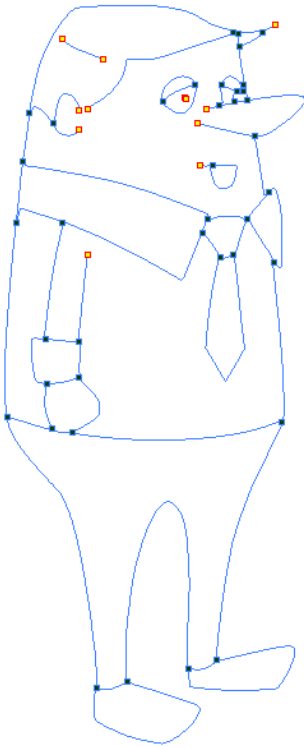
To do so, you must use the **Create Colour Art from Line Art** option. You can also configure the option to create the invisible strokes on any of the four embedded layers.

**To create Colour Art zones out of the Line Art content:**



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the artwork to transfer to the Colour Art.



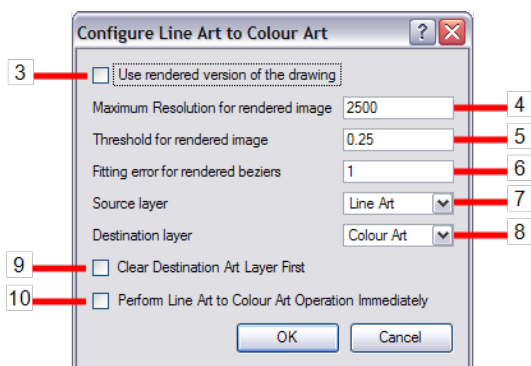
3. In the Drawing View toolbar, click on the **Create Colour Art from Line Art**  button or press [\*].



### To Configure the Line Art to Colour Art command settings:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
2. In the Tool Properties view, hold down the [Shift] key and click on the **Create Colour Art from Line Art**  button to open the Configure Line Art to Colour Art dialog box and modify the default settings of this command.

The Configure Line Art to Colour Art dialog box opens.



3. Use rendered version of the drawing: This option will render the drawing and vectorize it to calculate the position of the centreline that will produce the colour art stroke.
4. Maximum Resolution for rendered image: This is the size of the rendered image.
5. Threshold for rendered image: The value of grey processed to create the rendered vectorized arts.
6. Fitting error for generated Beziers: This value represents how precise the fitting of the colour art zone in relation of the line art will be.

7. **Source Layer:** In the Source Layer drop-down menu, select the layer (Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay or Overlay) you want the strokes to be created from.
8. **Destination Layer:** In the Destination Layer drop-down menu, select the layer (Line Art, Colour Art, Underlay or Overlay) you want the strokes to be created on.
9. **Clear Destination Art Layer First:** If you already have artwork on the destination layer and you want the content to be deleted before the strokes are added into it, enable this option.
10. **Perform Line Art to Colour Art Operation Immediately:** Enable this check box to perform the Create Colour Art from Line Art command when you click on the OK button of this window.

## Related Topics

- [Line Art and Colour Art Layers](#) on page 346

# Verifying Zones are Painted

When the painting process is completed, you should verify that each zone was painted correctly.


The Backlight feature produces a silhouette effect by changing the drawing's coloured areas into a single dark, solid colour use this to verify the completeness of the ink and paint process. Any unpainted zones can be seen as the light shows through the unpainted areas of the silhouetted drawing.

**To use the Backlight:**



This feature is only available in the Drawing view.

---

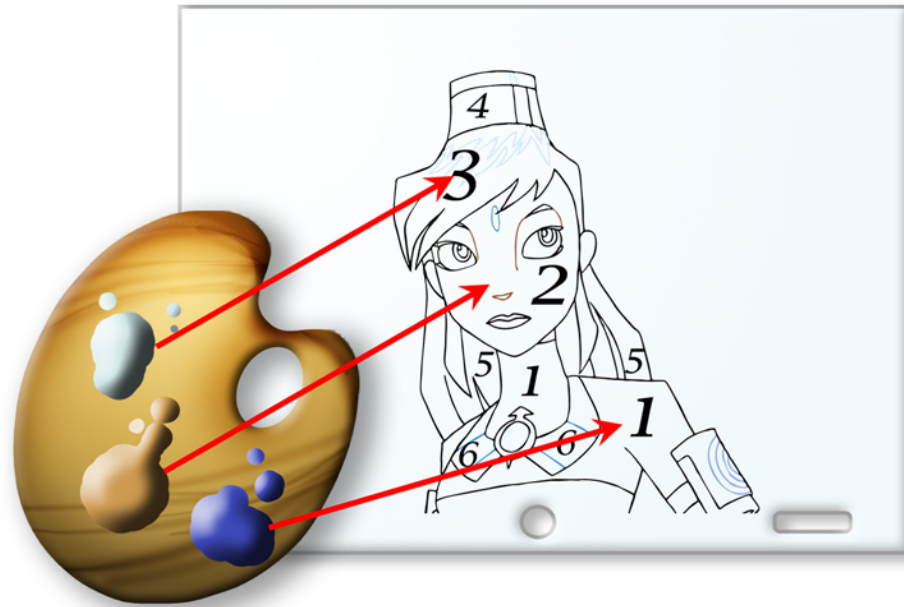
1. In the top menu, select **View > Backlight** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [B]. You can also click on the **Backlight**  button available in the Drawing View toolbar.
2. Verify the drawings in the Drawing view.



## Related Topics

- [How to Paint on page 302](#)
- [Painting Using the Paint Tool on page 318](#)

# Palettes



In colour animation, specific colours are used to paint each particular character. In order to maintain absolute consistency, a colour palette is created for each character, prop and effect throughout the production. These are referred to as master palettes.

Master palettes contain a colour swatch for each zone to colour with a precise RGBA colour value.

Using a master colour palette has many benefits, including:

- Each character consistently retains their dedicated colours.
- You cannot accidentally use a colour which is not in the master palette.
- Standardization and colour consistency throughout the production
- Multiple artists can use the same colour palette and produce the same results.

Toon Boom Animate Pro uses palettes to hold all of the colours needed to paint your elements, allowing complete control and consistency in your painting process.

A palette is created by assigning a set of colours to each character, prop or effect. You will create a new palette and add a new colour, known as a colour swatch, for each zone of the character, such as the skin, hair, tongue, shirt, pants, etc.

This topic is divided as follows:

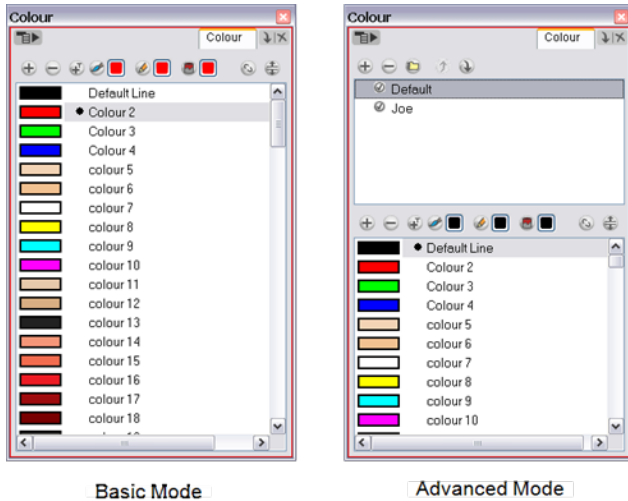
- [Displaying the Palette List on the facing page](#)
- [Creating a Colour Palette on page 355](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Colours on page 357](#)
- [Removing a Colour Palette on page 358](#)
- [Duplicating a Colour Palette on page 359](#)
- [Cloning a Colour Palette on page 360](#)



- [Mixing the Colours](#) on page 362
- [Importing a Colour Palette](#) on page 364
- [Ordering the Palette List](#) on page 365

## Displaying the Palette List

The Colour view has two modes: basic and advanced.



### Basic Mode

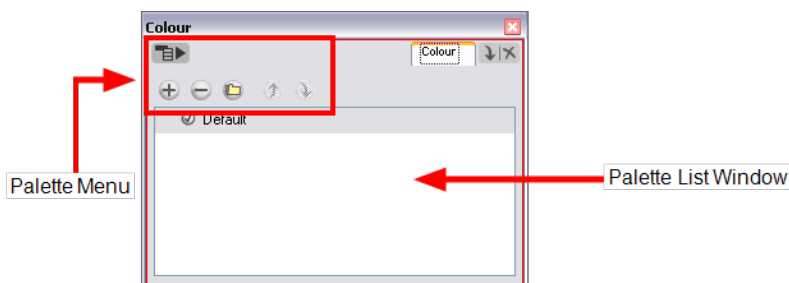
The Colour view's basic mode only shows the Colour list. When you open Toon Boom Animate Pro, you only see the colours available in the default palette. This default palette contains six basic colour swatches and is automatically named the same as your scene. For simple projects, you can manage with the default palette, but for movies, series or shorts it is recommended that you create palettes for your characters. To create a palette, you have to switch to the advanced display of the Colour view and show the Palette list.

### Advanced Mode

To create palettes for your characters, you must display the Palette list. Once you display the Palette list area, a series of new buttons appear.

**To show or hide the Palette List area:**

1. In the Colour view, click on the **Show/Hide Palette List View**  button to expand or collapse the Palette List area.



- Each palette you add in your scene will appear in the Palette list.
- You can add, delete, import and order palettes in your scene using the Palette menu buttons.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Colour Palette on the facing page](#)

# Scene Palette List and Element Palette List

There are two types of palette lists:

- [Scene Palette List](#) below
- [Element Palette List](#) on the facing page



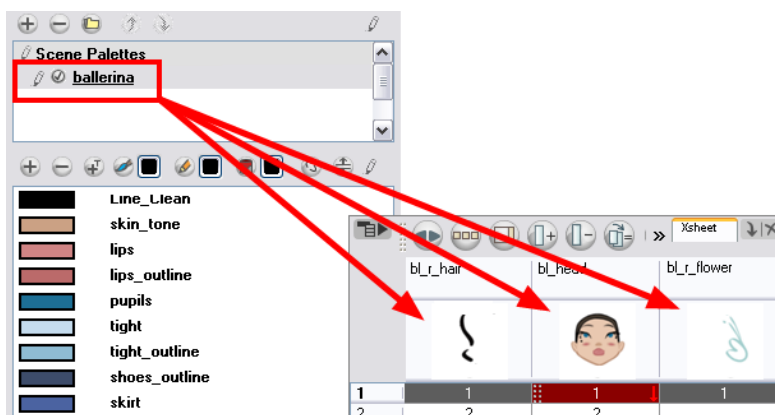
Refer to the [Colour Preferences](#) on page 371 topic in this chapter to learn how to enable and disable the Element Palette List mode.

## Scene Palette List

The Scene Palette List is mainly used with cut-out animation. A cut-out character will often be divided in twenty to thirty different drawing elements that use the character's master palette.

The palette list is stored at the scene level instead of the Element directory. This way, all palettes linked to this list will appear in every drawing element created in the scene. There is no need to manually load the palette in each element.

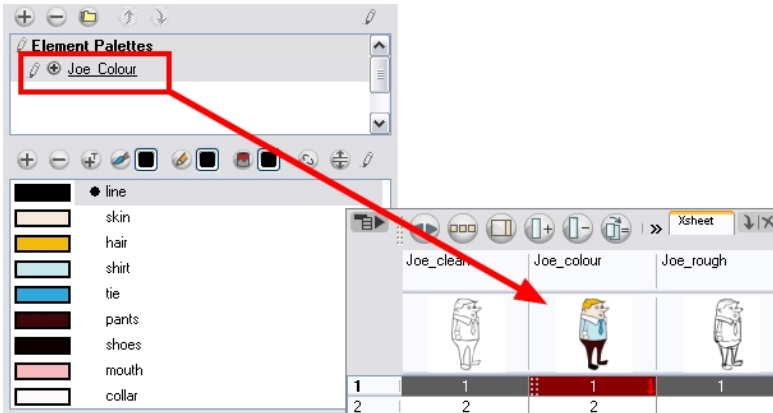
The Scene Palette List is the simplest one to use. By default, Toon Boom Animate Pro is set to use only Scene Palette Lists.



## Element Palette List

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can switch to Advanced Palette Lists mode and choose to save your palette at an element's level. The Element Palette List is mainly used with Traditional and Paperless animation. Unlike Cut-out animation, all columns (drawing elements) contain different characters, props, backgrounds and effects. The Element Palette List is used because you do not necessarily want all of the palettes for all of your elements linked in every column.

The palette list is stored in the drawing element's directory instead of directly in the Scene level. This ensures that the links to the palettes appear only in the appropriate element. If you prefer to access a global palette list, link your palettes to the Scene Palette List.



### Related Topics

- [Creating a Colour Palette](#) below

## Creating a Colour Palette

You can create a palette in either basic or advanced mode:

- [Basic Palette Lists Mode](#) on the next page
- [Creating a Colour Palette](#) above
- [Renaming a Colour Palette](#) on the next page


By default, Toon Boom Animate Pro is set on basic mode. For simple productions, it is recommended to use the basic mode. For more advanced productions, it is a good idea to explore the possibilities of the advanced mode.



If you are using Animate Pro Network, refer to [Managing Palettes](#) on page 357.

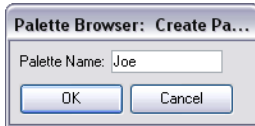
## Basic Palette Lists Mode

To create a new palette (Basic Palette Lists mode):

1. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > New** or click on the **New Palette**  button.

The Create Palette window opens.

2. Enter the palette name according to the model.



3. Click on **OK**.

The palette appears in the drawing element's palette list.



## Renaming a Colour Palette

To rename a palette:

1. In the Colour view, select the palette to rename.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Rename**.
3. In the Rename dialog box, rename the palette.



4. Click **OK**.

### Related Topics

- [Copying and Pasting Colours](#) on the facing page
- [Removing a Colour Palette](#) on page 358
- [Duplicating a Colour Palette](#) on page 359
- [Cloning a Colour Palette](#) on page 360

# Managing Palettes

The Animate Pro Network solution incorporates palettes which hold all of the colours needed to paint elements, a concept that brings complete control and consistency to the painting process. A palette is created by assigning a set of colours to each character, prop or effect. The colour artist will create a new palette and add a new colour, called a colour pot, for each zone of the character, such as the skin, hair, tongue, shirt, pants and so on.

When a zone on a character is painted with the colour contained in a colour pot, a link is automatically created between that colour pot and the zone. This means that if the tint of the colour in the colour pot is modified, any zone that is linked to it will automatically update to the new tint. This saves time and money spent on your production. Another advantage of this system is that you can also create complete palettes for different lighting situations. For instance, in addition to the regular palette for a character, you can have one for that character in the rain, using colours that are muted and less vibrant than the dry daytime colours, or another for use in a night scene. Using palettes that are linked to your character this way allows you to instantly change colouring to suit the mood and atmosphere of the scene without tediously repainting each element.

## Related Topics

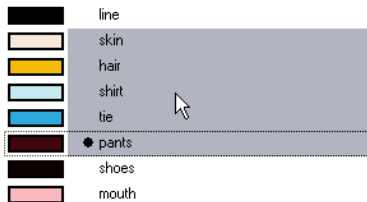
- [Creating a Palette in Harmony](#) on page 1
- [Palette Operations](#) on page 1
- [Palette Storage](#) on page 1
- [Palette Backup](#) on page 1

# Copying and Pasting Colours

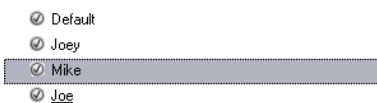
When you are creating palettes, you may want to copy colour swatches or their values and paste them in other palettes to save time.

## To copy and paste colours

1. In the Colour view, select the colour to copy.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Copy** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
3. In the Palette list, select the palette in which you want to paste the colours.



4. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Paste as New Colours** or press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).
  - If you want to paste the colour values of the copied swatch over an existing colour swatch, select **Colours > Paste as Values**.

## Copying Colours from Another Palette

In Toon Boom Animate Pro you can quickly copy a colour value from a palette in your scene to a selected colour swatch in a different palette.

### To use Copy Colour From:

1. In the Colour view, select the colour swatch you want to copy the colour into.
2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colour > Copy Colour From**, then select the palette where the colour you want to copy is listed and finally select the colour.

The selected colour swatch will immediately change to this new colour.

### Related Topics

- [Adding a Colour Swatch](#) on page 304


## Removing a Colour Palette

You can remove palettes from your Palette list if they are not needed in your scene. The actual palette file will not be deleted and you will be able to reimport it in your Palette list later on.

### To remove a palette:

1. In the Colour view, select the palette to remove.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Remove** or click on the **Remove Palette**  button.
  - If the palette was in use in your scene, the zones painted with its colours will turn red.



### Related Topics

- [Creating a Colour Palette](#) on page 355
- [Duplicating a Colour Palette](#) on the facing page
- [Cloning a Colour Palette](#) on page 360

# Duplicating a Colour Palette

A duplicate palette uses the same names, colour values, but has a different ID and is independent from the original palette. This ensures that both palettes are completely independent.

This option is used when there are similar models and you want to avoid recreating and naming all of the colours. You can change the values and the names afterward. You can also keep some RGBA values, such as the eyes, teeth, tongue, inside mouth, etc.

## To duplicate a palette:

1. In the Colour view, select the palette to be duplicated.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Duplicate**.

The Palette Browser: Duplicate Palette window opens.



3. Name the palette appropriately.
4. Click **OK** to create the palette.

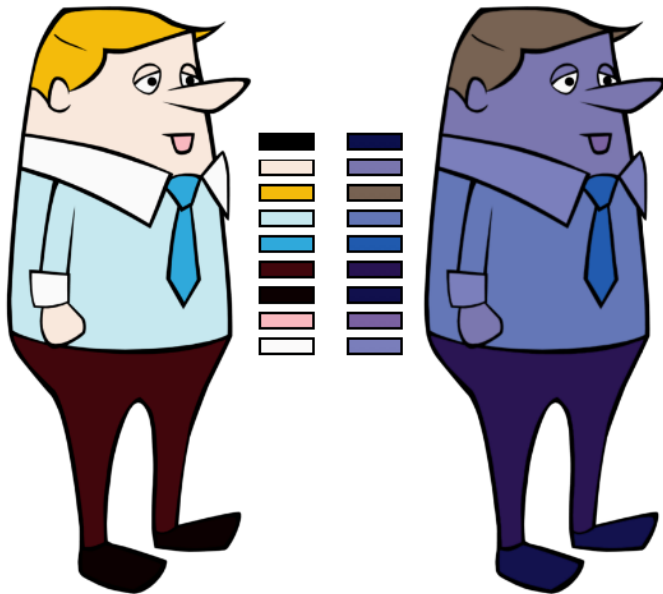
The palette appears in the palette list.



## Related Topics

- [Cloning a Colour Palette](#) on the next page

## Cloning a Colour Palette



A character usually has only one master palette, although there are times when the characters are placed in different lighting conditions and require a different colour shading. The night palette is a popular choice when a scene or sequence changes from day to night. It can be difficult and time-consuming to repaint everything and creating two independent palettes can be quite complex. As an alternative, Toon Boom Animate Pro provides clone palettes.

The clone palette is a copy of the master palette. The colours in each palette have the same properties. The colours have the same identification number pointing to the same colour zones, but they can have different names and RGBA values. Depending on the activated palette (night or day), the painted drawing will update. So there is no need to repaint the animation, but to create or import a clone palette (palette style).

### To clone a palette:

1. In the Colour view, select the palette to be cloned.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Clone**.

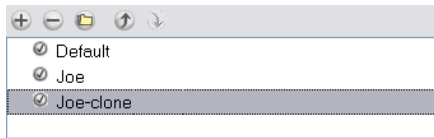
The Palette Browser: Clone Palette window opens.



3. Name the palette. *(It is recommended to keep the suffix "-clone" in the name.)*
4. Click **OK** to create the palette.

The clone appears in the palette list.





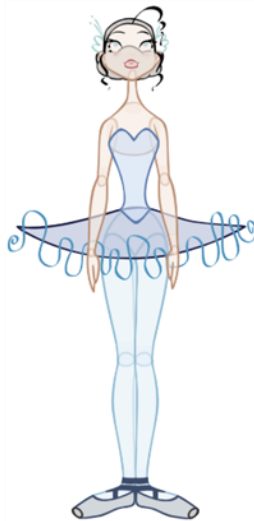
In the Colour view, you can also modify the colours individually by using the Colour Picker window or all at once using the Tint Panel window.



If there is more than one clone palette loaded, the system will use the one highest in the palette list.



When you want to see through painted drawings, but still see the outlines, you can create a clone palette where you set a lower alpha value on all of the filling colours. This trick can be handy when setting pivot points on cut-out puppets.



## Cloning a Colour Swatch

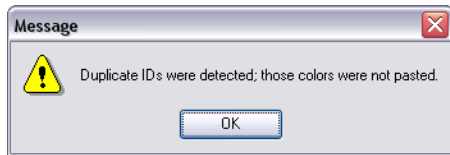
In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can copy a selected colour swatch and paste it as a clone.

### To clone a colour swatch:

1. In the Colour view, select the colour swatch you want to clone.
2. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Copy**. The [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
3. In the Colour view, select the colour palette you want to paste the clone into, or create a new palette.
4. In the Colour View menu, select **Colours > Paste as Clone**.

The cloned colour swatch appears in the palette.

Since it produces a clone colour swatch, it is impossible to use the Paste as Clone command in the same palette as you copied the original colour swatch from. If you try to do it, a Message dialog box will open as a reminder.



## Related Topics

- [Mixing the Colours](#) below
- [Duplicating a Colour Palette](#) on page 359

# Mixing the Colours

If you want to modify a series of colour at once to blend a tint in them or offset their RGBA values, you can use the Tint panel. The Tint panel is quite useful when creating palette styles such as night and day styles.

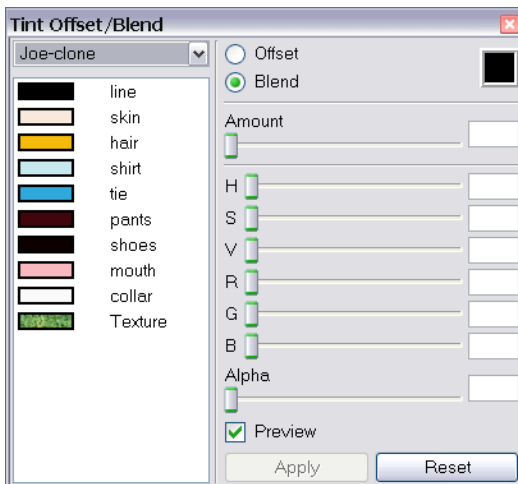
### To mix colours:

1. In the palette list, select the palette to offset or blend colours in it.



2. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Tint Panel**.

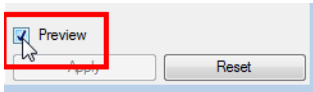
The Blend/Offset Tint panel opens.



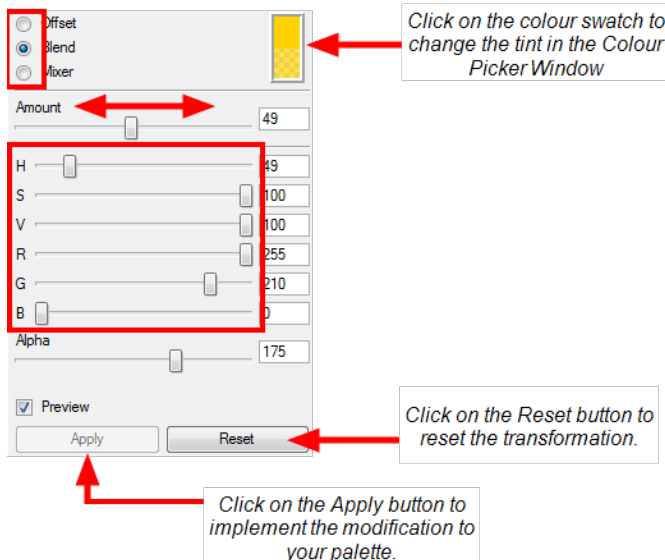
3. Select one or more colours to be modified in the colour list. To select all your colours, press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).



4. Check **Preview**.



5. **Offset, Blend** or **Mix** the selected colours.



▶ **Offset**

Use this option to simply offset the selected colours by the adjustments made using the HSB and RGB sliders. Use the Amount slider to adjust the degree of offset. Use the Alpha slider to adjust the opacity of the selected colour.

▶ **Blend**

Use this option to blend the selected colours with the colour swatch in the top right corner. Use the Amount slider to adjust the degree of blend. A blend of 100% would turn the selected colours into the same colour as the swatch. Adjusting the HSB and RGB sliders affect the swatch colour, which in turn affects the selected colours on the left. Use the Alpha slider to adjust the opacity of the swatch.

▶ **Mixer**

Select a Base and Tint colour to form a third colour swatch. Use the slider just beneath to mix the Base and Tint colours by different amounts. This will affect the mixed swatch whether it is selected or not. Select either the Tint or Base swatch and use the HSB and RGB sliders to adjust its colour. This will affect the mixed swatch colour, which in turn affects the selected colours on the left.



6. Click on the **Apply** button.
7. Close the Tint Offset/Blend Panel window.

## Related Topics

- [Cloning a Colour Palette](#) on page 360
- [Adding a Colour Swatch](#) on page 304


## Importing Palettes

- [Importing a Colour Palette](#) below
- [Importing Palettes](#) above
- [Importing Palettes](#) above
- [Importing Palettes](#) above

## Importing a Colour Palette

If you created a palette in another project and you would like to import it in your current project, you can browse for the palette file on your computer and add it to your project. When the palette is imported in your scene, the file is copied in the project's directory. It is not linked to the original file.

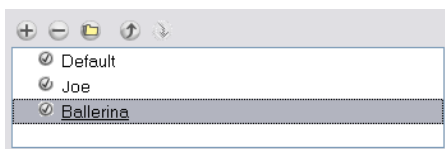
**To import a palette into your project:**

1. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Import** or click on the Import Palette  button.

The Browser window opens.

2. Browse for a palette file located on your hard-drive. You will generally find the palettes in your projects' Palette-Library directory.
3. Click on the **Open** button.

The palette appears in the Palette list.

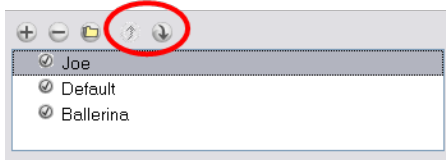


# Ordering the Palette List

When you are using several cloned palettes that are related to the same original palette, Toon Boom Animate Prouses the highest palette in the list to determine the colour of the painted zones.

To reorder palettes in the **Palette** list:

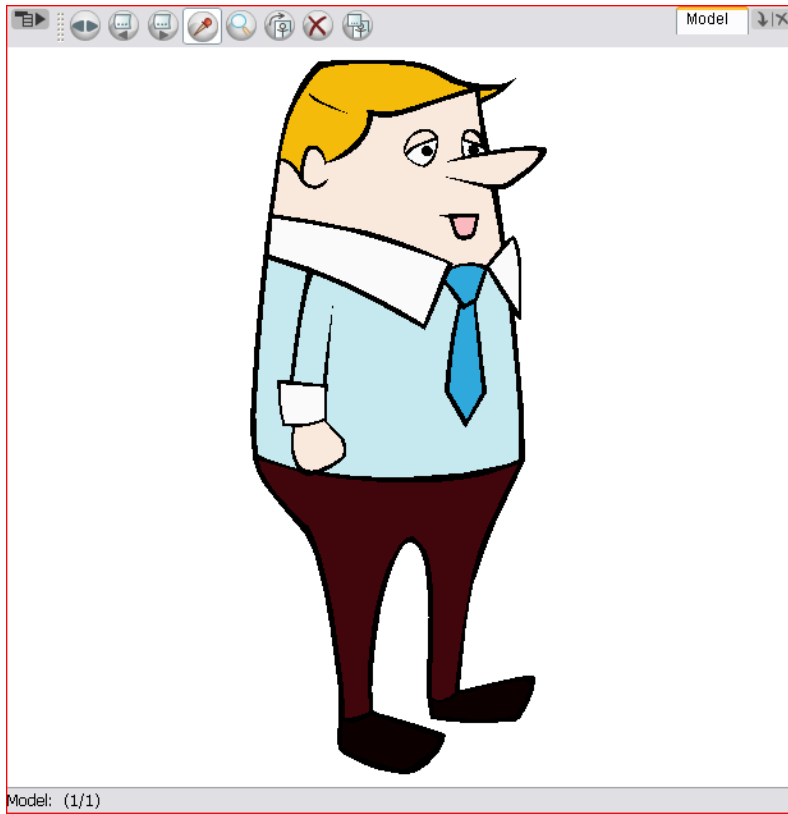
1. In the Colour View menu, select **Palettes > Move Up** or **Move Down**. You can also use the Up  and Down  icons.




## Related Topics

- [Cloning a Colour Palette](#) on page 360

# Colour Model



Once you have a fully painted drawing, you can use it as a colour model and load it in the Model view. That drawing can be used and loaded in any of your Animate Pro scenes.

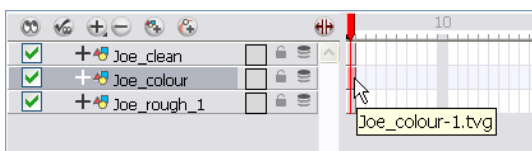
Once a drawing is loaded in the Model view, you can click on the **Dropper** , select a colour from the model and use it to paint in your Camera or Drawing view without having to pick the colour from the colour palette.

- [Loading a Colour Model below](#)
- [Cutting, Copying and Pasting from a Colour Model on page 369](#)


## Loading a Colour Model

To load a colour model from your Timeline or Xsheet view:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the desired drawing (\*.tvg).




2. Bring the model into the Model view by doing one of the following:
  - In the Timeline view, click and drag the selected drawing and drop it directly in the Model view.
  - In the Model View menu, select **Use Current Drawing as Model**.

- ▶ Use **Current Drawing**  button in the Model View toolbar's extra buttons.


The model appears in the Model view.

#### To browse for a colour model drawing on your hard drive:

1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the Model View menu, select **Import Model**.
  - ▶ Click the **Import Model**  button or from the Model View's toolbar.
  - ▶ Select **File > Import > Colour Model**.
2. In the Browser window, browse for any \*.tvg drawing file on your hard drive.
3. Click **Open**.

The model appears in the Model view.

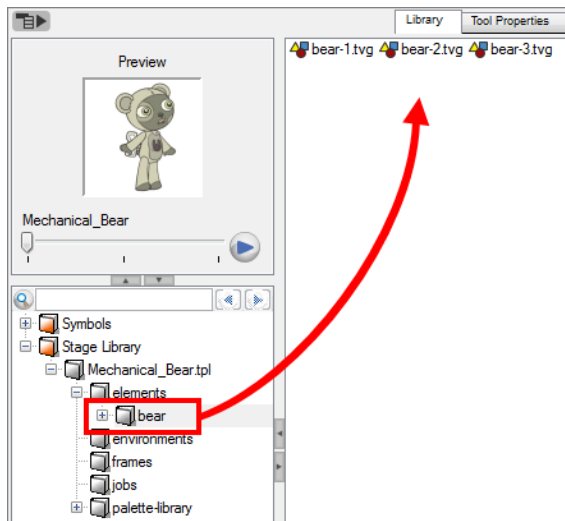
#### To load the Default models:

1. In your scene's folder, create a new folder and name it models.
2. On your hard drive copy the \*.tvg drawing file you want to use as colour models in your scene.
3. In the Model View menu, select **Load Default Model**. You can also click on the **Load Default Model** 

button available in the Model View toolbar's extra buttons.

#### To load a single drawing from the Library view:



1. In the Library view, click the template containing the drawing to import in the Model view.
2. Right-click on the template and select **Open As Folder**.
3. In the Library view's left side, select the template's folder and continuing expanding its sub-folders until \*.tvg files appear on the right side.



4. In the Library view's right side, select the TVG drawing to import and drag it into the Model view.

#### To load a template with multiple drawings from the Library view:

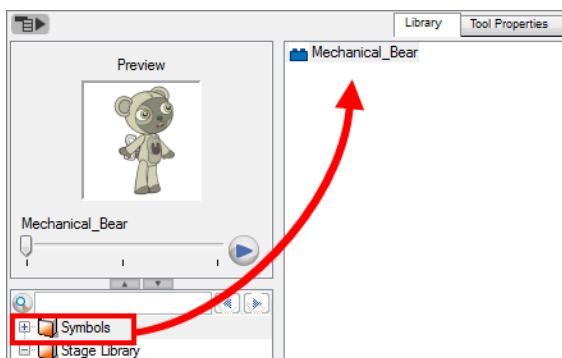
1. In the Library view, find the template you want to import in the Model view.
2. In the Library view's right side, click and drag the template (\*.tpl file) and drop it directly in the Model view.



- Use the **Scroll Backward**  and **Scroll Forward**  buttons, found in the Model view's toolbar, to view all the drawings contained in the template. This can often be the front, profile and 3/4 views of a character.



**To load a symbol from the Library view:**

- In the Library view's left side, click on the **Symbols** folder.
- In the Library view's right side, select the symbol that you would like to use as a model and drag and drop it directly into the Model view.



- Use the **Scroll Backward**  and **Scroll Forward**  buttons, found in the Model view's toolbar, to view all the drawings contained in the symbol. This can often be the front, profile and 3/4 views of a character.

**To clear a colour model:**


- In the Model View menu, select **Clear Model** or press [Delete].

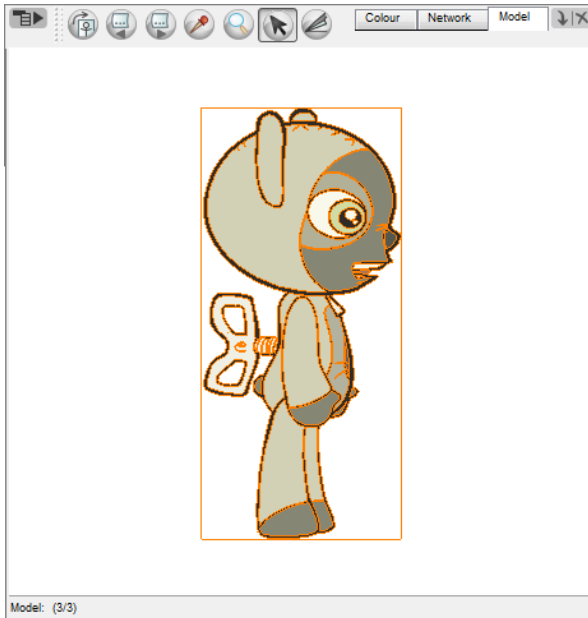


# Cutting, Copying and Pasting from a Colour Model

You can do more than just copy colours from a colour model. Animate Pro gives you the ability to copy parts of the character directly from its colour model and paste these elements into the Drawing or Camera views.

**To copy the entire model from the Model view:**


1. In the Model view's toolbar, select the **Select**  tool.
2. In the Model view, select your model.

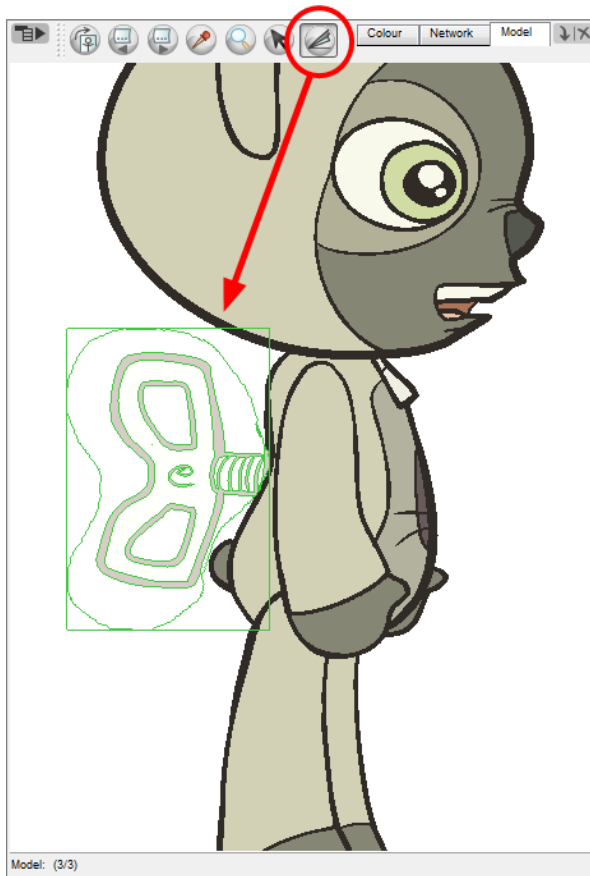


3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy Drawing Object** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
4. In the Timeline view, make sure that you have the correct layer and frame selected.
5. Select either the Drawing or Camera views then go to the top menu and select **Edit > Paste Drawing Object**, or select the Timeline view and from the top menu select **Edit > Paste cells in the Timeline** or press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).

The model now appears in the selected view.

**To copy part of the model from the Model view:**

1. In the Model view's toolbar, select the **Cutter**  tool or press [Alt] + [T].
2. In the Model view, use the Cutter tool to create a selection around the part of your model that you would like to copy.



3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy Drawing Object** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
4. In the Timeline view, make sure you have the correct layer and frame selected.
5. Do one of the following:
  - Select the Drawing or Camera view and select **Edit > Paste Drawing Object**.
  - Select the Timeline view and select **Edit > Paste cells in the Timeline** or press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).

The model appears in the selected view.

# Colour Preferences

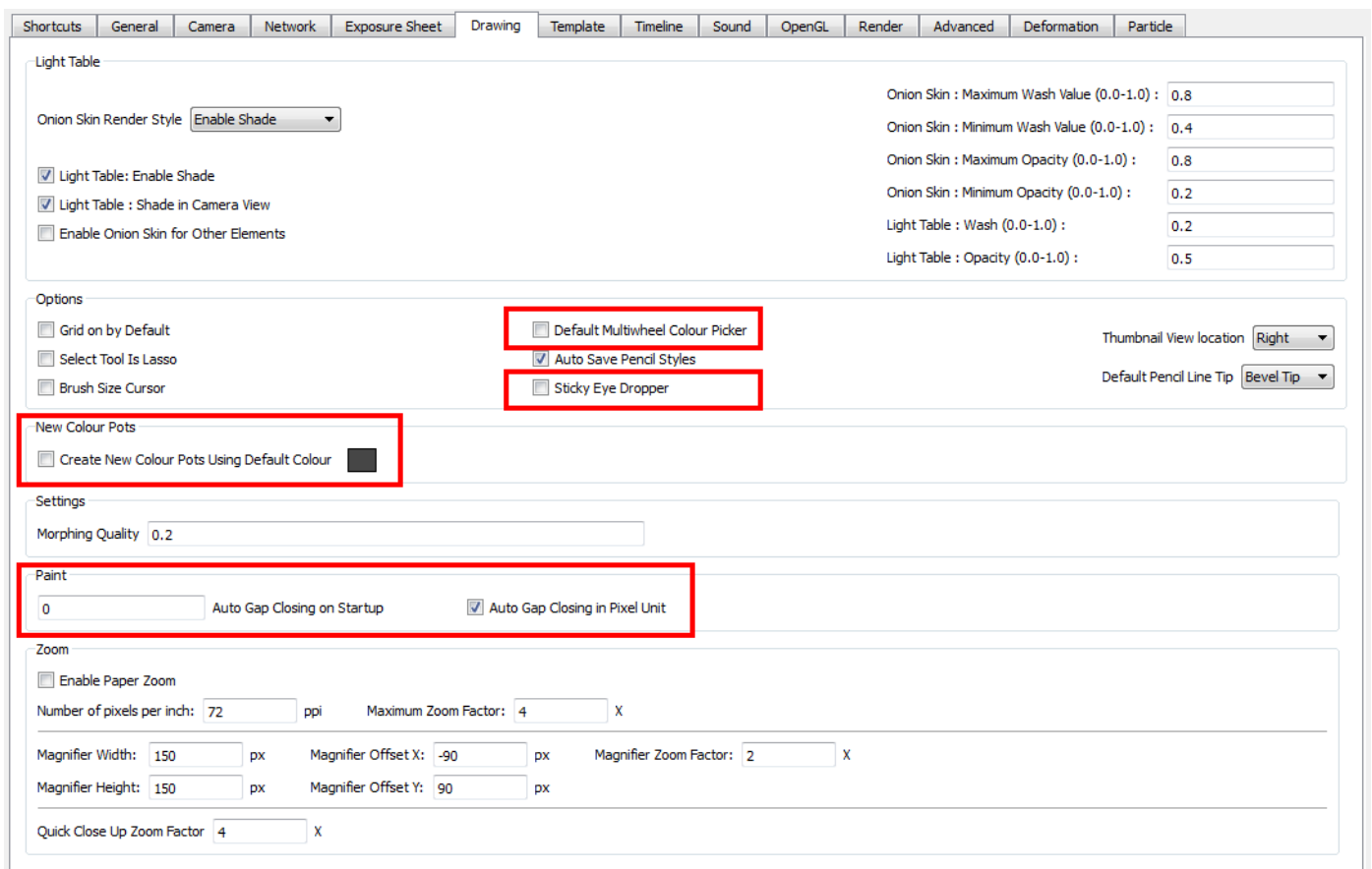
Adjusting preferences to suit your techniques allows you to paint your drawings more efficiently.

To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

In the **Preferences** panel, you will find the following preferences that are related to adding colours to your project.

## Drawing Tab



## Default Multiwheel Colour Picker

Enable this option to display the Mutliwheel Colour Picker window instead of the regular Colour Picker.

## Sticky Eye Dropper

Enable this option to keep the Colour Picker's Dropper tool active until it is released by clicking on the Dropper icon again.

## Create New Colour Pots Using Default Colour

Set the default colour for creating a new colour swatch. Enable the option so that this default colour is used each time you add a new colour in your palettes. This option is useful for when you create new colour pots so that a more recognizable colour is created and not just a duplicate of the currently selected colour. Choosing a colour that is the opposite of your intended colour palette is recommended, such as grey if your palette will be filled with bright, primary colours.

## Auto Gap Closing on Startup

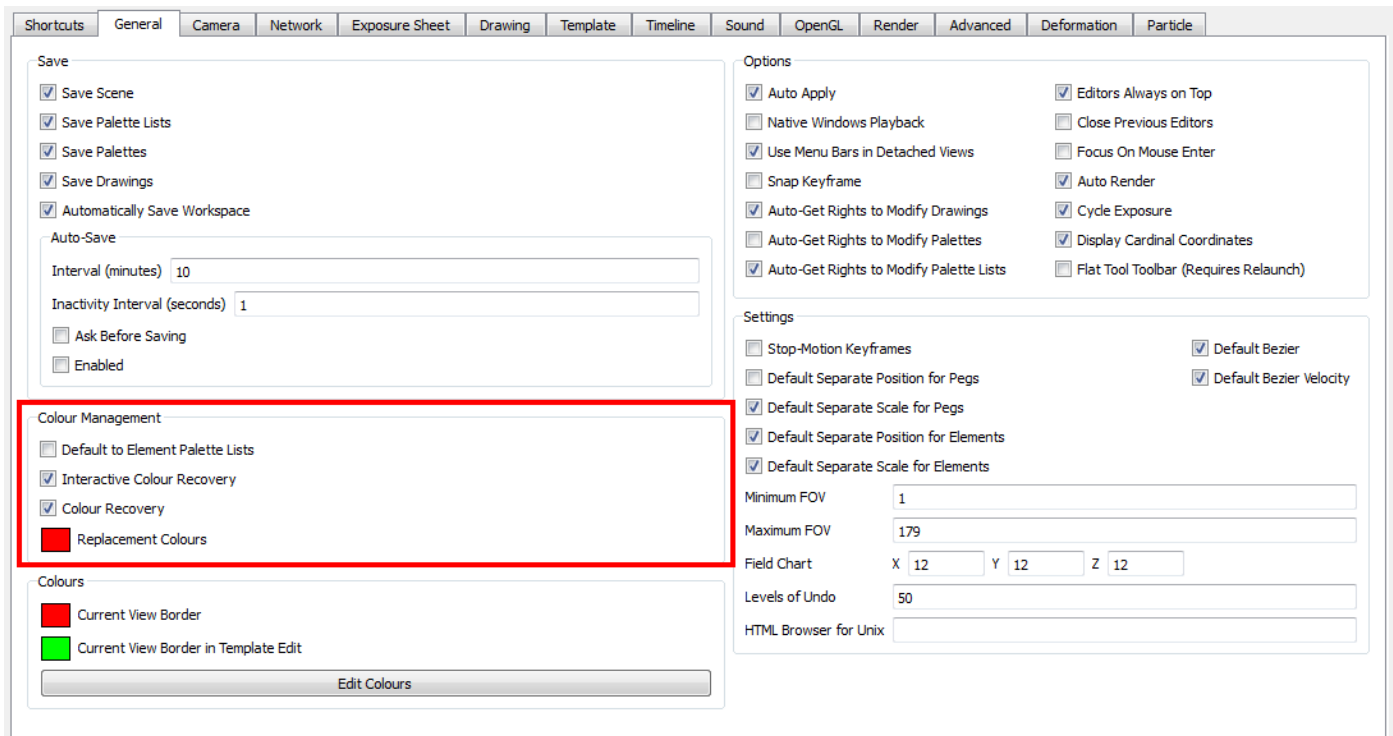
The values for automatic gap closing while painting drawings are:

- 0 = Disabled
- 1 = Small
- 2 = Medium
- 3 = Big

## Auto Gap Closing in Pixel Units

Disabling this option will cause your gap to be zoom dependant. Zoom dependent means that the more you zoom in, the smaller the gap you can close with the Close Gap tools. By enabling this option, you choose to make the gap display available in pixel units, which is not zoom dependant.

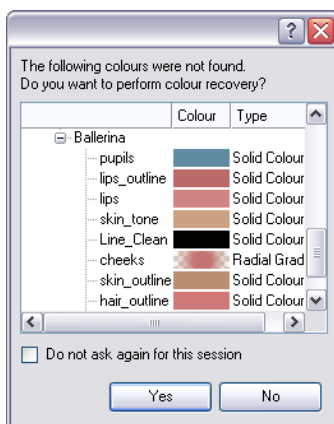
# General Tab



## Colour Management

In the General tab of the Preference panel, you will find the following options:

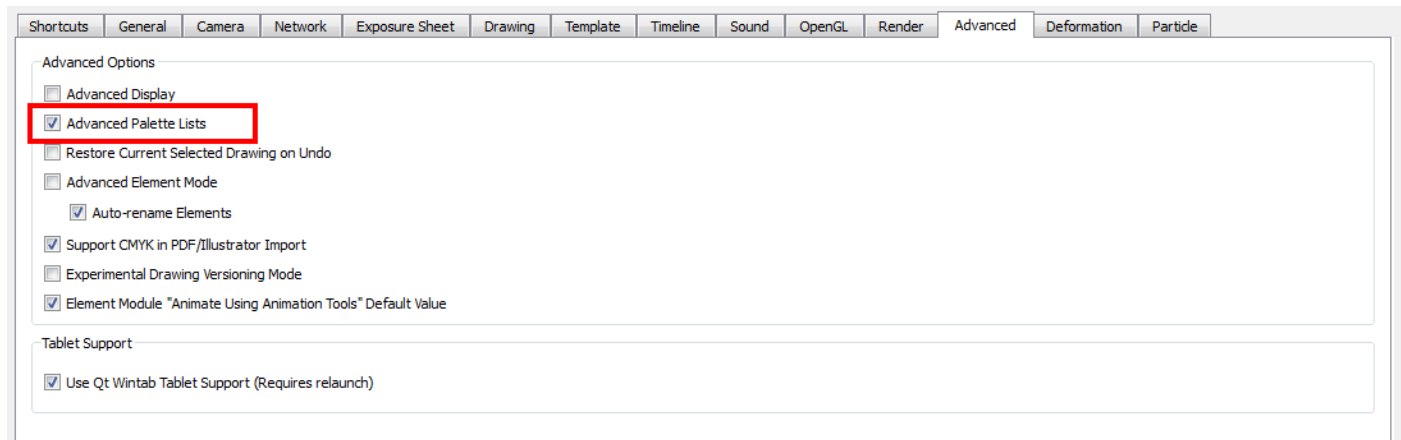
- **Default to Element Palette Lists:** When this option is enabled the new, cloned, duplicated, imported and linked palettes will be stored in the Element Palette list instead of the Scene Palette List.
- **Interactive Colour Recovery:** If a colour palette for your scene is deleted or cannot be found, you will be asked if you want to recover colours from the program's memory. If this option is unchecked, the program recovers missing colours without displaying a dialog box for your input.



- **Colour Recovery:** If this option is unchecked, colour recovery will not occur.

- Replacement Colours: If colours are no longer available for your scene, these colours are automatically replaced with the ones indicated by the Replacement Colour swatch. The default colour is red, as it acts as a missing colour warning device.

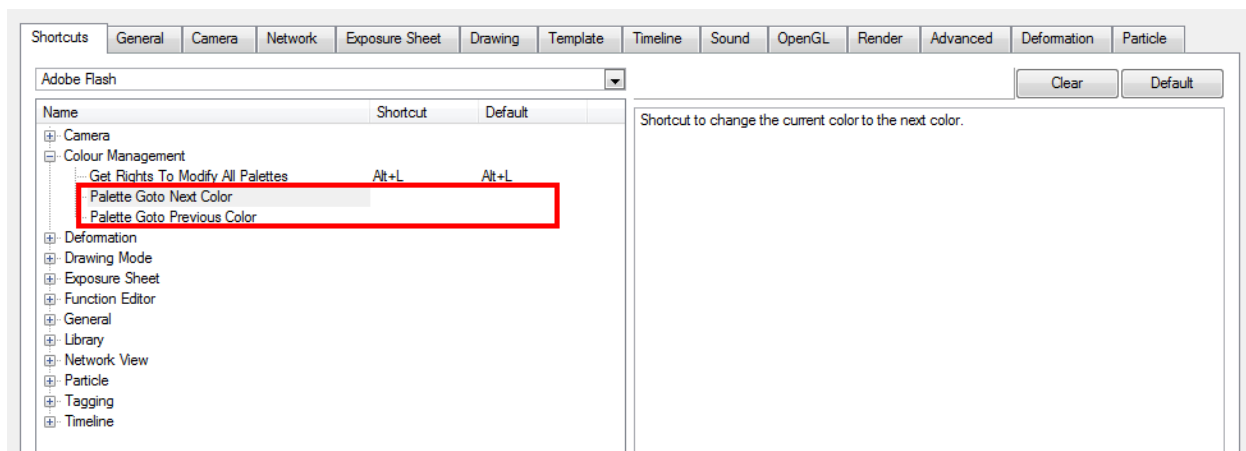
## Advanced Tab



## Advanced Palette Lists

In the Advanced section, you will find the Advanced Palette Lists option. Enable this feature to switch your palette list to advanced mode. The Advanced Palette Lists mode is used to create and store palettes in the Scene or Element Palette List.

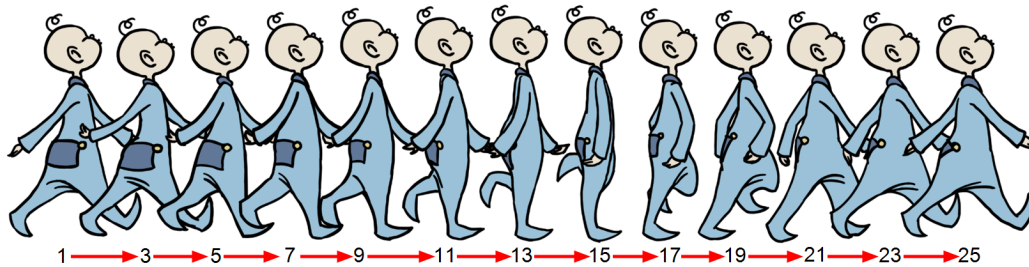
## Shortcuts Tab



## Go to Next/Previous Colour in the Colour Palette

Under the Colour Management section, you can set two new possible shortcuts. You can set a shortcut to Go to the Next Colour in the Colour Palette or to Go to the Previous Colour.

# Chapter 7: Timing



When you create hand-drawn animation, it is important to know how to set and modify the timing of your drawings. You can adjust the timing in both the Timeline and Xsheet views, depending on which technique you are used to working with. If you are a digital animator, you will probably use the Timeline view. If you are more of a traditional animator, you will probably work with the Xsheet view (exposure sheet). Animate Pro offers you both.

In this topic, you will learn how to work on your drawing's exposure and length. The exposure and animation paths for symbols are covered in separate chapters.

## Topics Covered

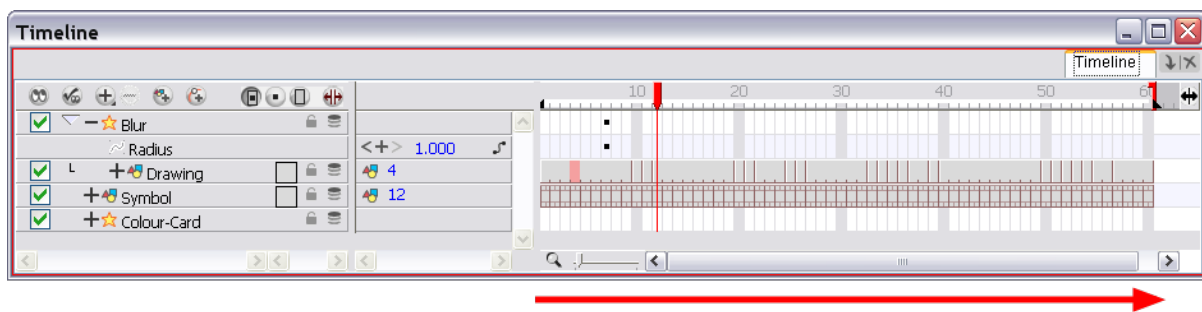
- [Understanding the Timeline View on the next page](#)
- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)
- [Frames on page 387](#)
- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)
- [Navigating between Frames and Columns on page 442](#)
- [Managing Drawings on page 444](#)
- [Tempo Markers on page 450](#)
- [Annotation Columns on page 452](#)
- [Printing the Xsheet on page 458](#)
- [Element Manager on page 460](#)
- [Timing Preferences on page 461](#)

# Understanding the Timeline View

To set your animation timing, you will mostly work with the Timeline and Xsheet views. This section will help you become familiar with these views, how they work and the differences between them.

- [Timeline View](#) below
- [Layer Section](#) below
- [Timing Selection](#) on the facing page
- [Data View Section](#) on the facing page

## Timeline View



The Timeline view allows you to read your timing from left to right. It represents the scene's elements in their simplest form.

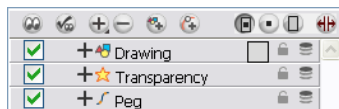
In the Timeline view you can see your layers and their names as well as the drawing's exposure. The drawing name is displayed when you place your cursor above the drawing's exposure.



You can also see the drawing name when you display the Data view. The name of the drawing folder to which the layer is linked is displayed in the Data view.



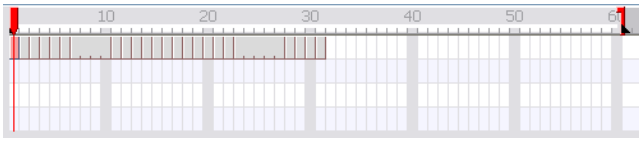
## Layer Section



The Layer section is located to the left of the Timeline view. This is where you add, delete, rename, reorder, and parent layers. Any operation you do that affects the layer globally is done here.



## Timing Selection




The Timing section is located on the right side of the Timeline view. This is where you can increase and decrease a drawing's exposure, duplicate drawings, add blank cells, etc. Any operation you do that affects a drawing or its timing is done in this section.

## Data View Section



The Data view section is part of the Layer section. By default, the Data view is hidden.

The Data view allows you create new drawings by typing a new name in the Drawing Substitution field. You can also swap between existing drawings by sliding your cursor  to the left or right.

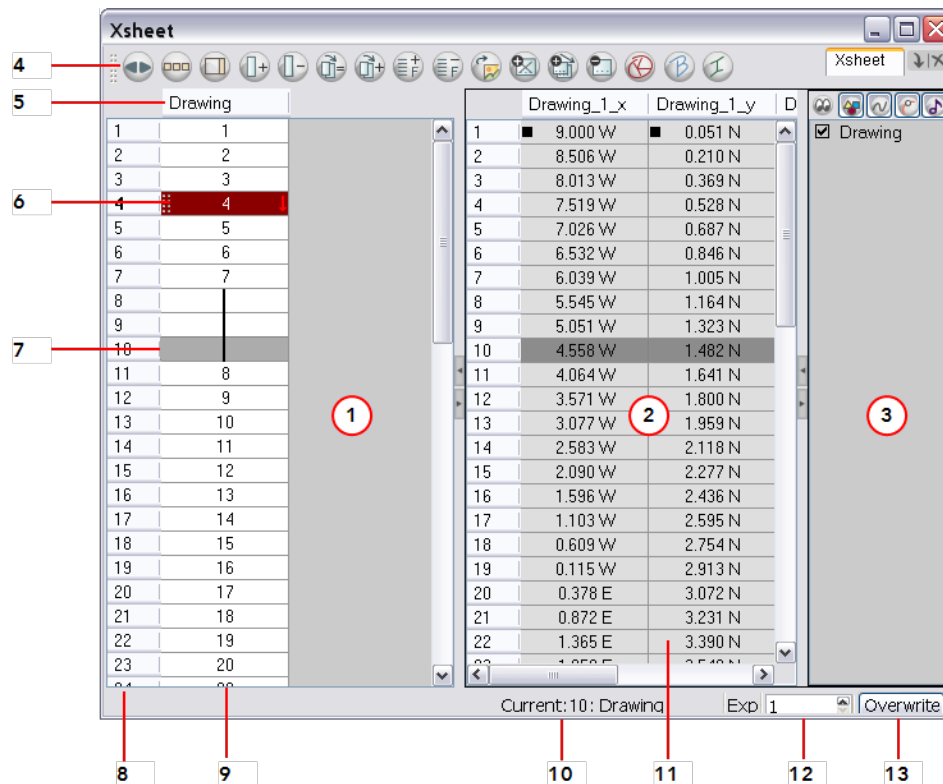
To display the Data view:

- ▶ Click the **Show Data View**  button.


### Related Topics

- [Swapping Images on page 1057](#)

# Xsheet View



1. [Xsheet Main Section](#) on the facing page
2. [Functions Section](#) on page 380
3. [Column List Section](#) on page 381
4. [Xsheet View Toolbar](#) on page 382
5. [Column Header](#) on page 382
6. [Current Drawing](#) on page 383
7. [Current Frame](#) on page 383
8. [Frame Numbers](#) on page 384
9. [Drawing Exposure](#) on page 385
10. [Current Frame Display](#) on page 385
11. [Function Column](#) on page 385
12. [Increase/Decrease Exposure](#) on page 386
13. [Overwrite/Insert Modes](#) on page 386

In Animate Pro, you will also find the Xsheet View menu  button in the top-left corner. This button allows you to access commands related to the Xsheet view.

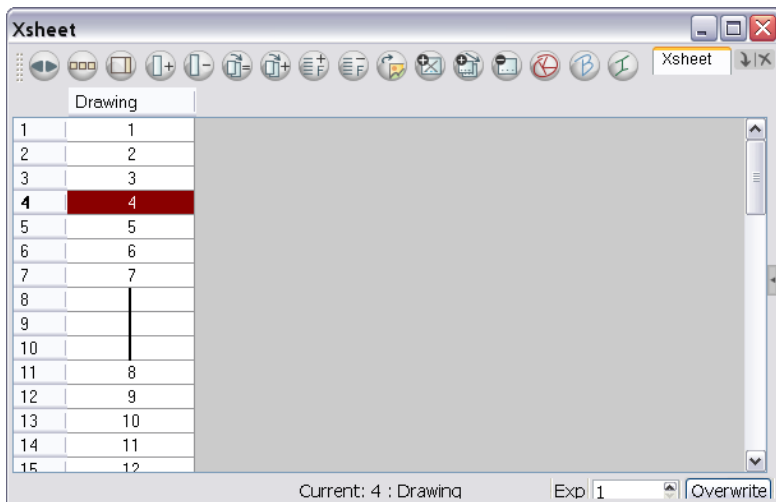
The Xsheet view lets you read your timing vertically, displays the drawing layers as columns and shows the drawing's name. You also see the functions and keyframes of the motion paths in the Xsheet's function columns.

The value of each keyframe is shown in the Xsheet view, these are black squares in the Timeline view. The Xsheet view contains details than the Timeline view, and is faster and easier to read.

## Related Topics

- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes on page 924](#)

## Xsheet Main Section



The Xsheet view has three sections. By default, only the main section is visible. It displays the drawing layers, also known as *drawing columns*.

When using advanced compositing and animation techniques, unconnected functions (motion paths) also appear in the main section. Unconnected functions mean that some motion paths are not attached to any particular layer.

	Drawing	Peg_x	Peg_y	Peg_z	Peg_velo
1	1	■ 0.000	■ 0.000	■ 0.000	■ 1.000
2	2				
3	3				
4	4				
5	5				
6	6				
7	7				
8					
9					
10					
11	8				
12	9				
13	10				
14	11				
15	12				



When you reconnect functions to a layer they are still visible in the main section.



Refer to [Sharing Functions on page 960](#) to learn about the unconnected functions.

Refer to the topic [Showing and Hiding Columns on page 406](#) to learn how to temporarily hide unconnected functions from the main section.

## Related Topics


- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

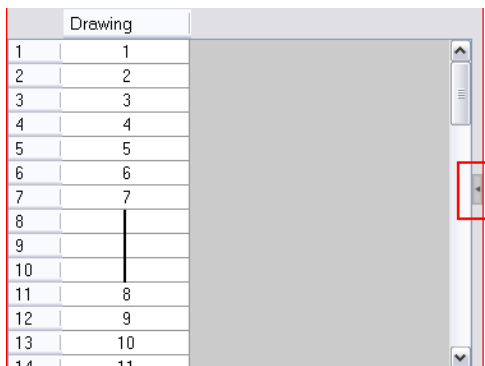
# Functions Section

Drawing		Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z	Drawing_1
1	1	9.000 W	0.051 N	0.000	0.0
2	2	8.506 W	0.210 N		0.0
3	3	8.013 W	0.369 N		0.0
4	4	7.519 W	0.528 N		0.0
5	5	7.026 W	0.687 N		0.0
6	6	6.532 W	0.846 N		0.0
7	7	6.039 W	1.005 N		0.0
8		5.545 W	1.164 N		0.0
9		5.051 W	1.323 N		0.0
10		4.558 W	1.482 N		0.0
11	8	4.064 W	1.641 N		0.0
12	9	3.571 W	1.800 N		0.0
13	10	3.077 W	1.959 N		0.0
14	11	2.583 W	2.118 N		0.0
15	12	2.090 W	2.277 N		0.0
16	13	1.596 W	2.436 N		0.0
17	14	1.103 W	2.595 N		0.0
18	15	0.609 W	2.754 N		0.0

The Functions section is used for more advanced techniques. This section displays the functions (paths) related to the selected layer in the Timeline view. By default, the Functions section is hidden.

### To display the Functions section:

1. In the Xsheet view, click on the Expand button located on the right side of the main section. Click on the same button to collapse it. You can also use the Show Column List  button in the Xsheet View toolbar.



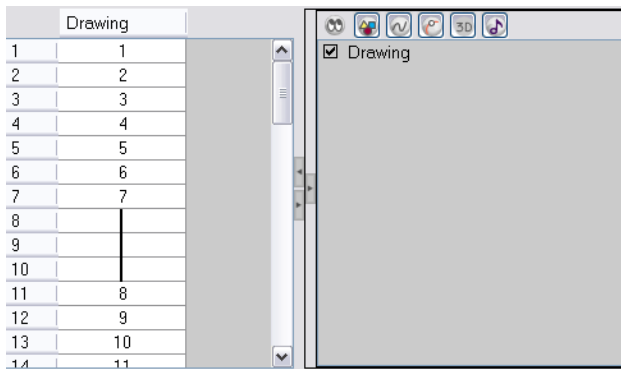


If you select a drawing column in the main section of the Xsheet view, the function columns will not be displayed. You must select the layer from the Timeline view.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)
- [Animation Paths on page 907](#)


## Column List Section

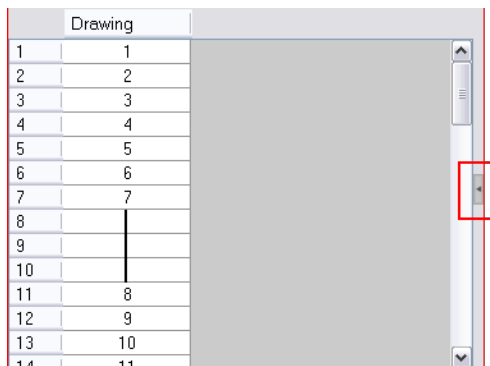


The Column List section allows you to show and hide columns from your Xsheet view. When you hide a layer using your Xsheet view, it is also disabled in the Timeline view.

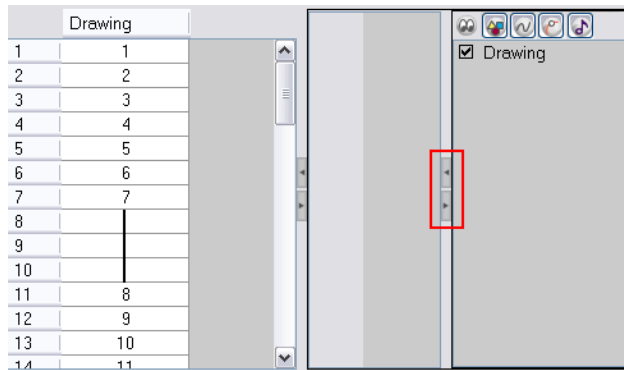
You can use the Column List to hide individual columns or hide an entire column type (drawing or function) from your Xsheet view. By default, the Functions section is hidden.

### To display the Column List section:

1. In the Xsheet view, click the **Expand** button located on the right side of the main section to show the Functions section. Click on the same button to collapse it. You can also use the Show Column List  button in the Xsheet View toolbar.
  - ▶ In Animate Pro, you can also go to the Xsheet View menu and select **View > Show Column List**.



2. Click the **Expand** button on the right side of the Functions section to display the Column List section.



## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

# Xsheet View Toolbar



The Xsheet view has its own toolbar where you can find the most common features. This toolbar is displayed by default. If you do not see it, select **Windows > Toolbars > Xsheet View**.

The Xsheet view must be part of your workspace in order to display its toolbar.



Refer to [Toolbar Manager on page 114](#) to learn how to organize the buttons available in the Xsheet View toolbar.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

# Column Header

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3

Each column available in the Xsheet view has a header displaying the column's name. The column's name is the same as the corresponding timeline layer. If you rename one or the other, they will both be renamed.

A quick access menu is available when you right-click. This menu contains the command affecting an entire column such as renaming, changing the default colour or deleting a column.

In Animate Pro, the column header shows the layer's name and the name of the drawing folder to which it is linked. If the name of the layer is the same as the drawing folder, the drawing folder's name will not be displayed. For example; when you link a Timing column to a certain element (and thereby the Element's folder).

	Drawing	Character Drawing
1		
2		
3		
4		

The tooltip that appears when you hover your cursor at the top of each Xsheet column shows the absolute folder path to the source drawings for that column.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## Current Drawing

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

A drawing selected in dark red indicates that the drawing is currently displayed in the Drawing view. The current drawing selection is not linked to the drawing displayed in the Camera view since drawings from each visible layer are displayed at once.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## Current Frame

	Drawing_3	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1				1
2				2
3				3
4				4
5				5
6				6

The darker frame appearing in the Xsheet view represents the current frame displayed in the Camera view. It does not necessarily correspond to the current drawing displayed in the Drawing view.



**Tip:** To show the real time updated of the selected frame, click the Xsheet menu and select **View > Enable Playback**.

There is a new option in the Xsheet to Enable Playback. This shows the real time update of what frame is selected. You can turn this off or on view the View menu in Animate Pro, and I think by right-clicking in Animate LB

## Related Topics

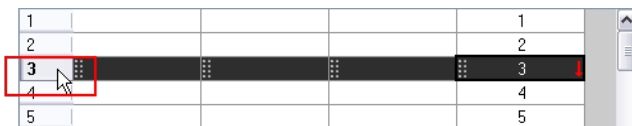
- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## Frame Numbers

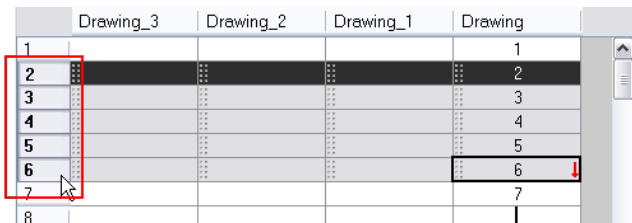
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

On the left side of the Xsheet view, the frame numbers are shown indicating where you are. These read vertically instead of being displayed horizontally as they are in the Timeline view.

- To go to a particular frame, click the frame number.



- To select an entire range of frames, click and drag a selection downwards.



## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)



## Drawing Exposure

Drawing	
1	1
2	
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	
7	
8	5
9	6
10	7
11	
12	

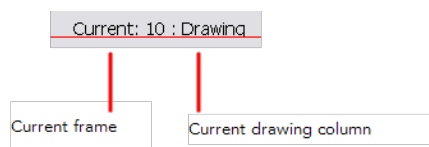
Diagram illustrating Drawing Exposure in an Xsheet. The table shows drawing names and their exposure across frames. A red box highlights the exposure of drawing 4 over frames 5, 6, and 7. Red lines connect callout boxes to specific cells: 'Drawing exposure' points to cell (1,1), 'Drawing exposed over 3 cells' points to the vertical line in column 4, and 'Blank cell' points to cell (11,1).

In the drawing columns, you can see the drawing names and their exposure. You can use any alphanumeric symbol to name your drawing. When a drawing is exposed over more than one cell, a vertical black line is displayed to indicate the continuity of the exposure. When there is no drawing in a cell, the cell will be blank.

### Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## Current Frame Display



At the bottom of the Xsheet view, you can see the current frame number as well as the column containing the drawing currently displayed in the Drawing view

### Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

## Function Column

Transparency_1	
1	■ 50.000
2	62.500
3	75.000
4	87.500
5	■ 100.000
6	87.500
7	75.000
8	62.500
9	■ 50.000
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	

Diagram illustrating the Function Column. The table shows transparency values for a drawing named 'Transparency\_1'. Keyframes are marked with a black square (■) at frames 1, 5, and 9. Interpolation is shown by the values between keyframes. A vertical black line is shown in frame 11, indicating a held value. Red lines connect callout boxes to specific cells: 'Keyframe' points to cell (1,2), 'Interpolation' points to cell (3,2), and 'Held value' points to the vertical line in column 11.

The function columns are displayed in the Functions section of the Xsheet view. They represent the motion and rotation you applied to your drawing layer. Only the function columns related to the selected layer are displayed.

A function column can also be related to an effect. Selecting your effect layer shows you the corresponding function column in the Xsheet view.

The function columns display the position value or effect value on each cell. If there is a keyframe on a cell, a black square is displayed. Holding the same value for several frames displays a vertical black line.

Holding the same value for several frames displays a vertical black line.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

# Increase/Decrease Exposure



You can quickly increase or decrease the exposure of the selected cell by clicking on the up and down arrows in the Increase/Decrease Exposure field.



Refer to the [Increase/Decrease Exposure Field on page 430](#) topic to learn more about this feature.

---

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

# Overwrite/Insert Modes

The Overwrite/Insert button allows you to decide the way the values are inserted into your Xsheet.

## Related Topics

- [Xsheet View on page 378](#)

# Frames

One of the first things to learn in Toon Boom Animate Pro is how to add or delete frames in your scene.

## Related Topics

- [Adding Frames](#) below
- [Deleting Frames](#) on page 389

# Adding Frames

There are several ways to add frames to your scene using Toon Boom Animate Pro.

## Related Topics

- [Setting the Scene Length](#) below
- [Extending the Timeline View](#) below
- [Adding Frames Before or After a Selection](#) on the next page
- [Adding Frames to the Beginning or at the End of a Scene](#) on the next page

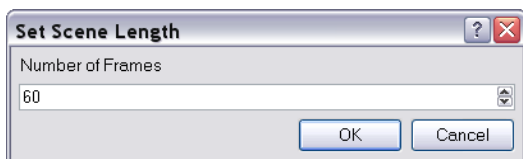
# Setting the Scene Length

You can set the global scene length from the top menu.

To set the set scene length:

1. Select **Scene > Set Scene Length**.

The Set Scene Length dialog box opens.



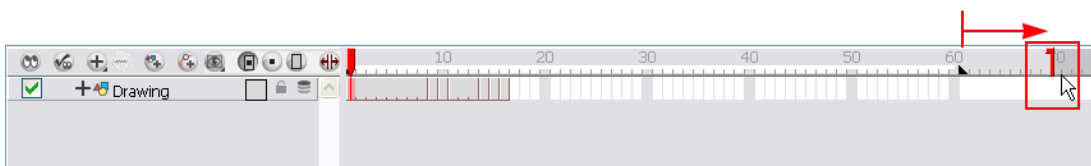
2. In the Number of Frames field, type how many frames are needed.

# Extending the Timeline View

You can quickly extend your scene length in the Timeline view.

To extend your scene in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, drag the scene length bracket to the right to add more frames to your scene.



## Adding Frames Before or After a Selection

You can add frames anywhere in the middle of the scene. If you select a frame row in the Xsheet view, the system will add the new frames before or after the selection, depending on your choice.

**To add frames before or after selection:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select a frame row.

	Drawing_3	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1	13	15	1	1
2	14		2	
3	1		3	
4			4	
5		1	5	
6		2	6	
7		3		
8	2	4		

2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Select **Scene > Frame > Add Frames Before Selection** or **Add Frames After Selection**.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [G] and [Ctrl] + [H] (Windows) or [⌘] + [G] and [Ctrl] + [H] (Mac OS X).


*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Frame > Add Frames Before Selection** or **Add Frames After Selection**.*

The Add Frames dialog box opens.



3. In the Number of Frames to Add field, enter the amount of frames needed in the scene.



To add new frames after your selection, you can also use the **Add Frames**  button in the **Xsheet**

**View** toolbar.

## Adding Frames to the Beginning or at the End of a Scene

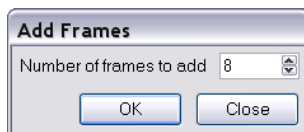
You can add some frames to the beginning or at the end of the scene.

**To add frames at start or at end:**

1. Select **Scene > Frame > Add Frames at Start** or **Add Frames at End**.


*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Frame > Add Frames at Start** or **Add Frames at End**.*

The Add Frames dialog box opens.



2. In the Number of Frames to Add field, enter the number of frames needed in the scene.



To add new frames at the end of your scene, you can also use the **Add Frames**  button found in the **Xsheet View** toolbar.

## Related Topics

- [Deleting Frames](#) below

## Deleting Frames

There are three ways to delete frames from your scene:

- [Reducing the Timeline Length](#) below
- [Removing Selected Frames](#) below
- [Deleting a Selected Frame Range](#) on the next page



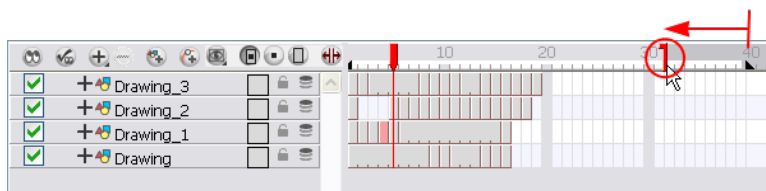
When you remove frames from the end of your scene, the exposed drawings and symbols are not deleted. If you extend your scene afterwards, these drawings and symbols are still available.

## Reducing the Timeline Length

You can quickly reduce your scene length in the Timeline view.

**To reduce your scene in the Timeline view:**

1. In the Timeline view, drag the scene length bracket to the left to remove frames from your scene.



## Removing Selected Frames

You can remove any selected frame in your Xsheet view, such as the last frame of your scene.

**To remove a selected frame:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select a frame in a given column.
2. In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Remove Frames**  button. To remove several frames, click the button repeatedly.

You can also select **Scene > Frame > Remove Selected Frames** from the top menu.

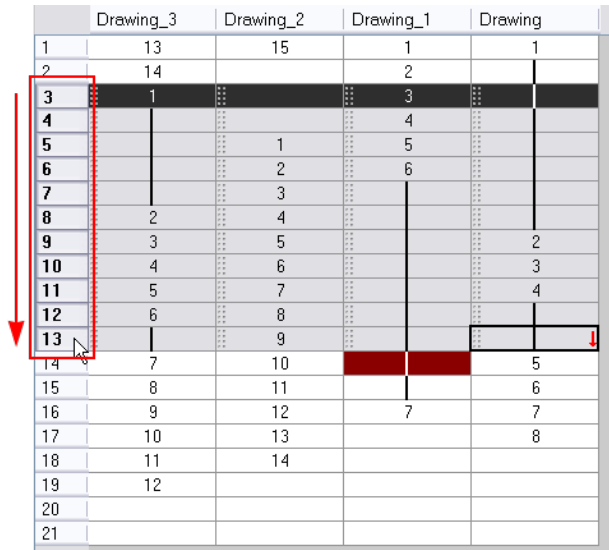
*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Frame > Remove Selected Frames** from the top menu.*

## Deleting a Selected Frame Range


In the Xsheet view, you can remove any selected frame range.

To delete a frame range:

1. In the Xsheet view, select a frame range by clicking the first frame's number and then dragging the selection highlight down to the last frame to delete.



	Drawing_3	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1	13	15	1	1
2	14		2	
3	1		3	
4			4	
5		1	5	
6		2	6	
7		3		
8	2	4		
9	3	5		2
10	4	6		3
11	5	7		4
12	6	8		
13		9		
14	7	10		5
15	8	11		6
16	9	12	7	7
17	10	13		8
18	11	14		
19	12			
20				
21				

2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Press [Delete] to delete the selection.
  - ▶ From the top menu, select **Scene > Frame > Remove Selected Frames**.
  - ▶ Click **Remove Frames**  button.

*In Harmony Xsheet, go to **Frame > Remove Selected Frames**.*

The **Warning** dialog box opens.



3. To complete the operation:
  - ▶ Click **Yes** to delete the selection.
  - ▶ Click **No** to only delete the exposure in the cell and not the frames.
  - ▶ Select the **Don't Show This Message Again** option to prevent the warning message from being displayed each time you delete a frame range.

## Related Topics

- [Adding Frames on page 387](#)

# Layers and Columns

In Toon Boom Animate Pro there are two ways to see your layers:

- As horizontal layers in the Timeline view
- As vertical columns in the Xsheet view

In Animate Pro, you can also see your layers displayed in the Network view as modules.

Whether you work in the Timeline or Xsheet view, they are the same and any modification you do to one or the other will be applied to both.

## Related Topics

- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) below
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417



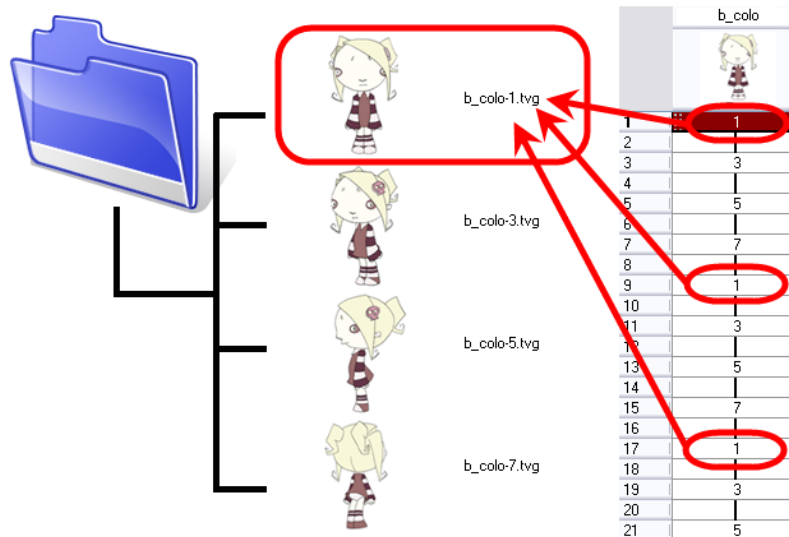
When working in Harmony Xsheet, only the Xsheet view and its functionalities are available.

## Layer and Column Concepts

In order to understand what happens when you duplicate a drawing, extend an exposure, create cycles or delete a drawing, it is important to know how a layer works.

Each layer is linked to a directory, this is the location where all of that layers' drawings are saved. This directory has the same name as the layer. When a value or drawing name is typed in a layer's cell, the system looks in the layer's directory for the corresponding drawing to display. If there is no corresponding drawing, a new one is created.

The layer's cells are not used for storage, but are linked to the drawings contained in the layer's directory. If you remove a drawing from the layer exposure, it is not deleted, but is simply not displayed.



When you create a drawing cycle, all of the repeated drawings are linked to the same original files. This means that when you modify, repaint or correct a drawing named "1," all drawings named "1" are updated simultaneously. In order to modify a drawing independently from its other exposures, you must duplicate the drawing.

## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns](#) on the previous page
- [Layer Types](#) below
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417
- [Duplicating a Drawing](#) on page 447

## Layer Types

There are several types of layers that you can add in the Timeline view. Some layers are not represented the same way in the Xsheet view.


- [Drawing Layer](#) on the facing page



- [Bitmap Layer](#) below
- [Camera Layer](#) below
- [Effect Layer](#) on the next page
- [Colour-Card Layer](#) on the next page
- [Group Layer](#) on the next page
- [Peg Layer](#) on page 395
- [Quadmap Layer](#) on page 395
- [Sound Layer](#) on page 396

## Drawing Layer



The most common layer type is the Drawing layer. Any time you need to create a vector drawing or import a symbol, you can use a Drawing layer. In the Timeline view, the drawing layer is tagged with the Drawing  icon.




Bitmap images are contained in Bitmap layers.

## Bitmap Layer




If you import picture or bitmap images in your project, they are inserted in a Bitmap layer. If you choose to vectorize your image when you import, the Bitmap object will be placed on a Drawing layer. This way, you can have bitmap images mixed with vector drawings on a Drawing layer.

When importing a bitmap image, you have the option of encapsulating the image in a symbol. If you place a non-vectorized bitmap into a symbol, you still will not be able to mix vector drawings with it on the same layer. If you place a vectorized bitmap in a symbol, you must enter the symbol to be able to mix it with vector artwork.

In the Timeline view, the Bitmap layer is tagged with the Bitmap  icon.

## Camera Layer

You can only have one Camera layer at a time in your timeline. By default, there is no Camera layer when you create a scene. You need to add a Camera layer when you want to create a camera motion.

In the Timeline view, the camera layer is tagged with the Camera  icon.




The Camera layer is not visible in the Xsheet view.

---

## Effect Layer



To enhance the look of your scene, you can add effect layers and attach your drawings to them. In Toon Boom Animate Pro, there is a series of effect modules in the Module Library view.

In the Timeline view, the Effect layer is tagged with the Effect  icon.

In the Xsheet view, you can see the Effect's parameter columns in the Functions section when you select the Effect layer in the Timeline view.




If you want to have several cameras with different settings, you can keep adding Camera layers in your Timeline view (however, only one will ever be visible at a time as you can only have one Camera at a time in your timeline). To switch between the camera available, select **Scene > Camera > select the desired camera**.

---

## Colour-Card Layer



The Colour-Card layer is used to add plain colour background to your scene. By default, your scene has no background colour and if you render it out as a QuickTime movie or image sequence it will have a black background.

In the Timeline view, the Colour-Card layer is tagged with the Effect  icon.

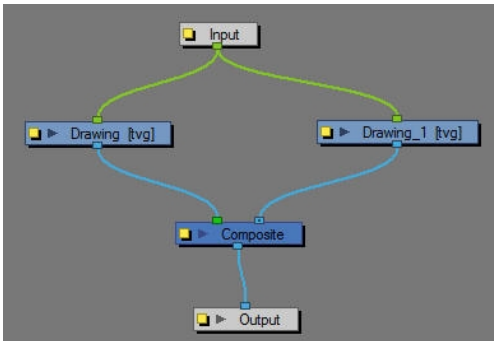
The Colour-Card layer is not visible in the Xsheet view.

## Group Layer



A Group layer can be used to better organize both the Timeline and Network views. You can drag and drop other layers onto a Group layer and then collapse the Group layer to hide these other layers from view.


If you create the Group layer in the Timeline, a corresponding module will appear in the Network view. Any layers that you hook to the Group layer will appear in Group module hooked to an Input and Output port.



## Peg Layer



A Peg layer can be described as a trajectory or motion path layer that does not contain drawings. This can be attached to any drawing layer, cut-out puppet or other peg layers, they will all follow the trajectory you set in the Peg layer.


In the Timeline view, the Peg layer is tagged with the Peg  icon.

In the Xsheet view, you can see the Peg's function columns in the Functions section when you select the Peg layer in the Timeline view.

## Quadmap Layer



A Quadmap layer can be described as a deformation transformation layer that does not contain drawings. This can be attached to any drawing layer, cut-out puppet or even other peg layers they will all follow the deformation you set in the Quadmap layer.


In the Timeline view, the Quadmap layer is tagged with the Quadmap  icon.

In the Xsheet view, you can see the Quadmap's function columns in the Functions section when you select the Quadmap layer in the Timeline view.

## Sound Layer



You can import sound files to add dialog and sound effects to your project. The sound layer will be added to your Timeline and Xsheet view when you import a sound file in your scene.

In the Timeline view, the Sound layer is tagged with the Sound  icon.

In the Xsheet view, the Sound layer is a dark grey colour.

### Related Topics

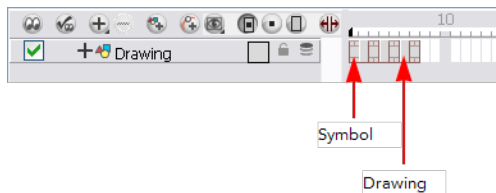
- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Advanced Column Types on page 1](#)

## Layer Content

There are two types of elements that can be inserted in a drawing layer's cell:

- Vector drawings
- Symbols

A layer can contain the two different elements, but only in different cells. You cannot put two symbols or a drawing and a symbol into the same cell.



If you want to mix bitmap images in your Drawing layers, you must first import your bitmap image as a symbol or turn it into a symbol and insert it in your Drawing layer by dragging the symbol cell there through the Timeline.



Refer to [What is a Symbol?](#) to learn more about symbols.

---

### Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Timing Columns on page 1](#)

- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Symbols](#) on page 654

## Adding New Drawing Layers

In this section, you will learn the different ways to add a drawing layer to your project. By default, when you create a new scene there is one Drawing layer included in your Timeline view.

This topic is divided as follows:

- [Adding Drawing Layers in the Timeline View](#) below
- [Adding a Drawing Layer from the Top Menu](#) on the next page
- [Adding Drawing Columns in the Xsheet View](#) on the next page

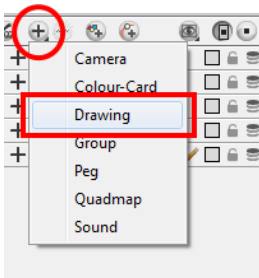
### Adding Drawing Layers in the Timeline View

You can add a new layer in the Timeline view in several different ways:

- Using the Layer toolbar
- Using the Add Layers dialog box
- Go to the Timeline view menu and select **Insert > Drawing**.

**To add a Drawing layer using the Timeline's Layer toolbar:**

1. In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, click the **Add Layers**  button or press [Ctrl] + [R] (Windows) or [⌘] + [R] (Mac OS X).
2. In the drop-down menu, select the **Drawing** option.



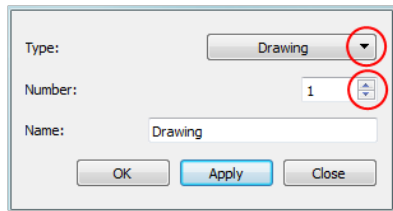
A new layer appears in the Timeline and Xsheet views.



You can also click on the Add Drawing Layer button in the Timeline's Layer toolbar or press [Ctrl] + [R] (Windows) or [⌘] + [R] (Mac OS X).

**To add drawing layers using the Add Layers dialog box:**

1. In the Timeline view's layer section, right-click and select **Insert > Add Layer(s)**.  
The Add Layers dialog box opens.



2. In the Type drop-down menu, select the **Drawing** option.
3. In the Number field, use the up and down arrows or type the number of layers you want to add at once.
4. In the Name field, type the name of the layer you want to add. If you are adding more than one layer at once, all of the layers use that name with a numerical suffix added.
5. To complete the operation:
  - ▶ Click **OK** to add your new layers and close the dialog box.
  - ▶ Click **Apply** to add your new layers and keep the dialog box open to add another layer.
  - ▶ Click **Close** to cancel the operation.

## Adding a Drawing Layer from the Top Menu


You can add a new layer from the top menu.

To add a new layer from the top menu:

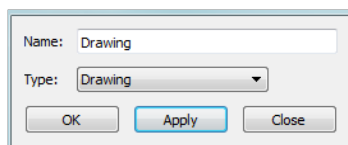
1. In the top menu, select **Insert > Drawing**.  
A new layer appears in the Timeline and Xsheet views.

## Adding Drawing Columns in the Xsheet View

To add a drawing column:

1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the Xsheet view, right-click and select **Columns > Add Column**.
  - ▶ In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Add Columns**  button or press [Shift] + [C].
  - ▶ To quickly add a Drawing column, press [Ctrl] + [R] (Windows) or [⌘] + [R] (Mac OS X).

The Add Columns dialog box opens.



2. In the Column Name field, name your column accordingly.
3. In the Column Type field, select **Drawing**.



Refer to the topic [Layer Types](#) on page 392 to know more about the different column types available.

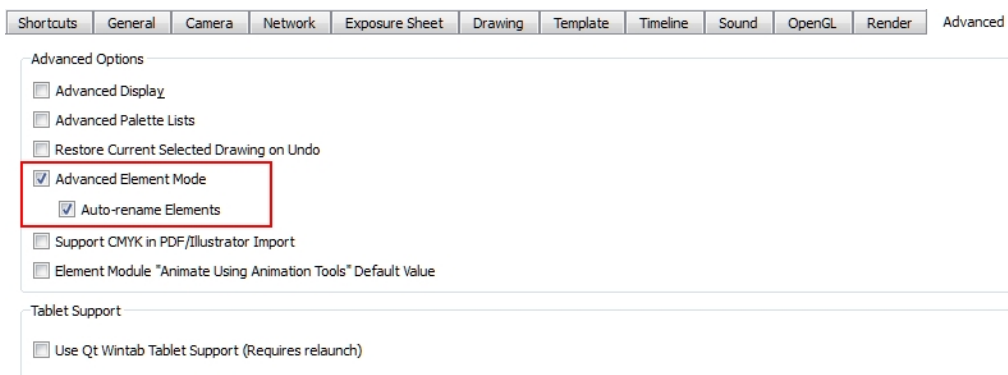
#### 4. To complete the operation:

- ▶ Click **OK** to add your new layers and close the dialog box.
- ▶ Click **Apply** to add your new layers and keep the dialog box open to add column.
- ▶ Click **Close** to cancel the operation.

In Animate Pro, you can use the advanced Add Column dialog box, with more file format and field size options, to insert the column.

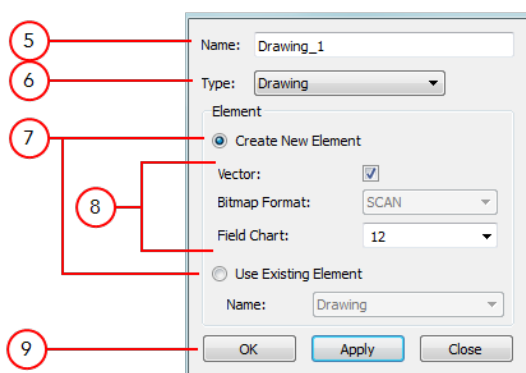
#### To create a column in Toon Boom Animate Pro using the advanced Add Column dialog box:

1. Select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences (Mac OS X)** and select the **Advanced** tab.
2. In the Advanced Options section, select the **Advanced Element Mode** option to access the advanced Add Column dialog box.



3. Click **OK**.
4. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Columns > Add Column** or press [Shift] + [C].

The Add Column dialog box opens.



5. In the Name field, type the new column's name.
6. In the Type drop-down menu, select the **Drawing** type.

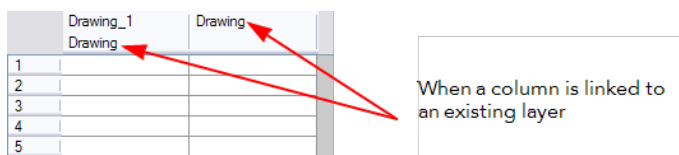
7. In the Element section select if you either want to create a new column or link the new column to an existing one:

- ▶ **Create New Element:** Select this option if you want your column to be an independent column with its own drawing folder.
- ▶ **Reuse Existing Folder:** Select this option if you want to link your column to an existing folder within the Element folder of your scene.

If you select the **Reuse Existing Folder** option, in the Folder drop-down field, select the folder to which you want to link your new column.

- ▶ **Use Existing Element:** Select this option if you want your column to use drawings from an existing column. Both columns will be attached to the same set of drawings, but their timing will remain independent from one another. If you modify one of the drawings, it will be modified in both columns. This is the same principle as the Clone column.

If you select the **Use Existing Element** option, in the Name drop-down field, select the column to which you want to link your new column.



8. If you select the **Create New Element** option:

- ▶ Deselect the **Vector** option if you want your layer to contain bitmap images or enable it if you want the layer to contain vector drawings. Most of the time, the **Vector** option will be enabled.
- ▶ If you deselected the **Vector** option, from the **Bitmap Format** drop-down list, select which type of bitmap image you wish to insert in the column. Select the **SCAN** type if you are planning to scan drawings using Toon Boom Animate Pro's scan module.
- ▶ If you deselected the **Vector** option and you chose the **SCAN** type, from the **Scan Type** drop-down, select what kind of scanning you wish to achieve.
- ▶ In the **Field Chart** field, when importing traditional animation, indicate the size of paper on which the animation or background was drawn. If you are not using perforated animation paper, leave the 12 field default value as is.

9. Do one of the following:

- ▶ Click **OK** button to create the new column and close the dialog box.
- ▶ Click **Apply** to create the new column but keep the dialog box opened to create other new columns.

## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Advanced Column Types on page 1](#)
- [Layer Content on page 396](#)
- [Adding New Drawing Layers on page 397](#)
- [Deleting Layers And Columns on the facing page](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns on page 411](#)




- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

## Deleting Layers And Columns

You can delete layers from your projects in two different locations:

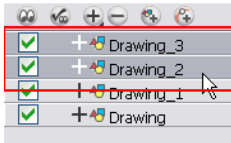
- Deleting a layer from the Timeline view
- Deleting a column from the Xsheet view


### Deleting a Layer from the Timeline View

There are two ways to delete a layer in the Timeline view, using the **Delete Layers**  button and via the quick access menu. This will also delete the associated modules from the Network view.

To delete layers in the Timeline view:

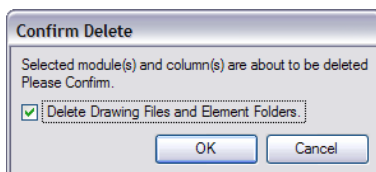
1. In the Timeline view, select the layers to be deleted.



2. In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, click the **Delete Layers**  button.


You can also right-click on the selection and select **Delete**.

The Confirm Delete dialog box opens.



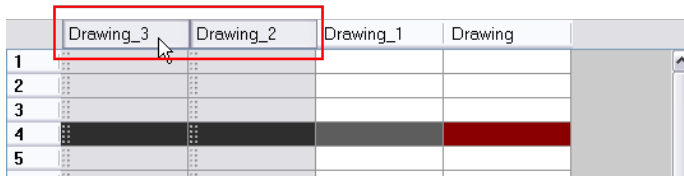
- Select the **Delete Drawing Files and Element Folders** option to delete all drawings and folder linked to this layer.
3. Select the **Delete Xsheet Columns** option if you also want to delete the existing column in the Xsheet view.

### Deleting a Column from the Xsheet View

There are two ways to delete a layer in the Xsheet view, using the **Delete Columns**  button and via the quick access menu.

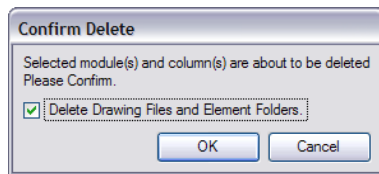
**To delete layers in the Xsheet view:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select the columns to be deleted by clicking on their header.

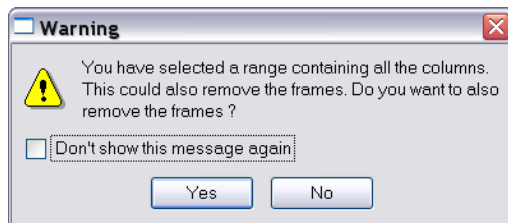


2. In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Delete Columns**  button. You can also right-click on the selection and select **Delete Columns** or press [Delete].

The Confirm Delete dialog box opens.



- ▶ Select the **Delete Drawing Files and Element Folder** option if you want to delete the drawings and folders linked to the selected column.
3. To complete the operation:
    - ▶ Click **OK** to delete the selected layers.
    - ▶ Click **Cancel** cancel the operation.



- ▶ Click **Yes** button delete all the frames from your scene.
- ▶ Click **No** button to keep the frames in your scene.
- ▶ Select the **Don't Show This Message Again** option if you do not want the dialog box to pop again in the future.

**Related Topics**

- [Layers and Columns](#) on page 391
- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) on page 391
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on the previous page
- [Modifying Layers](#) on the facing page
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411

- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

## Modifying Layers

Once you added layers to your project, you can modify their properties, name or ordering.

### Related Topics

- [Ordering Layers and Columns](#) below
- [Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View](#) on the next page
- [Showing and Hiding Columns](#) on page 406
- [Layer Properties](#) on page 409
- [Renaming Layers and Columns](#) on page 410

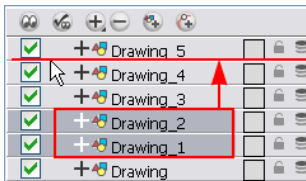
## Ordering Layers and Columns

You can change the order of your layers in the Timeline and Xsheet views. When you change the order of your layers in one of these views, the other one is updated.

### Reordering Layers in the Timeline View

To reorder layers in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layers to move.
2. Drag the selection to the new location and drop it in between the existing layers. Dropping the selection on an existing layer would create a hierarchy. Layers located on top of the Timeline view are displayed in front of the other ones. Layers located at the bottom are displayed behind.

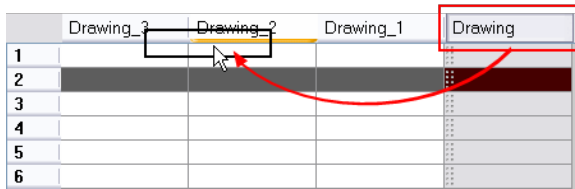


### Reordering Columns in the Xsheet View

You can reorder columns in the Xsheet view using the mouse's middle button.

To reorder columns in the Xsheet view:

- In the Xsheet view, click on the column's header with the middle mouse button and drag the column to its new position.





## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Modifying Layers on the previous page](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View below](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Columns on page 406](#)
- [Layer Properties on page 409](#)
- [Renaming Layers and Columns on page 410](#)


## Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View

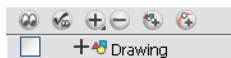
As you work in the Drawing or Camera view, some layers may be in the way or are used as references. You can hide these layers to make your work area easier and less cluttered. You can show and hide layers in the Timeline view in several different ways.

### To show or hide all layers in the Timeline view:

- ▶ In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, click the **Enable/Disable All**  button to show or hide all layers. You can also click the **Enable All**  button located in the Timeline view toolbar's extra buttons.



### To show or hide individual layers in the Timeline view:

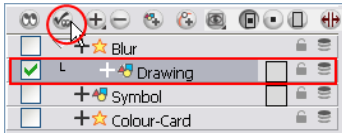
- ▶ In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, deselect the layer's checkbox to disable a particular layer. Select the layer's checkbox to enable a particular layer. You can also click the **Enable/Disable**  button located in the Timeline View toolbar's extra buttons.



When you disable a layer in the Timeline view, the corresponding column is hidden in the Xsheet view.

### To disable all layers but the selected one:

- ▶ In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, click the **Show Selection and Hide All Others**  button to show only the currently selected layer and disable all the other layers. You can also click the **Disable All Others**  button located in the Timeline View toolbar's extra buttons.

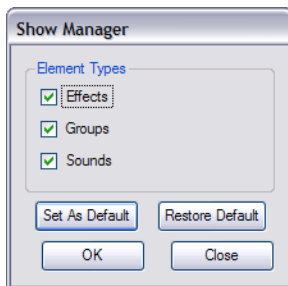


In the Timeline view, you can hide or show certain types of layers such as Group and Effect.

#### To show and hide layer types in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline View menu, select **View > Show > Show Manager**.
  - You can also select **View > Show > Show Sounds**, **Show Effects** or **Show Groups** to immediately show or hide the selected type. This option will remain only for the current session. Once the application is closed and reopened, the default settings will return.

The Show Manager dialog box opens.



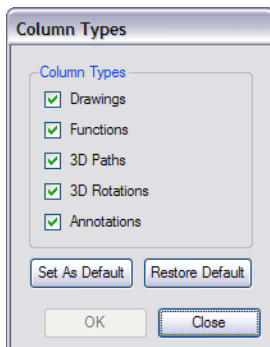
2. Select the types of layers you want to display and deselect the ones you want to turn off.
3. Click **Set As Default** to make these new settings the default ones that will be used each time to start the application. Click **Restore Default** to restore the settings used when installing the application.

In the Xsheet view, you have the choice of hiding or showing certain types of columns such as Annotation and Functions.

#### To show and hide layer types in the Timeline view:

1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **View > Column Types Manager**.

The Column Types dialog box opens.



2. Select the types of columns you want to display and disable the ones you want to hide.
3. Click **Set As Default** to make these new settings the default ones that will be used each time to start the application. Click **Restore Default** to restore the settings used when installing the application.

## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Columns below](#)
- [Layer Properties on page 409](#)
- [Renaming Layers and Columns on page 410](#)

## Showing and Hiding Columns




The Xsheet view has a Column List section that shows all the columns contained in the exposure sheet. It can be used to hide individual columns.

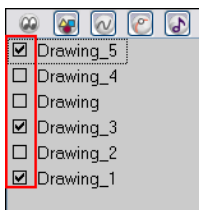
If you need to see a column after it has been hidden, you can display it directly from the Xsheet view without using the Column List section.

You can also hide an entire column type, such as Drawing or Sound.

When a column is hidden in the **Xsheet** view, the corresponding layer is disabled in the **Timeline** view.

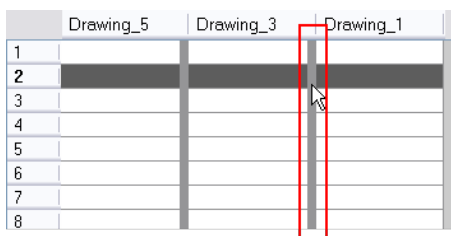
### To show and hide columns in the Xsheet view:

1. In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Show Column List**  button.
2. Click the **Expand**  button located on the right side of the Functions section to display the Column List section.
3. In the Column List section, show or hide the columns by clicking in the column checkbox to add or remove the check mark. You can also click the **Hide Selected Column**  button located in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.

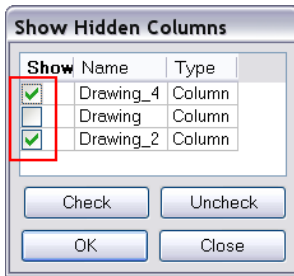


### To show a hidden column from the Xsheet view:

1. In the Xsheet view, click on the thick grey line that appeared in place of the hidden column. You can also right-click on the column header and select **Show Hidden Columns**.



The Show Hidden Columns dialog box opens.

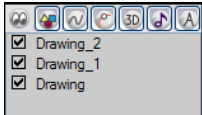









- In the Show column, enable the hidden columns you want to display in the Xsheet view.
  - Click **Check** to check all the selected columns.
  - Click **Uncheck** to uncheck all the selected columns.

In Toon Boom Animate Pro, in the Xsheet view menu, you can select **View > Unhide All Columns**.

### To hide and entire column type:

- In the Column List section, click the **Column Type** button corresponding to the type you want to show or hide.



- ▶ The **Show/Hide All Columns**  button shows or hides every column available in the **Xsheet** view.
- ▶ The **Show Drawing Columns**  button shows the Drawing columns.
- ▶ The **Show Function Columns**  button shows the Bezier and Ease function columns.
- ▶ The **Show 3D Path Columns**  button shows the 3D Path function columns.
- ▶ The **Show Sound Columns**  button shows the Drawing columns.
- ▶ The **Show 3D Rotation Columns**  button shows the 3D Rotation columns.
- ▶ The **Show Annotation Columns**  button shows the Annotation columns.

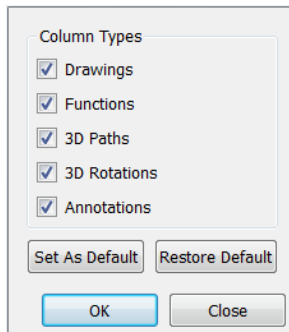
## Column Types Manager

As you work in Harmony Xsheet, some columns may be in the way or are used as references. You can hide these columns to make your work area easier and less cluttered. In the Xsheet view, you have the choice of hiding or showing certain types of columns, such as Annotation and Function.

### To show and hide column types:

- In the Xsheet View menu, select **View > Column Types Manager**.

The Column Types dialog box opens.



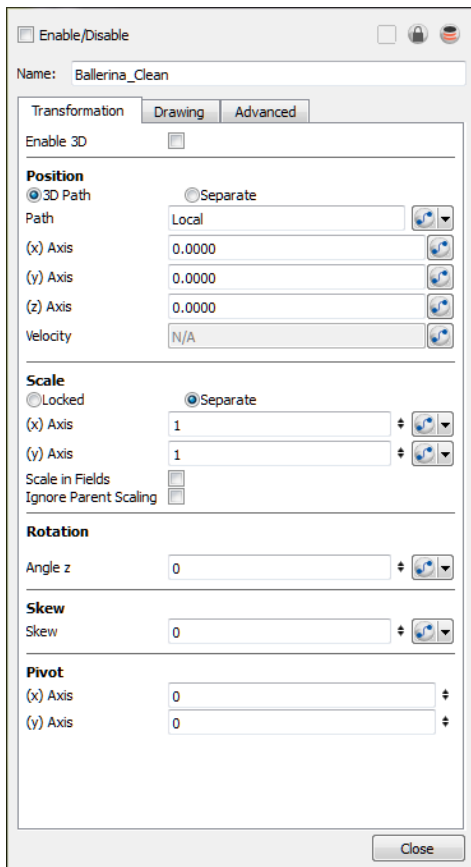
2. Select the types of columns you want to display and disable the ones you want to hide.
3. Click **Set As Default** to make these new settings the default ones used each time you start the application. Click **Restore Default** to restore the settings used when installing the application.

## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View on page 404](#)
- [Layer Properties on the facing page](#)
- [Renaming Layers and Columns on page 410](#)



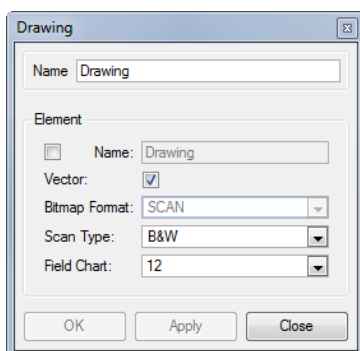
## Layer Properties



Each layer has its own set of properties that can be modified, including effect and peg layers.

Display the Layer Properties editor if you want to modify some of the layer's properties such as the name or the antialiasing quality. You can display the editor from the Timeline or Network view or open the Layer Properties as a view of its own.

The Xsheet column will not open the Layer Properties dialog box, it will show the Column Properties allowing you to modify settings related to the Xsheet column.



The Drawing Layer Properties editor allows you to:

- Rename the layer
- Enable or disable the layer

- Lock the layer
- Change the track colour
- Activate the onion skin preview
- Adjust the positioning and animation parameters
- Adjust many other advanced parameters

**To display the Layer Properties editor:**

1. Do one of the following:
  - In the Timeline view, double-click on a layer or press [Shift] + [E].
  - In the Network view, click on the module's yellow properties button.
  - In the top menu, select **Windows > Layer Properties**.
2. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the layer whose properties you want to view.

**To display the Column Properties Editor from the Xsheet view:**

1. In the **Xsheet** view, double-click on a column's header or press [Shift] + [E].

**Related Topics**

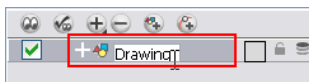
- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Layers From the Timeline View on page 404](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Columns on page 406](#)
- [Renaming Layers and Columns below](#)
- [Adding New Drawing Layers on page 397](#)

## Renaming Layers and Columns

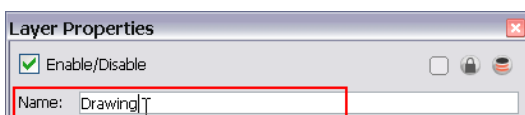
You can rename a layer in two different ways; in the Layer Properties editor or directly on the Timeline's layer.

**To rename a layer in the Timeline view:**

1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the name of the layer to rename.
2. In the Name field, rename the layer and press [Enter/Return] to validate the modifications.

**To rename a layer in the Layer Properties editor:**

1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the layer to rename.  
The Layer Properties editor opens.
2. In the Name field, rename the layer.

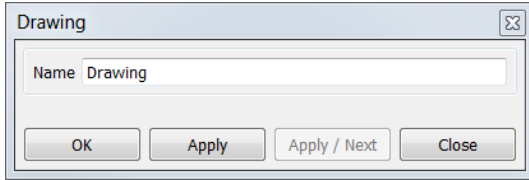


3. Click **Close**.

#### To rename a column:

1. In the Xsheet view, double-click on the column name to rename. Do not click on the drawing folder name that the column is linked to (this also appears in the column header just below the column name).

The Column Editor dialog box opens.



2. In the Name field, rename the column.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Click **Apply/Next** to apply the new name and open the editor for the following column.

#### Related Topics

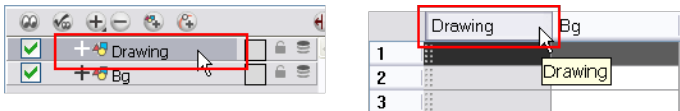
- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Modifying Layers on page 403](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Columns on page 406](#)

## Duplicating Layers and Columns

Duplicating a layer provides you with an independent copy of the drawings and their exposure. You can modify anything you want in the duplicated layer without affecting the original one. In the Network view, you can duplicate the selected modules in the same way.

#### To duplicate a layer:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, click the layer you want to duplicate.



2. Select **Edit > Duplicate** or click the **Duplicate Layer**  button in the Xsheet View toolbar and TimelineView toolbar.

*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Edit > Duplicate Selected Element**.*

The new duplicated layer or column appears.

#### Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Advanced Column Types on page 1](#)
- [Layer Content on page 396](#)

- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) below
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on the facing page
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on the facing page
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

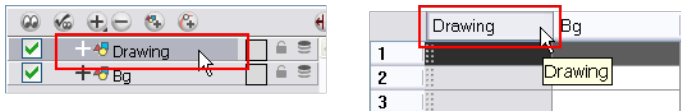
## Cloning Layers And Columns


Cloning a layer provides you with a copy of the selected layer that uses the same drawings as the original. If you modify a drawing in the cloned or original layer it is updated in both layers. You can modify the layers' timing independently one from the other, but the drawings remain linked. You can clone selected modules from the Network view in the same way.

This feature is useful when you want to reuse a hand-drawn animation but have different timings.

**To clone a layer:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, click on the layer you want to clone.



2. Select **Edit > Clone** or click the **Clone Layer**  button in the Xsheet View toolbar and Timeline View toolbar.

*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Edit > Clone Selected Columns**.*

The new cloned layer or column appears.

### Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns](#) on page 391
- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) on page 391
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on the previous page
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on the facing page
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on the facing page

- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

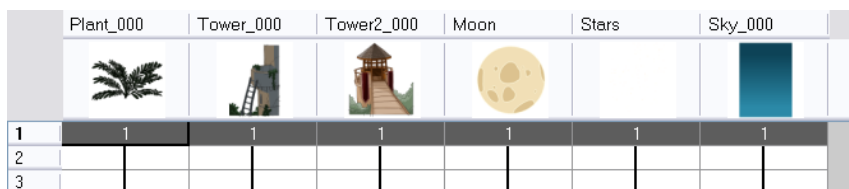
## Xsheet Thumbnails

When there are a large number of columns in the exposure sheet, it is not always easy to quickly identify a particular column. Displaying the column thumbnails makes this easier. This option displays a small thumbnail picture of the current frame below the column header.

**To display the thumbnails:**

1. In the Xsheet view, click the **Show Thumbnails**  button.

The thumbnails appear.



## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns](#) on page 391
- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) on page 391
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on the previous page
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) below
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

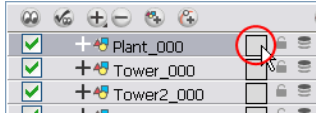
## Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column

To easily identify layers in your Timeline and Xsheet views, you can change their colour.

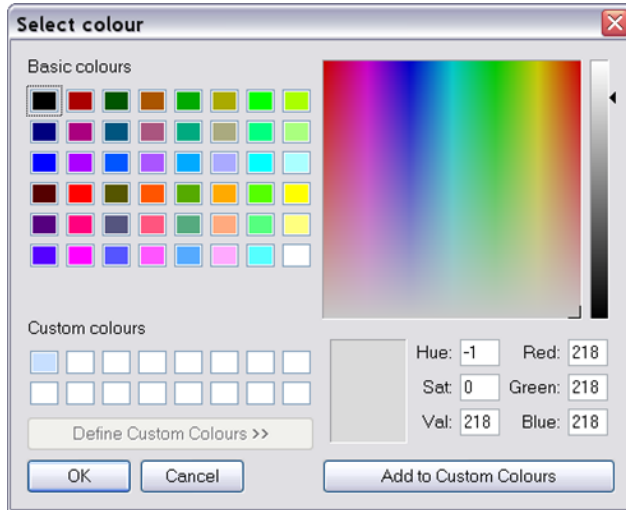
**To change the layer's colour in the Timeline view:**

1. Do one of the following:
  - In the Timeline view, click the colour swatch of the layer you want to modify.

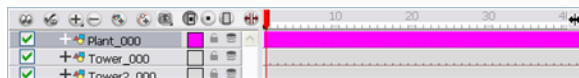
- ▶ Select a layer and click the **Change Track Colour**  button in the **Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons.




2. In the Colour Picker window, select a new colour for your layer and click OK.



The layer's colour is updated.

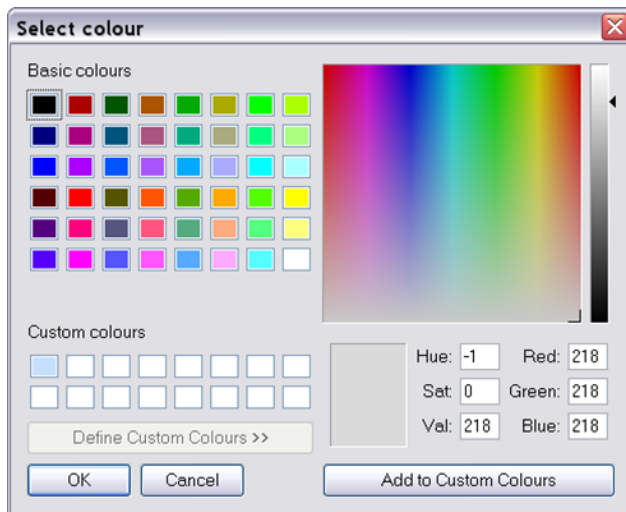


**To reset a layer's colour in the Timeline view:**

1. In the Timeline view, select the layers to reset and click the **Default Track Colour**  button in the **Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons.

**To change a column's colour in the Xsheet view:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select one or more columns to modify.
2. Right-click on the column's header and select **Colour > Change Columns Colour**.
3. In the Colour Picker window, select a new colour for your columns and click OK.



The column's colour is updated.



To reset the column's colour in the Xsheet view:

1. In the Xsheet view, select the columns to reset and right-click on the column's header and select **Colour > Default Columns Colour**.



## Related Topics

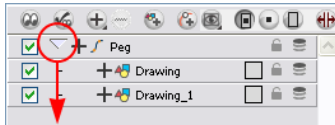
- [Layers and Columns](#) on page 391
- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) on page 391
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on the next page
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) on page 417

## Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns

To simplify the look of your Timeline and Xsheet view, you can collapse and expand your layers. If some layers are parented to other ones, you can collapse the parent layer to hide all of its children. You can also collapse 3D Path columns in the Xsheet view.

### To collapse/expand a layer selection in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layer(s) to collapse or expand.
2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Right-click on the selection and select **Collapse/Expand > Collapse/Expand**.
  - ▶ Click the **Expand Children Arrow**  button on the parent layer.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [I] (Windows) or [⌘] + [I] (Mac OS X).
  - ▶ Click the **Collapse/Expand**  button in the Timeline View toolbar's extra buttons.






### To collapse or expand all layers in the Timeline view:

Do one of the following:

- ▶ Right-click on the layers and select **Collapse/Expand > Expand All** or **Collapse All**.
- ▶ Press [0] and [9].
- ▶ Click the **Collapse All**  or **Expand All**  buttons in the **Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons.

### To collapse and expand 3D Path columns in the Xsheet view:

1. In the Xsheet view, display the Functions section by clicking the **Show Column List**  button.
2. In the Functions section, select the header of the **3D Path** column to collapse.
3. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Right-click on the column's header and select **Expand/Collapse > Collapse Selection**.
  - ▶ To expand a collapsed column, select the column's header, right-click on the selection and select **Expand/Collapse > Expand Selection**.
  - ▶ Click the **Collapse Selection**  or **Expand Selection**  buttons in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.

### To collapse or expand all 3D Path columns in the Xsheet view:

Do one of the following:

- ▶ Right-click on any column's header and select **Collapse/Expand > Expand All** or **Collapse All**.
- ▶ The [0] and [9].
- ▶ Click the **Collapse All**  or **Expand All**  buttons in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.



## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns](#) on page 391
- [Layer and Column Concepts](#) on page 391
- [Advanced Column Types](#) on page 1
- [Layer Content](#) on page 396
- [Adding New Drawing Layers](#) on page 397
- [Deleting Layers And Columns](#) on page 401
- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Modifying the Look of the Column](#) below
- 

## Modifying the Look of the Column

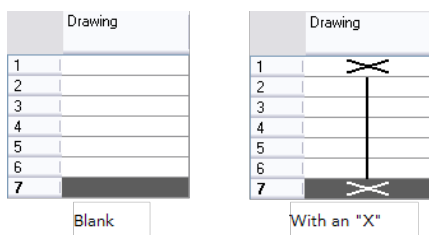
In Toon Boom Animate Pro 3, you can modify the way the column displays drawings, empty cells and the column width.

You can modify the following elements:

- Empty Cells
- Row Units
- Held Exposure
- Column Width

**To modify the look of an empty cells:**

- ▶ In the **Xsheet View** menu, select **View > Empty Cells > With an "X"** or **Blank**.



**To modify the row units:**

- ▶ In the **Xsheet View** menu, select **View > Row Units > Frames** or **Feet**.

Drawing	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	

Frames

Drawing	
0.1	
0.2	
0.3	
0.4	
0.5	
0.6	
0.7	

Feet

### To modify the held exposure's look:

- ▶ In the Xsheet View menu, select **View > Held Exposures > Line or Value**.

Drawing	
1	1
2	1
3	1
4	1
5	2
6	2
7	3

Line

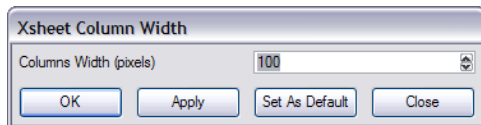
Drawing	
1	1
2	1
3	1
4	1
5	2
6	2
7	3

Value

### To modify the column's width:

1. In the Xsheet view, select any column to modify the width.
2. In the Xsheet view menu, select **View > Set Columns Width**.

The Xsheet Column Width dialog box opens.



3. In the Column Width field, type the desired width in pixel.
4. To end the operation:
  - ▶ Click on the **OK** button to validate and close the dialog box.
  - ▶ Click on the **Apply** button to validate the operation and keep the dialog box opened to adjust the next column's width.
  - ▶ Click on the **Set As Default** to create all the new columns to this width.
  - ▶ Click on the **Close** button to cancel the operation.
5. To restore all columns to the default value, in the Xsheet view menu, select **All Columns to Default Width**.

## Related Topics

- [Layers and Columns on page 391](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)
- [Advanced Column Types on page 1](#)
- [Layer Content on page 396](#)
- [Adding New Drawing Layers on page 397](#)
- [Deleting Layers And Columns on page 401](#)

- [Modifying Layers](#) on page 403
- [Duplicating Layers and Columns](#) on page 411
- [Cloning Layers And Columns](#) on page 412
- [Xsheet Thumbnails](#) on page 413
- [Changing the Colour of a Layer or Column](#) on page 413
- [Expanding and Collapsing Layers and Columns](#) on page 416

# Filling Exposure

Toon Boom Animate Pro provides different tools to fill-in exposures and values, create cycles, and set increments.

## Related Topics

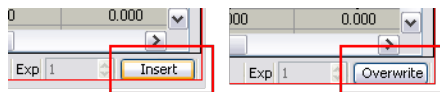
- [Filling Exposure Mode](#) below
- [Typing Exposure](#) on the facing page
- [Holding Exposure](#) on page 423
- [Extending a Single Exposure](#) on page 424
- [Extending an Exposure Sequence](#) on page 424
- [Dragging Cells](#) on page 425
- [Increasing and Decreasing Exposure](#) on page 428
- [Inserting Blank Cells](#) on page 432
- [Setting the Exposure](#) on page 433
- [Filling a Selection with a Single Exposure](#) on page 434
- [Filling a Selection with a Sequence](#) on page 435
- [Filling a Selection Randomly](#) on page 437
- [Creating Cycles](#) on page 438

## Filling Exposure Mode

In the Xsheet view, you can fill columns using two different filling modes: Overwrite or Insert. These modes control the filling behaviour. The Timeline view only uses the Overwrite mode.

To toggle between Overwrite and Insert modes:

- In the Xsheet view's right bottom corner, click the **Overwrite/Insert** button or press [I].



## Overwrite Mode

By default, the Xsheet view is set to Overwrite mode. Add a new value or a new value sequence overwrites existing ones. The existing timing sequence remains in the same place and is not pushed further down the column.

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	100
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	9
10	10
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	

## Insert Mode

The Insert mode is the opposite of the Overwrite mode. When you add a new value or a new value sequence over existing ones, the new values are inserted between the old ones. The existing timing sequence is pushed down the column.

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	100
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7
9	8
10	9
11	10
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	

## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on the previous page](#)
- [Filling Exposure Mode on the previous page](#)

## Typing Exposure

To fill in your exposure, you can directly type the values in the Xsheet and Timeline views.

- [Typing a Value in the Timeline View below](#)
- [Typing a Value in the Xsheet View on the next page](#)


## Typing a Value in the Timeline View

If you want to type an exact drawing name or value into the Timeline view, you must use the Data view section of the Timeline.



You can only use alphanumeric values. (0-9, a-z, underscore (\_) and dash (-)).

### To type a value in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, click the **Show Data View**  button.



2. In the Drawing Substitution field, type the name of the drawing you want to create, and press [Enter/Return].

## Typing a Value in the Xsheet View

To enter a value in a column's cell, double-click in the cell and type the numbers or letters.

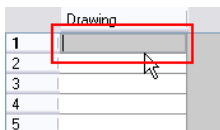


You can only use alphanumeric values. (0-9, a-z, underscore (\_) and dash (-)).

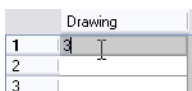
- Press [Enter/Return] to move on to the next cell.
- Press [Esc] to exit the typing mode and return to normal mode.

### To type values in the Xsheet view:

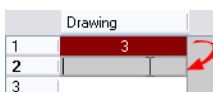
1. In an Xsheet column, double-click on one cell.



2. Type a value or drawing name in the cell.



3. Press [Enter/Return] to move on to the next cell.



4. Press [Esc] to quit the typing mode.

Drawing	
1	3
2	
3	

## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

# Holding Exposure

Drawings in an animation are not always exposed on a single frame, they are often exposed for more than one frame. The most common exposure of a drawing is two frames. In the industry, this type of exposure is known as animation in double frames. A drawing can also be exposed for three, four, five cells and so on. To prevent mistakes and to save time, the Xsheet lets you hold your cells automatically as you type.

The Xsheet's Set Exposure option allows you to choose how many frames you want to hold your exposure for.



- This option is only available in the **Xsheet** view.
- The selected **Set Exposure**, the settings will be kept from session to session. You will not have to set them every time you use Toon Boom Animate Pro

## To hold exposure:

1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Exposure > Hold 2 Cells**.
2. Right-click the Xsheet view and select **Exposure > Set Exposure To > Set Exposure to 1, 2, 3, or Set Exposure**.

*In the Harmony Xsheet, select **Option > Hold 2 Cells**.*

3. Type a value or drawing name in the cell.
  - Press [Enter/Return] to move on to the next cell.
  - Press [Esc] to quit the typing mode.

Drawing	
1	3
2	
3	
4	
5	4
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

- If you selected Set Exposure, the Set Exposure dialog box opens. You can hold as many cells as needed.

Set Exposure to:

OK Cancel



## Related Topics

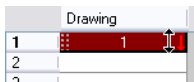
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

## Extending a Single Exposure

The **Extend Exposure** feature allows you to select an **Xsheet**'s cell containing a value and to pull it down to the desired frame.

To extend a cell exposure:

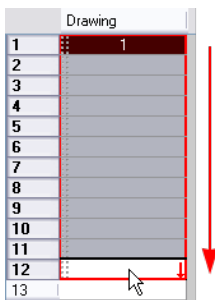
1. In the Xsheet view, select the red arrow  in the cell's right side. Make sure to see the drag down  cursor.



2. Pull down the selected cell to the desired frame.



The red selection box must be visible when releasing the mouse button. If it is not visible, the action is considered cancelled.



## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

## Extending an Exposure Sequence

You can extend and create a sequence using almost the same procedure as you would when you extend a single exposure. The only differences being that the selected cell must only contain numbers and that you need to press the [Shift] key while pulling down on the selection.

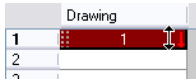


The creation of the sequence only works with numbers in the selected cell, not letters.

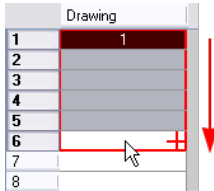


**To create a sequence:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select a cell containing a number.
2. In the selected cell, click on the red arrow on the cell's right side. Make sure to see the drag down cursor.

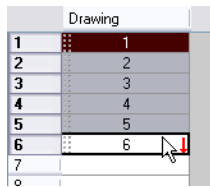


3. Hold down the [Shift] key. Make sure a plus (+) sign appears.
4. Pull down the selection box to the desired frame.



The red selection box must be visible when releasing the mouse button. If it is not visible, the action is considered as cancelled.

5. First release the [Shift] key, then release the mouse button.



You can also select a cell and select **Animation > Cell > Extend Exposure** or press [F5]. In the dialog box, type the frame number you want to extend the cell to.

**Related Topics**

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

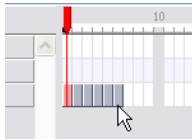
## Dragging Cells

To readjust your timing, you can drag one or several cells to a new location in both the Timeline and Xsheet views.

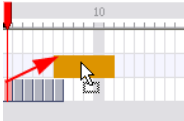
You can drag a cell to any other frame in the same column or into another column.

**To drag a cell to another location in the Timeline view:**

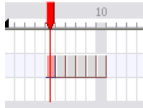
1. In the Timeline view, select one or several cells to move.



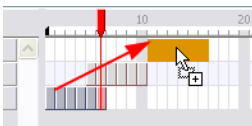
2. Click on the cells selection and drag it to the new location.



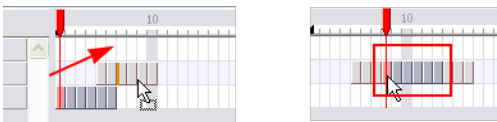
- If you drop the selection, it overwrites the existing cells.



- If you hold [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) while dropping the selection, the cells are copied and not moved.




- If you press [Shift] while dropping, the selection is inserted between the existing frames.



### To drag a cell to another location in the Xsheet view:

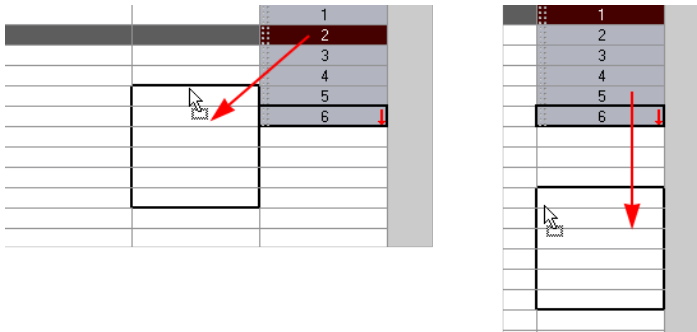
1. In the Xsheet view, select one or more cells.

	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1			1
2			2
3			3
4			4
5			5
6			6
7			
8			
9			

2. In the Xsheet view, select the small dotted area  on the left side of the selected cells.

	Drawing
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6

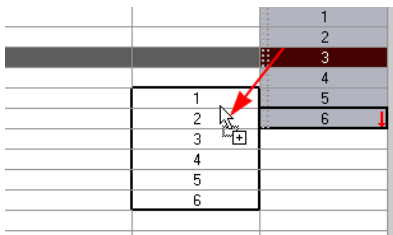
3. Drag the selection to any other cell in the same column or in another column.



- ▶ If you drop the selection, it overwrites the existing cells.

	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		1	
6		2	
7		3	
8		4	
9		5	
10		6	
11		11	
12		12	
13		13	
14			

- ▶ If you hold [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) while dropping the selection, the cells are copied and not moved.



- ▶ If you press [Shift] while dropping, the selection is inserted between the existing frames.

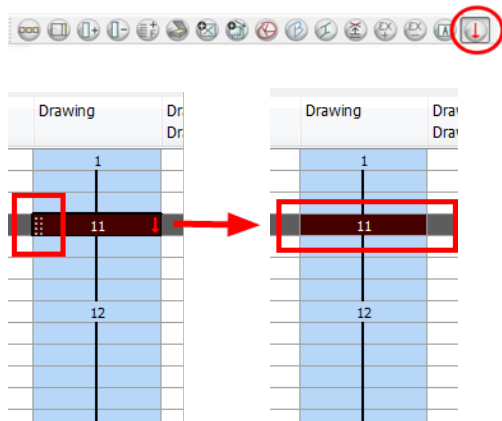
	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	
8		1	
9		2	
10		3	
11		4	
12		5	
13		6	
14		8	
15		9	
16		10	
17		11	
18		12	
19		13	
--			

You can turn off the Gestural Drag Mode for the Xsheet view to prevent drawings from being dragged from one location to another. A Toggle Gestural Drag Mode button is available for this feature, accessible by customizing the Xsheet View toolbar. Otherwise, access it by right-clicking on a cell or the Xsheet's Edit menu.

#### To turn off the Gestural Drag mode:

- ▶ In the **Xsheet** view, right-click and deselect the **Gestural Drag Mode** option.

- ▶ You can also customize the Xsheet View toolbar and display the **Toggle Gestural Drag** mode button to enable and disable this option.



The dragging pad disappears when the Gestural Drag mode is off.



This feature does not apply for Annotation columns.

## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

# Increasing and Decreasing Exposure

Once a value is entered in the Timeline or Xsheet view, you can increase and decrease its exposure.

## Related Topics

- [Increasing Exposure below](#)
- [Decreasing Exposure on the facing page](#)
- [Increase/Decrease Exposure Field on page 430](#)
- [Clear Exposure and Pull on page 430](#)


## Increasing Exposure

Increasing the exposure adds one more exposure to a selected cell, repeating this action adds an extra cell every time. This is a quick way of extending a drawing exposure and is always set in the Insert mode. Increasing an exposure always pushes the existing exposure down.

### To use Increase Exposure:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a cell.



2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Increase Exposure**.
  - ▶ Right-click on the selected cell and select **Exposure > Increase Exposure**.
  - ▶ Press [+].
  - ▶ *In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Increase Exposure**.*
  - ▶ Click the **Increase Exposure**  button in the Xsheet View and Timeline View toolbars' extra buttons.
3. Repeat this action to add more cells to your drawing's exposure.

## Related Topics

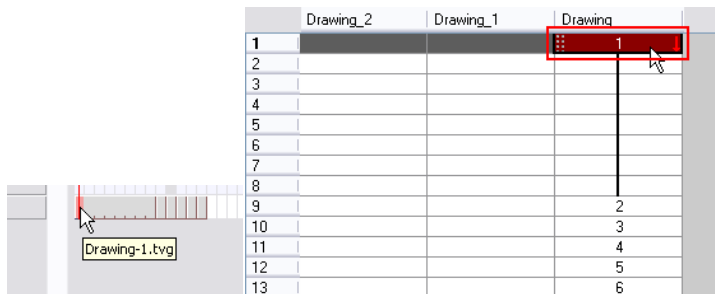
- [Decreasing Exposure below](#)
- [Increase/Decrease Exposure Field on the next page](#)


## Decreasing Exposure

Decreasing the exposure removes one exposure from a selected cell. Repeating this action removes an extra cell every time. This is a rapid way to reduce a drawing exposure and remove the exposed drawing.

### To decrease exposure:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a cell.



2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Decrease Exposure**.
  - ▶ Right-click on the selected cell and select **Exposure > Decrease Exposure**.
  - ▶ Press [-].
  - ▶ *In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Decrease Exposure**.*
  - ▶ Click the **Increase Exposure**  button in the Xsheet View and Timeline View toolbars' extra buttons.
3. Repeat this action to decrease more cells to your drawing's exposure.

## Related Topics

- [Increasing and Decreasing Exposure on page 428](#)
- [Clear Exposure and Pull below](#)

## Increase/Decrease Exposure Field

Another technique you can use to quickly increase or decrease the exposure of a selected drawing is by making use of the Increase/Decrease Exposure field available in the Xsheet view.

**To increase and decrease exposure using the Increase/Decrease Exposure field:**

1. In the Xsheet view, select the cell to modify.

	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1			1
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			2
10			3
11			4
12			5
13			6

2. In the Xsheet's bottom-right corner, increase or decrease the drawing's exposure by clicking the up or down arrows. To increase the exposure, press [+]. To decrease the exposure, press [-].

	Drawing_2	Drawing_1	Drawing
1			1
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			2
10			3
11			4
12			5
13			6

Current: 1 : Drawing    Exp. 8    Overwrite

Click on the small arrows here to increase or decrease the drawing's exposure

## Related Topics

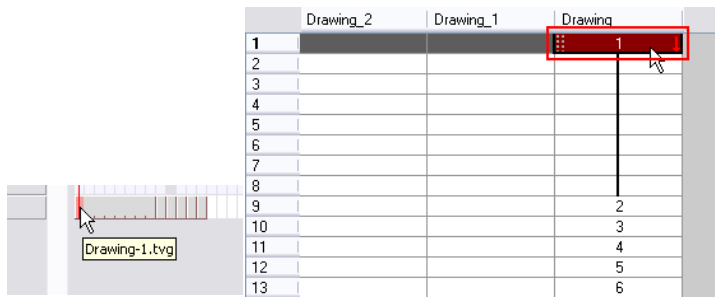
- [Increasing and Decreasing Exposure on page 428](#)
- [Decreasing Exposure on the previous page](#)
- [Clear Exposure and Pull below](#)


## Clear Exposure and Pull

You can reduce a drawing's exposure using the Clear Exposure and Pull option.

**To use the Clear Exposure and Pull feature:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a cell.



2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Clear Exposure and Pull**.
  - ▶ Right-click on the selected cell and select **Exposure > Clear Exposure and Pull**.
  - ▶ *In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Clear Exposure and Pull**.*
  - ▶ Click the **Clear Exposure**  button in the Xsheet View and Timeline View toolbars' extra buttons.
  - ▶ Press [Z].

## Related Topics

- [Increasing and Decreasing Exposure on page 428](#)

# Deleting Exposure


You can delete a drawing's exposure in several simple ways. Note that when you delete a drawing's exposure from the Timeline or Xsheet view, you are not deleting the actual drawing file. You can always bring it back by typing its name again in a cell.

You can delete the exposure contained in a selected cell range or delete the entire exposure of a drawing exposed over several cells. Note that you can also delete the exposure for drawings contained inside a collapsed group.

### To delete selected exposures:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the exposure you want to delete.
2. Right-click on the selection and select **Delete** or press [Delete].

### To completely clear the exposure of a drawing:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a cell of a drawing exposed over several cells.
2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Clear Exposure**.
  - ▶ In the Timeline view, right-click on the selection and select **Exposure > Clear Exposure**.
  - ▶ Click the **Clear Exposure**  button in the **Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons.

## Related Topics

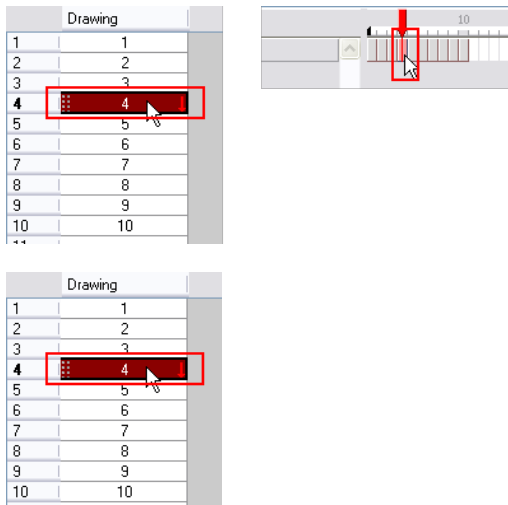
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)
- [Layer and Column Concepts on page 391](#)

# Inserting Blank Cells


Use the Insert Blank Cell option to place an empty cell between other cells. This is always done in Insert mode and pushes down existing exposure, even if you are set to Overwrite mode.

## To insert blank cells:

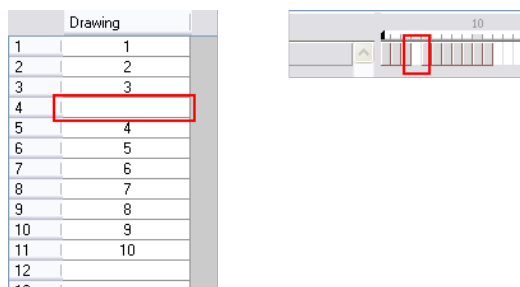
1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want to insert a blank cell.



2. Do one of the following:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Insert Blank Cell**.
- ▶ In *Harmony Xsheet*, select **Selected > Insert Blank Cell**.
- ▶ Right-click on the selected cell and select **Exposure > Insert Blank Cell**.
- ▶ Press [Shift] + [J].
- ▶ Click the **Insert Blank Cell**  button in the **Timeline View** and **Xsheet View** toolbars' extra buttons.

The blank cell is inserted.



## To clear a selected cell range without changing the exposure and timing:

1. In the Xsheet view, select the frame range to clear.



Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	

- Right-click on the selected cells and select **Clear**.

Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	3
10	4
11	5
12	6
13	7
14	8
15	9
16	10
17	

## Related Topics

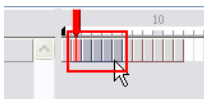
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

# Setting the Exposure

You can easily increase or decrease the exposure for a selected cell range by using the Set Exposure options.

To use the Set Exposure options:

- In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell range that you want to set the exposure for.



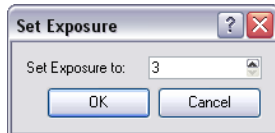
Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	
14	

- In the top menu, select one of the following:
  - **Animation > Cell > Set Exposure > Set Exposure to 1**
  - **Animation > Cell > Set Exposure > Set Exposure to 2**
  - **Animation > Cell > Set Exposure > Set Exposure to 3**
  - **Animation > Cell > Set Exposure**

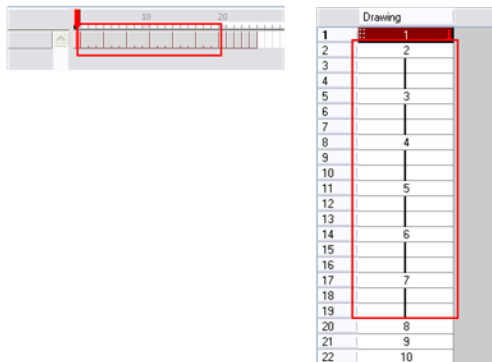
You can also click the **Set Exposure**     buttons in the **Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons.

3. In *Harmony Xsheet*, right-click and select **Exposure > Set Exposure** to and then select one of the following:
  - **Set Exposure to 1**
  - **Set Exposure to 2**
  - **Set Exposure to 3**
  - **Set Exposure**

If you choose the Set Exposure option, the Set Exposure dialog box opens.



4. Type the amount of frames you want the drawings to be displayed and click OK. The new timing is displayed in the Xsheet view.



## Related Topics

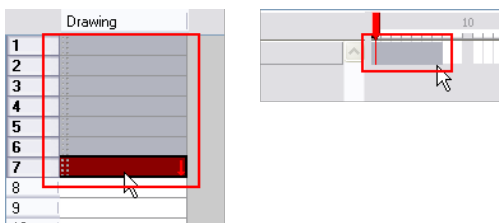
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

## Filling a Selection with a Single Exposure


The Fill Selection option is used to fill the same value all over a selection. The selection can be over one cell, a cell range in one column, a cell range over many columns, an entire column or many entire columns. You can use numbers, words, letters or any alphanumeric value.

### To use Fill Selection:

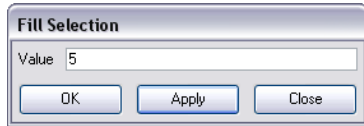
1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select a cell range.



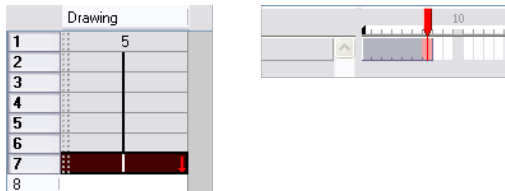
2. Do one of the following:

- ▶ Select **Animation > Cell > Fill Selection**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [T] (Windows) or [⌘] + [T] (Mac OS X).
- ▶ In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Fill Selection**.
- ▶ Click the **Fill Selection**  button in the **Xsheet View** and **Timeline View** toolbars' extra buttons.

The Fill Selection dialog box opens.



3. In the Value field, type the desired value and click OK.



## Related Topics

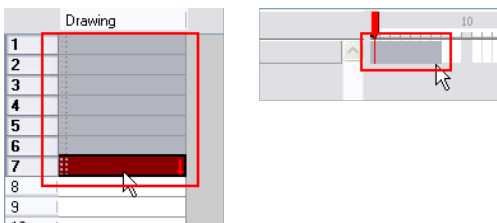
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)


## Filling a Selection with a Sequence

The Sequence Fill option is used to create a number sequence over a selection. The sequence can be forward, backward, single, double or higher increment, as a cycle, etc. The selection can be over one cell, a cell range in one or more columns, an entire column, or several entire columns.

**To fill a selection with a sequence:**

1. In the Xsheet or the Timeline view, select a cell range.



2. If you are working in the Xsheet view, select **Animation > Cell > Sequence Fill**. Click the **Sequence Fill**  button in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.

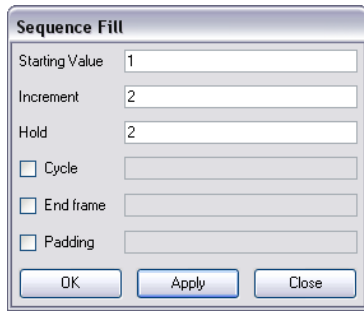
*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Sequence Fill**. You can also click on the **Sequence Fill**  button available in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.*

**OR**

If you are working in the **Timeline** view, right-click and select **Exposure > Sequence Fill**.

- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [M] (Windows) or [⌘] + [M] (Mac OS X).

The Sequence Fill dialog box opens.



3. In the Starting Value field, type the starting number for the number sequence.
4. In the Increment field, type the increment to which the number will change from frame to frame. (1-2-3-4, 1-3-5-7, 10-9-8-7-6-5-4-3-2-1). The value can be positive or negative.
5. In the Hold field, choose an exposure holding value.
6. Select the **Cycle** option if you want a cycle; type the number of cells for this cycle's duration.

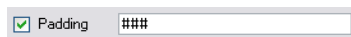


If you choose a two cell hold, a cycle of three drawings will last for six cells.

7. If you selected a larger range than the amount of frames needed, select the **End Frame** option and type the last frame needed.



8. If you want to have more than one digit in your numbers such as "001" instead of "1", select the **Padding** option and add as many pound signs (#) as digits needed. Also, you can type a letter or word in the field for it to be added in front of the drawing number.



9. Click OK.

	Drawing
1	mouth1
2	
3	mouth3
4	
5	mouth5
6	
7	mouth1
8	
9	mouth3
10	
11	mouth5
12	
13	mouth1
14	
15	mouth3
16	
17	mouth5
18	
19	mouth1
20	
21	

## Related Topics

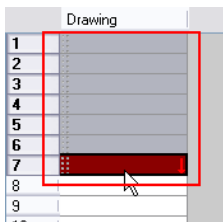
- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

# Filling a Selection Randomly

The Fill Cells Randomly option is used to fill in random values over a selection. You can give a maximum and a minimum value and create a range for the system to choose the random values from. The selection can be over one cell, a cell range in one column, a cell range over many columns or an entire column or several entire columns.


### To use Fill Cells Randomly:

1. In the Xsheet view, select a cell range.

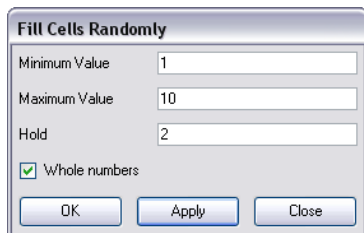


2. Select **Animation > Cell > Fill Cells Randomly**.

*In Harmony Xsheet, select **Selected > Cell > Fill Cells Randomly**.*

- ▶ You can also click on the **Fill Cells Randomly**  button available in the **Xsheet View** toolbar's extra buttons.

The **Fill Cells Randomly** dialog box opens.



3. In the Minimum Value field, type a minimum value.
4. In the Maximum Value field, type a maximum value.
5. In the **Hold** field, choose an exposure holding value.
6. If you are applying this option to a drawing column, enable the **Whole Numbers** option to avoid decimal points.
7. Click OK.

	Drawing
1	5
2	
3	3
4	
5	9
6	
7	2
8	
9	
10	
11	

## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

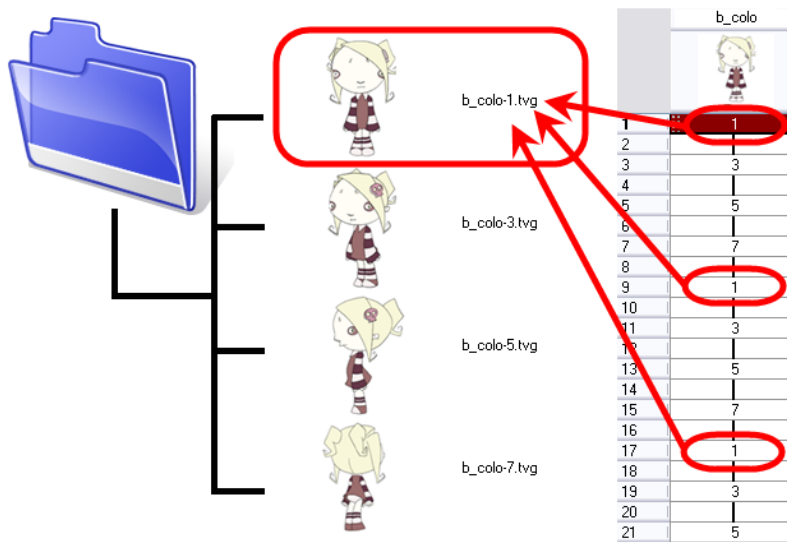
# Creating Cycles

Once you have entered a series of drawings and exposures, you can create cycles out of them in several ways.

You can loop your drawings using the following commands:

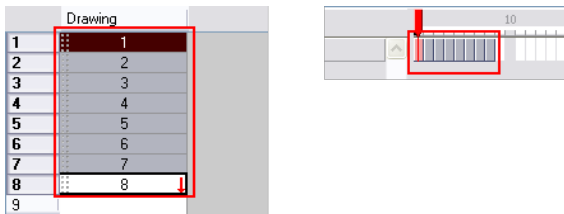
- Paste Cycle
- Paste Reverse
- Create Cycle

When you create a drawing cycle, all of the repeated drawings are linked to the same original files. This means that when you modify, repaint or correct a drawing named "1" all drawings named "1" are updated simultaneously. In order to modify a drawing independently from its other exposures, you must duplicate the drawing.

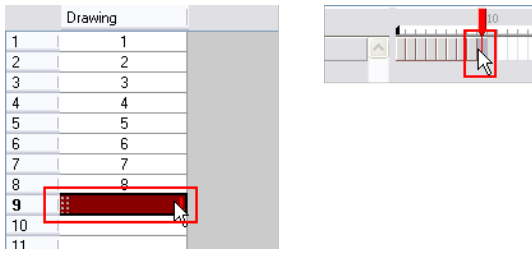


### To use the Paste Cycle command:

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range to loop.



2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.

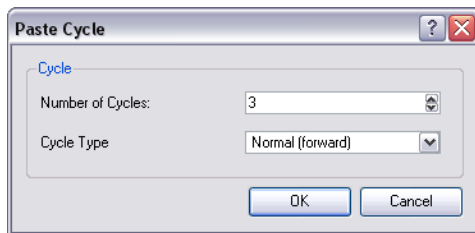


4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Cycle**.

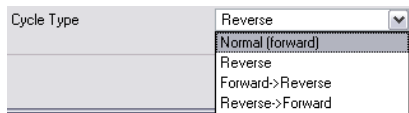
*In Harmony Xsheet, right-click and select **Paste Cycle**.*

- ▶ The [Ctrl] + [/] (Windows) or [⌘] + [/] (Mac OS X).

The Paste Cycle dialog box opens.



5. In the Number of Cycles field, use the up and down arrow to increase or decrease the amount of cycles you want to paste. You can also directly type the value.
6. In the Cycle Type drop-down menu, select the type of cycle you want to paste.

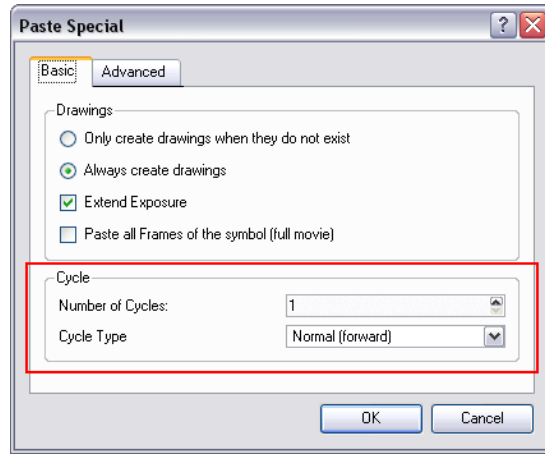


- ▶ **Normal (forward)**: Pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
- ▶ **Reverse**: Pastes your selection reversed, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
- ▶ **Forward -> Reverse**: Pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
- ▶ **Reverse -> Forward**: Pastes your selection as a reversed yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.

7. Click OK.

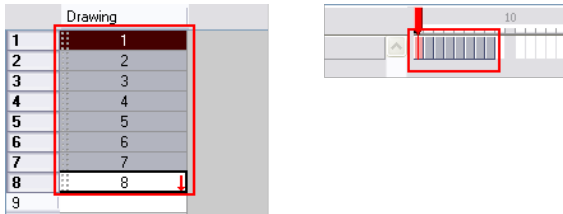


You can do the same operation using the Paste Special dialog box. To open the Paste Special dialog box, select **Edit > Paste Special** or press [Ctrl] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [B] (Mac OS X).

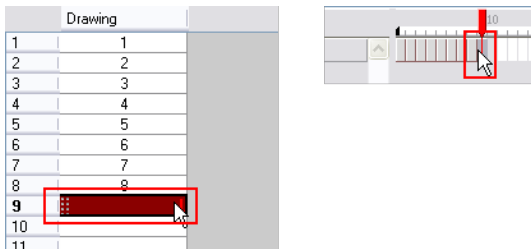


**To use the Paste Reverse command:**

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range to paste inverted.



2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.



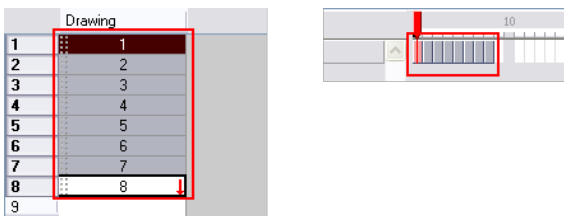
4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Reverse**.  
*In Harmony Xsheet, right-click and select **Paste Reverse**.*
  - Press [Ctrl] + [.] (Windows) or [⌘] + [.] (Mac OS X).



Drawing	
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	8
10	7
11	6
12	5
13	4
14	3
15	2
16	1
17	

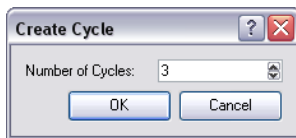
### To use the Create Cycle command:

1. In the Timeline view, select the cell range to loop.



2. In the Timeline View toolbar, click on the **Create Cycle**  button located in the toolbar's extra buttons.

The Create Cycle dialog box opens.



3. Enter the number of cycles you want, including the current selection.

## Related Topics

- [Filling Exposure on page 420](#)

# Navigating between Frames and Columns

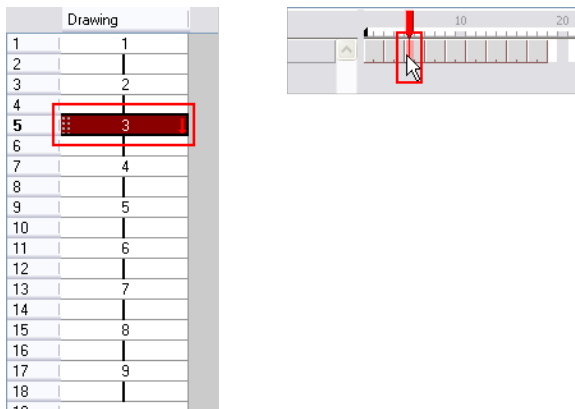
Once a cell is selected in the Timeline or Xsheet view, you can navigate between the layers, frames and drawings using keyboard shortcuts that are effective in the Camera, Drawing, Timeline and Xsheet view.

You can navigate through:

- Columns
- Drawings
- Frames

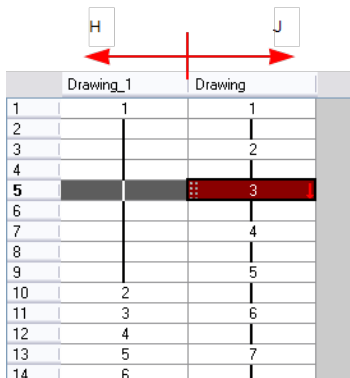
To navigate through the drawings, frames and columns:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a cell.

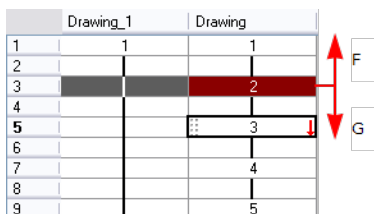


2. Once the cell is selected, you can navigate between:

- ▶ Previous and next layers from the top menu, you can select **Edit > Previous Layer** and **Next Layer**. You can also press [H] and [J].




- ▶ Previous and next drawings, from the top menu, select **Edit > Previous Drawing** and **Next Drawing** or **Drawing > Previous Drawing** and **Next Drawing**. You can also press [F] and [G].



- ▶ Previous and next frames, from the top menu, select **Play > Previous Frame** and **Next Frame**. You can also press [,] and [.] .

	Drawing_1	Drawing
1	1	1
2		
3		2
4		
5		3
6		
7		4
8		
9		5
10	2	



# Managing Drawings

Drawings that are created in Toon Boom Animate Pro are not encapsulated in their cells. They are actual files stored in the project's folder. If you want to rename a drawing or delete a drawing from your project, you need to edit the file and not the cells.



You also have the option of marking your drawing as Key, Breakdown and In-betweens—see [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261 to learn more about this feature.

## Related Topics

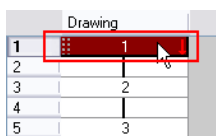
- [Renaming a Drawing](#) below
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position](#) on the facing page
- [Deleting a Drawing](#) on page 446
- [Duplicating a Drawing](#) on page 447
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings](#) on page 448
- [Drawing Identification](#) on page 261

## Renaming a Drawing



To rename a drawing, you do not type the new name in the cell. You need to select the cell containing the drawing and use the Rename Drawing command.

To rename a drawing:

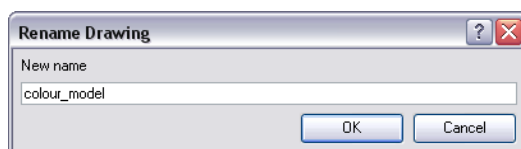
1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawing to rename.



2. Do one of the following:

- In Harmony Stage's top menu, select **Drawing > Rename Drawing** or press [Ctrl] + [D] (Windows) or [⌘] + [D] (Mac OS X).
- Click the **Rename Drawing**  button in the **Timeline View** or **Xsheet View** toolbars' extra buttons.
- *In Harmony Xsheet, use the **Rename Drawing**  button in the **Xsheet View** toolbars' extra buttons.*

The Rename Drawing dialog box opens.



3. In the New Name field, type the new drawing name.

## Related Topics

- [Managing Drawings on the previous page](#)
- [Renaming Drawings with a Prefix below](#)
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position below](#)
- [Deleting a Drawing on the next page](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing on page 447](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings on page 448](#)

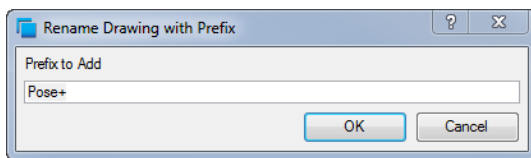
## Renaming Drawings with a Prefix

You have a the possibility to rename a drawing sequence with a prefix. This option can be quite useful for cut-out puppet breakdown and deformation animation.

To rename a drawing sequence with a prefix:

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select your drawing sequence. Note that you can only select a drawing range in one column or layer at the time.
2. Right-click and select **Drawings > Rename Drawing with Prefix**.

The Rename Drawing with Prefix dialog box opens.



3. In the Prefix to Add field, type the prefix you want to add before your drawing name.

## Related Topics

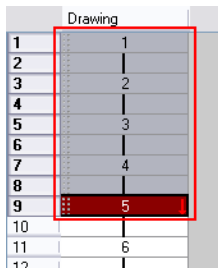
- [Managing Drawings on the previous page](#)
- [Renaming a Drawing on the previous page](#)
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position below](#)
- [Deleting a Drawing on the next page](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing on page 447](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings on page 448](#)
- [Deformation on page 777](#)
- [Character Building on page 681](#)

## Renaming Drawings by Frame Position

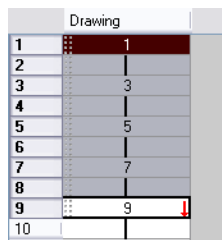
You can rename a series of drawings relative to their frame position. This is useful in hand-drawn animation.

**To rename drawings by their frame position:**

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the drawing sequence to be renamed.



2. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Rename by Frame**.

**Related Topics**

- [Managing Drawings on page 444](#)
- [Renaming a Drawing on page 444](#)
- [Renaming Drawings with a Prefix on the previous page](#)
- [Deleting a Drawing below](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing on the facing page](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings on page 448](#)

## Deleting a Drawing

To permanently delete a drawing file, select the drawing you want to delete and use the **Delete Selected Drawings** command.



Deleting a drawing file is an operation that cannot be undone.

---

**To delete a drawing:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawings to delete.

	Drawing
1	1
2	1
3	2
4	1
5	3
6	1
7	4
8	1
9	5
10	

- In the top menu, select **Drawing > Delete Selected Drawings**.

## Related Topics

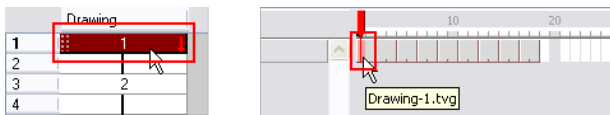
- [Managing Drawings on page 444](#)
- [Renaming a Drawing on page 444](#)
- [Renaming Drawings with a Prefix on page 445](#)
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position on page 445](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing below](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings on the next page](#)


## Duplicating a Drawing

If you want to modify a drawing that already exists, but keep the original drawing intact, you can duplicate the drawing and work on the copy. When duplicating a drawing, the selected cell is replaced with the new drawing. The exposure of the original drawing that was on the current cell is removed. The drawing is not deleted.

### To duplicate a drawing:

- In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawing to duplicate.



- In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Duplicate Drawing**  button.
- In Harmony Stage's top menu, select **Drawing > Duplicate Drawing** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [D].

	Drawing
1	14
2	
3	2
4	

With Toon Boom Animate Pro you can create a keyframe at the same time as you duplicate your drawing. This way you can modify and reposition your drawings without affecting the original drawing.

## Related Topics

- [Managing Drawings on page 444](#)
- [Renaming a Drawing on page 444](#)
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position on page 445](#)

- [Deleting a Drawing on page 446](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing on the previous page](#)
- [Copying and Pasting Drawings below](#)

## Copying and Pasting Drawings

When you copy and paste a selection in the Timeline or Xsheet view, you are not copying and pasting the actual drawings, you are pasting the exposure.

If you want to copy and paste the selected drawings into a different layer or paste the selection in the same layer to duplicate the drawings, you must use the Paste Special feature.

There are two main ways to paste your selected drawings with the Paste Special dialog box:

- **Always Create Drawings**

This option pastes all of your drawings as they are. If a drawing has the same name as an existing one, it is renamed and duplicated.

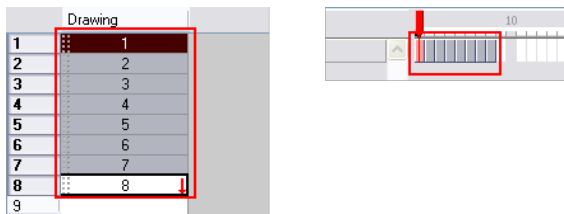
- **Only Create Drawings When They Do Not Exist**

This option only pastes only the drawings that are named differently from existing drawings. If a drawing has the same name as an existing one, it is ignored and not pasted. This avoids duplicating drawings in your layers.

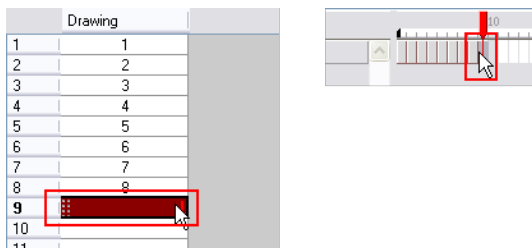
This option is useful when you are pasting cut-out character templates containing drawings you may already have in your scene and some new ones. Using this option, you only paste the new drawings and are not duplicating all of the other parts you already have.


To paste drawings with the Paste Special command:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the drawings to copy.



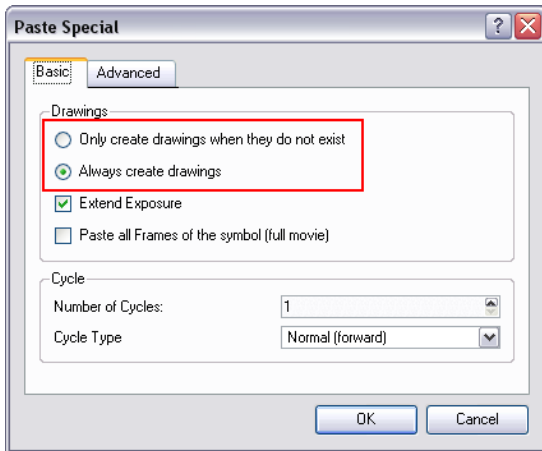
2. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell where you want your pasted selection to start.



3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Special** or press [Ctrl] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [B] (Mac OS X). You can also click the **Paste Special**  button in the Timeline View and Xsheet View toolbars' extra buttons.

The Paste Special dialog box opens.






4. Select the **Basic** tab.
5. In the Drawings section, select the **Always Create Drawings** or the **Only Create Drawings When They Do Not Exist** option depending on what you need.



If you want to perform another paste special operation using the same settings you used previously, you can use the Paste Special Again command instead of the Paste Special command. This feature paste your selection using the same settings you used in your last paste special without opening the Paste Special dialog box.

To use the Paste Special Again command, select **Edit > Paste Special Again** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [B] (Mac OS X). You can also click the **Paste Special Again**  button

in the Timeline View and Xsheet View toolbars' extra buttons.

## Related Topics

- [Managing Drawings on page 444](#)
- [Renaming a Drawing on page 444](#)
- [Renaming Drawings with a Prefix on page 445](#)
- [Renaming Drawings by Frame Position on page 445](#)
- [Deleting a Drawing on page 446](#)
- [Duplicating a Drawing on page 447](#)

# Tempo Markers

Tempo markers are used to synchronize your animation with a musical score. Using this feature, you can reproduce the FPB (Frames Per Beat) and the tempo signature as Tempo markers. The Xsheet view allows you to pace your animation according to the tempo or beat of your soundtrack music or to any rhythmical sound, such as the ticking of a clock or water leaking from a spout.

	Drawing	Limpa_Colour	01_Next_Exit
1	1	1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	
8		8	
9		9	
10		10	
11		11	
12		12	
13		13	
14		14	
15		15	
16		16	
17	2	17	
18	3	18	
19	4	19	
20	5	20	
21	6	21	
22	7	22	
23	8	23	
24	9	24	
25	10	25	
26	11	26	
27	12	27	
28	13		
29	14		
30	15		
31	16		
32	17		
33	18		

## To set the Tempo Markers:

1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **View > Set Tempo Marker**.

The Tempo Marker dialog box opens.

2. Reproduce the tempo and beat value of your music or sound for the Xsheet view marker display.
  - **Starting Frame:** Type the number of the frame where you want the tempo markers to begin.
  - **Frames/Beat:** Set the Frames Per Beat value. This will determine the frequency (in frames) a beat marker will appear. Keep in mind that, by default, 24 frames represent 1 second.
  - **Beat/Bar:** Set the Tempo of your music or sound. This will determine the frequency (in beats) a tempo marker will appear in the Xsheet view.
3. Click OK.

## Related Topics

- [Timing on page 375](#)

# Annotation Columns


The Annotation columns are a more than just a useful tool. They allow you to mark actions, corrections or any other information related to your animation that you would like to draw or write. This way, you can print your Xsheet, take it back to your animation table and work with the annotations.

## Related Topics

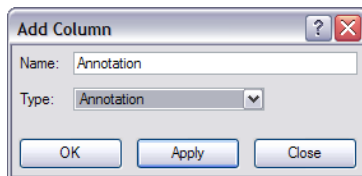
- [Adding an Annotation Column below](#)
- [Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column on the facing page](#)
- [Changing the Drawing Settings on page 456](#)
- [Importing an Annotation File on page 457](#)

## Adding an Annotation Column

To add an annotation column:

1. Do one of the following:
  - In the Xsheet View menu, select **Columns > Add Columns**.
  - In the Xsheet View toolbar, click the **Add Columns**  button.
  - Press [Shift] + [C].

The Add Columns dialog box opens.



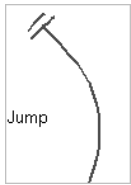
2. In the Column Name field, name your column accordingly.
3. In the Column Type field, select **Annotation**.
4. Click OK.

The new column appears.

## Related Topics

- [Annotation Columns above](#)
- [Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column on the facing page](#)
- [Changing the Drawing Settings on page 456](#)
- [Importing an Annotation File on page 457](#)

# Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column



In the annotation column, you can not only type in your notes and relevant information, but also draw sketches and ideas which will be useful in producing your animation.

- [Drawing in the Annotation Column](#) below
- [Typing in the Annotation Column](#) on the next page
- [Erasing Annotation Column Content](#) on the next page




## Drawing in the Annotation Column

Before you can draw in the annotation column, you must first activate the Enable Drawing option. Once this is done, you can start drawing using the mouse or the pen tablet.



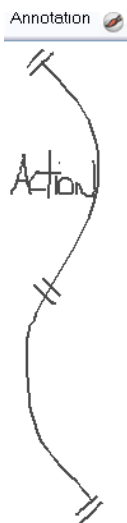
Pen tablet pressure sensitivity is not supported in the annotation column.

### To enable drawing in the annotation column:

1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Annotation > Enable Drawing**. You can also click on the column's header icon to toggle the Drawing, Selection and Erasing modes.
  - ▶ The Select  icon indicates that the Select mode is enabled.
  - ▶ The Brush  icon indicates that the Drawing mode is enabled.
  - ▶ The Eraser  icon indicates that the Erasing mode is enabled.

### To draw in the annotation column:

- ▶ To draw in an annotation column, simply use your mouse or pen tablet.

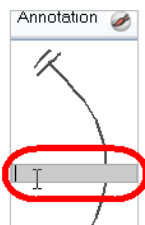


## Typing in the Annotation Column

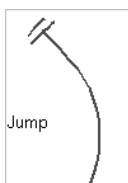
Typing in an annotation column is independent from the Drawing mode. You can be in either mode and the typing will work.

To type in an annotation column:

1. In the annotation column, press [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) on the cell where you want to write. By pressing [Ctrl] + [Shift] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + click (Mac OS X) in the annotation column, you will enter the editing mode in the cell at the current frame.



2. In the selected cell, type the desired text.



Refer to the topic [Typing Exposure on page 421](#) to get more information about typing values in the Xsheet view.

---

## Erasing Annotation Column Content

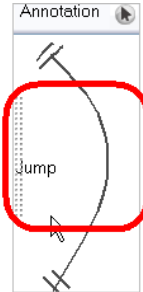
You can erase part or all of the annotation column's content.

**To erase the annotation content:**

- 1. In the Xsheet view, enable the **Erasing** mode by clicking on the mode icons.



- 2. In the Xsheet view, select the cell range you want to clear from text or images. Do not select any cells if you plan to clear everything.



- 3. In the Xsheet view, right-click in the annotation column and select:
  - ▶ **Annotation > Erase All** to erase completely the content of the column.
  - ▶ **Annotation > Erase Selected Images** to erase the images contained in the selected cell range. Make sure to disable the Drawing mode to do so.
  - ▶ **Annotation > Erase Selected Texts** to erase the text contained in the selected cell range. Make sure to disable the Drawing mode to do so.



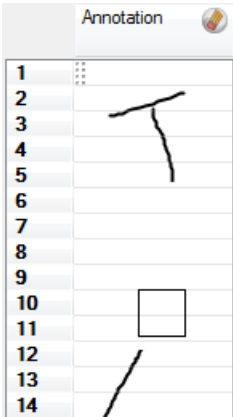
**Tip:** You can also use the Erasing mode to erase part of a drawn annotation.

**To erase part of a drawn annotation using Erasing mode:**

- 1. In the Annotation column's header, enable the **Erasing** mode.



- 2. In the column, click and drag the cursor on top of the drawn annotation to erase parts of it.





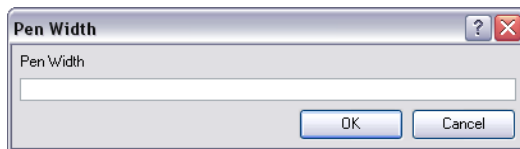
Annotations that you type in are not erased using this method.

## Changing the Drawing Settings

You can change the pen size and colour when you draw in the annotation column.

### To change the pen width:

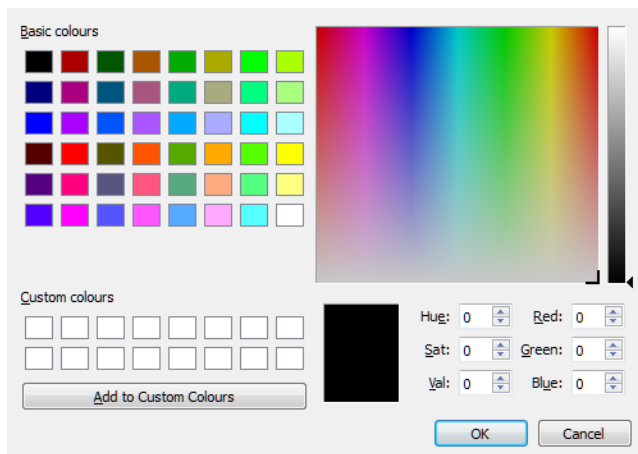
1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Annotation > Pen Width > 1, 2, 3, 4** or **Change Current**.  
If you selected the Change Current option, the Pen Width dialog box opens.



2. In the Pen Width field, type the amount of pixel you want the pen size to be.

### To change the pen colour:

1. In the Xsheet View menu, select **Annotation > Change Pen Colour**.  
The Select Colour dialog box opens.



2. Choose the new colour.

## Related Topics

- [Annotation Columns](#) on page 452
- [Adding an Annotation Column](#) on page 452
- [Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column](#) on page 453
- [Importing an Annotation File](#) on the facing page

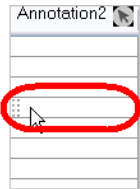


# Importing an Annotation File

If you scanned your paper exposure sheet's annotations or if you need to place some pictures or drawings in your annotation columns, you can easily import them.

## To import annotation files:

1. In the Xsheet view, select the first cell in the annotation column where you want the imported image to start.



2. In the Xsheet view menu, select **Annotation > Import File**.
3. Browse for the bitmap image to import.
4. Click **Open**.

The image appears in the annotation column.



## Related Topics

- [Annotation Columns on page 452](#)
- [Adding an Annotation Column on page 452](#)
- [Drawing and Typing in the Annotation Column on page 453](#)
- [Changing the Drawing Settings on the previous page](#)

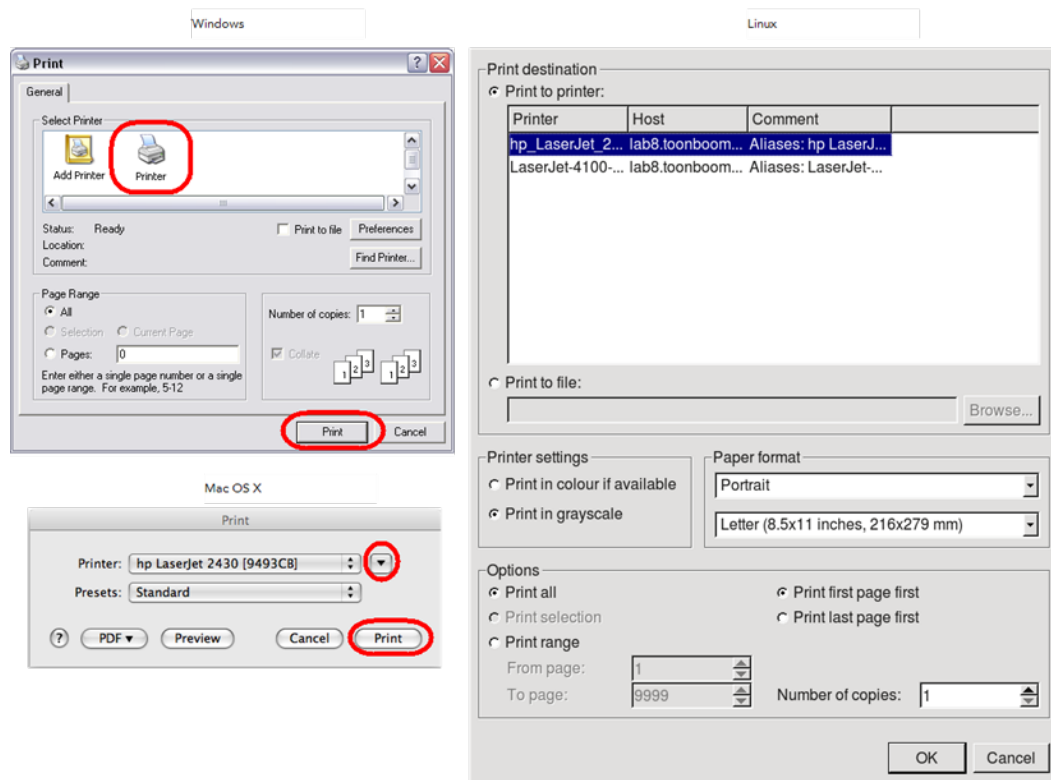
# Printing the Xsheet

Once your line test is completed and you have marked all the information, corrections and timing you want in your **Xsheet** view, you can print out your exposure sheet. Printing out the **Xsheet** allows you to take it with you to your animation table or to give a copy to the animator. You can also use it to create your **Xsheet** skeleton directly in Toon Boom Animate Pro.


## To print your exposure sheet:

1. Select **File > Print > Xsheet**.

The **Print** dialog box opens.



2. To setup your print:

- ▶ **Windows:** In the **Select Printer** section, select your printer and adjust the rest of the printing settings. Refer to the printer user guide to learn more about its options.
- ▶ **Linux:** In the **Print Destination** section, select your printer and adjust the rest of the printing settings. Refer to the printer user guide to learn more about its options.
- ▶ **Mac OS X:** In the **Printer** section, select your printer and adjust the rest of the settings by clicking on the Parameters  button. You can also click on the **PDF** button and select an option from the drop-down menu if you want to save a PDF version of your exposure sheet.



Refer to the printer user guide to learn more about its options.

3. Click on the **Print** button.

	A	B	C	D	Annotation
1	1	001	6	1	
2	2	001	6	1	
3	3	001	9	1	
4	4	001	9	1	
5	5	001	9	1	
6	6	001	9	1	
7	7	001	1	1	
8	8	001	1	1	
9	9	001	3	1	
10	10	001	3	1	
11	11	001	1	1	
12	12	001	1	1	
13	13	001	5	1	
14	14	001	5	1	
15	15	001	2	1	
16	16	001	2	1	
17	17	001	7	1	
18	18	001	7	1	
19	19	001	2	1	
20	20	001	2	1	
21	21	001	7	2	
22	22	001	7	3	
23	23	001	4	4	
24	24	001	4	5	
25	25	001	9	6	
26	26	001	9	7	
27	27	001	2	8	
28	28	001	2	9	
29	29	001	4	10	

## Related Topics

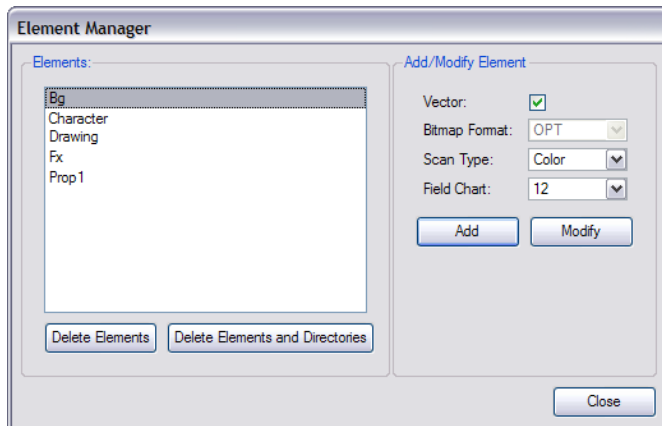
- [Timing on page 375](#)

# Element Manager

Use the **Element Manager** to add, delete or modify elements (drawing folders) in your scene. If you have drawing folders that are not linked to a column in your scene, use the **Element Manager** to delete them if need be.

To open the **Element Manager** dialog box:

- ▶ Select **Scene > Element Manager**.



- **Elements:** Displays a list of the elements contained in your scene.
- **Delete Elements:** Press this button to delete the selected elements.
- **Delete Elements and Directories:** Press this button to delete the selected layer, as well as its directories (drawing folder).
- **Add/Modify Element:** Use the options contained in this area to add or modify an element.
  - **Name:** Type a new name in this field to create an element or to rename the selected element.
  - **Vector:** Check this box if the new element is a vector drawing or if you want to enable the parameters on the selected element in the Elements list.
  - **Bitmap Format:** Select the file format of the bitmap layer from the drop-down list.
  - **Scan Type:** If you are planning to scan elements with Toon Boom Animate Pro's Scan module, select the scan type from the drop-down list.
  - **Field Chart:** If you are importing traditional animation, select the size of the paper on which the animation was drawn.
- **Add:** Press this button to create a new element with the current parameters entered in the **Add/Modify Element** section.
- **Modify:** Press this button to apply the parameter changes made to the selected element.

## Related Topics

- [Timing on page 375](#)

# Timing Preferences

When adjusting your timing in the **Timeline** and **Xsheet** view, you may want to set some preferences.

This section covers the preferences related to timing, **Timeline** and **Xsheet** view.



The preferences related to Harmony Xsheet can be found under the **Exposure Sheet** tab only.

---

You will find the preferences listed under the following tabs:

- **Exposure Sheet**
- **Timeline**
- **Advanced**

To open the Preferences panel:

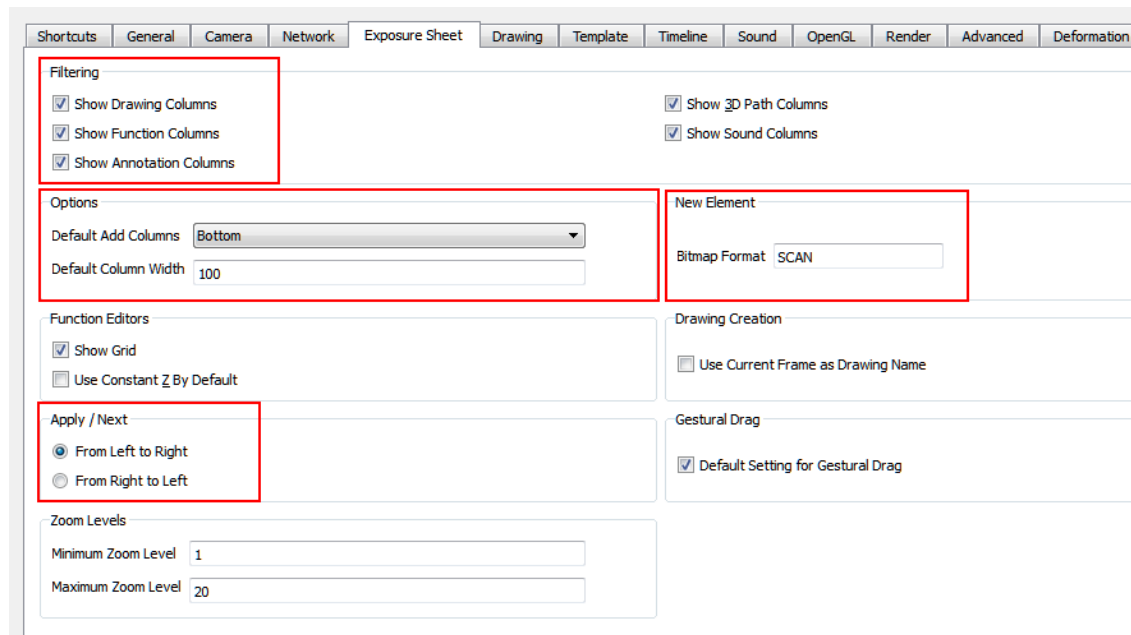
- Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- The [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Exposure Sheet Preferences](#) below
- [Timeline Preferences](#) on page 463
- [Advanced Preferences](#) on page 464

## Exposure Sheet Preferences

This is the Exposure Sheet preferences tab.



## Filtering

These preferences are used to display or hide certain layer types in the Xsheet view.

- **Show Drawing Columns:** Displays the Drawing layers in the Xsheet view.
- **Show Function Columns:** Displays the Function columns layers in the Xsheet view.
- **Show Annotation Columns:** Displays the Annotation columns layers in the Xsheet view.
- **Show 3D Path Columns:** Displays the 3D Path columns in the Xsheet view.
- **Show Sound Columns:** Displays the Sound columns in the Xsheet view.

## Options

- **Default Add Columns:** The default position where the new column will be added.
- **Default Column Width:** The default width value for the new column being created.

## New Element

- **Bitmap Format:** By default, when you create a new empty bitmap column, it will use the file format indicated in the field as the new column format. The default value is SCAN, which means that it is set for scanned-in drawings.
- **Scan Type:** By default, the Scan Type is set to 2 which equals vector import. This means that the imported bitmap images will be placed into a Drawing layer. Scan type 1 is bitmap import.

## Apply/Next

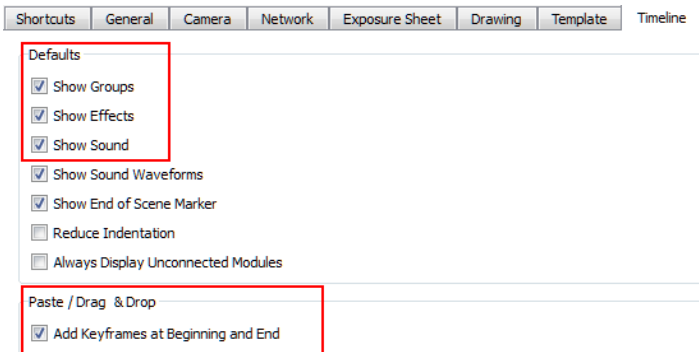
- **From Left to Right:** When clicking on the **Apply/Next** button in the Xsheet view **Column Properties**, the next column to be displayed in the **Column Properties** will be the one on the right.

- **From Right to Left:** When clicking on the **Apply/Next** button in the **Xsheet** view **Column Properties**, the next column to be displayed in the **Column Properties** will be the one on the left.

## Related Topics

- [Timing Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Timeline Preferences](#) below
- [Advanced Preferences](#) on the next page

# Timeline Preferences



## Defaults

- **Show Groups:** Displays the Group layers in the Timeline.
- **Show Effects:** Displays the Effect layers in the Timeline.
- **Show Sound:** Displays the Sound layers in the Timeline.

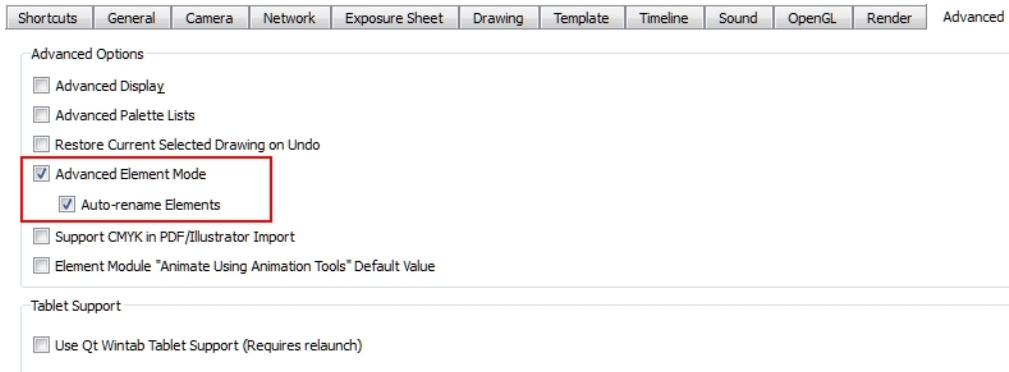
## Paste/Drag & Drop

- **Add keyframes at beginning and end:** Select this option to copy and paste a set of frames that includes an interpolated sequence between two keyframes, but only extracts a partial section. Under normal circumstances, cutting and pasting a function without either the start or end keyframe would render the function null. This option caps the partial function with a new keyframe when you perform the paste.

## Related Topics

- [Timing Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Advanced Preferences](#) on the next page

# Advanced Preferences



- **Advanced Element Mode:** Displays more options in the **Add Column** dialog box and the **Column Properties** dialog box.
- **Auto-rename Elements:** Controls whether to rename the element whenever the corresponding module name in the Network view or layer name in the Timeline view is changed.

## Related Topics

- [Timing Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences](#) on page 461
- [Timeline Preferences](#) on the previous page



# Chapter 8: Morphing



Hand-drawn animation requires you to spend a lot of time tracing in-between drawings. Animate Pro speeds up the process using its helpful Morphing feature. This powerful and useful feature creates computer generated drawings and places them between vector drawings to save time and increase quality. Animation created with the Morphing feature can be reused in different projects. You can easily modify the timing and velocity (ease in and ease out).

One of the main uses of the Morphing feature is in effect animation. For example, animating smoke or water can be time-consuming because these types of effects are usually slow moving requiring a large number of closely placed in-betweens.

## Topics Covered

- [Understanding Morphing on the next page](#)
- [Source and Destination Drawings on page 467](#)
- [Morphing Rules on page 468](#)
- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)
- [Tool Properties View on page 475](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity and Timing on page 480](#)
- [Morphing Tool and Hints on page 484](#)
- [Morphing Layers on page 493](#)
- [Morphing Two Sequences in a Row on page 500](#)
- [Inserting a Morphing Key Drawing on page 501](#)
- [Converting Morphing In-betweens to Drawings on page 503](#)
- [Morphing Holes and Transparencies on page 504](#)
- [Adjusting the Morphing Quality on page 507](#)
- [Tips and Tricks on page 508](#)
- [Morphing Preferences on page 509](#)

# Understanding Morphing

The Morphing feature is used to animate similar and simple shapes such as hair or smoke. It helps you by saving time when you are working on tedious in-betweening and tracing tasks. This, in turn, provides you with more time to spend on complex animation tasks such as walk-cycles or acrobatic sequences.

## Ideas Behind Morphing

To learn how to morph drawings, it is better to start with basic shapes such as circles and rectangles. Once you are more familiar with the tool, you can increase your knowledge and expertise. In a very short time you will be producing some remarkable effects.

It is helpful to know the pros and cons of morphing before you start. Understanding what you can do and which drawing lines can give you a problem will enable you to design your key drawings so they morph efficiently.



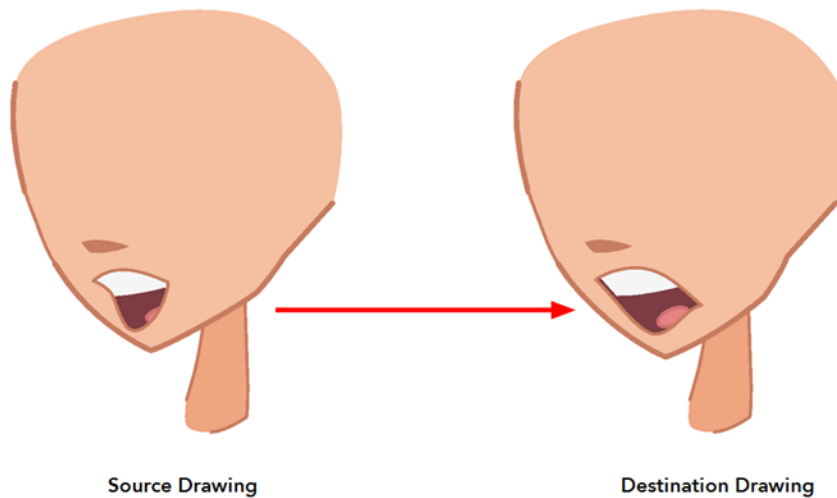
The more complex the shape is, the longer it takes to morph. If it takes more time to morph a drawing than to hand draw it, then it is better to animate it instead of morphing. However, if you spot an occasion when you can morph your drawings, do it! It allows you to fix your timing and velocity in no time without having to create any extra drawings!

---

### Related Topics

- [Source and Destination Drawings on the facing page](#)

# Source and Destination Drawings



The Morphing feature matches similar shapes in two drawings. These are the source and destination drawings. Animate Pro evaluates the source's shape properties and matches them to the most similar one in the destination drawing.

Morphing works between similar shapes, which are drawings that have the same palette, colours and number of shapes. You can even change a rabbit into an elephant, as long as source and destination keep the same colours and number of shapes.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)
- [Morphing Rules on the next page](#)

# Morphing Rules

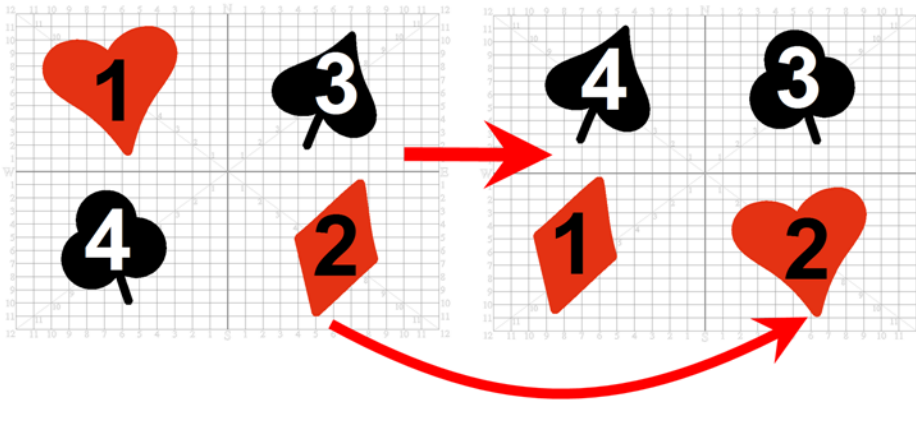
Animate Pro follows a set of rules as it evaluates the shapes. Familiarize yourself with these basic morphing rules before you start morphing.

## Related Topics

- [Closest Similar Shape](#) below
- [Pencil Line to Pencil Line](#) below
- [Fill Shape to Fill Shape](#) on page 470
- [Colour Swatch to Same Colour Swatch](#) on page 470
- [Vanishing and Appearing](#) on page 471
- [Colour Art to Colour Art and Line Art to Line Art](#) on page 471

## Closest Similar Shape

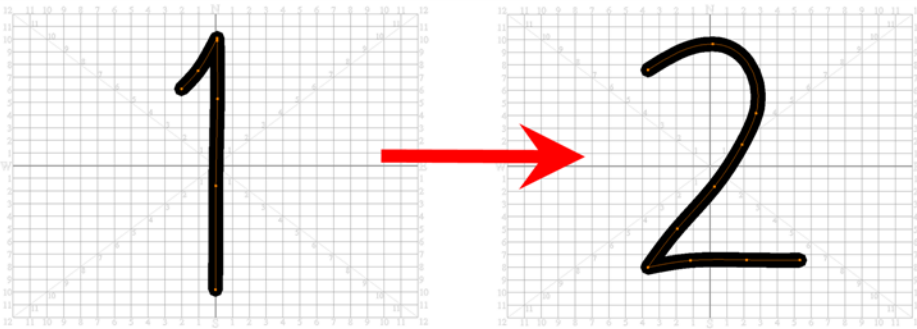
A colour, line shape or zone will morph with the closest similar one in the destination drawing. This means it will morph with the zone nearest to it, as long as that zone uses the same palette's colour swatch (Colour ID) and has the same vector properties (Central or Contour).



## Pencil Line to Pencil Line

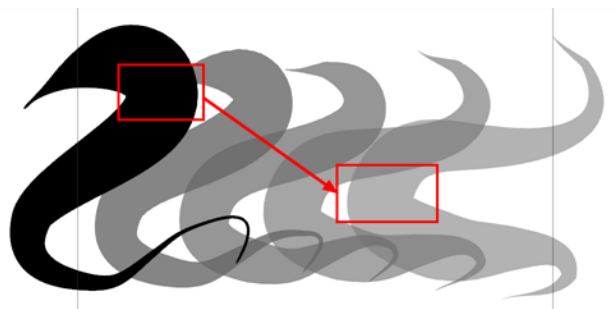
If you trace a shape using a pencil line such as the Ellipse , Rectangle , Polyline , Line  or Pencil 

tool, you have to morph it with another pencil line. Make sure that both drawings are pencil shapes (central vector).



A pencil line will never morph with a brush stroke.

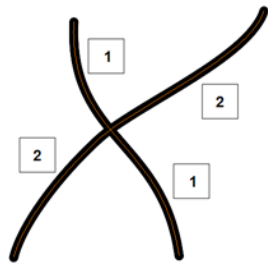
Pencil lines with thickness **ARE SUPPORTED** in morphing sequences. The thickness will morph according to the thickest and thinnest areas in the source and destination drawings.



Pencil lines with textures are **NOT SUPPORTED** in a morphing sequence. During the morphing, the texture will disappear and show without pencil line opacity texture.



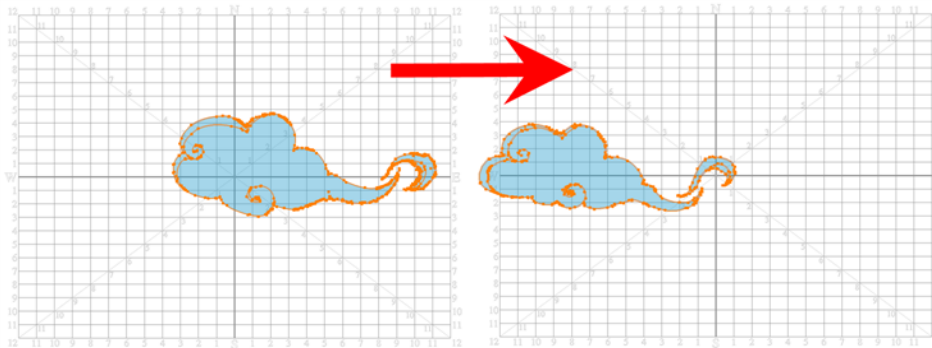
If you have pencil lines in your source drawing, the same number of pencil lines must be present in the destination drawings. A pencil line will appear if it is not found in the destination drawing. It will pop out on the first or last frame depending on which one it is drawn.



When two pencil lines cross one another, they are considered to be two lines and not four lines anymore (as it was in previous versions of the application). In this case, you must have two pencil lines in your destination drawing for your morphing to work correctly.

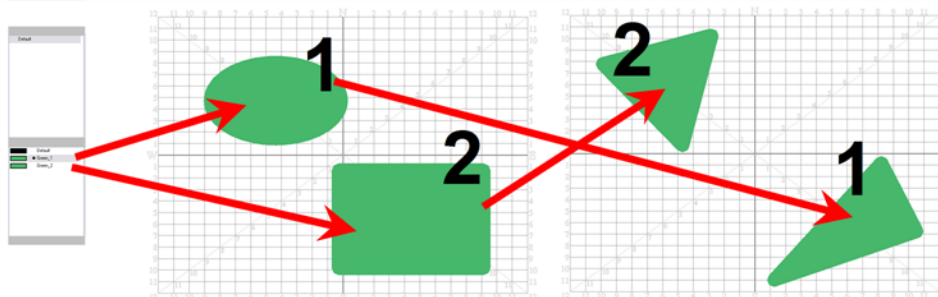
## Fill Shape to Fill Shape

If you have a brush line or a colour fill zone which are contour vectors, make sure that you morph it with another fill or brush line. Contour vectors will not morph with pencil lines (central vectors). A brush line can morph into a colour fill zone and vice versa.



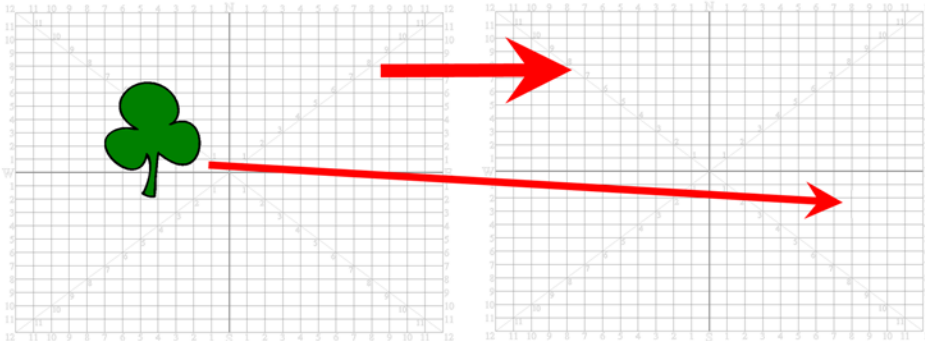
## Colour Swatch to Same Colour Swatch

Animate Pro does not morph colours. If you want to perform a colour transition, you have to create the effect at the compositing level. A colour palette is composed of colour swatches. Each colour swatch has its own unique identification number, even if two colours pots are the same shade of red, they are identified independently. A colour zone or shape will morph with another one painted with the same colour swatch.



## Vanishing and Appearing

If a colour zone does not find a match in the first or the second drawing, it will progressively appear or disappear.



## Colour Art to Colour Art and Line Art to Line Art

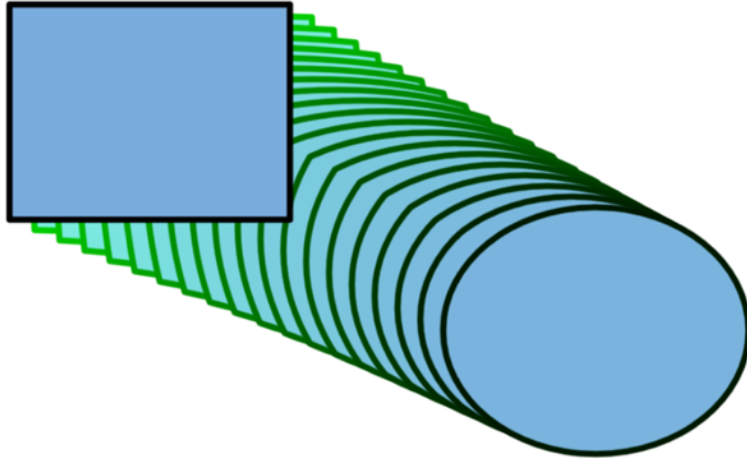
In Animate Pro, there is an advanced concept for painting your drawings called Line Art and Colour Art. Basically, an extra layer is added in your drawings so that you can fill the colour zones on a separate layer. The regular layer on which you are drawing is called Line Art and the extra layer under the Line Art is the Colour Art.

- A shape drawn in Colour Art can only be morphed with another shape existing in the Colour Art.
- A shape drawn in Line Art can only be morphed with another shape existing in the Line Art.
- A shape created in Colour Art can never morph with a shape created in Line Art.

### Related Topics


- [Drawing with the Brush or the Pencil on page 141](#)
- [Line Art and Colour Art Layers on page 346](#)

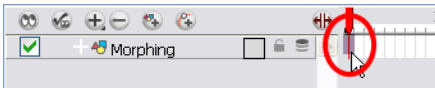
# Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence






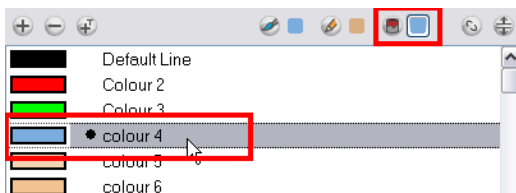
Once you are familiar with the basic rules, you can start creating morphing sequences. You need to practice and become at ease with the Morphing feature. To begin, start with simple elements, once you become confident with the morphing process you can move on to complex and advanced morphing techniques, such as head rotation or full characters.

## To create a basic morphing:

1. In the Timeline view, click on the Add Drawing Layer  button to add a new layer to your project.
2. Rename the new layer **Morphing**.
3. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the first cell in your layer.



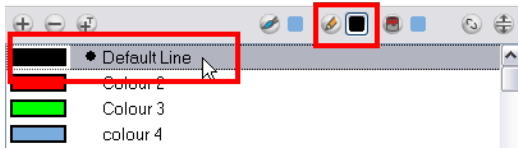
4. In the Tools toolbar, select the Rectangle  tool or press [Alt] + [7].
5. In the Tool Properties view, enable the Auto Fill  option.
6. In the Colour view, click on the Set Paint Current Colour  button.
7. In the Colour list, select a colour to fill your rectangle with.



8. In the Colour view, click on the Set Pencil Current Colour  button.



9. In the Colour list, select a colour to trace your rectangle's outline with.



10. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw a rectangle.

- ▶ Hold down the [Shift] key if you want to draw a square.
- ▶ Hold down the [Alt] key if you want to draw the rectangle from its centre.

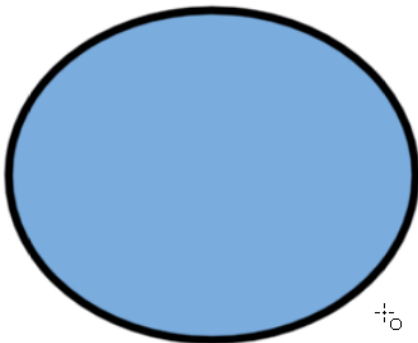


11. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the last cell.



12. Repeat Step 5 to Step 10 using the Ellipse tool instead of the Rectangle tool or press [Alt] + [=].

- ▶ Draw an ellipse using the same outline colour as the rectangle ("Outline").
- ▶ Paint the ellipse with the same fill colour as the rectangle ("Fill").



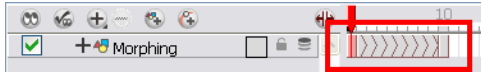
13. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select your first drawing's cell, the rectangle drawing.



14. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, right-click on the selection and select **Morphing > Create Morphing** or press [Alt] + [M].

- ▶ In the top menu, you can also select **Animation > Morphing > Create Morphing**.

Arrows appear between the two key drawings to show they are computer generated.



15. Use the Playback toolbar to play the morphing sequence. To flip through the in-betweens toggle between [,] and [.] or press [F4] to toggle between the two key drawings.

## Related Topics

- [Deleting a Morphing Sequence below](#)

# Deleting a Morphing Sequence

You may want to delete an entire morphing sequence in order to redo a sequence from scratch.

**To delete an entire Morphing sequence:**

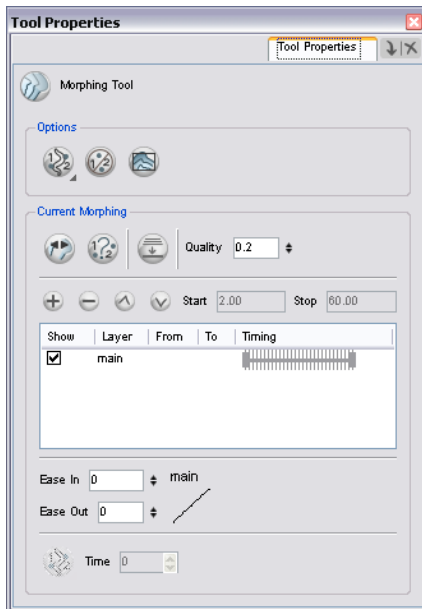
1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, right-click on a cell between two keyframes.
2. Select **Morphing > Delete Morphing** or from the top menu, select **Animation > Morphing > Delete Morphing**.

The entire sequence between the two keyframes is removed.

## Related Topics


- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)

# Tool Properties View



As you create and adjust your morphing sequences, you will often use the Tool Properties view. Using this view allows you do things such as toggling between your key drawings, adjusting the easing or selecting a hint type.

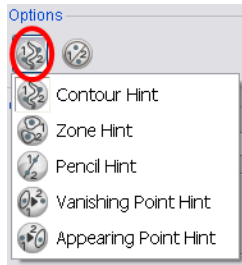
**To access the content of the Tool Properties view:**

- ▶ Select the Morphing  tool in the Tools toolbar or press [F3].

## Related Topics

- [Hint Type on the next page](#)
- [Hide Hints on the next page](#)
- [Show Morphing in Place on the next page](#)
- [Suggest Hints on page 477](#)
- [Switch Between Drawings on page 477](#)
- [Flatten on page 477](#)
- [Quality on page 477](#)
- [Morphing Layers on page 478](#)
- [Easing on page 478](#)
- [Convert Hints on page 478](#)
- [Time on page 479](#)

## Hint Type



The Hint Type drop-down menu allows you to select the correct hint to remedy any problem areas in your drawing.



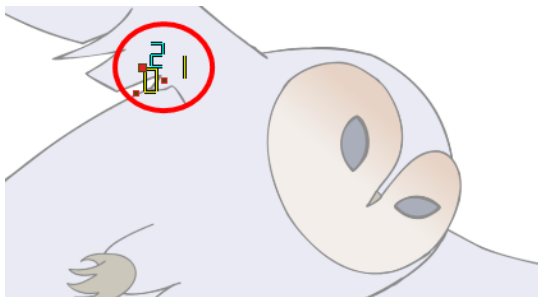
You can have more than one hint type in your drawings. You can mix all of the hint types in your morphing sequence.




Refer to:


- [Contour Hint on page 488](#)
- [Morphing Tool and Hints on page 484](#)

## Hide Hints



The Hide Hints  button temporarily hides the hint points from the key drawings. Use this option when you have a series of hint points hiding some lines you would like to see.

## Show Morphing in Place


The Show Morphing In Place  option is used with morphing layers. Enabling this option prevents the currently selected morphing layer from being shown on top of the others and maintains the correct layer ordering.




Refer to [Morphing Layers](#) on page 493.

---


## Suggest Hints

The Suggest Hints  option is used to automatically set hint points on your key drawings as a help tool. If you are not sure where to set your hints, you can use this option. It will set the main hints which you can then fine tune.

## Switch Between Drawings

The Switch Between Drawings  button is used to toggle between the two key drawings in your morphing sequence. This option is useful while setting hints or press [F4].

## Flatten


The Flatten  option is used when you have to morph a sequence with a semi-transparent or transparent colour in it.



Refer to [Morphing Holes and Transparencies](#) on page 504.

---

## Quality

Quality  

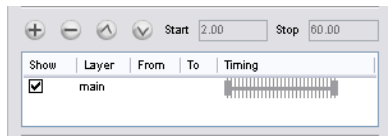
The Quality setting is used to make the lines of the morphed drawings smoother. Adjust this parameter when you are doing an extreme close up of your animation.



Refer to [Adjusting the Morphing Quality](#) on page 507

---

## Morphing Layers

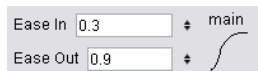


The Morphing Layers option is used when working with morphing layers. You can add, remove and manage your different morphing layers in this space.



Refer to [Morphing Layers on page 493](#)

## Easing



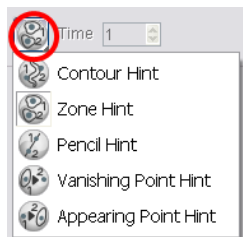
The Easing option is used to adjust the starting and ending velocity of your morphing sequence so that the motion is smooth and not mechanical.


You can adjust the Ease In and Ease Out value by dragging your cursor up and down or typing a new value. The values go from -1.0 to 1.0.



Refer to [Adjusting the Velocity and Timing on page 480](#)

## Convert Hints



The Convert Hints  option is used to switch the type of the current selecting hint points. This option is useful when you position hints and then realize they are not the right type. You can select them and convert them to the correct type instead of deleting them and setting new ones.

Use the Morphing tool to select the hints and then convert them by going to the Tool Properties view and selecting the new hint type from the Convert Hints drop-down menu.

---

# Time



The Time parameter is used to set the timing on Appearing Point and Vanishing Point hints. These hints are used to set the trajectory of appearing and vanishing objects, they do not have to appear or disappear from the first frame to the last frame of the morphing sequence. With the Time parameter, select your Appearing Point or Vanishing Point hint and type the frame number on which the object will start its animation.



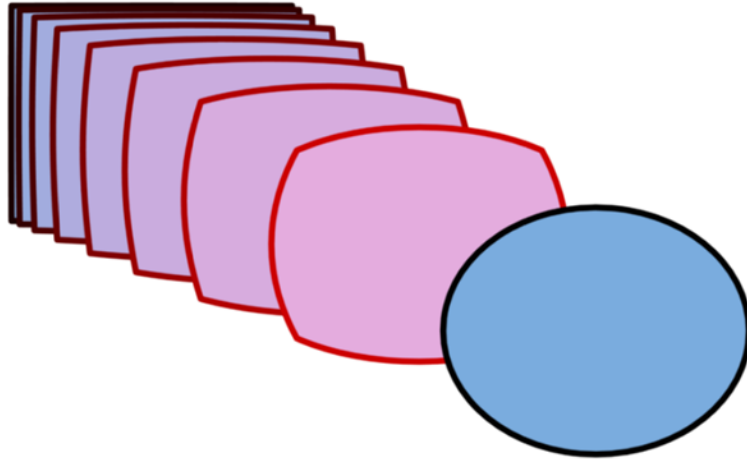
Refer to the [Appearing Point Hint](#) topic to learn more.

---

## Related Topics

- [Morphing Tool and Hints on page 484](#)

## Adjusting the Velocity and Timing



Once you have established a morphing sequence, you can control its timing and velocity. When you look at your animation you will notice that the morphing motion is constant. To produce a less mechanical motion, you will probably want to create some ease in or ease out.

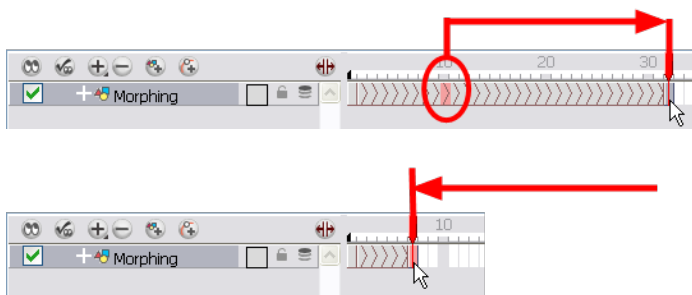
If you did not place your source and destination drawings on the correct frames you may need to extend or shrink the sequence length.

- [Changing the Morphing Sequence Length below](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity in the Layer Properties Editor below](#)

## Changing the Morphing Sequence Length

To extend or shrink a morphing sequence length:

1. In the Timeline view, select the source or destination drawing.
2. Click on your selection and drag the drawing to its new frame.



## Adjusting the Velocity in the Layer Properties Editor

If you have several morphing sequences on a single layer, you may find it easier to adjust their velocities on one function curve rather than several separate ones. Having all of your velocity parameters in one place is more efficient and easier to modify.

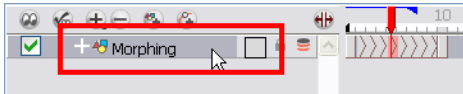



Adjusting the velocity in the Layer Properties editor also allows you to reverse a section of the morphing sequence. The sequence will always start with the source drawing and end at the destination. You can play the morphing sequence backwards or forwards during the animation.

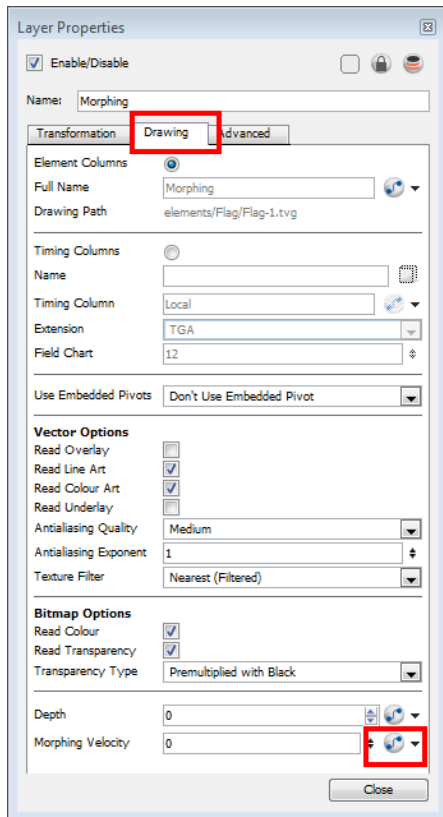
You can have two levels of easing. It is possible to adjust the velocity of each sequence in your layer independently using the Tool Properties view and then adjust the morphing velocity function in the Layer Properties editor to control the entire layer's easing.

### To adjust the velocity in the layer editor:


1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the drawing element module to open the Layer Properties editor.

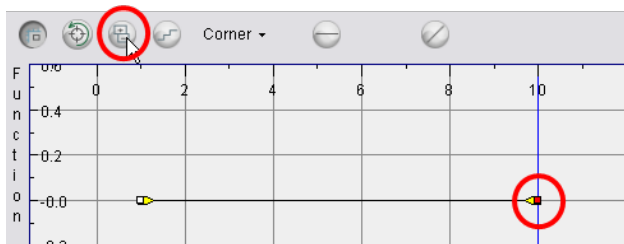
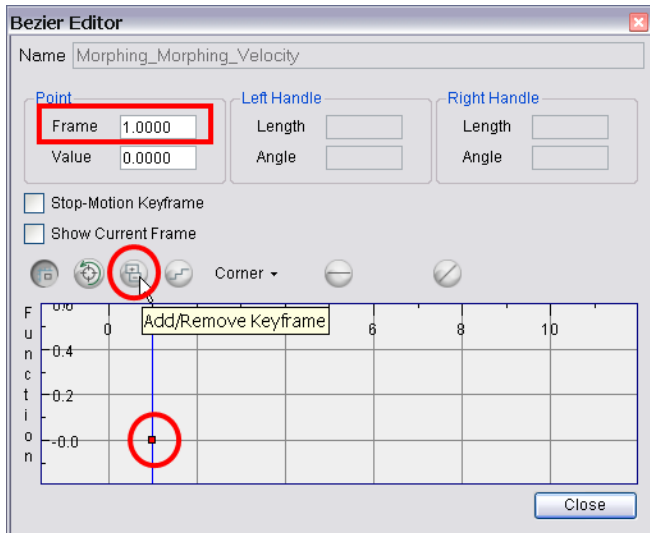


2. In the Layer Properties editor, go to the Drawing tab and click on the Function  button to create a function curve.

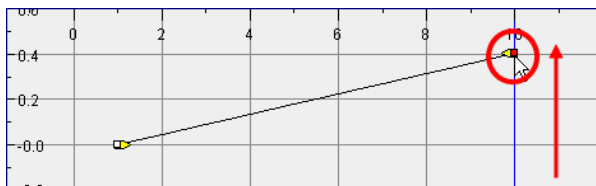


3. In the Layer Properties editor, click on the Function  button once more to open the velocity curve.

4. Add a keyframe at the first frame of the morphing (Source) and one at the end (Destination) by clicking on the Add/Remove Keyframe  button.

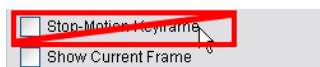


5. Move the end keyframe up.

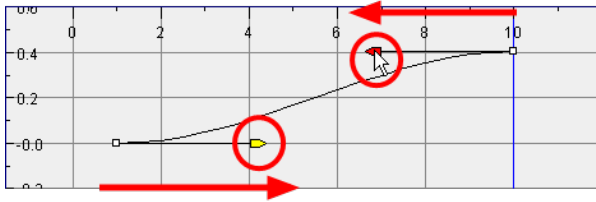


It is important that the last keyframe remains above the first one.

6. Make sure that the first keyframe is **NOT** a Stop-motion keyframe. To do this, uncheck the Stop-motion Keyframe option to disable it. To use the Toggle Stop-Motion Segment feature, press [S].




7. Click on the keyframes and pull the Bezier handles to create ease in and ease out. If you make the curve go downward instead of upward, the animation will play backward until the curve starts to go upward again.

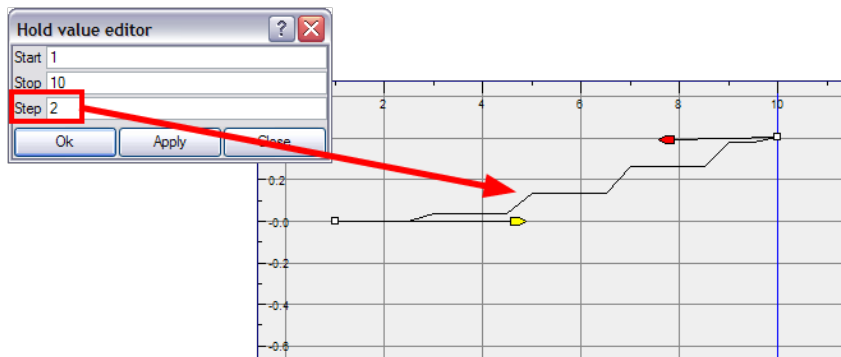


If you have more than one morphing sequence in the same layer, you need to add a keyframe on the velocity curve for each source and destination drawings.



If you want your morphing to play back on a double frame exposure rather than single frame, you can use the Hold Value editor and set the velocity to change every second frame, instead of every frame.

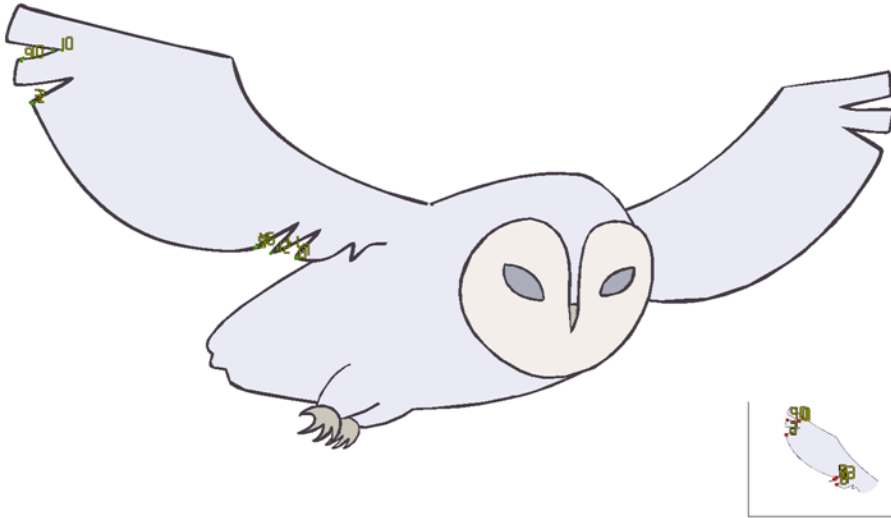
In the Morphing Function editor, click on the Hold Value Editor  button and set the parameters to hold the value for two frames.




## Related Topics

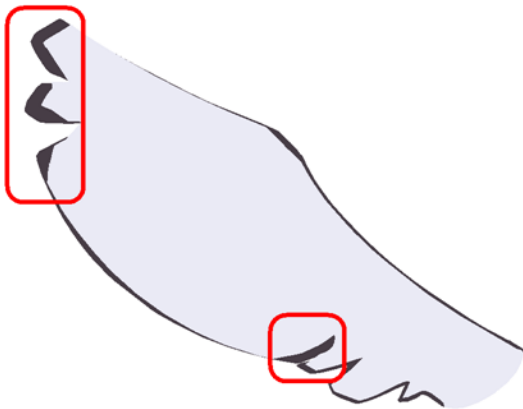
- [Function Curves](#) on page 958
- [Adjusting the Ease](#) on page 976

# Morphing Tool and Hints



Animate Pro provides the Morphing  tool to control your morphing sequence, this works by placing different types of hints to help the system morph the animation the way that you want it.

Hints are points which are placed in both the source and destination drawings, they associate zones and lines between the two drawings. Hints are used to fix problem zones, such as a line that is not following the colour fill zone.



Corners and points generally give the most problems. The software does not necessarily understand the animation curves and may be unable to match corners. It will generally associate a corner with the nearest one, this is not always correct and it is why we use hint points to determine what goes with what.

## Related Topics

- [Using the Morphing Tool on the facing page](#)
- [Hints on page 487](#)
- [Copying Hint Points from One Drawing to Another on page 490](#)

# Using the Morphing Tool

Hints are identification points existing in both the source and destination drawings to create associations between the two of them.

To correct morphing distortions, Animate Pro has different types of hints available for controlling different types of problems:

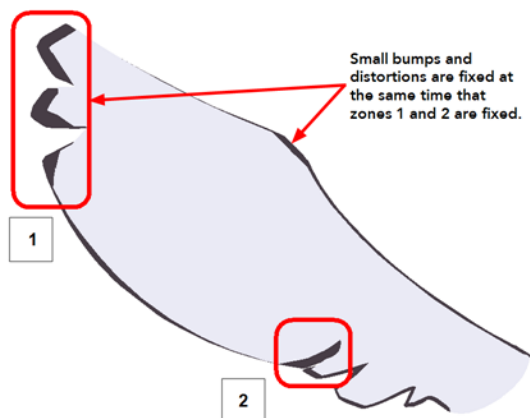
- [Contour Hint on page 488](#)
- [Zone Hint on page 488](#)
- [Pencil Hint on page 489](#)
- [Vanishing Point Hint on page 489](#)
- [Appearing Point Hint on page 490](#)

Each type of hint has a different purpose and they can all be used in the same drawing.

Use the Morphing tool to add hints to your morphing sequences. You can add different hints to your source and destination drawings and combine all types of hints in the same drawing.

A hint will automatically appear in both the source and destination drawings when it is added. A hint cannot exist in a single drawing. If you delete a hint from one drawing, it will be also deleted from the other.

The key to placing your hints is to put them where the biggest problem is. Fix the largest distortions first, this may also fix the smaller ones at the same time.




Do not add too many hints, this is a common mistake when morphing, it takes some practice to learn how to correctly use and place hints.

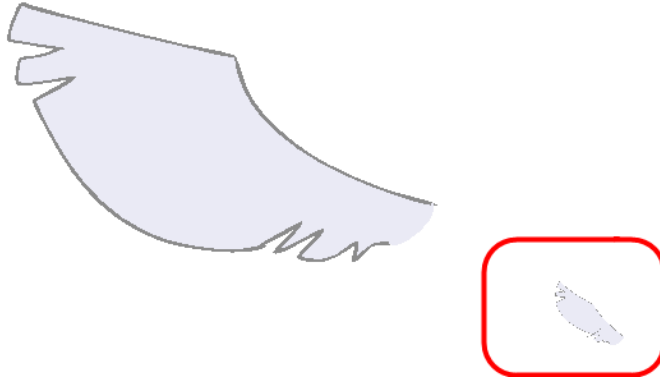
## To add and remove hints:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the source or destination drawing of your morphing sequence.

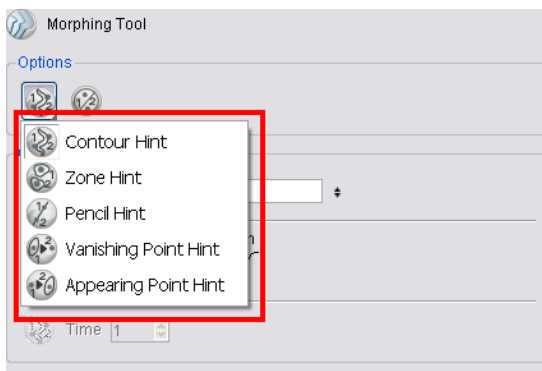


2. In the Tools toolbar, select the Morphing  tool or press [F3].

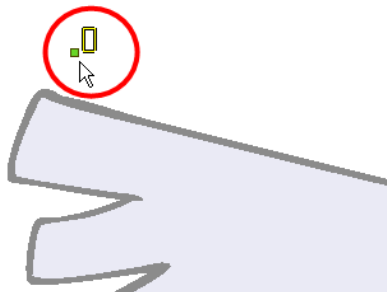
Use your other morphing key drawing, shown in the Drawing view's bottom right corner, as a reference.



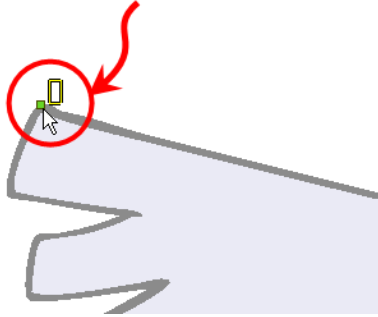
3. In the Tool Properties view, select the type of hint you want to use.



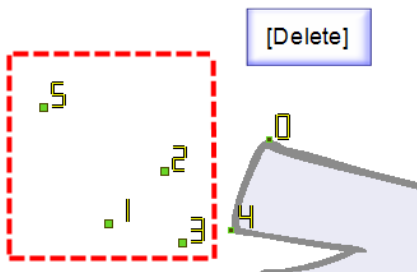
- ▶ Select Contour Hint to correct a brush line or colour zone's contour (Contour vector). Contour Hint points will behave similar to Pencil Hint points when used on a pencil line. Note that you obtain better results using the Pencil Hint point.
  - ▶ Select Pencil Hint to correct a pencil line (Central vector).
  - ▶ Select Zone Hint to correct a colour zone morphing match.
  - ▶ Select Vanishing Point Hint to correct a vanishing shape's trajectory.
  - ▶ Select Appearing Point Hint to correct an appearing shape's trajectory.
4. In the Camera or Drawing view, click on the drawing near the area to add a hint.




5. Select the hint's point and move it to its correct position.



6. Select one or many hints and press [Delete] to remove extra or unused hints.
  - To delete all of the hint points at once, press [Shift] + [Delete].



7. In the Playback toolbar, press the Play  button to see the result.

## Related Topics

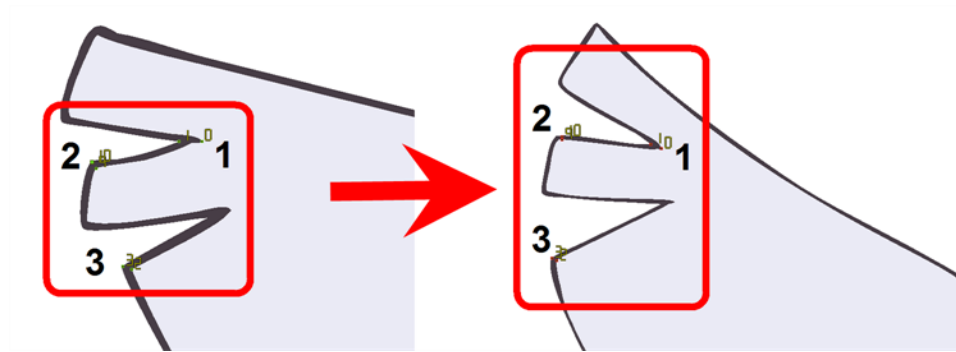
- [Hints below](#)


## Hints

Here are the available hint points:

- [Contour Hint](#) on the next page
- [Zone Hint](#) on the next page
- [Pencil Hint](#) on page 489
- [Vanishing Point Hint](#) on page 489
- [Appearing Point Hint](#) on page 490

## Contour Hint



The Contour Hint  point is used on the colour fill zone and brush lines; in other words, on Contour vectors. It allows the control of line thickness and contour position. Also, if a contour is not animated the way that it should be you can use hints to correct the animation. For example, if a flag is not waving properly.

When adding a Contour Hint point, make sure that you place it far enough away from the contour so that you can see it snap to the contour.

The Contour Hint points are yellow.

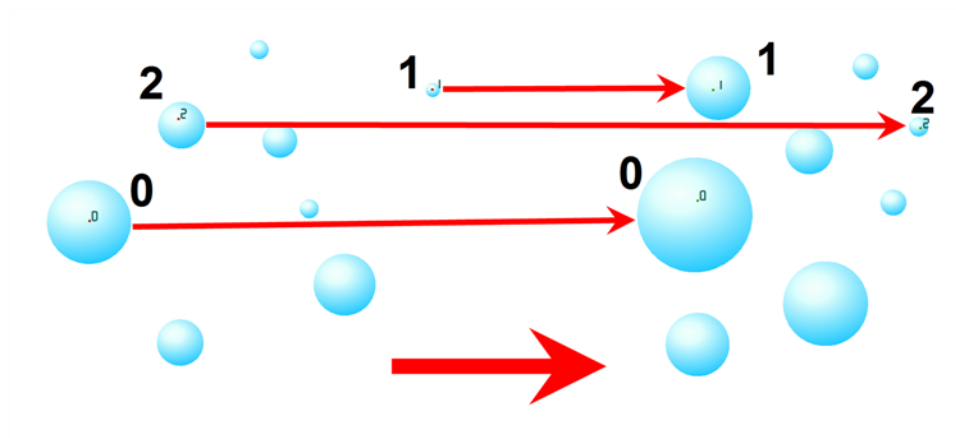


Do not place the Contour Hint directly on the line as it may look like it has snapped to the contour, when in fact, it has not and the morphing will remain unchanged.




To correct a brush stroke, place a hint on both sides of the line to indicate its thickness variations over time.

## Zone Hint

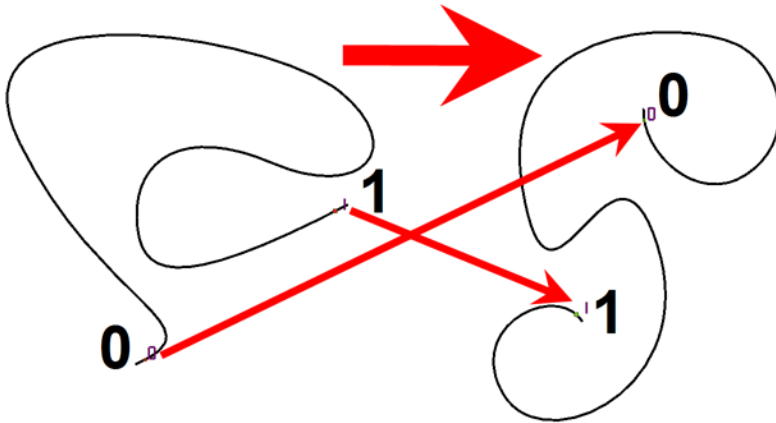





The Zone Hint  point is used on a colour zone to control the proximity rule. The Zone Hint is placed in the centre of the colour zone. Sometimes a colour zone is not associated with the corresponding one by default. For example, in a splash animation there are many water droplets that are the same colour. The system automatically morphs the droplet to the nearest one. This is not always correct. A Zone Hint will force a colour zone to morph with another one.

Zone Hint points are cyan in colour so you can easily see them.

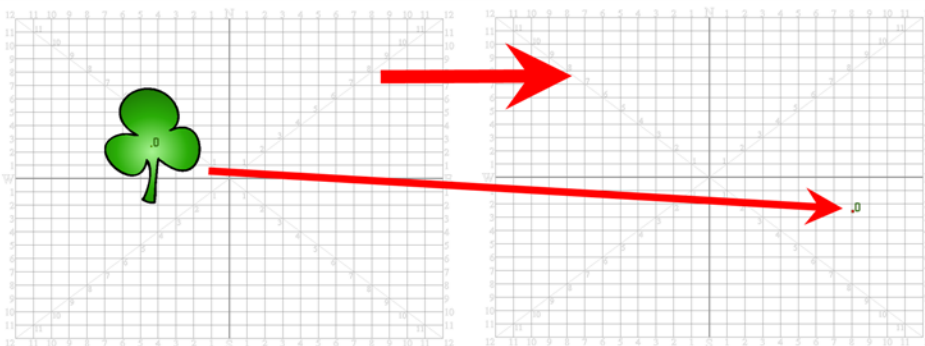
## Pencil Hint




A Pencil Hint  point is used to control a pencil line, also known as central vector. It can be used on drawings that were done using the Pencil, Polyline, Ellipse, Line and Rectangle tools. Like the Contour Hint, the Pencil Hint snaps to the central vector. Make sure to place it far enough away from the line so you will see it snap when you move it.

Pencil Hint points are magenta in colour so you can easily see them.

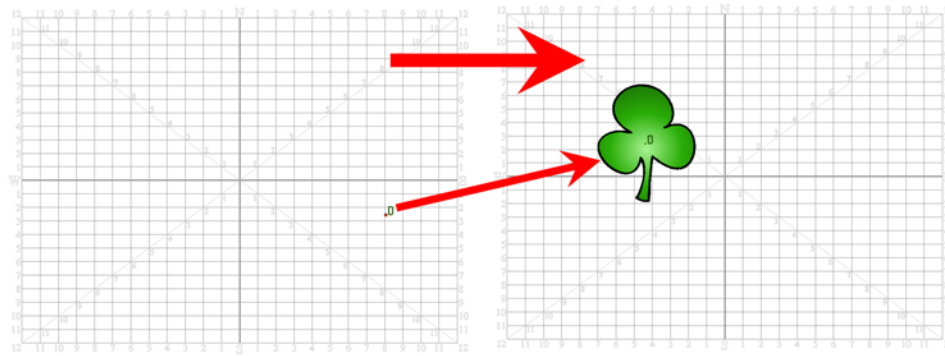
## Vanishing Point Hint




A Vanishing Point Hint  is used to control the trajectory of a vanishing shape. A shape will vanish from the source drawing when there is no corresponding shape in the destination drawing. If you do not place a Vanishing Hint to control the point of disappearance, the shape will vanish into its centre.

Vanishing Point Hint points are green in colour so you can easily see them.

## Appearing Point Hint



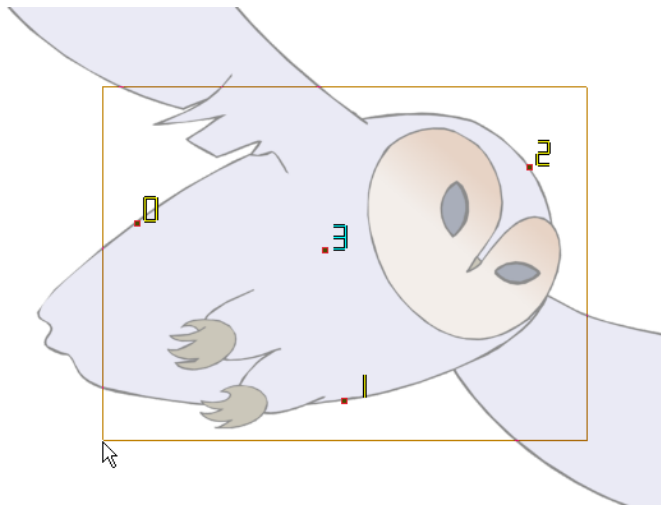
An Appearing Point Hint  is used to control the trajectory of an appearing shape. A shape will appear in the destination drawing when there is no corresponding shape in the source drawing. If you do not place an Appearing Point Hint to control the point of appearance, the shape will appear from its centre and expand outwards.

Appearing Point Hint points are violet in colour so you can easily see them.

### Related Topics

- [Morphing Tool and Hints on page 484](#)

## Copying Hint Points from One Drawing to Another

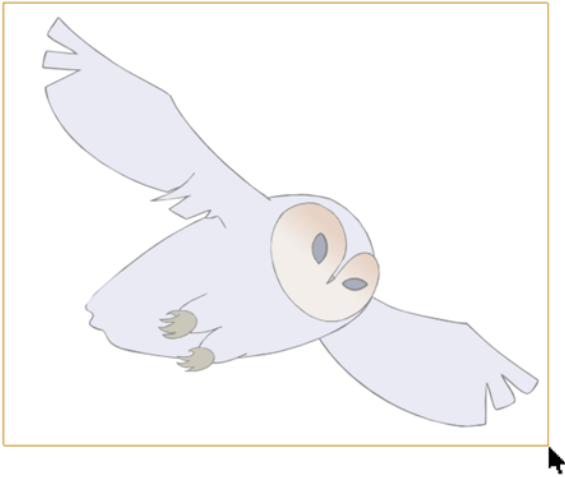


If you have two morphing sequences that use the same drawing and you would like to copy it and its hint points, you can do so in the Drawing view.

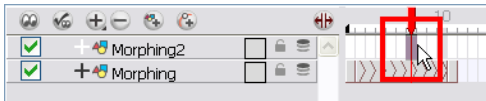
### To copy a drawing and its hints:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Select  tool or press [Alt] + [S].

- In the Drawing view, select the drawing you will reuse in your second morphing sequence. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).



- In the Timeline view, select the cell where the new drawing will be.



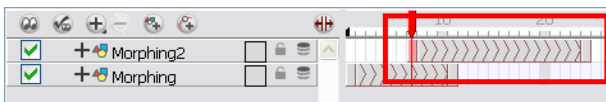
- In the Drawing view, paste your selection. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste** or press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).
- In the Timeline view, select the cell where the second drawing will be.




- In the Drawing or Camera view, draw your second drawing.



- In the Timeline view, create the morphing sequence for the new drawings or press [Alt] + [M].



- In the Tools toolbar, select the Morphing  tool or press [F3].

9. In the Drawing or Camera view, position your hint points.

## Related Topics

- [Morphing Tool and Hints on page 484](#)

# Morphing Layers

Morphing layers simplify the morphing animation. Complex shapes are often too difficult to control and may not work properly, by dividing the drawings into Morphing layers, the task becomes much easier.

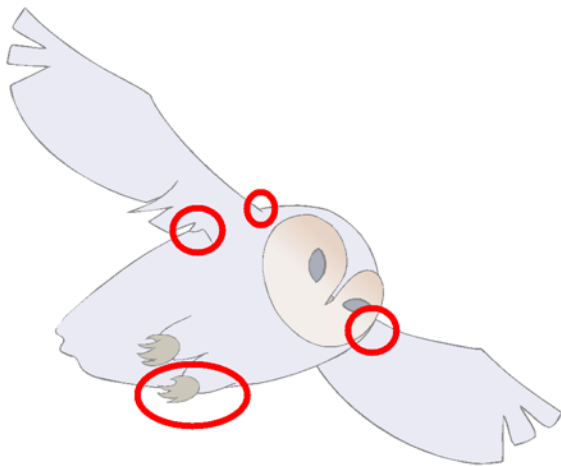
The major points used in controlling a morphing sequence are the intersections. If there are many lines intersecting within a drawing, the system will require more control. (Refer to the Morphing Hints section.)

An important aspect of morphing is to identify possible problem zones in order to fix them and avoid potentially frustrating situations.

This topic is divided as follows:

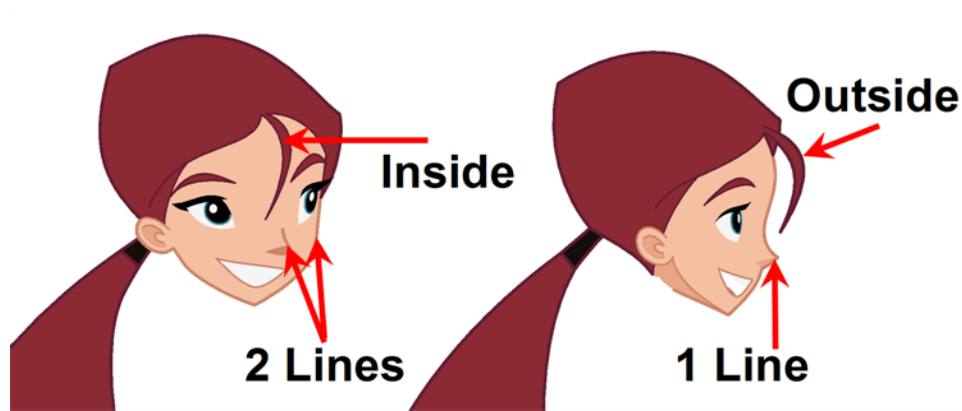
- [Identifying Problem Zones below](#)
- [Morphing Layer Properties on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Morph with Morphing Layers on page 495](#)

## Identifying Problem Zones



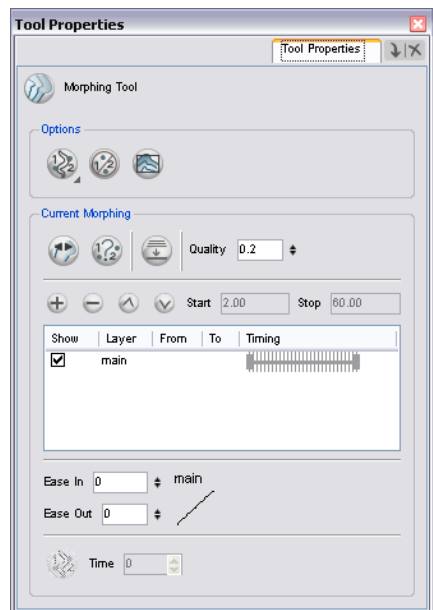
Simple details that look easy to morph can sometimes be more difficult than they may initially appear to be. For example, you may find that the nose becomes problem when performing a head rotation. As explained earlier, the drawings need to be similar in their number of shapes. Generally, on a head rotation, the source nose is in the centre of the face, but on the destination, the nose line is part of the face outline. This means that on the source drawing, the nose and the face outline are two separate shapes, whereas they are combined into one shape on the destination drawing.

Morphing a full face as demonstrated on the figure below will cause the source nose to slowly vanish as the destination nose grows from the character's cheek.



Any shape that is contained inside another one and has to morph out of that shape will be a problem for the same reasons as the nose is. At some point during the morphing sequence, the shape contained inside the face will merge with the face outline, and then become a separate shape again.

## Morphing Layer Properties



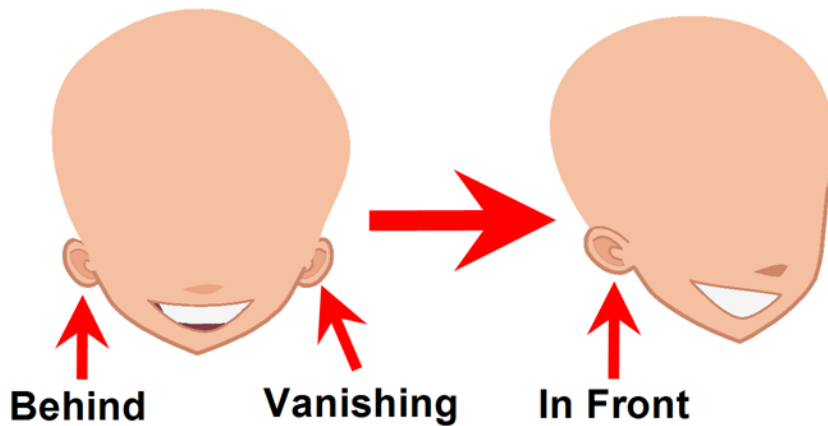
It is because of these reasons, explained in the [Identifying Problem Zones on the previous page](#) section, that morphing layers exist. Morphing layers are all contained in the same drawing layer. It is like having a mini Timeline within a Timeline layer, or a mini Xsheet within an Xsheet column.

Each morphing layer can have its own duration and velocity. Also, because you only have a single element to handle in your Timeline or Xsheet view, it will be treated as one element for the Compositing process, making the compositors work easier.


You could separate all of your elements into different actual drawing elements and have many layers, but you would have to create a large number of morphing sequences and make sure that you modify all of their timings properly.



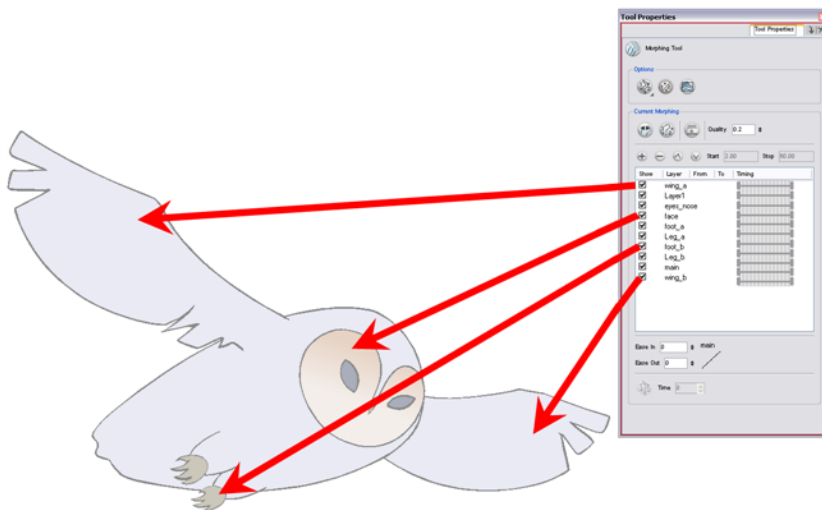
Both solutions are correct, but morphing layers makes it easier to handle and does not change the scene structure by adding more elements which can be very important for Cut-out animation puppets. For example if you need to morph a front head to a three-quarter head where the ear needs to be separated, you do not want to add a new ear layer at the same time and have to worry about connecting it inside the puppet's construction. Instead, simply create an ear morphing layer within the head layer.



## Creating a Morph with Morphing Layers

When you click on a Morphing layer drawing, it automatically appears on top of the other ones. If you want it to stay in place, for example the wing behind the body, enable the Show Morphing in Place  option in the

Morphing tool Properties view.

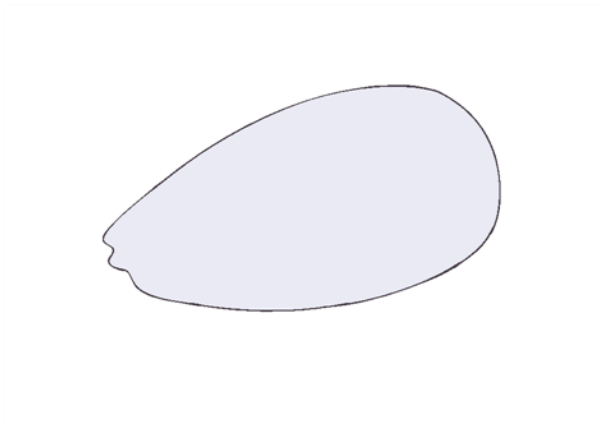




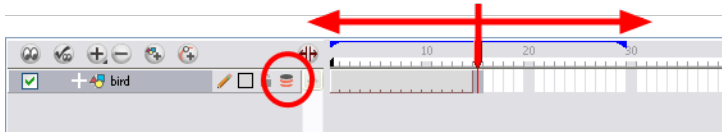
Use a naming convention for each morphing layer such as ear\_1, ear\_2 or head\_1, head\_2. You can also use the numbers 1 to 9 for the first layer, 10 to 19 for the second one, 20 to 29 for the third one and so on. This technique is useful if you plan to do more than one morphing sequence in the same column. For example, front head to three-quarter head to side head. The three-quarter drawings will be used in both morphing sequences.

### To create a morph with morphing layers:

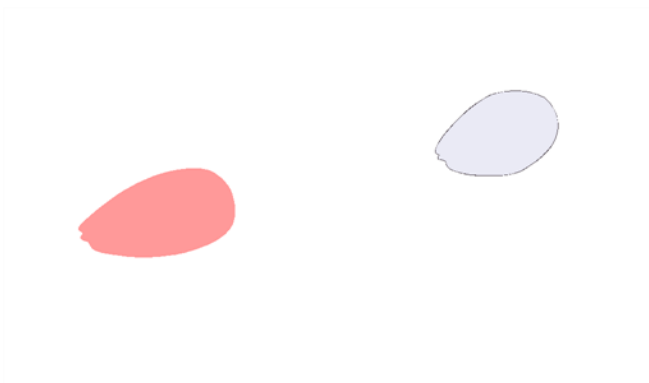
1. In the Timeline view, add a new drawing element and name it properly.
2. In the first cell, draw the main source shape such as the head shape or body shape. Do not add details like eyes.



3. In the Timeline View, select the destination cell, then enable and extend the Onion Skin.

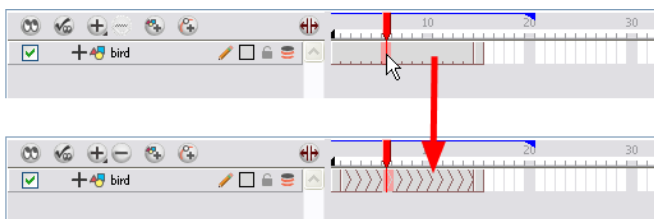




4. In the destination cell, draw the second drawing.

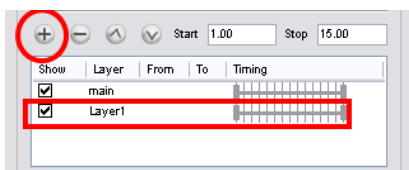




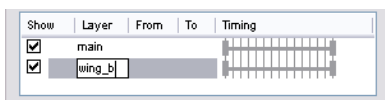
- In the Timeline view, select the in-between cells, right-click and select **Morphing > Create Morphing** or press [Alt] + [M],





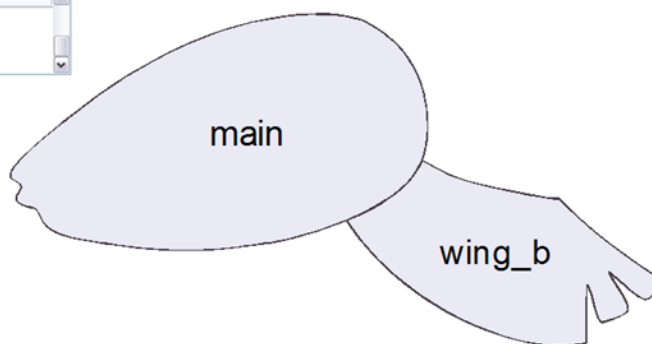
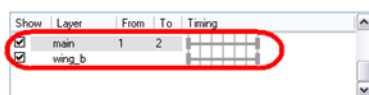
- In the Tools toolbar, select the Morphing  tool.
- In the Morphing Tools Properties view, click on the Add Layer  button to add a new morphing layer.

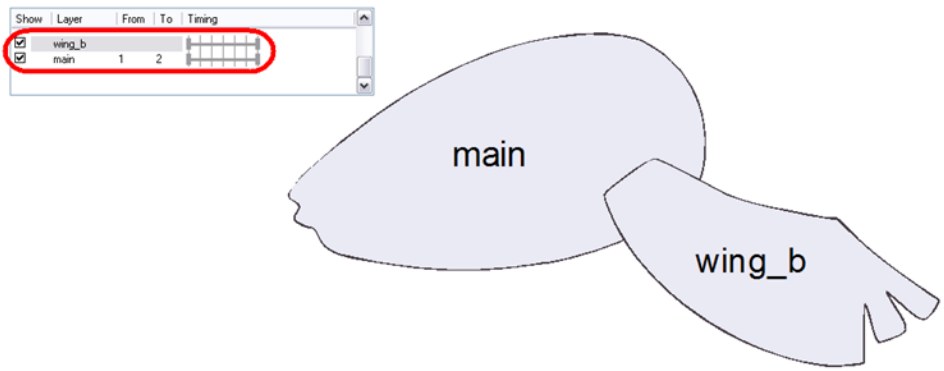


- Double-click on the new layer's name and name it appropriately.
- Press [Enter/Return].

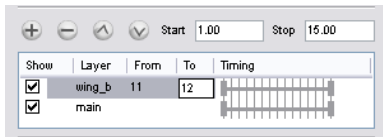


- Use the Up  and Down  arrow buttons to move the new layer above or below the **Main** layer.
  - If placed above the **Main** layer, it will be displayed in front. If it is placed below, it will be displayed behind.

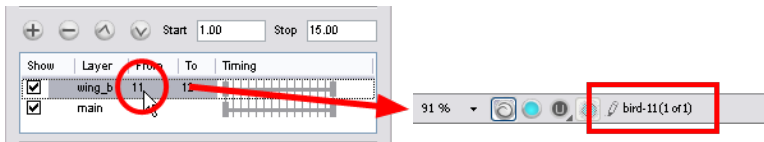




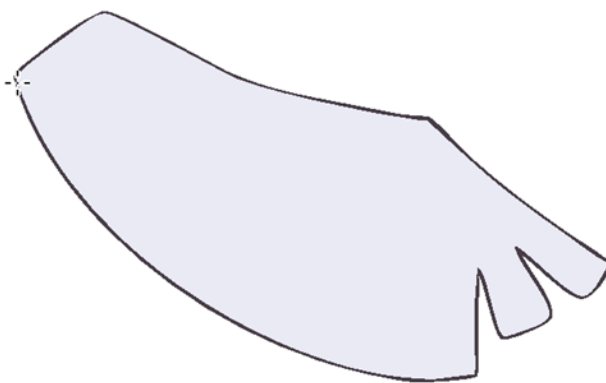
11. To create new drawings, double-click on the blank area under the **From** section to create the source drawing and the **To** section for the destination drawing and type a value different than the ones used for the main layer.
12. Press [Enter/Return].
  - ▶ You do not need to type any value for the **main** layer as it uses the one from the Xsheet column.



13. Click on the new source drawing to start drawing the new part. (Make sure that you are working on the proper drawing by verifying the name in the Camera or Drawing view's bottom left corner.)

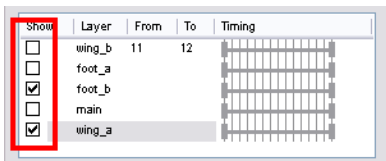


14. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw the source drawing.

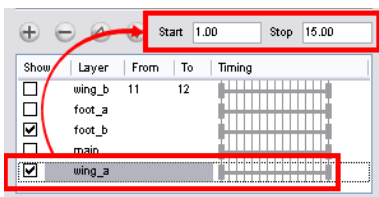


15. Once the source drawing is done, use the Morphing Tool Properties view and click on the destination drawing's name and draw it in the Camera or Drawing View.
16. Repeat steps Step 7 to Step 13 for each layer needed. You can add as many layers as you want.

17. Enable or disable the layers that you want to display or hide while drawing.

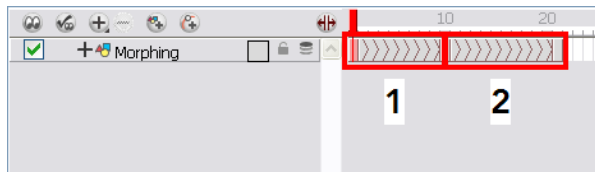


18. If you want to change the layer duration, click on the layer and change the start and stop numbers.



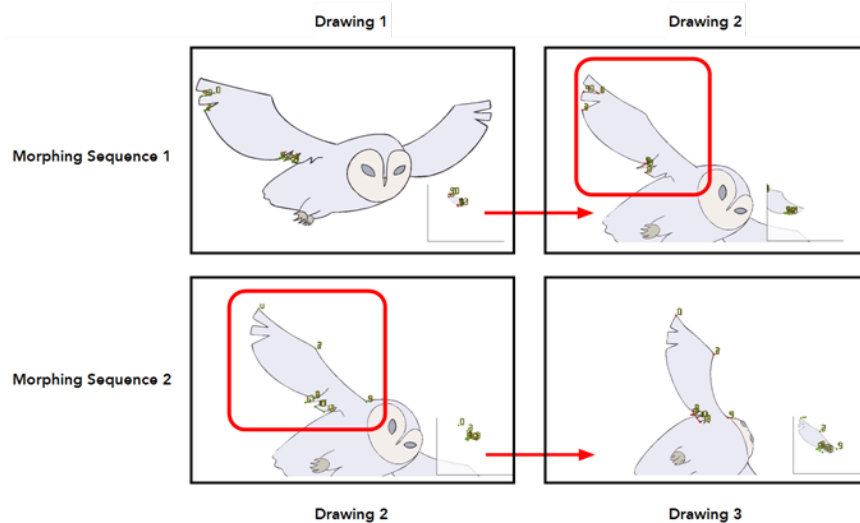
The length indicator changes according to the new values.

# Morphing Two Sequences in a Row



If you are morphing two sequences in a row, you will have to create a different set of hint points for each sequence.

Morphing two sequences in a row requires three drawings: 1, 2 and 3. Using these three drawings you create two morphing sequences; one sequence between drawings 1 and 2, and a second sequence between drawings 2 and 3.

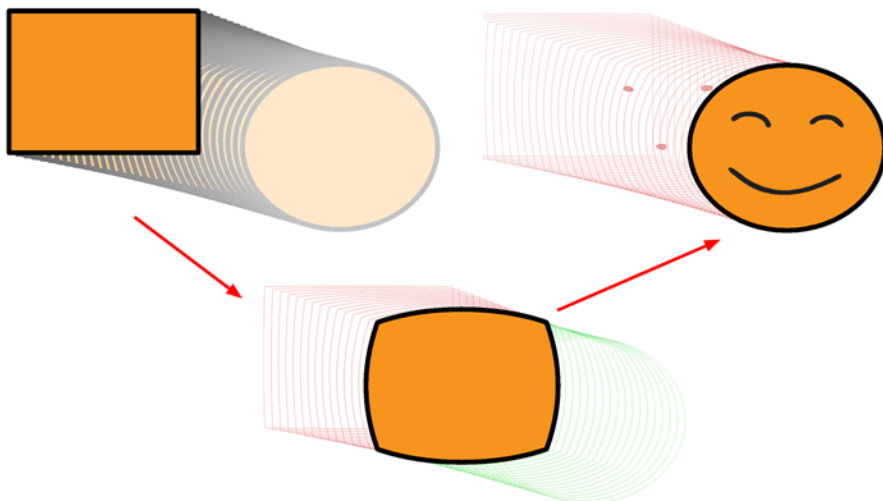


Each morphing sequence has its own set of parameters and hints. This means that Drawing 2 will have a set of hints for the first sequence and another set for the second sequence. The two sets of hints will not show at the same time. Each set of hints that appears always corresponds to the morphing sequence you are working on.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)

# Inserting a Morphing Key Drawing



Once you have a morphing sequence, you can add a Morphing Key drawing.

A Morphing Key drawing allows you to insert extra details into a morphing sequence. For example, during a morphing sequence you may need to insert a detail such as teeth or a mouth, this is easy to do when you use a Morphing Key drawing. Instead of creating an entirely new drawing, convert a computer generated in-between to a Morphing Key drawing and add your extra details to it and the next key drawing.

A Morphing Key drawing converts a computer generated morphing frame into a real drawing that you can edit. It splits the morphing sequence into two sequences, retaining any previous modifications.

## To insert a Morphing Key drawing:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the morphing frame you want to transform into a morphing keyframe.



2. Right-click on your selection and select **Morphing > Insert Morphing Key Drawing**.
  - In the top menu, you can also select **Animation > Morphing > Insert Morphing Key Drawing**.

The new Morphing Key drawing appears.

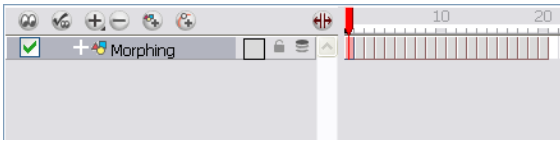


3. In the Drawing or Camera view, draw your new details on the Morphing Key drawing.
4. In the Playback toolbar, press the **Play** button to see the result.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence](#) on page 472

# Converting Morphing In-betweens to Drawings



Animate Pro lets you convert your morphing in-betweens to real drawings that you can edit.

This is useful when you manually edit your morphing sequence or if you prefer to have your animation timing in double frame instead of single frame.

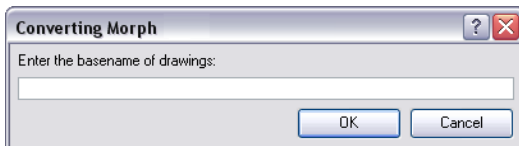
## To convert morphing in-betweens to drawings

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select a morphed drawing in the morphing sequence you want to convert to real drawing.

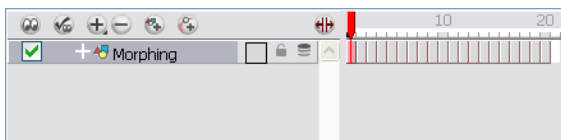


2. Right-click on your selection and select **Morphing > Convert Morphing to Drawings**.
  - ▶ In the top menu, you can also select **Animation > Morphing > Convert Morphing to Drawings**.

The Converting Morph dialog box opens.



3. Type the drawing basename you want to give to your new drawings. In this case, you could type **circle**.
4. Click on the OK button.

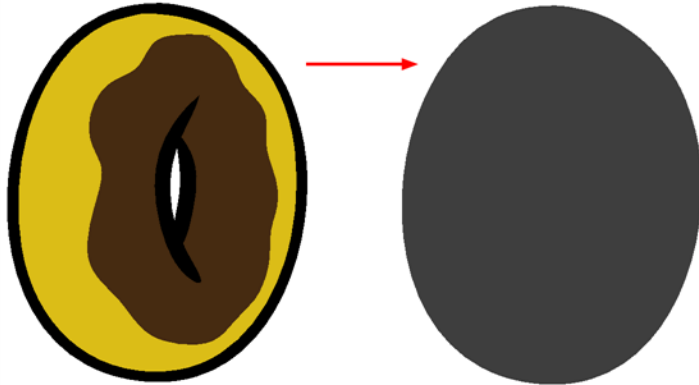


## Related Topics

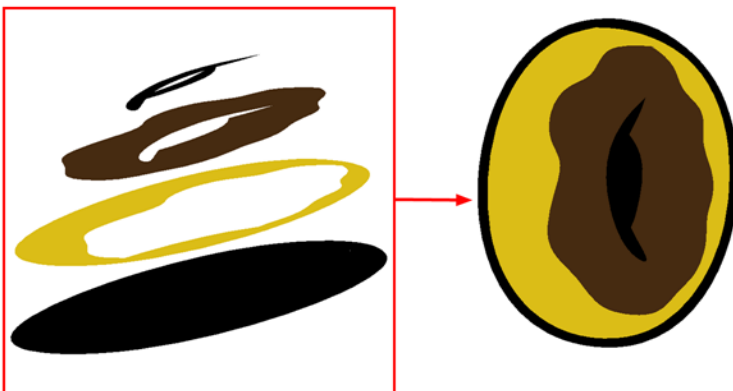
- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)

# Morphing Holes and Transparencies

To be able to morph shapes with holes or transparent colours, it is important to understand the process of analyzing and morphing a shape. Animate Pro begins the process by reading the exterior outline of the entire shape. So if you are morphing a doughnut, it will first read the entire circular shape and ignore the central hole.



Once the general morphing shape is analyzed, the system will carry on analyzing the interior details such as colour zones and holes.



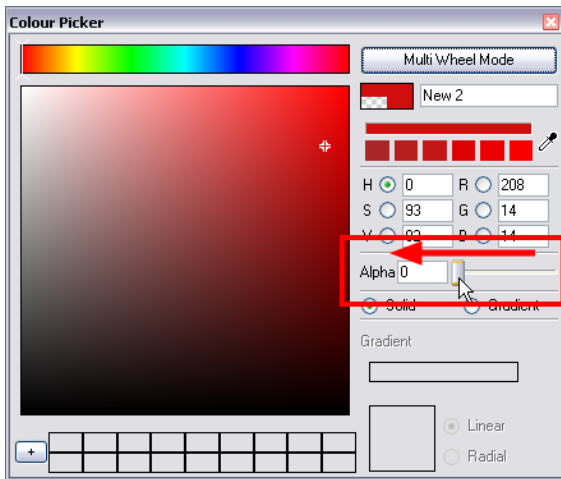
As you can see, because the hole was placed on top after the main shape was morphed, the centre is filled with an opaque brown colour. In order to avoid opaque holes, you have to paint the zone with a transparent colour so that you can control it and flatten the transparency to cut a hole through the main shape.

The same thing happens when you have holes painted with semi-transparent colours. To see through your shapes, you have to follow the same process as morphing shapes with holes.

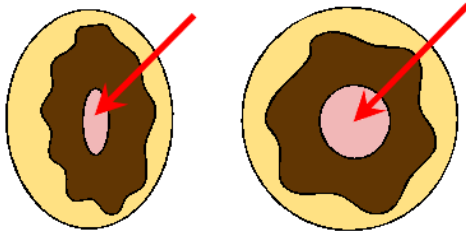


### To morph a shape with a hole:

1. In your Colour view, select an unused colour swatch and set its alpha (transparency) to 0.





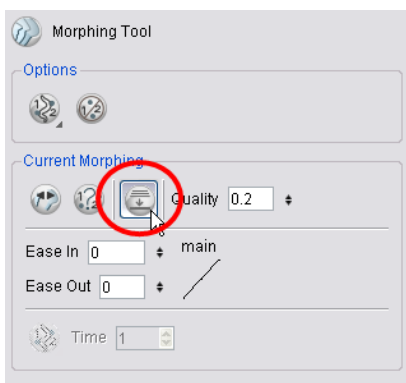
2. Paint both holes on the source and destination drawings.



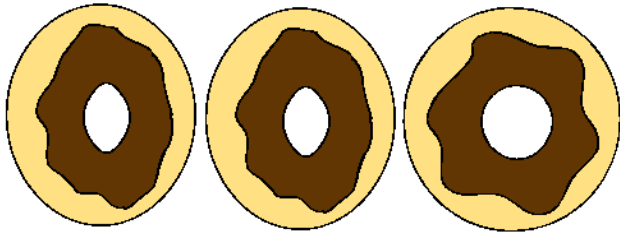
3. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, click on a cell in your morphing sequence.



4. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Morphing**  tool or press [F3].
5. In the Tool Properties view, enable the **Flatten**  option.



A hole appears in the shape.

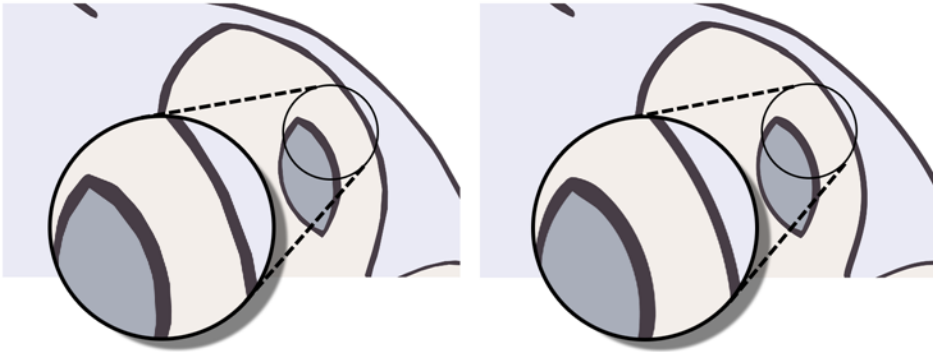


## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)

# Adjusting the Morphing Quality

To improve the morphing quality, zoom in close to a morphing animation when compositing.




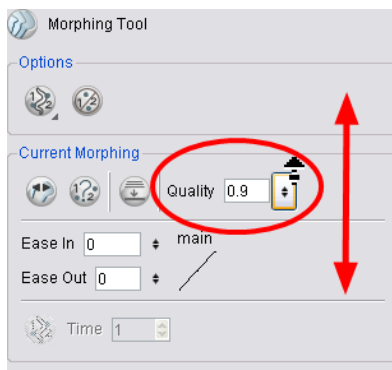
Increasing the quality improves the line shape between vector points. It also creates a larger file, so only increase quality when you are zooming in close.

**To set a morphing sequence's quality level:**

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, click on a cell in your morphing sequence.



2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Morphing**  tool or press [F3].
3. In the Tool Properties view, increase or decrease the quality level by dragging your cursor up or down. You can also type a new value directly in the text field.



## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)

# Tips and Tricks

This section provides a list of easy tips and tricks to help you morph your drawings more efficiently.

## Morphing Similar Shapes

Similar shapes have the same number of colour zones. This only applies to the number of zones and lines and not the number of points on a curve.

## Avoiding Crossing Zones During Morphing

If a zone inside a larger zone on the source drawing ends up outside on the destination drawing, the morphing will fail.

A line cannot cross another line during a morphing sequence.

For example, if you are morphing a face so it turns from the front to the side, the nose is located in the middle of the face on the source drawing. However if after morphing, the nose ends up outside or merged with the face profile line on the destination drawing, this will give undesirable results. You can avoid this by using morphing layers and splitting the nose on a separate layer.

## Using the Brush Tool as a Beginner

When learning about morphing, it is recommended that you use the Brush tool. You can use the Pencil line for simple closed shapes.

## Flattening Drawings

Flatten your drawing before starting a morphing sequence.

## Cleaning-up your Drawings

If you leave a dot, even the smallest one, it is possible that your morphing will create odd shapes. If the source line is closer to the dot than the destination line, the source line will morph into the dot and the destination line will disappear.

## Using the Same Colour Swatch

Use the same colour swatch between two drawings. You cannot morph between two different colour swatches even if they have the same RGB values. This can be turned to your advantage for complex morphing.

### Related Topics

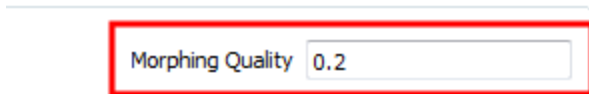
- [Creating a Basic Morphing Sequence on page 472](#)
- [Understanding Morphing on page 466](#)

# Morphing Preferences

To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Drawing Tab



## Morphing Quality

The Morphing Quality preference is used to set the default quality value for the morphing sequences. If you change this value, it will not affect the morphing sequence which was created previously.

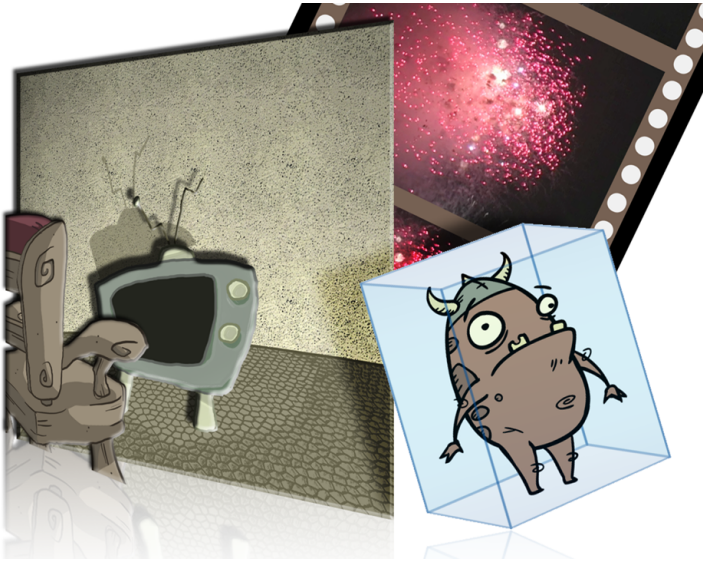
After a morphing sequence has been created using this default quality value, it's quality can be changed manually by using the Morphing Tool Properties.

## Related Topics

- [Adjusting the Morphing Quality on page 507](#)



# Chapter 9: Import



Toon Boom Animate Pro allows you to import external content as well as being able to draw directly in the software. This means that characters, backgrounds and videos created in other drawing, painting and multi-media programs can be brought in and animated. You can import QuickTime videos, pictures, multi-layered PSD files, as well as AI, SWF and PDF files. You can also scan your images in with a scanner and either import them as bitmap or vectorize them.

## Topics Covered

- [Importing Bitmap Images](#) on the next page
- [Importing PSD Files as Separate Layers](#) on page 521
- [Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout](#) on page 524
- [Scanning Images](#) on page 531
- [Importing AI and PDF Files](#) on page 536
- [Scanning Images](#) on page 531
- [Importing from Adobe Flash](#) on page 539
- [Importing QuickTime Movies](#) on page 543
- [Custom Vectorization Parameters](#) on page 545
- [Import Preferences](#) on page 558



For sound import, refer to [Importing a Sound File](#) on page 878.

# Importing Bitmap Images



Images can come in many different file formats and are usually saved in a format that retains the original specifications set by the image creator. Some formats are able to preserve transparency or transparent layers, while others are not resolution dependent due to their vector nature. Toon Boom Animate Pro supports the following formats: JPEG, BMP, PNG, TGA, PSD, TIFF, SGI, TVG, OMF, PAL, SCAN.


In this section, you will cover the following topics:

- [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) below
- [Importing and Vectorizing Images](#) on page 517
- [on page 1](#)

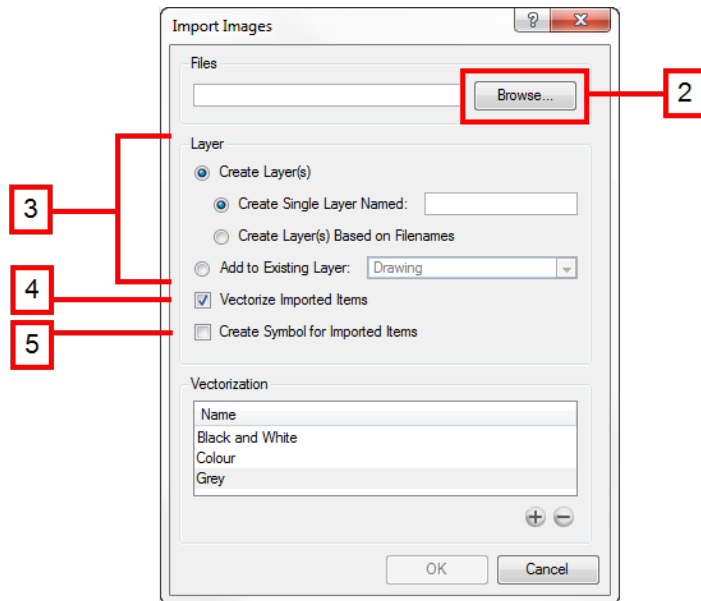
## Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization

A bitmap image is an image composed of pixels that is both size and resolution-dependant.

To import a bitmap image:

1. From the top menu select **File > Import > Images**. You can also click on the **Import Images**  button in the File toolbar.
  - In the Xsheet view, you can right-click anywhere in the frame area and select **Import > Drawings**. The Import Images dialog box opens.






2. In the Files section, click Browse to find and select one or several images on your computer.
3. In the Layer section, you have the option of creating a whole new layer for your image or adding the image to an existing layer.

- ▶ To create a new layer, select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Single Layer Named** and name your layer accordingly.

OR

- ▶ To create a new layer using the file name, select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Layer(s) Based on Filenames**.

OR

- ▶ To add the image to an existing layer, select **Layer > Add to Existing Layer** and select the layer already created in your Animate Pro file from the drop-down menu. If only vector  layers are

available in your scene (and therefore the drop-down menu), you will either have to Vectorize Imported Items, Create Symbols for imported Items or check both options to put your bitmap image on a vector layer.

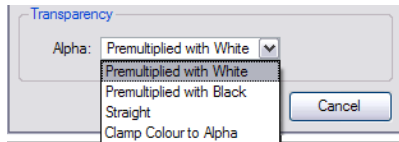


Refer to [Adding Images to a Bitmap Layer](#) on page 516 for more information.



If you vectorize your image using the Vectorize as Colour option, you can import it on a vector layer, and use vector tools on it.

4. In this case, uncheck the **Vectorize Imported Items** option.  
The vectorization options are hidden and the Transparency section appears.



5. In Toon Boom Animate Pro, if you want your bitmap images to be encapsulated in a symbol, enable the **Create Symbol for Imported Items** option. If not, disable the option. If you chose to add your image to an existing vector layer then the Create Symbol for Imported Items will automatically be checked and greyed out.



To learn more about Symbols, refer to [Library](#) on page 643.

6. Next, in the Alignment section, you must decide on the size and placement of your image within the camera frame. Depending on the Scene Settings (the height and width in pixels that you chose for your project), an image that you import may get scaled to the point where all its individual pixels become visible.



Be sure that you are in the Camera view's Render Mode when judging an imported image, otherwise it may appear blurry when judging an imported image, otherwise it may appear blurry.

The following three options are available

- Alignment > Rules > Fit
  - If your image orientation is portrait format, this selection will enlarge or shrink (but not distort) to your image height to match the full height of the camera frame.
  - If your image orientation is landscape format, this selection will enlarge or shrink (but not distort) your image width matches that of the camera frame.
- Alignment > Rules > Pan

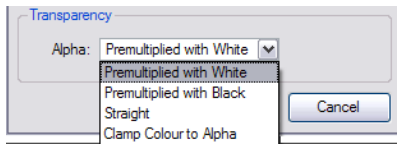
This selection achieves the opposite result of the Fit command.

- If your image orientation is portrait, its width will be made to match the width of the camera frame. As a result, part of the image's height will extend beyond the height of the frame.
- This can be useful if you want to make your background move up and down, or from left to right to make it appear as if the camera is panning, or to actually perform a camera pan.
- Alignment > Rules > Project Resolution

This selection will scale the image in proportion to the scene's resolution. The system looks at the resolution of the bitmap image, for example 4000 x 2000, then compares it to the scene's resolution, for example 1920 x 1080, and adjusts the scale factor in proportion. So in this example the bitmap would appear at 208% (4000/1920). If you import a bitmap that is 960 x 540 it will be displayed at 50% (960/1920) of the size of the project resolution.

7. The last step is to decide on the image's transparency from the Alpha drop-down menu. For this, there are four options available. These options deal with the way that the bitmap image will be antialiased,

more specifically the way that the pixels along the edge are blended in the RGBA (red, green, blue, alpha (transparent)) channels.



The options are:

- ▶ Premultiplied with White

Individual pixels at the edge of an image are blended with white.

- ▶ Premultiplied with Black

Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black.

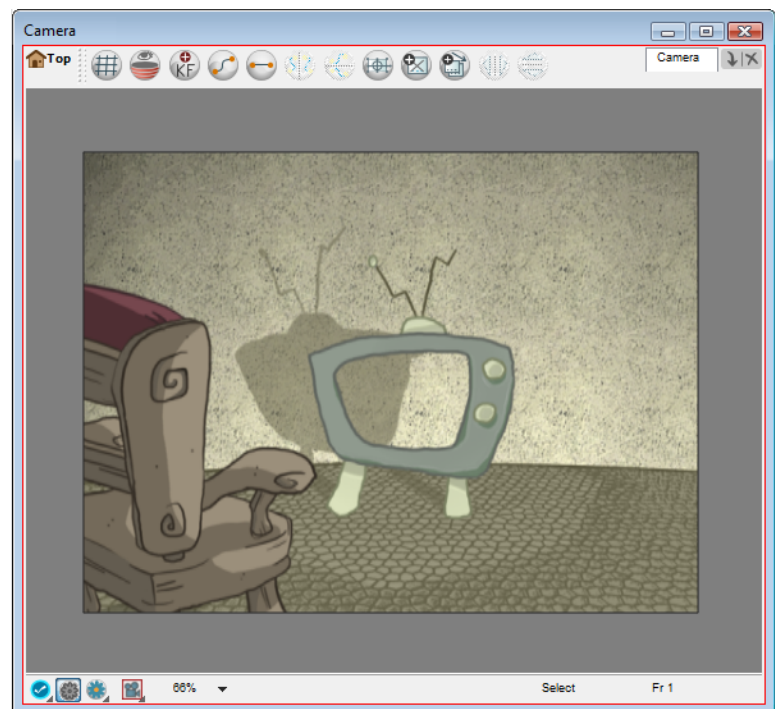
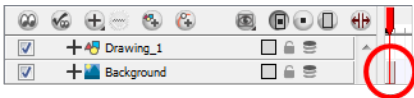
- ▶ Straight

Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black, white and greys.

- ▶ Clamp Colour to Alpha

Select this option if you want to premultiply the colour value with the alpha value. When the colour is clamped to the alpha, the colour value cannot be higher than the alpha value. If you have a pixel of value R=247, G=188, B=29 and the alpha is 50% (the image is 50% transparent, then the actual RGB value output would be half of the amounts listed above).

8. Click OK.




## Related Topics


- [Adding Images to a Bitmap Layer](#) on the next page
- [Importing and Vectorizing Images](#) on page 517

## Adding Images to a Bitmap Layer

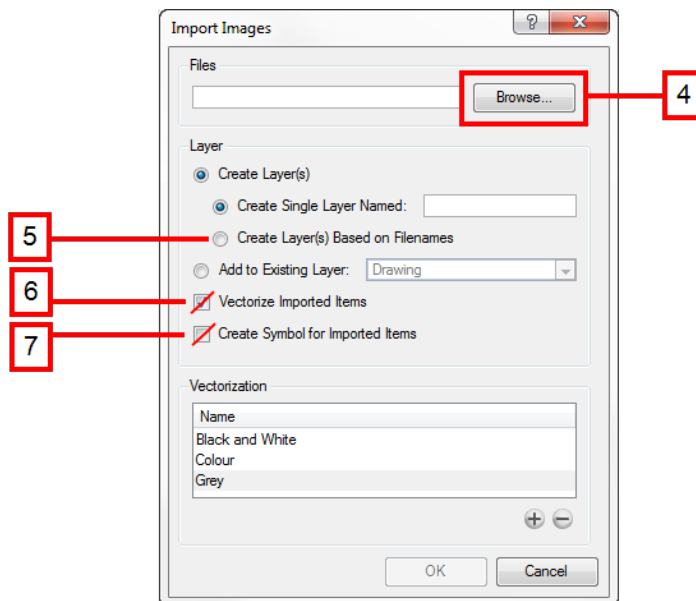
If you want to add more bitmap images to an existing bitmap layer:

1. In the Timeline view, if the bitmap image is contained in a Symbol, double-click on the bitmap symbol cell to edit the symbol. Otherwise, if the bitmap image is on a bitmap  layer, leave it as is.

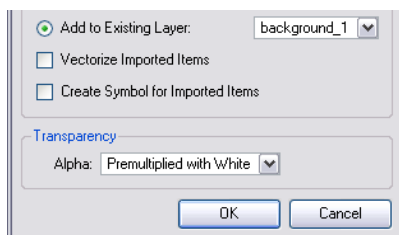


2. If necessary, in the Timeline view, pull on the red bracket to extend the exposure.
3. From the top menu, select **File > Import > Images**. You can also click on the Import Image  button.

The Import Images dialog box opens.



4. Click on the Browse button to find and select one or several images on your computer.
5. In the Layer section, choose **Layer > Add to Existing Layer** and select the bitmap layer already created in your Toon Boom Animate Pro file from the drop-down menu.
6. Uncheck the Vectorize Imported Items option.



7. Disable the Create Symbol for Imported Items option.
8. Click on the OK button.

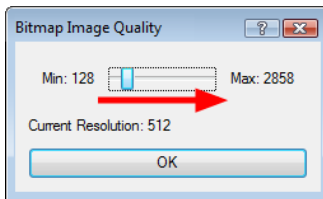
## Related Topics

- [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512
- [Bitmap Image Quality](#) below

# Bitmap Image Quality

If the bitmap images that you have imported look blurry or slightly pixelated, follow the steps below to clean-up the image. These steps will effect the quality of the preview in Camera view, but will have no effect on the final render.

1. In the Camera view, double-click on the bitmap image to enter its symbol if the image is encapsulated or simply select the bitmap image layer in the Timeline view if it isn't.
2. In the top menu, select **View > Bitmap Image Quality** or press [Ctrl] + [Q] (All Platforms).
3. The Bitmap Image Quality dialog box opens.

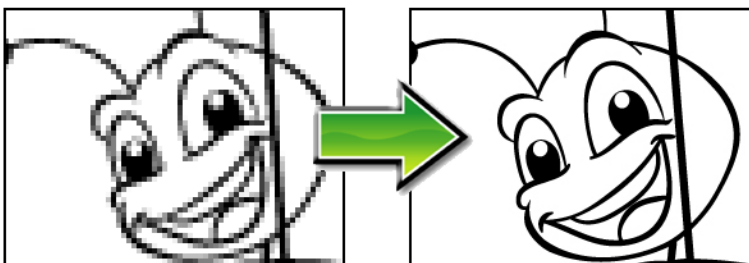


4. Click and drag the Bitmap Image Quality slider to the right to improve the quality.
5. Click on the OK button.
6. If you are inside a symbol, go to the top of the Camera view and click on Top to exit the symbol and return to your scene.

## Related Topics


- [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512

# Importing and Vectorizing Images

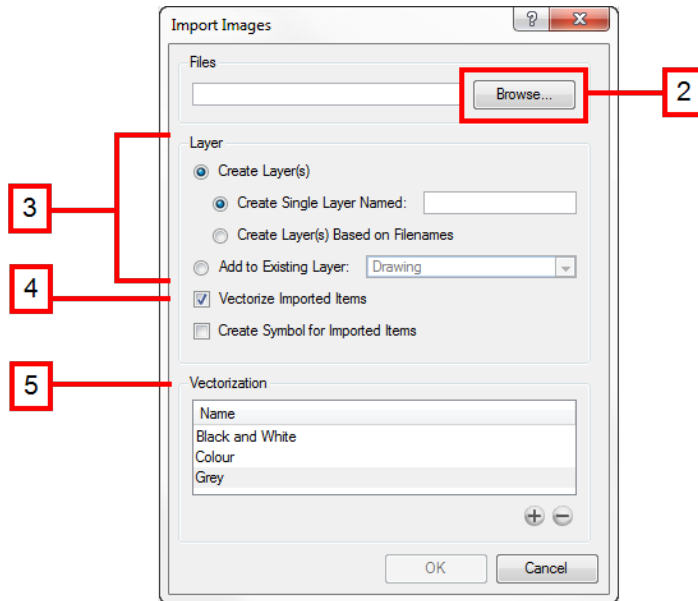


You can turn your images into 100% vector drawings, while still maintaining the sketchiness of a pencil line or into vector images with a bitmap fill. Both of these options can add “life” to an animation, which straight vectorization with smoothing does not.

## To import and vectorize a bitmap image:

1. In the top menu, select **File > Import > Images**. Or click on the **Import Image**  button in the File toolbar.

The Import Images dialog box opens.




2. Click on the Browse button to find and select one or several images on your computer.
3. You now have the option of creating a whole new layer for your image or adding the image to an existing layer.

- ▶ To create a new layer, select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Single Layer Named** and name your layer accordingly.

OR

- ▶ To create a new layer using the file name, select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Layer(s) Based on Filenames**.

OR

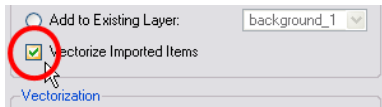
- ▶ To add the image to an existing layer, select **Layer > Add to Existing Layer** and select the layer already created in your Toon Boom Animate Pro scene from the drop-down menu. If only vector 

layers are available in your scene (and therefore the drop-down menu), you will either have to Vectorize Imported Items, Create Symbols for imported Items or check both options to put your bitmap image on a vector layer.

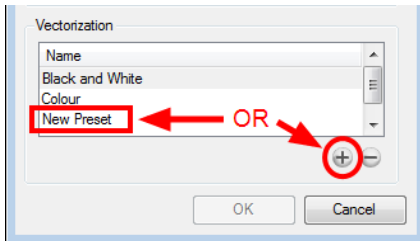



To mix bitmap images with vector drawings on the same layer, the bitmap image must be encapsulated in a symbol and vice versa. When you check the option Create Symbol for Imported Items, these symbols will also automatically be added to your Symbol Library.

4. In this case, enable the Vectorize Imported Items option.




- Under the Vectorization section, decide whether you would like to import your image in colour, grey scale or black and white, or if you would like to add a new preset.



- ▶ **Black and White:** This style vectorizes your drawings as a solid black line. This creates a 100% vector-based drawing.
- ▶ **Grey:** This style vectorizes your drawings as a mix of vector contour and greyscale bitmap filling.
- ▶ **Colour:** This style vectorizes your image as a colour bitmap texture within a vector frame.
- ▶ **New Preset:** The New Preset  button allows you to create your own custom vectorization parameters via the Vectorization Parameters interface.

The Vectorization Parameters dialog box will open automatically once you click on this button.

- ▶ **Delete Preset:** The Delete Preset  button allows you to delete any preset available in the list.



You can double-click on any of the presets at any time to open the Vectorization Parameters dialog box to customize your option.



The vectorized images are painted with the Vectorize Line colour swatch from the colour palette.



Refer to the [Custom Vectorization Parameters](#) on page 545 section to learn more about the custom parameters.

- Click **OK**.



You should now have a symbol or new layer that contains the vector drawing. If your image is contained into a symbol, in order to edit the image, you must double-click on the image's first cell in the Timeline view to enter the symbol.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512

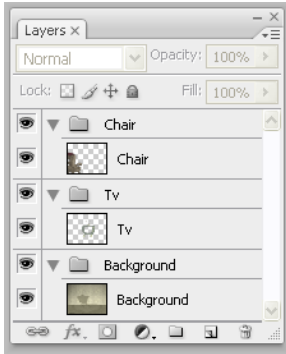


# Importing PSD Files as Separate Layers

The Adobe Photoshop PSD file format is unique in that they are able to retain multiple layers. This format has the advantage of the image remaining fully editable, in terms of any colour correction, effects, masking, transparency or compositing that was made to the PSD file in Adobe Photoshop.

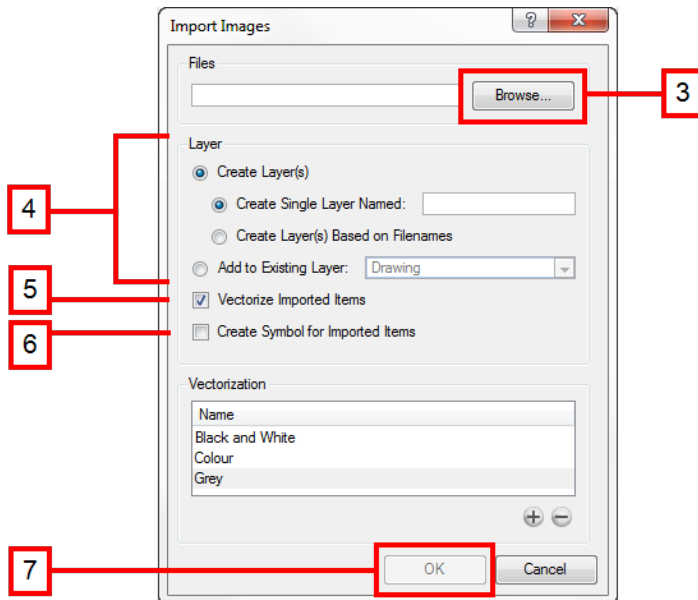
To import the separated layers of a PSD file:

1. Organize your Adobe Photoshop file so that all your layers are "grouped" into individual folders, or that all of the elements you want to import as a single layer in Toon Boom Animate Pro are grouped together in their own folder. Any layer that is not in a folder group, by itself or otherwise, will not be imported.



2. In Animate Pro, go to the top menu and select **File > Import > Images**. You can also click on the Import Image  button.

The Import Images dialog box opens.



3. Click Browse to find and select the image on your computer.
4. Select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Single Layer Named** or **Create Layer(s) Based on Filenames**.
5. Decide whether to check or uncheck the Vectorize Imported Items option.



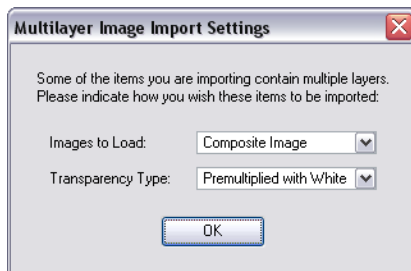
If you decide to use the Vectorize Imported Items option, please refer to [Importing and Vectorizing Images](#) on page 517 to learn more about vectorization settings.



If you decide to disable the Vectorize Imported Items options the Transparency and Alignment settings will appear in place of the Vectorization settings. Please refer to [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512 to learn more about these settings.

6. Enable or disable the **Create Symbol for Imported Items** if you want your layers to be contained in symbols or not.
7. Click **OK**.

The Multilayer Image Import Settings dialog box opens.

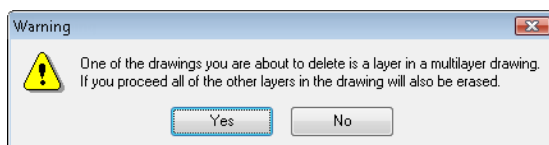


8. In the Image to Load field, select
  - **Composite Image** to flatten your layers.
  - **All Layers Image** to keep your layers separated.
9. Select the Transparency Type if applicable. Refer to the [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512 section to learn more the different Transparency Type options.
10. Click on the OK button.

Your image should appear as separate layers in the Timeline view, corresponding to the PSD layer group folders.



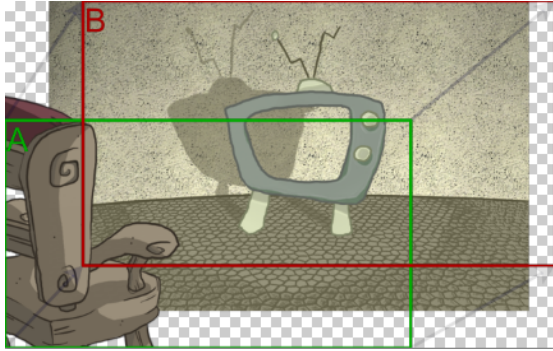
As a result of a multilayer PSD file import, artwork displayed in each of your layers is linked to the same source image. This means that if you use the command **Drawing > Delete Selected Drawings** to physically delete the drawing from the project folder, the exposed drawing will be deleted in all of the layers simultaneously. Once deleted from the project folder, the image can not be retrieved unless you re-import your psd file.



## Related Topics

- [Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout on the next page](#)

# Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout



Toon Boom Animate Pro allows you to export the content of your scene as a PSD layout. This can be helpful for scene setup, background art retakes or even planning of animation.



Refer to [Scene Setup on page 559](#) to learn more about the scene setup task.

---

## Related Topics

- [Exporting a Layout below](#)
- [Importing a Layout on page 528](#)

## Exporting a Layout

It is necessary to have all of your elements well positioned before you export your layout. If you plan to have a camera movement in this scene, you should also set this up, as you can export the camera keyframes to generate a clear and complete layout.

You could also create all of the layouts for your production in the same Toon Boom Animate Pro project. These layouts can be imported later on when you start each scene's project, this will help setup this will help to setup the scene and begin it's creation. These layout PSD files can also be used to create the background art of each scene and make sure everything is correctly framed and at the right size. Finally, you can also have a layer containing a drawing of the rough poses of the character or action and generate your layout posing from there.



Note that only the first frame of your drawing layers will be exported, as the layout image is one static PSD file.

---



Refer to the following chapters to learn more about scene setup, camera moves and drawing:

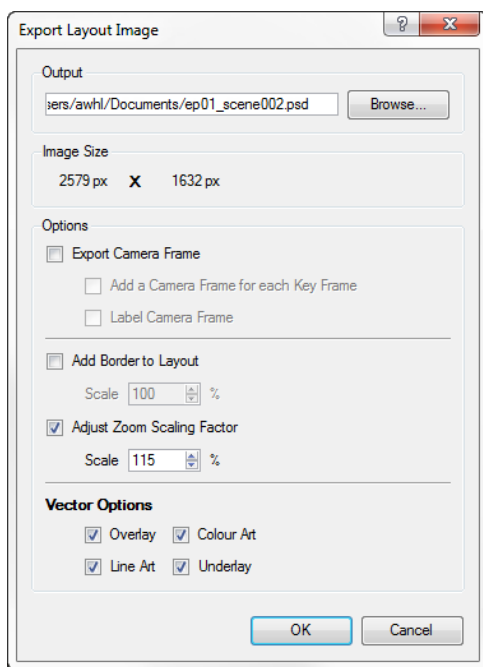
- [Drawing on page 129](#)
- [Scene Setup on page 559](#)
- [Animation Paths on page 907](#)

### To export your scene as a Layout:

Before you do this you should position your background elements, and everything you need as a reference in your scene, including a camera movement.

1. Select **File > Export > Layout Image** to export all the elements of your scene in the layout PSD file or if you want only the selected elements to be exported then select **File > Export > Layout Image from Selection**.

The Export Layout Image dialog box opens.



2. In the Export Layout Image dialog box setup the export parameters:

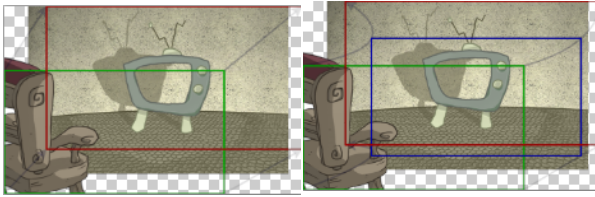
**Output:** In the output section, use the Browse button to select a location where to save your layout and name the resulting PSD file.

**Image Size:** This section displays the size of the PSD image file that will be exported. The resulting image will be 72 dpi as the standard television resolution and its size in pixel will fit your scene resolution settings. i.e HDTV, NTSC, PAL, etc. Note that if you have a camera movement going over the normal camera frame limit, for example a pan, the image will be bigger.

#### Options:

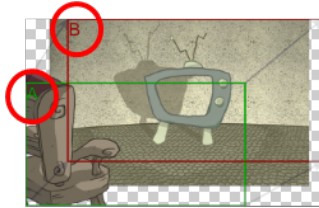
- **Export Camera Frame:** This option is disabled by default. You can enable it to export an additional layer to your PSD file displaying the camera frame on it.

**Add a Camera Frame for each Key Frame:**



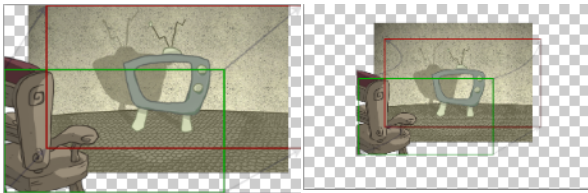
This option is disabled by default, meaning that if you have a camera movement with more than a starting and an ending point, only these positions of the camera frame will appear on the camera layer of the exported layout PSD file. You must enable this option if you need to the in-between keyframes to also be displayed.

#### Label Camera Frame:



Enable this option to add the camera position label in the top corner of the camera frames. The camera label is a single alphabet letter determining the order of the camera frame position.

#### Add Border to Layout:






This option is disabled by default, meaning the layout image will take the complete PSD area, cropped at the very edge of the canvas. You can enable this option to add a transparent area all around the layout. You must setup the size of this area by using the Scale field lower. The resulting image will be larger.

- ▶ **Scale:** Use the Scale field to set the size of the transparent border around the layout image. By default the value is set to 100%, meaning that the image will be exported as is with no transparent area around it. When you increase the percentage value the extra space will be added around the image to create the border.
- ▶ **Adjust Scaling Factor:** This option is enabled by default, meaning that when you have a camera zoom movement, the size of the layout image will be adjusted accordingly. The resulting percentage will be calculated following the maximal camera zoom value appearing in the layout. This allows the image to be exported at an appropriate resolution, preventing the layout image from appearing pixelated or blurry when the camera zoom occurs. You can disable this option to export the image layout at the normal size.
- ▶ **Scale:** When the Adjust Scaling Factor option is enabled, the Scale value is automatically calculated according to the maximum camera zoom in your layout. You can modify this value.

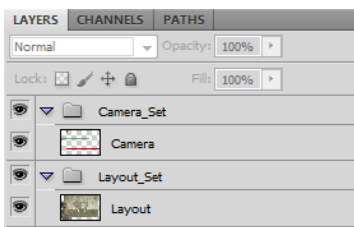
**Vector Options:** If you export one or more vector-based drawing layers in your layout image, you have the option to export only the drawing layers you want. Enable or disable the following options to export or prevent the export of the corresponding art layers.

- ▶ **Overlay:**  Enable this option to export the art contained in the Overlay layer of the drawings to be exported to the layout image. Disable this option to prevent this art layer from being exported.

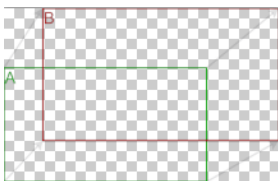
- ▶ **Line Art:**  Enable this option to export the art contained in the Line layer of the drawings to be exported to the layout image. Disable this option to prevent this art layer from being exported.
- ▶ **Colour Art:**  Enable this option to export the art contained in the Colour layer of the drawings to be exported to the layout image. Disable this option to prevent this art layer from being exported.
- ▶ **Underlay:**  Enable this option to export the art contained in the Underlay layer of the drawings to be exported to the layout image. Disable this option to prevent this art layer from being exported.

3. Click **OK** to validate the settings and export a PSD file of your layout.

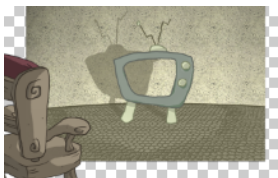
The resulting image will be a PSD file containing either one or two layers, each of which is contained in a corresponding group. These groups make the layout PSD file ready for a multi-layer PSD import.



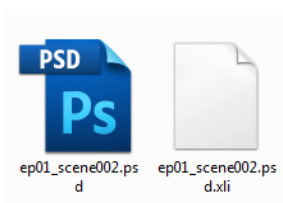
- **Camera\_Set:** This group contains the camera drawing layer. This group and layer will only appear in your layout image if you enabled the Export Camera option during the export.



- **Layout\_Set:** This group contains a merged drawing layer of all the content of your scene's first frame when you exported the layout image.



Along with your PSD file will be exported an XLI file. Do not delete this file and always keep it at the same location as the layout PSD file. These two files should not be renamed. This XLI file contains all the necessary information to be able to correctly import and automatically position your layout image in an Toon Boom Animate Pro project.





Refer to the next topic [Importing a Layout below](#) to learn how to import a layout image in Toon Boom Animate Pro.

---

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Layout below](#)
- [Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout on page 524](#)

# Importing a Layout

It is very easy to re-import into Toon Boom Animate Pro any layout PSD image which was already exported from a Toon Boom Animate Pro project.

This layout image should be imported at the beginning of the project to allow accurate scene planning.

---

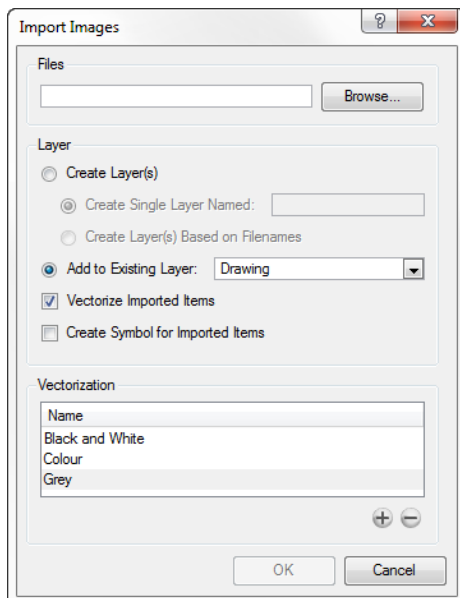


Refer to the previous topic [Exporting a Layout on page 524](#) to learn how to create an Toon Boom Animate Pro layout.

---

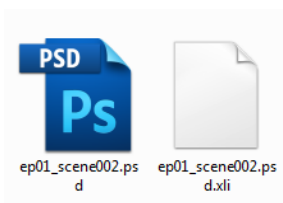
## To import a PSD layout file:

1. In your Toon Boom Animate Pro project, select **File > Import > Images**.  
The **Import Images** dialog box opens.

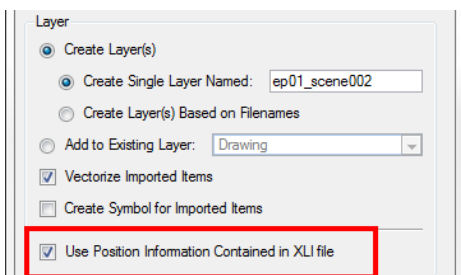


2. In the Files section, use the Browse button to find your PSD layout file. Note that this layout image file must have its corresponding XLI file in the same folder.



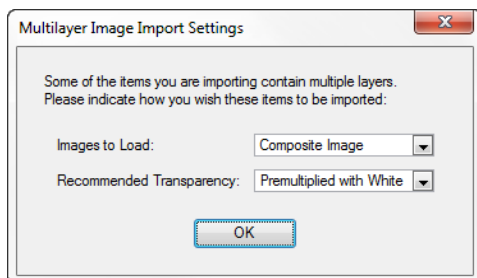


- Once you selected the layout image, you will notice a new option appearing in the Layer section.



- Use Position Information Contained in XLI file:** This option is enabled by default, meaning that when you import the layout image in your scene, it will be automatically positioned to fit the original layout scene. Creating an accurate layout guide. You can disabled this option if you want the imported layout image to be imported according to the normal behavior of the import process. The layout image will be incorrectly aligned as it was when it was first created.
- Select **Layer > Create Layer(s) > Create Single Layer Named** or **Create Layer(s) Based on Filenames**.
  - Decide whether to check or uncheck the **Vectorize Imported Items** option.
  - Enable or disable the **Create Symbol for Imported Items** if you want your layers to be contained in symbols or not.
  - Click on the **OK** button.

The Multilayer Image Import Settings dialog box opens.



- In the **Image to Load** field, select
  - Composite Image:** To import the Camera and Layout layers merged together.
  - All Layers Image:** To keep your Camera and Layout layers separated.
- Select the **Transparency Type**. Refer to the [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization](#) on page 512 section to learn more the different **Transparency Type** options.
- Click on the **OK** button.

Your image should appear as separate layers in the Timeline view, corresponding to the PSD layer group folders **Camera\_Set** and **Layout\_Set**. You can now use this layout as a guide for scene settings.



Refer to [Scene Setup on page 559](#) chapter to learn more about the scene setup task.

---

## Related Topics

- [Exporting a Layout on page 524](#)
- [Exporting and Re-Importing a PSD Layout on page 524](#)

# Scanning Images



Toon Boom Animate Pro can receive images from any TWAIN device such as scanners and digital cameras. These images can either be loaded into your scene as bitmaps or converted into vector-based images that can be edited using Toon Boom Animate Pro.

If your operating system does not automatically recognize your device after it has been connected, you must install the correct TWAIN drivers in order to access its contents. You can usually download the drivers from the device manufacturer's website.

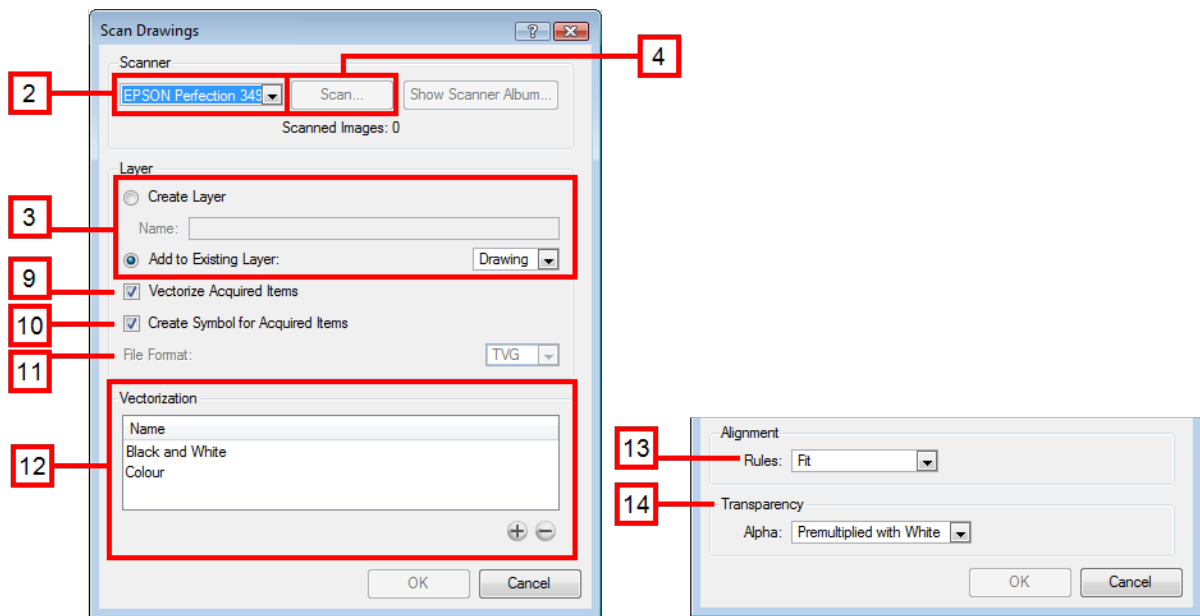


TWAIN drivers are not always created for every model of scanner or digital camera. If TWAIN drivers do not exist for your device, you will not be able to use it with Toon Boom Animate Pro.

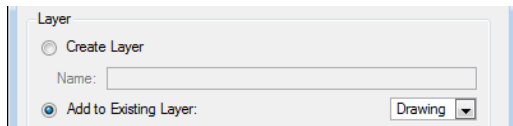
You can scan in a single image or multiple images in the same session. Before you begin scanning, you need to select your scanning device.

## To scan drawings from a TWAIN device:

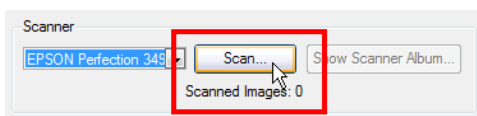
1. In the top menu, select **File > Import > From Scanner**.  
The Scan Drawings window opens.



2. Select your scanner or other supported TWAIN device from the drop-down menu. If none are available, check your device to ensure that it is properly connected to your computer. If your device still does not appear in the drop-down menu, you may have to shut down and relaunch the software.
3. You can import the images to scan into an existing layer or create a new one.



- ▶ To import the image into a new layer, enable the **Create Layer** option. In the Name field, type a name for the layer.
  - ▶ To import the image into an existing layer, select **Add to Existing Layer** and select the layer from the drop-down list.
4. In the Scanner section, click **Scan** to open the scanning dialog box for your scanner.

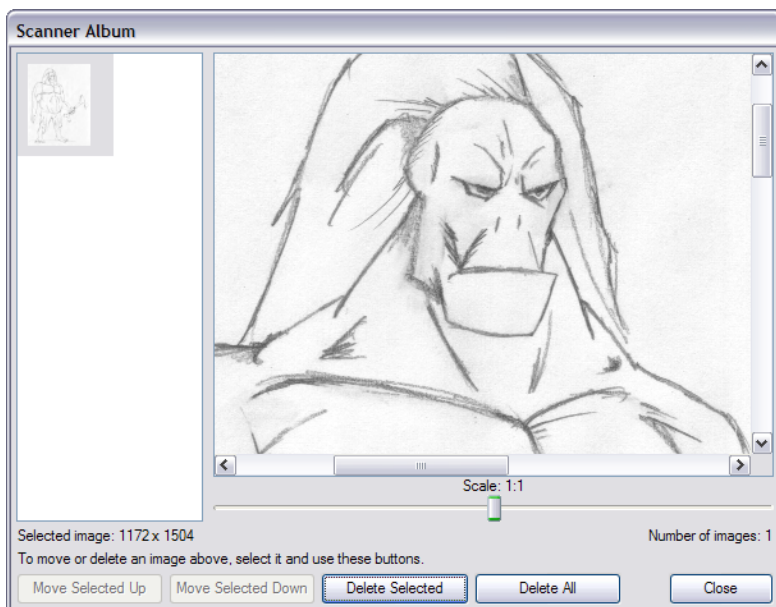


5. Use the settings from your scanner to scan your drawings.

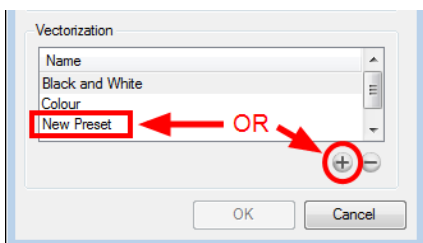



You must scan in colour if you want to import your images as vectorized textures (mix of vector and bitmap) and in black and white if you want a solid black outline.

6. Close the scanner dialog box when you are done.  
The Scanner Album opens.




7. Use the Scanner Album to preview the scanned drawings, remove drawings from the list or change their order. Animate Pro will load the drawings based on their order in the Scanner Album.
8. Click **Close** to close the Scanner Album when you are done.  
You will return to the Scan Drawings dialog box.
9. If you want to vectorize the images you import, select the Vectorize Imported Items option.
10. If you want the imported images to be encapsulated in a Symbol, enable the Create Symbol for Imported Items option.
11. In the File Format drop-down list, select the file format in which you want to scan your drawings.  
If you chose to vectorize the images as black and white, **SCAN** is the best file format to choose.
12. If you chose to vectorize your images, in the Vectorization section, you need to decide whether you would like to import your image in colour, black and white, or if you would like to add a new preset.



- ▶ **Black and White:** This style vectorizes your drawings as a solid black line. This creates a 100% vector-based drawing.
- ▶ **Colour:** This style vectorizes your image as a colour bitmap texture within a vector frame.
- ▶ **New Preset:** The New Preset  option or button allows you to create your own custom vectorization parameters via the Vectorization Parameters interface.

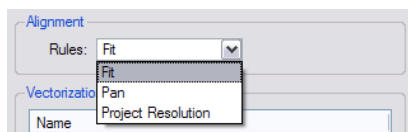
The Vectorization Parameters dialog box will open automatically once you click on this button.

- ▶ **Delete Preset:** The Delete Preset  button allows you to delete any preset available in the list.



Refer to the [Custom Vectorization Parameters](#) on page 545 section to learn more about the custom parameters.

13. If you choose **NOT** to vectorize your images, then you must decide on the size and placement of your image within the camera frame. Depending on the Scene Settings (the height and width in pixels that you chose for your project), any image that you import may be scaled to the point where all its individual pixels become visible.



The following three options are available:

▸ **Alignment > Rules > Fit**

- If your image orientation is portrait, this selection will scale up or shrink (but not distort) your image's height to match the full height of the camera frame.
- If your image orientation is landscape, this selection will scale up or shrink (but not distort) your image's size so that it's width matches that of the camera frame.

▸ **Alignment > Rules > Pan**

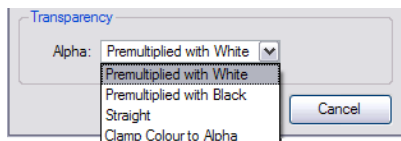
This choice will perform the opposite operation of the Fit command.

- If your image orientation is portrait, its width will be made to match the width of the camera frame. As a result, part of the image's height will extend beyond the height of the frame.
- If your image orientation is landscape, the image will extend beyond the width of the camera frame.
- This can be useful if you want to make your background move up and down, or from left to right to make it appear as if the camera is panning, or to actually perform a camera pan.

▸ **Alignment > Rules > Project Resolution**

This selection will scale the image up or down in proportion to the scene's resolution. It looks at the resolution of the bitmap image, for example 4000 x 2000, then compares it to the scene's resolution, for example 1920 x 1080, and adjusts the scale factor in proportion. So in this example the bitmap would appear at 208% (4000/1920). If you import a bitmap that is 960 x 540 it will be displayed at 50% (960/1920) of the size of the project resolution.

14. The last step is to decide on the image's transparency. For this, there are four options available. These options deal with the way that the bitmap image has been antialiased; in other words, the edge blending that has been used to transitions between RGBA (red, green, blue, alpha (transparent)) channels.



The options are:

▸ **Premultiplied with White**

Individual pixels at the edge of an image are blended with white.

▸ **Premultiplied with Black**

Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black.

▸ **Straight**

Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black, white and greys.

▸ **Clamp Colour to Alpha**

Select this option when you want to premultiply the colour value with the alpha value. When the colour is clamped to the alpha, the colour value cannot be higher than the alpha value. It calculates the real colour value faster. When the RGB values are multiplied with the alpha value, that is to say, if you have a pixel of value R=247, G=188, B=29 and the alpha is 50% or the image has a 50% transparency, then the actual RGB values output would be half of the amounts listed above.

15. Click **OK** to import the images into your scene.

## Related Topics

- [Cleaning Scanned Drawings](#) on page 295

# Importing AI and PDF Files



You can import AI and PDF files into Toon Boom Animate Pro, it will convert your files to the Toon Boom format (TVG) and create a colour palette based on the colour settings of the original file.



Only Legacy versions of Adobe Illustrator are supported. SWF's exported, including Actionscript 2 and Actionscript 3, cannot be imported.

---

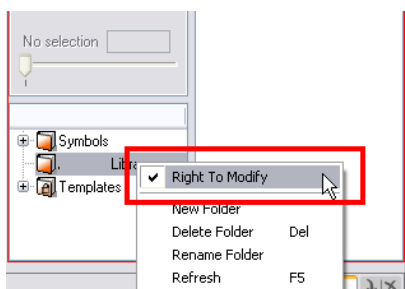
## To import an AI or PDF file:

Go to the Library view and right-click on the Stage Library folder. Choose Right to Modify to unlock the library folder. Make sure the Lock icon disappears from the folder to unlock it, otherwise your library will remain locked and not editable.



The option to import will not be available until this step is completed successfully

---







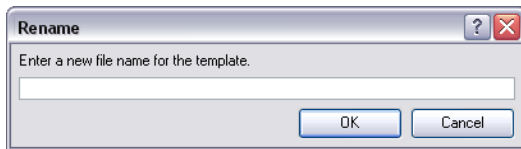
For more information about the Library, see the [Library on page 643](#) chapter.


1. In the top menu, select **File > Import > SWF, Illustrator Files to Library**. Orright-click on any unlocked folder and select **Import Fi les**.

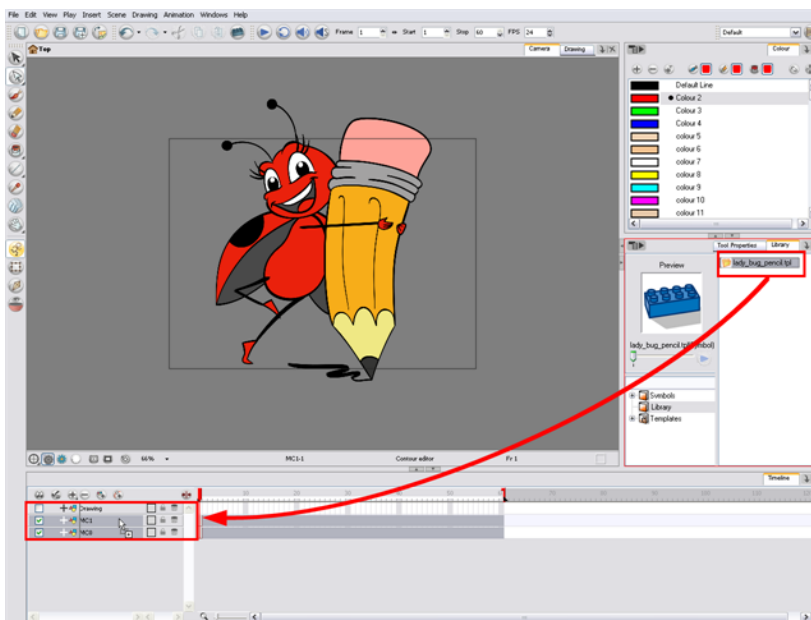
The browser window opens.

2. Find and select your AI file in the Import Files dialog box and click on Open.

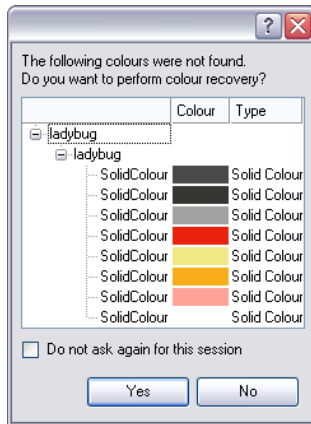
The Rename dialog box opens.



3. Enter a name for the new template or keep the name of the original AI or PDF file.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click and drag the new template folder from the Library view to the left side of the Timeline view; wait until the copy cursor  appears before releasing the mouse button.



6. The colour recovery dialog box appears, requesting that a colour recovery should occur. Before clicking on the Yes button, you have the option to select the **Do Not Ask Again For This Session** option. This might be useful if you plan to import multiple AI drawings.



This process will import the colour palette used to create the Illustrator file and create a new palette in Toon Boom Animate Pro under the imported file's name.



Refer to the [Import Preferences](#) on page 558 section to learn about the Support CMYK in PDF/Illustrator Import preferences.



When importing an Illustrator or PDF file in Toon Boom Animate Pro, by default the file will be imported as separate layers. The import will use the Illustrator file's top level groups as separate layer names. However, you can change this behaviour by disabling the PDF/Illustrator Import as Separate Layers, to import your file as a single layer. Refer to [Import Preferences](#) on page 558 to learn more.

## Related Topics

- [Importing and Vectorizing Images](#) on page 517
- [Importing from Adobe Flash](#) on the facing page
- [Import Preferences](#) on page 558

# Importing from Adobe Flash



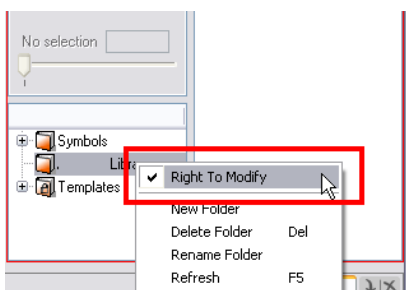
If a project was started in Adobe Flash and it needs a more professional boost, such as camera movements or multiplaning it can easily be imported into Toon Boom Animate Pro. The actual \*.fla file is not supportable, so you have to export your project to an \*.swf movie.

## To import a Flash file:

1. Go to the Library view and right-click on the Stage Library folder. Choose **Right to Modify** to unlock the library folder. Make sure the Lock icon disappears from the folder to unlock it, otherwise your library is locked and not editable.



The option to import will not be available until this step is completed successfully.



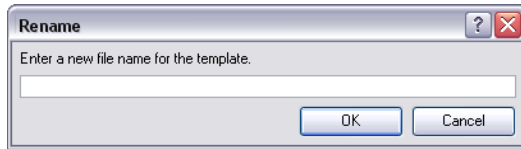
For more information about the Library, see the [Library on page 643](#) chapter.


2. In the top menu, select **File > Import > SWF, Illustrator Files to Library**. You can also right-click on any unlocked folder and select Import Files.

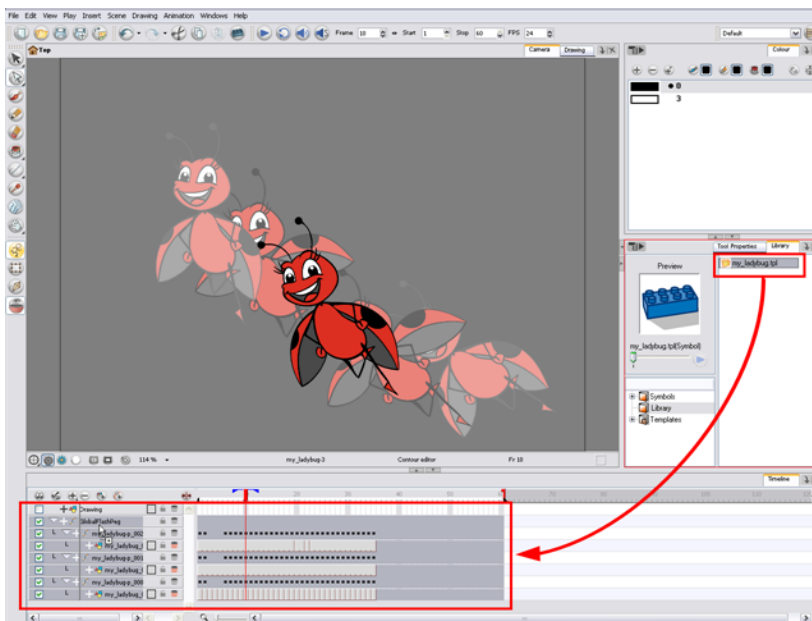
The browser window opens.

- Find and select your .swf file in the Import Files dialog box and click on Open.

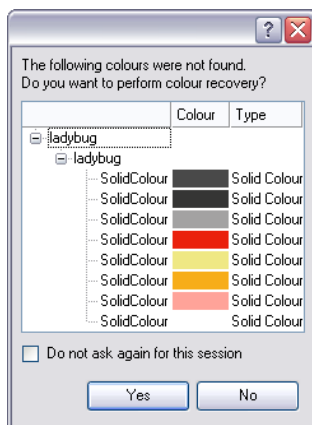
The Rename dialog box opens.



- Enter a name for the new template or keep the name of the original \*.swf file.
- Click on the OK button.
- Click and drag the new template folder from the Library view to the left side of the Timeline view; wait until the copy cursor  appears before releasing the mouse button.



- The colour recovery dialog box appears, requesting that a colour recovery should occur. Before clicking on the Yes button, you have the option of selecting the Do Not Ask Again For This Session option. This might be useful if you plan to import multiple \*.swf movies.



This process will import the colour palette used to create the Flash file and create a new palette in Toon Boom Animate Pro under the imported file's name.



All the Flash layers are automatically attached to a parent peg called GlobalFlashPeg. **DO NOT DELETE THIS PEG.** To maintain the look of your movie, it is important that this peg is not deleted, nor its child layers detached.

The Adobe Flash file layers should now appear in the Timeline view. Symbols that were created in Flash become regular drawing layers, but can be reconverted into Symbols in Toon Boom Animate Pro. Symbols within symbols or drawings within symbols collapse into their corresponding parent symbol.



Some of the layers contained in your SWF movie could end up being combined in a single layer as a result of optimization enhancement in your movie file. You can easily bring these elements back on separate layers. Refer to the [Distribute To Layers](#) below section to learn how.

In addition, all drawing elements that are dynamically linked to the Toon Boom Animate Pro file are grouped together in one folder. This means that when you scroll through the Drawing Substitution preview in the Library view, the different hand, leg, tentacles, antennae, torso and facial positions are all organized together.



## Related Topics

- [Distribute To Layers](#) below
- [Importing AI and PDF Files](#) on page 536

# Distribute To Layers

In some instances, due to an optimization enhancement in the exported SWF file (CS4), some of the layers might be combined as a single layer. In that case, use the Distribute to Layers feature to quickly redistribute these elements onto individual layers again.

### To distribute to layer:

1. In the Tools toolbar, click on the Select  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select the drawing you want to redistribute the elements from. To select the all the elements of the selected drawing layer, press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
3. From the top menu, select **Drawing > Distribute to Layers**. You can also click on the **Distribute to Layers**  button in the Select tool's Tool Properties view.

The number of drawing layers corresponding to the different grouped elements are created in the Timeline view.

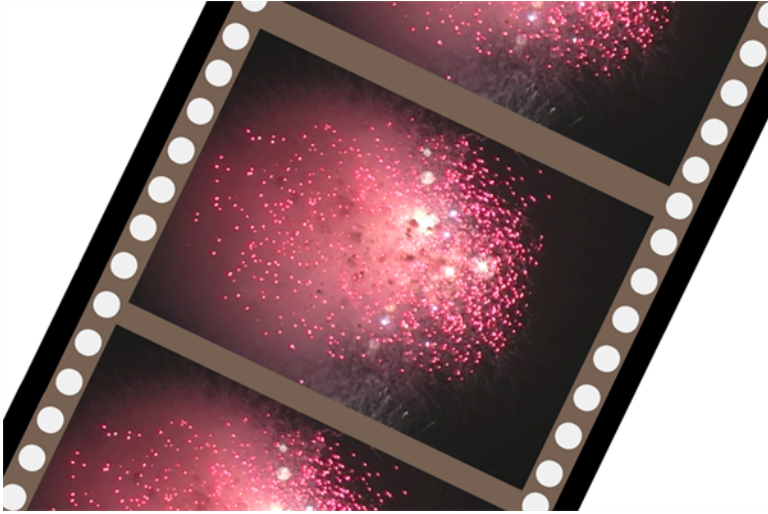
- The selected elements in the original drawing layer will be removed.
  - Each element will be distributed into each new drawing layer.
4. Repeat the process for every drawing you need to distribute the element from.

## Related Topics

- [Importing from Adobe Flash](#) on page 539

- [Select Tool Properties](#) on page 184

# Importing QuickTime Movies

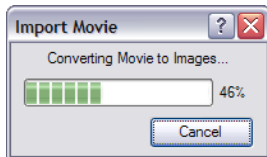


When creating an animation, it is not unusual to embed moving elements saved as videos within the animation. Toon Boom Animate Pro allows you to import QuickTime movies into your project.

## To Import a QuickTime movie:

1. In the top menu, select **File > Import > Movie**.
2. Browse for the QuickTime movie to import and click **Open**.

A progress bar appears.



The Import Drawings dialog box opens.



Do not browse for the movie file again; leave the automatically generated field text as "many files selected".



3. Make your decisions for the Layer, Alignment and Transparency.



Refer to the [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization on page 512](#) section for further details about the **Import Drawings** dialog box.

---

4. Click **OK**.

The QuickTime video appears in the Timeline view as an image sequence. You should be able to scroll through the film frame-by-frame, just as you would scroll through your animation drawing-by-drawing.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Bitmap Image without Vectorization on page 512](#)




# Custom Vectorization Parameters

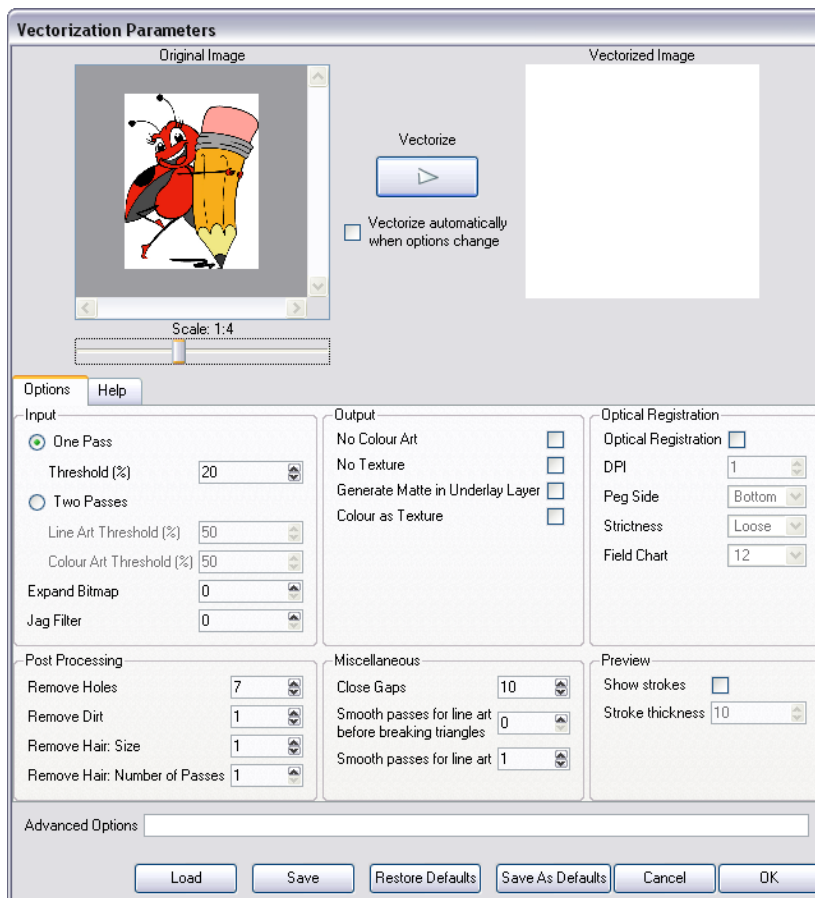
You can create your own vectorization settings with Toon Boom Animate Pro.

You can use an interface to select and test the different options and you can also type in some advanced settings.

To open the Vectorization Parameters dialog box:

1. Select **File > Import > Images**.  
You can also open it from any other Import option that allows you to customize the vectorization parameters (i.e. From Scanner).
2. Browse for and select your file and decide on your Layer options.
3. In the Vectorization section, click on the **Add New Preset**  button.

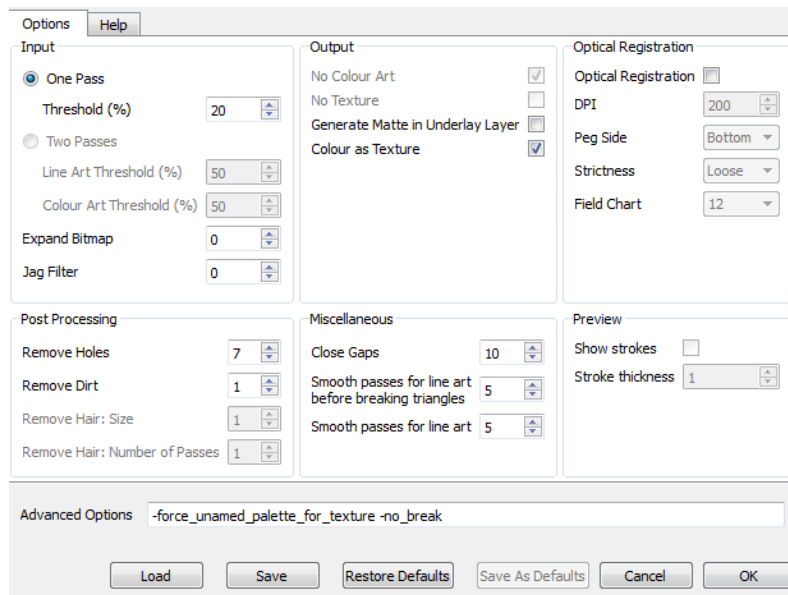
The Vectorization Parameters dialog box appears.



- [Options Tab](#) below
- [Help Tab](#) on page 547

## Options Tab

The options tab contains the main vectorization settings. More settings are available in the Help tab.



## Input

The input filters are applied to the bitmap image before it is vectorized.

- **One Pass and Two Passes:**
  - If you select **one pass**, one threshold value will be applied to both the Line and Colour Art. For drawings with distinct vector-style lines of mattes, you only need one pass.
  - If you select **two passes**, you can apply a different threshold value to each layer.

For grayscale drawings, you may want to pass through the vectorization process twice to apply different threshold values to the Line and Colour Art layers.

- **Threshold:** Determines which values in the scanned image are considered part of the Line or Colour Art layer and what will be eliminated from the vectorized drawing, 0% (zero) is white and 100% is black. The threshold is between those two values.
- **Expand Bitmap:** Enter a value to scale the bitmap to detect small variations in the line. Use this option if you scanned a grayscale image and want to preserve small variations in the texture that will be applied to the line art.
- **Jag Filter:** Enter a value to scale back the bitmap to remove some of the line's roughness. If you have a drawing that appears quite rough, use the jag filter to eliminate excess strokes in the final drawing.

## Output

The output filters are applied during the vectorization process.

- **No Colour Art:** Does not generate filling zones in the Colour Art layer.
- **No Texture:** Does not generate texture in the Line Art in the final images. Select this option to create solid lines in the final Line Art.
- **Generate Matte in Underlay Layer:** Creates an opaque zone behind your drawing's lines to avoid seeing through the layers.
- **Colour as Texture:** Converts colour values into a texture layer.

## Optical Registration

The optical registration options are used to automatically align drawings based on the position of peg holes on the animation paper. The peg holes must appear in the scanned drawings for the optical registration to work.

- **Optical Registration:** Use peg holes to align drawings optically.
- **DPI:** Type the dots-per-inch value of your image.
- **Peg Side:** Select the position of the peg holes on your drawings. Identify whether they are on the top, bottom, left or right.
- **Strictness:** Determine how exact the location of the peg holes must be for the software to recognize them. You have two values to choose from:
  - **Strict:** The peg holes must be in a tightly defined area to be recognized.
  - **Loose:** The peg holes can be recognized somewhere in a larger area. This is the recommended setting.
- **Field Chart:** Select 12 or 16 to indicate the size of your animation paper.

## Post Processing

The Post Processing filters are applied to the final vector images.

- **Remove Holes:** Removes holes of a specified value that might make painting difficult.
- **Remove Dirt:** Removes stray marks and dirt of a specified value. Try a value around 500.
- **Remove Hair:** Removes small strokes that have no line art.
- **Remove Hair: Number of Passes:** The number of times the drawing will be analyzed to identify hair marks.

## Miscellaneous

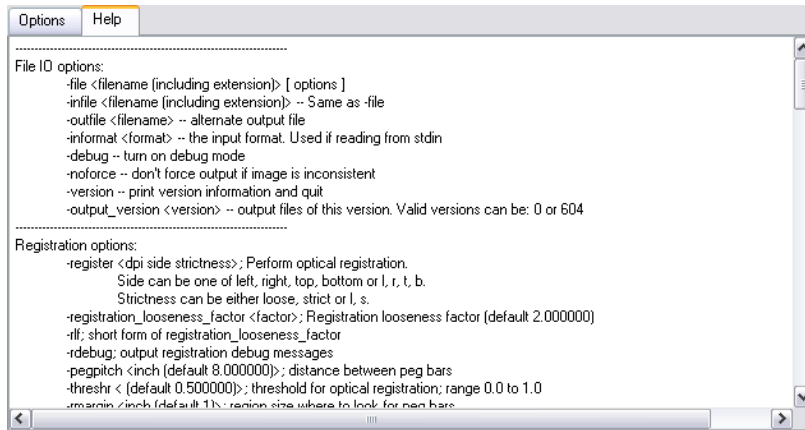
- **Close gaps:** Closes gaps in the Colour Art so that you can paint it.
- **Smooth passes for Line Art before breaking triangles:** The number of times the smoothing operation runs before creating the triangles that break lines in your drawing. If unnecessary triangles are appearing in your drawing, increase this value.
- **Smooth passes for Line Art:** The number of times the smoothing operation is performed after the triangles have been created. This further smooths the Line Art.

## Preview

- **Show strokes:** Shows the strokes in the Vectorized Image panel.
- **Stroke thickness:** Shows the size of the strokes.

## Help Tab

The Help tab contains the most advanced vectorization settings. You must type those in the Advanced Option fields located at the bottom of the Options tab.



## File IO Options

- file** <filename (including extension)> [ options ]
- infile** <filename (including extension)>; same as -file
- outfile** <filename>; alternate output file
- informat** <format>; the input format. Used if reading from stdin
- debug**; turn on debug mode
- noforce**; don't force output if image is inconsistent
- version**; print version information and quit
- output\_version** <version>; output files of this version. Valid versions can be: 0 or 604
- force\_unnamed\_palette\_for\_texture**; will generate a texture in TVG's internal palette

## Registration Options

- register** <dpi side strictness>; perform optical registration.
  - Side can be one of left, right, top, bottom or l, r, t, b.
  - Strictness can be either loose, strict or l, s.
- register\_center\_peg\_holes**; will use only round holes in 16 fields page
- rcph**; short form of register\_center\_peg\_holes
- registration\_looseness\_factor** <factor>; registration looseness factor (default 2.000000)
- rlf**; short form of registration\_looseness\_factor
- rdebug**; output registration debug messages
- pegpitch** <inch (default 8.000000)>; distance between peg bars
- threshr** <(default 0.500000)>; threshold for optical registration; range 0.0 to 1.0
- rmargin** <inch (default 1)>; region size where to look for peg bars
- peg\_distance\_from\_center** <inch (default 5.25)>; peg distance from centre of the image

**-pdfc**; short form of `-peg_distance_from_center`

**-out\_peg\_position** <side (default same)>; wanted position of the peg on the drawing.

- Can be one of right, left, top, bottom (or r, l, t, b) or same.
- A rotation will be performed if it is different from the side passed to `-register`.

**-output\_peg\_matrix**; output the peg transformation matrix on standard output.

**-scanner\_calibrate**; < (default 1.0000 1.0000) > x and y scale factors to be applied to scanner image.

## Filtering Options

**-pixel** <pixel\_shape (default '4x3')>; Valid values: 4x3

**-gap** <worldUnits (default 10)>; close gaps up to this big

**-pencil**; generate line art only

**-keep\_dirt**; don't filter out dirt

**-thresh** <threshold (default 0.2)>; range 0.0 to 1.0

**-rmv\_hairs** <worldUnits (default 1)> <passes (default 1)>

- remove hairs of size smaller than "size" in "passes" passes

**-rmv\_holes** <area (default 7)>; remove holes smaller than "area"

**-rmv\_dirt** <area (default 1)>; remove dirt smaller than "area"

- try values between 100 and 500 for `rmv_holes` and `rmv_dirt`. The area is in world units squared

**-rmv\_triangles** <worldUnits (default 30.000000)>; remove triangles at "pixels"

- distance from each other. Use `-no_break` to remove all triangles

**-no\_texture**; don't generate textured strokes

**-color\_as\_texture**; will vectorize the alpha channel and put the RGB colour in a textured colour

**-noclosegap**; disable all gap closing algorithms

**-no\_break**; disable the breaking of line art

**-jag\_filter** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap

**-expand\_bitmap** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap

**-fit\_errorc** <error (default 1.000000)>; fitting error for the colour art

**-fit\_errorl** <error (default 1.000000)>; fitting error for the line art

**-smoothl** <passes (default 1)>; number of smooth passes for line art

**-smoothc** <passes (default 1)>; number of smooth passes for colour art

**-first\_smooth** <passes (default 0)>; number of smooth passes for line art before breaking triangles

**-first\_smoothl** <passes (default 0)>; number of smooth passes for line art before breaking triangles

**-first\_smoothc** <passes (default 0)>; number of smooth passes for line art in colour art pass (needs `-2pass`)

**-2pass**; specify two sets of parameters; one for line art "l", one for colour art "c"

(-thresh, -rmv\_holes and -rmv\_dirt will be overridden by -threshl, threshc, -rmv\_holesl, -rmv\_holesc, -rmv\_dirtl and -rmv\_dirtc)

**-threshl** <threshold for line art (default 0.5)>; range 0.0 to 1.0

**-threshc** <threshold for color art (default 0.5)>; range 0.0 to 1.0

**-jag\_filterl** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap for line art

**-jag\_filterc** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap for colour art

**-expand\_bitmapl** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap for line art

**-expand\_bitmapc** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap for colour art

**-rmv\_holesl** <area (default 7)>; remove line art holes smaller than "area"

**-rmv\_holesc** <area (default 7)>; remove colour art holes smaller than "area"

**-rmv\_dirtl** <area (default 1)>; remove line art dirt smaller than "area"

**-rmv\_dirtc** <area (default 1)>; remove colour art dirt smaller than "area"

try values between 100 and 500 for rmv\_holesl, rmv\_holesc, rmv\_dirtl and rmv\_dirtc. The values are in world units squared

**-margins** <inch (default 0.25)>; remove margin around bitmap

**-top\_margin** <inch (default 0.25)>; remove margin at top of bitmap

**-bottom\_margin** <inch (default 0.25)>; remove margin at bottom of bitmap

**-left\_margin** <inch (default 0.25)>; remove margin at left of bitmap

**-right\_margin** <inch (default 0.25)>; remove margin at right of bitmap

**-remove\_peg\_bars**; remove the peg bar holes

**-field\_size** <fields (default 12 or use value in scan file)>; set the drawing to this field size

**-fs**; short hand for -field\_size

**-peg\_bar\_size** <inch (default 1)>; the size of the peg bar region

**-noframe**; do not put a frame around the colour art

**-frame\_fields** <default -1.000000>; put a frame of the specified dimension around the colour art

**-downscale\_input** <default 1>; downscale the raw input by this integer factor

**-downscale\_texture** <default 1>; downscale the output texture by this integer factor

**-buildmatte**; generate a matte on underlay for line test

**-buildmatte\_colourart**; generate a matte on colour art for line test

Note: -buildmatte and -buildmatte\_colourart are mutually exclusive

**-copystrokes**; copy original strokes when building matte.

## Options for bitmap that has no registration information

**-pixel\_margins** <inch (default 0)>; remove margin around bitmap

- top\_pixel\_margin** <inch (default 0)>; remove margin at top of bitmap
- bottom\_pixel\_margin** <inch (default 0)>; remove margin at bottom of bitmap
- left\_pixel\_margin** <inch (default 0)>; remove margin at left of bitmap
- right\_pixel\_margin** <inch (default 0)>; remove margin at right of bitmap
- dpi** <(default -1)>; dpi information of input bitmap

## RGB Keying Options

- rgb**; generate separate zones for red, green and blue lines
- rgb\_alpha** <value (default 255)>; generate red, green and blue colour with alpha of this value
- no\_red**; ignore red colour in vectorization
- no\_green**; ignore green colour in vectorization
- no\_blue**; ignore blue colour in vectorization
- flatten**; flatten the drawing after generating colours
- rmv\_rgb\_dirt** <threshold area default 0.0>; remove red, green and blue regions smaller than area
- expand\_bitmap\_rgb** <pixels (default 0)>; expand the pixels in the vectorization bitmap for rgb
- threshrgb** <value> <threshold for rgb vectorization default 0.200000>;
- threshsv** <saturation threshold default 0.500000> <value threshold default 0.500000>; thresholds on saturation and value to consider a pixel to be grey

## Colour Vectorization Options

- color\_vectorize**; perform a colour vectorization
- file2** <colour art filename>; specify the colour art bitmap
- penstyle** <center alpha (0.0-20.0)> <edge alpha (0.0-20.0)> <gamma (0-10)><centre pressure effect (0.0-1.0)> <edge pressure effect (0.0-1.0)><texture bitmap downscaling (0.2-20)> <texture bitmap file (valid filename or "" if no file)>; generate brush texture for the line art
- pressure\_variation** <strategy (0, 1 or 2)> <min pressure (0.0-1.0)> <max pressure (0.0-1.0)> <max variation (0.0-1.0)>; specify a pressure strategy for the centre line.
- blur\_radius** <pixels (default 0)>; blur the penstyle texture generated
- color\_contour\_smooth\_passes** <times (default 3)>; perform number of smooth passes on contour before computing texture
- ccsp** <times (default 3)>; short for -color\_contour\_smooth\_passes
- color\_rmv\_holesl** <world units (default 0.000000)>; remove holes of this size when computing texture
- color\_fill\_holesl** <world units (default 0.000000)>; fill holes of this size for colour line art

## Bubble Usage (implemented only for colour vectorization's line art)

-**create\_bubbles**; add bubbles into the LineArt. Implemented for colour vectorization only

-**bubble\_gap** <value (default 3)>; max number of colour art points between 2 bubbles

-**bubble\_length** <value (default 10)>; max number of circles in a bubble

-**min\_radius** <value (default 1.5000)>; min radius of a circle in a bubble relative to the line thickness (must be >= 1.0)

-**max\_radius** <value (default 3.5000)>; max radius of a circle in a bubble relative to the line thickness (must be >= 1.0)

-**uniform\_gap**; the space between bubbles is constant

## 4 Colour Vectorization

-**4colours** [key:value] ... [key:value] ; The key value list can be empty. The list of keys is:

**rgbdiff:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**dark:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**grey:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**white:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**dirt:value** ; dirt area. 200 is a good value

**rt:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**gt:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]

**bt:value** ; between [0.0-1.0] or [0-255]



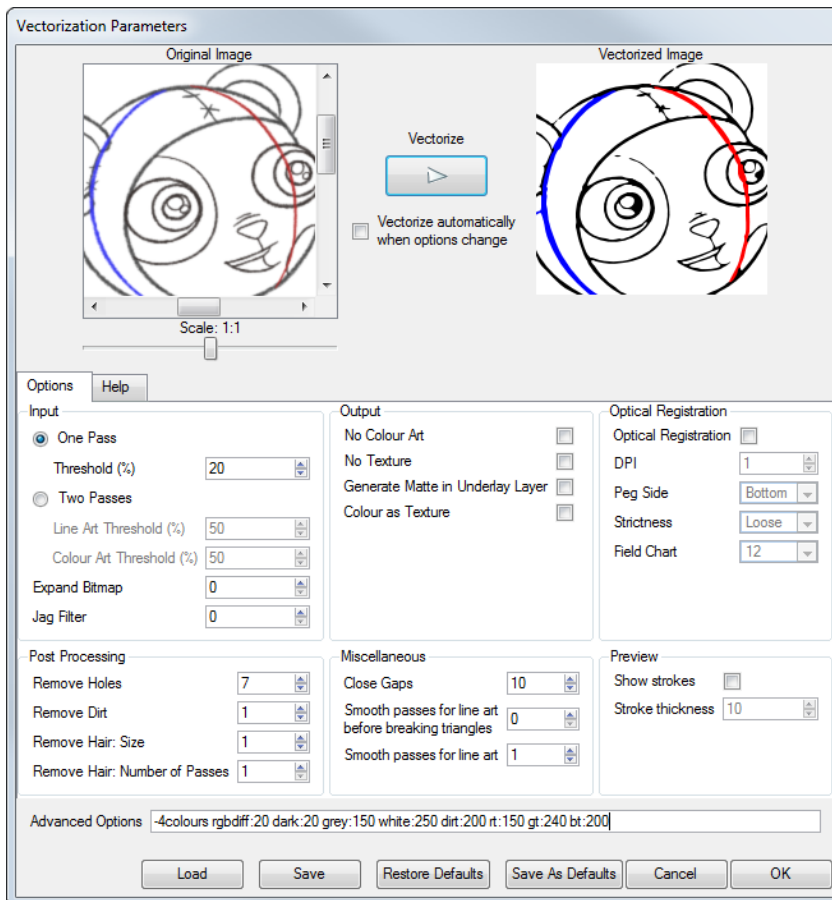
Note: There must be no space between the : and the key/value

Ex: -4colours rgbdiff:20 dark:20 grey:120 white:250 dirt:200 rt:240 gt:240 bt:240

---

Use the **Vectorization Parameters** dialog box to vectorize your pencil drawings, along with any red, blue or green pencil marks that you may have used to indicate highlights and shadows. The system will vectorize the drawing into pure red, blue, green and black (RGB values), while creating colour art zones wherever lines connect. After painting in your tones and highlights, change your pure RGB colours to transparent (0 Alpha) in the **Colour Picker** window and watch the indicator colour zone lines disappear.





## Related Topics

- [Creating a Vectorization Style](#) below
- [Setting the VectOptions.conf File](#) on the next page

## Creating a Vectorization Style

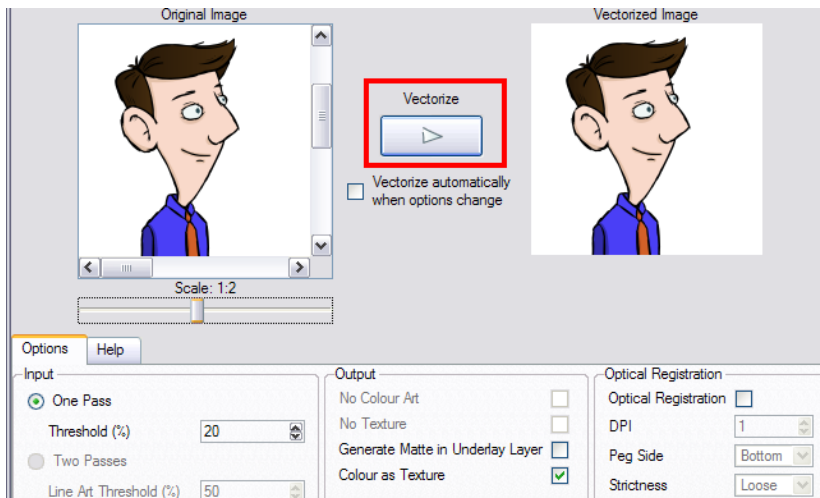
With Animate Pro, you have the possibility to create your own custom vectorization parameters that can be saved and reused over and over.


You can vectorize your drawings using one of the following method:

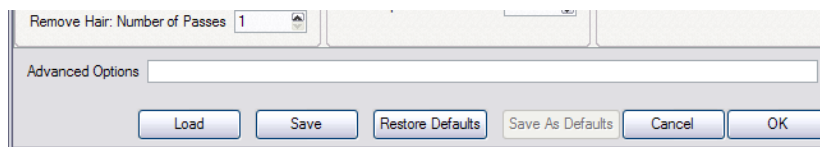
- **Black and White**, where all your lines become vector based, and 100% black and the white areas become completely transparent.
- **Greyscale**, where all your lines preserve their initial textured look in grey shades as a bitmap image contained inside a vector frame, and the white areas become completely transparent.
- **Colour**, where your actual image is completely preserved, as is as a bitmap image contained in a vector frame.
- **Four Colours**, where using the advanced parameters you can isolate red, green, blue and black lines and turn them into 100% vector lines, thus preserving their original colours. [See 4 Colour Vectorization](#) on the [previous page](#).

## To create or modify the vectorization parameters:

1. Enable or disable the different options available in the **Vectorization Parameters** interface.



2. Click on the **Vectorize**  button to update the Vectorized Image preview. The vectorized image is just a preview. The actual vectorization occurs when you click on the OK button in the Import Images dialog box. There are a number of options to try in the Vectorization Options dialog box. These are applied during the vectorization process.
3. If you want to set advanced parameters, read the information located in the , then type in the Advanced Options field located at the bottom of the Options tab.
4. If you want to save your vectorization parameters to either reuse them later, share them or use them to set the Harmony Scan module vectorization style list, click **Save**.
5. In the Browser window, name and save the file.



6. If you want to save the current settings as your default settings, click **Save As Default**.
  - If you want to restore the original Toon Boom Animate Pro's default settings, click **Restore Defaults**.
7. If you want to load a vectorization style, click **Load** and locate the existing \*.vof file.
8. Click **OK** to finish the vectorization setup.

## Related Topics

- [Custom Vectorization Parameters](#) on page 545

# Setting the VectOptions.conf File

Toon Boom Animate ProServer uses a file called VectOptions.conf to get the vectorization style when batch vectorizing a series of drawings. A series of default styles are available in this file, but you will certainly want to create your own to fit your production style.

This section deals with setting the VectOptions.conf file on:

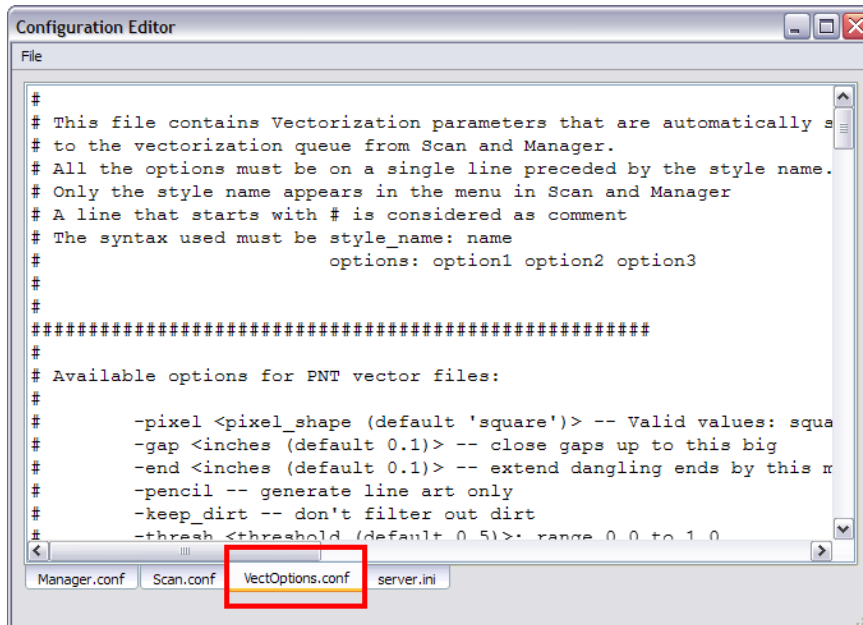
- [Setting the VectOptions.conf File on Windows and Mac OS X below](#)
- [Setting the VectOptions.conf File on the previous page](#)

## Setting the VectOptions.conf File on Windows and Mac OS X

To set your VectOptions.conf file on Windows or Mac OS X:

1. Open the vectOptions.conf file:
  - ▶ Windows: Select **Programs / All Programs > Animate Pro 3 > Tools > Configuration Editor**.
  - ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Applications > Animate Pro 3 > Tools > Configuration Editor**.

The **Configuration Editor** window opens.

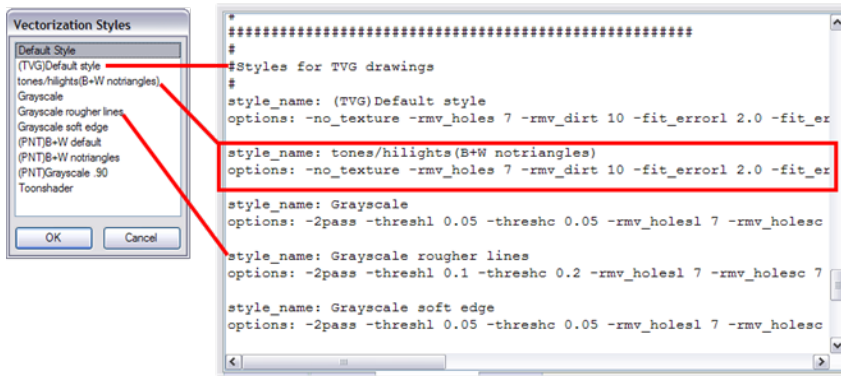


2. In the bottom section of the window, select the VectOptions.conf tab.
3. Scroll down the VectOptions.conf file. You will see all the different options available to create your custom vectorization style. These options are the same as in the Vectorization Parameters dialog box. It is recommended to create your vectorization style using Toon Boom Animate Pro and the Vectorization Parameters window and copy the result parameters in this file.

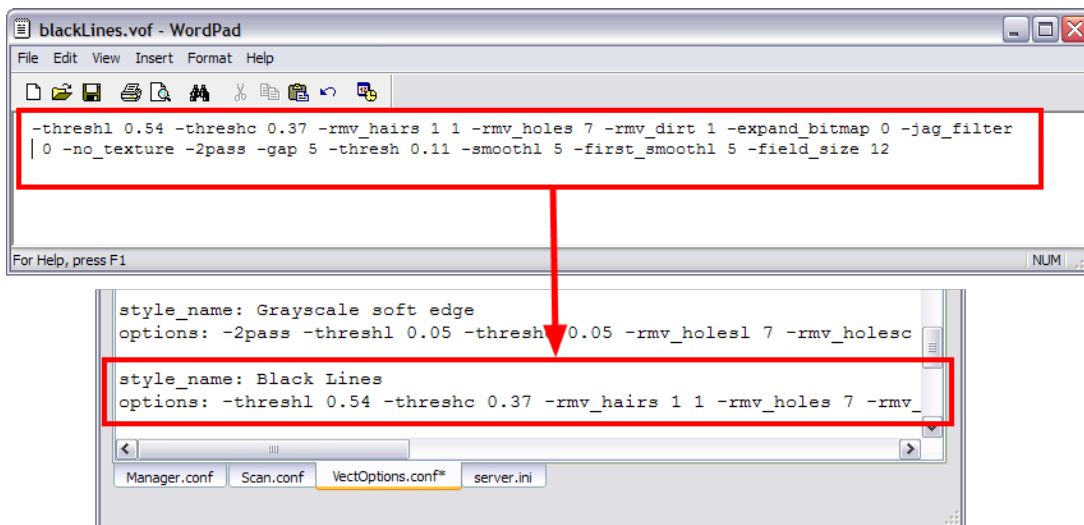


Refer to the [Creating a Vectorization Style on page 553](#) topic to learn more about creating a style using the Vectorization Parameters dialog box.

4. Scroll down toward the bottom of the file to see the default styles. You can modify them or add new ones to the list using the parameters you got using the Vectorization Parameters window. You will notice that some of the lines have a “#” sign at the beginning. This means that the line is a comment and will not appear in your style list. The lines that have no sign at the beginning appear in the style list.



5. To create a new style, below the existing ones, type style\_name: and the name of your new style, for example: style\_name: Black Lines.
6. Under the style name line, type options: and copy and paste the information you got in your \*.vof style when saving your settings in the Vectorization Parameters window.
  - To open the \*.vof file, use any plain text editor application.

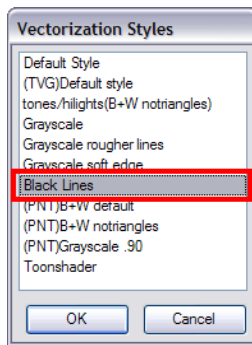


7. In the Configuration Editor's top menu, select **File > Save**.
8. If you have Toon Boom Animate Pro Scan on your computer, you can launch the application and verify that the new style appears in the Vectorization Style list under **Edit > Vectorization Style**.
 

**Note:** If you are using the batch processing method available with Toon Boom Animate Pro Server to scan and vectorize your drawings, the select style must be available on all the machines included in the batch processing list.



Refer to the Control Center and Server User Guide to learn more about setting up and using batch processing.

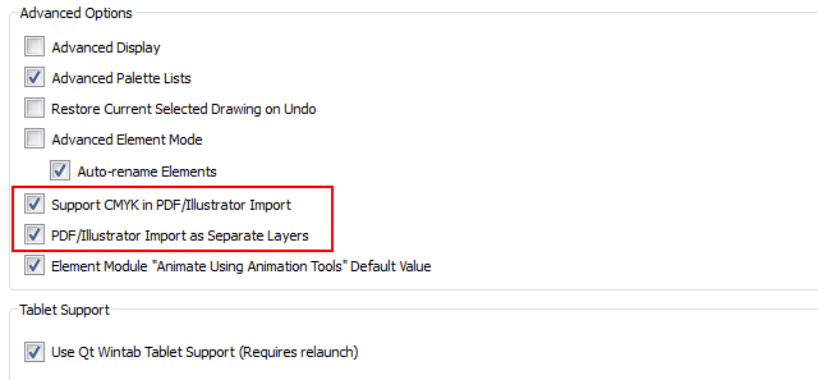


## Related Topics

- [Creating a Vectorization Style](#) on page 553
- [Custom Vectorization Parameters](#) on page 545

# Import Preferences

In the **Preferences** panel, you will find the following preference that is related to importing PDF and Illustrator files in your project.



## Advanced Option

- **Support CMYK in PDF/Illustrator Import:** When this preference is enabled, you will be able to successfully import PDF and AI files that were created or exported in CMYK mode. The colours of the resulting imported image may still not look 100% faithful to its CMYK original due to the RGB conversion. It is recommended that you convert these files to RGB images before importing them into Toon Boom Animate Pro. Disabling this function will cause all the colours of the imported image to be displayed as red to indicate that the file was not converted to RGB prior to import.
- **PDF/Illustrator Import as Separate Layers:** When this preference is enabled, the different groups/elements of the PDF or Illustrator file will be imported as separate layers. For Illustrator files, the import will use the top level group as separate layer names. Disable this preference to import your PDF or Illustrator file as a single layer.

# Chapter 10: Scene Setup



Setting up your scene can be compared to building a set for a television show. This is the point when you position each scene element such as the camera frame, the background elements and the characters.

## Topics Covered

- [Importing the Scene Components](#) on the next page
- [Setting the Camera Frame](#) on page 561
- [Positioning the Scene Components](#) on page 566
- [Cloning and Duplicating Layers](#) on page 595
- [Setting Up the Network](#) on page 598
- [Display Concepts](#) on page 621
- [Creating a Multiplane](#) on page 627
- [Scene Setup Preferences](#) on page 634

# Importing the Scene Components

The first step in the scene setup task is gathering up the scene's different components and then importing them into your project.



Refer to the [Setting Up the Network](#) on page 598 and [Display Concepts](#) on page 621 sections to learn more about the Network view connections and display concepts.

---

## Backgrounds, Sounds and Movie

- [Importing Bitmap Images](#) on page 512
- [Importing QuickTime Movies](#) on page 543
- [Importing a Sound File](#) on page 878

## Templates and Symbols



Refer to [Importing Symbols and Templates](#) on page 668 to learn more.

---

### Related Topics

- [Setting the Camera Frame](#) on the facing page



# Setting the Camera Frame

The scene action occurs inside the camera frame, so it's really important to set it up correctly.

- [Adding a Camera Layer](#) below
- [Setting the Camera Using the Translate and Rotate Tools](#) on the next page
- [Setting the Camera using the Camera Layer Properties](#) on page 563
- [Resetting the Camera Position](#) on page 565
- [Camera List](#) on page 565



The Camera layer is static which means that if you need to animate it, you must add a peg.



Refer to the [Animation Paths](#) on page 907 chapter to learn how to animate layers using pegs.



Refer to [3D Camera Motion](#) on page 868 to learn more about setting and moving the camera in the 3D space.

## Adding a Camera Layer

To set the camera frame, add a Camera layer into your scene so you can edit the default camera frame.

To add a Camera layer in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, click the Add Layer  button or select **Insert > Camera** from the top menu.
2. Select Camera from the drop-down menu.

A new camera layer is added to your scene and appears in the Timeline view.



You cannot add a camera inside a symbol. If you try to do so, a warning message will pop-up and inform you that this operation is not possible.

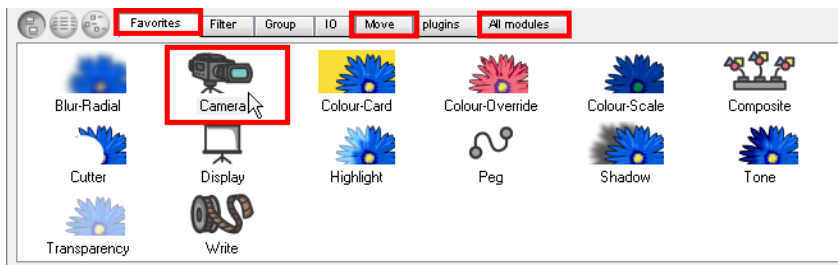


If you've added more than one camera to your scene, you can switch the active camera by going to Scene > Camera and selecting the camera you want to use.

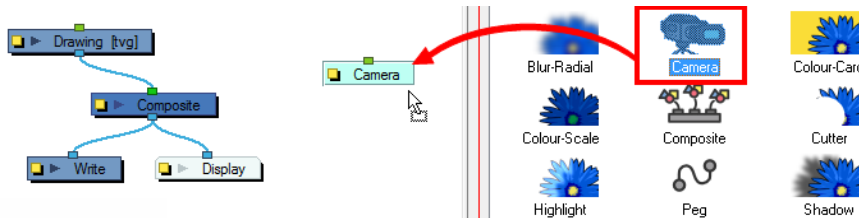
In Toon Boom Animate Pro, you can also use the Network and Module Library views to add a camera layer into your scene.

#### To add a Camera module in the Network view:



1. Display the **Network** view.
2. In the **Module Library** view, select a **Camera** module from the **Favorites**, **Move** or **All Modules** tab.



3. Drag the **Camera** module into the **Network** view.



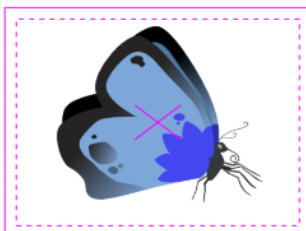
## Setting the Camera Using the Translate and Rotate Tools

You can reposition your camera frame directly in the Camera view, using the Translate  and Rotate  tools.

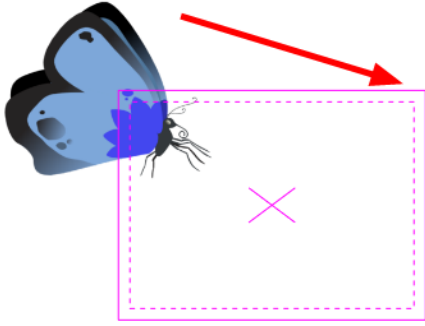
#### To reposition the camera frame directly in the Camera view:

1. Select **Animation > Tools > Translate** or press [Alt] + [2].
2. In the Camera view, click on the camera frame to select it. You can also select the camera layer from the **Timeline** view.

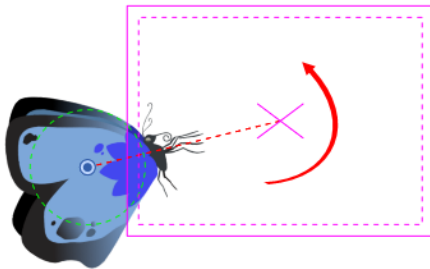
The selected camera frame is highlighted in purple.



3. Drag the camera frame to a new position.



4. To tilt the camera frame, select **Animation > Tools > Rotate** or press [Alt] + [3].
5. In the Camera view, click on the camera frame to select it and rotate the camera frame until it reaches the desired rotation angle.



The Translate and Rotate tools can also be found in the Advanced Animation toolbar.



Refer to the [Managing the Toolbars](#) on page 112 to learn how to display the **Advanced Animation** toolbar.

## Setting the Camera using the Camera Layer Properties

One way to set up your camera frame is to type the coordinates directly in the Camera Properties dialog box. Doing this positions the camera precisely where you want it.

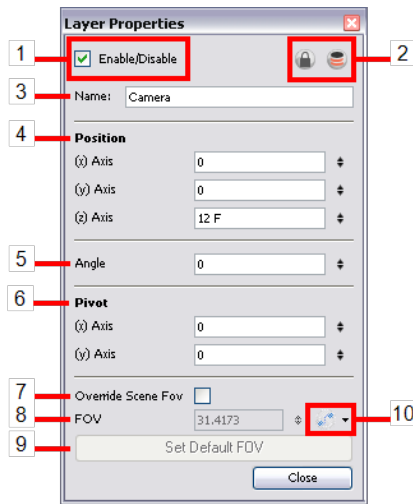


Refer to [3D Camera Motion](#) on page 868 to learn more about setting the camera in the 3D space.





## To set up the camera frame using the camera Layer Properties:

- ▶ In the Timeline view, double-click on the **Camera** layer.

The camera Layer Properties dialog box opens.





The legend below explains each of the Layer Properties:


1. Use the **Enable/Disable** check box to enable or disable the camera layer.
2. The **Lock**  and **Onion Skin**  buttons.
  - ▶ Once you are satisfied of the camera frame position, you can use the **Lock**  button to lock the camera layer and prevent changes on the camera frame position.
  - ▶ The **Onion Skin**  button is used to enable the **Onion Skin** feature in the **Camera** and **Drawing** view.
3. The **Name** field displays the current layer name and is used to rename it. Type in the new layer name.
4. The **Position** section displays the current position of the camera layer using X-axis (East, West), Y-axis (North, South) and Z-axis (Forward, Backward) coordinates. To reposition your camera frame, type in the new values corresponding to the desired position coordinates. You can also use the up and down arrows to set the value of each field.
5. The **Angle** field displays the current rotation value. To set a new rotation position, type in a new angle value. You can also use the up and down arrows to set the new angle value.
6. The **Pivot** field displays the current position of the rotation pivot of the camera layer. The camera will perform a rotation taking the position of the pivot as its angle centre. By default, the pivot is set at the centre of the camera frame. To reposition the pivot point, type in new X and Y coordinates values in the appropriate field. You can also use the up and down arrows to set the position values. In order to see the pivot's position you will need to have the Rotate tool selected.
7. Enable the **Override Scene FOV** check box to enable the **FOV** field in which you can type in a new field-of-view value.
8. The **FOV** field displays the current field-of-view default value. When enabled, you can type in a new zoom value for your camera frame. You can also use the up and down arrows to set the new zoom value.
9. Use the **Set Default FOV** to reset the custom zoom value to its default value.

10. The **Function** button is used when animating the camera zoom value—see the [Animation Paths](#) on page 907 chapter to learn more about creating functions.

## Resetting the Camera Position

Once you set up your camera frame, you can always easily reset it to its original position. Use the **Reset** command to reset the value of the selected element to the initial value of the active tool. For example, if the **Rotate**  tool is active, the transformation angle will be reset to 0 and if the **Transform**  tool is active, then the entire transformation values will be reset.

**To reset the camera position:**

1. In the **Tools** toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the camera layer.
3. Select **Animation > Reset** or press [Shift] + [R].

The camera automatically returns to its original position.

## Camera List

You can only see one camera at the time in the Timeline view. If you add several cameras to your scene and you want different settings on each, you can use the Camera List to display each of them. You can use this feature if you are still working on your scene composition and you have different camera setups to choose from.

**To select a camera from the Camera list:**

1. In the top menu, select **Scene > Camera > *the desired camera***.
  - If you only add one camera to your scene, you will only see **Default Camera** in your list.

### Related Topics

- [Positioning the Scene Components](#) on the next page

# Positioning the Scene Components


Setting up the scene also involves positioning the different scene elements within the camera frame.

- [Animate Mode](#) below
- [Selecting a Layer](#) below
- [Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool](#) on page 575
- [Using Advanced Animation Tools to Position a Layer](#) on page 579
- [Flipping an Element](#) on page 582
- [Positioning an Element Using the Layer Properties](#) on page 583
- [Auto-Apply Option](#) on page 592
- [Resetting a Transformation](#) on page 593

## Animate Mode

When positioning elements, make sure that the Animate Mode is disabled, or it will create a keyframe within the drawing layer.

**To disable Animate Mode:**

- ▶ In the Tools toolbar, click the **Animate Mode**  button.



## Related Topics

- [Selecting a Layer](#) below



## Selecting a Layer

There are different ways of selecting the layers you want to reposition in the Camera view.



The topic is divided as follows:

- [Selecting a Layer from the Camera View using the Transform Tool](#) on the facing page
- [Bounding Box Selection Style](#) on the facing page
- [Finding the Selected Layer in the Timeline View](#) on page 568
- [Finding the Selected Layer in the Network View](#) on page 568
- [Selecting an Element from the Timeline or Xsheet View](#) on page 569
- [Selecting all Elements Within a Group at the Same Time](#) on page 569



## Selecting a Layer from the Camera View using the Transform Tool

You can select your elements directly in the Camera view using the **Transform**  tool. When you select the **Transform**  tool, its properties and options appear in the Tool Properties view.



When using the **Transform**  tool to select element in the Camera view, always make sure that the **Peg Selection Mode**  option in the Transform tool Tool Properties view is disabled or else it will limit the selection to peg only.

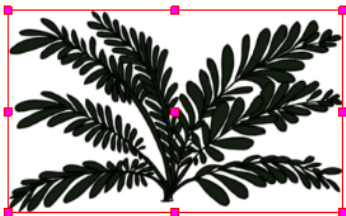
To select from the Camera view:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the **Transform** tool **Tool Properties** view, make sure the **Peg Selection Mode**  is deselected.
3. In the Camera view, select the element to be repositioned. You can select more than one element at a time.

The corresponding layers and columns will be highlighted in the **Timeline** and **Xsheet** views.

## Bounding Box Selection Style

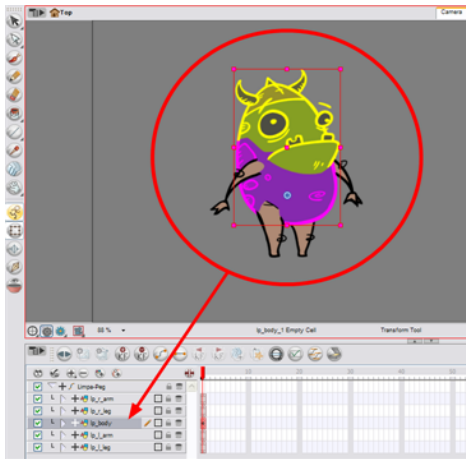
You can change the display style of selected elements to Bounding Box. This will remove the normal selection coloured highlight and leave only the bounding box around your selected element.



To set the bounding box selection style:


1. Select **View > Show > BBox Selection Style**.

## Finding the Selected Layer in the Timeline View



When you have several layers in your Timeline view, you may find it hard to locate which one is selected. Toon Boom Animate Pro has an easy solution to this problem, you can use the **Centre on Selection** feature to display the selected layer in the Timeline view.

### To centre on the selected layer in the Timeline:

1. In the Camera view, select the desired layer.
2. Make the Timeline view the current active view.
3. From the Timeline menu, select **View > Centre on Selection** or press [O]. If your selected layer is in a group, or a child of one or more elements, continue to press [O] to expand the layers in the Timeline until your selected layer becomes visible.
4. You can also click the **Centre On on Selection**  button in the **Timeline View** toolbar.




Refer to the [Managing the Toolbars](#) on page 112 to find out more about customizing the toolbars.

## Finding the Selected Layer in the Network View

Just as with the Timeline view and the many layers contained in it, when you have several modules in the Network view, you may find it hard to locate which one is selected. You can also use the **Centre on Selection** feature to focus on the selected module in the Network view.

### To centre on the selected layer in the Network View:

1. In the Camera or Timeline view, select the desired layer.
2. Enable the focus in the **Network** view.
3. In the Network View menu, select **View > Centre on Selection**. You can also press the **Centre On Selection**  button available in the **Network View** toolbar's extra button or press [O].



## Selecting an Element from the Timeline or Xsheet View

You can also select your elements from the Timeline or Xsheet view. This can be useful when there are too many objects in the scene or when an object is hard to grab.

### To select from the Timeline or Xsheet view:

- ▶ In the Timeline view, click the layer corresponding to the element you want to reposition.
- ▶ In the Xsheet view, click the column header corresponding to the element you want to reposition.

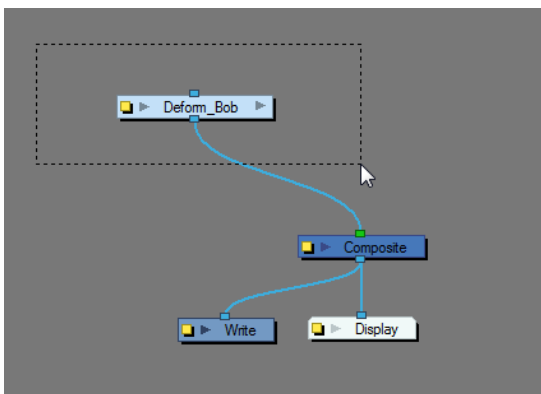
The selected element will be highlighted in the Camera view.

## Selecting all Elements Within a Group at the Same Time

There is an easy way to select all the elements within a group at the same time. You can do this via the Network or the Timeline view.

### To select all elements within a group in the Network view:

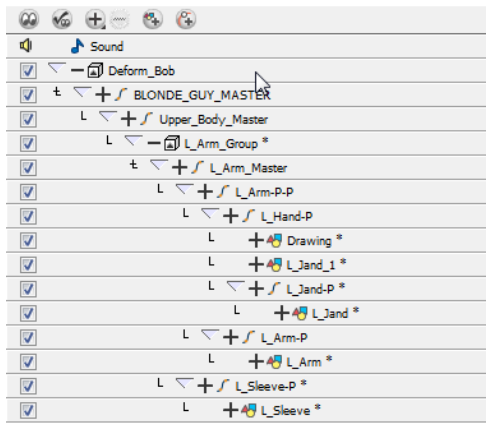
1. In the Network view, navigate to the group you would like to completely select.
2. Hold down and click-drag a marquee selection around the group module.



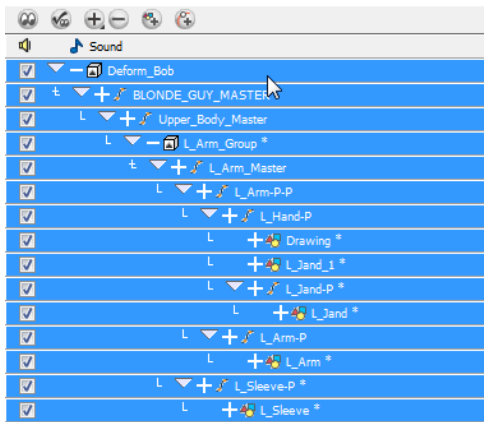
3. All elements within that group will now be selected.

### To select all elements within a group in the Timeline view:

1. With a group collapsed or expanded, hold down [Alt] and click on the group in the **Timeline** view.



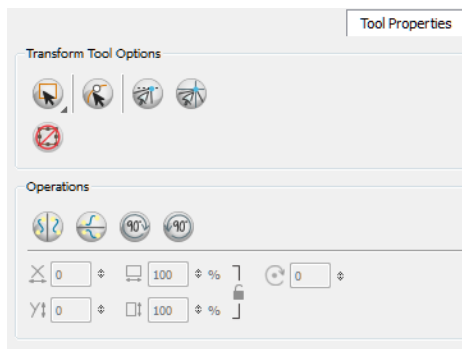
2. All elements contained within the specified group will be selected.



## Related Topics



- [Transform Tool Properties](#) below

## Transform Tool Properties



- [Lasso and Marquee](#) below
- [Peg Selection Mode](#) on the facing page
- [Snap Option](#) on the facing page
- [Hide Manipulator Controls](#) on the facing page
- [Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical](#) on the facing page
- [Width and Height](#) on page 572
- [Offset X and Y](#) on page 572
- [Angle](#) on page 572

## Lasso and Marquee

Choose between the **Lasso**  and the **Marquee**  modes to change the selection style of the **Transform** tool.



- Click and hold [Alt] to temporarily switch from the current selected mode to the other.

**To invert a selection:**

- From the top menu, select **Edit > Invert Selection**, or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [I] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [I] (Mac OS X).

You may also find the **Invert Selection** option from the **Camera View** or **Drawing View** menu by selecting **Edit > Invert Selection**.

## Peg Selection Mode



Click the **Peg Selection Mode**  button to limit the selection in the Camera view to pegs. When disabled, the **Transform**  tool selects the drawing layers.




This mode can be useful when you have created your character rig using peg layers for each drawing. That way, you don't accidentally select the drawing layer, when you want to animate on the peg.

## Snap Option

When transforming or repositioning your layer using the **Transform** tool, you can enable different snap options to help you.

-  **Snap and Align:** Snaps the selected layer to any existing line, while automatically displaying temporary rulers that guide you and that you can also snap your object to.
-  **Snap to Grid:** Snaps your selection according to the currently enabled grid.

## Hide Manipulator Controls

Enable the **Hide Manipulator Controls**  option to hide the bounding box and manipulator controls from the **Camera** view when an element is selected.



Refer to following topics to learn more about the Snapping option utilities and the Grid feature:



- [Contour Editor Tool Properties on page 202](#) (Snap to Contour and Snap and Align)
- [More Drawing Tools on page 244](#) (Grid)

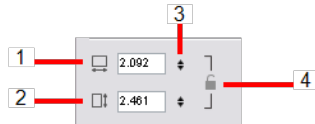
## Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical

Use these buttons to flip the selected element horizontally or vertically.

- You can also select **Animation > Flip > Flip Horizontal**  and **Flip Vertical**  or press [4] and [5].


## Width and Height

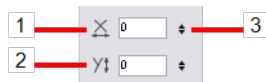
Use the **Width**  and **Height**  fields to enter specific values when you want to accurately resize the selected layer.



- Width:** type a width value in this field to resize the width of your selection.
- Height:** type a height value in this field to resize the height of your selection.
- Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in either the **Width** or **Height** value field.
- Lock icon:** Click on the lock icon to either lock or unlock the ratio between the width and height values.


## Offset X and Y

Use the **Offset X**  and **Offset Y**  fields to enter specific values to reposition the selected layer accurately.



- X:** type an offset value in this field to reposition the selected layer along the X-axis.
- Y:** type an offset value in this field to reposition the selected layer along the Y-axis.
- Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in either the **X** or **Y** value field.

## Angle

Use the **Angle**  field to enter specific values to rotate the selected layer accurately. A positive value will rotate the layer counter-clockwise and a negative value will rotate the layer clockwise.



- Angle:** type a degree value in this field to rotate the selected layer.
- Use the up and down arrows to modify the value contained in the **Angle** value field.

## Related Topics

- [Selecting a Layer](#) on page 566


## Locking Layers in the Timeline View

You can prevent correctly positioned layers from being selected by locking them in the Timeline view. This is useful for making a multiple selection inside the Camera view and leaving them visible. Once a layer has been locked, its locked state will be remembered next time you open your saved project.

You can perform five types of locking actions on your layers:

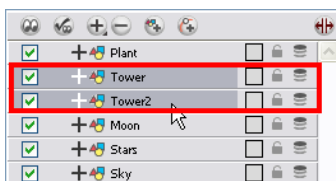
- [Lock below](#)
- [Unlock below](#)
- [Lock All on the next page](#)
- [Unlock All on the next page](#)
- [Lock All Others on page 575](#)


### Lock

The **Lock**  option let you lock one or a multiple selection of layers.

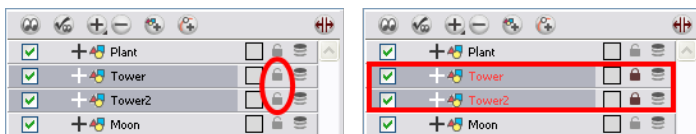
**To lock a layer or a selection of layers:**

1. In the **Timeline** view, select one or many layers.




2. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ From the top menu, select **Animation > Lock > Lock**.
  - ▶ Click one of the selected layer's **Lock**  icon.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [Alt] + [L] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Alt] + [L] (Mac OS X).

All selected layers are locked.

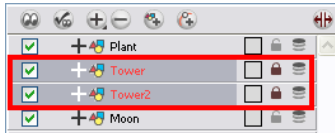


### Unlock


The **Unlock**  button lets you unlock one or a multiple selection of locked layers.

**To unlock a locked layer or a selection of locked layers:**

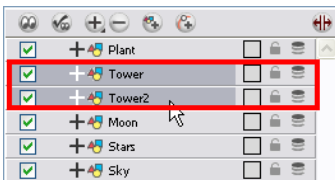
1. In the **Timeline** view, select one or many locked layers.



2. Do one of the following:

- ▶ Select **Animation > Lock > Unlock**.
- ▶ Click one of the selected layer's **Lock**  icon.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [K] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [K] (Mac OS X).


All selected layers are unlocked.



## Lock All

The Lock All option lets you lock all the layers in the Timeline view at once.


To lock all layers:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Lock > Lock All**.
- ▶ Click one of the selected layer's **Lock**  icon.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [L] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [L] (Mac OS X).

All layers are locked.



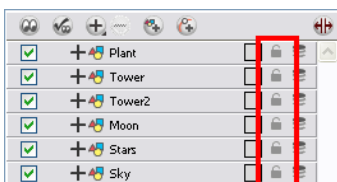
## Unlock All

The **Unlock All**  button lets you unlock all the layers in the **Timeline** view at once.


To unlock all layers:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Lock > Unlock All**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [Alt] + [Shift] + [L] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Alt] + [Shift] + [L] (Mac OS X).

All layers are unlocked.

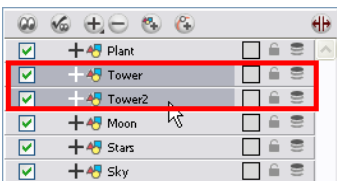


## Lock All Others

The **Lock All Others**  button lets you lock every layer except the selected ones.

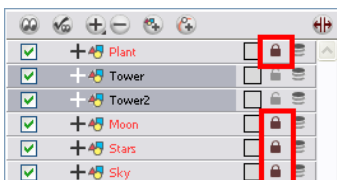
To lock all other layers:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layers that you do not want to lock.



2. Do one of the following:
  - In the top menu, select **Animation > Lock > Lock All Others**.
  - Press [Ctrl] + [Alt] + [Shift] + [O] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Alt] + [Shift] + [O] (Mac OS X).

All layers are locked except the selected ones.



## Related Topics

- [Selecting a Layer](#) on page 566

# Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool

Using the Transform tool, you can easily reposition, scale, rotate and even skew the layers directly in the Camera view.




When positioning a drawing layer using the Transform tool, always make sure that the Peg Selection Mode is disabled in the Transform tool Tool Properties view, or it will limit the selection to pegs in the Camera view.





Refer to [Positioning Elements in 3D Space](#) on page 861 to learn about the 3D Transform tool and how to position your elements in the 3D space.

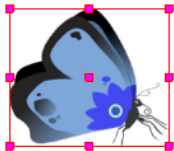
- [Repositioning the Pivot Point Temporarily](#) below
- [Panning a Drawing Layer](#) on the facing page
- [Rotating a Drawing Layer](#) on the facing page
- [Scaling an Element](#) on page 578
- [Skewing an Element](#) on page 578

## Repositioning the Pivot Point Temporarily

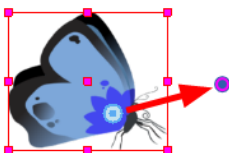
Some transformations, such as rotation, scale, skew and flip, are made relative to the pivot point position. You can temporarily reposition this pivot point for each transformation using the Transform  tool.

**To temporarily reposition the pivot point:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
2. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, click on your element to select it.  
The pivot point will appear in the **Camera** view.



4. Click on the pivot point and drag it to a new position.  
This will be the new position of the pivot point for the current transformation. It will remain in this new position as long as you do not deselect the drawing.







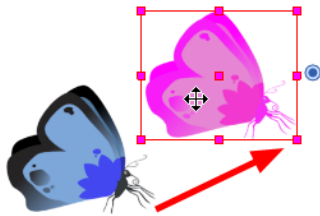
Using the Transform tool to reposition your pivot will temporarily override the existing pivot point position until you complete the current transformation, it then returns automatically to its original position.





When you translate the pivot using the Transform tool, the permanent pivot will appear as a ghost so you know where it is and also from where the animation will be interpolated when you create motion paths. The animation is always interpolated from the original pivot and not the temporary pivot.

## Panning a Drawing Layer

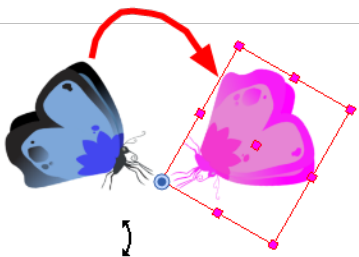
To pan a layer using the Transform tool:





1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
2. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, select a drawing layer and drag the selection to a new area.

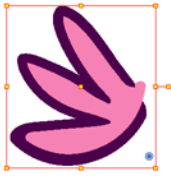
## Rotating a Drawing Layer

To rotate a layer using the Transform tool:



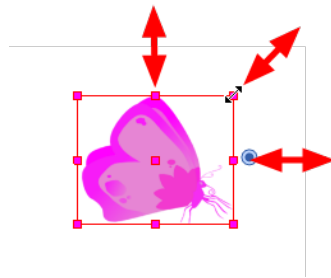
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
2. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, select the drawing layer and rotate the transform bounding box handle.



A preference found in the Camera tab will add a rotation handle to your object's bounding box. This preference is off by default.



## Scaling an Element

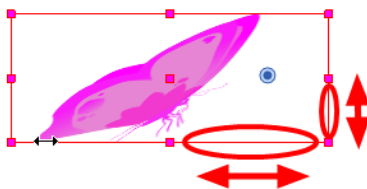
To scale a layer using the Transform tool:





1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool or press [Shift] + [T]
2. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, select the drawing layer and then pull or push either on the size, top or corner control point. Hold down [Shift] to lock the selection's ratio.

## Skewing an Element

To skew a layer using the Transform tool:



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
2. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, select the drawing layer and drag sideways or up and down the sides or top and bottom segments, between the control points.

## Related Topics

- [Using Advanced Animation Tools to Position a Layer](#) below

# Using Advanced Animation Tools to Position a Layer




You can also use the advanced animation tools to position your layers.

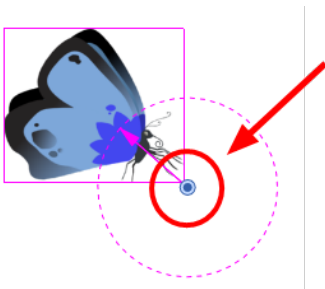
- [Permanently Repositioning the Pivot Point](#) below
- [Panning an Element using the Translate Tool](#) on the next page
- [Rotating an Element using the Rotate Tool](#) on the next page
- [Scaling an Element using the Scale Tool](#) on page 581
- [Skewing an Element using the Skew Tool](#) on page 581

## Permanently Repositioning the Pivot Point

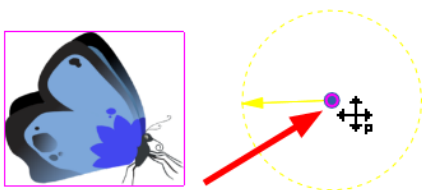
Some transformations, such as the rotation, scale, skew and flip, are made relative to the pivot point position. Reposition this pivot point anywhere using the current Advanced Animation tool.

**To permanently reposition the pivot point:**

1. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select the **Rotate** , **Scale**  or **Skew**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) to select your element.  
The pivot point appears in the Camera view.



3. Click the pivot point and drag it to a new position.

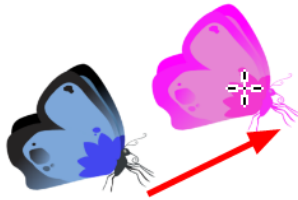


This is the new position of the pivot point for future transformations until you reposition it.




Using the Advanced Animation tools to reposition your pivot permanently overrides the existing pivot point position until you change its position again.

## Panning an Element using the Translate Tool

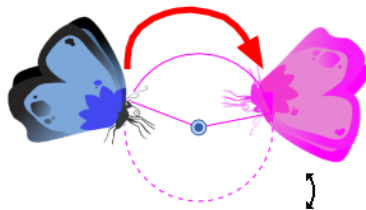


To pan a layer using the Translate tool:


1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **Animation > Tools > Translate**.
  - ▶ In the **Advanced Animation** toolbar, click the **Translate**  tool.
  - ▶ Press [Alt] + [2].
2. In the **Camera** view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the element to select it and drag the selection to a new area.

You can select multiple layers to reposition them at the same time. Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + click (Mac OS X) on each element to select them.

## Rotating an Element using the Rotate Tool

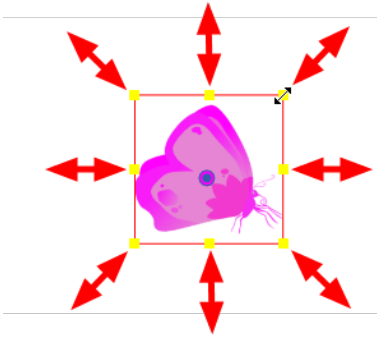


To rotate a layer using the Rotate tool:


1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Select **Animation > Tools > Rotate**.
  - ▶ In the **Advanced Animation** toolbar, click the **Rotate**  tool.
  - ▶ Press the [Alt] + [3].
2. In the **Camera** view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the element to select it and rotate the layer.

You can select multiple layers to rotate them at the same time. Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + click (Mac OS X) on each element to select them.

## Scaling an Element using the Scale Tool

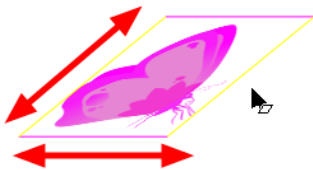


To scale a layer using the Scale tool:


1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Select **Animation > Tools > Scale**.
  - ▶ In the **Advanced Animation** toolbar, click the **Scale**  tool.
  - ▶ Press [Alt] + [4].
2. In the **Camera** view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the element to select it and pull or push either on the side, top or corner control point. Hold down [Shift] to lock the selection's ratio when using the corner control points.

You can select multiple layers to scale them at the same time. Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + click (Mac OS X) on each element to select them.

## Skewing an Element using the Skew Tool



To scale a layer using the Skew tool:

1. Do one of the following:
  - ▶ Select **Animation > Tools > Skew**.
  - ▶ In the **Advanced Animation** toolbar, click the **Skew**  tool.
  - ▶ Press [Alt] + [5].
2. In the **Camera** view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the element to select it and drag a side of the bounding box up, down or sideways.

You can select multiple layers to skew them at the same time. Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + click (Mac OS X) on each element to select them.



Refer to the [Interface on page 77](#) chapter to learn how to display the Advanced Animation toolbar.

---

## Related Topics

- [Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool on page 575](#)

# Flipping an Element

There are two different options you can use when you want to flip your element.




- [Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical](#) below
- [Flip Scale X and Flip Scale Y](#) below

## Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical

The Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical options flip your drawing layer along **Camera** view's horizontal and vertical axis.

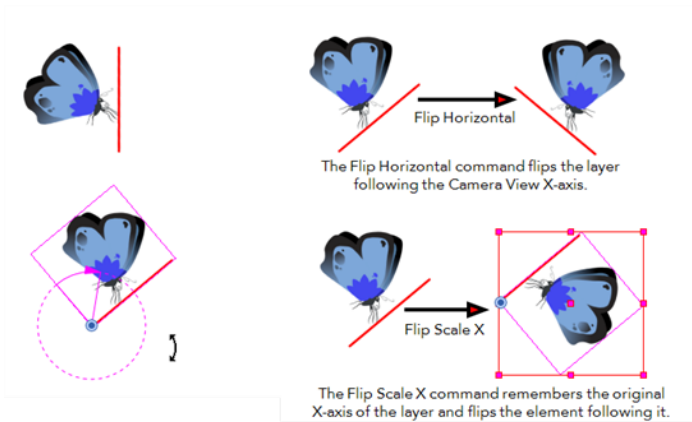


To flip a layer:



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T]
2. In Tool Properties view, make sure the **Peg Selection Mode**  is disabled.
3. In the Camera view, select the drawing layer you want to flip using the **Transform**  tool.
4. Select **Animation > Flip > Flip Horizontal** or **Flip Vertical** or press [4] and [5].

## Flip Scale X and Flip Scale Y

Once your drawing layer has been rotated, the original horizontal and vertical axes change. The **Flip Scale X** and **Flip Scale Y** will perform a flip on your drawing layer following its original axis.



### To flip an element following its original axis:

1. In the Transform tool Tool Properties view, make sure that the **Peg Selection Mode**  is disabled.
2. In the Camera view, using the **Transform**  tool, select your element that has already been transformed.
3. Select **Animation > Flip > Flip Scale X** or **Flip Scale Y**.

### Related Topics

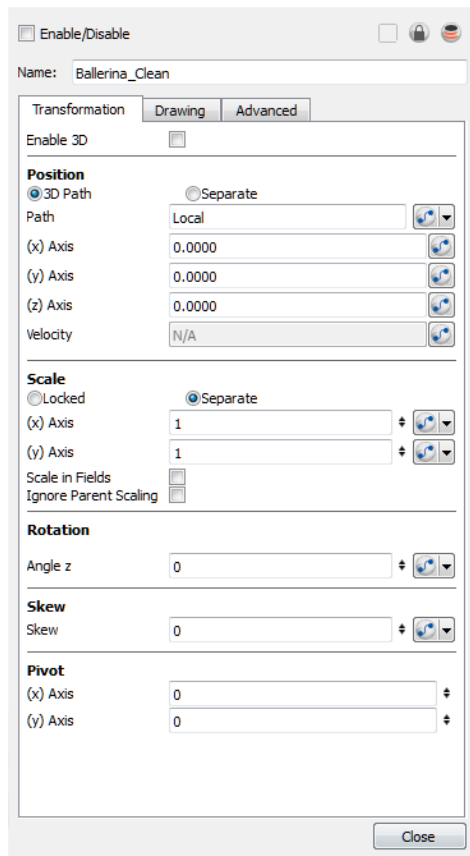
- [Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool](#) on page 575

## Positioning an Element Using the Layer Properties

### To position an element using its Layer Properties dialog box:

1. In the Timeline view, right-click on the drawing layer and select **Layer Properties** or press [Shift] + [E]. You can also double-click on the layer, or click once and see the parameters in the **Layer Properties** view.
  - You can also open the **Layer Properties** dialog box from the **Network** view by clicking on the module's square yellow button.

The drawing Layer Properties dialog box opens.

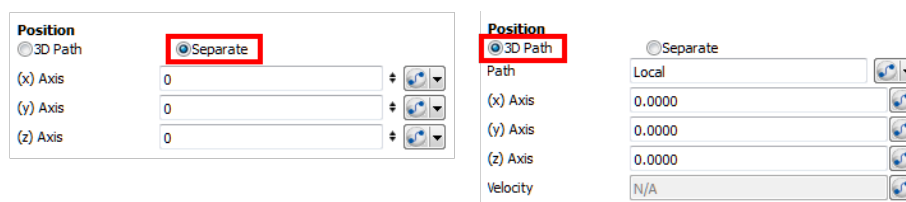


2. The Enable 3D check box displays the **3D parameters** in the **Layer Properties**.




Refer to [Positioning the Scene Components on page 566](#) to learn more about the 3D parameters and how to use them to position your element in the 3D space.

3. In the Position section, type in the desired value of the new element position.

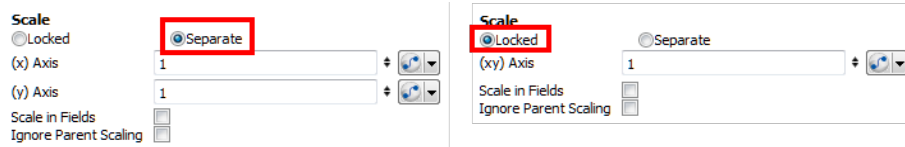


- ▶ Select the **Separate** option to enable the edit of the different coordinate fields.
- ▶ Select the **3D Path** option to enable the use of a 3D path function when animating your element. Refer to the [Animation Paths on page 907](#) chapter to learn more about 3D paths and Velocity.
  - ▶ In the **(x) Axis** field, type in a new East/West coordinate corresponding to the desired position.
  - ▶ In the **(y) Axis** field, type in a new North/South coordinate corresponding to the desired position.
  - ▶ In the **(z) Axis** field, type in a new Forward/Backward coordinate corresponding to the desired position. Refer to the [Creating a Multiplane on page 627](#) topic to learn more about positioning layers on the Z-axis.



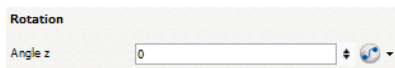
- ▶ The **Function**  buttons are used to create function curves when animating.

4. In the Scale section, select one of the following:

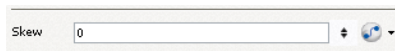


- ▶ **Separate:** Resizes the element with independent X and Y scales. This allows you to squash and stretch.
  - (x) Axis:** Type in the horizontal scale value.
  - (y) Axis:** Type in the vertical scale value.
- ▶ **Locked:** Resizes the element while keeping its ratio.
  - (xy) Axis:** Type in the horizontal and vertical scales value.

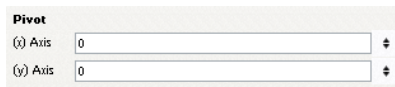
5. In the Angle Z field, type in a degree value between -360 to 360 for the rotation angle.



6. In the Skew field, type in a degree value between -90 to 90 for the skew angle.



7. In the Pivot section, type in the desired coordinate value to reposition the transformation pivot. This will change the permanent position of the pivot.



- ▶ In the **(x) Axis** field, type in a new East/West coordinate corresponding to the desired position.
  - ▶ In the **(y) Axis** field, type in a new North/South coordinate corresponding to the desired position.
- As you type in the new values, the element's position is updated in the **Camera** view.



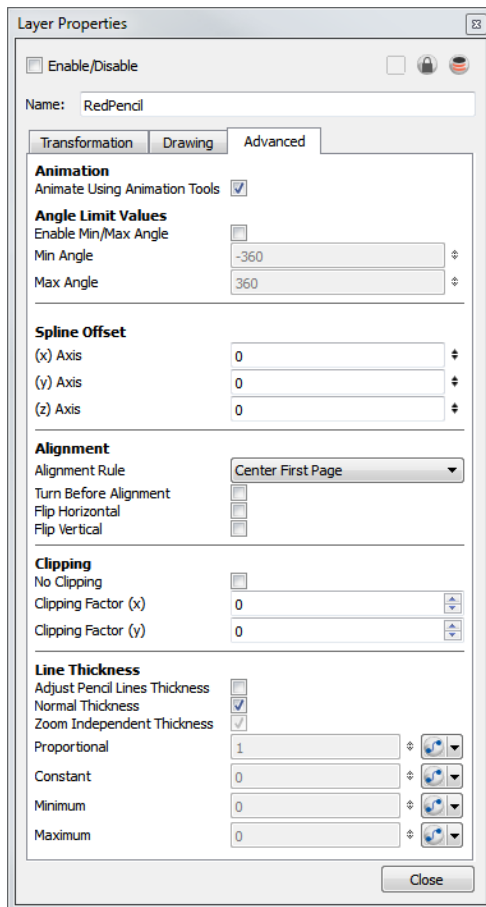
Refer to the [Animation Paths on page 907](#) chapter to learn more about function curves and animating elements on pegs.

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Layer Properties Advanced Tab](#) below
- [Drawing Layer Properties Drawing Tab](#) on page 590

## Drawing Layer Properties Advanced Tab

In the drawing layer's Layer Properties dialog box, you will find an Advanced tab containing some very useful options:



## Animation

- Animate Using Animation Tools:** By default, a drawing layer can be animated, but Toon Boom Animate Pro gives you the ability to disable this feature. Being able to switch your drawings so they can no longer be animated without a peg has certain advantages. It means that you can have access to the drawing substitution feature for this drawing layer, while being able to create keyframes on its parent peg. This feature is also available for backward compatibility when bringing in templates created in older versions of the software, so as not to lose their offset keyframes or drawing substitution keyframes.



Refer to the [Cut-out Animation on page 993](#) chapter to learn more about the Animate Using Animation Tools option.


## Angle Limit Value

Use this section to set a maximum and minimum rotation angle for your drawing. You will mainly use the option for a cut-out character when you do not want an elbow to bend too far in or too far out.

- Enable Min/Max Angle:** Enable this option if you want to activate the minimum and maximum angle constraints.
- Min Angle:** Type the minimum angle you want the drawing to rotate too.

- **Max Angle:** Type the maximum angle you want the drawing to rotate too.

## Spline Offset

In the X, Y and Z axis fields, type the coordinates of where you want to offset the visual trajectory. By default, the trajectory is displayed at the centre of the **Camera** view. If you want to move it so it corresponds better with your drawing, either type new coordinates or use the **Spline Offset**  tool available in the **Advanced**

**Animation** toolbar.

To display the trajectory in the Camera view, select your drawing and select **View > Show > Control**.

## Alignment

- **Alignment Rule:** The alignment rule selections are intended to deal with drawings that were created on paper of a different size or orientation from the default alignment rule (set up in the **Scene Setting** dialog box). If you select **Turn Before Alignment**, the drawings are rotated and then scaled, based on the option selected from the drop-down list. The drawings are then scaled to match Toon Boom Animate Pro alignment rectangle.

- **Left:** The default alignment for drawings; aligns the drawings on the left side of the scene's alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their height to the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Right:** Aligns the drawings on the right side of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their height to the height of the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Top:** Aligns the drawings on the top of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their widths to the width of the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Bottom:** Aligns the drawings on the bottom of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their widths to the width of the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Centre Fit:** Centres the drawings.
- **Centre Fill:** Centres the drawings and then scales them so that the width or height fills the available space.
- **Centre LR:** Aligns the drawings in the left-right centre of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their height to the height of the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Centre TB:** Aligns the drawings in the top-bottom centre of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their widths to the width of the alignment rectangle of the scene.
- **Stretch:** Scales the drawings so that they fit within the alignment rectangle of the scene. This is particularly useful for images that you will manipulate with a **Quadmap** module. If the drawings in the **Quadmap** module do not have the same aspect ratio as the alignment rectangle of the scene (from the **Scene Settings** dialog box), the handles on the quadmap will not appear on the corners of the image, making it difficult to manipulate the quadmap. In this case, you would set the drawing layer of the quadmap images to **Stretch** so that the handles appear on the corner of the image. This can have the effect of distorting the images, but this is not an issue with images that will be distorted through the **Quadmap** module anyway.
- **As Is:** Leaves the drawings aligned as they are.
- **Centre First Page:** Aligns the centre of the first part of a standard pan cel with the centre of the field chart.
- **Turn Before Alignment:** This option rotates the drawings in the selected element 90 degrees to the left before scaling and aligning them according to the alignment rule, and before performing any offset, rotation or scaling for the element or the peg. This and the Alignment Rule are intended for drawings that were created on paper of a different size or orientation than the other paper in the scene, and requires alignment so as to be able to accurately treat them.
- **Flip Horizontal:** Flips the drawing on the X-axis.
- **Flip Vertical:** Flips the drawing on the Y-axis.

## Clipping

- **No Clipping:** Select this option if you do not want to clip the images in this module before an effect is applied to it.
- **Clipping Factor (X)/(Y):** This is an option for rendering images that are larger than the final frame. With this option enabled, images can be moved by an **Apply Peg Transformation** module without black entering into the composite as a result of early clipping. In addition, this option is useful for images that have a blur that should appear in the frame even though the image itself is not in frame.

## Line Thickness

- **Adjust Pencil Lines Thickness:** Enable this option if you are working with pencil lines. If you do not check this option and are working with pencil lines, you will not see any changes to your lines in the **Camera** view, in the **Render** mode after making adjustments in the **Layer Properties** panel.
- **Normal Thickness:** Disables all overrides on the **Line Thickness**.
- **Zoom Independent Thickness:** Select this if you do not want to display line thickness in proportion the amount of zoom in the view window. Everything else will increase in size, but the line thickness will stay the same.
- **Proportional:** Enter a multiple by which you want to increase the line thickness. Entering 1 will result in no change; entering 0 (zero) will hide the lines.
- **Constant:** Enter a value in pixels (based on a 740x540 screen resolution) at which to maintain the line thickness.
- **Minimum:** Enter a value in pixels (based on a 74 x540 screen resolution) for the minimum line thickness allowed.
- **Maximum:** Enter a value in pixels (based on a 740x540 screen resolution) for the maximum line thickness allowed.

### To modify the line thickness:

- The lines must be converted to **Colour Art** (select **Drawing > Create Colour Art from Line Art**).
- To view this feature in the **Camera** view, you must first activate the **Enable Variable Line Thickness** option, found in the **OpenGL** tab in the **Preferences** panel.



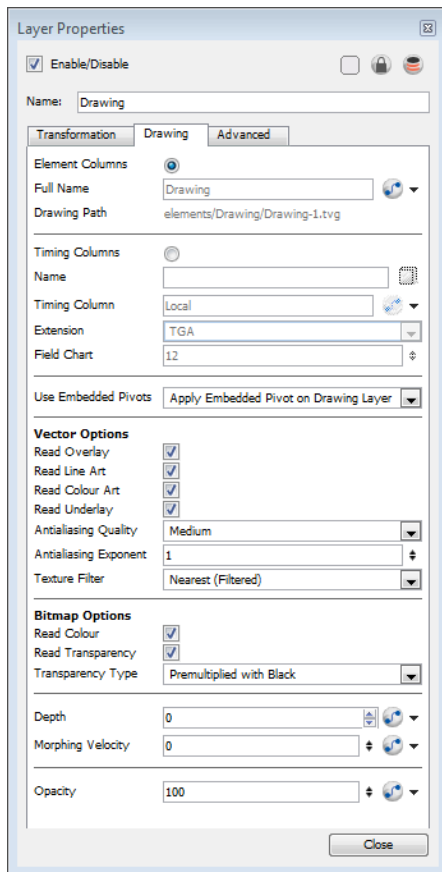
Refer to the [OpenGL Tab Preferences](#) on page 640 topic to learn more about this option.

---

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Layer Properties Drawing Tab](#) on the next page

## Drawing Layer Properties Drawing Tab



- **Full Name:** Select which element to connect to the module from the drop-down list of elements that already exist in your scene.
- **Drawing Path:** Displays the full path to the current drawing.
- **Use Embedded Pivots:** By default, this option is set to **Apply Embedded Pivot on Drawing Layer**.
  - **Don't Use Embedded Pivot:** When this option is selected, the layer will not use the pivot set on the drawing or symbol. The pivot will be located at the centre of the **Camera** view, meaning (0,0,0). If there is a transformation applied on the layer, the pivot will be offset following the transformation.
  - **Apply Embedded Pivot on Parent Peg:** When this option is selected, the pivot set on the drawing or symbol will automatically be applied to the first peg layer the drawing layer is connected to. When selecting the element in the Camera view using the Transform tool, the peg layer will be selected. Even when the drawing layer is selected in the Camera view, the transformation will be applied on the parent peg.



You only need to use this option when you want to have the position of the pivot animate. This is useful if you want to have multiple views all on the same layers in the Timeline view.

For simplicity and organization, it is recommended to keep all views on their own separate layers in the Timeline view. Then you can simply set the pivot using the Rotate tool for the whole layer.

- **Apply Embedded Pivot on Drawing Layer:** This is the most common behaviour a user will use. Automatically, the layer will use the pivot that was set on the drawing or symbol's frame using the Pivot tool.



Refer to the [Setting the Pivots on page 732](#) to learn about using embedded pivots.

## Vector Options

- **Read Overlay:** Enable this option to display and render the Overlay layer of this drawing layer in your scene and final export. Disabling it will hide it.
- **Read Line Art:** Enable this option to display and render the Line Art layer of this drawing layer in your scene and final export. Disabling it will hide it.
- **Read Colour Art:** Enable this option to display and render the Colour Art layer of this drawing layer in your scene and final export. Disabling it will hide it.
- **Read Underlay:** Enable this option to display and render the Underlay layer of this drawing layer in your scene and final export. Disabling it will hide it.
- **Antialiasing Quality:** A smoothness setting applied to Colour Art.
  - **Low:** No antialiasing
  - **Medium Low:** Basic antialiasing
  - **Medium:** Improved antialiasing (Blurs the textures)
  - **High:** Improved antialiasing (Does not blur the textures)

Higher quality images require more time to render and more system memory. Choose a lower quality if you are rendering a pencil test.
- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the size of the area around the Line Art and Colour Art edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing) or Medium Low, this value is ignored. The accepted values are between 0 and 1.
- **Texture Filter:** This option changes the way coloured pixels of TVG textures are calculated when rendered for different degrees of accuracy.
  - **Bilinear:** This option takes the four pixels around each point and makes a bilinear interpolation between them. (Medium Quality)
  - **Nearest:** This option chooses the colour of the closest pixel to a point. (Lower Quality)
  - **Nearest (Filtered):** This option is an improved version of Bilinear and improves the quality when zooming on a texture. (Best Quality)

## Bitmap Options

- **Read Colour:** Controls the production of colour information from bitmap images. If this module reads 3 or 4-channel bitmaps, this selection determines whether the colour should be read or ignored. If this module reads 1-channel bitmaps, this selection determines whether the channel should be read as colour. When this option is selected with 1-channel images, the resulting image will be a greyscale image.

- **Read Transparency:** Controls the production of alpha information from bitmap images. If this module reads a 1 or 3-channel image, this option will create a matte from the colour values in the image. If the module reads a 4-channel image and this option is not selected, the alpha information in the image will be ignored.
- **Transparency Type:**
  - **Premultiplied with Black:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black.
  - **Premultiplied with White:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with white.
  - **Straight:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black, white and greys.
  - **Clamp Colour to Alpha:** Select this option when you want to pre-multiply the colour value with the alpha value. When the colour is clamped to the alpha, the colour value cannot be higher than the alpha value. It calculates the real colour value faster. When the RGB values are multiplied with the alpha value, that is to say, if you have a pixel of value R=247, G=188, B=29 and the alpha is 50% or the image has a 50% transparency, then the actual RGB values output would be half of the amounts listed above.
- **Depth:** Overrides the order of cables in the network to determine how this element is rendered.
- **Morphing Velocity:** Attaches a function curve to interpolate the morphing velocity between two frames. The morphing velocity at a specific frame is the ratio of the difference between the current frame and the first and last frames of the morphing.
- **Opacity:** Use this slider to quickly change the opacity of the selected element. Opacity settings here will be reflected in both **OpenGL** preview, and full render.



To learn about the Morphing Velocity option, refer to [Adjusting the Velocity and Timing on page 480](#).

---

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Layer Properties Advanced Tab on page 585](#)

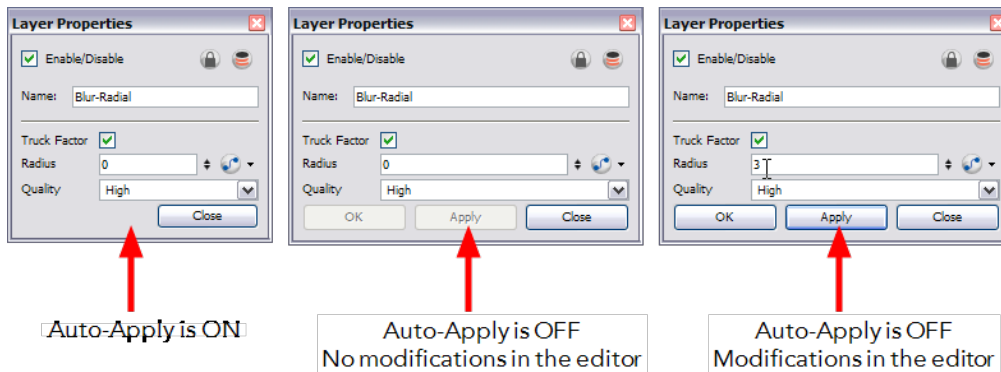
## Auto-Apply Option

When you modify a parameter in a property dialog box, Toon Boom Animate Pro calculates the modification automatically and displays the result immediately in the **Camera** view. If you do not want to immediately display every change made to your scene, you can turn off this default setting by disabling the **Auto-Apply** option. For example, when you are working on a very heavy scene.

Disabling this function will result in adding **Apply** and **OK** buttons at the bottom of your **Layer Properties** view and any other parameter dialog box.

- Click **Apply** to apply the current change.
- Click **OK** to apply the current change and close the **Layer Properties**.





### To disable and enable the Auto-Apply option:

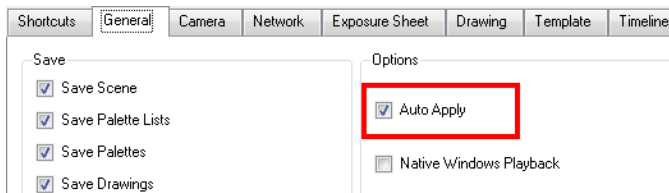
- ▶ In the top menu, select **Edit > Auto-Apply**.

If you wish to always work in **Auto-Apply** mode, you can disable the **Auto-Apply** preference.

When the preference is disabled, each time you launch the application, your **Auto-Apply** mode will be set to OFF. You will need to click on the **Apply** button to see the modifications.

### To disable and enable the Auto-Apply preference:



1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X).  
The **Preferences** panel opens.
2. In the **Preferences** panel, go to the **General** tab.
3. In the **Options** section, disable or enable the **Auto Apply** preference.





## Related Topics

- [Positioning the Scene Components](#) on page 566

## Resetting a Transformation


Once your layers are positioned in the **Camera** view, you can easily reset them to their original position. Use the **Reset** command to reset the value of the selected element to the initial value of the active tool. For example, if the **Rotate**  tool is active, the transformation angle will be reset to 0 and if the **Transform**  tool is active, the entire transformation values will be reset.



When using the **Transform**  tool to select element in the **Camera** view, always make sure that the **Peg Selection Mode**  option in the **Tool Properties** view is disabled or else it will limit the selection to peg only.


---

### To reset the layers position:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the drawing layers you wish to reset. You can select more than one layer at a time.
3. Select **Animation > Reset** or press [Shift] + [R].  
The selected layers will automatically return to their original position.

You may also choose to reset all values of your selected element, except for its position in Z space.

### To reset all except Z:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the drawing layers you wish to reset. You can select more than one layer at a time.
3. Select **Animation > Reset All Except Z**.

All values, except for those set on the Z axis, will be reset.

---



In the **Timeline** view, you can also use the **Clear All Values** command to reset all transformation values on the selected layers. Right-click on the selected layers and select **Clear All Values**.

---

### Related Topics

- [Positioning the Scene Components](#) on page 566

# Cloning and Duplicating Layers



You may need to clone or duplicate a layer during a production. This allows you to modify the layers's drawings or the timing independently from the original column.

## Related Topics


- [Clone Layer](#) below
- [Duplicate Layer](#) on the next page

## Clone Layer

A cloned layer is linked to the original element directory. If a drawing is modified in the original or cloned layer, both will be updated. However, clone layers can have different timings.

For example, if you make a walk-cycle for a soldier and want to use it for a whole army, you may want to have fifty layers with fifty different drawing exposures to produce a slight difference in the timing. You don't necessarily want the same drawing fifty times. If you copy your layers and their drawings fifty times over, it will create a very heavy scene. It is better to clone the fifty layers from the same initial layer to have them all linked to the same walk cycle drawings, producing fifty layers but one drawing directory. This will also allow you to correct the drawings in one layer and have all of the other ones updated simultaneously.



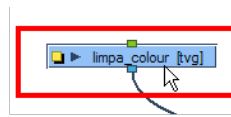
When you clone a layer that is already linked to a function, the cloned layers are automatically linked to the same function, so if you reposition the layers while in **Animate**  mode, they are all

repositioned to the same place because a keyframe is added to this function. If you want the layers to move on a trajectory that is independent, make sure to unlink the function before cloning.



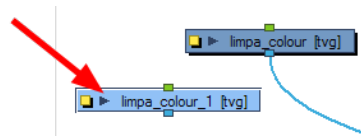
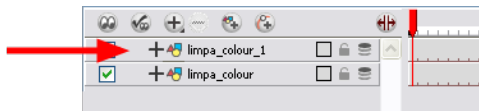
### To clone a layer:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layer to clone.
  - In the Network view, select the module you want to clone.



2. In the Timeline View menu, select **Layers > Clone Selected Layers**.
  - In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Clone Selected Modules**.

Note that the module will not appear in the Timeline view if it is not connected to the Composite module or if the Display mode is not set on **Display All**.



## Related Topics

- [Duplicate Layer](#) below
- [Animation Paths](#) on page 907
- [Setting Up the Network](#) on page 598

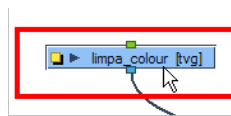
## Duplicate Layer

You can duplicate a layer to have a copy of the drawings that are independent from the original column, as well as an independent timing (exposure). When you need the drawings to be modified independently, you will want to duplicate the layer instead of cloning it.



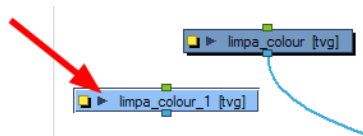
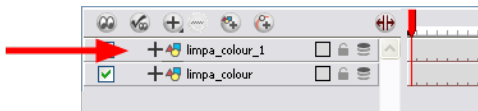
### To duplicate a layer:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layer to duplicate.
  - In the Network view, select the module you want to duplicate.



2. In the Timeline View menu, select **Layers > Duplicate Selected Layers**.
  - In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Duplicate Selected Modules**. When you duplicate a module, it does not automatically connect itself to the **Composite** module of your scene.

The duplicated layer appears.



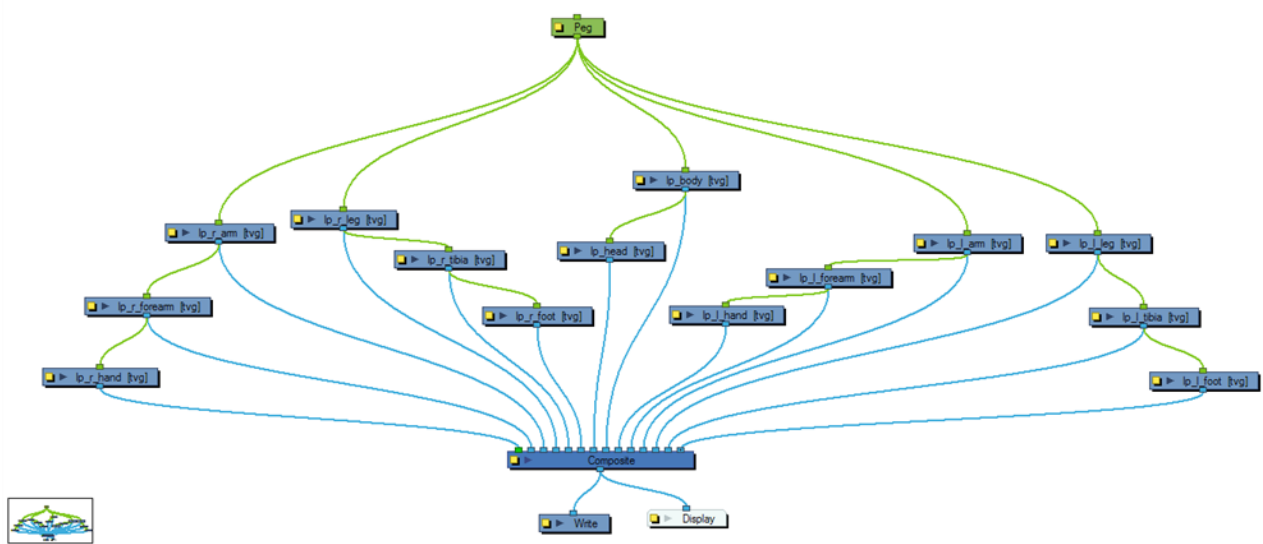
By default when you select a module in the Network view and do a copy paste using [Ctrl] + [C] and [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [C] and [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X), this creates a **CLONE** not a duplicate. Modules will be linked to the same drawings. Pegs will be linked to the same function columns.

To duplicate a layer in the Network view using shortcuts, you must do [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X) and [Ctrl] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [B] (Mac OS X) for Paste Special, and select Create New Columns.

### Related Topics

- [Setting Up the Network](#) on the next page
- [Clone Layer](#) on page 595

# Setting Up the Network

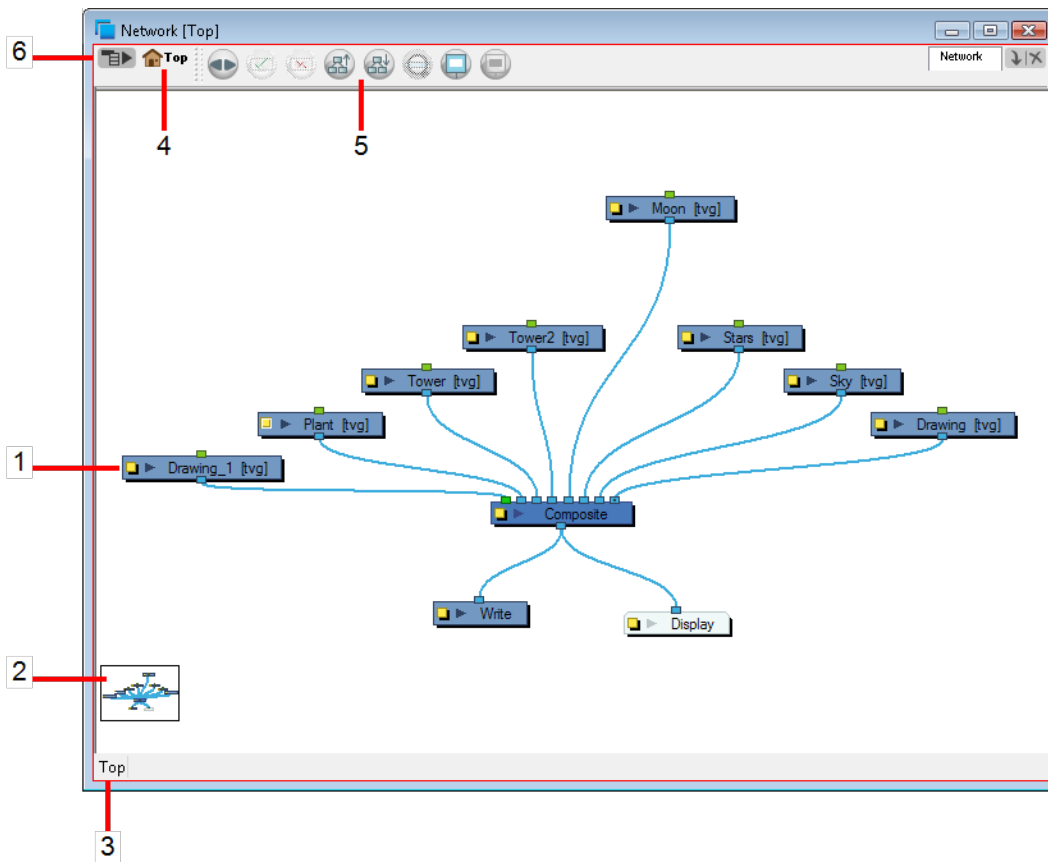


The Network view uses a visual set of connections to show how each element in the scene is brought to the final image. It allows you to add extra elements and effects, and to move beyond the possibilities offered by the Timeline and Xsheet views.

## Related Topics

- [Network View](#) on the facing page
- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on the facing page

# Network View



1. Modules
2. Navigator
3. Group Hierarchy Menu
4. Editing Stack Menu
5. Network View Toolbar
6. Network View Menu

## Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) below
- [Help View](#) on page 1

# Network Navigation and Basic Rules

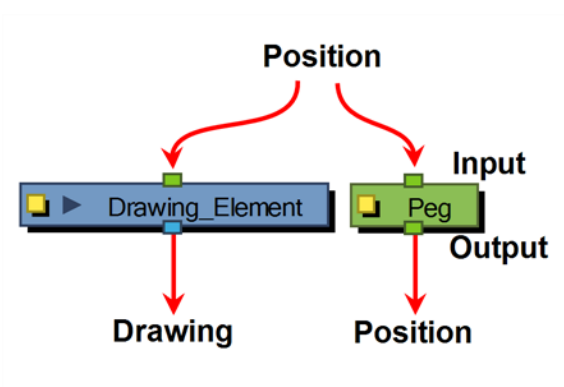
The basic rules of the Network view are quite simple. Once they are understood, a lot can be accomplished.

## Related Topics

- [Modules](#) on the next page

- [Input and Output Ports](#) on the facing page
- [Adding Modules](#) on page 602
- [Composite Module](#) on page 602
- [Organizing Modules](#) on page 603
- [Connecting and Disconnecting Modules](#) on page 604
- [Cable Styles](#) on page 604
- [Navigator Display](#) on page 605

## Modules

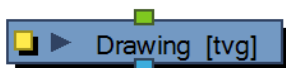


Each element in the Network view is called a *module*. There are different types of modules:

- Drawing Element Modules
- Effect Modules
- Input/Output Modules
- Move Modules
- Compositing Modules.

This is what they look like:

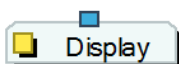
- **Drawing Element modules** transfer drawing information.



- **Effect modules** process effects on drawings and transfer drawing information.



- **Input/Output modules** are the interface between each module and network.





- **Move modules** control the camera and element transformations over time.



- **Composite modules** combine multiple source images.



## Input and Output Ports

Each module carries an input port at the top and an output port, placed at the bottom. Some are blue while others are light green or bright green.

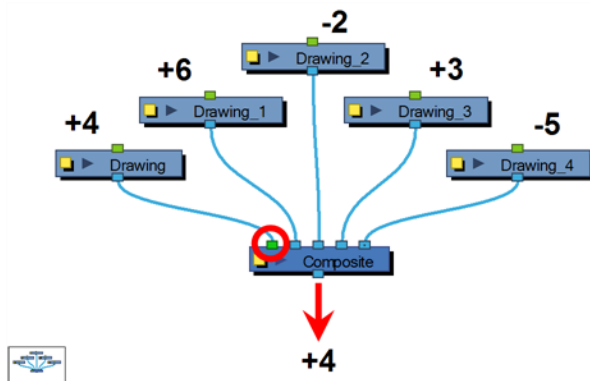
- Blue denotes drawing information



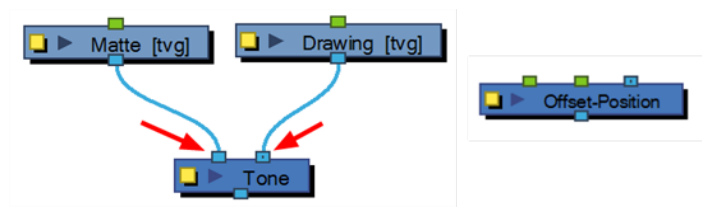
- Light Green denotes position and movement



- Bright green shows the element on top of the composition and outputs that element's Z position to the **Composite** module. When many elements have different Z positions (multiplane, different distances from the camera) and are placed through a **Composite** module that flattens them together (producing one image with one Z value), the system needs to give a Z position to this new image. It uses the bright green port element information.



Finally, some modules contain more than one input port. These are usually **Effects** modules needing different drawing or position information in order to perform their calculation. When the two ports are blue, the drawing is on the right and matte is on the left. If it is light green, the drawing needs extra position information.

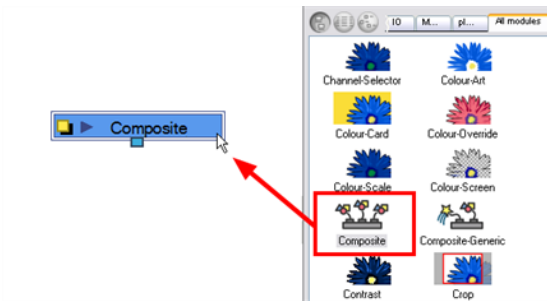


## Adding Modules

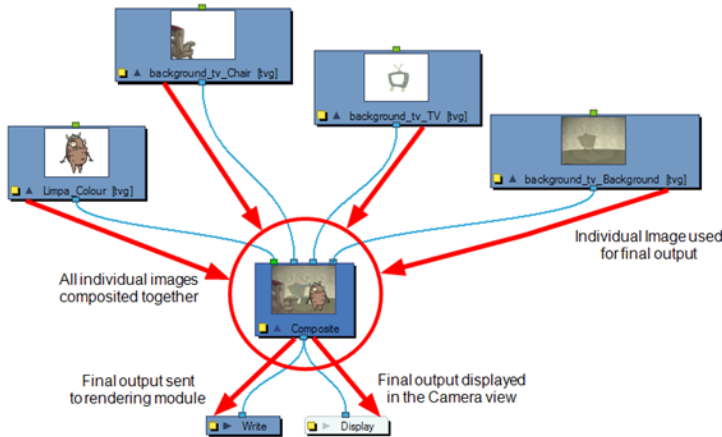
Each module used to build a network is available in the **Module Library** view. In addition, each time you create a layer from the **Timeline** or **Xsheet** views, the corresponding module is created in the **Network** view.

To import modules from the **Module Library**:

- ▶ In the Module Library, select the desired module and drag it in the **Network** view.



## Composite Module



The Composite module is used to take several images and output a single image. You can compare that to doing pre-compositions in some editing software. You connect several drawing modules in your Composite module and one bitmap comes out of it.

By default, the image coming out of the Composite module is a bitmap. The layers are composited together depending on their position on the Z-axis (forward-backward) first, then their order in the Composite module. If

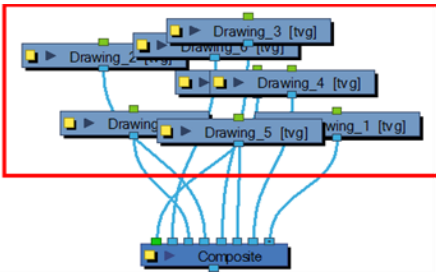
two images are at the same position on the Z-axis, their order in the Composite will determine which one is displayed in front and which one is displayed behind.

## Organizing Modules

When you are working in the **Network** view, and adding many modules, your scene might look a bit messy and be hard to follow. To fix this, Toon Boom Animate Pro provides the **Order Network** script which organizes and displays the modules in a more orderly fashion.

To use the **Order Network** script to organize your network:

1. In the Network view, select some or all of your modules.



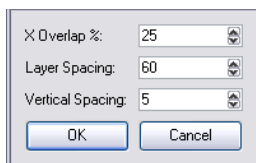
2. In the top menu, select **Window > Toolbars > Scripting** to display the **Scripting** toolbar and click on the **TB\_orderNetworkUp**  or **TB\_orderNetworkDown**  button.



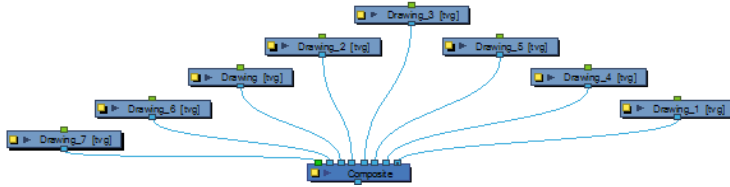
Refer to the following topics to learn how to display toolbars and customize your workspace:

- [Managing the Views on page 108](#)
- [Managing the Toolbars on page 112](#)
- [Managing the Workspace on page 116](#)

The **Order Network** dialog box opens.



3. Set an **X Overlap%** value.
4. Set a **Layer Spacing** value.
5. Set a **Vertical Spacing** value.
6. Click on the **OK** button to reorder the network with the specified parameters.

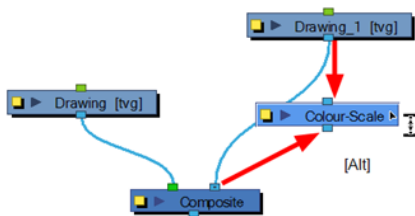


## Connecting and Disconnecting Modules

Making and removing connections between the modules is as easy as a click and drag.

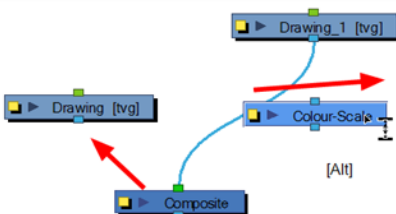
### To connect modules:

1. In the Network view, extend a cable from the first module's output port and connect it in the second module's input port.
  - You can also select the module to connect, hold down the [Alt] key and drag the module on an existing cable.



### To disconnect modules:

1. In the Network view, pull a cable away from the module's input port.
  - You can also select the module to disconnect, hold down the [Alt] key and drag the module away.

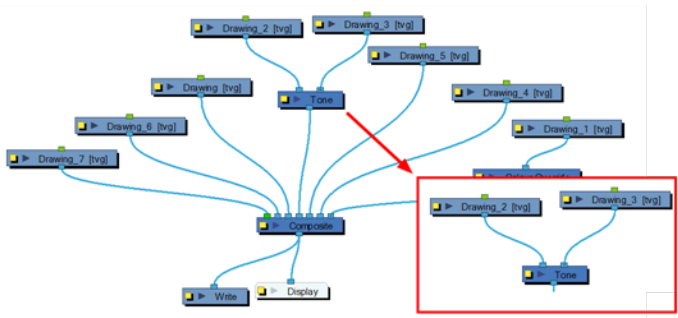


## Cable Styles

You can customize the look of the cables in the **Network** view to fit your style of working.

### Bezier

The Bezier cable style displays the cables as curved lines.

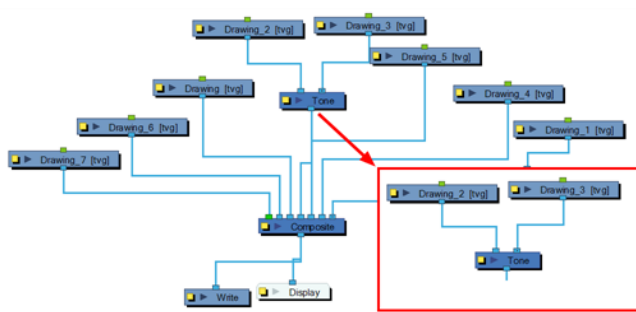


### To switch to Bezier cable style:

- ▶ In the Network View menu, select **View > Cable Style > Bezier**.

## Line

The Line cable style will display the cables as straight lines.



### To switch to Line cable style:

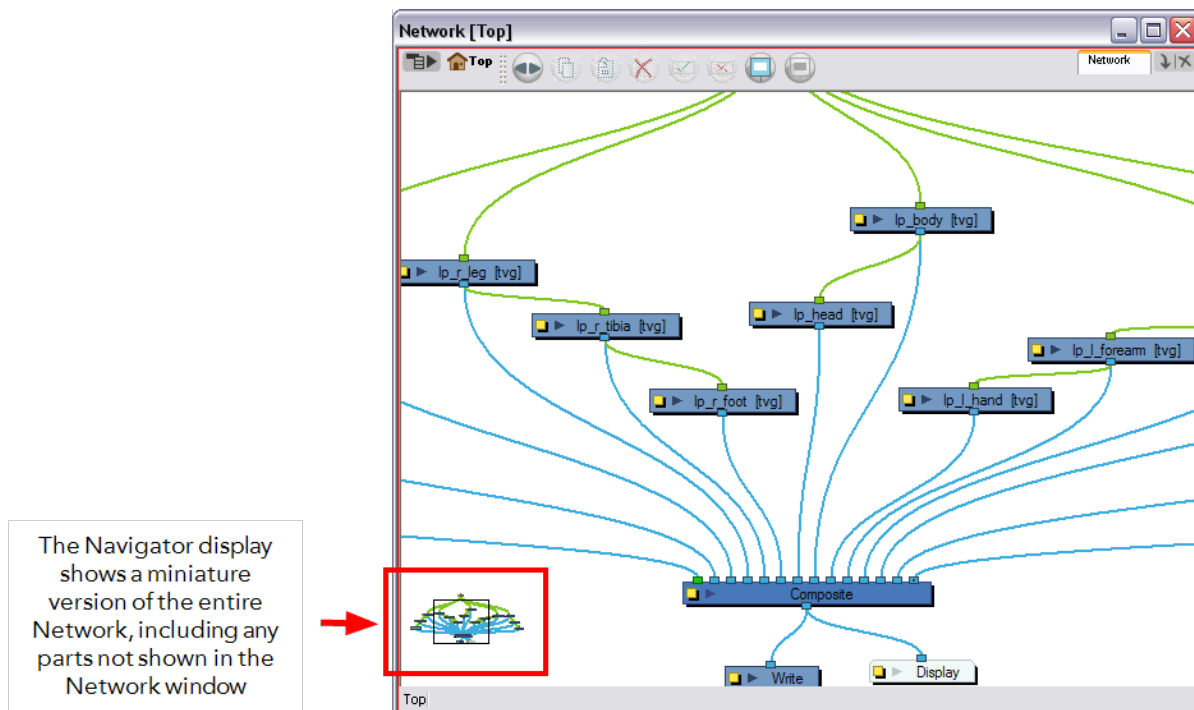
- ▶ In the Network View menu, select **View > Cable Style > Line**.



Refer to the [Scene Setup Preferences on page 634](#) topic to learn how to set the cable style in the **Preferences** panel.

## Navigator Display

The Navigator is a small square window inside the **Network** view that displays a thumbnail of your current network. The current view displayed in the Network window is shown framed in the **Navigator** display. You can drag this frame to pan your current Network view display.



## Showing and Hiding the Navigator

You can show or hide the **Navigator** from the **Network** view.

To show and hide the navigator:

- ▶ In the **Network View** menu, select **View > Navigator > Hide Navigator** or **Show Navigator**. Or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [W] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [W] (Mac OS X).

## Positioning the Navigator

The **Navigator** display can be placed in any corner of the **Network** view.

To position the navigator:

- ▶ In the **Network View** menu, select **View > Navigator >** and choose from **Top Left**, **Top Right**, **Bottom Left**, **Bottom Right**.



Refer to the [Scene Setup Preferences](#) on page 634 topic to learn how to set the **Navigator** display options in the **Preferences** panel.

## Related Topics

- [Composite Layer Properties](#) on the facing page
- [Grouping Modules](#) on page 609
- [Enabling and Disabling Modules](#) on page 615

- [Module Thumbnails](#) on page 617

## Composite Layer Properties



For more information about the **Composite** module options in a 3D environment context, refer to [Managing a Network with a 3D Scene Setup](#) on page 872.

### Composite Options

- **As Bitmap:** when selected, it composites all of the images into a single, flat bitmap image. The Z value of the final image will be based on the **Output Z** selection.
- **As Vector:** when selected, it composites all of the images as a single vector image. The Z value of the final image will be based on the **Output Z** selection.
- **As Seamless Bitmap:** When selected, it composites all of the images into a single, flat bitmap image (just like the **As Bitmap** compositing mode). The main difference between the **As Bitmap** and **As Seamless Bitmap** modes is that the seamless version ensures that there is no visible seam between adjacent vector drawings that have matching geometries. This can be useful for cut-out animation, where multiple drawings may align perfectly like pieces of a puzzle. This can also be useful when building a 3D set out of flat drawings rotated in 3D. In this case, using the **Seamless** mode will produce the correct result when two drawings are either intersecting, or nearly intersecting, in 3D. Note that the **As Seamless Bitmap** mode does not support the following effects: **Shadow**, **Glow**, **Blending** and **Focus**.
- **Pass Through:** when selected, no compositing operations occur. No image will be merged or flattened. Each individual image will keep its own properties. The compositing operations will happen only in the

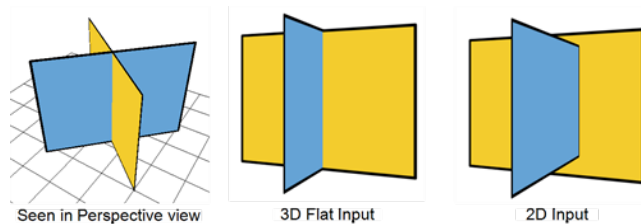
next **Composite** module connected below. In this case, the **Input Ordering** options are ignored. If a **Composite** set to **Pass Through** is the last one in the compositing chain, it will act the same as the **As Bitmap** option. At that point, the **Input Ordering** options will be considered.

### Input Ordering Options

- **2D:** When selected, elements connected in the module are composited based on their port ordering. The Z-axis (forward-backward) values are ignored. The scaling value will be correct, but the actual position on the Z-axis will be ignored. You can use the 2D composite type to create effects such as a camera recording overlay on your scene. Since you always want this element to be in front regardless of the other elements Z-axis position, you can set the option to 2D.



- **3D Flat:** When selected, the Z-axis value of the elements connected in the **Composite** module are considered, so the visual representation is correct in the **Camera** view. The output will be a flat image.



- **3D:** When selected, the Z-axis value of the elements connected in the composite module are considered, so the visual representation is correct in the **Camera** view. The image will not be flattened. The 3D aspect of the elements will be kept. For example, if you rotated elements on the three axes, the information will be retained and elements composited in lower levels will be able to intersect with the elements coming from a 3D **Composite** module. The 3D **Composite** module should only be used in advanced cases. It is better to use a **Pass Through** composite type than a 3D composite type. This way, all the elements are composited together in the final **Composite** module.

### Output Options

- **Output Z:** Use this selection to identify which element's front-back value from the current composition will be applied to the entire composited image in the next operation. If you select **Portnumber**, identify the appropriate port by its position using the **Port For Output Z** menu. The port used appears in a bright green the other ports on the **Composite** module. By default, the leftmost port is displayed in front and the rightmost one is displayed behind.

### Bitmap Options

These options are active when you select the **As Bitmap** mode.



- **Apply Focus:** Activates the **Focus** effect for this module in the composite operation.
- **Focus Multiplier:** The value entered in this field is used as a multiplier for the radius value specified in the **Focus** or **Focus-Multiplier** modules.

### Vector Options

These options are active when you select the **As Vector** mode.

- **Palette Name:** When you render files, you can use this field to set the name of the palette files that Toon Boom Animate Pro will create for them.
- **Flatten:** When selected, flattens vector drawings into one vector drawing file. Any transparency will be lost in the process. This creates smaller vector files, but might increase the time required to composite the drawings. This can be useful when reusing drawings. Because they will be vector files, you will still be able to apply vector-based transformations and effects.

### Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on page 599
- [Managing a Network with a 3D Scene Setup](#) on page 872

## Grouping Modules

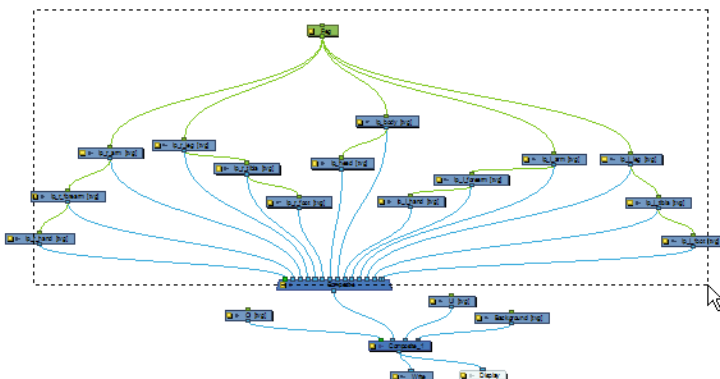
With so many connections and modules possible, the network can quickly become overcrowded. Grouping your modules will help to keep things organized.

- [Grouping a Selection](#) below
- [Grouping a Selection with Composite](#) on the next page
- [Ungrouping Selected Group](#) on page 612
- [Entering and Exiting a Group Module](#) on page 613
- [Moving a Selected Module to its Parent Group](#) on page 614

### Grouping a Selection

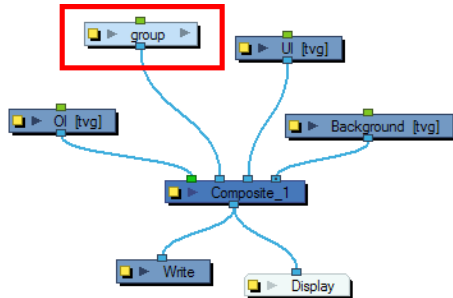
To group selected modules:

1. In the Network view, drag a selection around the modules you want to group.



2. Select **Edit > Group > Group Selected Layers** or press [Ctrl] + [G] (Windows) or [⌘] + [G] (Mac OS X).

Your modules are grouped.



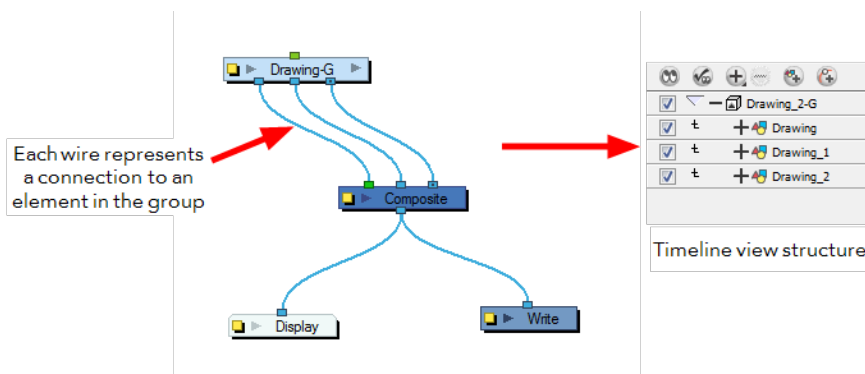
To ensure that your group remains connected to the main **Composite** module through only one output port it is recommended that you include a **Composite** module into your selection before grouping it.

## Grouping a Selection with Composite

There are several advantages to using the **Group Selection With Composite** command over the simple **Group Selection** (which references both the Group layer in the Timeline and the Group module in the Network view).

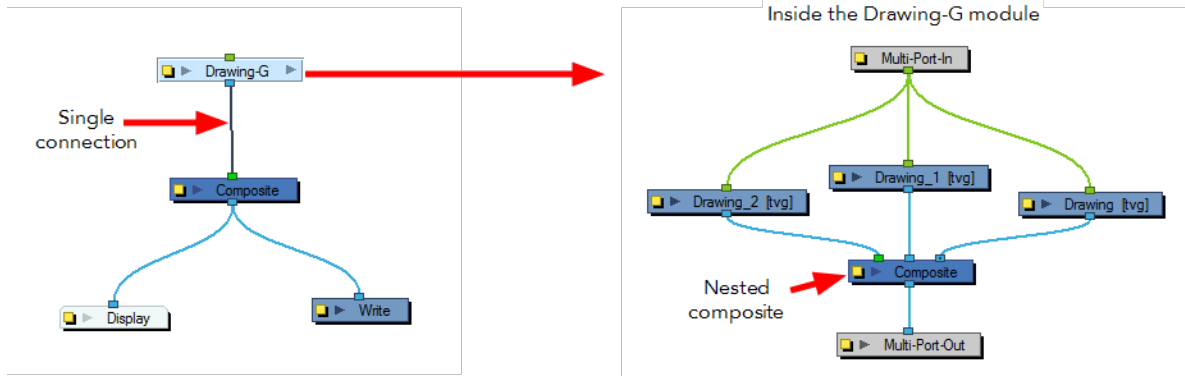
One of the advantages of using this command is that it groups all the selected elements into a neat module that has a nested composite. This means that there is only one connection coming out of the Group module. With the simple Group module or command, the Group displays the same number of connections as elements in the group. Both grouping commands display the same structure in the Timeline view.

### Group Selection



Timeline view structure	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Drawing_2-G
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+ Drawing
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+ Drawing_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+ Drawing_2

### Group Selection With Composite



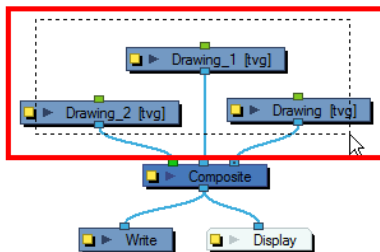
The **Group Selection With Composite** command should only be used before any work has been done in the Network view and it is recommended for objects whose stacking order is of no consequence.



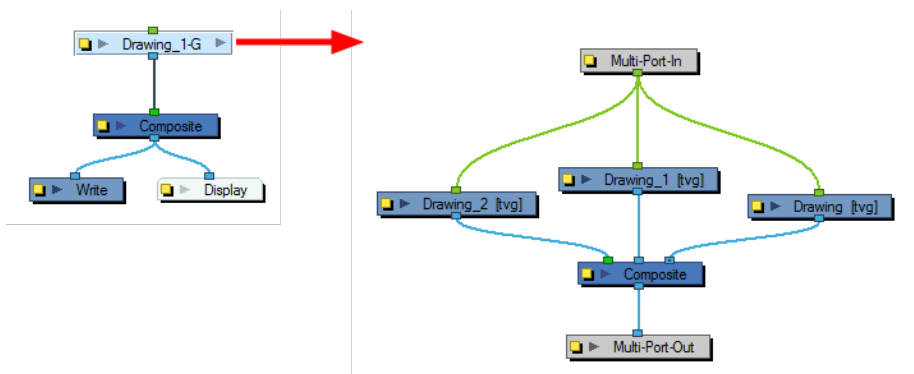
Using the Group Selection from Composite command on elements that have effects, have been tweaked in the Network view, or whose stacking order is of consequence, may cause the grouped elements to lose their properties once grouped in this way. In addition, though you may only select a few modules to group, if there are other layers in the timeline that exist between the selected layers, they will automatically be grouped, even if not selected.

To group selected elements using the **Group Selection With Composite** command in the Network view:

1. In the Network view, select the elements that you wish to group.

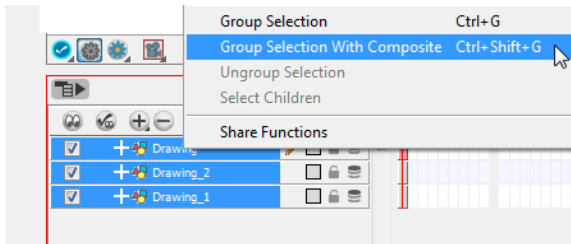


2. Right-click in the Network view and select **Group > Group Selection With Composite** from the menu. The selected modules will be grouped.



## To group selected elements using the Group Selection With Composite command in the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, in the layers section, select the elements that you wish to group.  
Any layers between the selected layers will automatically get grouped as well, so if the stacking order is of no consequence, move extra layers either above or below the layers that you wish to group.
2. right-click on one of the highlighted layers and from the pop-up menu select **Group Selection With Composite**.

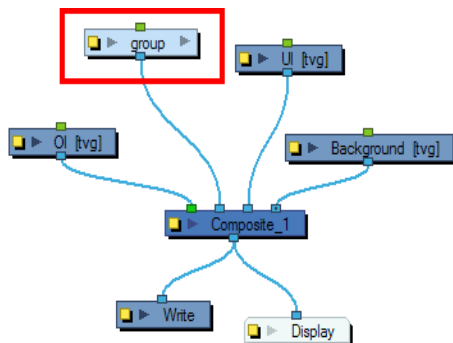


The layers appear indented under a new Group layer in the Timeline view and in a new Group module in the Network view.

## Ungrouping Selected Group

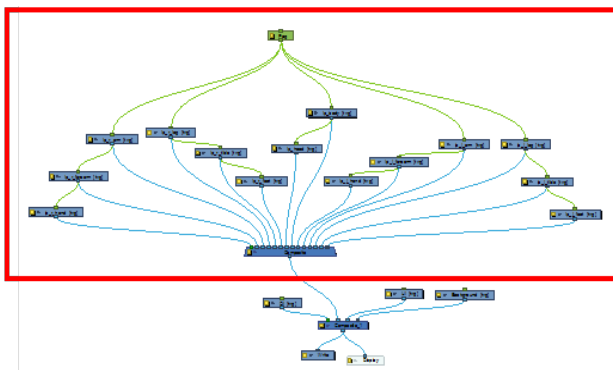
### To ungroup a selected group:

1. In the Network view, select the group module you want to ungroup.



2. Select **Edit > Group > Ungroup**.

Your modules are ungrouped.



## Entering and Exiting a Group Module

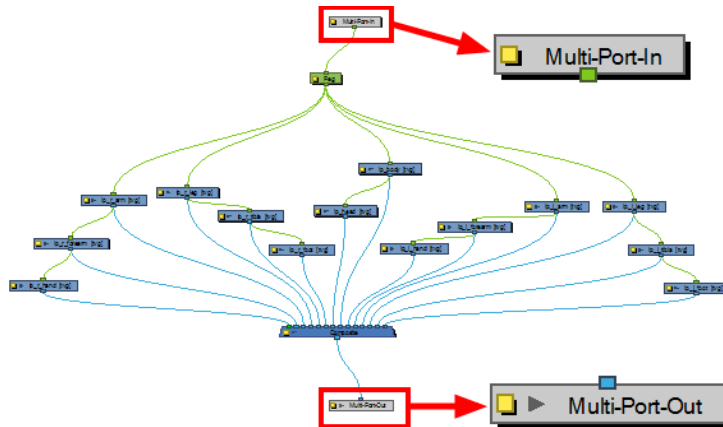
Once you create a group module, it is easy to enter into or exit from it.

### To enter a Group module:

1. In the Network view, click the dark arrow on the right end of the group module you want to enter.



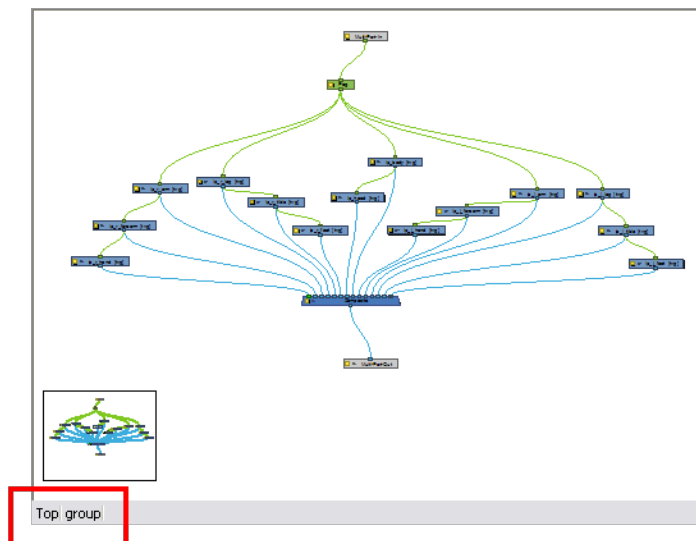
You will enter the group module.



- Inside the group module, the **Multi-Port-In** and **Multi-Port-Out** modules ensure that your connections continue beyond the group.

### To exit a Group module:

1. In the Network view, click on the destination in the **Group Hierarchy** menu at the bottom-left corner of the **Network** view. You can also select **Modules > Exit Group** from the **Network View** menu or hold down the [Shift] key and click on the **Multi-Port-Out** module. The default keyboard shortcut is [Backspace].



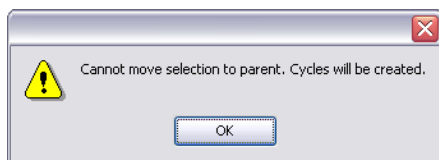
- ▶ When you enter a group, the **Group Hierarchy** menu displays the path to your current location within the network. In this particular example, the **Network** view displays the modules inside the group "group". To exit this group, click on **Top**.

## Moving a Selected Module to its Parent Group

Using the Move to Parent Group command allows you to move the selected module to the parent level, maintaining all connections.

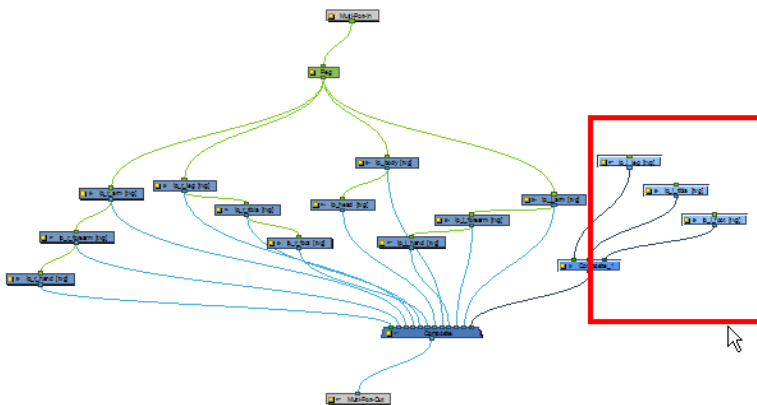


If the operation cannot maintain the connections between the modules, you will be notified and the operation will be terminated.



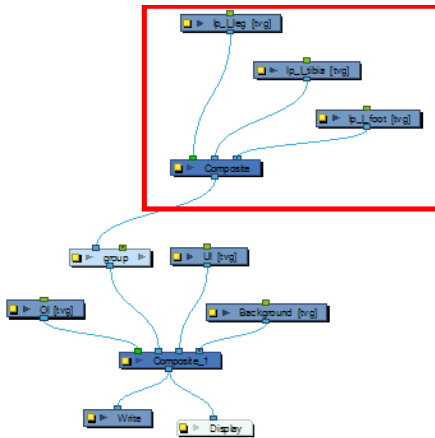
To move a selected module to its parent group:

1. In the Network view, go inside the group and select the modules you wish to move up to the parent group level.



2. In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Move to Parent Group** or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [U] (Mac OS X).

The selected modules are moved to the parent group level.



## Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on page 599

## Enabling and Disabling Modules

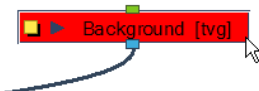
As with the Timeline layers, you can enable and disable the Network view modules. Disabling a module in the Network view will also disable its corresponding layer in the Timeline view. Disabled modules are displayed in red.

- [Enabling a Module](#) below
- [Enabling All Modules](#) on the next page
- [Disabling a Module](#) on the next page
- [Disabling All Other Modules](#) on the next page


## Enabling a Module

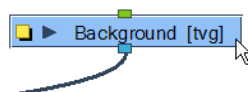
To enable modules:

1. In the **Network** view, select the disabled modules you want to enable.



2. In the **Network View** menu, select **Modules > Enable** or press [A]. This keyboard shortcut is also valid in the **Timeline** view.

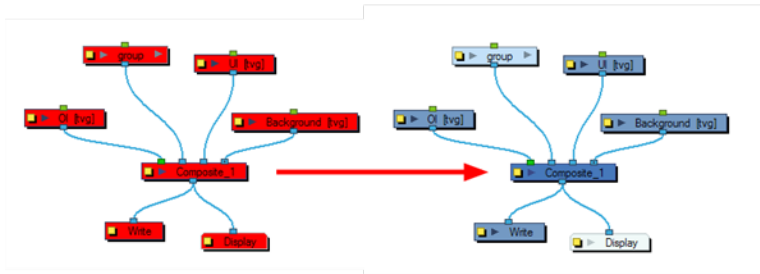
You can also select the module(s), right-click on it and select **Enable** from the menu or simply use the **Enable**  button in the Network View toolbar.




## Enabling All Modules

To enable all modules:

1. In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Enable All**.

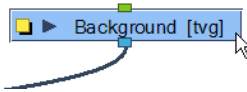


When enabling a group using **Modules > Enable All** , only the parent group layer is enabled. The modules inside the group remain disabled. In the Timeline the nested modules also remain deselected.


## Disabling a Module

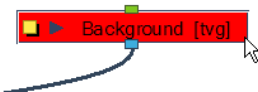
To disable modules:

1. In the Network view, select the module(s) you want to disable.



2. Do one of the following:

- ▶ In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Disable**.
- ▶ Click the **Disable**  button from the **Network View** toolbar.
- ▶ Press [D]. This keyboard shortcut is also valid in the Timeline view.



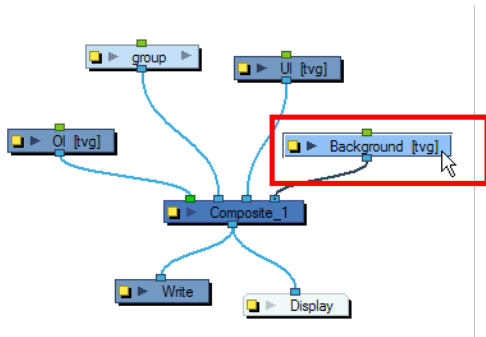
The Disable operation only affects the current level layer. It does not affect the nested modules within a group.

## Disabling All Other Modules

To disable all others:

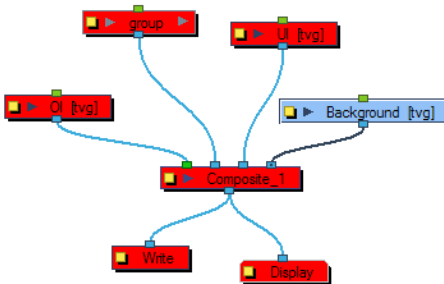
1. In the Network view, select the module(s) to remain enabled.





- In the Network View menu, select **Modules > Disable All Others** .

All modules are disabled except for those selected.



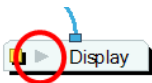
The **Disable All Others** operation only affects the current level layers. It does not affect the nested modules within a group.

## Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on page 599

## Module Thumbnails

In the Network view, some modules have a thumbnail option, identified by an arrow next to the square yellow button.

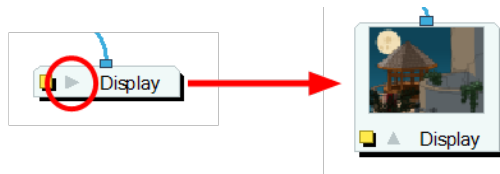


- [Show Thumbnails](#) below
- [Hide Thumbnails](#) on the next page
- [Hide All Thumbnails](#) on page 619

## Show Thumbnails

To show a module's thumbnail:

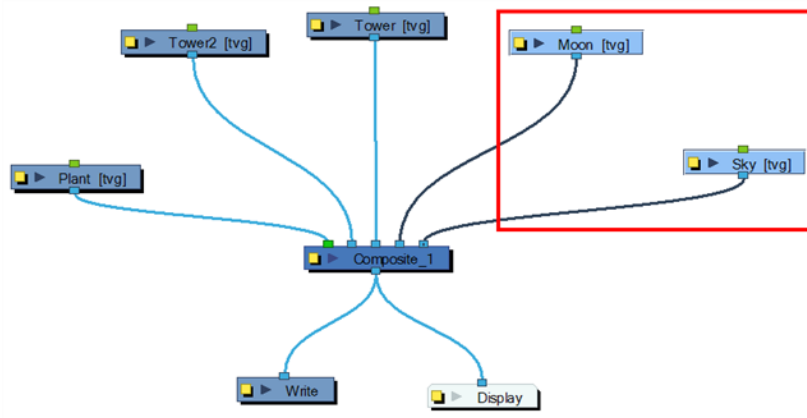
- In the Network view, click on the arrow in the module.  
The thumbnail opens.



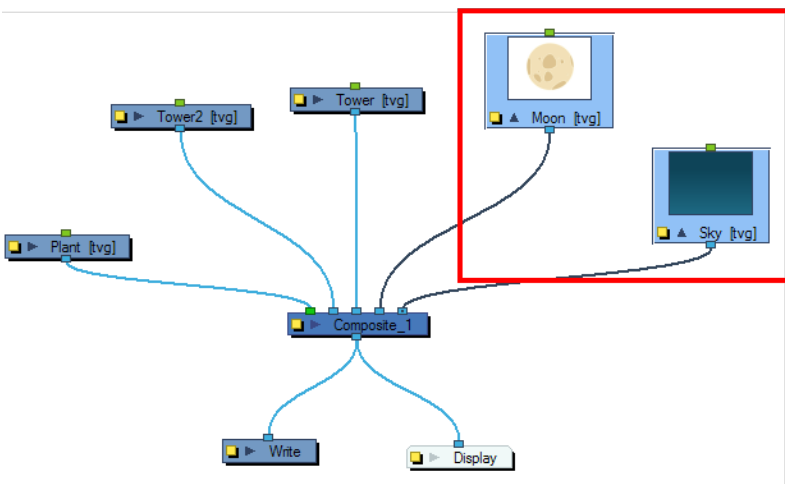
- ▶ If no thumbnail appears, click on the **Render View Mode**  button in the Camera view bottom toolbar to generate them.

**To show thumbnails of selected modules:**

1. In the Network view, select the module(s) you want to display the thumbnail for.



2. In the Network View menu, select **View > Show Selected Thumbnails** or press [T].

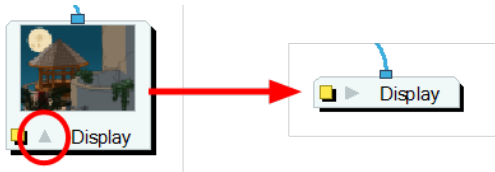


- ▶ If no thumbnail appears, click the **Render View Mode**  button in the Camera view bottom toolbar to generate them.

## Hide Thumbnails

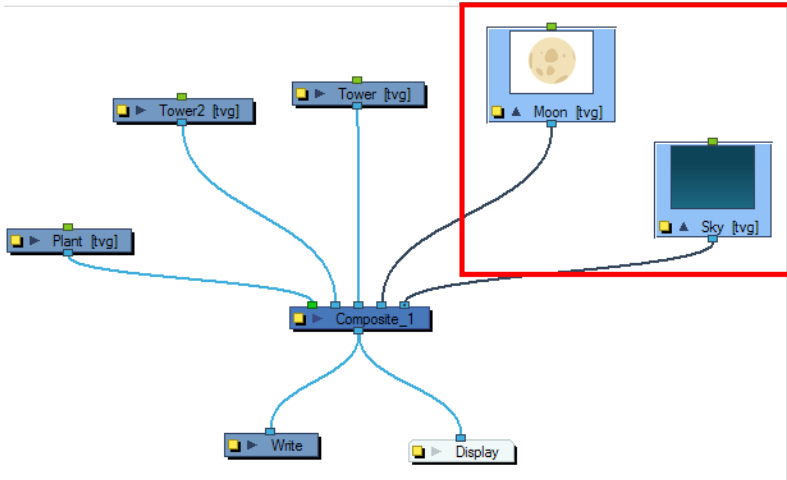
**To hide a module's thumbnail:**

- ▶ In the Network view, click on the arrow in the module.  
The thumbnail closes and the module returns to its closed state.

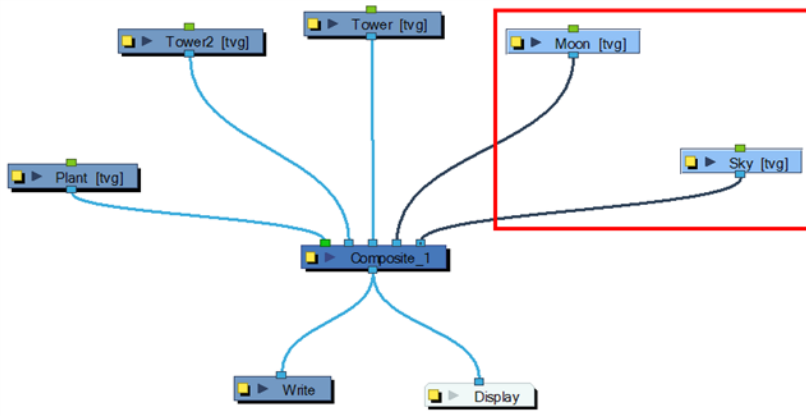


To hide thumbnails for the selected modules:

1. In the Network view, select the module(s) you want to hide the thumbnail display for.



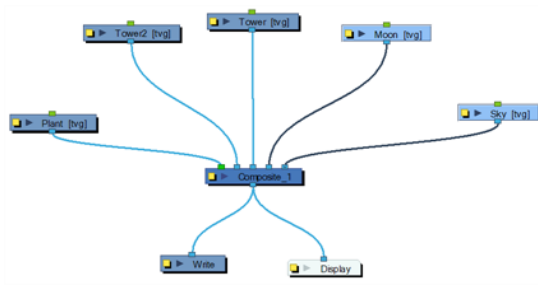
2. In the Network View menu, select **View > Hide Selected Thumbnails** or press [T].



## Hide All Thumbnails

To hide all modules thumbnails:

1. In the Network View menu, select **View > Hide All Thumbnails**.



## Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on page 599

# Display Concepts

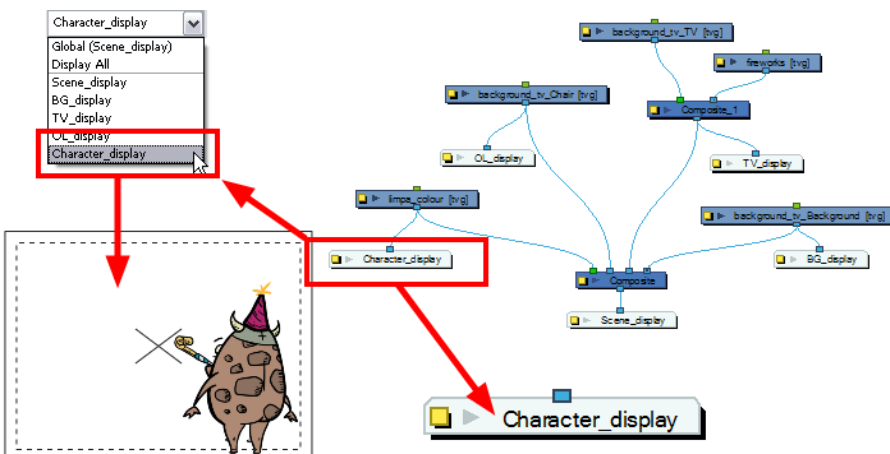
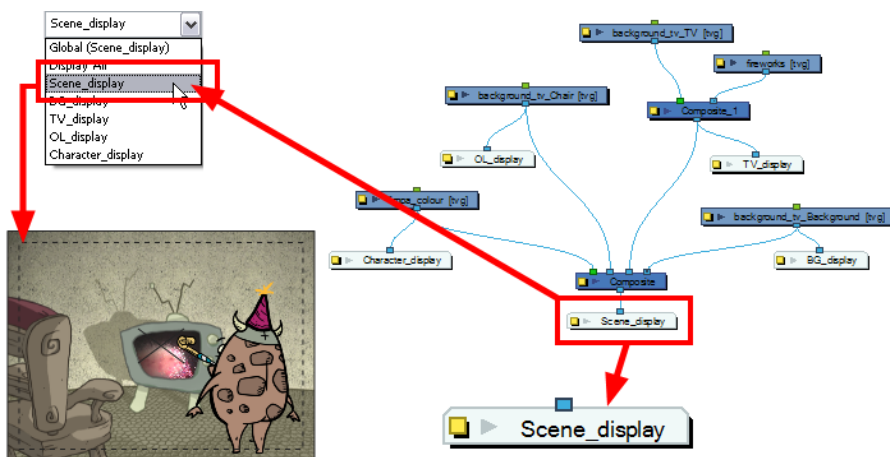
The Display module is an important element as it displays its content in the other views, primarily the Camera, Timeline and Playback views. It is located in the Module Library and imported in the Network view and can be connected to any module that outputs drawing images, such as drawing elements, effects or composite modules.

- [Display Modules](#) below
- [Global Display](#) on the next page
- [Display All](#) on the next page
- [Display Modes](#) on page 623

## Display Modules

You can have more than one Display module in a network allowing you to visualize different sections of the scenes without disabling or disconnecting elements that could be in the way. This technique is useful in Cut-out animation as it allows you to see one puppet without having all of the other characters in the way. It is also useful during compositing and helps you visualize effects individually.

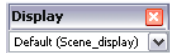
You can add a Display to your Network view by dragging one from the Module Library view.





To use this display concept, you must first show the **Display** toolbar.

## Global Display

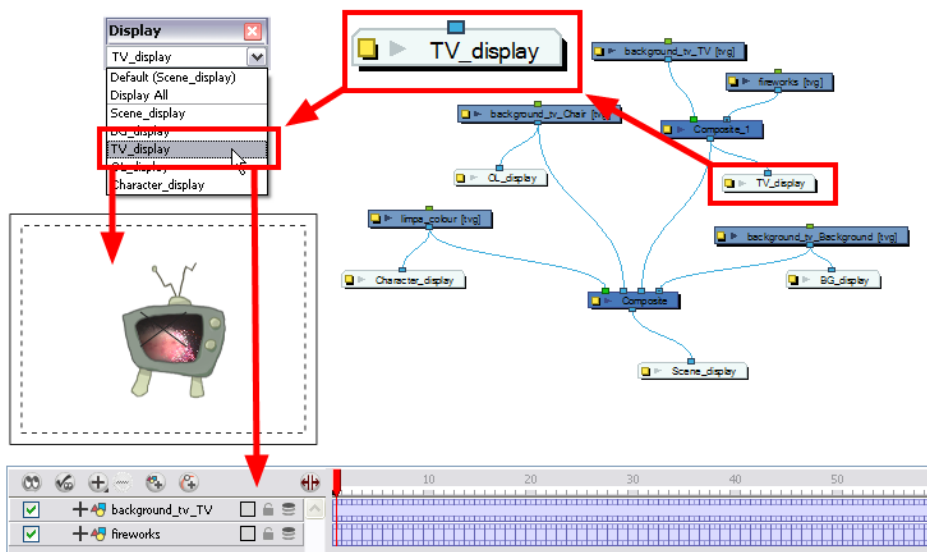


Animate Pro uses a Display toolbar to select the different display modules available in the network.

When selecting a new display, all of the views will update to show the content of the new display module. The Display toolbar is called the Global Display.

**To select a different display module as a global display:**

- ▶ Open the Display toolbar drop-down menu and select the desired display module from the list. Every view display will be updated in sequence.



## Display All

When your scene does not have a Display module, it is automatically set to Display All. This mode will set the display to the same order as the Timeline view.

You can also set your display to Display All with the Display toolbar.



If you try to add a peg layer in the Timeline view without having a layer selected, the peg layer will be floating in the Network view and will not be visible in the Timeline view. The Timeline view shows

If you switch to Display All, as a result of that, you run the risk of not realizing when you have floating



modules that aren't connected to your composite. For this reason it's not recommended to work in Display All mode.

## Display Modes

Toon Boom Animate Pro has two display modes. By default, it is set on **Basic Display** mode.

- [Basic Display](#) below
- [Advanced Display](#) below

### Basic Display

When creating a scene in Basic Display mode, a display module is automatically added to the network and connected to the final composite module. All of the views are set to display this module. This means that only the elements connected in that composite module will show in the Camera view.

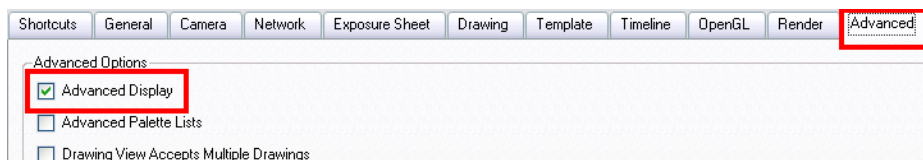
You can add and connect more display modules to your network and select the one you want using the **Global Display** drop-down menu. In **Basic** mode, every view is set to the same **Display** module.

### Advanced Display

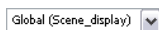
In Advanced Display mode, every view has its own Display drop down menu and each can be set to a different Display module. To switch from Basic to Advanced Display mode, you must enable the Advanced Display preference.

To enable the Advanced Display preference:

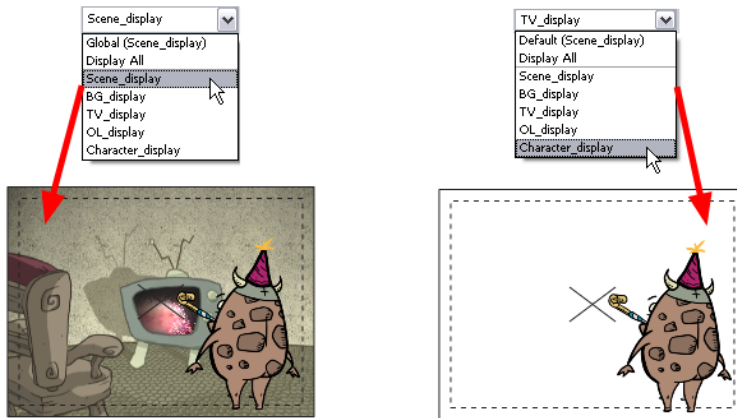
1. Select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X) to open the **Preferences** panel. The [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences panel, under the **Advanced** tab, select the **Advanced Display** option.



A Display drop-down menu appears in the top-left corner of the Camera, Timeline, Perspective, Top, and Side views.



When Animate Pro is set on Advanced Display mode, a Display drop-down menu appears in each view. These menus allow you to set the views for different displays. By default, all views are set on Global Display to follow the Global Display toolbar selection. However, you may want different views set on different displays. For example, you can have one Camera view to display the full scene and another Camera view to only display the character being animated. In this case, the user will set the first Camera view on the final display and the second on the character's display module.



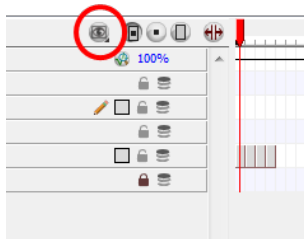
If you want the views to follow the Global Display toolbar selection, set the view display menu to **Global** display.

## Related Topics


- [Network View on page 599](#)

# Timeline View Modes

To streamline the process of working with elements in the Timeline, there are three different view modes you can choose to work in. With each mode you select, certain elements may or may not be visible in the Timeline. Depending on your workflow, this can come in useful to quickly hide elements when you want to focus on specific ones. To select a view mode, use the drop down menu located in the Timeline view.



## Normal View Mode


Normal View  mode is the default Timeline view mode, and will show everything that is connected to the chosen Display. While in this mode, anything not connected to the currently set Global Display will not be shown in the Timeline. This also means that you cannot add certain elements to view the Timeline, as by default, they are added unconnected to any Display. An example of such an element type is a peg.




If you prefer to work as you did before, where you see everything in the Timeline whether it's connected to a Display or not, you can change a preference to **Always Display Unconnected Modules**. You can find this preference in the Timeline tab—see [Scene Setup Preferences on page 634](#).

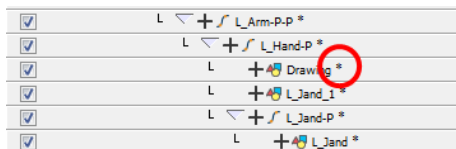


## Selection Only Mode

When working in Selection Only  mode, only elements currently selected in either the Camera or Network view will be visible in the Timeline. This makes it easier to concentrate on one or a few elements at a time.

## View Tagged Modules

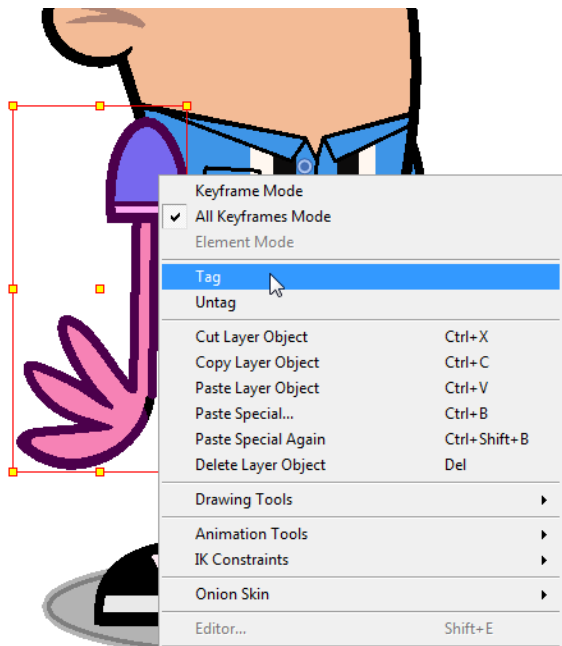
The View Tagged Modules  mode lets you see only elements which have been assigned a Tagged status. An item that has been tagged will appear in the Timeline with a small asterisks beside its name.



## Tagging and Untagging Elements

Tagging or untagging elements in the Camera view:

1. Click to select one, or multiple elements in the Camera view.
2. Right-click on your selection and select **Tag** or **Untag**.



Tagging or untagging elements in the Network view:

1. Select one or several elements in the **Network** view.
2. Right-click on the selection and from the **Tag** menu, choose one of the following:
  - Tag
  - Untag
  - Untag All

- Untag All Others

### Tagging or untagging elements in the Timeline view:

1. Click on one or more elements in the **Timeline** view.
2. Right-click on the selection and from the **Tag** menu, choose one of the following:
  - Tag
  - Untag
  - Untag All
  - Untag All Others

## Working in View Tagged Modules mode

Once your elements are tagged, and you have switched over to View Tagged Modules mode, the Timeline view will display only tagged elements. The red bar along the far left of the Timeline indicates you are in this view mode.



While in View Tagged Modules mode, the asterisks will no longer be displayed beside the tagged elements.

### Related Topics

- [Display Concepts on page 621](#)

# Creating a Multiplane



One of the most exciting features in Toon Boom Animate Pro is the multiplane, or Z-depth. In the multiplane you can create backgrounds in several layers, spread them on the Z-axis, add depth, and then move the camera through this environment to create an impressive perspective illusion. You can create backgrounds, use a layered PSD file or use a project from the sample material package.

## Related Topics

- [Top View and Side View below](#)
- [Perspective View on the next page](#)
- [Setting Up the Multiplane on page 630](#)
- [Distributing Elements on the Z-Axis on page 631](#)
- [Positioning Elements in 3D Space on page 861](#)
- [3D Camera Motion on page 868](#)

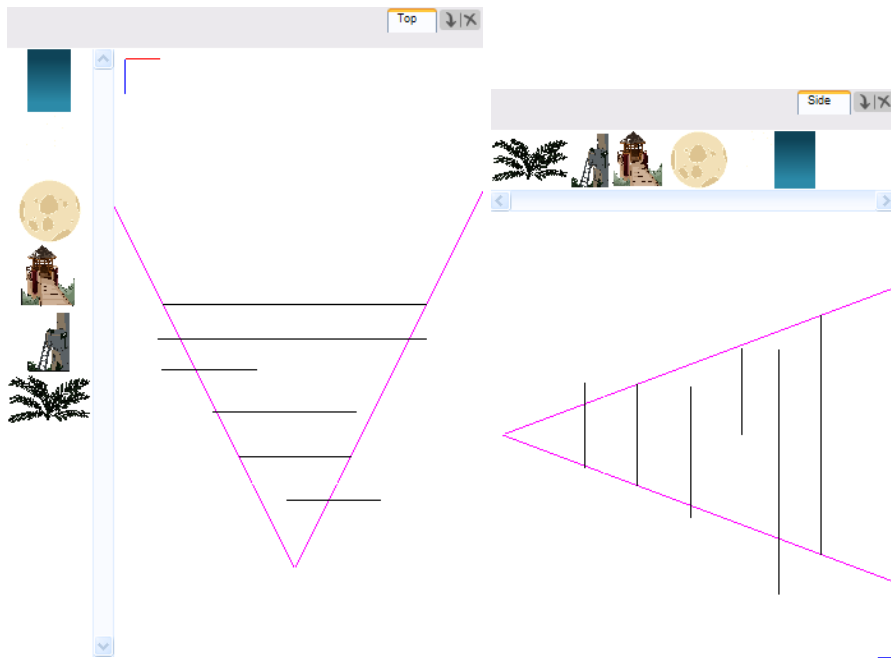
## Top View and Side View

The Top and Side views are used mainly for multiplane scenes and to position elements in 3D Space. They let the scene's stage to be seen from the top or the side. This lets the camera cone and the spacing between the elements to be seen.



Refer to the following sections of the [3D Space on page 849](#) chapter to learn more about positioning elements in 3D space and creating 3D Camera moves:

- [Positioning Elements in 3D Space on page 861](#)
- [3D Camera Motion on page 868](#)



1. The camera cone represents the camera's field-of-view (FOV).
2. A thumbnail of each drawing layer in your scene. The order of the thumbnail images is based on each element's FB position in the scene space. You can see a representation of the FB position of each layer in the camera cone.



Refer to the [Animation Paths on page 907](#) chapter to learn about keyframes, control points and animation paths. Refer to the [Creating a Multiplane on the previous page](#) topic to learn how to position your elements in the Top and Side view.

## Related Topics

- [Perspective View below](#)
- [Creating a Multiplane on the previous page](#)

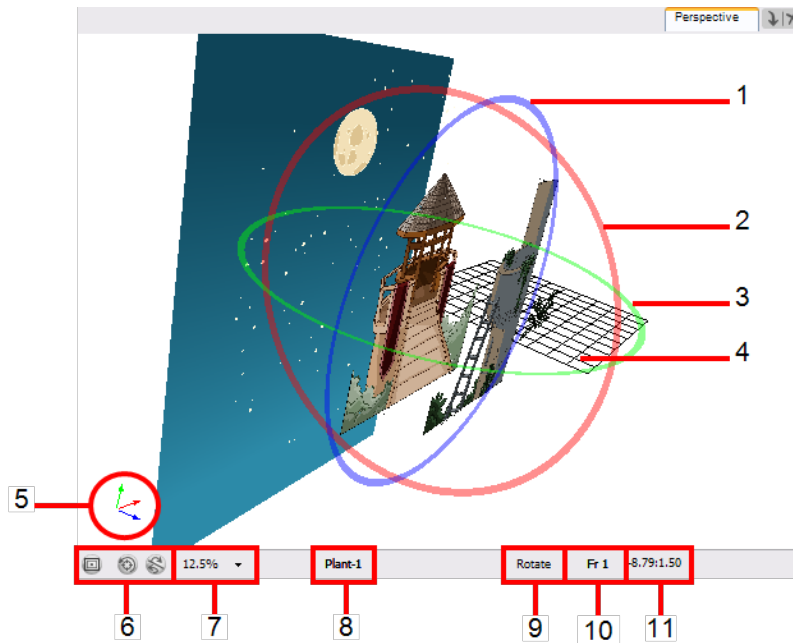
## Perspective View




The Perspective view is used during scene setup. Its main use is to allow you to see your multiplane scene's orientation. The Perspective view is similar to a 3D display, as it lets you rotate your scene through all possible angles to understand the spacing between the elements. You can also position and rotate your layers and the camera inside the 3D display to achieve some 3D setup and camera moves.

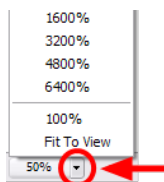


Refer to the following sections of the [3D Space on page 849](#) chapter to learn more about positioning elements in 3D space and creating 3D camera moves:

- [Positioning Elements in 3D Space on page 861](#)
- [3D Camera Motion on page 868](#)



1. The blue circle represents a rotation of the X and Y axis plane.
2. The red circle represents the rotation of the Y and Z axis plane.
3. The green circle represents the rotation of the X and Z axis plane.
4. This is a perspective grid reference.
5. The axis reference arrows let you maintain your orientation when navigating in the Perspective view.
6. There are three view option buttons displayed in the lower-left corner of the view.
  - ▶  **Show/Hide Camera:** Shows or hides camera frame in the Perspective view.
  - ▶  **Reset View:** Resets the Pan, Rotation and Zoom of the Perspective view.
  - ▶  **Reset Rotation:** Resets the rotation of the Perspective view.
7. This field displays the current zoom level in the Perspective view. You can use the Zoom level drop-down menu to select a specific zoom level from the list. Zoom levels from 2.5% to 6400% are available, you can also select Fit To View to automatically use a zoom level that lets you see all of your scene layers and information in the Perspective view at once.



8. This field displays the currently selected layer and drawing name.
9. This field displays the currently selected tool.
10. This field displays the currently selected frame of your animation.
11. This field displays the current position of your cursor inside the Perspective view.

### To rotate a scene in the Perspective view:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Rotate View**  tool.



- ▶ Click in the view, and drag your cursor around to rotate the view.
- ▶ Press and hold [Alt] + [Shift] and click and drag to rotate the view one axis at a time.

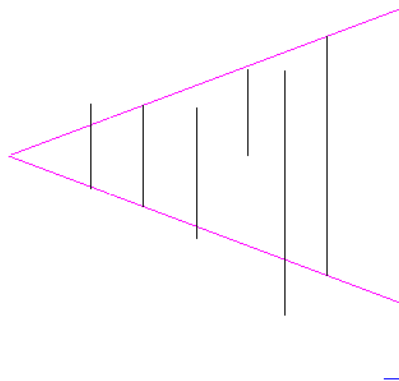
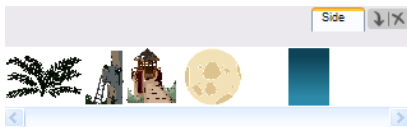
### Related Topics

- [Creating a Multiplane on page 627](#)
- [Top View and Side View on page 627](#)

## Setting Up the Multiplane

To construct a multiplane, you must imagine what a real environment is like. Take a look at your background picture and imagine a camera moving across the space. You will notice that objects in the picture would move at different speeds depending on where they are in relation to the camera lens.

Building a multiplane requires an understanding of the scene's background as well as the positioning of the elements on different layers.



For example, in this background, the main objects to be separated are:

1. Fern
2. Front tower
3. Second tower
4. Moon
5. Stars

## 6. Sky




Although the bottom of the tower is hidden behind the plant and the ladder, each of your multiplane layers should be a complete drawing. This is because hidden portions may show up during a camera movement later on in the scene

### Related Topics

- [Distributing Elements on the Z-Axis below](#)

## Distributing Elements on the Z-Axis

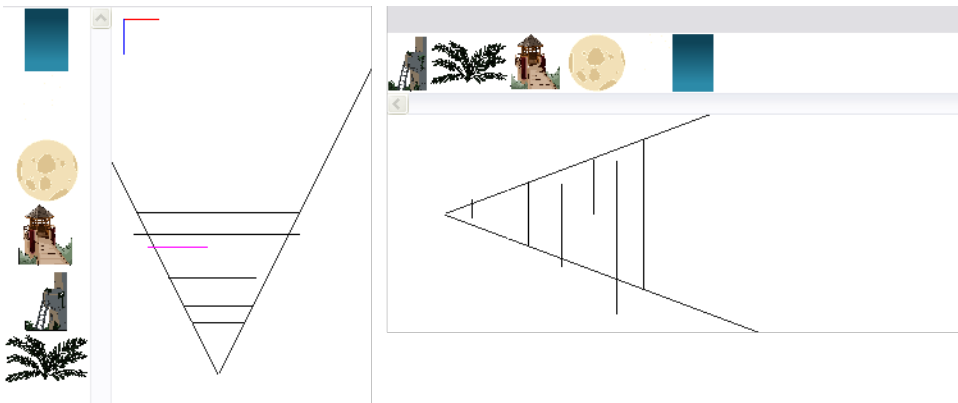
Now is the time to distribute the layers composing your multiplane along the Z-axis, maintaining their distance. You can position your layers on the Z-axis in the Side and Top view.

Positioning your element toward the camera will make your element bigger. Using the Maintain Size  tool, you will be able to drag your element toward the camera while keeping the same size aspect in the Camera view. This tool is available in the Advanced Animation toolbar.




It is a good idea to keep a Camera view opened to see what your scene looks like while positioning your element in the Top or Side view.

## Positioning Elements in the Top and Side Views

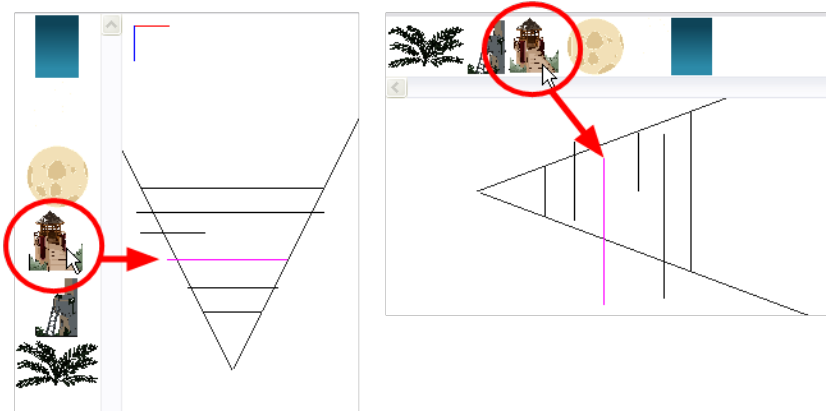


To be able to distribute the layers along the Z-axis using the Top and Side views, disable the No Z Dragging option by selecting **Animation > No Z Dragging**.

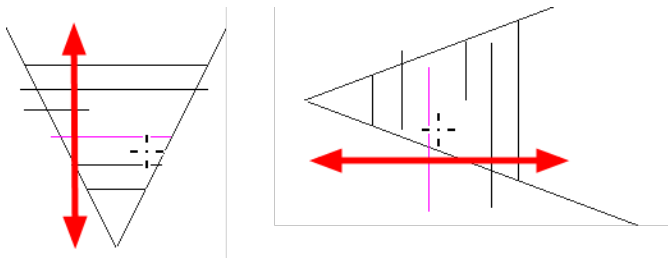
**To position your element in the Top and Side views:**

1. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, click the Maintain Size  tool or press [Alt] + [6].
2. In the Side view, select one of the layers in the thumbnails section of the Top or Side view. You can also select your layer from the Timeline view.

The selected layer will be highlighted in the camera cone.





3. Click and drag the layer to the correct depth position in the camera cone. Your element aspect will remain the same in the Camera view.

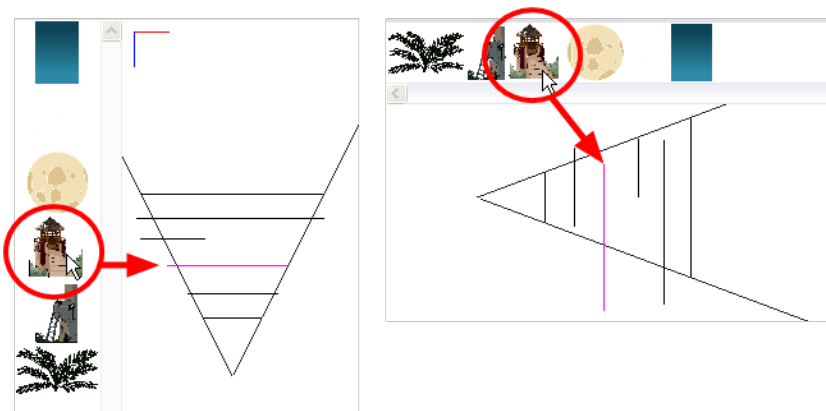


4. In the Tools toolbar, click the Transform  tool, or select the Translate  tool in the Advanced

Animation toolbar and select a layer from the thumbnails section of the Top or Side view. You can also select your layer from the Timeline view.

- If you choose the Transform  tool, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  option is disabled in the Transform tool's Tool Properties view.

The selected layer will be highlighted in the camera cone.





5. In the TOP view, drag the element sideways to position horizontally. You can press and hold [Shift] while dragging the element to make sure it only moves along the X-axis.
6. In the Side view, drag the selected element up or down to position it vertically. You can press and hold [Shift] while dragging the element to make sure it only moves along the Y-axis.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Multiplane on page 627](#)
- [Top View and Side View on page 627](#)
- [Perspective View on page 628](#)
- [Setting Up the Multiplane on page 630](#)

# Scene Setup Preferences

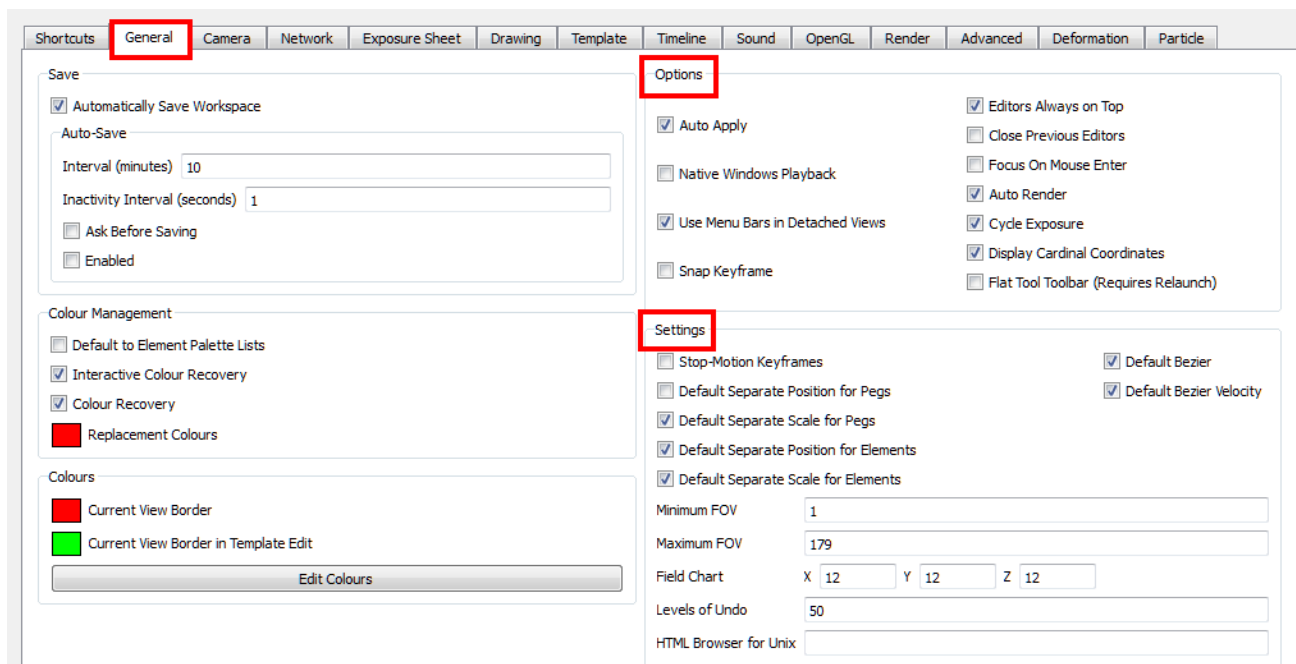
When setting up your scene in Animate Pro, some preferences can help you work more efficiently.

- [General Tab Preferences](#) below
- [Camera Tab Preferences](#) on page 636
- [Network Tab Preferences](#) on page 638
- [Timeline Tab Preferences](#) on page 639
- [OpenGL Tab Preferences](#) on page 640
- [Advanced Tab Preferences](#) on page 641

To open the Preferences dialog box:

- Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## General Tab Preferences



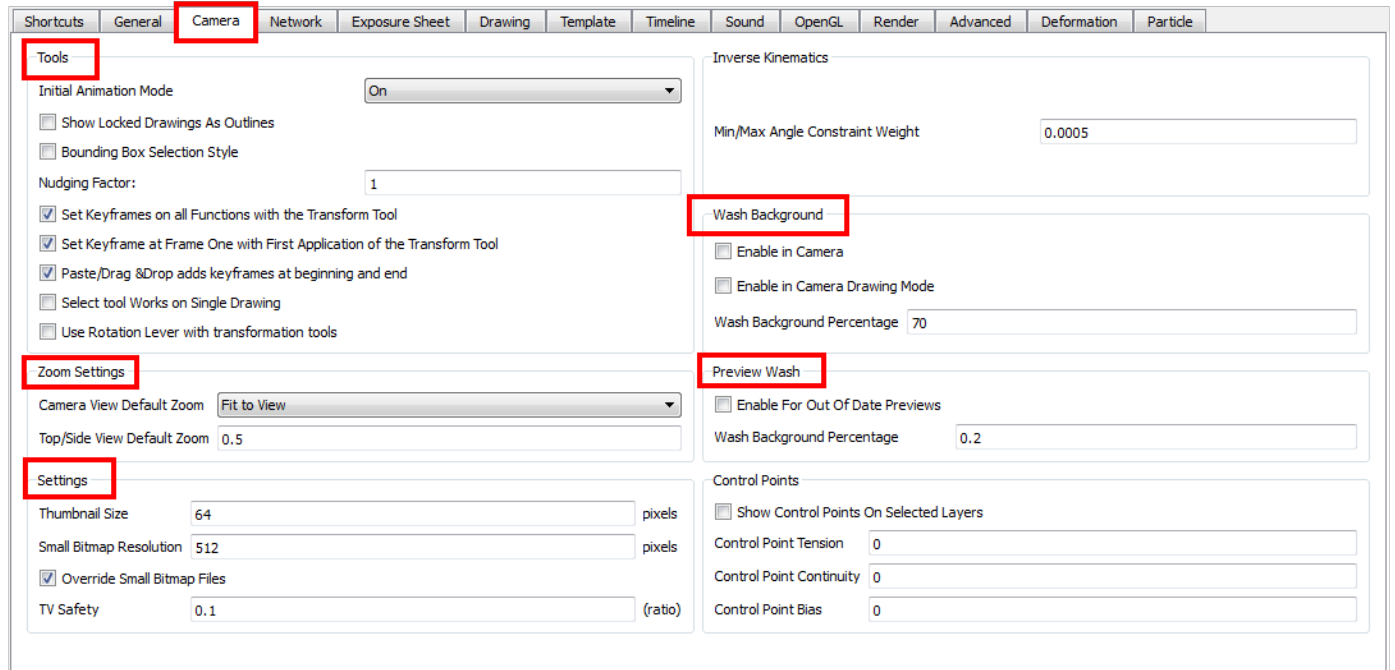
## Options

- **Auto Apply:** When enabled, values entered or options selected in module editors are automatically applied to elements in your scene. The Apply and OK buttons are hidden in the Layer Properties when this feature is enabled.
- **Native Windows Playback:** When enabled, the native Windows functions are used for play back in Enable Cache mode.
- **Editors Always on Top:** When enabled, the Layers and Function Editors are on top of the main window.

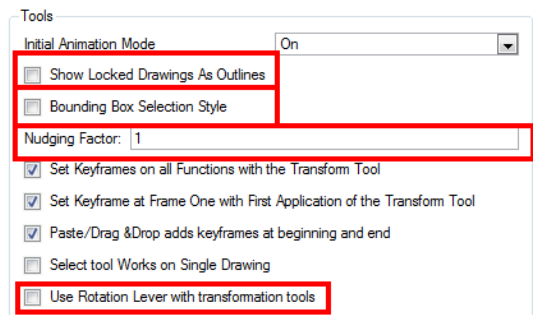
## Settings

- **Minimum FOV:** This is the minimum field-of-view value of the camera.
- **Maximum FOV:** This is the maximum field-of-view value of the camera.

# Camera Tab Preferences

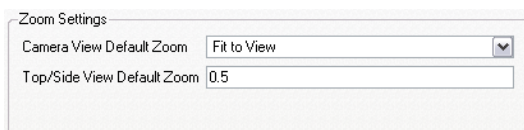


## Tools



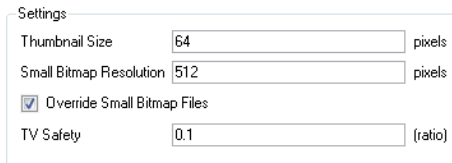
- **Show Locked Drawings As Outlines:** In the Camera view, locked elements are displayed as outlines only.
- **Nudging Factor:** The nudging increment value.

## Zoom Settings



- **Camera View Default Zoom:** The default zoom value for the Camera view.
- **Top/Side View Default Zoom:** The default zoom value for the Top/Side views.

## Settings



Settings

Thumbnail Size  pixels

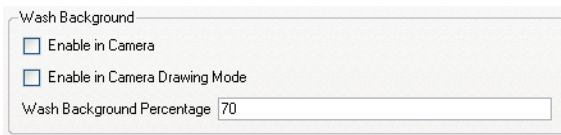
Small Bitmap Resolution  pixels

Override Small Bitmap Files

TV Safety  (ratio)

- **Thumbnail Size:** The thumbnail size, in pixels, that appears in the Top and Side views.
- **Small Bitmap Resolution:** The size, in pixels, of the smaller bitmap version of your image. When you import a bitmap image into a scene, a smaller version of it is created by the system in order to accelerate the compositing and playback processes.
- **Override Small Bitmap Files:** Enable this option if you want the system to generate new versions of the already existing smaller bitmap files, every time you modify the Small Bitmap Resolution value. When the option is disabled, the already existing smaller bitmap versions will not be regenerated and will keep the same resolution as when they were created.
- **TV Safety:** The ratio value for the TV Safety frame in proportion to the regular camera frame.

## Wash Background



Wash Background

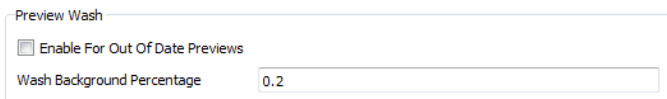
Enable in Camera

Enable in Camera Drawing Mode

Wash Background Percentage

- **Enable in Camera:** Dulls background bitmaps in Camera view. This allows you to see other elements clearly, such as the ones that have not yet been painted.
- **Enable in Camera Drawing Mode:** Dulls background bitmaps in Camera view while using drawing tools. This allows you to see other elements clearly, such as the ones that have not yet been painted.
- **Wash Background Percentage:** The Wash Percentage value.

## Preview Wash



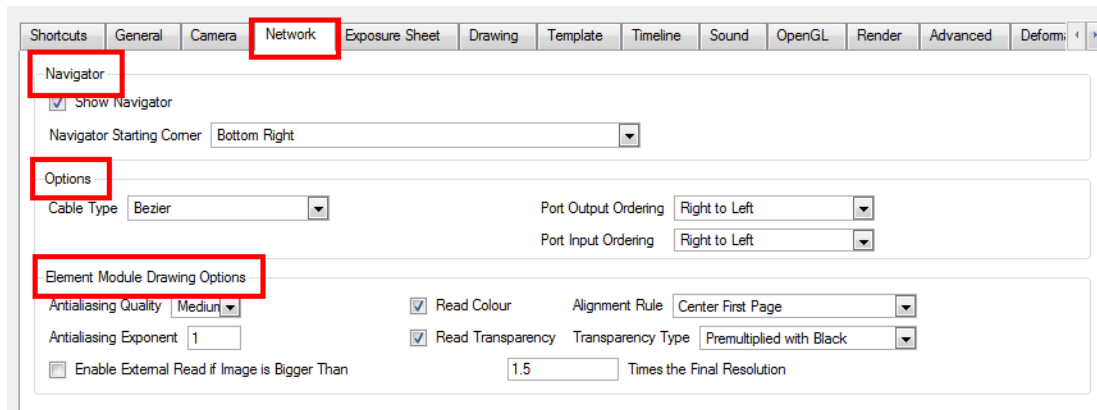
Preview Wash

Enable For Out Of Date Previews

Wash Background Percentage

- **Enable For Out of Date Previews:** When you disable the automatic render preview, you need to click on the **Update Preview** button in either the **Rendering** toolbar or the **Camera** view bottom toolbar in order to recalculate and update the preview. When this option is enabled, if ever the current render preview is out of date and requires you to press the **Update Preview** button, the **Camera** view will display the current preview as washed out colours.
- **Wash Background Percentage:** This is the value in percentage by which the outdated preview will be washed out.

# Network Tab Preferences



## Navigator

- **Show Navigator:** Enable or disable the display of the Navigator in the Network view when starting up Toon Boom Animate Pro.
- **Navigator Starting Corner:** Indicates which corner is the default Navigator's position.

## Options

- **Cable Type:** Displays Network connections as **Lines** (straight) or **Beziers** (curves).
- **Port Output Ordering:** Orders the Output Port **Right to Left** or **Left to Right**.
- **Port Input Ordering:** Orders the Input Port **Right to Left** or **Left to Right**.

## Element Module Drawing Options

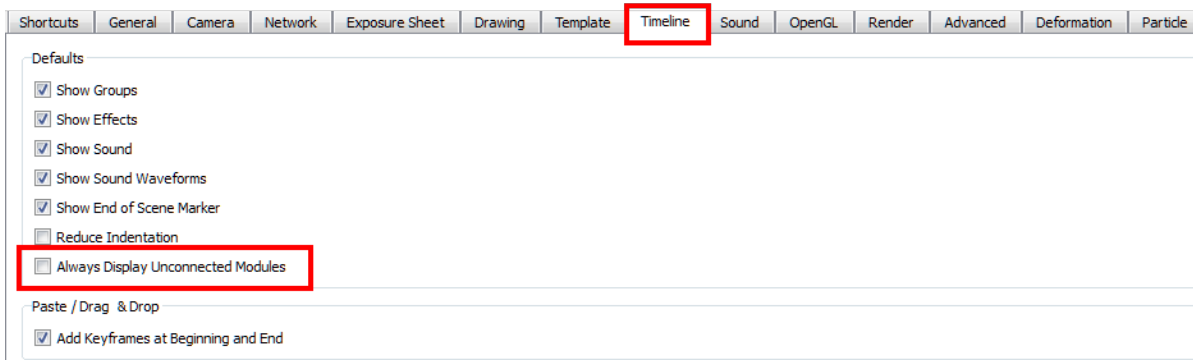
- **Anti-aliasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to Colour Art.
  - **Low:** No antialiasing
  - **Medium Low:** Some antialiasing
  - **Medium:** Medium antialiasing
  - **High:** Extensive antialiasing

The higher the chosen setting, the greater the amount of antialiasing that is applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more system memory. Choose a lower quality if you are rendering a Pencil Test.

- **Anti-aliasing Exponent:** Controls the amount of area around the Line and Colour Art edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.
- **Enable External Read If Image Is Bigger Than:** If the image to render out is larger than the value entered in the box, the system will create an external render for that special image. It will open a second copy of Toon Boom Animate Pro in the background (not visible to the user), cut and set the image to the scene format and finally send it back to the original scene.

- **Read Colour:** Controls the production of colour information from bitmap images. If this module reads 3 or 4-channel bitmaps, this selection determines whether the colour should be read or ignored. If this module reads 1-channel bitmaps, this selection determines whether the channel should be read as colour. When this option is selected with 1-channel images, the result will be a greyscale image.
- **Read Transparency:** Controls the production of alpha information from bitmap images. If this module reads a 1 or 3-channel image, this option will create a matte from the colour values in the image. If the module reads a 4-channel image and this option is not selected, the alpha information in the image will be ignored.
- **Alignment Rule:** The Alignment position for the element module. The new element module will be created following this default rule of alignment.
- **Transparency Type:**
  - **Premultiplied with Black:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black.
  - **Premultiplied with White:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with white.
  - **Straight:** Pixels at the edge of an image are blended with black, white and greys.
  - **Clamp Colour to Alpha:** Select this option when you want to premultiply the colour value with the alpha value. When the colour is clamped to the alpha, the colour value cannot be higher than the alpha value. It calculates the real colour value faster. When the RGB values are multiplied with the alpha value, that is to say, if you have a pixel of value R=247, G=188, B=29 and the alpha is 50% or the image has a 50% transparency, then the actual RGB values output would be half of the amounts listed above.

## Timeline Tab Preferences



## Defaults

- **Always Display Unconnected Modules:** Enable this preference if you prefer to see elements in the Timeline that have not yet been connected to a particular Display, even when in Normal View mode. This preference is not on by default.

# OpenGL Tab Preferences

Shortcuts	General	Camera	Network	Exposure Sheet	Drawing	Template	Timeline	Sound	OpenGL	Render	Advanced	Deformation	Particle
<b>Settings</b>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Conservative Texture Management <span style="float: right;">Maximum Texture Size: <input type="text" value="2048"/></span>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Smooth Textures <span style="float: right;">Texture Memory: <input type="text" value="1622"/> MB</span>													
<input type="checkbox"/> Alternate Gradient and Cutter <span style="float: right;">Vector Drawing Maximum Texture Size : <input type="text" value="1024"/></span>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use PBuffer for Picking													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Support Triple Buffer													
<input type="checkbox"/> Support Desktop Effects													
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Hardware Vertex Texture Fetching if Available													
<b>Real-Time Antialiasing</b>													
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable													
Render at this Factor Times the Scene Resolution <input type="text" value="1"/> <span style="float: right;">Tile Size <input type="text" value="64"/></span>													
<b>Full Scene Antialiasing</b>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable													
Number of samples (for Mac OS) <input type="text" value="0"/>													
<b>Drawings</b>													
<input type="checkbox"/> Support Transparency in Pencil Lines (requires restart) <span style="float: right;"><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Variable Line Thickness</span>													
<b>Effects</b>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Tone and Highlight <span style="float: right;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Colour Override</span>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Cutter <span style="float: right;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Glue Module</span>													

## Settings

Shortcuts	General	Camera	Network	Exposure Sheet	Drawing	Template	Timeline	Sound	OpenGL	Render	Advanced	Deformation	Particle
<b>Settings</b>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Conservative Texture Management <span style="float: right;">Maximum Texture Size: <input type="text" value="2048"/></span>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Smooth Textures <span style="float: right;">Texture Memory: <input type="text" value="1622"/> MB</span>													
<input type="checkbox"/> Alternate Gradient and Cutter <span style="float: right;">Vector Drawing Maximum Texture Size : <input type="text" value="1024"/></span>													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use PBuffer for Picking													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Support Triple Buffer													
<input type="checkbox"/> Support Desktop Effects													
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Hardware Vertex Texture Fetching if Available													

- **Conservative Texture Management:** Turns on and off conservative memory management for bitmap texture files. Performance will improve when this is enabled. If disabled, you will have a better on-screen rendering of bitmap files at the expense of slower performance.
- **Smooth Textures:** Smooths out the pixels of bitmap images when zooming in; this improves bitmap image quality.
- **Alternate Gradient and Cutter:** This is an alternative way to disable write in the OpenGL Backbuffer, required for some video cards (i.e. GeForce FX5200). Do not enable this option unless you are experiencing problems with gradients and cutters in OpenGL.
- **Use PBuffer for Picking:** This will use an off-screen buffer for picking, resulting in a quicker response. This option should not be enabled if using a small capacity video card (32MB).



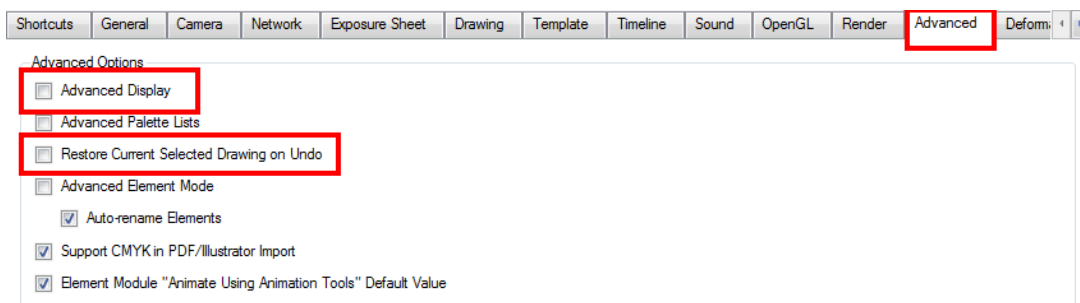
- **Support Triple Buffer:** Enable this option for a better compatibility with Windows Vista if your video card driver does not allow to disable the triple buffering option. Not enabling this option may result in a dashing line when drawing a brush stroke.
- **Support Desktop Effects:** Enable this option for better compatibility with Windows 7, Windows Vista and Mac OS X desktop effects. This will prevent graphic compositing problems from happening when the full-scene anti-aliasing option is enabled.
- **Maximum Texture Size:** The size that the bitmap file will be reduced to when using the Conservative Texture Management
- **Texture Memory:** The amount of temporary memory used to store bitmap texture files.
- **Vector Drawing Maximum Texture Size:** This is the size that the .tvg file will be reduced to for better performance when in OpenGL render mode.

## Drawings



- **Support Transparency in Pencil Lines:** When the option is enabled, the pencil lines are displayed normally. The lines will be opaque (unless there are transparencies). Disabling this option will reduce rendering times, but will display additive opacities for overlapping pencil lines and unevenly filled curved pencil lines.
- **Enable Variable Line Thickness:** Turns on and off the rendering of the variable line thickness option of the Element Module.

## Advanced Tab Preferences

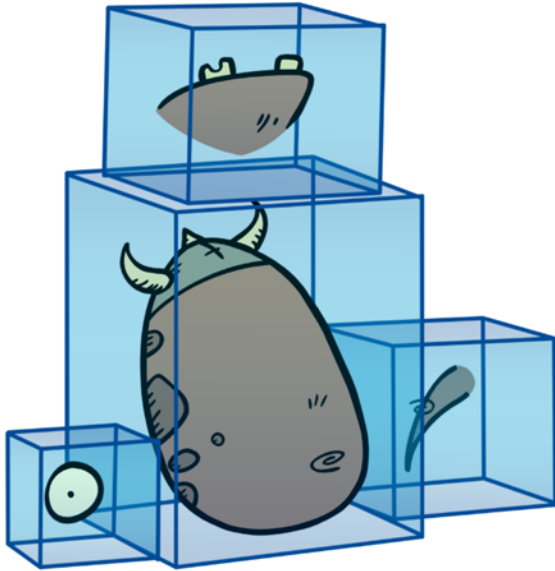


## Advanced Options

- **Advanced Display:** Enable or disable the **Advanced Display** mode—see [Display Concepts on page 621](#) topic to learn more about the functionality of Advanced Display.
- **Restore Current Selected Drawing On Undo:** If a drawing other than the current one is being affected by an **Undo** command, the system will display the affected drawing when this is enabled.



# Chapter 11: Library



You can share and reuse any elements you create in Toon Boom Animate Pro using symbols and Templates. Animate Pro has a library where you can store several different elements such as puppets, backgrounds, animations and keyposes. In fact, anything you create in Animate Pro can be stored in the library.

## Topics Covered

- [Understanding the Library Concept on the next page](#)
- [Library View on page 646](#)
- [Structuring the Library on page 649](#)
- [Symbols on page 654](#)
- [Templates on page 663](#)
- [Importing Symbols and Templates on page 668](#)
- [Library Preferences on page 680](#)

# Understanding the Library Concept

Use the Library view to reuse your artwork and animation in other scenes or to build props and puppets.

- [What is a Library? below](#)
- [What is a Symbol? below](#)
- [What is a Template? on the facing page](#)
- [Understanding the Library Concept above](#)

## What is a Library?

A library is a folder where you store your templates and symbols. You can access these folders from different projects. Using the library is easy, just drag the content into the library to store your artwork and then drag it into your Timeline or Camera view when you want to reuse it.

Organize your library using subfolders. You can keep several different library folders on your hard drive or network.

## What is a Symbol?

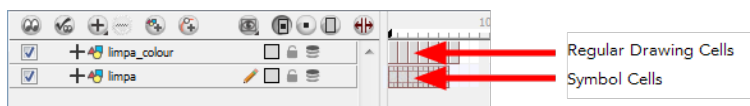


A symbol is a container or construction block used to build your props, puppets and looping clips. Use symbols to contain artwork and animation, to manipulate them as a single object, or as a case holder where you will put a series of different drawings for each body part of your puppets.

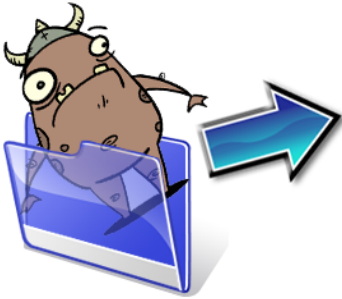
To create a symbol, drag your artwork to the Symbol library. When you drag a symbol from the Symbol library into your scene, it will be linked to the original one. If you drag a symbol into your scene several times in the Timeline view, they will all be linked to the original one. If you modify one, they will all be modified.

A symbol is local to the project and cannot be accessed directly from other scenes. To reuse a symbol's content into another scene, you must create a template out of it.

When a symbol is exposed in the Timeline view, the symbol's cells are represented as a movie strip.



# What is a Template?



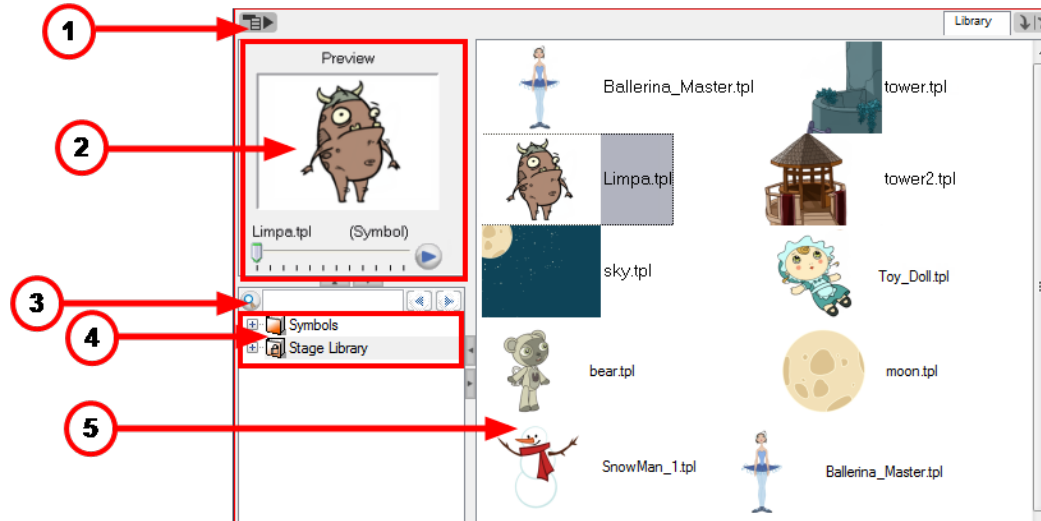
A template is an individual copy of the artwork stored in the library. This package can be reused in different scenes. Once a template is stored in the library it can be accessed from any project.

Dragging a template into your scene copies the content in your Timeline and does not link it to the original. This individual copy can be modified at will.

## Related Topics

- [Library View](#) on the next page

# Library View



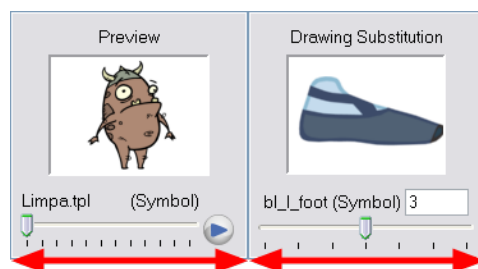
You use the Library view to create and manage your symbols and templates, display the folders and manage and all of the content.

1. [Library View Menu](#) below
2. [Preview and Drawing Substitution](#) below
3. [Library Search Tool](#) on the facing page
4. [Library List](#) on the facing page
5. [Templates and Symbols List](#) on page 648

## Library View Menu

The Library View menu lets you access commands specific to the Library view such as opening a Library or getting the rights to modify a library folder.


## Preview and Drawing Substitution



The Preview window, allows you to preview the content of a symbol or template and to swap between drawings and symbol cells in your Timeline view. This window is also used as the Drawing Substitution window.

**To preview a template or symbol's content:**

1. In the Library view's right side, click or double-click on the symbol or template to preview.

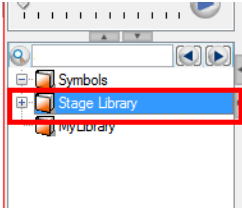
- In the Preview window, click on the Play  button or drag the slider to scrub through the frames.

## Library Search Tool

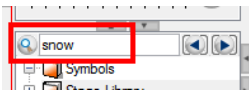
When working on a movie or series, you will most likely end up with a lot of templates and symbols in your library. You have access to a Search tool to help you find templates and symbols in your folders.



**To use the Library Search tool:**

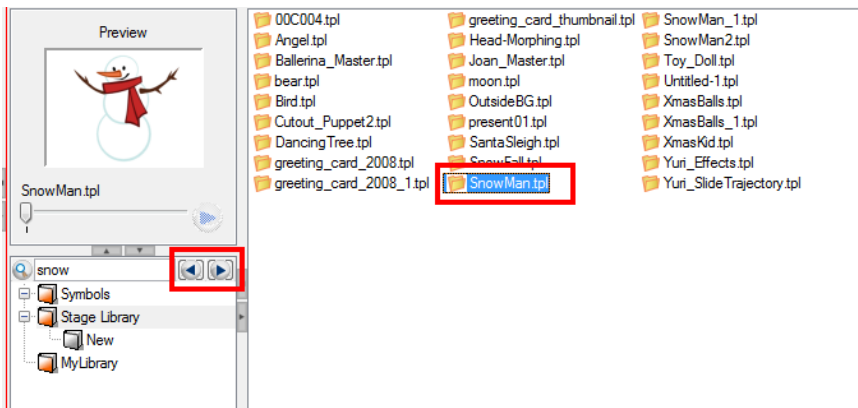
- In the Library view, in the left side, select the library you wish to search in.



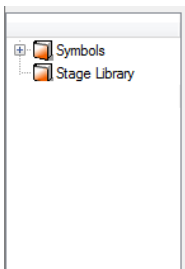
- In the Search field, type the name or partial name of the symbol or template you are looking for.



- Click on the left  and right  arrows to see the previous and next results. The Search engine will look for result within the library master folder and its subfolders. It will not look in other libraries.



## Library List



The Library List is used to navigate through the different libraries and subfolders. You can also open, close and create new libraries from here.

The Library has two default folders:

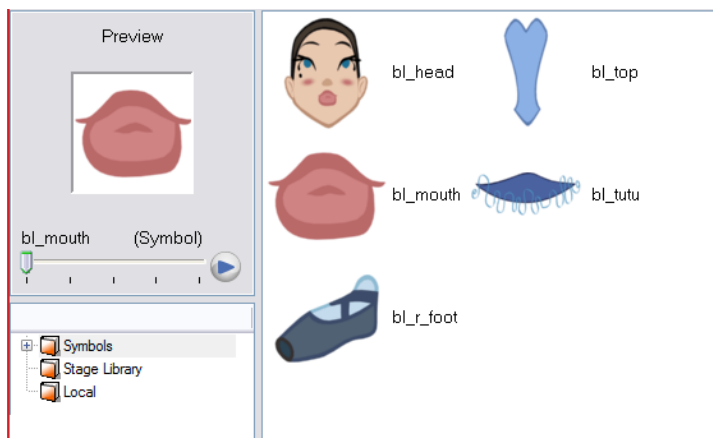
- **Symbols**

The only library folder containing symbols for your project. You can organize the symbols library folder using subfolders, but you cannot create a second Library for your symbols. This library is local to your project.

- **Animate Pro Library**




This folder contains templates and is stored on your hard drive. You can share the contents of this Library between different projects. You can organize the Animate Pro library folder using subfolders. This folder does not contain symbols.

## Templates and Symbols List



The symbols and templates contained in the selected Library list can be displayed on the right side of the Library view as thumbnails, in a list or as details.

**To access the templates and symbols list display options:**

- ▶ In the Library view's right side, right-click and select **View > List, Thumbnails** or **Details**.
- ▶ In the Library View toolbar, you can click on the following buttons:
  -  Thumbnails
  -  List
  -  Details

### Related Topics

- [Understanding the Library Concept on page 644](#)



# Structuring the Library

As you will probably create a large number of symbols and templates you will soon realize that they need to be organized. You can create different libraries and subfolders so that you can gain easy access to your assets. For example, create a different library for each project and divide it into several categories, such as:

- Characters
- Props
- Backgrounds

Although you can only have one symbol library folder, you can organize it by creating subfolders.

- [Creating a Library below](#)
- [Opening a Library on the next page](#)
- [Closing a Library on page 651](#)
- [Creating a Folder on page 651](#)
- [Deleting a Folder on page 652](#)
- [Renaming a Folder on page 652](#)
- [Refreshing the Library on page 652](#)
- [Generating Thumbnails on page 653](#)

## Creating a Library

There are two ways to create Library folders.

- Using Animate Pro's interface.
- Directly through your operating system.

To create a library using your operating system, create a new folder with a relevant name in the location where you want the library to be stored. This can be opened in Animate Pro when you require it. .

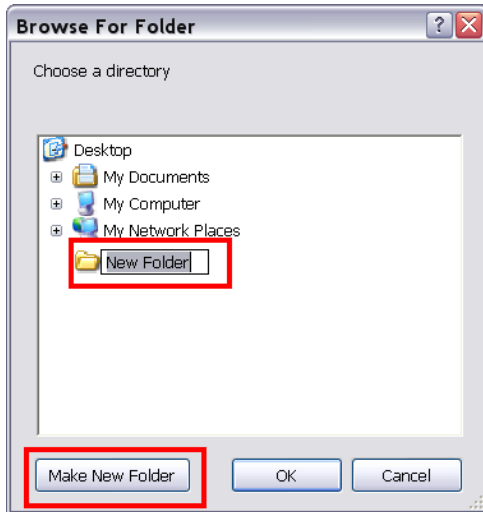
**To create a library from Animate Pro:**

1. In the Library view click on the Menu  button and select **Folders > Open Library**.

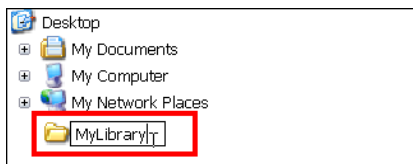
The Browser window opens.

2. Browse for the location where you want to store your new library.
3. Click on the Make New Folder button.

The new folder appears.

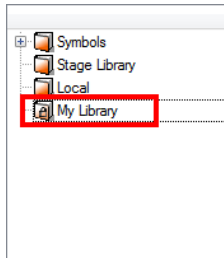


4. Name the new library with a relevant name.



5. Click on the OK button.

The new library appears in the Library List section.



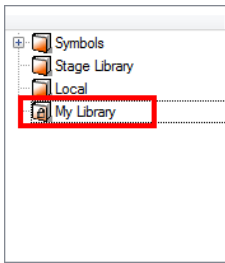
## Opening a Library

You can open any folder on your hard drive or network as a library. Opening a library means linking the folder to your Library view. You only need to open the library once. The library folder is available every time you open the application until you decide to close the library and unlink it.

### To open a library:

1. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > Open Library**.  
The Browser window opens.
2. Browse to the location of the library folder.
3. Select the folder.
4. Click on the OK button.

The new library appears in the Library Folders section.



## Closing a Library

You may not always require all of the library folders in the Library List, if this is the case you can close the ones you do not need. Closing it does not delete the folder, it only unlinks it from the Library view. If you want to reopen in later, you only need to locate it on your hard drive or network and open it in the Library view.

### To close a library:

1. In the Library view's right side, select the library folder to close.
2. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > Close Library**.

The library closes.

## Creating a Folder

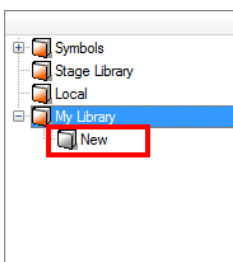
Symbols and Template libraries need to be well organized. You can create different subfolders on your hard drive or in the Library view so that you can gain easy access to your assets. By default, any new library you link to your Library view is locked, this prevents the accidental deletion or modification of templates and symbols. You must obtain the right to modify a locked folder before being able to create subfolders for it.

### To create a folder:

1. In the Library view's left side, select a library folder that you would like to make subfolders for.
2. In the Library View menu, select **Edit > Right to Modify** or right-click on the selected library and select **Right to Modify**.
3. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > New Folder**.

The new subfolder is added to the Library view (although not immediately visible as it is collapsed in its parent folder). Click on the root library folder containing the new folder and click on the "+" sign to expand it.

The new subfolder appears.



## Deleting a Folder

You can delete a folder from the library if its contents are no longer needed.



ALL THE TEMPLATES OR SYMBOLS CONTAINED IN THE FOLDER WILL BE DELETED FROM YOUR HARD DRIVE. ONCE DELETED THE DATA CAN NOT BE RETRIEVED.

---

### To delete a folder:

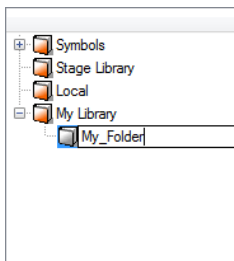
1. In the Library view's left side, select the folder to delete.
2. In the Library View menu, select **Edit > Right to Modify** or right-click on the selected library and select **Right to Modify**.
3. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > Delete Folder** or press [Delete].

## Renaming a Folder

Once you add a folder, you can rename it, this also renames the folder on your hard drive.

### To rename a folder:

1. In the Library view's left side, select the folder to rename.
2. In the Library View menu, select **Edit > Right to Modify** or right-click on the selected library and select **Right to Modify**.
3. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > Rename Folder**.
4. Rename the selected folder.



5. Press [Enter/Return] to validate the operation.

## Refreshing the Library

If you update the content of your libraries through your operating system, you will need to refresh your library folders in the Library view.

### To refresh a library:

1. In the Library view's left side, select the folder to refresh.
2. In the Library View menu, select **Folders > Refresh** or press [F5].

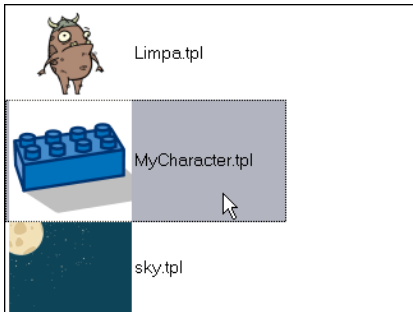
The library now displays the new content.

# Generating Thumbnails

When you display thumbnails in the Library view, the system generates a series of small images (thumbnails) for you. You can generate template thumbnails yourself, if they do not display or if the process has been stopped.

## To generate thumbnails:

1. In the Library view's right side, select the template you want to generate thumbnails for.



2. In the Library View menu, select **View > Generate Thumbnails**.

The progress bar appears.

You can also delete thumbnails if you want to send a template to another user or studio and keep your packages small.

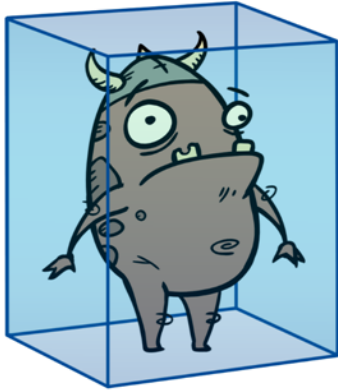
## To delete thumbnails:

1. In the Library View menu, select **Edit > Delete Thumbnails**.  
All the thumbnails contained in the library are removed.

## Related Topics

- [Understanding the Library Concept on page 644](#)

# Symbols



A symbol combines animation, artwork or layers into a single object that you can control in one layer. You can also create symbols out of each body part in your cut-out puppets.



You do not need to create Symbols in order to create drawings or characters in Toon Boom Animate Pro.

---

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Symbol](#) below
- [Deleting a Symbol](#) on page 658
- [Editing a Symbol](#) on page 659
- [Duplicating a Symbol](#) on page 660
- [Sharing a Symbol](#) on page 661



## Creating a Symbol

You can create symbols in several ways:

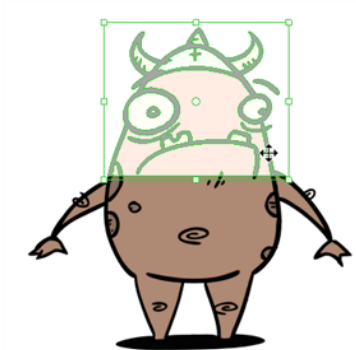
- [Creating a Symbol from a Drawing Selection](#) below
- [Creating a Symbol from the Timeline View](#) on page 656
- [Creating a Symbol from the Network View](#) on page 656
- [Creating an Empty Symbol](#) on page 657


## Creating a Symbol from a Drawing Selection

To create a symbol from a drawing selection:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Select  or Cutter  tool.

- In the Camera view, select the drawing objects which you want to create a symbol out of.

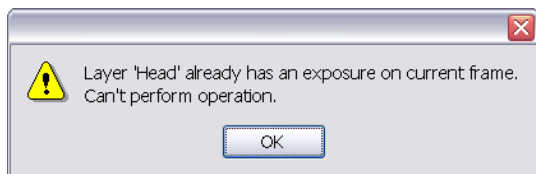


- In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Symbol** or press [F8]. You can also click on the **Create Symbol**  button in the Edit toolbar.

The Create Symbol from Drawing Selection dialog box opens

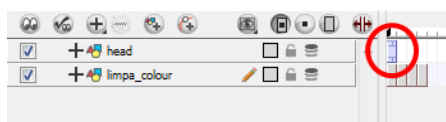


- In the Symbol Name field, type the name of the symbol.
  - You can also select an existing layer from the Symbol Name drop-down menu. It will add your symbol on the layer's current cell. If there is already an exposure on that cell a warning message will appear stating, "Layer 'Head' already has an exposure on current frame. Can't perform operation."




- If you want to rename a symbol, right-click on the symbol and select **Rename**.
- You can choose to leave the current selected artwork in the drawing or not:
    - To remove currently selected artwork from the drawing and leave it in the new symbol, enable (place a checkmark in the checkbox) the **Cut Artwork From Source Drawing** option.
    - To keep currently selected artwork in both the drawing and in the new symbol, disable (remove the checkmark from the checkbox) the **Cut Artwork From Source Drawing** option.
  - Click **OK**.

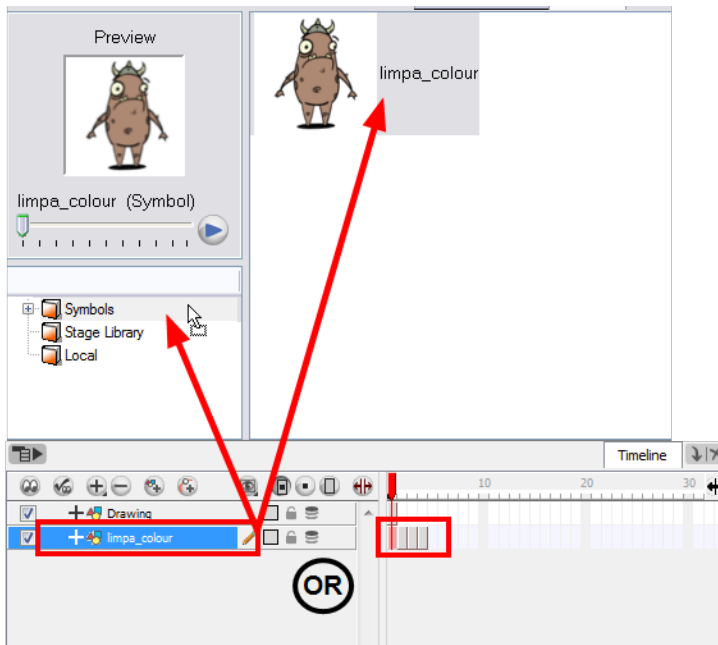
The new symbol appears in the Library view's symbol folder and in the Timeline view as a new layer.



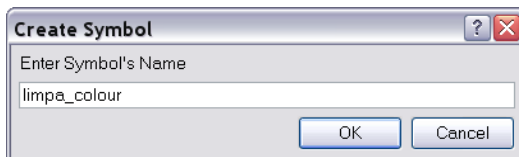
## Creating a Symbol from the Timeline View

To create a symbol from the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layer or the cells from which you want to create a symbol.
2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Symbol** or press [F8]. You can also click on the **Create Symbol**  button in the Edit toolbar.
  - ▶ Another way to create a symbol is to select the layer or cells from the Timeline view and to drag them on the Symbol folder in the Library view.



The Create Symbol dialog box opens



3. In the Enter Symbol's Name field, type the new symbol's name.
  - ▶ To rename a symbol once it is created, right-click on the symbol and select **Rename**.
4. Click **OK**.
 

The new symbol appears in the Library view's symbol folder.




The current selection is not replaced by the new symbol. The new symbol only appears in the library. You must drag it into your scene to use it.

## Creating a Symbol from the Network View

In Animate Pro, you can create symbols from the Network view.

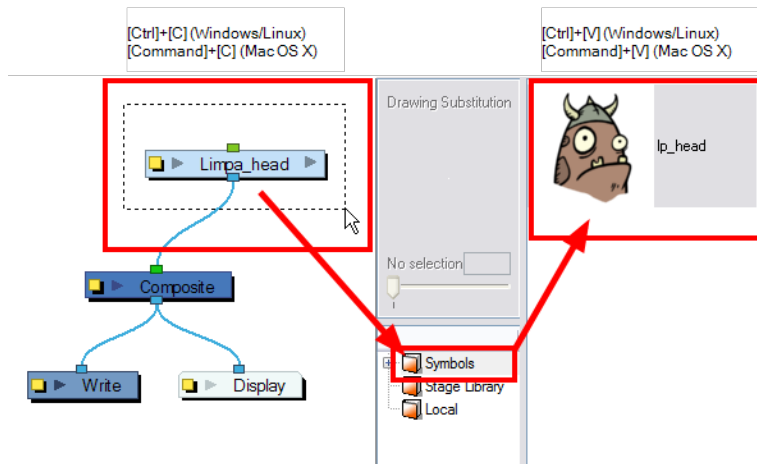


### To create a symbol from the Network view:

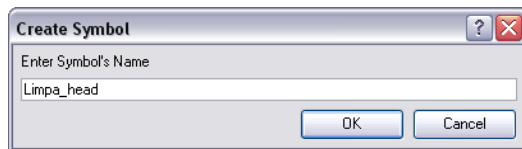
1. In the Network view, select the modules from which you want to create a symbol.
2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Symbol** or press [F8]. You can also click on the **Create Symbol** 

button in the Edit toolbar.

- ▶ Another way to create a symbol is to select the modules from the Network view and copy and paste them inside the Symbol folder in the Library view or press [Ctrl] + [C] and [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [C] and [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).



The Create Symbol dialog box opens



3. In the Enter Symbol's Name field, type the new symbol's name.
  - ▶ To rename a symbol once it is created, right-click on the symbol and select **Rename**.
4. Click **OK**.

The new symbol appears in the Library view's Symbol folder.



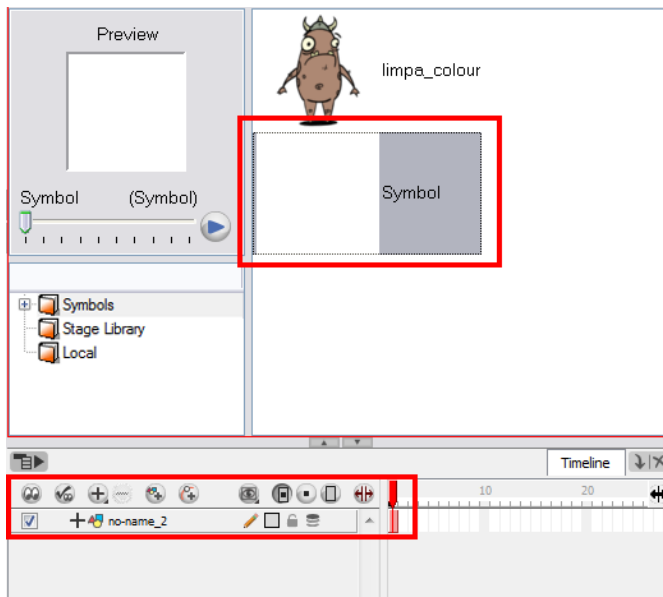
The current selection is not replaced by the new symbol. The new symbol only appears in the library. You must drag it into your scene to use it.


## Creating an Empty Symbol

### To create an empty symbol:

1. In the Library view, select the Symbol folder.
2. In the Library view's right side, right-click and select **New Symbol**. You can also select **Insert > Create Empty Symbol in Library** from the top menu.

The new empty symbol appears in the Library view.



- ▶ The symbol is ready for you to edit (add content to). To go back to the root timeline, click on the **Top**  button in the Camera view.
- ▶ To rename a symbol once it is created, right-click on the symbol and select **Rename**.

## Related Topics

- [Importing Symbols and Templates on page 668](#)

## Deleting a Symbol

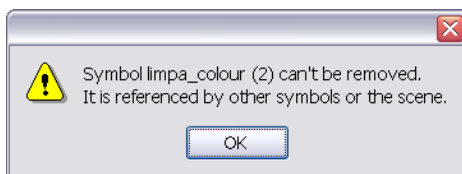
Deleting a symbol is easy.



WARNING: THE SYMBOL WILL BE DELETED FROM YOUR HARD DRIVE. USE UNDO TO RETRIEVE THE DATA. THE DATA CANNOT BE RETRIEVED ONCE YOU CLOSE THE APPLICATION.

### To delete a symbol:

1. In the Library view, select the symbols to be deleted.
2. Right-click on the selection and select **Delete** or press [Delete].
  - ▶ If the symbol is currently in use in the scene, a warning message will pop up and the symbol will not be deleted.



## Related Topics

- [Creating a Symbol on page 654](#)

## Editing a Symbol


When you import a symbol from the library to the Timeline view it is linked to the original symbol in the library. If you import a symbol into your scene several times in the Timeline view, they will all be linked to the original symbol. If you modify one, they will all be modified.

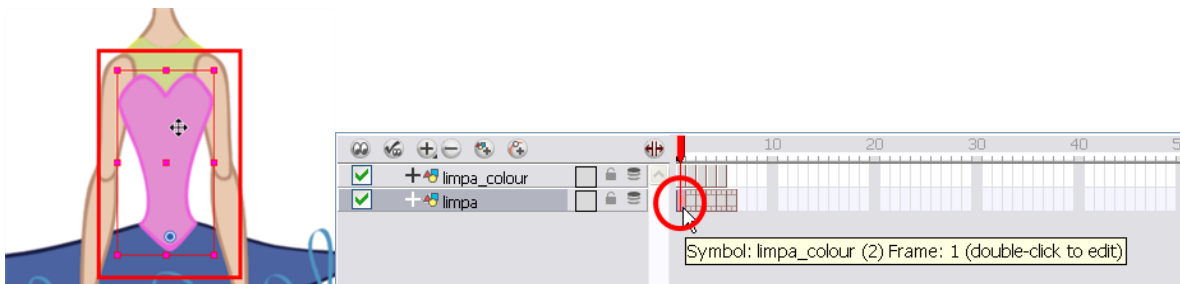
If you want to edit a symbol without modifying the other instances, you must duplicate the symbol first, [See \*Duplicating a Symbol on the next page.\*](#)

You can either edit a symbol from the Timeline view or from the Library view.

When you edit a symbol, the drawings contained in it are not placed at the centre of the stage, but are located in the position where they were created. The pivot is translated at the centre of the symbol.


### To edit a symbol from the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the symbol's cell to edit the symbol. You can also double-click on the symbol in the Camera View or press [Ctrl] + [E] (Windows) or [⌘] + [E] (Mac OS X). You can also click on the **Edit Selected Symbol**  button, available in the Camera View toolbar's extra buttons.



You are now inside the symbol and you are able to edit it.

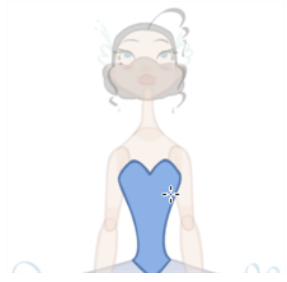


2. Click on the **Top**  button in the Camera view's top left corner to return to the project's timeline or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [E] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [E] (Mac OS X). In the Timeline view's right side, right-click and select **Symbols > Leave Current Symbol**.

### To edit a symbol from the Library view:

1. In the Library view, select the symbol to edit.
2. Right-click and select **Edit > Edit Symbol**. You can also double-click on the symbol.

You are now inside the symbol and you are able to edit it.



3. Click on the **Top** 🏠 button in the Camera view's top left corner to go back to the project's timeline or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [E] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [E] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Symbol on page 654](#)

## Symbol Hierarchy

When you enter a symbol to edit it, you are entering another scene where you have an independent timeline for your symbol. You can nest many symbols one inside the other. To help you follow the hierarchy of your nested symbol, take note of the Editing stack at the top of the Camera view which displays the path to your symbol's location. You can click on the symbols' name to move up the chain.



## Related Topics

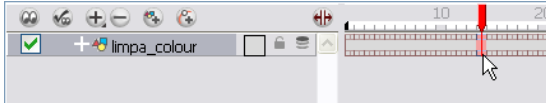
- [Editing a Symbol on the previous page](#)

## Duplicating a Symbol

You must duplicate a symbol if you want to modify a copy of it without altering the original symbol and the other copies.

**To duplicate a symbol:**

1. In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to duplicate the symbol.
2. Select the symbol's cell.



3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Duplicate Selected Symbol**.

In the Library view, the symbol is duplicated and in the Timeline view, the current cell is replaced with the new symbol. You can now modify the symbol's content.



If other symbols are nested inside the new symbol, those ones are not duplicated. If you modify them, the original and other instances will also be modified.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating a Symbol on page 654](#)

## Sharing a Symbol

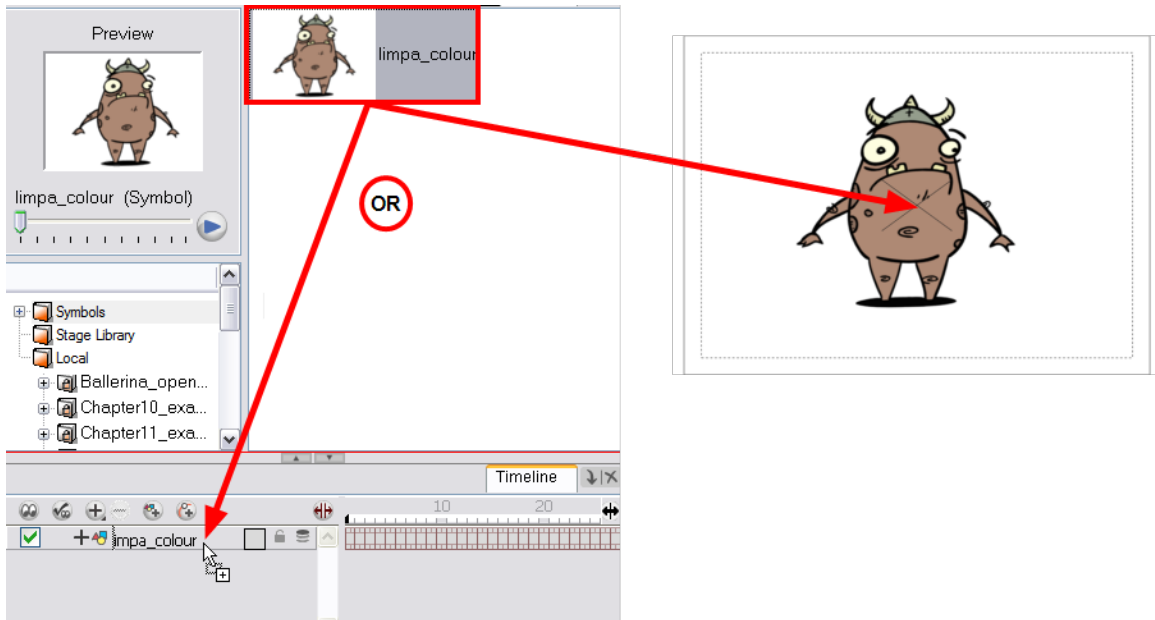
You can share a symbol and use its contents (the drawing or drawings that it contains) in another scene. To do this, you must first convert your symbol into a template. This conversion breaks the drawing's link with both the original scene and symbol. It then becomes a separate entity that you can import into your other projects.

**To convert a symbol into a template:**

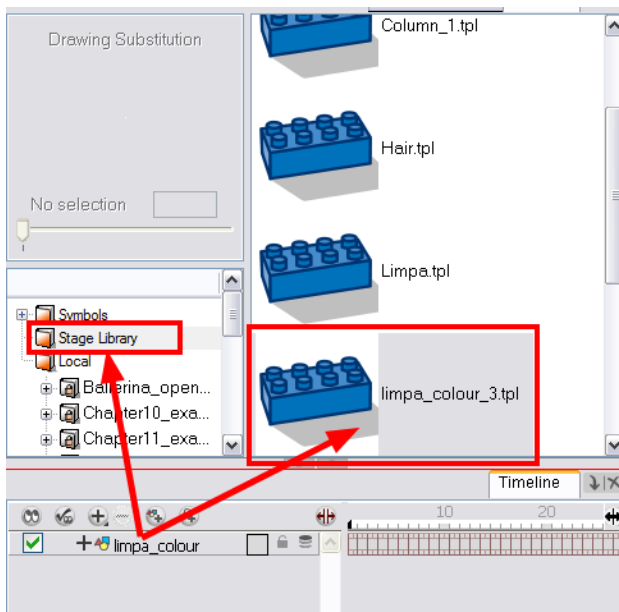
1. From the Library view, select the symbol to convert into a template and drag it to the Camera or Timeline view.



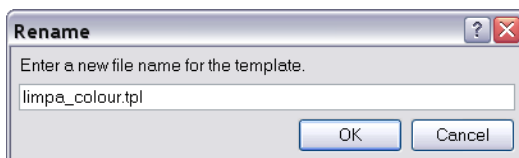
If you drop your symbol into the Camera view instead of the Timeline view, it will not be placed in the centre of your camera frame, but rather wherever your cursor drops it within the camera frame.



2. In the Timeline view, select the symbol's cells or layer and drag it to the Stage Library folder or to any other library folder. Make sure you have the right to modify the library folder.



3. In the Rename dialog box, rename the new template.

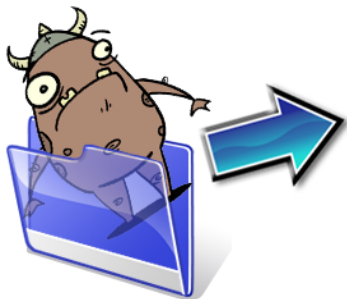


4. Click on the OK button.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Symbol](#) on page 654

# Templates



If you want to reuse artwork and animation from your project into other scenes, you need to create a template out of it. A template can be seen as a portable scene or package that you can drag inside your project.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Template below](#)
- [Deleting a Template on page 667](#)
- [Editing a Template on page 667](#)

## Creating a Template

You can create a template from both the Timeline and the Network views:

- [Master Template below](#)
- [Creating a Template from the Network View](#)
- [Action Templates](#)
- [Creating a Template from the Timeline View on page 666](#)

## Master Template

You can create a master template out of a cut-out puppet you created so that you can reuse it throughout a single project or a full production. A cut-out character's master template stores the entire rig, structure, drawings and keyframes of the different poses of your puppet into a single asset.

Master templates are created from the **Network** view. Refer to the next topic to learn how to create a template from the **Network** view.

## Creating a Template from the Network View

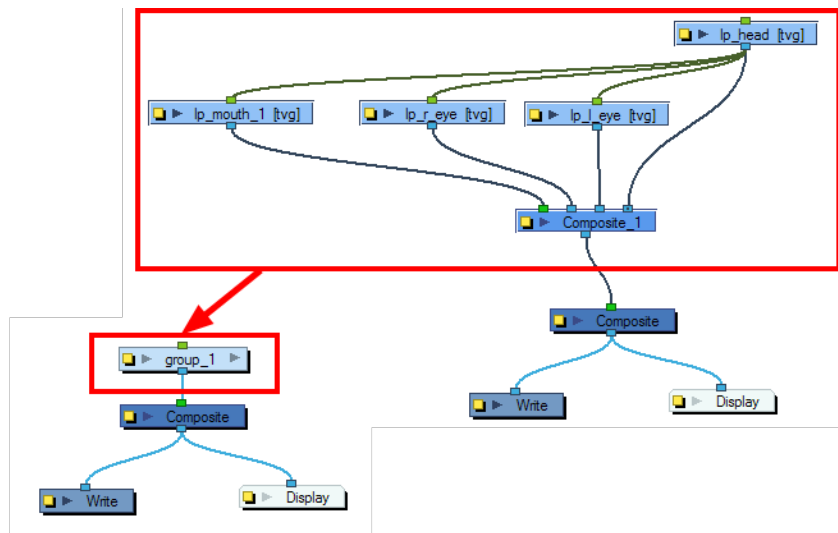
The Timeline and the Network views have different ways to display the scene, each view displaying different information.

A main character's template, also known as master template, is created from the Network view. This template contains all of the connections, effects, composites, modules, pegs, advanced groupings, function columns,

scene lengths, drawings, timings, etc. The template is saved in the Library view and must be imported back into the scene for use, either into the Network view or into the left side of the Timeline view.

#### To create a template from the Network view:

1. In the Library view, select the folder in which you want to store the template.
2. If the library folder is locked, right-click and select **Right to Modify**.
3. In the Network view, select the modules you want to create a template with and group them. It is very important to group your cut-out character rig, previous to storing it in the Library.
4. Select **Edit > Group > Group Selected Layers** or press [Ctrl] + [G] (Windows) or [⌘] + [G] (Mac OS X).

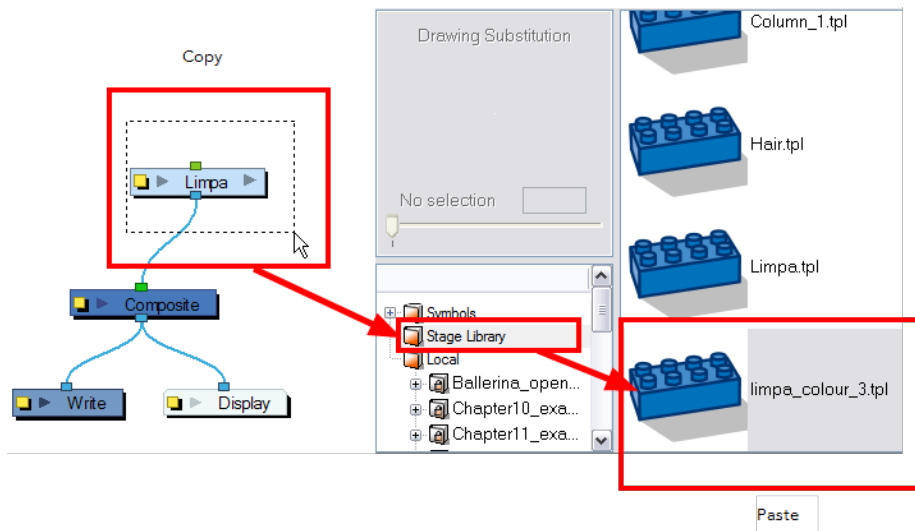


5. In the Network view, click on the group module's yellow button to rename it. The Layer Properties dialog box opens.

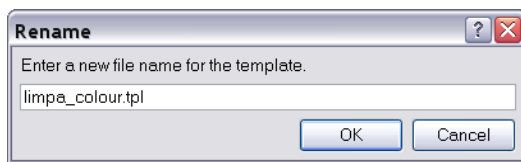




6. In the Network view, select your group module and copy and paste it inside the template folder in the Library view or press [Ctrl] + [C] and [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [C] and [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).



7. In the Rename dialog box, rename the new template.



- To rename a template, right-click on it and select Rename.

8. Click OK.

## Action Templates

An action template, also known as animation template, is created from the Timeline view. This template mainly contains keyframes and drawing exposures. When it is extracted from the Timeline view, it loses the extra connections, effects and groupings from the Network View.

Action templates are designed to allow you to reuse animations, key poses and part of an animation. For example, you can reuse head positions or a leg animation from a walk-cycle and place them inside other animations. An animation template, also known as an action template, is created from the Timeline view. This template mainly contains keyframes and drawing exposures.

An action template is used with a master template. It cannot be used on its own since it does not contain all of the information required to rebuild the puppet skeleton and advanced connections. The standard process is to first import the master template to the Network view or Timeline's left window and then slide the action template into the Timeline's right window. This method allows you to first build the skeleton and then give it the right pose.

The combination of master and action templates will function as long as the layer order and connections are the same.

When you create an action template, be sure to name it so that you can easily identify it as an animation.

Refer to the next topic to learn how to create a template from the Timeline view.

## Creating a Template from the Timeline View

You can create a template out of a layer or cells. You can store anything available in the Timeline view as a template.



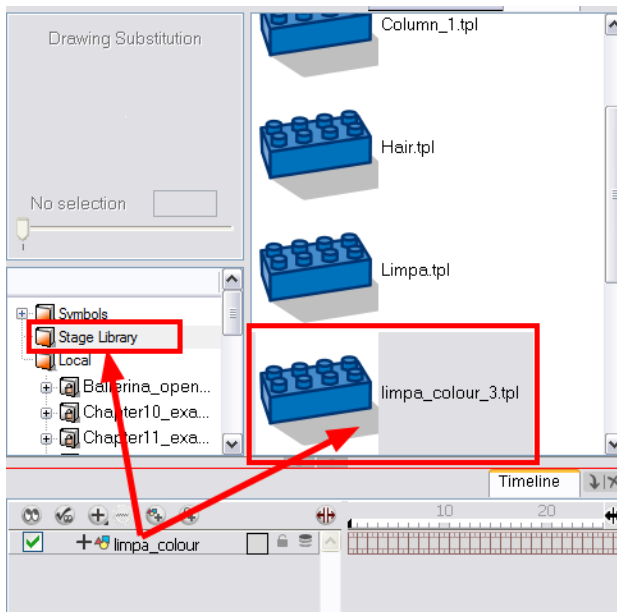
When creating a template from the Timeline view, it will lose the extra connections, effects and groupings from the Network view.



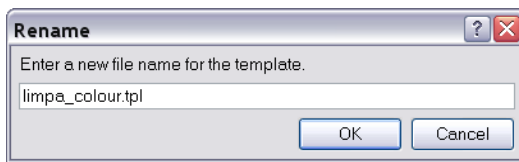
Creating a template selecting a layer will incorporate the layer and all the drawings that were created in it, even if they're not exposed in the Timeline view. Selecting cells will only save those specific drawings in the template.

### To create a template from the Timeline view:

1. In the Timeline view, select some cells or layers.
2. In the Library view, select the folder in which you want to store the template.
3. If the library folder is locked, right-click and select **Right to Modify**.
4. Drag the selection to the Animate Pro Library folder or to any other library folder.



5. In the Rename dialog box, rename the new template.



If you want to rename a template once it is created, right-click on it and select Rename.

6. Click OK.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Network Template on page 670](#)
- [Importing Symbols and Templates on the next page](#)

# Deleting a Template

To delete templates from your library, use the Library view. Animate Pro lets you undo the action if necessary.



Do not delete them using the operating system.

### To delete a template:

1. In the Library view, select the folder containing the template to delete.
  - If the library folder is locked, right-click on the folder and select **Right to Modify**.
2. Right-click on the selection and select **Delete** or press [Delete].

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Template on page 663](#)

# Editing a Template

A template is like a scene, you can open it and edit it as any regular project. If you want to do some modifications in your templates, you can edit them using the Edit Template command.

### To edit a template

1. In the Library view, select the folder containing the template to edit.
  - If the library folder is locked, right-click on the folder and select **Right to Modify**.
2. Right-click on the selection and select **Edit Template**.  
A new Animate Pro application opens.
3. Edit the template.
4. In the top menu, select **File > Save**.
5. In the top menu, select **File > Quit** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Quit** (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Template on page 663](#)

# Importing Symbols and Templates

There are several ways you can import templates and symbols in your scene.

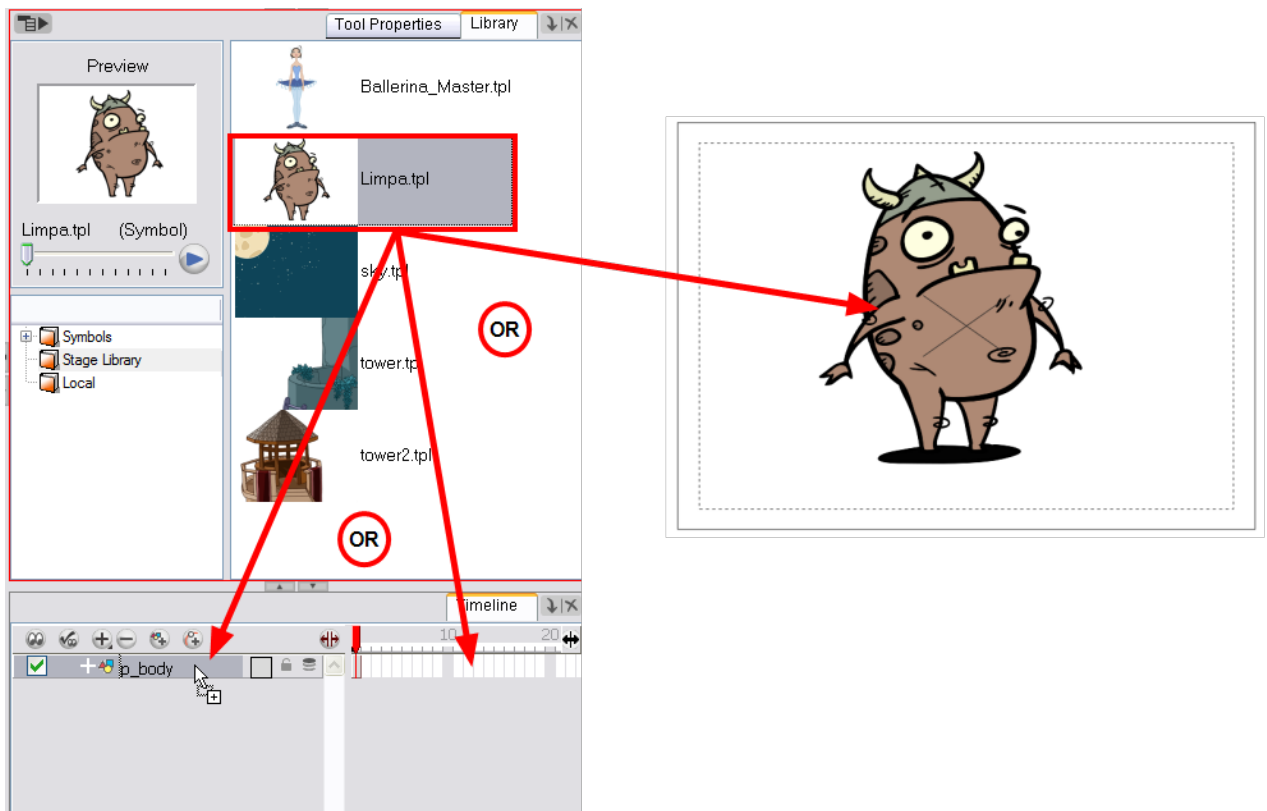
## Related Topics

- [Importing a Template below](#)
- [Importing a Symbol on the facing page](#)
- [Importing a Network Template on page 670](#)
- [Previewing a Symbol in the Network View on page 672](#)
- [Opening a Template as a Folder on page 672](#)
- [Using Paste Special on page 673](#)
- [Expanding a Symbol on page 678](#)
- [Animating Using Symbols on page 1048](#)

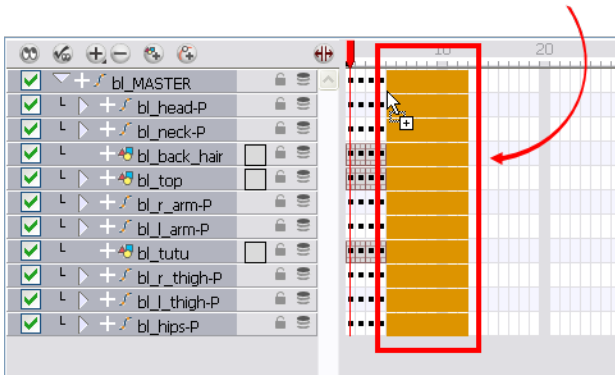
## Importing a Template

To import a template in the Timeline view:

1. In the Library view, select the template you want to import.
2. Drag the selected template to the Camera view or Timeline view's left side.



3. You can also drag a template to the Timeline view's right side into existing layers if the layer structure is the same as the existing one.



## Related Topics

- [Importing Symbols and Templates on the previous page](#)

## Importing a Symbol

To import a symbol in the Timeline view:

1. In the Library view, select the symbol you want to import.
2. Drag the selected symbol to:
  - The Timeline view's left side if you want to import it into the centre of the camera frame.
 OR
  - The Camera view if you want to place it where ever your mouse releases it.



This may be useful if you have saved a character's body parts as separate symbols. If you dropped them into the timeline then they would all appear in the centre, haphazardly one on top of the other. It would be more efficient to arrange them into their correct places as you bring them into the scene.

## Related Topics

- [Importing Symbols and Templates on the previous page](#)

## Importing a Template with Symbols

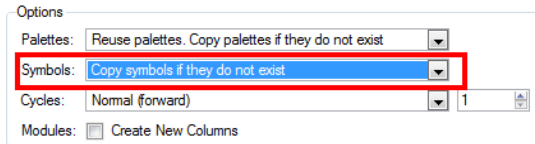
Sometimes a character's rig is not a straightforward matter. Rigs, which are usually saved as templates, can contain symbols, such as a leg that was made with a patch. However, a symbol does not work in the same way as an action template. In the Timeline view, you can add an Action template into another template of the same structure. When a symbol is dropped into the right side of the timeline layer into a symbol of the same structure, instead of adding itself onto the previous symbol, the new symbol becomes a copy.

To take more control of how the action template will behave when brought into the Timeline view, bring it in using a Paste Special.

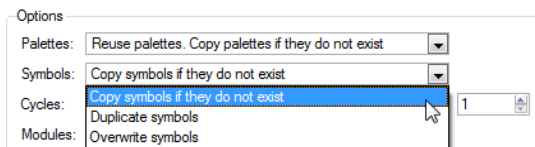
**To import a template with symbols:**

1. Select the action template containing symbols from the right side of the Library view.
2. As you drag it from the Library view to the right side of the Timeline view to drop it next to a template with the exact same rig, hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X).

The Paste Special window appears.



3. Click on the Advanced tab.
4. Select one of the following options from the Symbols drop-down menu:



- ▶ **Copy symbols if they do not exist:** This is the default setting for this operation and will prevent symbols in an action template from being copied.
- ▶ **Duplicate symbols:** Select this option if you wish to make copies of the symbols in your template.
- ▶ **Overwrite symbols:** If for some reason, a modification was made to a symbol in the action template that does not exist in the basic rig template for a character, select this option to overwrite the previous symbol.

**Related Topics**

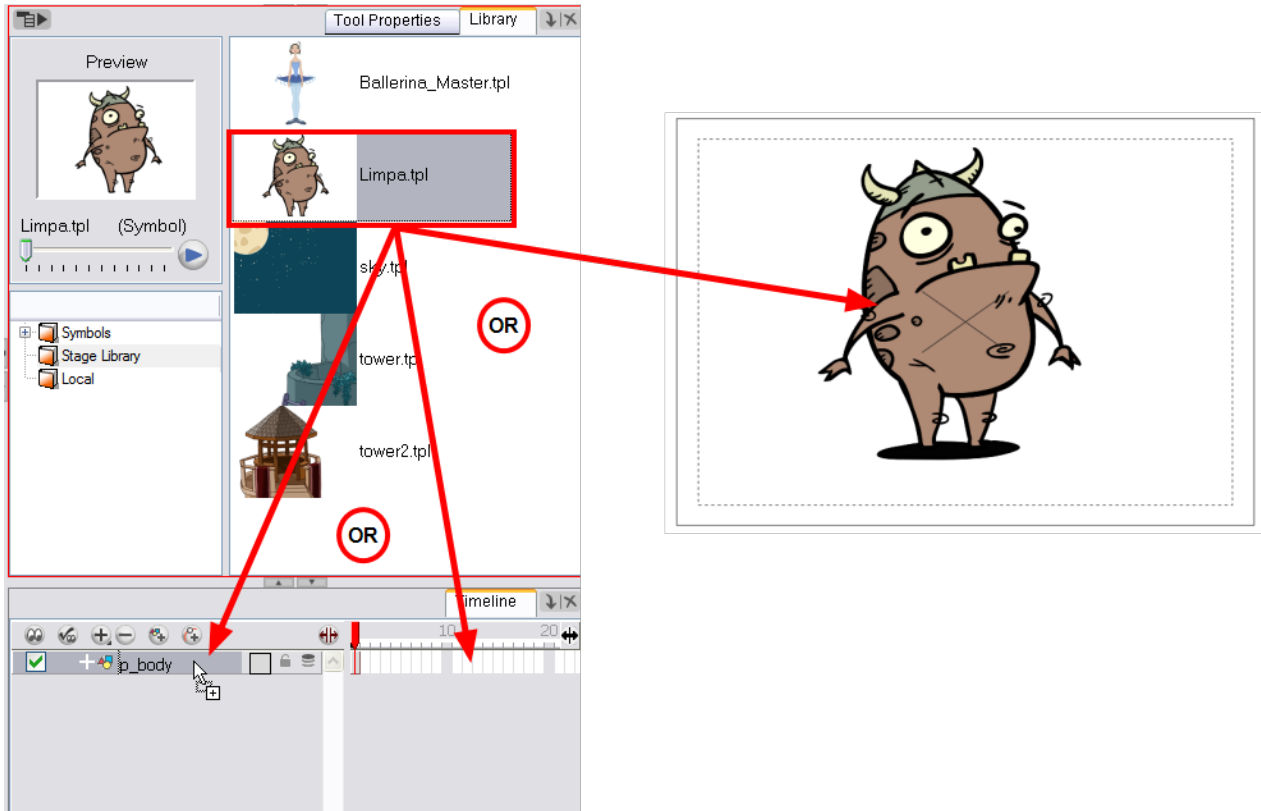
- [Using Paste Special on page 673](#)

## Importing a Network Template

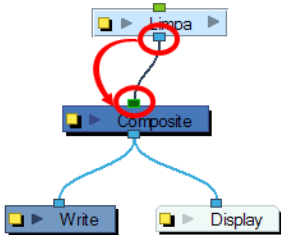
**To import a network template:**

1. In the Library view, select the template or symbol you want to import.

2. Drag the selected template to the Network, Camera or Timeline view's left side.



3. If necessary, in the Network view, connect your template into the Composite module. Do this by clicking its out-port and dragging the connection to the Composite module until an in-port appears.



If the template you are importing was created in the Network view, make sure to drop it in the Network view or in the Timeline left side, if you do not do this some network connections could be broken. If you are importing a template containing the exact same connections as a template you imported previously, you can drop it in the Timeline view's right side over the existing layer. This will combine both templates and keep the same existing layers.

## Related Topics

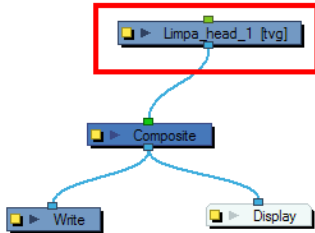
- [Importing Symbols and Templates on page 668](#)

## Previewing a Symbol in the Network View

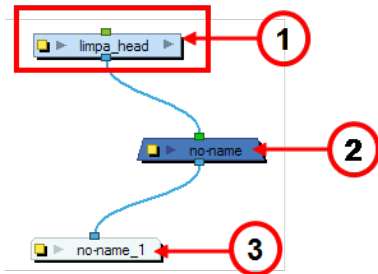
In Animate Pro, when you import a symbol in your scene, you can navigate through it in the Network view.


### To navigate in your symbol:

1. In the Network view, select the symbol you want to open and use the Edit Selected Symbol command or press [Ctrl] + [E] (Windows) or [⌘] + [E] (Mac OS X).



2. In the Network view, inside the symbol's top module you will find the composition of your symbol. In this example, a group module was turned into a symbol.



- 1. Symbol Content Modules
  - 2. Composite Module set on pass through
  - 3. Display Module
3. Click on the Top  button in the Network view's top left corner to return to the top module. You can also use the Leave Current Symbol command's or press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [E] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [E] (Mac OS X).

### Related Topics

- [Importing a Network Template on page 670](#)

## Opening a Template as a Folder

Since a template is like a scene, you can open the template's folder and select elements inside it such as drawings.

Instead of importing the entire contents of a template you may only want to import a few drawings or a palette. In this case, use the Open As Folder command to import the items you want.

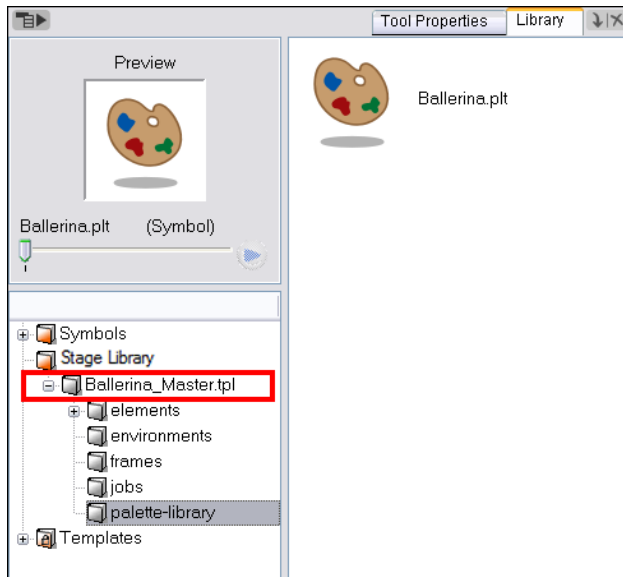
If you want to import a palette, drag the palette file into the Palette List section of the Colour view.

### To open a template as a folder:

1. In the Library view, select the folder containing the template to open.



- If the library folder is locked, right-click on the folder and select **Right to Modify**.
2. Right-click on the selection and select **Open As Folder**.
3. In the library list section, click on the template's folder to display its content.



4. Drag the content to the Timeline or Colour view.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Template on page 663](#)

# Using Paste Special

When you import a symbol in your scene, by default its full length is exposed. If you import your symbol in the Timeline view's left side all the frames will be exposed, but if you import it into an existing layer, you can use the Paste Special command to adjust the import behaviour to fit your requirements.

When you import a template in the Timeline view, all layers are created as well as drawings and keyframes. It is possible that you will want to import only the keyframes without the drawings or import only the drawings that are not already in your layers. You can adjust the behaviour using the Paste Special command.

Once you set the parameters, Animate Pro will reuse them each time you import a symbol in the Timeline view's right side until you set new parameters.

### To open the Paste Special dialog box:

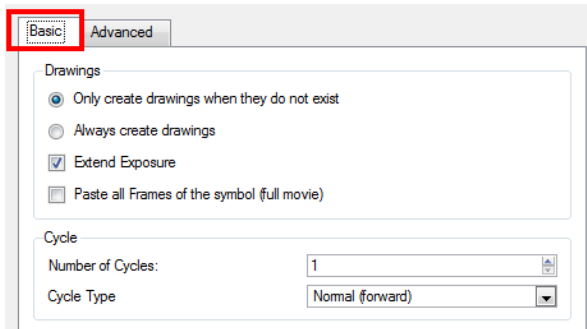
1. In the Library view, select the symbol or template to import.
2. While dragging the selection to the Timeline view, hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X).



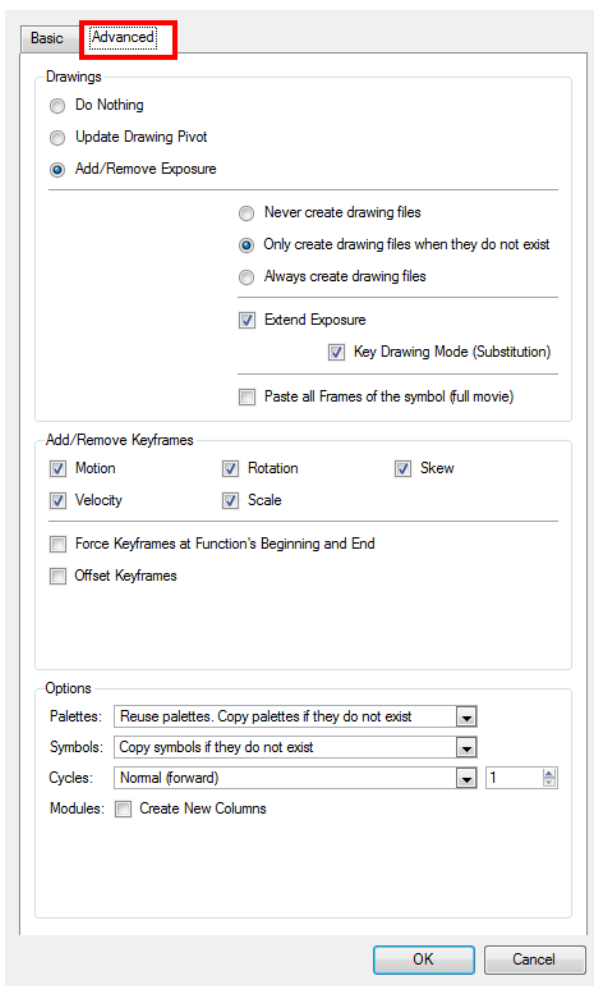
Drop the selection in the Timeline view BEFORE releasing the hot key.

The Paste Special window opens.

3. Set the parameters.
4. Click OK.



Basic Tab



Advanced Tab

# Paste Special - Basic Tab

## Drawings

- **Only create drawing files when they do not exist:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will be created only when drawings with the same name do not already exist in the destination.
- **Always create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will always be created. If drawing files with the same name already exist, Animate Pro will create a new name for the drawing.
- **Extend Exposure:** Extends the exposure of drawings to fill the range of cells to the destination frame.
- **Paste all Frames of the Symbols (full movie):** When enabled, the Paste Special command will expose all the symbol's frames instead of the first one only.

## Cycle

- **Number of Cycles:** Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the number of cycles you want to paste. You can also type the value directly in the field.
- **Cycle Type**
  - **Normal (forward):** This pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
  - **Reverse:** This pastes your selection in reverse, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
  - **Forward -> Reverse:** This pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
  - **Reverse -> Forward:** This pastes your selection as a reverse yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.

# Paste Special - Advanced Tab

## Drawings

- **Do Nothing:** Does not create or overwrite drawings.
- **Update Drawing Pivot:** Revises the drawing pivot in the destination to use the same drawing pivot as the first drawing in the template. If you have a range of drawings selected in the destination, the pivot points of all selected drawings will be updated.
- **Add/Remove Exposure:** Creates/deletes exposure values in the selected layer.

You have the following choices as to how to treat drawings that will be created when adding an exposure:

- **Never create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, drawing files will not be created.
- **Only create drawing files when they do not exist:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will be created only when drawings with the same name do not already exist in the destination.
- **Always create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will always be created. If drawing files with the same name already exist, Animate Pro will create a new name for the drawing.
- **Extend Exposure:** Extends the exposure of drawings to fill the range of cells to the destination frame.
- **Key Drawing Mode (Substitution):** Pasting an exposure value replaces the cell value in the current frame and in all frames following in sequence with the original cell value.
- **Paste all Frames of the Symbols (full movie):** When enabled, the Paste Special command exposes all the symbol's frames instead of only the first one.

## Add/Remove Keyframes

- **Motion:** Copies the properties of the selected motion keyframe to the new frame.
- **Velocity:** Copies the properties of the selected velocity keyframe to the new frame.
- **Rotation:** Copies the properties of the selected rotation keyframe to the new frame.
- **Skew:** Copies the properties of the selected skew keyframe to the new frame.
- **Scale:** Copies the properties of the selected scale keyframe to the new frame.
- **Force Keyframes at Function's Beginning and End:** Adds a keyframe to the beginning and end of the pasted function, reproducing the source function.
- **Offset Keyframes:** When pasting functions, this option offsets the keyframes from the function's last value by the values in the pasted function. This will continue the progression of a function rather than repeat the values.

## Option

- **Palette Option**

- **Do nothing:** Does not create, overwrite, merge or link palettes.
- **Reuse palettes. Copy palettes if they do not exist:** Palettes in the destination drawings are left as they are.
- **Copy and overwrite existing palettes:** Overwrites destination palettes with the palettes from the source drawings.
- **Copy and create new palette files:** Creates new palette files, placing them at the same relative environment and scene level as the source. If the palettes in the templates were stored at the environment level of the source scene, the paste operation will place the palettes in the environment level of the destination scene.
- **Copy and create new palette files in element folder:** Creates new palette files in the element folders of the destination scene, rather than in the same relative job or environment.
- **Copy palette and merge colours. Add new colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination palettes and ignores colours that are the same in the two palettes.
- **Copy palette and update existing colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination palette and updates duplicate colours in the destination with colour values from the source.
- **Link to original palettes (colour model):** Links the colour palettes in the destination scene to the palettes in the source. Use this to link drawings to the palettes in a colour model.
- **Copy scene palettes and merge colours. Add new colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination scene palettes and ignores colours that are the same in the two palettes.
- **Copy scene palettes and update existing colours:** Adds new colours to the destination scene palette and updates duplicate colours in the destination with the colour values from the source.
- **Duplicate All Symbol Content:** Instead of linking the symbol instance to the original one, the symbol will be duplicated. A new symbol is created in the Library.
- **Symbols**
  - **Copy symbols if they do not exist:** This is the default setting for this operation and will prevent symbols in a Action template from being copied.
  - **Duplicate symbols:** Creates a duplicate of the symbol instead of linking the symbol instance to the original one. The new symbol is created in the Library.
  - **Overwrite symbols:** If a modification was made to a symbol that does not exist in the basic rig template for a character, select this option to overwrite the previous symbol.
- **Cycles:**
  - Cycle Types:
    - **Normal (forward):** This pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
    - **Reverse:** This pastes your selection reversed, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
    - **Forward -> Reverse:** This pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
    - **Reverse -> Forward:** This pastes your selection as a reverse yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.
    - **Number of Cycles:** Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the number of cycles you want to paste. You can also type the value directly in the field.
- **Modules: Create New Columns:** If you enable this option a new column will be created when you copy and paste modules from the Network view or Layer in the Timeline view. If the layers are linked to function curves, the function curves, the drawings and the timing will be duplicated.

## Related Topics

- [Importing Symbols and Templates on page 668](#)

# Expanding a Symbol

You can use the Expand Symbol command to extract a symbol's content and place it on the root timeline. The symbol will not be removed from the Timeline view. Its content will be copied and inserted into the root timeline. The symbol's layers will be parented to it in case you created motions and transformation on the drawing layer that is containing the symbol. Breaking the hierarchy could result in losing any scaling and animation you may have done.

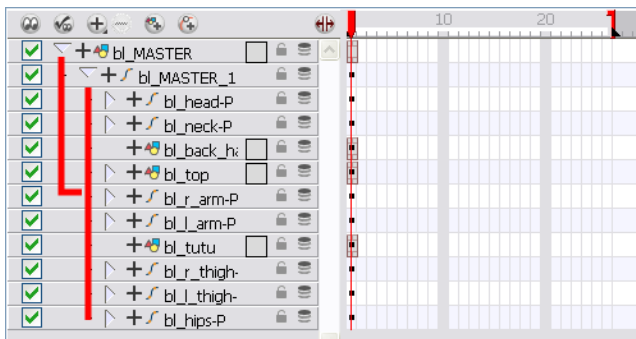
You can also expand a symbol within a group to avoid crowding your Timeline with a series of layers. When you will expand the symbols, the layers will be contained in a Group module which you can expand to see the content.

### To expand a symbol:

1. In the Timeline view, select the symbol to expand.

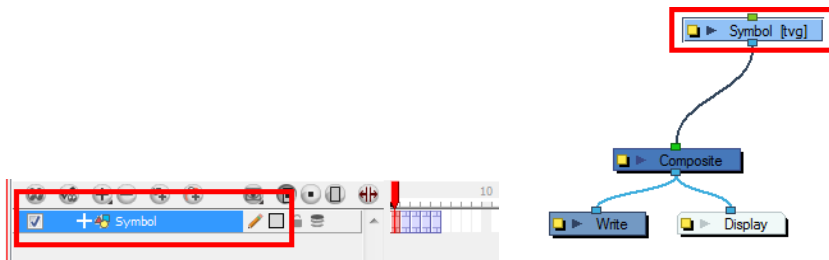


2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Expand Symbol** or press [Shift] + [F8].



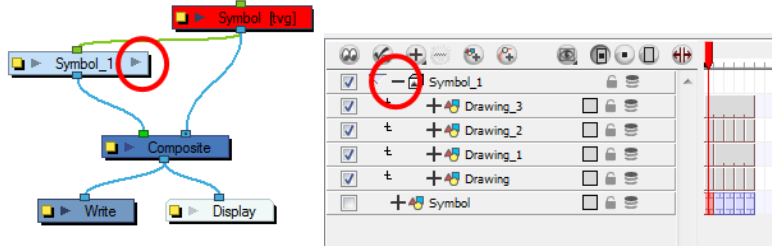
### To expand a symbol in a group:

1. In the Timeline or Network view, select the symbol module or symbol cell you want to expand.



2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Expand Selected Symbol in a Group**.

3. In the Timeline view, click on the Plus sign to see the Group content. In the Network view, click on the **Expand Arrow** to enter the group.



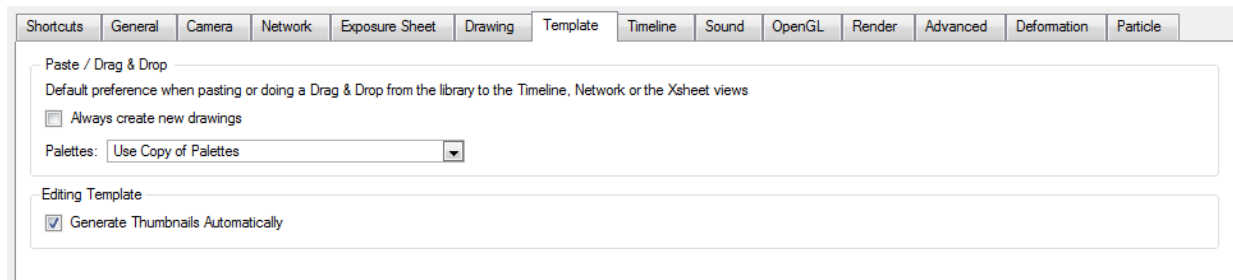
# Library Preferences

Adjusting preferences to suit your workflow allows you to work more efficiently.

To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

In the Preferences panel's **Template** tab you will find the following preferences that are related to managing templates and symbols.



## Paste/Drag and Drop

- **Always Create New Drawings:** By default, when you import timeline templates in the right section of the Timeline view, to stack them, the system will analyze and create only the non-existing drawings and only expose the already existing ones. When enabled, this option will automatically create new drawings for every one of them that is exposed.
- **Palettes:**
  - **Ask User:** When dropping a template into a scene, the system will ask if you want to link the palette to the original or create a local copy in the scene.
  - **Use Original Palette:** The system will automatically link drawing elements to the original palette file. If the original palette is not encountered a local copy will be created.
  - **Use Copy of Palettes:** The system will automatically create a local copy of the palette in the scene.

## Editing a Template

- **Generate Thumbnails Automatically:** When this option is enabled, the system will automatically create thumbnails for the template when the user wants to see the thumbnails in the Template Library or when saving a template modification.



# Chapter 12: Character Building



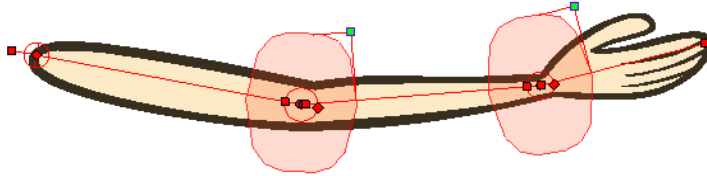
Toon Boom Animate Pro is a great tool for building your characters. You can make use of different techniques and features to break down your puppets.

## Topics Covered

- [Importing a Model](#) on page 683
- [Relative Sizes](#) on page 685
- [Studying the Model](#) on page 687
- [Setting the Default Separate Position Preference](#) on page 691
- [Naming Conventions](#) on page 693
- [Disabling the Animation on Drawing Layers](#) on page 696
- [Breaking Down the Character](#) on page 698
- [Ordering the Layers](#) on page 708
- [Rigging](#) on page 712
- [Adding Extra Drawings](#) on page 730
- [Setting the Pivots](#) on page 732
- [Skeleton Optimization](#) on page 737
- [Storing the Character in the Library](#) on page 742
- [Appendix](#) on page 745



For more great options and features to create powerful and efficient puppets, refer to the chapter about deformations. There, you will find a series of new features allowing you to bend, curve and deform drawings, allowing for more realistic, cartoony and fluid animation. - see [Deformation on page 777](#)



# Importing a Model

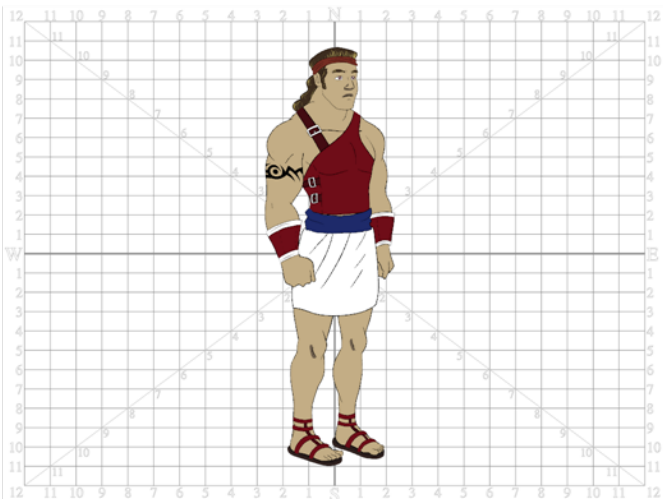


To begin breaking down your puppet, you must first import your character into a new project. You can also draw your character directly in the scene.

You can import your character in several different formats:

- Library Template
- Bitmap Image or Picture
- External Vector Format

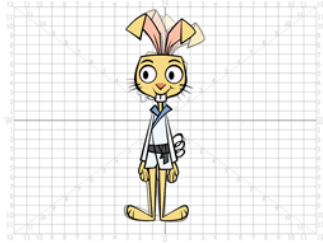
## Model Alignment



When setting your character model in your scene, we recommend that you to centre it in the Camera view and scale it to fit inside the safe area frame.



If you have several views of your character, place each view in a separate cell and centre them one on top of another. This will facilitate the break down process and will ensure that all of your puppets are aligned and the same size.



---

## Photo Puppets

If you are creating a cut-out puppet out of photos, break down the different parts in a bitmap editing software. Then, import your parts and vectorize them as textured images.

A good way to set and import your bitmap parts is to organize them in a multi-layered PSD file.

### Related Topics

- If you previously created a template out of your character model, see [Importing a Template on page 668](#) to learn how to import your character template into your building scene.
- If your character model is a bitmap image or picture, see [Importing Bitmap Images on page 512](#) to learn how to import your image into your building scene.
- If your character model is an AI, PDF or SWF file, refer to the following sections to learn how to import your vector based image:
  - [Importing AI and PDF Files on page 536](#)
  - [Importing from Adobe Flash on page 539](#)
- Refer to [Importing PSD Files as Separate Layers on page 521](#) to learn how to import your bitmap images and multi-layered PSD files.

# Relative Sizes

It is important to understand the relative size of every character and prop in order to maintain consistency and structure throughout the project.

A production may contain many characters and props. It is not unusual for these to have been created by different people. If there is no size control implemented, the characters and elements created by different artists can vary greatly in size. When this occurs, the characters that are put together in a scene will be out of proportion. The animator or person doing the scene setup will then have to scale them to the correct size.

When a character or a prop is scaled down, the outline will get increasingly thinner. By the time that the element is scaled to its proper size, the outline may be so thin that the difference between one character's outline and another's will not look very good.

These tips can be used to create and determine the correct relative sizes for each puppet:

- [Line Up below](#)
- [Field Chart on the next page](#)
- [Brush Size on the next page](#)

## Line Up



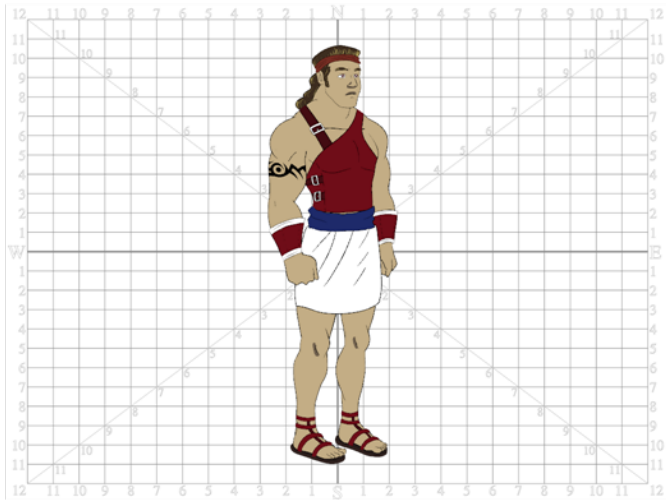
A line up consists of copying and pasting all of your character designs into the same drawing and then scaling them so they are in proportion with each other. This line up is very important and should be handed to any animator, layout and posing artist, or scene set up person working on the project.

For the prop design, it is recommended that you paste one of the main character's hands or even the full body beside the prop. This enables the animator to know what size to draw or set the prop.




In your character design scene, it is a good idea to create a layer for the character line up. The line up is usually done during the character design step. When the character builder imports the model to the break down scene, the size relation should be correct.

# Field Chart



Animate Pro has a field chart included in its Camera and Drawing views. This tool is very useful when setting the height of characters and props. You can display the field chart using the Show Grid option.

To display the field chart:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **View > Grid > Show Grid**.
- ▶ The keyboard shortcut is [Ctrl] + ['] (Windows) or [⌘] + ['] (Mac OS X).
- ▶ You can also click on the **Show Grid**  button available in the Camera view and Drawing view toolbars.

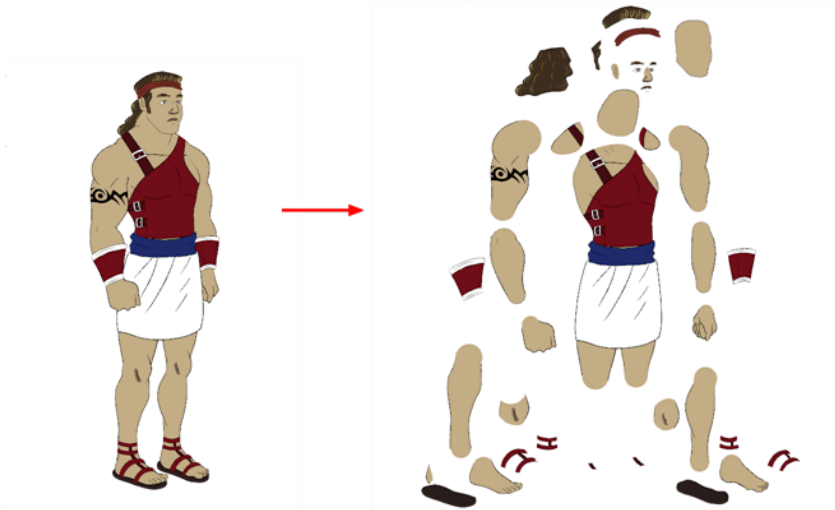
## Brush Size

Animate Pro provides a variety of pens and brushes and also allows you to create and save your own. It is a good idea to create and save pens with precise sizes and parameters to trace and design your models and break downs.

### Related Topics

- [Brush Styles on page 169](#)

# Studying the Model

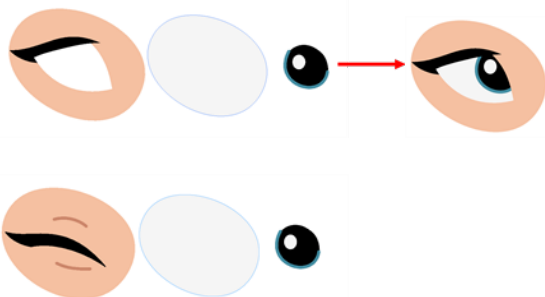


Now that you have imported or designed your model, the next step is to analyze it. This is done to determine what parts will be broken apart and how they will be divided. Will the hair be separated into one, two or three sections? Will the hand be separated from the sleeve? To determine what is best for your character, observe the model in the Camera or Drawing view.

To help you improve the quality of your break down, here are some tips and tricks. The following examples are from "Grossology" a production by Nelvana Limited:

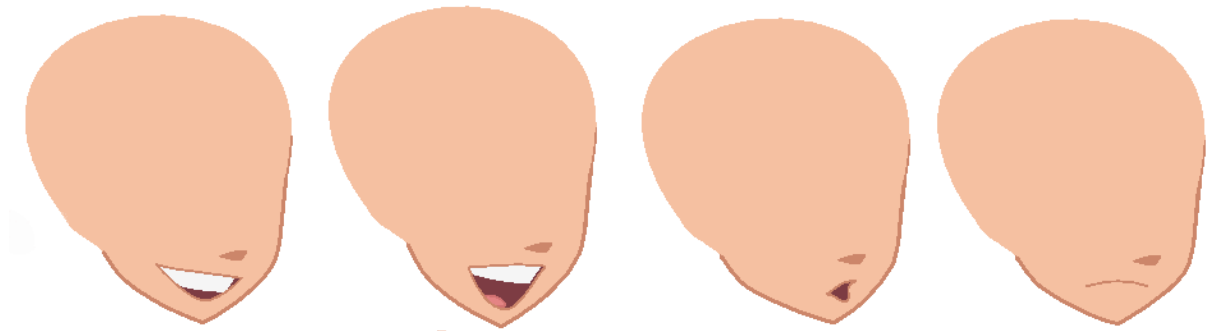
- [Eyelids and Pupils below](#)
- [Creating Mouth Shapes Directly on the Head on the next page](#)
- [Keeping Fingers Attached to the Hand on the next page](#)
- [Mixing Hand-Drawn Animation on the next page](#)
- [Flipping Logos on page 690](#)
- [Complete and Overlapping Pieces on page 690](#)

## Eyelids and Pupils



For increased flexibility when animating the eyes, you can split them into three layers: the eyeball, the pupil and the eyelid. The eyelid layer is used for the blink and to cut the pupil when it gets too close to the side of the eyeball. For a more advanced break down, the two eyes are separated on their own individual three-layer sets.

## Creating Mouth Shapes Directly on the Head



To animate more realistic lip syncing and facial expressions, you can create the mouth shapes on the head layer. Just deform the jaw to match the mouth opening.

## Keeping Fingers Attached to the Hand



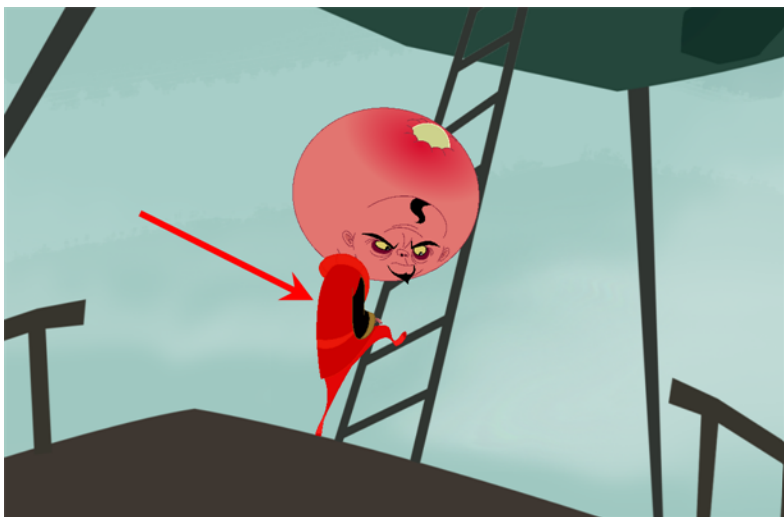
To avoid needlessly complicating the break down, the fingers are not usually separated from the hand. The full hand is a single layer with a bank of different hands stored inside. This technique is easy to work with and produces a less mechanical effect.

## Mixing Hand-Drawn Animation





For more advanced cut-out animation and a more traditional animation look, some users will keep full arms and full legs. This means that only hands and feet are separated from the limbs. The animator will create extra drawing shapes and substitute them during the animation.



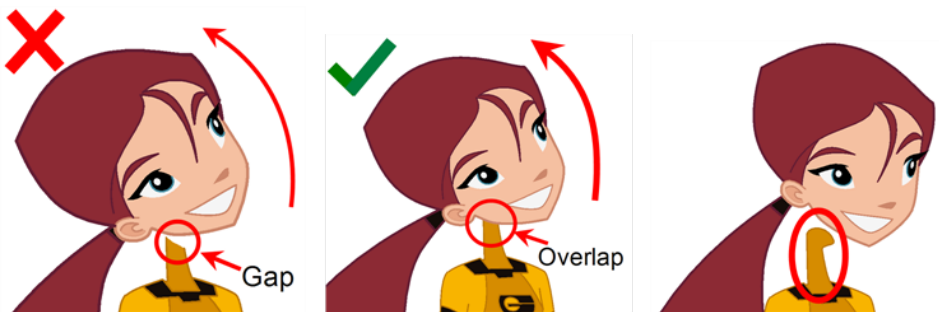
The animator may temporarily combine some parts to facilitate the work and produce a higher quality animation. For example, combining both full legs and hips into a single drawing to create poses that would be difficult using cut-out pieces. Both full legs could be drawn on the hip level and legs and feet exposure removed. This technique is a mix of cut-out and hand-drawn animation.

## Flipping Logos



You can separate logos and letters that appear on a character or a prop. This allows you to flip and reuse a character's puppet.

## Complete and Overlapping Pieces



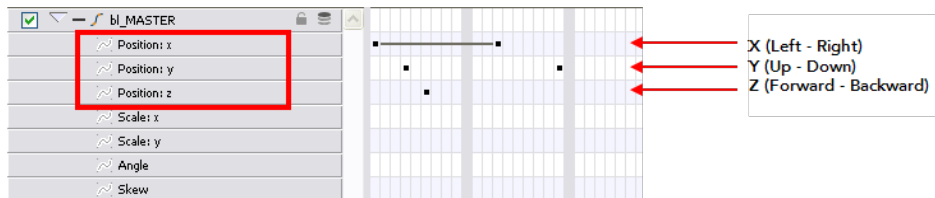
For a better result with animated parts, it is important to understand that they have to be properly overlapping and complete. A common mistake is to trace the part just as it appears on the model.

### Related Topics

- [Importing a Model](#) on page 683

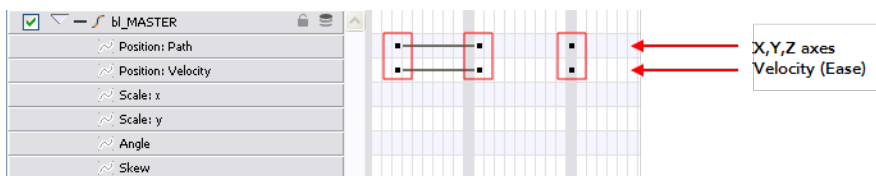
# Setting the Default Separate Position Preference

Before you start adding layers to your puppets, you should enable the Default Separate Positions for Elements preference if it is not already done.

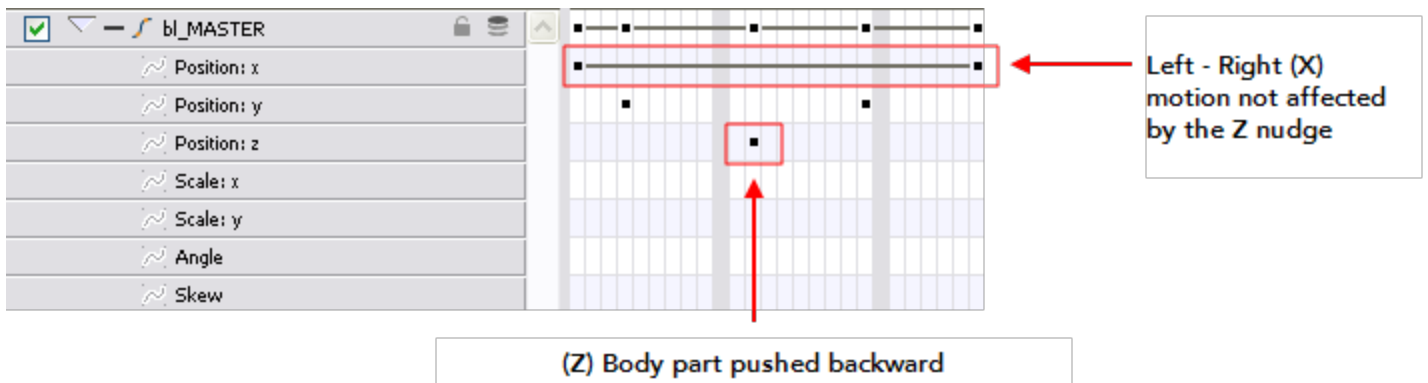


If you enable the Default Separate Positions for Elements preference, when you create new layers, their X, Y and Z axes will be independent one from the other.

By default, this preference is disabled, so when you animate your layers, the three directions are locked together to form long and smooth trajectories controlled by a single easing parameter. However, when you do cut-out animation, you will probably prefer to have three independent axes so that you can control them individually.



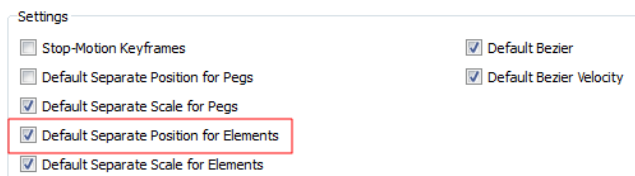
When you lock the three positions together, each time you add a keyframe, it is added on all three positions at once.



When you separate the three positions, when you add a keyframe on one axis, it is not added on the other two. This gives you more freedom when animating with motion keyframes and nudging parts forward and backward over time.

**To enable the Default Separate Positions preference:**

1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X). The keyboard shortcut is [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Preferences panel, go to the **General** tab.
3. In the Settings section, enable the **Default Separate Positions for Elements** option.



4. Click on the OK button.

## Related Topics

- [Breaking Down the Character](#) on page 698

# Naming Conventions

When working on a production, it is critical to keep work well organized. It is important to create a naming convention chart before starting the project. It is crucial that everyone follows the criteria laid out in the naming convention chart. When dealing with thousands of characters, pieces and puppets, it is easy to get lost.

This topic is divided as follows:

- [Adding a Prefix or Suffix to a Layer](#) below
- [Naming the Drawings](#) below

## Adding a Prefix or Suffix to a Layer


It is highly recommended that you incorporate a naming convention for the layers. This will be very convenient in later steps. We suggest that you add one or two letters for the character/prop name before the part name and a "R" or a "L" for right and left to identify the corresponding character/prop:

- Character Abby's right arm = ab\_r\_arm.

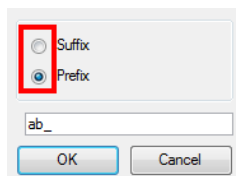
If you plan to work with different angles for your characters (front, side, three-quarter, back), you can add one or two letters to identify the angle:

- Character Abby's right arm, front view = ab\_r\_arm\_f.

To add a prefix to a series of layers:

1. In the Network or Timeline view, select all the modules or layers to rename or press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Scripting toolbar, click on the **Add Prefix or Suffix Script**  button. If the Scripting toolbar is not visible, you can display it via the **Windows > Toolbars** menu.

The Add Prefix or Suffix dialog box opens.



3. Enable the **Prefix** or **Suffix** option, depending on what you want to add to the layer's name.
4. Type the prefix or suffix information to be added to the layer's name.
5. Click on the OK button.

## Naming the Drawings

We recommend that you use a naming convention for your drawings. If you combine all of the angles of a character in the same breakdown scene, it is a good idea to identify each angle used.

ab_fr_hand1	ab_fr_arm2	ab_fr_hand2	ab_mouth	P
f1	f1	f1	f1	
f2	f2	f2	f2	
f3	f3	f3	f3	
q1	q1	q1	q1	
q2	q2	q2	q2	
q3	q3	q3	q3	
q4	q4	q4	q4	
s1	s1	s1	s1	
s2	s2	s2	s2	
qb1	qb1	qb1	qb1	
qb2	qb2	qb2	qb2	
b1	b1	b1	b1	
b2	b2	b2	b2	

Front angle drawings

Side angle drawings

Back angle drawings

Before breaking down the characters for your production, we recommend that you create a drawing name convention that represents the angle used. For example, use "f" for front, "s" for side, "q" for three-quarter so that the drawing name looks like: f1, f2, f3, s1, s2, etc. This will be quite useful during animation and drawing substitution. Drawings are displayed in alphabetical and numerical order. This way, all the drawings for the front view will be together, then all the drawings for the three quarter view, etc.

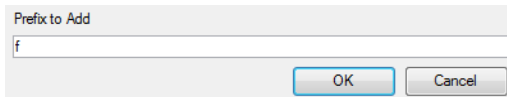
**To add a prefix to one or more drawings:**

1. In the Timeline view, select the drawing range to rename.



2. Right-click on the selection and select **Drawings > Rename Drawing with Prefix**.

The Rename Drawing with Prefix dialog box opens.



3. In the Prefix to Add field, type the characters you want to add before the current drawing name.
4. Click on the OK button.

	Drawing
1	f1
2	f2
3	f3
4	f4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	
9	



To rename a drawing, select the drawing and use the Rename Drawing option. **Do not double-click on the frame** and write a new name, as this will create a new drawing and hide your actual one. Note that the hidden drawing has not been deleted and is still located within the element folder. Simply retype the name and it will reappear.

**Related Topics**

- [Breaking Down the Character on page 698](#)

- [Rigging](#) on page 712

# Disabling the Animation on Drawing Layers

By default, a drawing layer can be animated, but Animate Pro lets you disable this feature. Being able to switch your drawings so they can no longer be animated without a peg has certain advantages. It means that you can have access to the drawing substitution feature for this drawing layer, while being able to create keyframes on its parent peg. This feature is also available for backward compatibility when bringing in templates created in older versions of the software, so as not to lose their offset keyframes or drawing substitution keyframes.

When selecting the element in the Camera view, the actual Drawing layer is selected, but the motion you will create will automatically be transposed to the Peg layer. You cannot animate (add keyframes) directly onto the drawing layer if the option is disabled. You will still be able to perform certain offset movements in the Transformation tab of the Layer Properties, but not using any of the animation tools in the Tools toolbar.

There are two ways to disabled the Animate Using Animation Tools option:

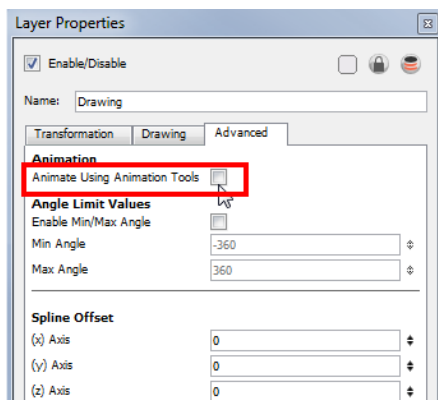
- [Layer Properties View](#) below
- [Preferences Panel on the facing page](#)

## Layer Properties View

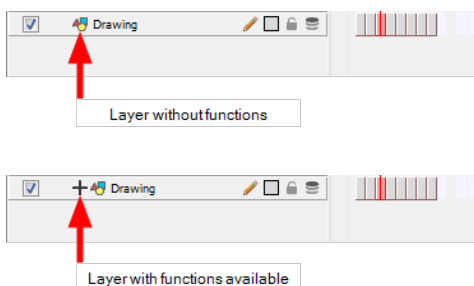
When you disable the option in the Layer Properties view, the operation will be solely done on the selected layer and not on any other ones.

**To disable the Animate Using Animation Tools option in the Layer Properties view:**

1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the layer that you want to set the parameter for.  
The Layer Properties editor opens.
2. In the Advanced tab, disable the **Animate Using Animation Tools** option.



Notice how the availability of the layer functions is no longer an option in the Timeline view.





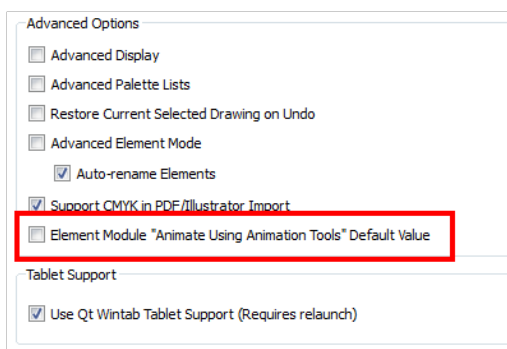
3. Click the **Close** button.

## Preferences Panel

If you know that you prefer this style of animation and you would like every drawing element that you create not to be animated, you can disable the Element Module "Animate Using Animation Tools" Default Value preference. This will disable the Animate Using Animation Tools option so that you don't have to do this through the Layers Properties window for every layer. It is recommended to disable this preference before starting a new character rig.

### To disable the option in the Preferences panel:

1. To open the Preferences panel, go to:
  - ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
  - ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
  - ▶ The keyboard shortcut is [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. Go to the Advanced tab.
3. In the Advanced Options section, disabled the **Element Module "Animate Using Animation Tools" Default Value** preference.



4. Close the Preferences panel.

## Related Topics

- [Preview and Drawing Substitution on page 646](#)
- [Swapping Images on page 1057](#)

# Breaking Down the Character



There are many techniques you can use to break down a puppet. In this section, you will learn about one of the most common and simplest method. For your first character break down, follow these instructions to get an idea of the way Animate Pro works. Once you are used to the software and understand its basic functions and commands, you will be able to create your own techniques to satisfy the needs of your production.



Refer to [Appendix on page 745](#) at the end of the chapter for alternate technique tips.

## Related Topics

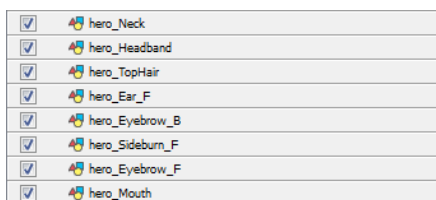
- [Tracing the Model](#) below
- [Articulations on page 702](#)

## Tracing the Model

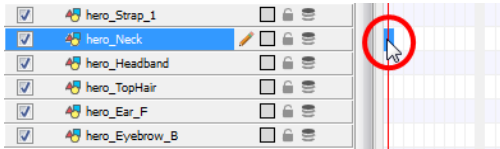
The main break down technique shown here is to trace your model, completing the hidden lines and filling the gaps. See the [Appendix on page 745](#) to learn about more techniques.

**To trace over your model:**

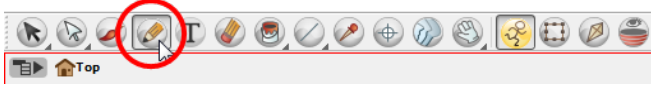
1. In the Timeline view, add a new drawing layer for each body part to separate. You can press [Ctrl] + [R] (Windows) or [⌘] + [R] (Mac OS X).



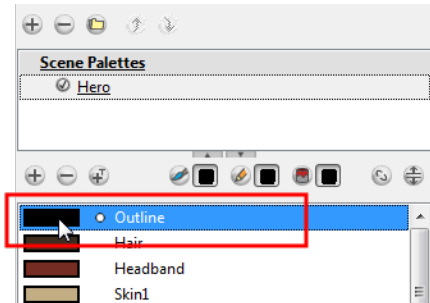
2. In the Timeline view, select the layer's first cell in which you want to draw the part.



3. In the Tools toolbar, select the drawing tool needed.



4. In the Colour view, select the desired colour swatch.

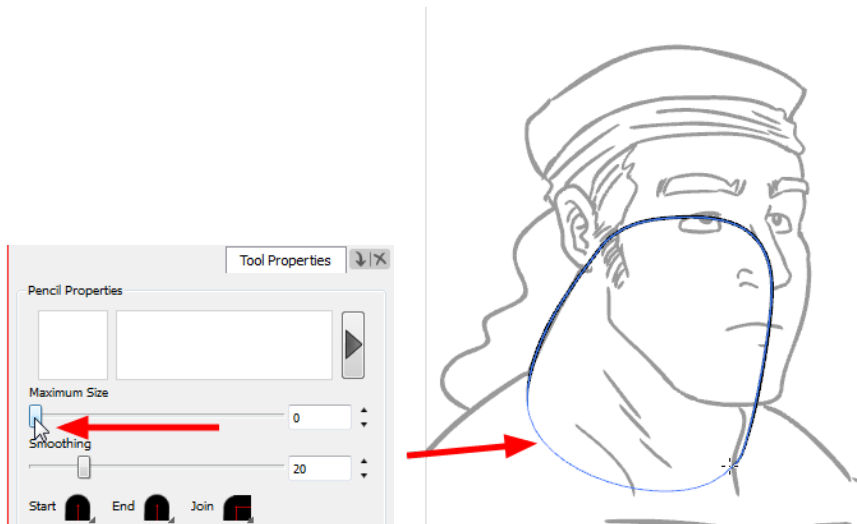


5. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw the new part.

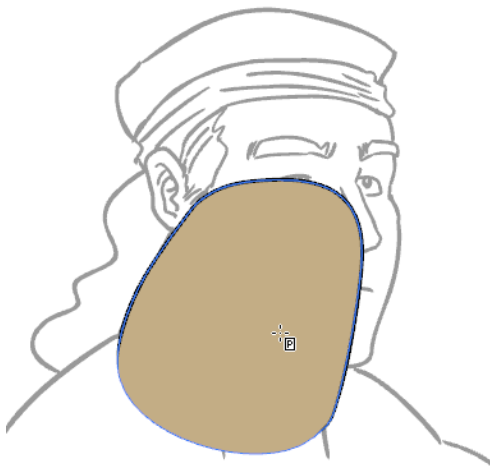



If you are working in the Drawing view, click on the Light Table button located in the Drawing View toolbar to display the other layers as washed out colours. You can also press [Shift] + [L].


6. In the Tool Properties view, you can set the Pencil tool width to 0 to create invisible hairline if you want to close a shape without drawing an actual stroke.

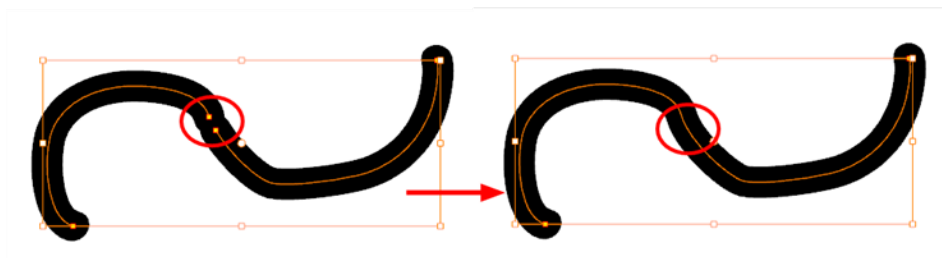


7. In the Tools toolbar, select the Paint or Paint Unpainted tool to colour your drawing.
8. In the Colour view, select the corresponding colour.
9. In the Camera or Drawing view, paint your drawing.



10. Using the Select tool, select your drawing and flatten your lines by clicking on the **Flatten**  button located in the Tool Properties view.

11. If your lines are composed of several pencil strokes, you might want to combine them into one single smooth pencil line using the Merge Pencil Lines option. Using the Select tool, select the pencil lines to be merged and in the Tool Properties view, click on the **Merge Pencil Lines**  button.



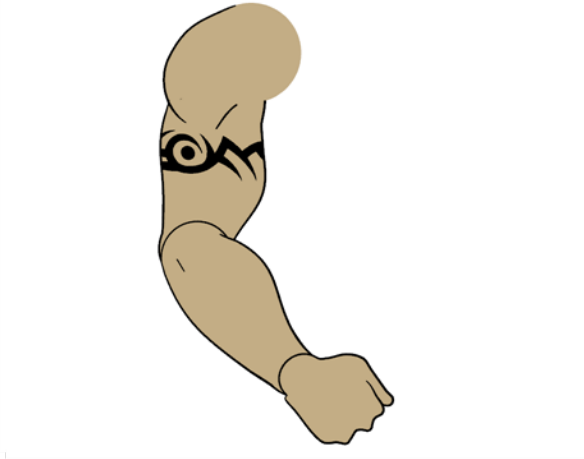
12.Repeat the entire process until the breakdown is completed.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Body_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_BodyDetails_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_BodyDetails_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Body_Lines
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_SideBuckleTop
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_SideBuckleBottom
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Vest_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Strap
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_UpperArm_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Tattoo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Bracer_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Arm_F_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Trap_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Arm_F_2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Hand_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Strap_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Neck
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Headband
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_TopHair
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Ear_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eyebrow_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Sideburn_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eyebrow_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Mouth
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eye_F_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eye_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Iris_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Nose
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eye_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Eye_B_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Iris_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Head
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Hair_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Trap_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_UpperArm_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Bracer_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Arm_B_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Arm_B_2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Hand_B
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_UpperLeg_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Knee_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Leg_F_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Shoe_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Foot_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Ankle_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Shoe_F_1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_Strap_F
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	hero_AnkleBand_F

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148

# Articulations



Once your pieces are traced, you can proceed to the completion of the articulations.

Articulations are an important aspect of any cut-out break down, without them a puppet cannot move properly and will not look good.

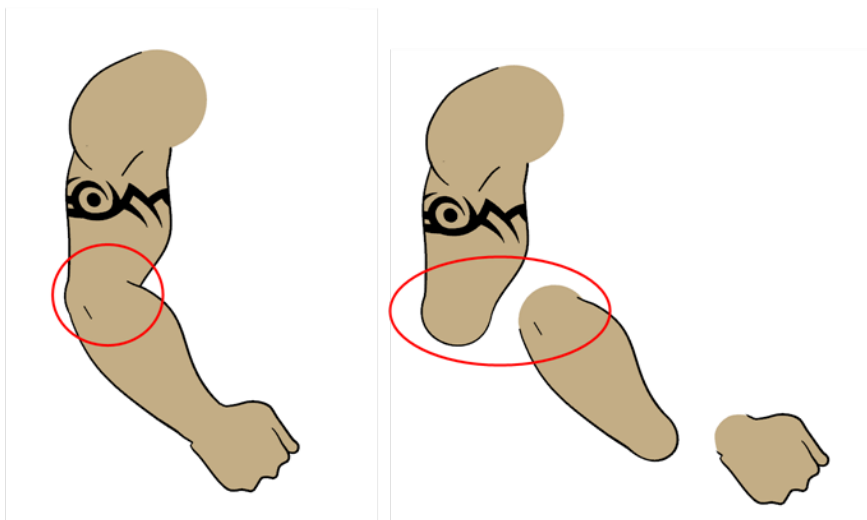
This topic is divided as follows:

- [Classical Articulation below](#)
- [Auto-patch Articulations on page 704](#)

## Classical Articulation

In this section, you will learn about classical articulation.

Classical articulation is the most popular technique for basic characters. It is quite simple and produces excellent results, but it is not the most efficient method. In many instances, it causes limitations and extra drawing corrections. For example, there may be a gap in the articulation if the part is bent too far. Joint design is usually designed as a circle; the overlapping part cannot be sent behind without showing the joint. For a more advanced articulation, see [Patch Articulation on page 765](#) in the Appendix section.



Classical articulation is done by erasing a part of the line from the overlay layer, leaving the colour overlapping the bottom one.

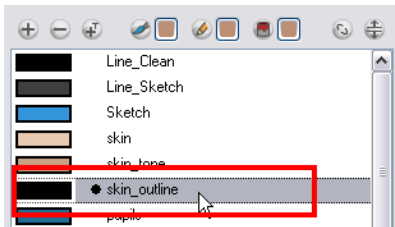
Repeat the following instructions for all the articulations on your puppet.

### To create a classical articulation:

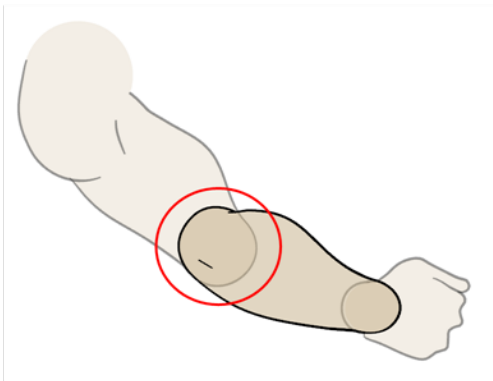
1. In the Timeline view, select the cell containing the first part to modify, such as the upper arm.




2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Pencil**, **Polyline**, **Ellipse**, or **Contour Editor** tool.
3. In the Colour view, select the outline colour.



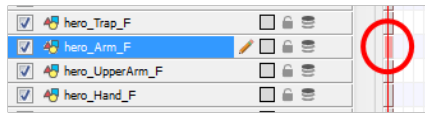
4. In the Drawing or Camera view, use your drawing tool to make sure that the joint is overlapping the other part in a half-circle shape.



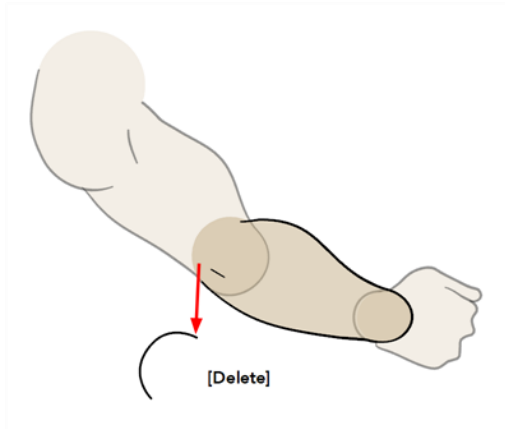
- If you are working in the Drawing view, click on the **Light Table**  button located in the Drawing

View toolbar or press [Shift] + [L].

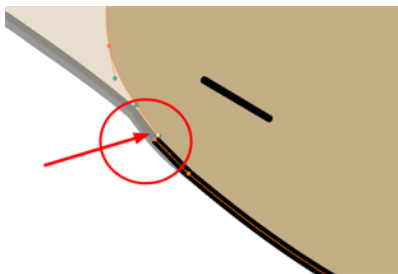
5. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Show Strokes** to display the invisible lines that could be present in your drawing. You can also press [K].
6. In the Drawing or Camera view, select all the strokes in your drawing.
7. In the Tools Properties view, click on the **Flatten** button.
8. In the Drawing or Camera view, select all the strokes in your drawing.
9. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Optimize > Remove Extra Strokes**. This operation will remove any unnecessary invisible lines in your drawing.
10. Repeat Step 1 to Step 9 for the other part of the joint.
11. In the Timeline view, select the cell of the part that will be on top of the joint.



12. In the Tools toolbar, choose the **Select**, **Cutter** or **Eraser** tool.
13. In the Drawing or Camera view, remove a part of the overlapping outline in order to have only the filling colour overlapping the joint.



14. In the Tools toolbar, select the Contour Editor tool.
15. In the Drawing or Camera view, adjust the colour fill so that the pencil outline does not overlap it. Be careful not to leave a gap between the line and the fill.

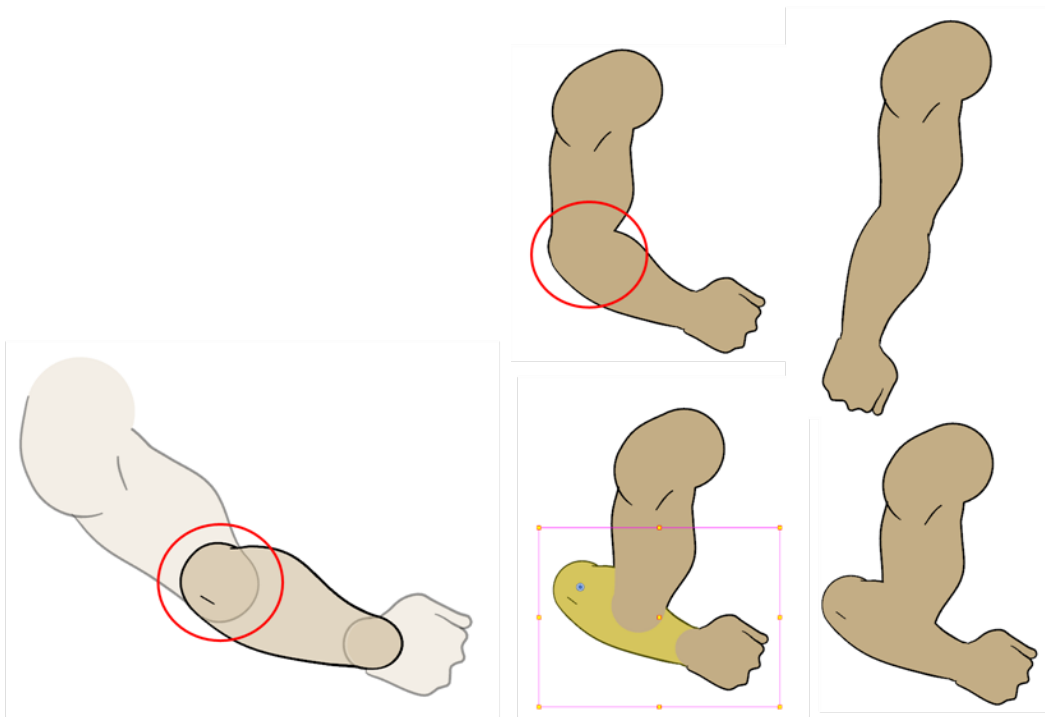


When placing rotation pivots later on, make sure they are positioned at the centre of the articulation.

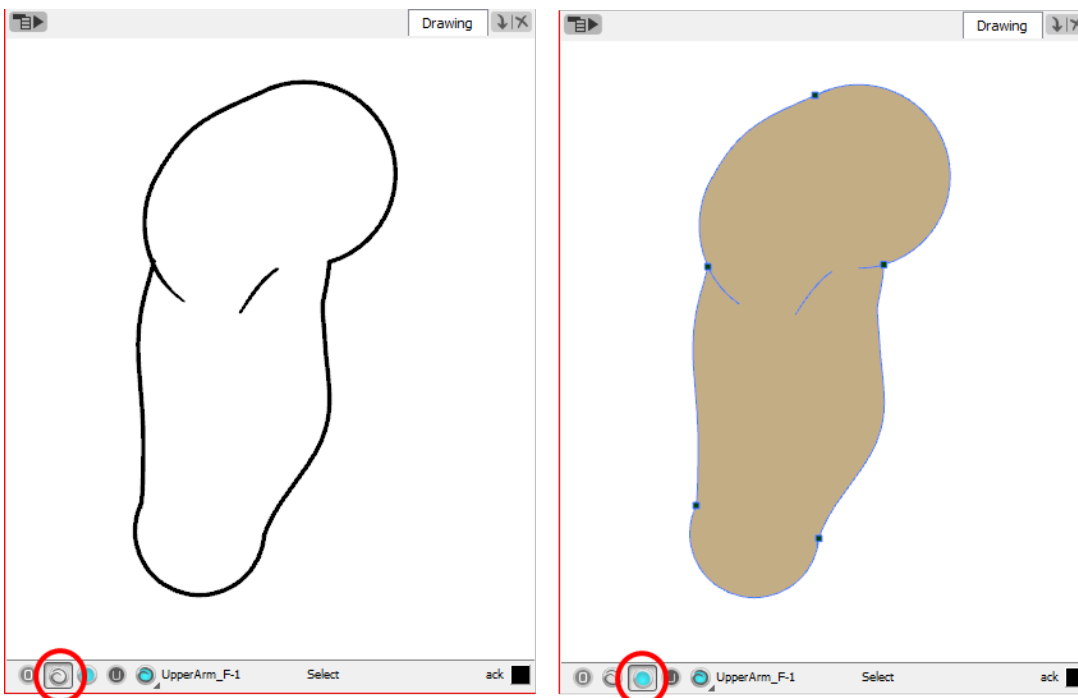
## Auto-patch Articulations

Animate Pro has a very efficient module to automatically patch an articulation without you having to do any line adjustment or colour overlapping. You can draw your two pieces with their complete lines overlapping each other in semi-circles and the Auto-patch module will create a perfect articulation out of it. See [Auto Patch on page 1102](#).

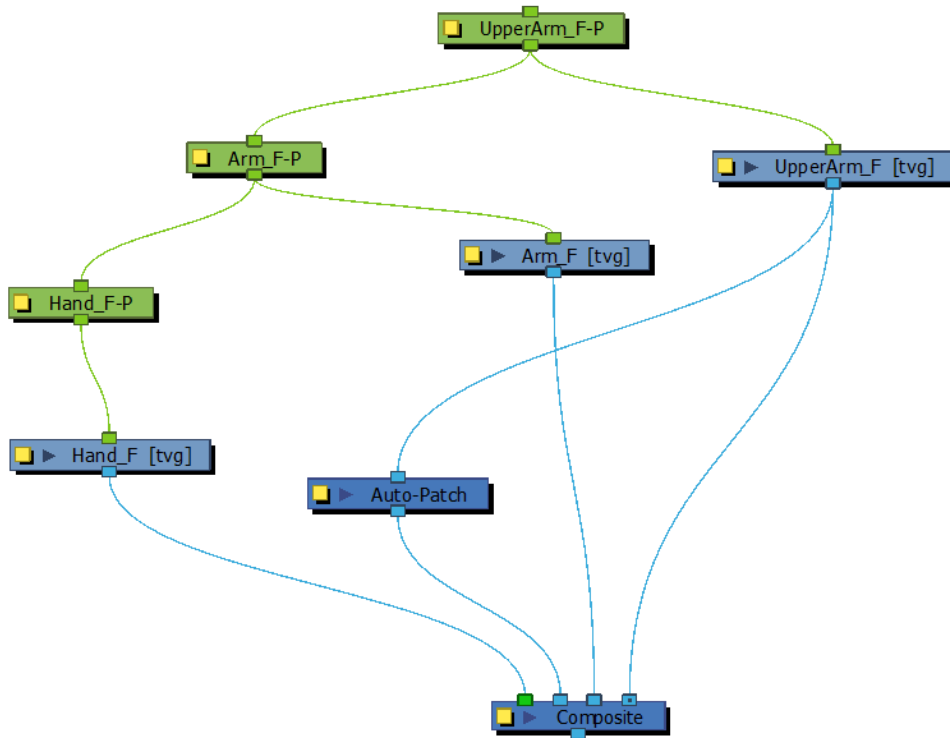




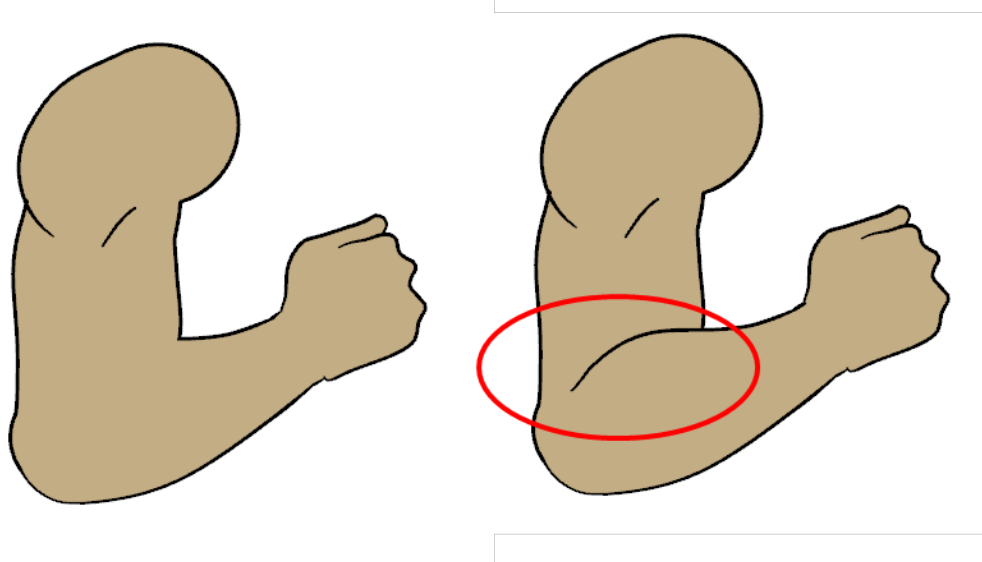
For the Auto-patch to work on your puppet, the only condition is to draw the outline with the Pencil tool (pencil lines) on the Line Art layer or your drawing and paint the colour on the Colour Art layer of your drawing. See [Creating Strokes to Paint Your Drawings on a Separated Layer](#) on page 348.

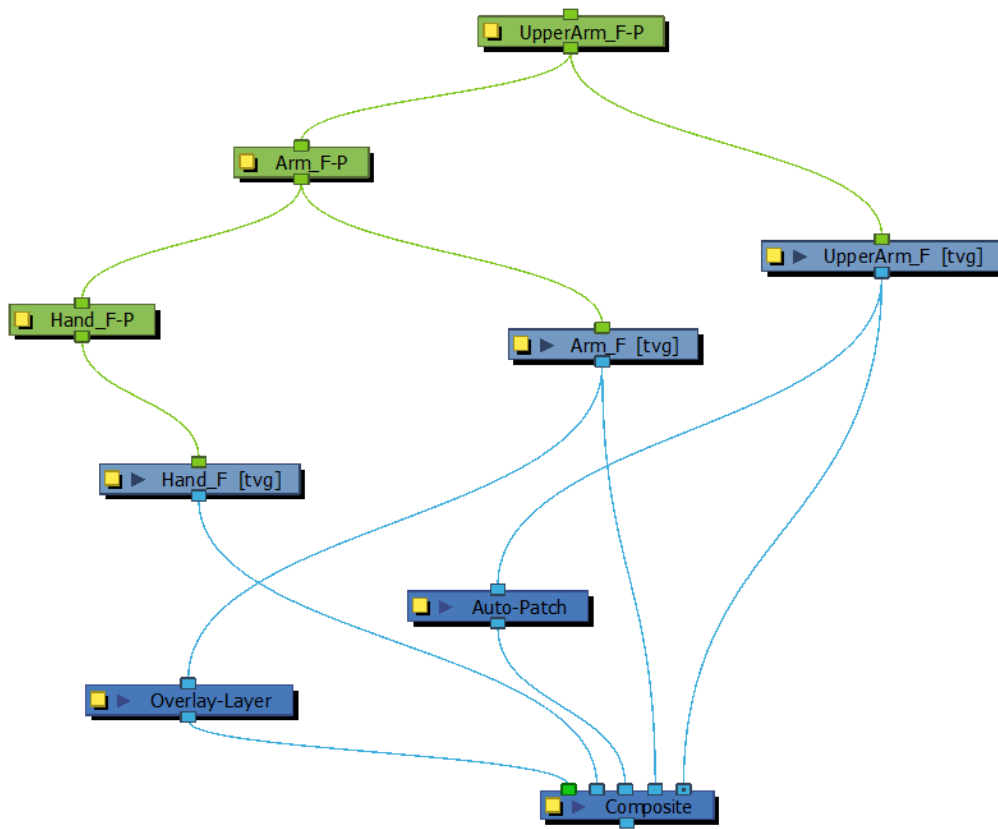


Refer to the [Auto Patch on page 1102](#) topic to learn how to connect your modules in the Network view and learn more about the effect. Here is an example of an arm rigged with the Auto-patch module.



You can use this technique in an even more efficient way by adding extra lines in the Overlay layer of your drawing to create a fold illusion for an elbow bending.

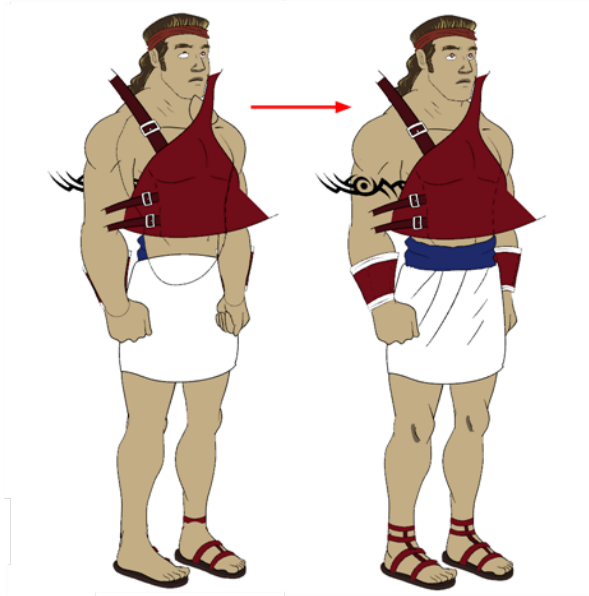




## Related Topics

- [Patch Articulation](#) on page 765
- [Auto Patch](#) on page 1102

# Ordering the Layers



At this point, it is possible that your character's pieces may show up in the wrong order.

There are several ways to fix this. First, you can reorder your layers by dragging them to a higher or lower level in the Timeline view. The top layer is displayed in front of the others and the bottom one is displayed behind. Second, you can use the Z-axis nudging (forward and backward) if you have extra views included in the same layers (front, three-quarter, back, etc.).

This topic is divided as follows:

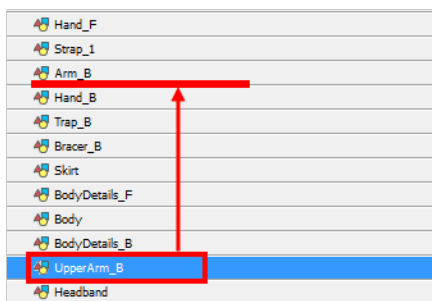
- [Ordering the Timeline Layers below](#)
- [Ordering Layers in the Network View on the facing page](#)
- [Nudging Parts Backwards and Forwards on page 710](#)

## Ordering the Timeline Layers

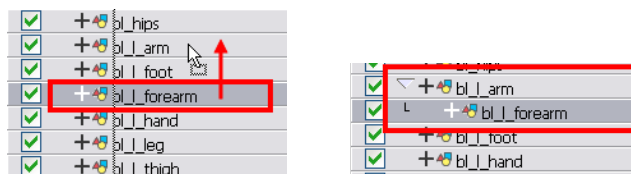
In the Timeline view, the layer positioned at the top will be displayed in front and the ones below will be displayed behind. If you have multiple views, you should order your layers based on the most common view, which is generally the three-quarter front.

**To order the layers:**

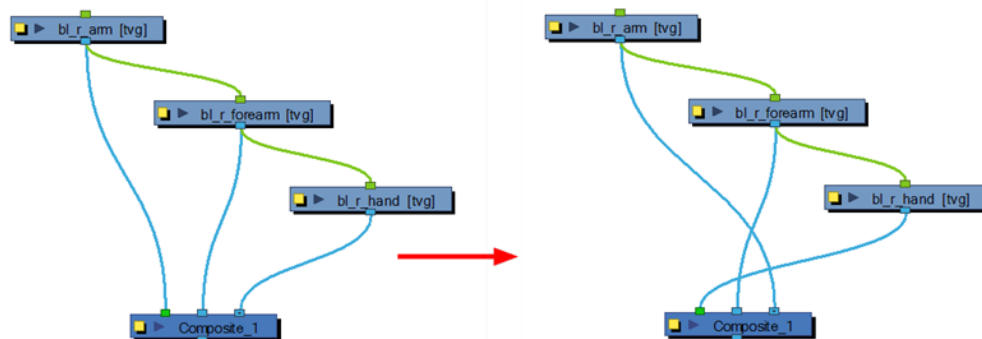
- ▶ In the Timeline view, drag a layer to reorder it and drop it between the other layers.



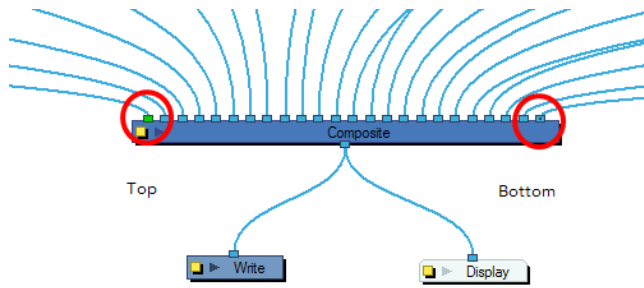
If you drop it on a layer, it will create a parent hierarchy, so make sure to drop it between layers.



## Ordering Layers in the Network View



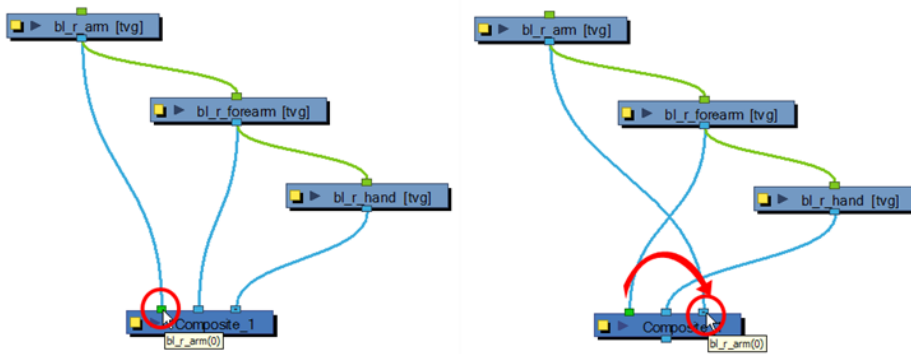
The Network view allows you to reorder your layers without breaking any hierarchy. For example, if you want the Head layer to appear behind all of the facial features, in the Timeline view, you cannot simply move the layer down because you will break the parenting between the head layers. In the Network view, since you have a set of flexible connections, you can change the Composite module ordering without breaking the parenting between the modules.



The Composite module ordering corresponds to your Timeline ordering unless the Network's organization is too complex for the Timeline's one. The element connected in the left-most port in the Composite module is displayed in front in the Camera view and the one connected in the right-most port is displayed behind.

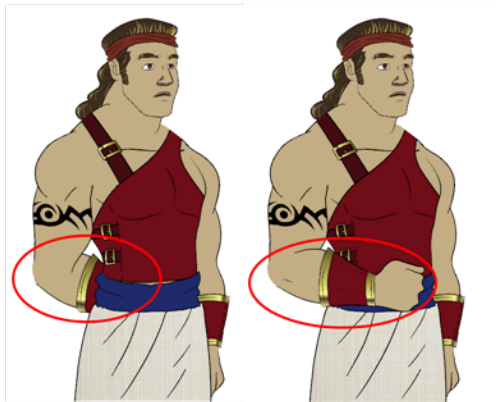
**To order your layers in the Network view:**

- ▶ In the Network view, select the module's output cable connected to the Composite module and drag it to its new position.



## Nudging Parts Backwards and Forwards

If you created a hierarchy on your arms, legs or other body parts, it is possible that you will want a part, such as the hand, to appear in front of its parent. Yet, if you move the hand layer above the arm layer, you will break the hierarchy. To reorder a layer rigged in a hierarchy, nudge it backwards or forwards on the z-axis.





You will do the same for the layers that are not in the right order on the extra views. Do not place the drawing on another layer. You want to keep all your drawings of the body parts in the same layers like a box containing all of the hands or all of the shoes.



Animate Pro allows you to move your elements in three dimensions:

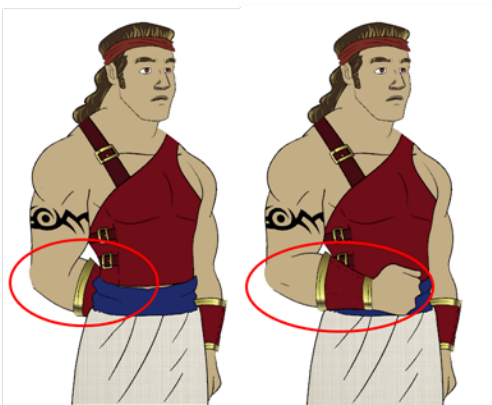
- Up and Down (Y-axis)
- Left and Right (X-axis)
- Backwards and Forwards (Z-axis)

In the same way you create multiplane backgrounds (depth), you can do a micro nudge of the part to be reordered and see it in front of the other elements, even if its layer is actually behind the other ones in the Timeline view. The Forward-Backward position can also be animated over time.

Repeat the following instructions for all the views.

#### To nudge your parts backward and forward:

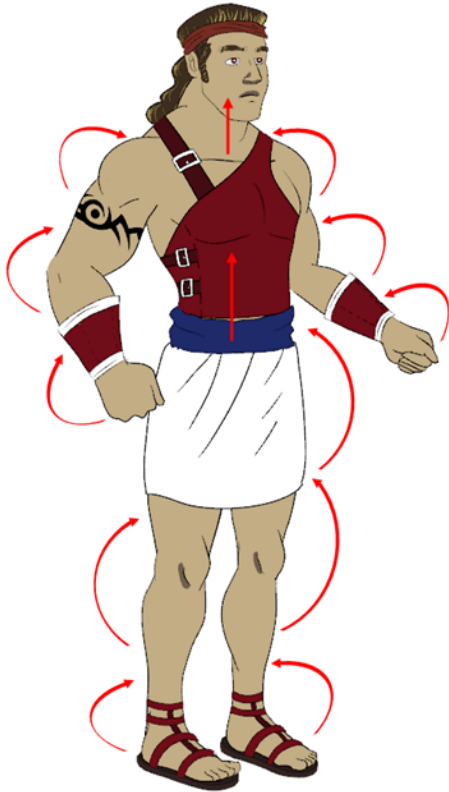
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool. Make sure to enable the **Animate**  mode.
2. In the Camera view, select the element that you want to reorder. Make sure that the focus (red outline) is around the Camera view before selecting the element.
3. To move the element forward, press [Alt] + [Down Arrow] and to move the element backward, press [Alt] + [Up Arrow].



#### Related Topics

- [Adding the Master Peg on page 725](#)
- [Creating a Hierarchy on page 723](#)

# Rigging



The rigging process is where building a puppet can take several different directions.



In this section, you will learn how to create a simple rig. Afterward, you will learn how to add pegs and create a hierarchy. You can also see more advanced tricks in the [Appendix on page 745](#). For a very flexible and advanced rig, see [Deformation on page 777](#).

## Related Topics

- [About Rigging on the facing page](#)
- [Adding Pegs on page 717](#)
- [Rigging the Head on page 719](#)
- [Rigging the Body on page 721](#)
- [Creating a Hierarchy on page 723](#)
- [Ordering the Layers on page 708](#)
- [Adding the Master Peg on page 725](#)
- [Creating the Keyframes on page 726](#)
- [Masking on page 727](#)



# About Rigging

There are few basic concepts to know about rigging and layer parenting:

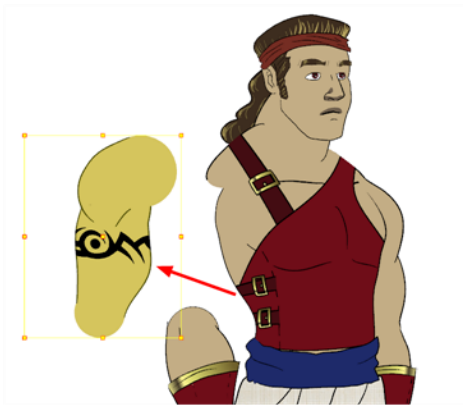
- [Simple Rigging below](#)
- [Parenting Layers on the next page](#)
- [Rigging Using Pegs on page 716](#)

## Simple Rigging

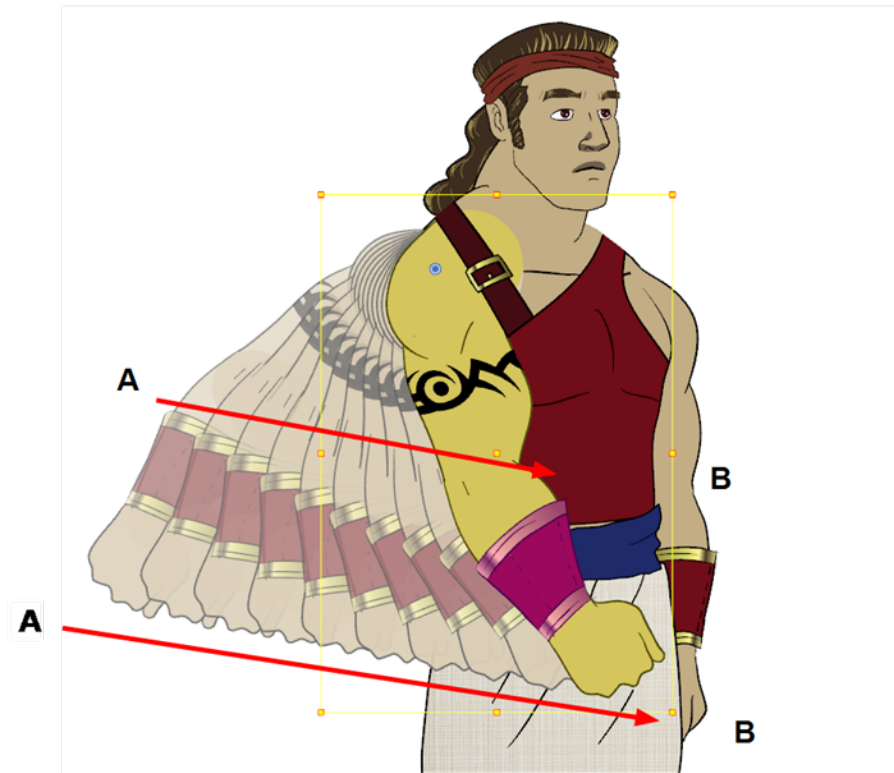
Simple rigging is very fast and easy to do. It is built as follows:

- All the body parts are independent
- All the timeline's layers are attached to a master peg layer (trajectory layer)

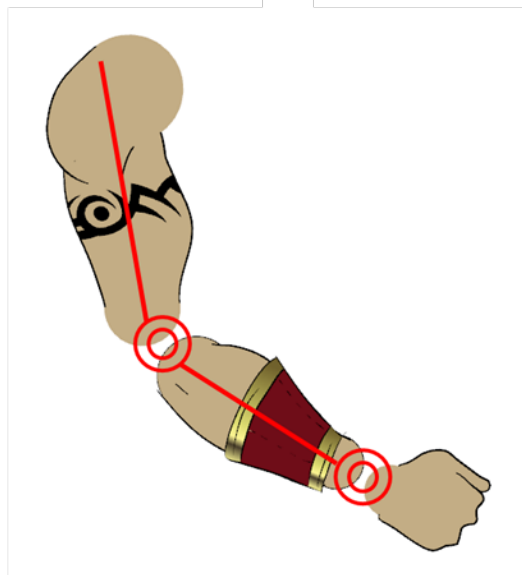
The advantage of using this technique is that you are free to move any part around without being influenced by any parent layer.



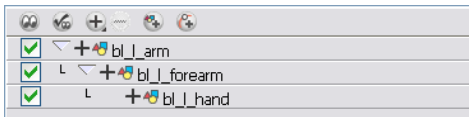
However, since the parts are not parented to each other, the parts will move from point A to point B along a straight trajectory. The hand will not follow the arm's rotation. You will have to set more keyframes for the hand to move along a curved path.



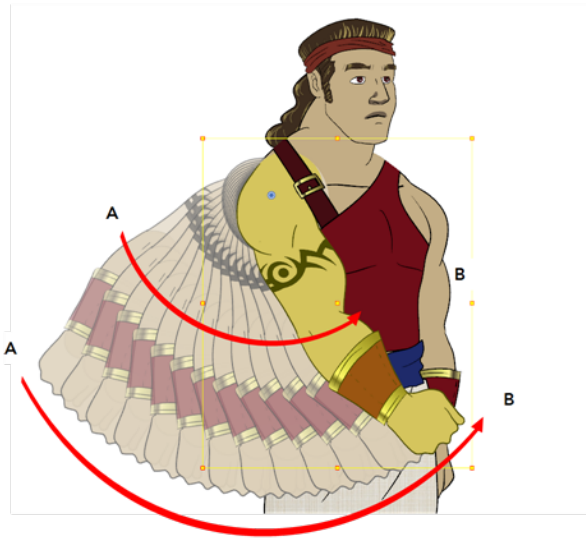
## Parenting Layers



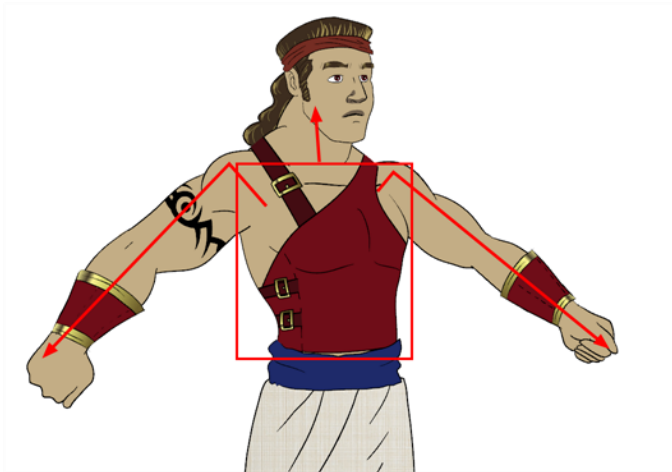
When you want a part to follow another one, such as the forearm following the arm, you can attach the layers one to the other. For example, you can attach the forearm layer to the arm layer without having to encapsulate the forearm into the arm layer. They will still be parented, but you will be able to access the forearm directly without having to enter the arm layer.



The advantage of parenting layers is that the child layers will follow the parent smoothly without having to select them or create a series of keyframes.



The disadvantage of parenting layers is that you are not able to move the parent independently of its children, since the child layers receive all the transformation information from their parent.



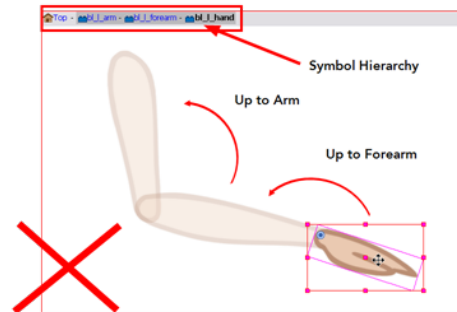
Parenting layers such as the arms and legs and letting the torso and hips independent from those is often a good solution.



To attach one layer to another, you have to drag the desired layer onto the other one in the Timeline view.

Animate Pro offers powerful techniques to create hierarchies between your layers without having to encapsulate layers into each other. These techniques are a great improvement over the less efficient and time consuming method of creating parenting between your layers by inserting symbols into other symbols. Therefore, rigging with symbols inside symbols is **NOT** recommended.

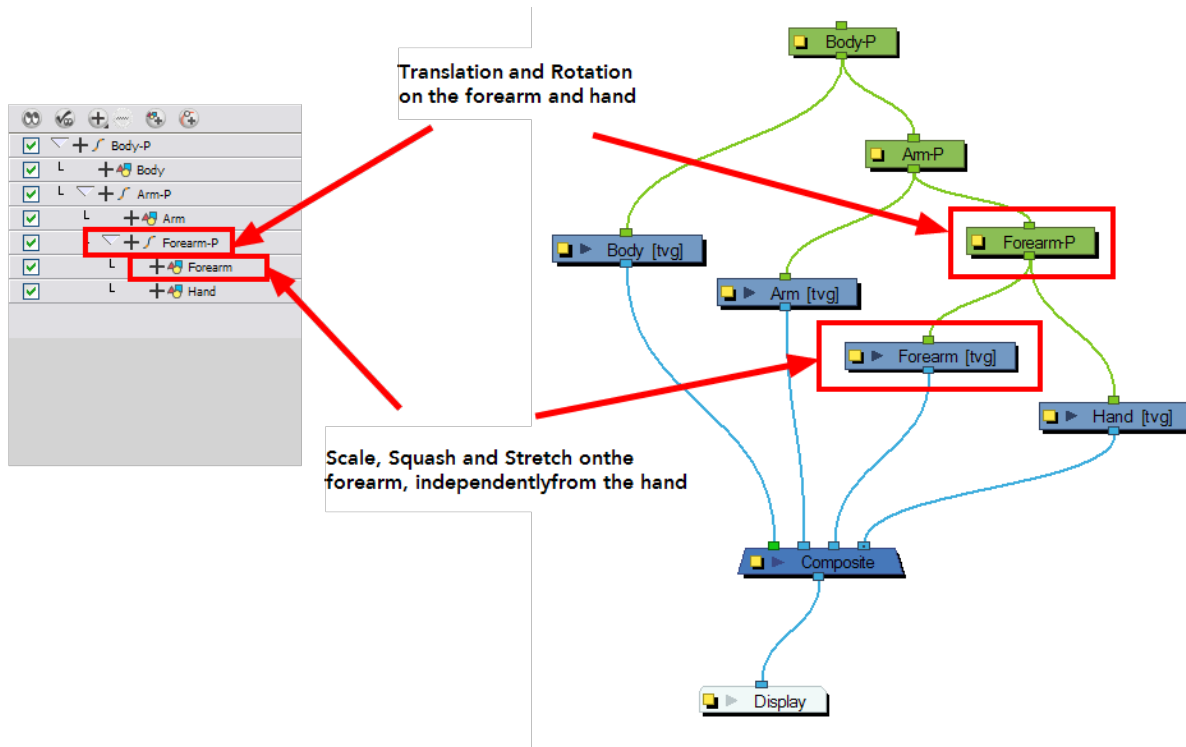
This method is not recommended. For efficiency in your production, do not encapsulate symbols inside symbols.



## Rigging Using Pegs

When you are doing more advanced puppet rigging, you can use peg layers. Peg layers are trajectory layers that do not contain drawings. They are motion paths that you can use to control your entire puppet or advanced hierarchies.

Parenting a drawing layer to a peg layer allows you to divide your motions on two separated levels. You can scale your body part directly on the drawing layer. This way, you do not affect any child layers that could be attached to that part. Then, you can perform your translation and rotation on the peg layer so that all the parts attached to that peg layer will follow the same trajectory.



## Related Topics

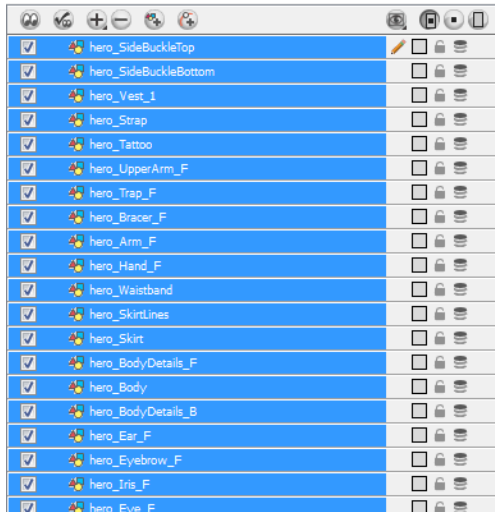
- [Rigging the Head on page 719](#)
- [Rigging the Body on page 721](#)
- [Creating a Hierarchy on page 723](#)

## Adding Pegs

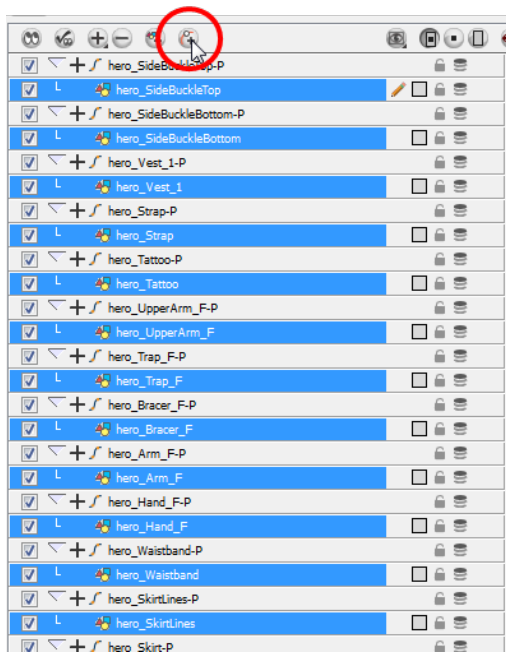
To animate your pieces, you will need to parent them to pegs. Pegs are path layers allowing you to add keyframes to modify the positions of your pieces over time. It is not mandatory, but it is helpful to have your drawings and keyframes separated. See [Disabling the Animation on Drawing Layers on page 696](#) for more information on the the subject.

**To parent your drawing layers to pegs:**

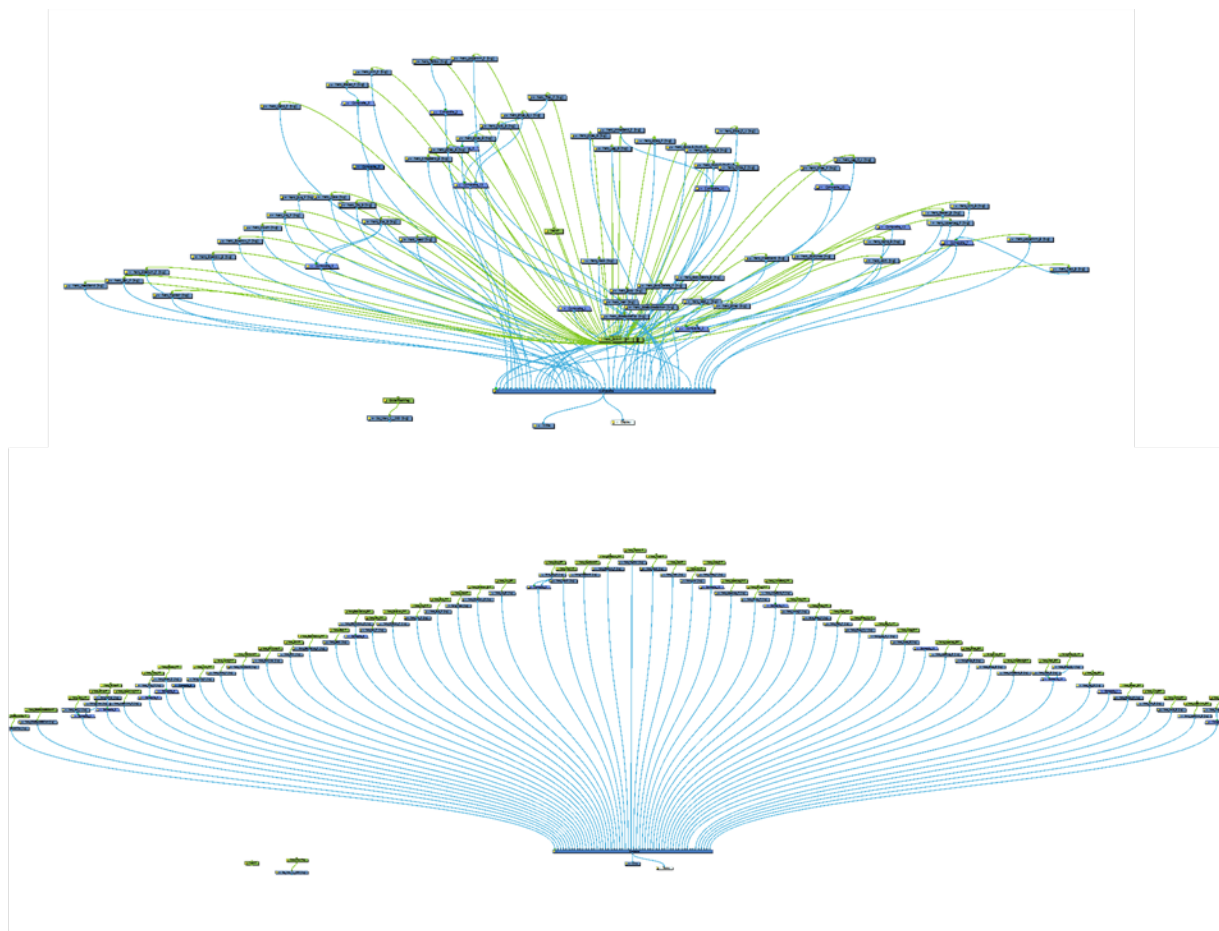
1. In the Timeline view, select all your layers.



2. In the Timeline Layer toolbar, click on the Add Parent Peg button to add a parent peg to all selected layers.



3. At this point, in the Network view, you layers look tangled. In the Network view toolbar, select all your modules and click on the **Order Network Down** button located in the Network View toolbar.



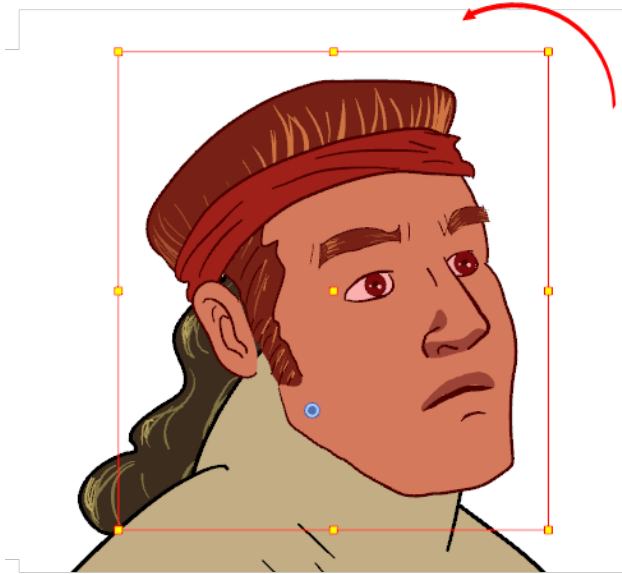
## Related Topics

- [Creating a Hierarchy on page 723](#)

## Rigging the Head

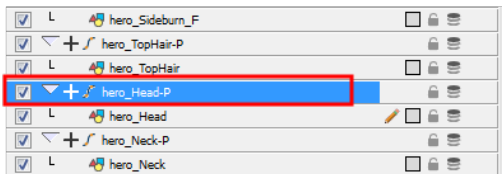
You will start by attaching the facial features to the head.


The advantage of parenting the head and the facial features to the same peg is that you can easily animate each facial feature, and they will all follow the head motion.

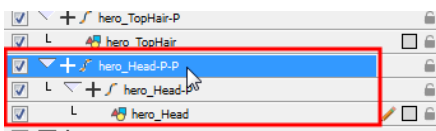


**To parent the facial features to the head:**

1. In the Timeline view, deselect any layer that could be selected.
2. Select the head peg layer.



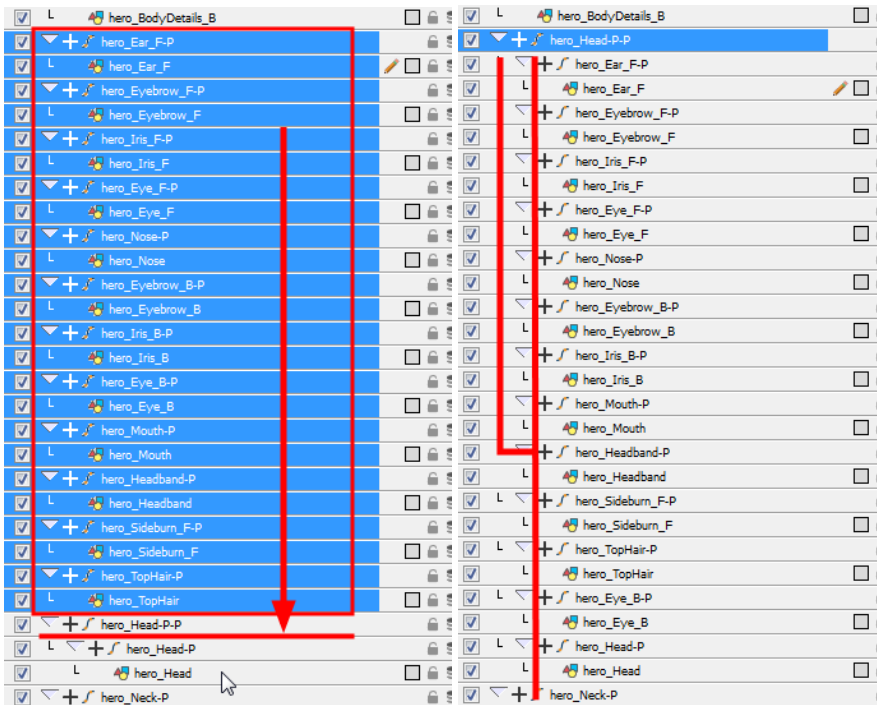
3. In the Timeline View Layer toolbar, click on the **Add Parent Peg**  button to add a new peg layer to your timeline. You can rename the peg to keep your work organized.



A new peg is added and parented to the head peg layer.



- Select all the remaining head and facial peg features layer and drag them **ONTO** the peg layer or **BETWEEN** the head peg layer and the new head peg to parent them.



## Related Topics

- [Rigging the Body](#) below

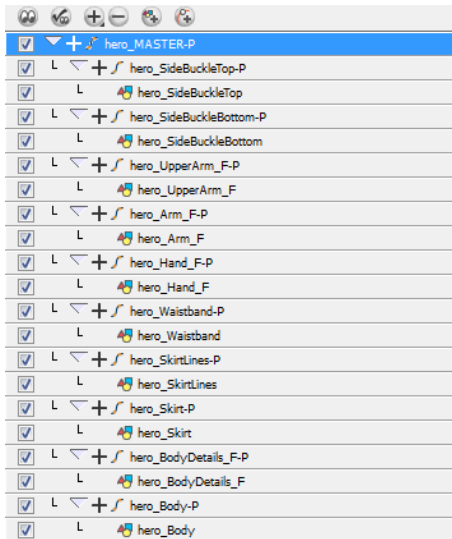
## Rigging the Body

Now that the character's head is ready, you can move on to the body. You can do a simple rigging where all of the body parts are independent one from the other, or create some parenting between some of the layers. Refer to [Creating a Hierarchy](#) on page 723 to learn how to parent your layers.

Simple rigging consists of leaving the layers in the Timeline view without doing any kind of parenting. Later on, you will attach those layers to a master peg and organize them in the correct order.

Your drawings must be connected to a Composite module. A Composite module takes all the drawing layers connected in it and flattens them into a single image which allows you to organize your network and manipulate your puppet easily. It also allows you to apply effects on your complete character. The Composite module is useful when you have to deal with a lot of modules in the Network view.

If you import your layers into the Timeline view, they will automatically be connected to the Composite module available in the Network view.

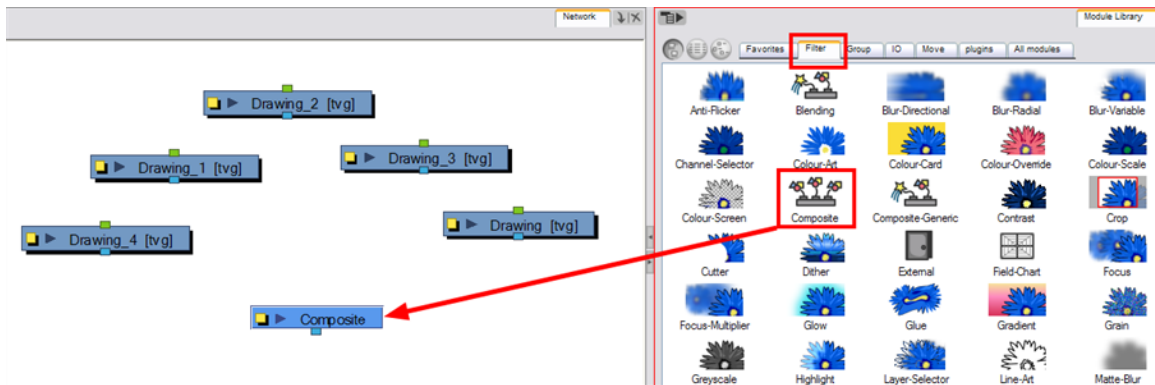


## Connecting Modules to a Composite Module

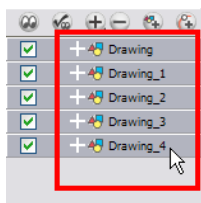
In Animate Pro, if your modules are not connected to your Composite module in the Network view, you can connect them all at once following the Timeline order.

To connect your modules to a Composite module:

1. If you do not have a Composite module, open a Module Library view. In the top menu, select **Window > Module Library**.
2. In the Module Library view, go to the Filters tab and select a Composite module.
3. Drag the Composite module to the Network view or press [Ctrl] + [H] (All Platforms).

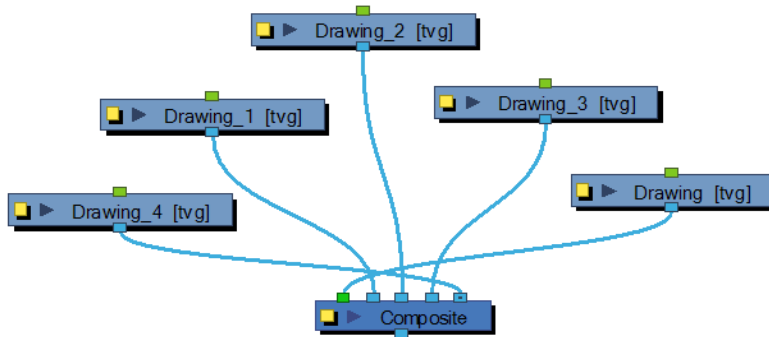


4. In the Timeline view, select all the modules you can to connect to your Composite module.



- Right-click on your selection and select **Connect To Composite** > **select the desired Composite module**.

You modules are now connected to your Composite module in the same order as the **Timeline** view.



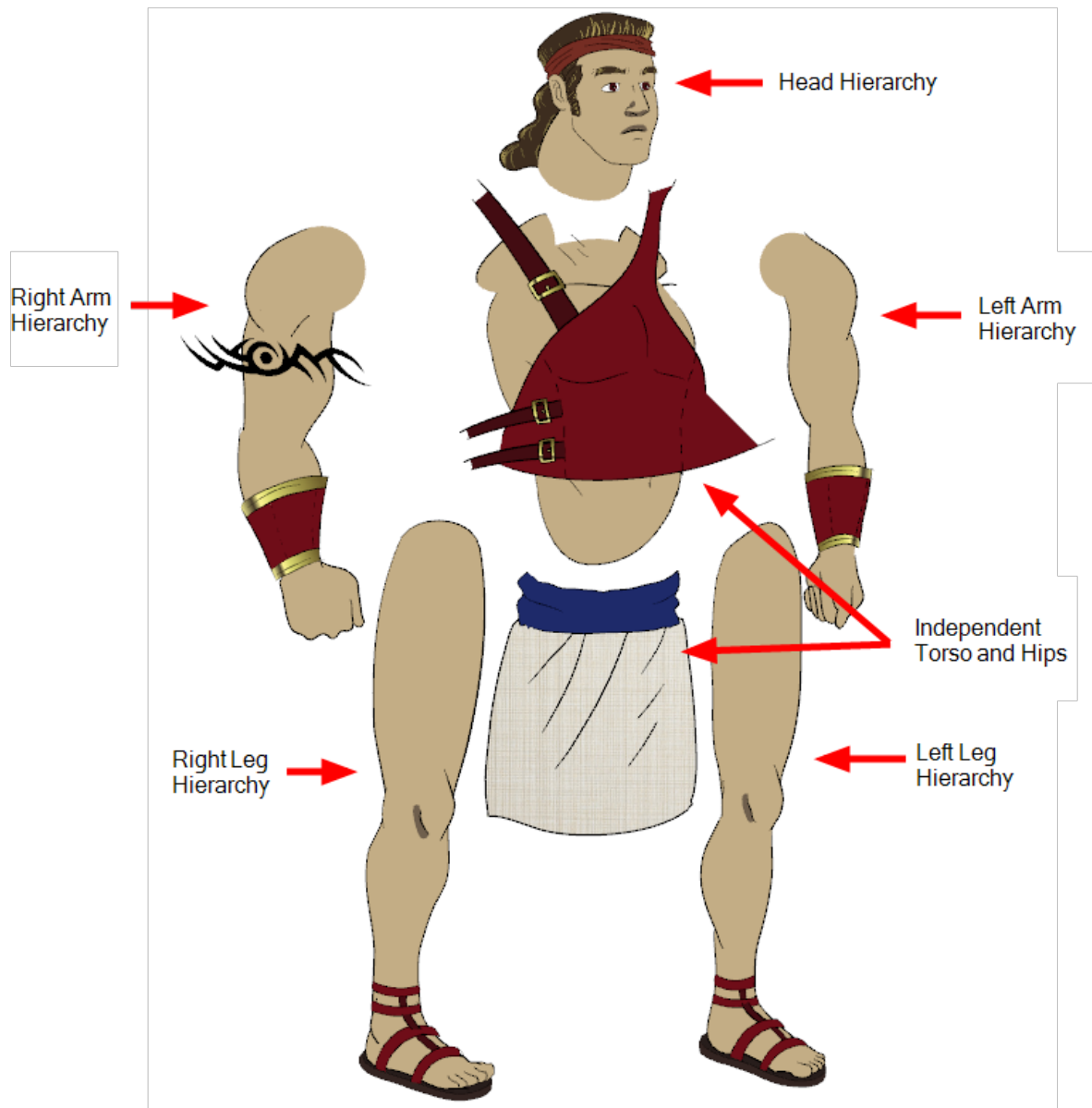
## Related Topics

- [Rigging the Head on page 719](#)
- [Creating a Hierarchy below](#)

## Creating a Hierarchy

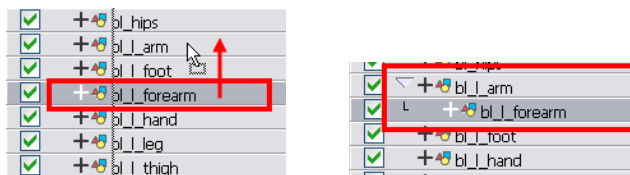
Animate Pro lets you extend your rigging techniques beyond normal boundaries and sets new standards. You can create hierarchies without encapsulating pieces inside each other by creating a linked structure between your layers.

You should create a hierarchy on your arms and legs and keep the arms and legs separated from the body. This gives you more animation freedom. This way, when you need to scale or skew the torso, it will not affect the entire body.



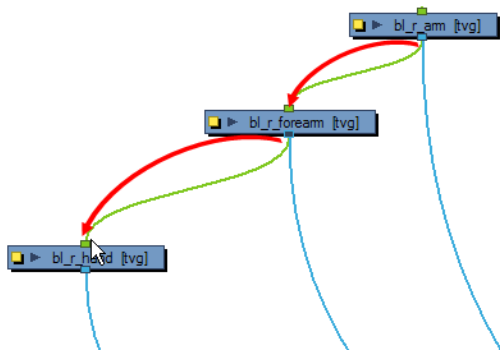
**To create a hierarchy in the Timeline view:**

- ▶ Drag the child piece (hand) and drop it **ON** the parent piece (forearm). Then, you can drag the parent (forearm) piece onto another parent piece (arm).
- ▶ See [Nudging Parts Backwards and Forwards](#) to reorder parts that should be in front of their parents.



To create a hierarchy in the Network view:

- ▶ From the parent part, drag a new cable connection out of the module's output port (bottom) and connect it to the child part module's input port (top).

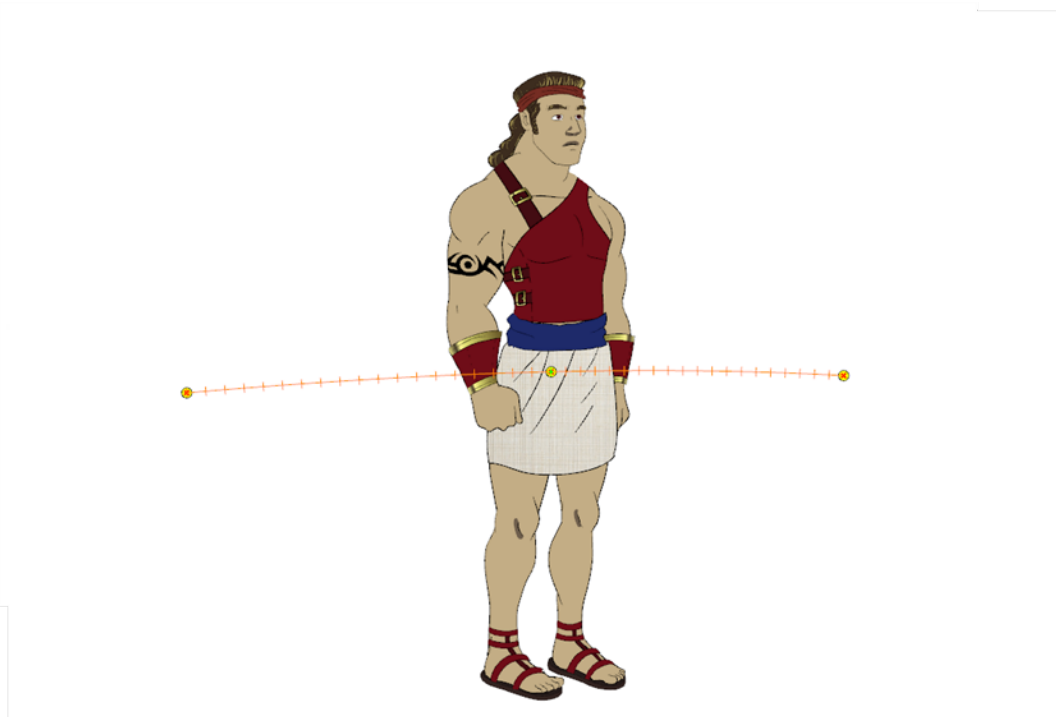


Here is an example of a rig with a simple hierarchy:

## Related Topics

- [Masking on page 727](#)
- [Adding the Master Peg below](#)


## Adding the Master Peg

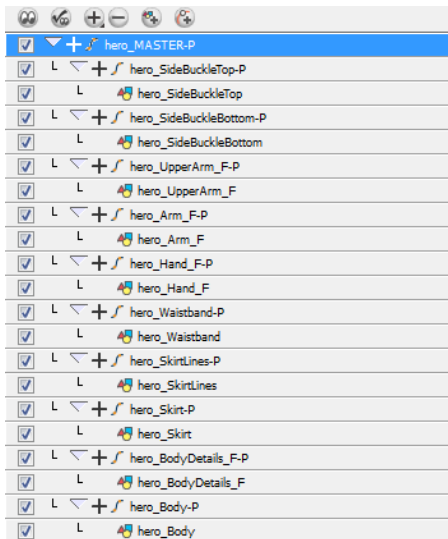


When you animate your character, you will probably need to resize and reposition it to fit your scene. When you need to scale down or move your character, it is a good idea to hook (attach) the whole puppet to a trajectory.

Attaching your puppet to a peg will allow you to scale it and reposition it without having to do this to your different parts and pieces. Only one layer will contain the position information, this makes your animation easier to modify and control.

### To add a Master peg:

1. In the Timeline view, deselect any selected layers and click on the Add Peg  button located in the Timeline Layers toolbar.
2. Name the new peg **Master** plus the character's name.
3. In the Timeline view, select all of the layers you want to attach to your new peg.
4. Drag your selection **ON** the peg layer to parent all your character's pieces to the peg.



## Related Topics

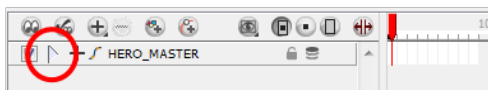
- [Pegs on page 914](#)

## Creating the Keyframes

Once all of your drawings are ordered and your master peg is added, you need to insert keyframes on each cell to create all of the function curves and block your pose in place.


### To create the keyframes:

1. In the Timeline view, collapse the master peg by clicking on the **Expand**  arrow.



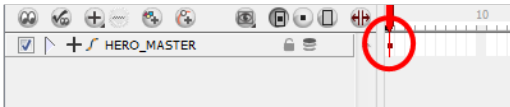
2. In the Timeline view, select the first cell.



- In the top menu, select **Insert > Keyframe** or press [F6]. You can also click on the **Add Keyframe**  button located in the Timeline View toolbar.



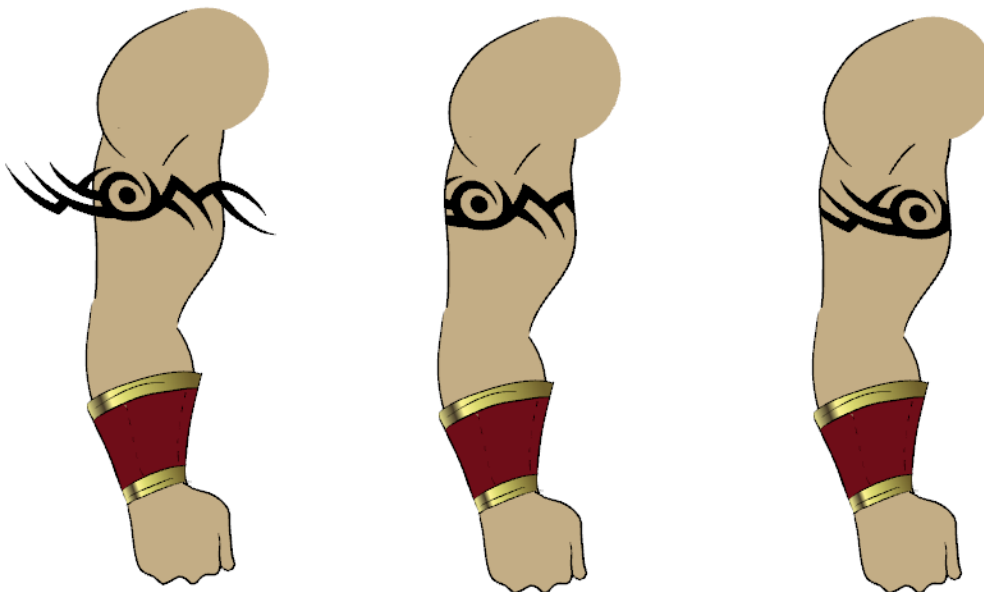
Note: If you use [F6] when working the Flash flavour keyboard shortcuts, this not only creates a keyframe but also duplicates a drawing.



## Related Topics

- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes on page 924](#)

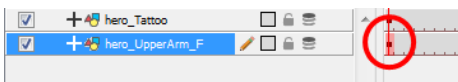
## Masking



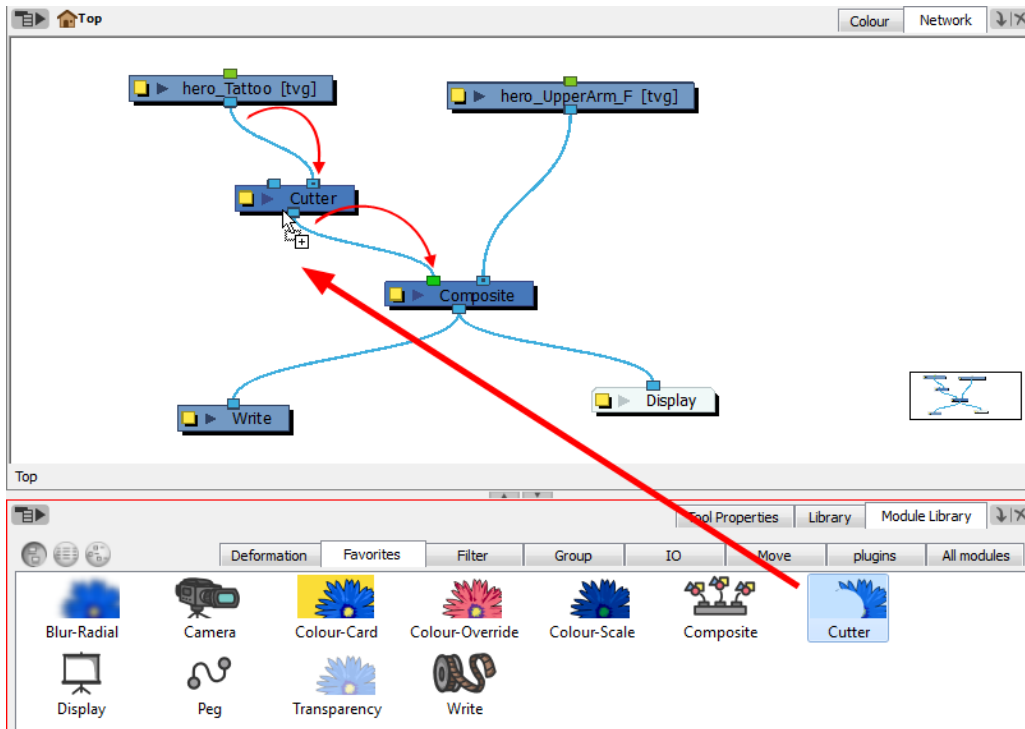
When rigging a character, there will be cases where you will want to be able to move some pieces to give the illusion of a rotation or move the pupil within the white of the eye without having the extra bit of the drawing sticking out of the character or eyeball. To do so, you can use masks to cut anything you do not want to be visible.

### To mask an object:

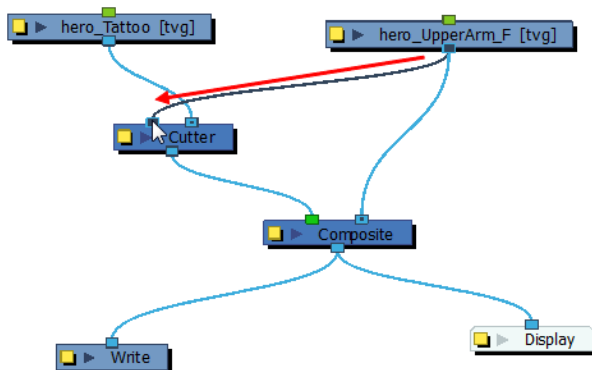
- In the Timeline view, make sure the keyframe is added on the object that will be masking the piece to cut.



- From the Module Library view, select a Cutter module and drag it to the Network view.
- Connect the object you want to cut in the Cutter module's right port and connect the Cutter to the Composite module.

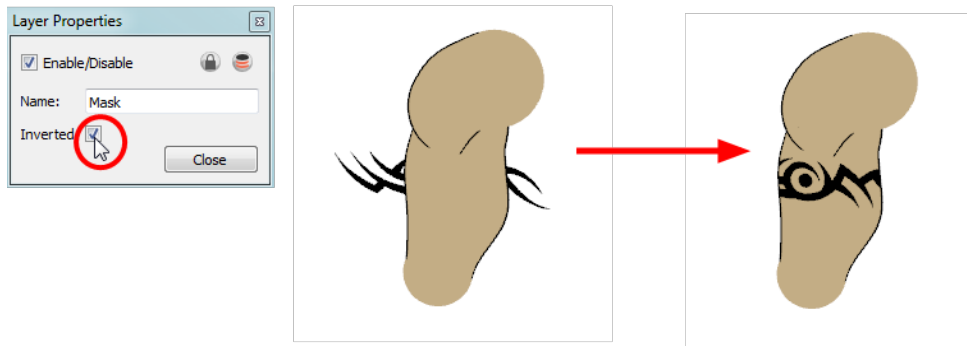


- Pull out a second cable from the masking object and connect it in the Cutter module's left port.

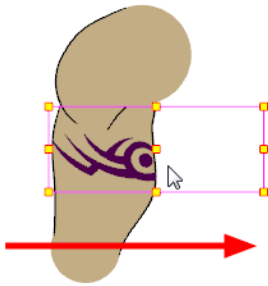


- Your masking effect is most likely inverted and what you want to cut is probably showing. Click on the Mask module's yellow button to open the Layer Properties window. In the Layer Properties window, enable the **Inverted** option.





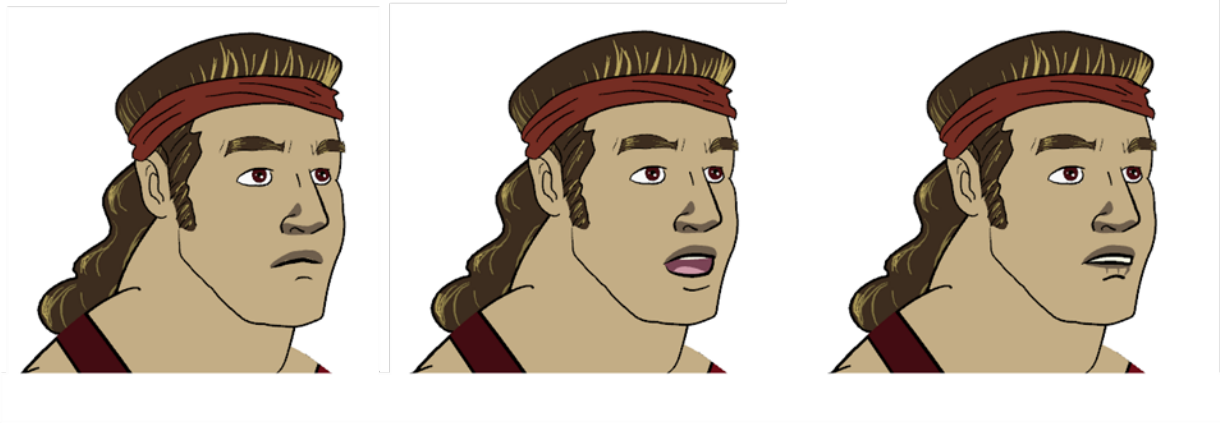
- Using the Transform tool, you can now move the cut object within the masking zone.



## Related Topics

- [Adding the Master Peg on page 725](#)

# Adding Extra Drawings



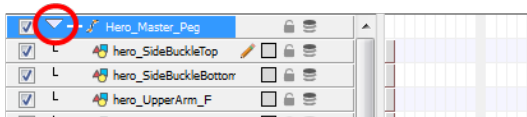
Your break down is now complete. You can move on to adding extra drawings your character needs, such as principal hand positions and mouth shapes. If ever you forget to add extra drawings in your main character's template, you will easily be able to add them later.



Add your extra drawings in the layer corresponding to the part which you are drawing. You should see the layers as containers for the different pieces. Each part of the body has its own container where you can add more drawings of the same part.

## To add extra drawings:

1. In the Timeline view, expand the master peg by clicking on the **Expand**  arrow.





2. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to add your new drawing. If you want to duplicate the current drawing and work from it, you can select **Drawing > Duplicate Drawings** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [D].

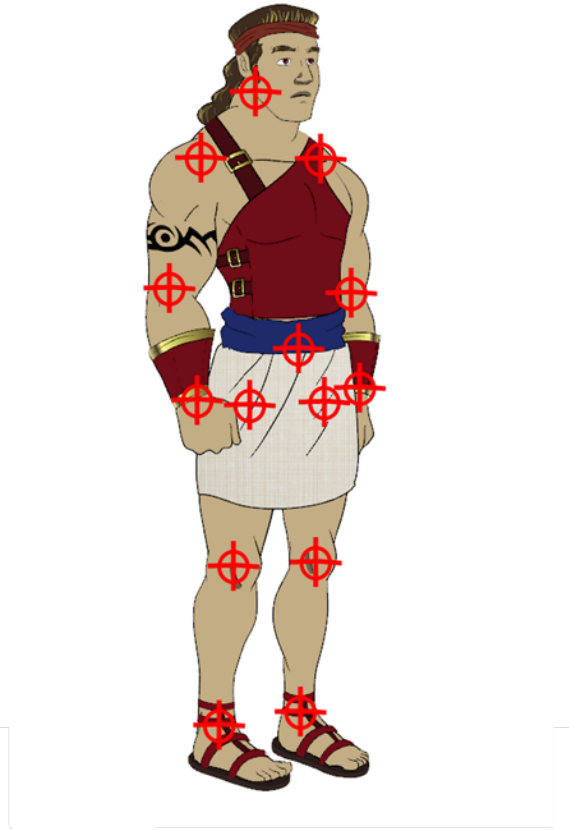
This creates a new drawing in the selected cell, automatically extended to the next one. This new drawing is a duplicate of the one that was selected so it contains a duplicate of the art. You can modify it to create your new drawing or delete its contents in the Camera or Drawing view and start from scratch.

3. In the Tools toolbar, select the drawing tool you need to draw your extra part.
4. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw your new drawing.



5. Using the Select  tool, select your drawing and flatten your lines by clicking on the **Flatten**  button located in the Tool Properties view.

# Setting the Pivots



The last step before storing the character in the library is to set the pivots for the different parts.

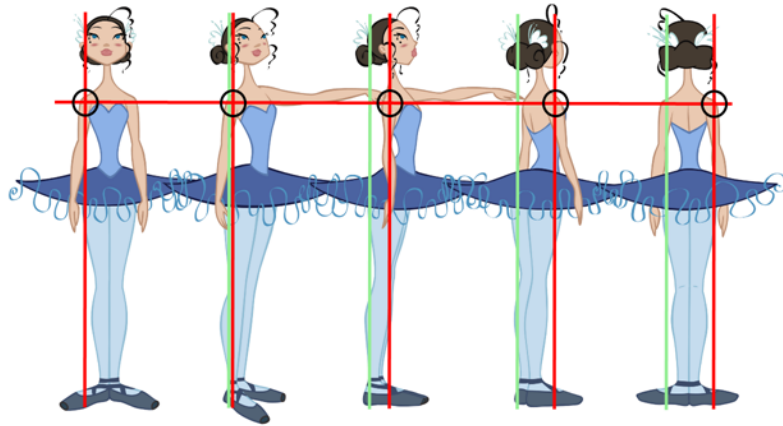
Animate Pro has three types of pivots:

- Peg Pivot**  
 The Peg pivot is a permanent pivot that is applied to the entire drawing layer. If you modify its position, it will be changed for the whole layer and will therefore modify the animation, scale and rotation interpolation. The Peg pivot is set using either the Rotate, Translate or Scale tool. The Transform tool will only move that pivot temporarily for positioning purpose, but the animation interpolation will be done from the original Peg pivot's position.
- Drawing Pivot**  
 The Drawing pivot is contained within each drawing. In one layer, each drawing can have its own pivot. If you have many different views of a character within one layer, the pivot can be different and the animation will adjust to the pivot. The Drawing pivot can also be referred to as embedded pivot. If you are not mixing different views within the same layers or are using pegs to animate your layers, it is recommended to use the Peg pivot. See [Drawing Pivot Tool on page 250](#).
- Symbol Pivot**  
 The Symbol pivot is similar to the Drawing pivot. Each symbol cell can have its own pivot and act the same as the Drawing pivot. The Symbol pivot can also be referred to as embedded pivot. Inside a symbol, each drawing can have its own pivot. If you are not mixing different views within the same layers or are using pegs to animate your layers, it is recommended to use the Peg pivot. See [Setting Different Pivots for a Puppet Using Symbols on page 771](#).

For a simple character rig, it is recommended to set the Peg pivot (even on drawing layers) using the Rotate tool.



You can set a different pivot for each one of your drawings. For example, if you have a series of drawings from different views, they are not likely to rotate from the same location. In that case, you can set a different pivot for these drawings by using the Drawing Pivot tool.



This topic is divided as follows:


- [Setting the Pivots Using the Rotate Tool](#) below
- [Setting the Master Peg Pivot](#) on page 735

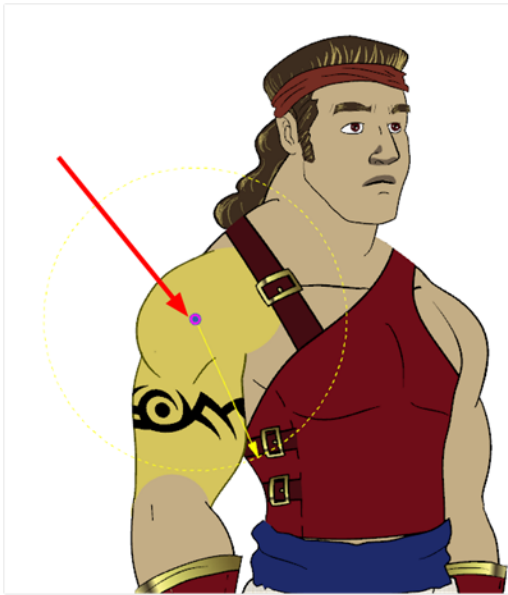
## Setting the Pivots Using the Rotate Tool

If you want your puppet's pieces to rotate correctly, you need to set the pivot points right in the middle of an articulation such as an elbow or a knee.

Do the following steps for each layer in the Timeline view.

**To set the pivots:**

1. In the top menu, select **Windows > Toolbars > Advanced Animation** to display the Advanced Animation toolbar.
2. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select the **Rotate**  tool.
3. In the Camera or Timeline view, select the layer you want to set the pivot for. In the Camera view, you can also hold down [Ctrl] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X) and click on the piece you want to set the pivot for.
4. In the Camera view, drag the blue pivot where you want to the pivot to be. You can also drag the pivot marker to the desired location.





5. Repeat the previous steps for all the pieces, including the eyes, mouth and nose.

## Setting the Master Peg Pivot





By default, your master peg pivot is placed at the centre of the Camera view, which generally equates to your character's hips. A good way to set your peg's pivot is to move it between your character's feet.

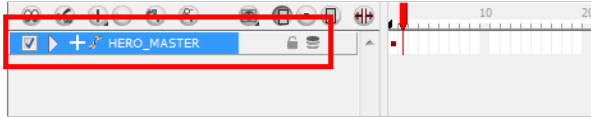
To permanently move a peg pivot, use the Rotate  or Scale  tool. While animating, you are easily able to temporarily move this pivot to another location with the Transform tool.

The Transform tool is designed to move the pivot temporarily during the animation process. It also permits you to select multiple pegs and apply a common temporary pivot.

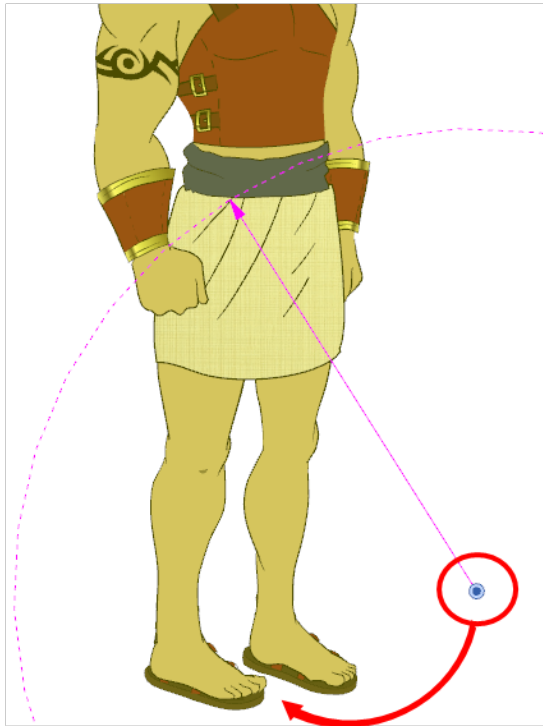
### To set the peg pivot:

1. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select the **Rotate**  or **Scale**  tool.

2. In the Timeline view, select the master peg layer.



3. In the Camera view, click on the peg pivot and move it to its new location.



If you added other pegs to your rig, you must set their pivot following the same method.

---



# Skeleton Optimization

In the Network view, you can add extra modules, such as a Display, and group all of your modules to keep your work organized.

There are four steps to make sure your puppet can be reused efficiently:

- [Deleting the Write Module below](#)
- [Renaming the Display Module below](#)
- [Changing the Composite Type on page 739](#)
- [Grouping your Modules on page 739](#)

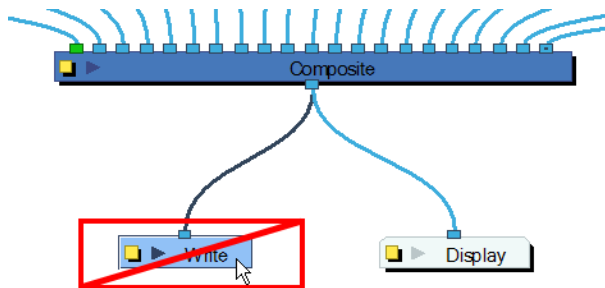
## Deleting the Write Module

The first step in optimizing your network is to delete the Write module. The Write module is used to render certain portions of your Network view.

When you render your scene, if you have three or four characters in your scene and they each have a Write module in their skeleton a render is created for each one of them and they overwrite each other.

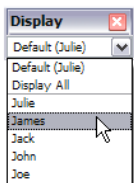
To delete your Write module:

1. In the Network view, select your Write module.



2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Delete** or press [Delete].

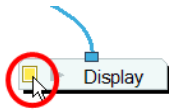
## Renaming the Display Module



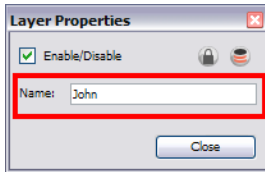
A Display module allows you to see a section of your Network in your Camera view. By renaming your Display module with your character's name, you will be able to quickly identify its Display in the Global Display toolbar and isolate your character to see it better while working on it.

### To rename your Display module:

1. In the Network view, click on the Display module's Properties button to open the editor.



2. In the Layer Properties window, rename the Display module with your character's name.



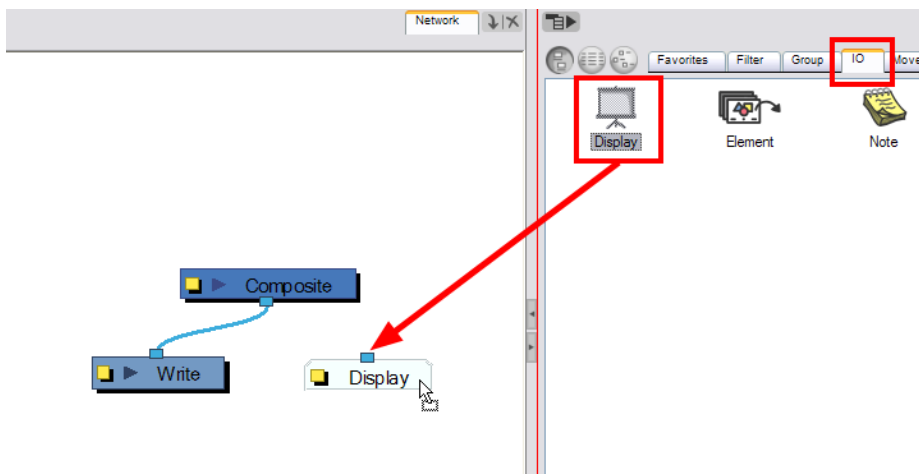
3. Click on the **Close** button.



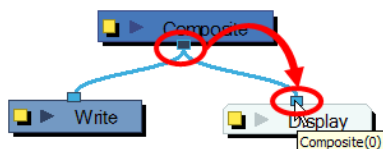
If you do not have a Display module in your network, you can add one by selecting one from the Module Library view and dragging it into your Network view.

### To add a Display module:

1. If you do not have a Module Library view opened, in the top menu, select **Window > Module Library**.
2. In the Module Library view, go to the IO tab and select the Display module.
3. Drag the module to your Network view.



4. Connect the Composite module's output port into the Display module's input port.



## Changing the Composite Type

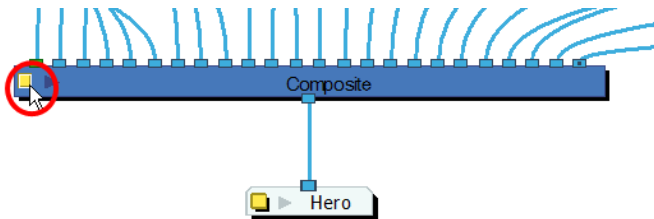
When you create a character with Animate Pro, you have to connect all your modules in the Composite module. The Composite module takes all the different images coming out of your drawing modules and flattens them into one single image.

This is useful when it is time to apply an effect to your entire character or group your layers for a more organized network.

The regular Composite module will flatten all the pieces into one image preventing interaction with props or characters connected to a different Composite module. That is why you have to change the Composite module's type to a special one that will still output one single image but will not flatten the drawings together. This will allow you to nudge your drawings on the Z-axis so that parts of you characters can pass in front and behind other characters and objects. This Composite type is called Pass Through.

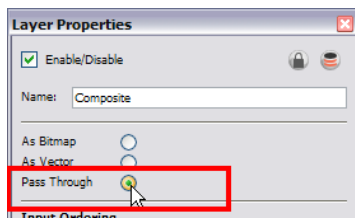
**To change your Composite module to a Pass Through type:**

1. In the Network view, click on your Composite module's Properties button.

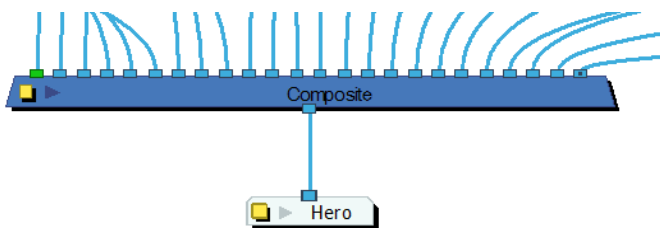


The Composite Layer Properties dialog box opens.

2. Select the **Pass Through** type.

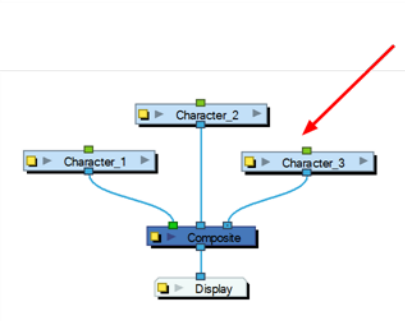
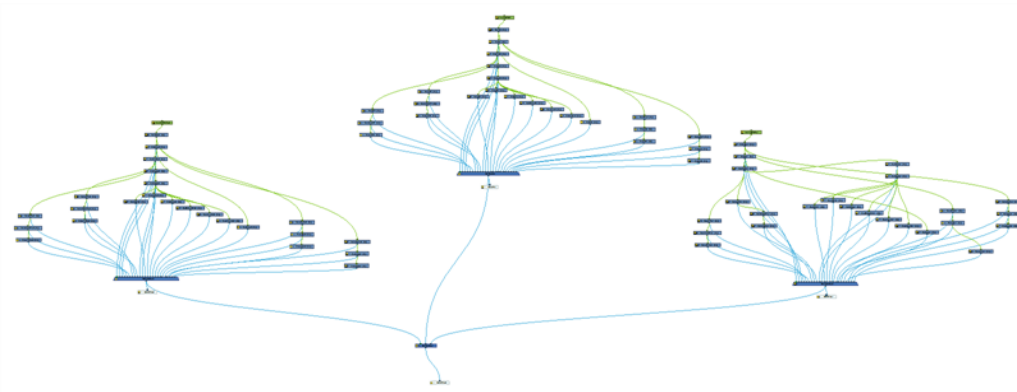


3. Click on the **Close** button.



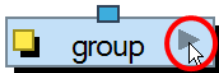
## Grouping your Modules

Once your rigging is completed, you must group the puppet's skeleton. This helps you to organize large and complex networks. This way, once you have imported two or three characters into the scene, three Group modules will be displayed instead of all of the rigging connections of three puppets.

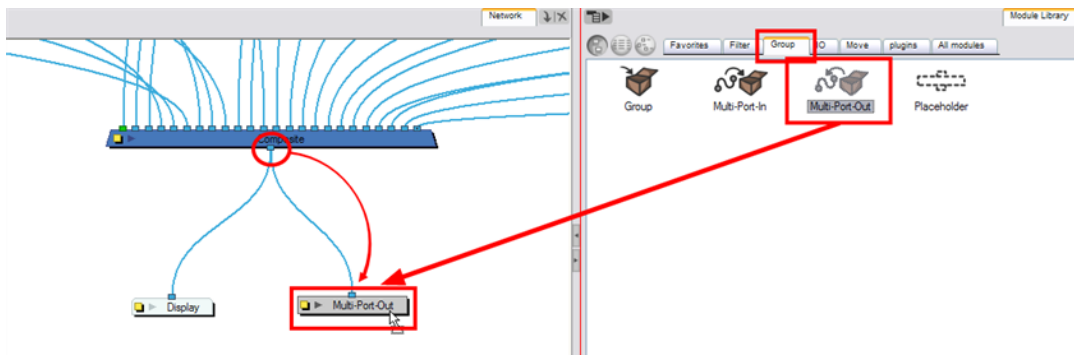


**To group your modules:**

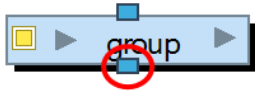
1. In the Network view, select all your modules.
2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Group > Group** or press [Ctrl] + [G] (Windows) or [⌘] + [G] (Mac OS X). Your modules are now grouped.
3. Click on the Group module's right arrow to enter the group.



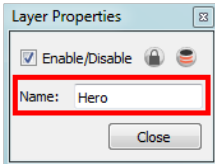
4. If you do not have a Multi-Port Out module inside your group, in the Module Library view, go to the Group tab and select a Multi-Port Out module.



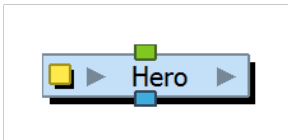
5. Drag the Multi-Port-Out module to the Network view.
6. Connect the Composite module's output port into the Multi-Port Out module. This creates an output port on your Group module.
7. In the bottom left corner of the Network view, click on the Top word to go back to your network's root. You should now see an output port on your Group module.



8. Click on the Group's Properties button to open the Layer Properties dialog box.



9. In the Layer Properties window, rename your Group module with your character's name.
10. Click on the **Close** button.



## Related Topics

- [Network Navigation and Basic Rules](#) on page 599

# Storing the Character in the Library

To be able to reuse your character in different scenes, you have to store a template in the Library view. You can create different kinds of templates. You can create templates with all layers are included, a template for a body key pose or even some containing only the head.

Animate Pro has a Timeline and a Network view. The Timeline view represents the layers in a linear and simple way. The Network view allows you to create all sorts of complex connections that the Timeline view cannot display.

The result of this is that:

- Any template created from the Timeline view has to be imported in the Timeline view.
- Any template created from the Network view has to be imported in the Network view.



It is highly recommended that you create a cut-out puppet's main template from the Network view since it contains advanced connections, Display modules and Composite modules.

---

This topic is divided as follows:

- [Network Template](#) below
- [Key Pose Template](#) on the facing page

## Network Template

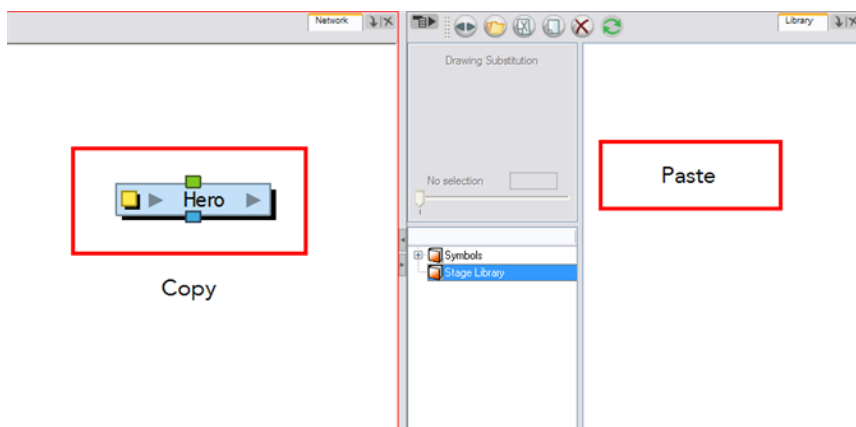
To create a template from the Network view:

1. In the Library view, right-click on the desired library folder and select **Right To Modify**.
2. In the Timeline view, collapse the master peg layer.

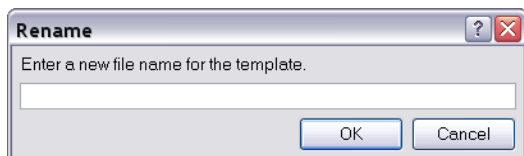


3. If your scene has a series of blank cells, they will also be included in the template if you drag the layer to the Library view. Reduce the scene length to have no empty cells before creating your template.

4. In the Network view, select your character's group and in the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**. In the Library view, select the folder where you want to store the template and in the top menu, select **Edit > Paste**.



The Rename dialog box opens.

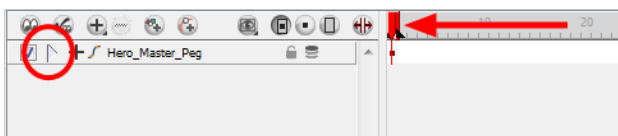


5. In the Name field, name the new template.
6. Click on the OK button.

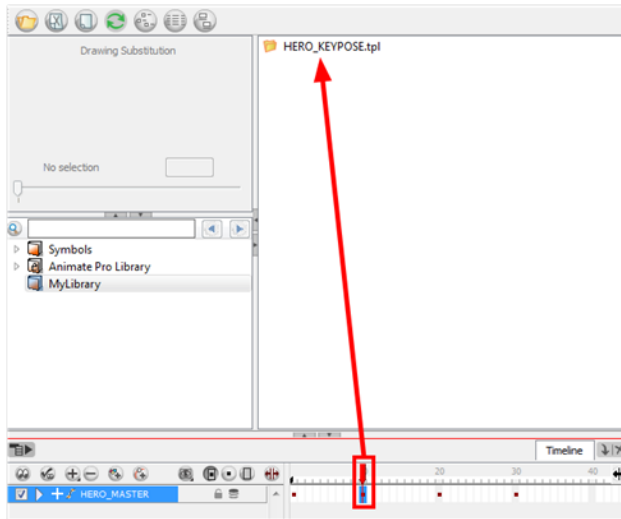
## Key Pose Template

To create a key pose template:

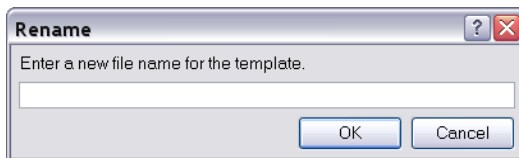
1. In the Library view, right-click on the desired library folder and select **Right To Modify**.
2. In the Timeline view, collapse the master peg layer.



3. Select the cell containing the desired view and drag it into the desired library folder.



The Rename dialog box opens.



4. In the Name field, name the new template.
5. Click on the OK button.



When you create a template from the Timeline view, for everything to work properly when you reimport it into a scene, you must first import your master template. Once the master template is imported, you can import the key pose template's content into the right hand side of the Timeline view.

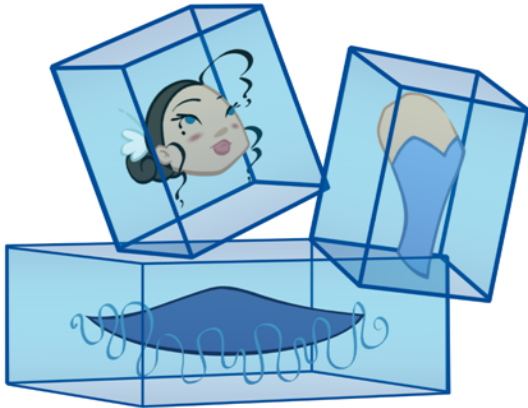
When you create a template from a keyframe in the Timeline view's right side, it only copies the drawings and keyframes. It does not copy all of the network advanced connections and composites. If you import your Timeline template in the Network view or in the Timeline view's left side, your layers will be in the wrong order and will not be connected to a composite.

## Related Topics

- [Library on page 643](#)



# Appendix

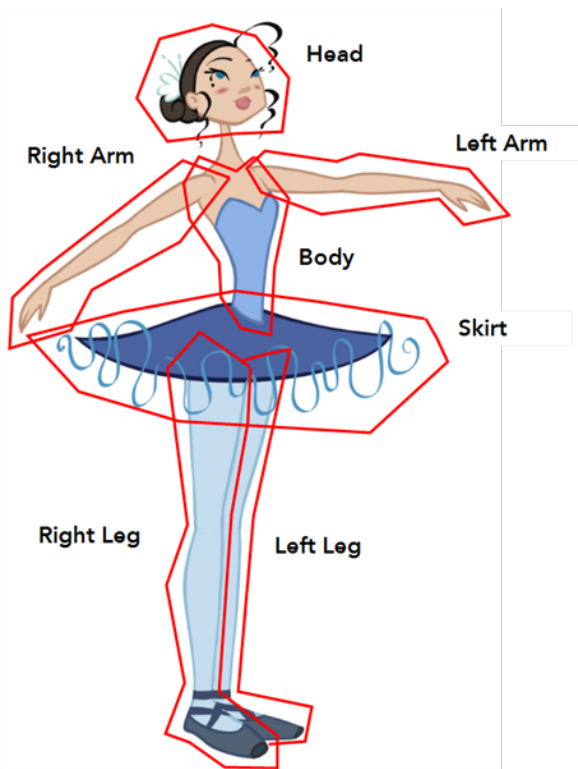


There are many options and animation techniques available when building a puppet, it is impossible to determine only one method to break down a character. Here are some advanced tips on breaking down puppets. As you become more familiar with the software, you will find more ways to improve the construction of your puppet.

## Related Topics

- [Break Down: Cutting the Character in Pieces on the next page](#)
- [Break Down: Distribute to Layers on page 757](#)
- [Break Down: Creating Ghost Drawings on page 759](#)
- [Converting the Layers into Symbols on page 763](#)
- [Patch Articulation on page 765](#)
- [Setting Different Pivots for a Puppet Using Symbols on page 771](#)
- [Setting Pivots on a Frame Range on page 773](#)
- [Adding the New Drawings to an Existing Template in the Library](#)

## Break Down: Cutting the Character in Pieces



If you do not want to redraw all the artwork for your character, you can use the cut away technique where, with the Cutter tool, you select and send pieces of the model on a new layer.

The first step in breaking down your character is to do a rough cut down of the main parts such as the body, arms, legs and head. Use the Create Drawing from Drawing Selection feature to automatically create your layers and copy your selection in it.



This section is divided as follows:

- [Breaking Down the Main Parts](#) below
- [Breaking Down the Secondary Parts](#) on page 749
- [Selecting and Incorporating to an Existing Layer](#)
- [Breaking Down the Extra View Main Parts](#) on page 752
- [Breaking Down Secondary Parts in the Extra Views](#) on page 753

### Breaking Down the Main Parts

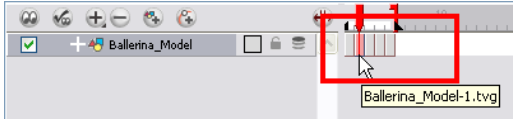
To break down the main body parts, you will use the Create Drawing From Drawing Selection feature. There is no need to create any layers prior to this process, you need to have your model well centred and sized in the Camera view.




You do not need to make clean cuts around your parts; a rough one is quite sufficient as long as it includes all of the artwork of the part you want to break down. You will clean the extra bits and pieces later.

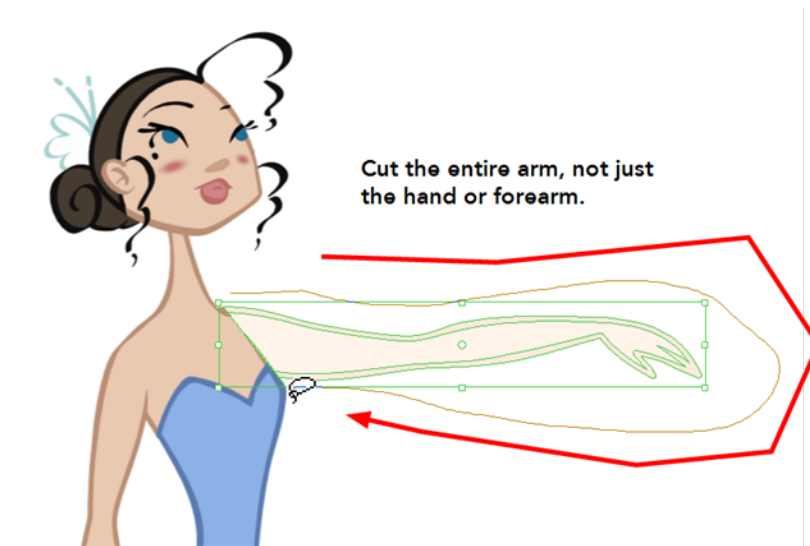
You will use the Cutter  tool to roughly cut the main sections. You can also use the Select  tool to select precise lines and colour zones.

### To break down the main parts:

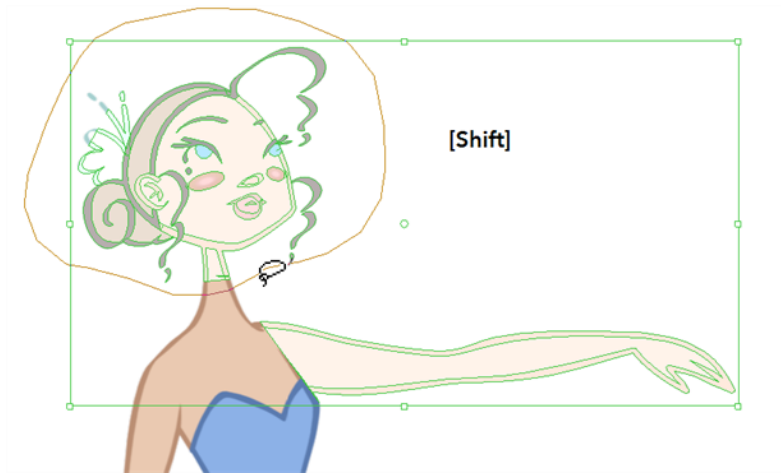
1. In the Timeline view, select the model's cell that corresponds to the first view to break down.



2. In the Tools toolbar, select the Cutter  tool.
  - ▶ If you prefer to use the Select tool, choose the **Select**  tool from the Tools toolbar or press [Alt] + [S].
  - ▶ In the Tool Properties view, you can switch to the **Lasso**  selection mode.
3. In the Camera view, create a selection around the first part to break down. If you click on a zone, the Cutter tool will select the zone. It will end the selection at the first point of intersection that it meets.



- ▶ If you hold down [Shift], you can create a new lasso selection around another zone and add it to your previous selection.

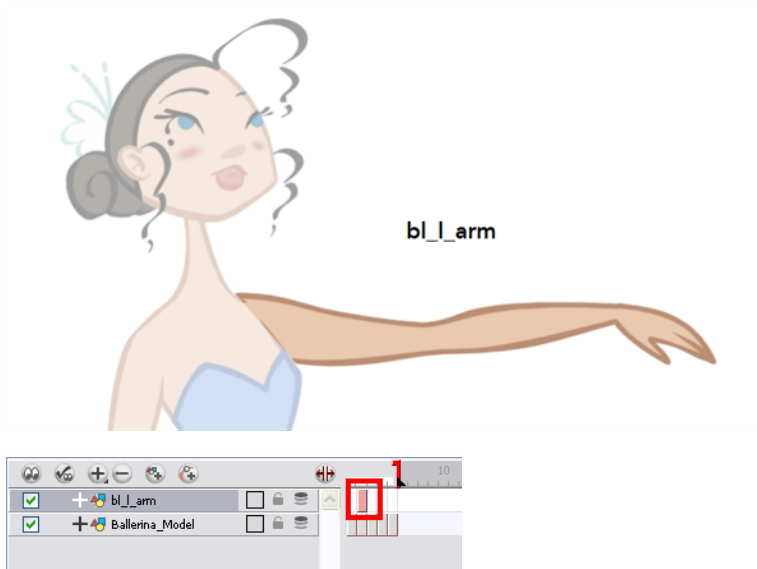


4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Drawing From Drawing Selection** or press [F9].  
The Create Drawing From Drawing Selection dialog box opens.

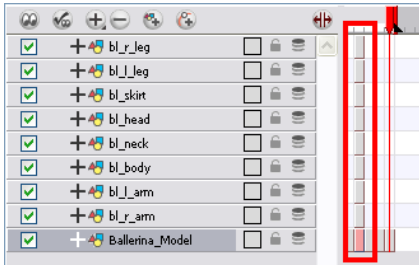


5. In the Layer Name field, type the name of the layer you want to create following the naming convention you established previously.
6. Make sure to disable the **Cut Artwork From Source** option in order to keep the selected artwork on your original drawing. You do not want to cut the artwork from your colour model.
7. Click on the **OK** button to complete the operation.

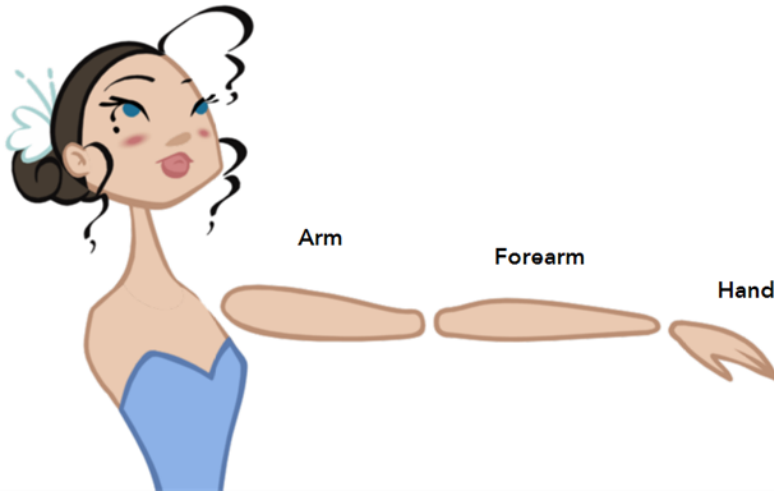
The new layer is created and your selection is copied in it. The drawing is created in the same frame number as the cell it was taken from.



8. Repeat Step 1 to Step 7 for each main body part.




## Breaking Down the Secondary Parts

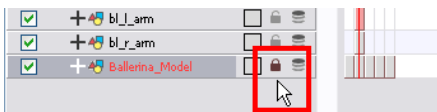


You should now have a layer for each main part of the character for the first view to break down. You are now ready to break down those main pieces into smaller ones.

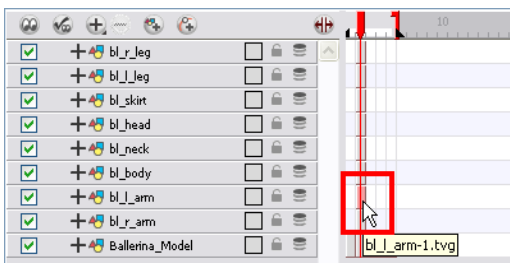
Breaking down the secondary parts is similar to the main part break down process except that this time you will cut away the artwork from the layer it has been selected from.


### To break down the secondary parts:


1. In the Timeline view, lock your model layer by clicking on its **Lock**  button.

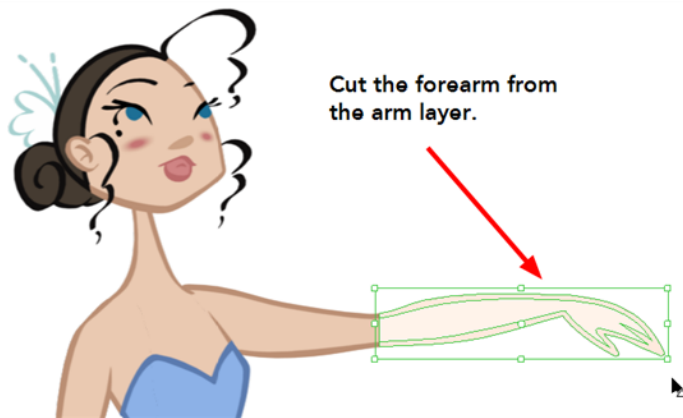



2. In the Timeline view, select the cell that corresponds to the main part you want to break down.

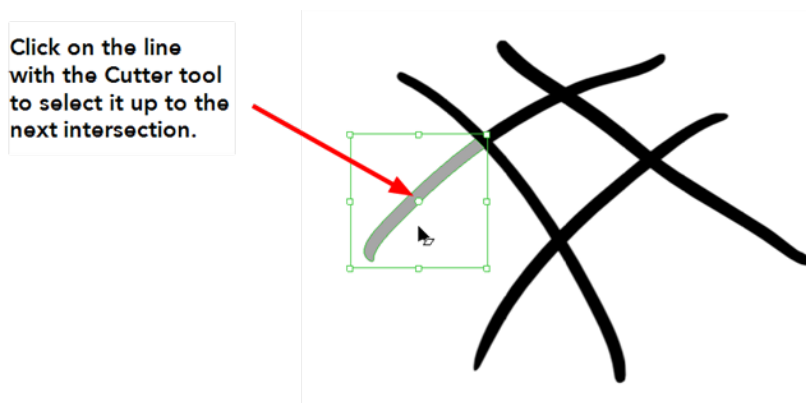


3. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Cutter**  tool.

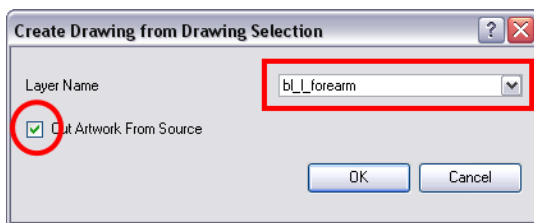
- ▶ If you prefer to use the Select tool, choose the **Select**  tool from the **Tools** toolbar or press [Alt] + [S].
4. In the Camera view, create a selection around the part to break down.



- ▶ If you click on a zone, the Cutter  tool will select the zone. It will end the selection at the first point of intersection that it meets.

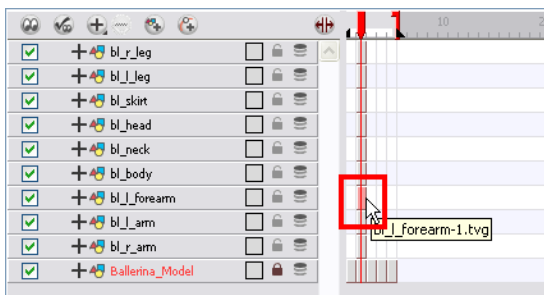


5. In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Drawing From Drawing Selection** or press [F9]. The Create Drawing From Drawing Selection dialog box opens.

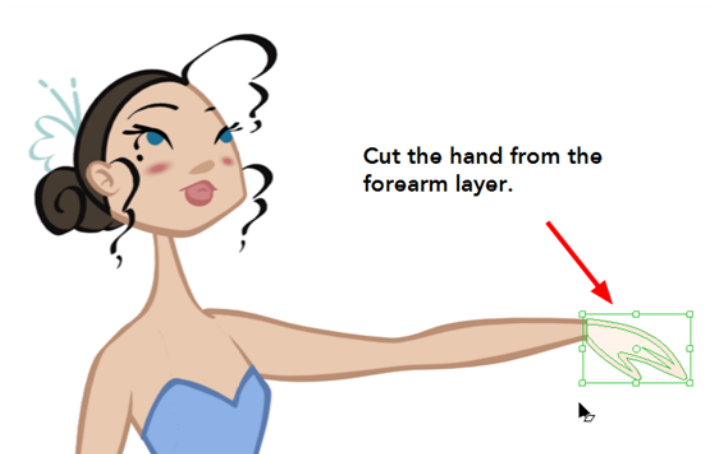


6. In the Layer Name field, enter the name of the layer you want to create, following the naming convention you established previously.
7. Enable the **Cut Artwork From Source** option in order to remove the selected artwork from your original drawing. In this case, you want to cut the artwork from your colour model.
8. Click on the **OK** button to complete the operation.

The new layer is created and your selection is copied in it. The drawing is created in the same frame number as the cell it was taken from.



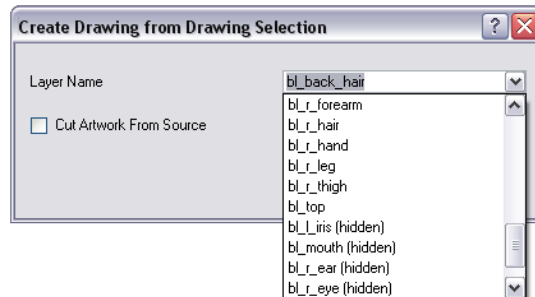
9. Repeat Step 2 to Step 8 for each body part.





If you forgot to add some artwork to a layer you previously created, you can always add it later.

In the Camera view, select the artwork to send to the existing layer. Open the Create Drawing from Drawing Selection dialog box. The [F9]. In the dialog box, select an existing layer from the drop-down list instead of typing a new name. When you click on the OK button, the artwork will be added to the existing drawing in the layer you selected.



## Selecting and Incorporating to an Existing Layer

Your first view should now be completely broken down. If your articulations are still rough and bits and pieces are missing you will fix those in the next step.

If your character model has more than one view, now is the time to break them down.

The process is very similar to breaking down the first view. You have two choices:

- Breaking down the new view in a net set of layers
- Braking down the new views in the same existing layers  
If your layers are not in the correct order, you can reorder them later. Simply add the part that you are breaking down to the layer you previously created for the same body part.

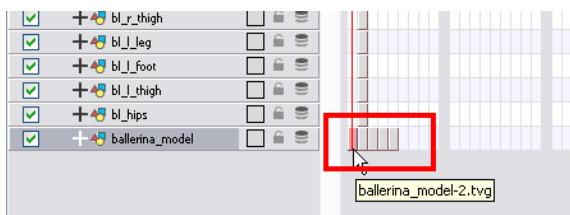
Start by breaking down the main pieces, as you did before. The secondary parts will be broken down later on.


## Breaking Down the Extra View Main Parts


Repeat the following steps for each extra view you have to break down.

**To break down the other views:**

1. In the Timeline view, selected the model's cell corresponding to the view to break down.

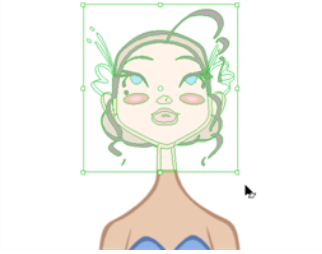


2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Cutter**  tool.

- If you prefer to use the Select tool, in the Tools toolbar select the Select  tool or press [Alt] + [S].

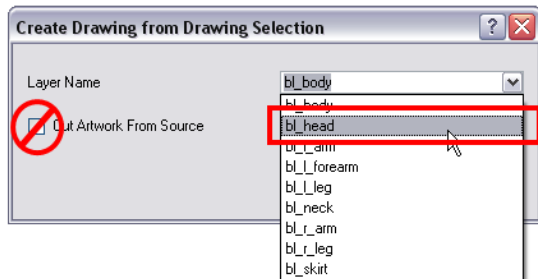


- In the Camera view, create a selection around the first part to break down.



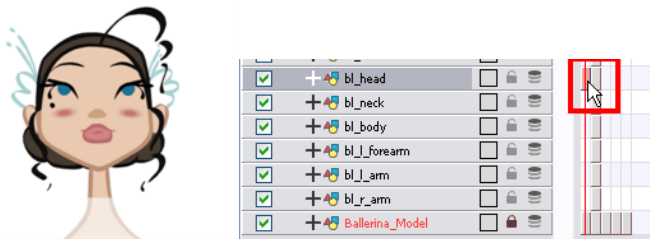
- In the top menu, select **Edit > Create Drawing From Drawing Selection** or press [F9].

The Create Drawing From Drawing Selection dialog box opens.



- In the Layer Name field, select the corresponding layer from the drop-down list if you want to use the same layers or type a new name if you want to create a new layer.
- Make sure to disable the **Cut Artwork From Source** option in order to keep the selected artwork on your original drawing. You do not want to cut the artwork from your colour model.
- Click on the **OK** button to complete the operation.

The artwork is inserted into the existing layer. The drawing is created in the same frame number as the cell it was taken from. It is not incorporated in the other view's drawings.

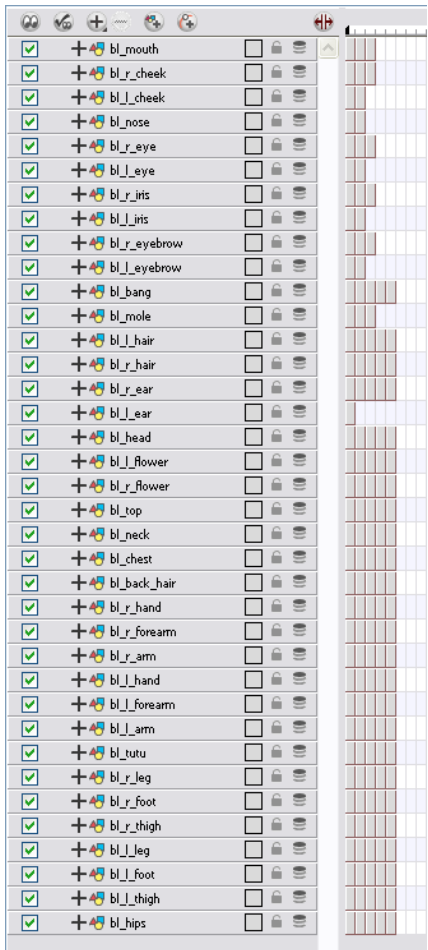


- Repeat Step 1 to Step 7 for each main body part.

## Breaking Down Secondary Parts in the Extra Views

To break down the secondary parts for your extra views you will follow the exact same process as you did for the first view you broke down, but you will incorporate the new parts in the already existing layers. See [Breaking Down the Secondary Parts on page 749](#).

This is an example of how your timeline should look at this stage:










## Completing the Parts and Articulation



Now that all of your layers are created and your parts are basically broken down, it is time to clean up your parts and complete the articulation.

## Cleaning the Parts

You will need to use a series of drawing tools to clean the parts:

-  Brush Tool
-  Eraser Tool
-  Select Tool
-  Cutter Tool
-  Contour Editor Tool
-  Paint Tool
-  Close Gap Tool




To clean your drawings:

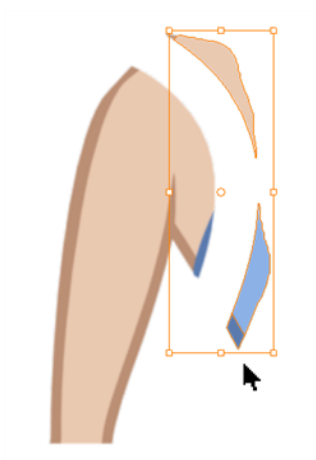
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the drawing tool you need to fix your drawings.





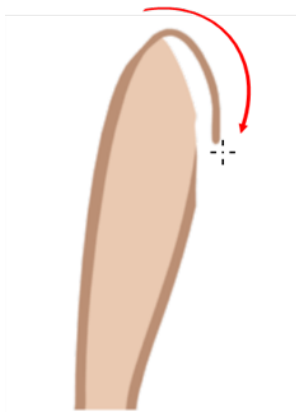
2. In the Timeline view, select the cell containing the drawing to fix.





3. In the Camera view, delete the extra bits using the **Select**  or **Cutter**  tool. You can also use the **Eraser**  tool.



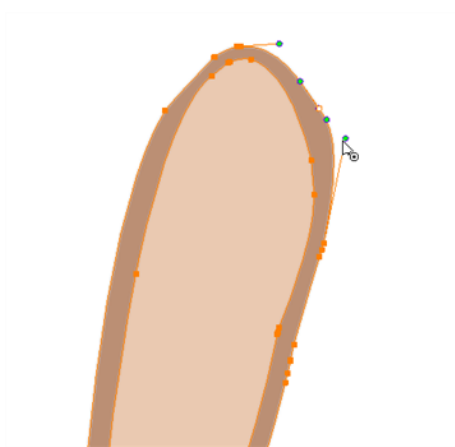
4. Draw the missing lines using the Brush  tool. If you use the Brush tool, it is recommended that you enable the **Auto-Flatten**  option in the Tool Properties view.




5. Using the Paint  tool, paint the gaps. You can close some gaps with invisible lines using the Close Gap  tool. The keyboard shortcut is [Alt] + [C].

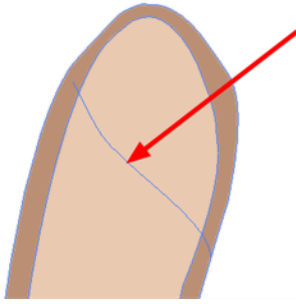


6. Reshape your lines using the **Contour Editor**  tool. The keyboard shortcut is [Alt] + [Q].



7. Using the Select tool, select your entire drawing and click on the **Flatten**  button in the Tool Properties view to flatten your drawings.

- In the top menu, select **View > Show > Show Strokes** to display the invisible lines that could be present in your drawing or press [K].



- In the top menu, select **Drawing > Optimize > Remove Extra Strokes**. This operation will remove any unnecessary invisible lines in your drawing.
- Repeat this entire process for each drawing to fix.

## Related Topics

- [Drawing Using the Pencil Tool](#) on page 148
- [Drawing with the Brush Tool](#) on page 164
- [Erasing Parts of a Drawing](#) on page 196
- [Drawing with Shapes](#) on page 212
- [Cutting Drawing Parts](#) on page 230
- [Reshaping a Drawing Using the Contour Editor Tool](#) on page 200
- [Painting Using the Paint Tool](#) on page 318


## Break Down: Distribute to Layers

When breaking down your character, you can use the Distribute to Layers option to distribute the selected art strokes to a new layer each.

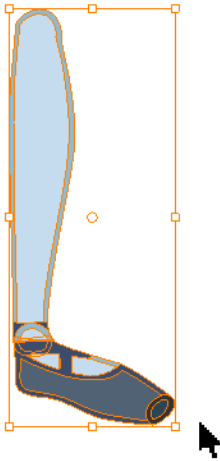



This feature will automatically take each stroke from the drawing selection made in the Camera view and separate them into different layers. If one of your puppet's part is composed of several strokes, you must group them using **Edit > Group > Group** before using the Distribute to Layers option. This option cannot be done in the Drawing view. It must be done from the Camera view.

### To distribute to layers:

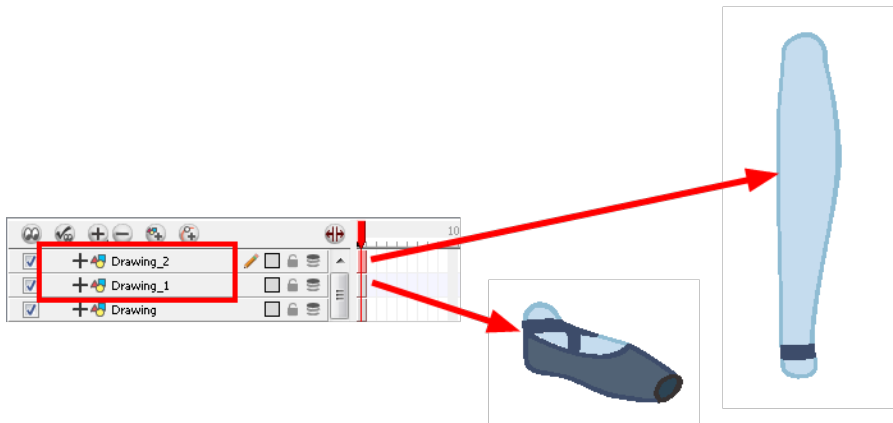
- In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Select**  tool.

2. In the Camera view, select the art strokes you want to distribute to different layers.



3. Select **Drawing > Distribute to Layers**. You can also click on the **Distribute to Layers**  button in the Tool Properties view.

The number of drawing layers corresponding to different strokes or groups of strokes are created in the Timeline view.



- ▶ The selected strokes in the original drawing layer will be removed.
- ▶ Each stroke or group of strokes will be distributed into each new Drawing layer.

## Related Topics

- [Breaking Down the Character](#) on page 698

## Break Down: Creating Ghost Drawings



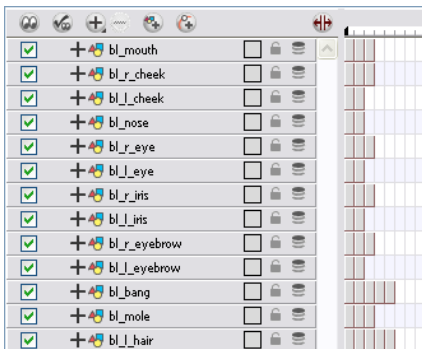
At this point your basic break down should be almost complete. There is one optional step you can do before moving on, adding extra drawings and expressions to your character; adding ghost drawings.

This topic is divided as follows:

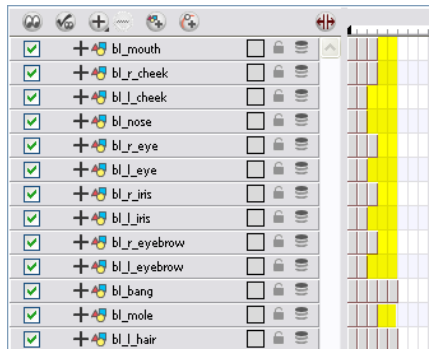
- [Adding a Ghost Drawing below](#)

### Adding a Ghost Drawing

Right now, your timeline looks like this:



Some parts have no drawings in certain views. For example, the left eye has no drawing available for the Side view. To make your puppet more efficient when you will animate, a good trick is too add invisible drawings that you can select even when no image is necessary.

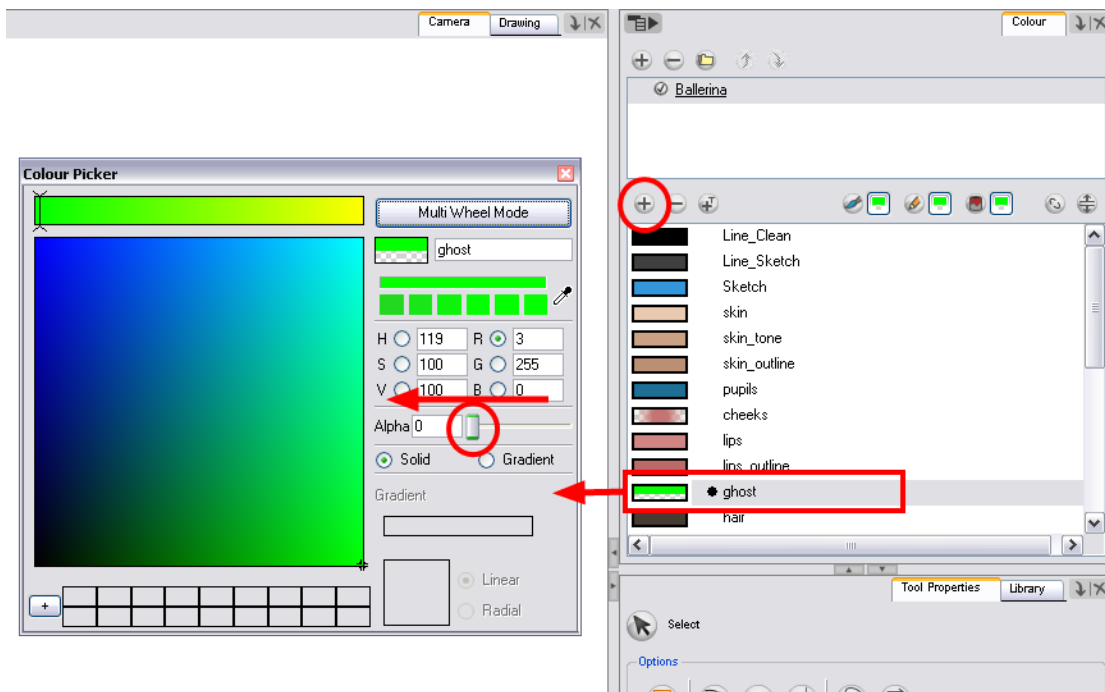


If you need to select a part of your character to use the Drawing Substitution feature or Inverse Kinematics tool, or to avoid having the system automatically fill in the exposure gaps when swapping images, then creating ghost or invisible drawings can be very useful.

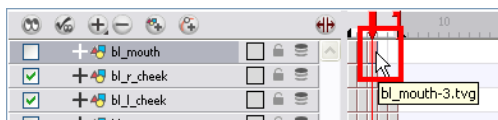
To create ghost drawings, copy one of the existing drawings, paste it in the empty cell and repaint it with a fully transparent colour.


**To create ghost drawings:**

1. In the Colour view, add a fully transparent colour to your character's palette.

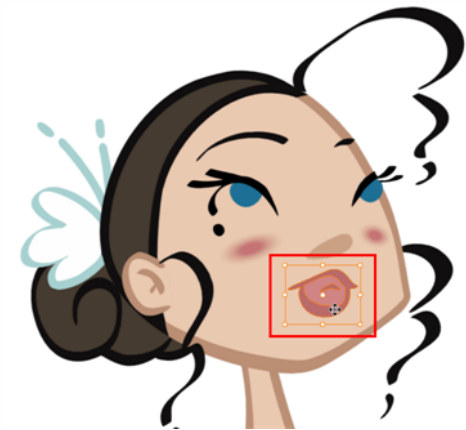


2. In the Timeline view, select the cell containing the drawing you want to copy to create your invisible drawing.

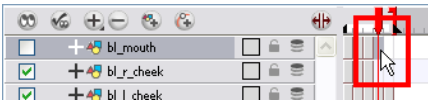


3. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
4. In the Camera or Drawing view, select the drawing to copy.

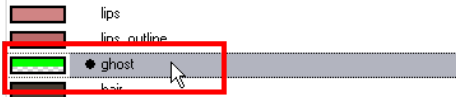






5. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
6. In the Timeline view, select the empty cell where you want to create your ghost.



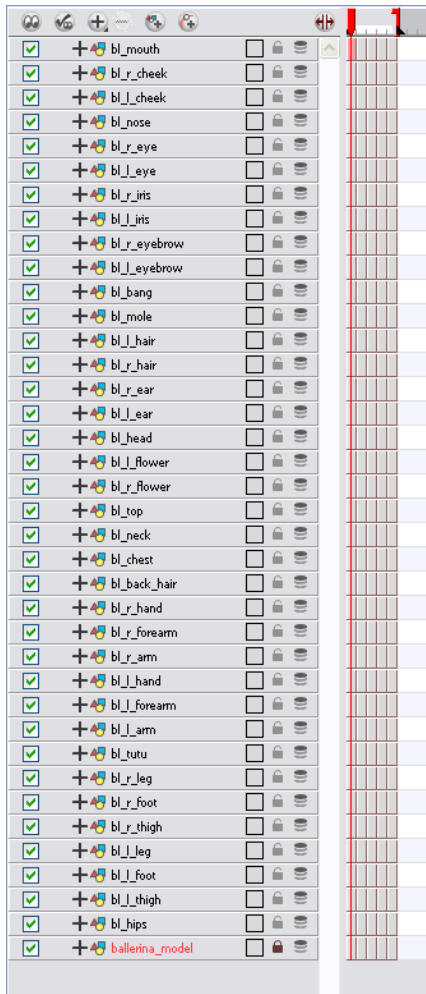
7. Click on the Camera or Drawing view and in the top menu select **Edit > Paste** or press [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X).
8. In the Colour view, select the transparent colour.



9. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool and offset the drawing outside the body's area or press [Alt] + [S].
10. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Paint**  tool or press [Alt] + [I].
11. In the Camera or Drawing view, repaint the drawing to make it invisible.



At this point, your timeline should look like this:

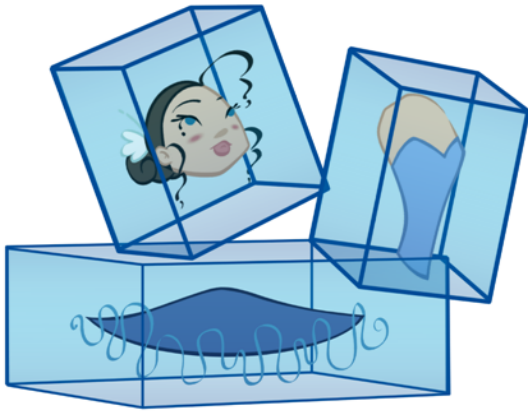


At this point, you could decide to convert your layers to symbols. See [Converting the Layers into Symbols on the facing page](#).

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Symbol on page 654](#)

## Converting the Layers into Symbols

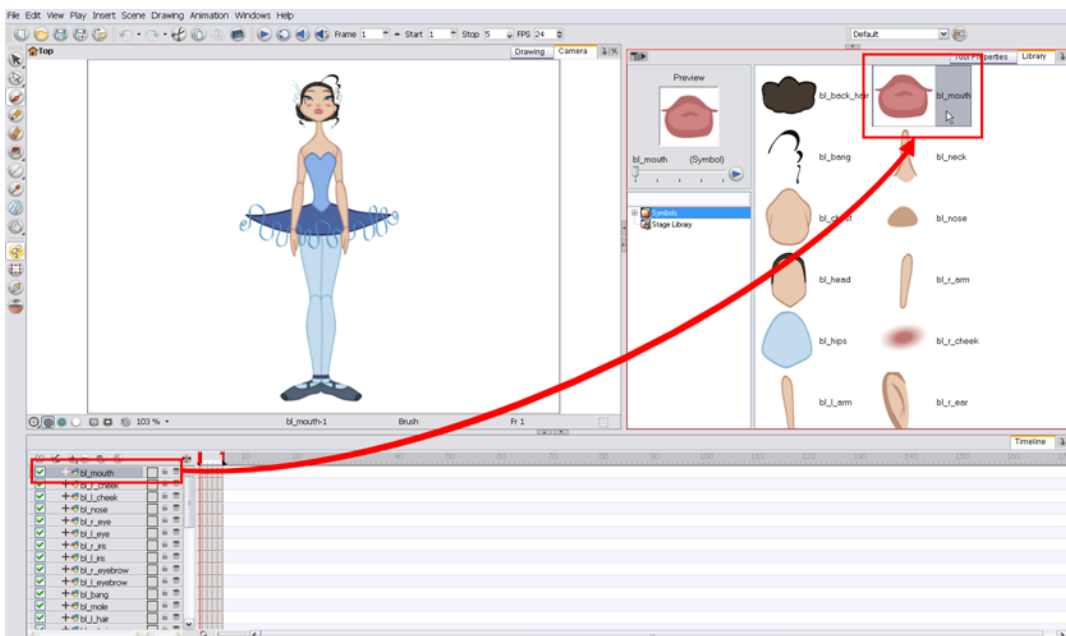


Converting your layers into symbols is optional. When animating, you will need to enter the symbol to create a new drawing. IF YOU WANT TO USE MORPHING WHEN ANIMATING, KEEP YOUR LAYERS AS DRAWINGS AND DO NOT USE SYMBOLS.


Once the breakdown is completed, you can create symbols out of each drawing. The symbol will encapsulate each drawing of the layer. Later on, even if you only expose the first frame, such as the front head, you will still have access to all of the head drawings you placed in the symbol. This will also allow you to add more drawings, as your characters' master templates will evolve throughout the production of your movie or series.

### To create a symbol:

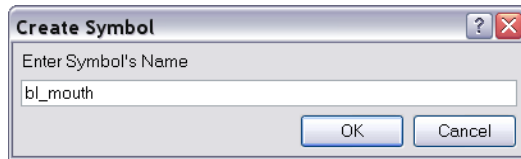
1. To create a symbol:
  - ▶ From the Timeline view, drag the layer to the Symbols library folder.



OR

- ▶ In the Timeline view, select the layer to convert to symbol and in the top menu select **Edit > Create Symbol** or press [F8]. You can also click on the **Create Symbol**  button available in the Edit toolbar.

The Create Symbol dialog box opens.



2. In the Enter Symbol's Name field, type the new symbol's name. It is recommended that you keep your original layer's name.
3. Click on the **OK** button.
4. Repeat this process for each layer in your Timeline view.




Make sure that all of your layers are stored in the symbol library.

## Clearing the Main Timeline

All your layers should be stored in the library as symbols. Before building your puppet, you will need to remove all of the current layers in your scene. All of your work is saved in the library.

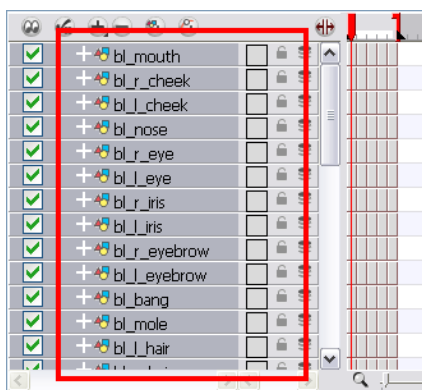
If you are not sure that you put everything in your library, you can always perform a Save As on your scene and work on a new version.

### To save your scene as a new version:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **File > Save As**. You can also click on the **Save As**  button available in the File toolbar.

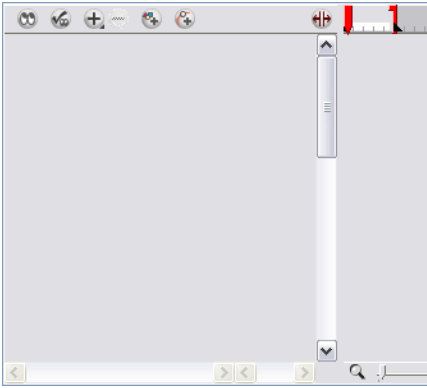
### To clean your Timeline:

1. In the Timeline view, select all of your layers.

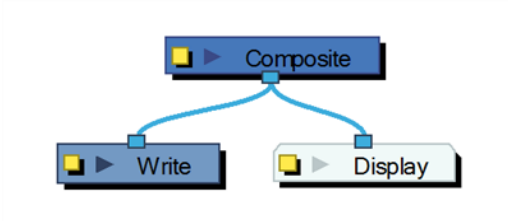


2. In the Timeline's Layer toolbar, click on the **Delete Layers**  button.

- In the Confirm Delete dialog box, click on the **OK** button to complete the operation. Your timeline is now ready to receive the body part symbols for the rigging process.



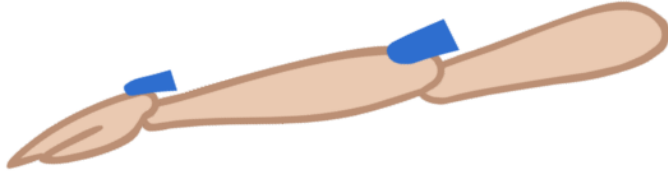
Your Network view should look like this:



## Patch Articulation





Animate Pro advanced rigging can use an articulation fixing technique called Patch Articulation. This technique is a colour fill patch that is drawn onto a third layer and is used to cover the joint lines. It is a simple, yet powerful method.



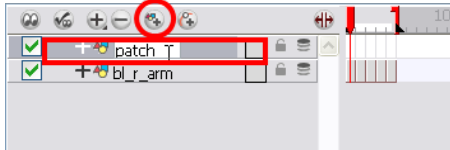
With this technique, you avoid having to create a correction layer at the end of the animation to fill the gaps in the joints. You do not need to worry about the articulations at all. Once a patch is set, the articulation is fixed for the entire length of the animation.

To render this technique even more efficient, Animate Pro lets you draw the patch inside the same drawing, but on a separate contained layer. The Line Art and Colour Art layers are not only useful in traditional ink and paint, but also in advanced cut-out breakdown. You can draw the patch in the Colour Art layer and extract it in the Network view. The advantage of doing it this way is that when animating and using the drawing substitution, the patch drawing will change at the same time as the main drawing.

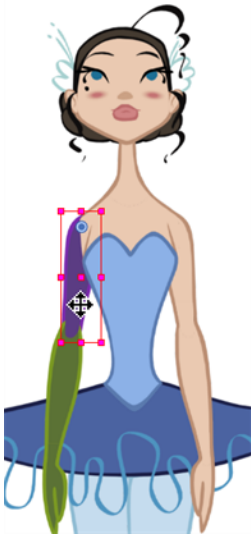
#### To create a patch articulation:


1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. Only if you are planning to create you patch on an independent layer, do the following. If not, move on to the next step.
  - In the Timeline view, add a new drawing layer by clicking on the **Add Drawing Layer**  button or press [Ctrl] + [R] (Windows) or [⌘] + [R] (Mac OS X).

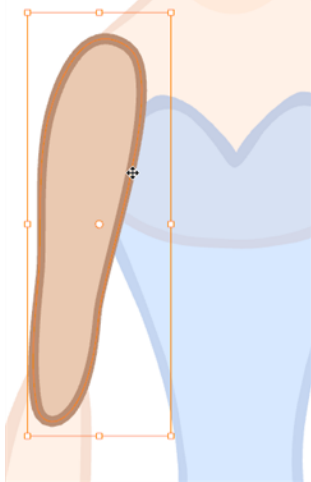
- ▶ Rename the new layer **patch** or **elbow**.



3. In the Camera view, select the part you want to create a patch for. For example, if you are fixing the elbow articulation, select the arm or forearm drawing to edit it.

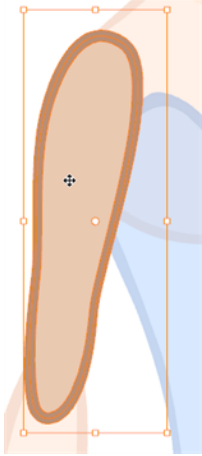



4. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Select**  tool or press [Alt] + [S].
5. If you drew your lines with pencil lines, it is recommended to convert them to brush lines (fill shapes):
  - ▶ In the Camera view, select your pencil lines.

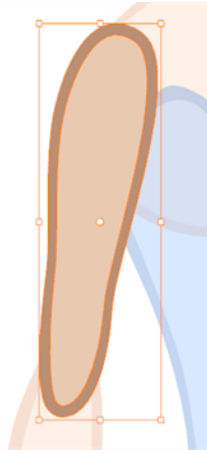


- ▶ In the Tools Properties view, click on the **Convert Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines**  button.

- ▶ In the Camera view, select the piece's outline and fill.



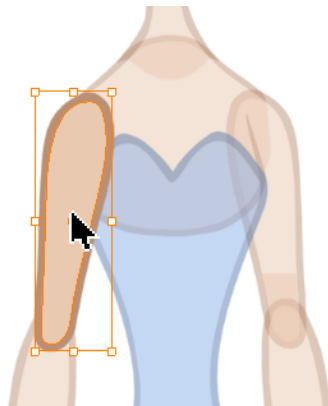
- ▶ In the Tool Properties view, click on the **Flatten**  button. This will remove the exceeding colour fill located under the contour stroke.




If you want to keep your lines as pencil and create a patch joint, you will need to use the [Auto Patch on page 1102](#) module.

---

6. In the Camera view, select the fill zone of the part's drawing.

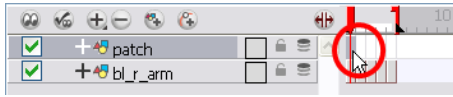





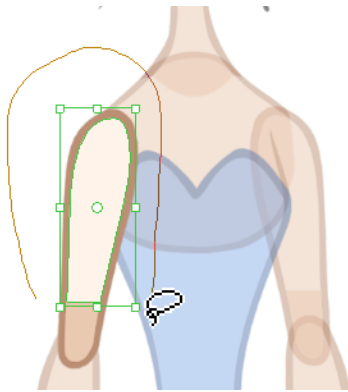
7. In the Camera view, right-click and select **Copy**.
8. To paste your selection:
  - If you are using the recommended method, which is to paste your selection in the Colour Art, in the Camera View or Drawing View bottom toolbar, click on the **Colour Art**  button.

**OR**

- If you are using an independent layer, in the Timeline view, select the cell in which you want to create the patch.

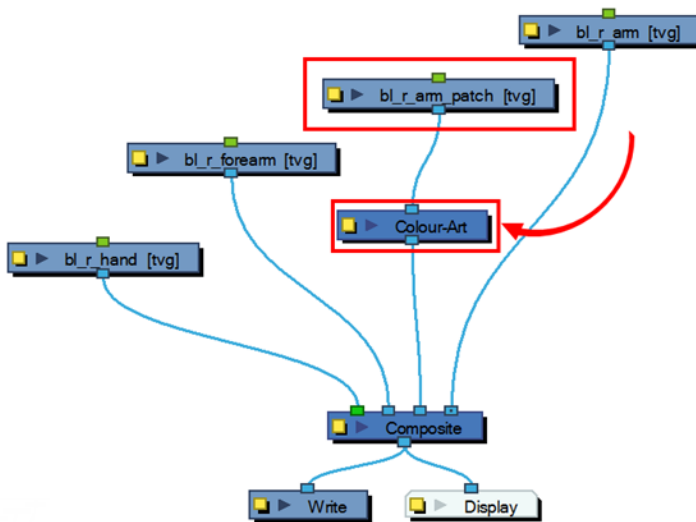


9. In the Camera view, right-click and select **Paste**.
10. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Cutter**  tool.
11. In the Camera view, make a selection around the pasted zone to cut everything out but a small overlapping zone to cover the articulation.

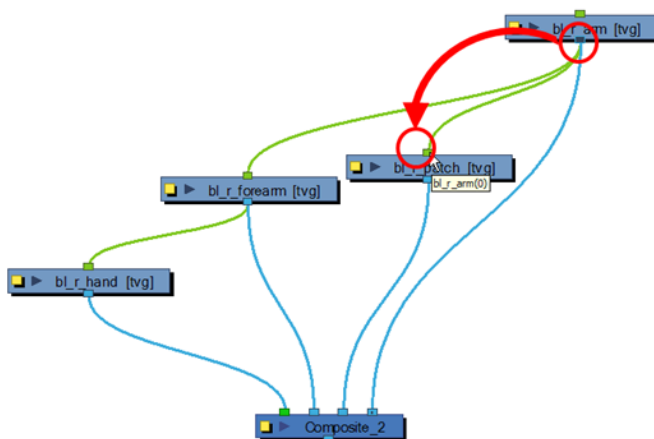


12. To extract the patch from the Colour Art layer:
  - In the Network view, select the module containing the drawing with the patch.
  - Copy and paste the selected module. Note that when you copy and paste from the network view, by default it creates a clone, so any changes that are made to one affect the other.
  - Click on the module's yellow button to open the Layer Properties window.
  - In the Name field, add the word **patch** to the module's name.
  - Close the Layer Properties window.

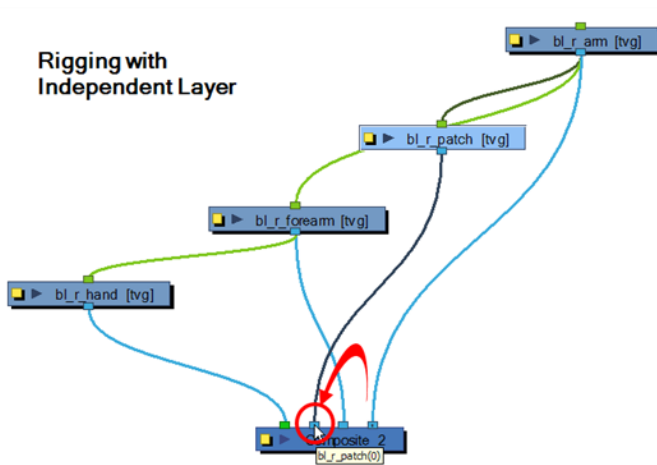
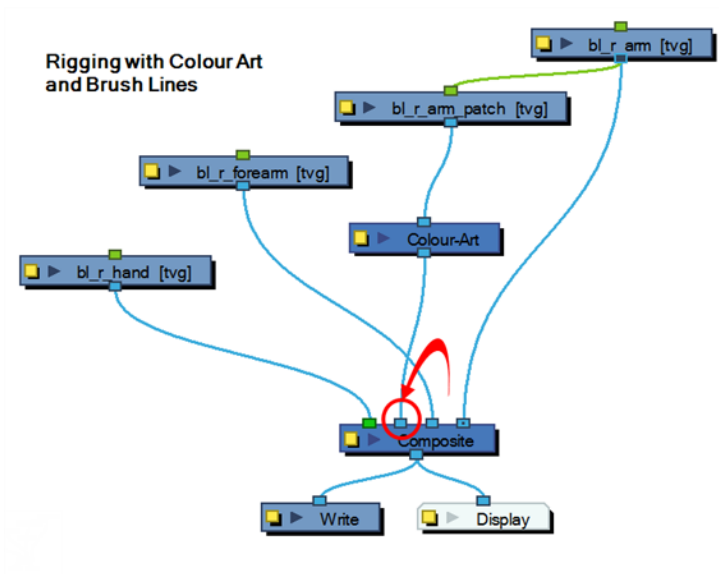
- From the Module Library's All Module tab, drag a Colour Art module and connect it below the Patch module.



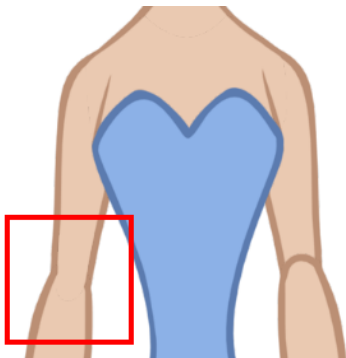
- In the Network view, connect the main part you create the patch from and parent it to the patch module.



- Select the patch module's connection to the Composite module and drag it in front of the piece to be covered. In this case, the elbow patch is parented to the arm and connected in front of the forearm.



16. Repeat the process for each articulation which requires fixing.



## Setting Different Pivots for a Puppet Using Symbols


If you want your puppet's pieces to rotate correctly, you need to set the pivot points onto the articulations. You can either set the pivots using the Rotate tool and have it set for the whole layer or you can set the pivots directly on your symbol and have a different pivot for each symbol cell. By default, when you create your symbols, the symbol pivot is located at the centre of your drawing. You will need to move it onto the shoulder or elbow.

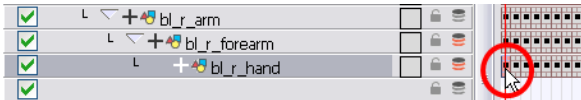
You will set the pivot on the symbol's cells, not directly on the drawings. To set your pivots, you have to be at the top level of your character building scene and not inside the symbols.


By default, when you set your pivot onto your symbol, all the cells use the same pivot. If you need different pivots for your different cells, refer to the following procedure.

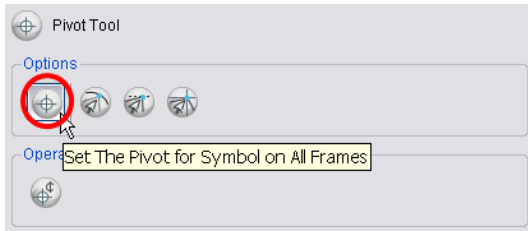
Do the following steps for each layer in the Timeline view.

**To set the pivots for the body parts:**

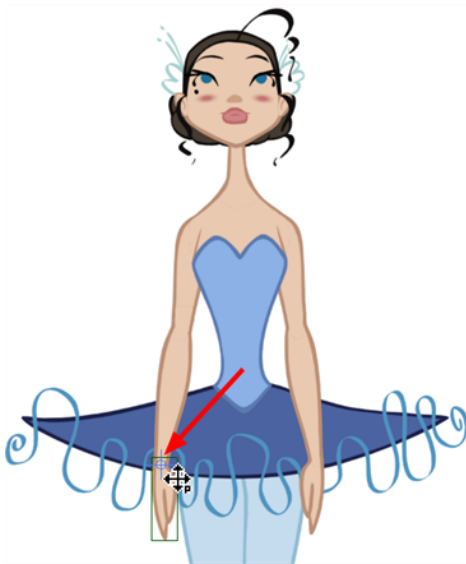
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Drawing Pivot**  tool. You can also select **Drawing > Tools > Drawing Pivot**.
2. In the Camera or Timeline view, select the symbol you want to set the pivot for.



3. In the Tool Properties view, if you only want to set one pivot for your symbol, make sure that the **Set the Pivot for Symbol on All Frames**  option is enabled.



- Disable this option if you want to set a series of different pivots for your symbol's cells.
4. In the Camera view, click where you want the pivot to be. You can also drag the pivot marker to the desired location.



5. If you want to set a different pivot for another drawing or symbol cell, select the drawing or cell and in the Camera view, set the new pivot. Make sure that the Set the Pivot for Symbol on All Frames option is **DISABLED**.

## Related Topics

- [Setting Pivots on a Frame Range](#) below

## Setting Pivots on a Frame Range

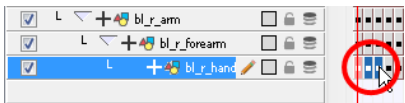
If you are using the drawing pivots rather than the Rotate tool pivot and if some elements need the same drawing pivot, such as all of the three-quarter hands, you can select all of these hands cells and set the pivot all at once. If your pivot is already correctly set on your first drawing, copy and paste that pivot onto the other drawings in the Timeline or Xsheet view.



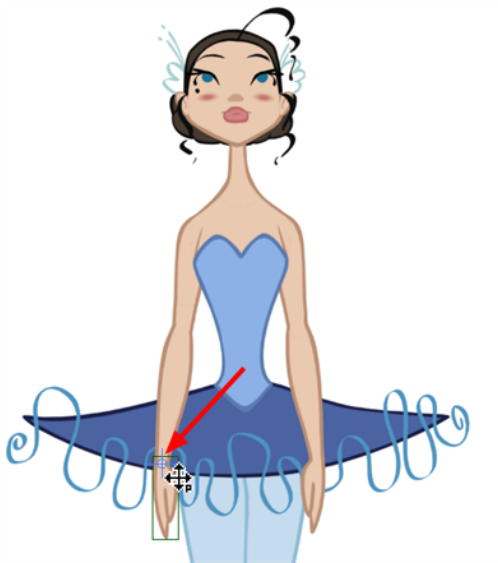
You must have the same drawing pivots on the extra parts from the same angle. If you substitute a drawing while the part is rotating, the animation risks popping out of place if the pivot is uneven.

### To set the pivot on a frame range:

1. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to set the same pivot. The cells have to be part of the same layer.

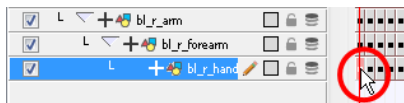


2. In the Camera view, click where you want the pivot to be. You can also drag the pivot marker to the desired location.

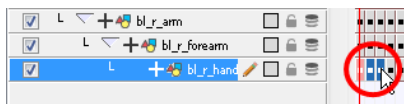


**To copy and paste drawing pivots:**

1. In the Drawing or Camera view, set the first drawing pivot of the series. For example, set it on hand-1.
2. In the Timeline view, select the cell that contains the correct pivot.



3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
4. In the Timeline view, select the cell range that requires the same pivot.



5. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Special** or press [Ctrl] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [B] (Mac OS X).  
The Paste Special dialog box opens.



6. In the Paste Special dialog box, go to the **Advanced** tab.
7. In the Drawings section, enable the **Update Drawing Pivot** option.
8. Click on the **OK** button.



You can also copy and paste the pivot from one drawing to another using the keyboard shortcuts [Ctrl] + [C] and [Ctrl] + [V] (Windows) or [⌘] + [C] and [⌘] + [V] (Mac OS X) when the Drawing Pivot tool is active and the focus is around the Camera view.

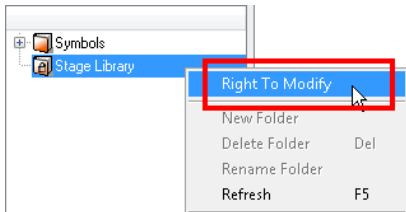
## Related Topics

- [Setting the Pivots](#) on page 732

# Adding the New Drawings to an Existing Template in the Library

To add new drawings to an existing drawing template:

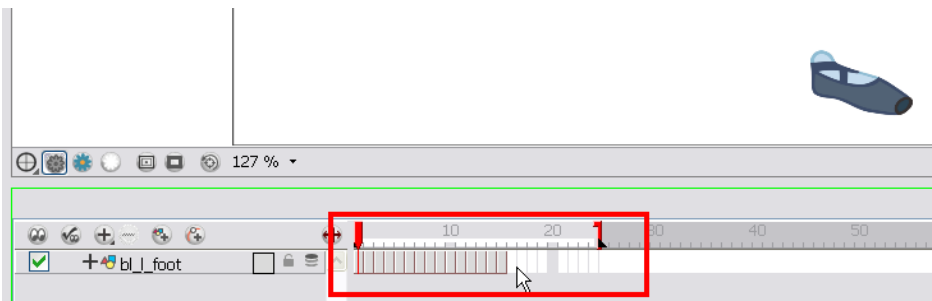
1. In the Library view, right-click on the library folder containing the template to modify and select **Right To Modify**.




2. In the Library view's right side, right-click on the extra drawings template to modify and select **Edit Template**.

A new Animate Pro application opens.

3. In the Tools toolbar, select the desired drawing tool.
4. In the Colour view, select the desired colour.
5. In the template's timeline, select the blank cell where you want to draw your new piece.
6. In the Camera or Drawing view, draw the new pieces.



7. If you are using drawing pivots, in the Tools toolbar, select the **Drawing Pivot**  tool and in the Camera view, set the pivot directly on the new drawing's cell. If you are using symbols and symbol pivots, in this case, you do not set the pivot on the symbol's cell.
8. In the top menu, select **File > Save** or press [Ctrl] + [S] (Windows) or [⌘] + [S] (Mac OS X).
9. In the top menu, select **File > Quit** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Quit Toon Boom Stage** (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [Library on page 643](#)



# Chapter 13: Deformation



Animate Pro provides you with the deformation technology to deform bitmap and vector drawings over a period of time. These deformers can be linked to create a hierarchy of deformation. This technology allows you to deform a character made out of one, or many, drawing or image layers and make it move as if it were a cut-out puppet. It also allows you to take an area in a single bitmap image and create animation by distortion.

## Topics Covered

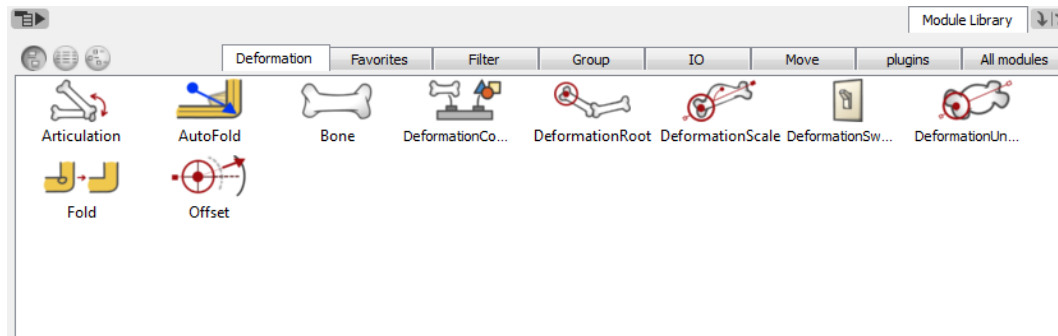
- [About the Deformation Effect on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Basic Deformation Rig on page 779](#)
- [Manipulating a Deformer to Create Animation on page 784](#)
- [Deformation Basics on page 788](#)
- [Deformation Toolbar on page 791](#)
- [Storing the Character in the Library on page 799](#)
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#)
- [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#)
- [Deformation Preferences on page 845](#)

# About the Deformation Effect

The Deformation effect can be used to animate either bitmap or vector based graphics, it even works on gradients and textures. The Deformation effect acts as a skeleton in which you can maneuver different articulations or bend it into a fluid curve. It can prove useful in many situations including cut-out animation. When paired with your creativity, the Deformation effect can produce some stunning results.



The Deform Group will be created automatically when using the Rigging Tool. However if you want to create a Deform manually, all the modules can be accessed from the Module Library, under the Deformation tab.



## Related Topics

- [Deformer Effects on page 801](#)

# Creating a Basic Deformation Rig

This topic explains how you can quickly use the Rigging tool to create a basic Bone and Articulation rig. Before you can create a Basic Deformation rig, you must set up the performance preferences which are necessary to allow the system to process the deformation effect efficiently.



Refer to [Setting the Performance Preferences on page 788](#) to learn more.

## To create a basic deformation rig:


1. You must set up the Performance Preferences. See note above. After you have done this continue to step 2.
2. In the Preferences panel, under the Deformation tab, disable the **Automatically Create New Deformer Structure for each Pose/Drawing**.

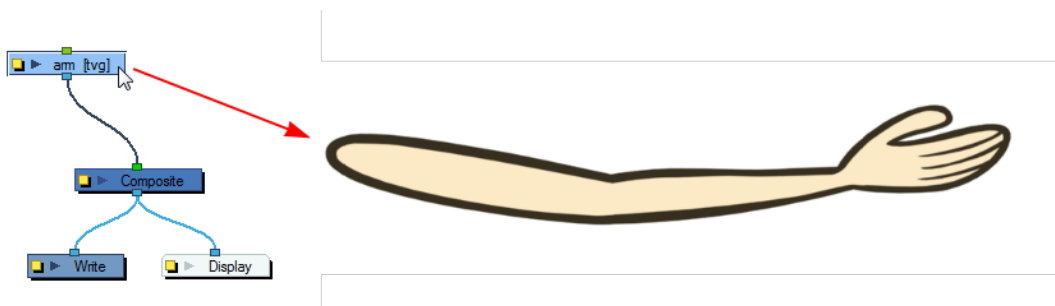
Disabling this preference will result in a simpler Network rigging structure.



But remember that this option must be re-enabled when rigging a multi pose (front, quarter, side and back) character.

Refer to the [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#) to learn how to rig a complete character.

3. From the Deformation toolbar, select the Rigging  tool.
4. In the Network or Timeline view, select the element that you want to add a deformation to.



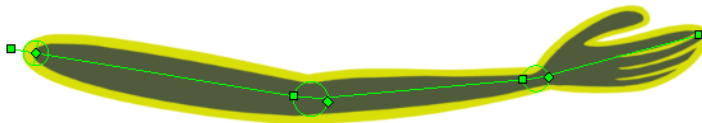
5. In the Camera view, you can start to create a Bone rig.
  - ▶ To create a Bone rig:
    - ▶ Place the cursor at the far end of your element, click once and release. For example, on the shoulder.



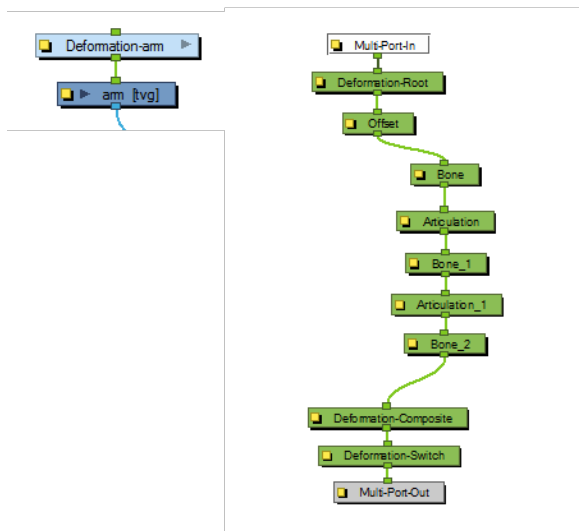
- ▶ Click again at the location where you want your first bone to finish and your second bone to start. An articulation will automatically be inserted between each bones you create.



- ▶ Repeat this until you are finished creating the Bone chain.



This will automatically create a Deformation Group connected to the top node of the selected element. This group includes all the necessary deformation modules as well as the Bones and Articulations you created.



Note that this Network structure is the result of a simple rigging which was a created with the Create Posed Deformer in Create Deformation Above/Under preference disabled.

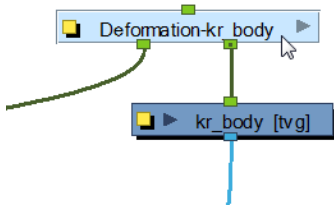




If you have just created the bone rig, the controls will still be showing. However, whenever you close your project the deformers are turned off, so when you reopen the project you can show the ones you need while you're animating.

## Modifying a Deform Rig

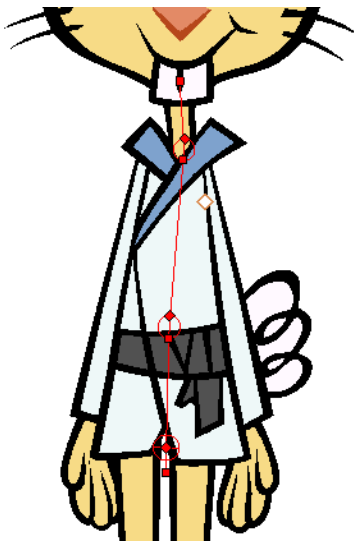
To setup a bone and articulation deformation chain:


1. In the Network view, select the Deformation Group you want to setup.

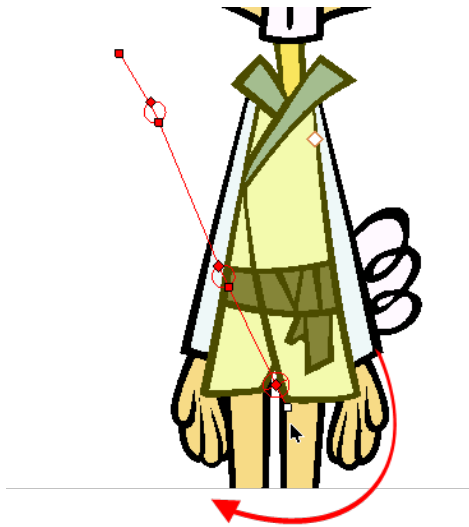


2. In the Deformation toolbar, click on the Show Selected Deformers and Hide All Others  button to display the deformer controls in the Camera view. This also hides all the deformer controls that were displayed.
3. In the Deformation toolbar, enable the Setup Mode .

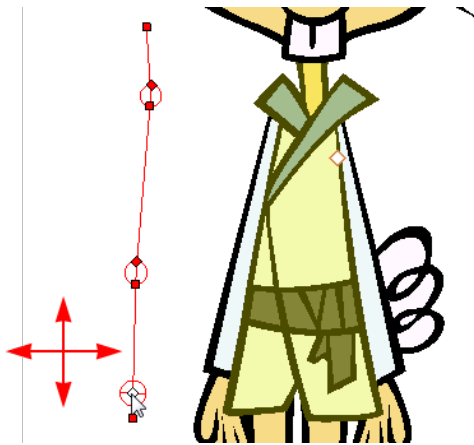
The chain will turn from light green to red. If the chain is displayed in green, it means the Setup Mode is disabled. Click the button once more to enable it.



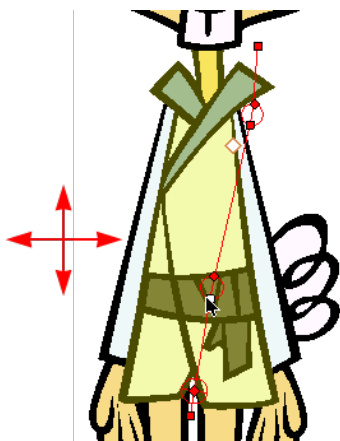
4. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
5. In the Camera view, setup the deformation chain.
  - Use the Pivot rotation handle to change the angle of the chain.



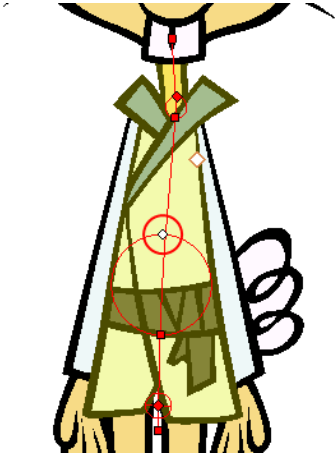
- Use the Pivot centre control point to reposition the entire chain.



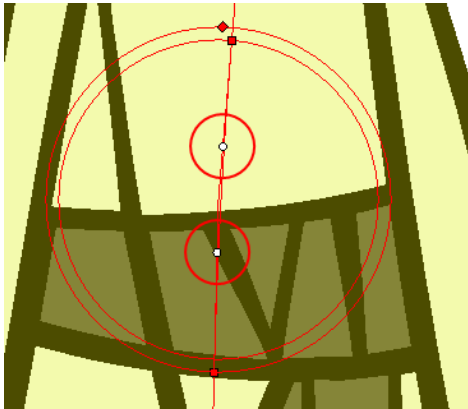
- Use the Articulation control point, the square at the bottom, to reposition the articulation. This will elongate, shorten or change the direction of the first bone.






- Use the Articulation, top diamond-shaped, control point to change the size of the articulation. For quality purposes it is recommended to have an articulation which fits the diameter of the part it controls.



- In the Deformation toolbar, if desired, you can disable the Show Simplified Manipulators option to display all the manipulators. You can choose to work with the simplified deformer, but if you need more fine-tune control you can also access the full deformer. You will notice two extra square control points appearing in the middle of the articulation circle. Drag these up and down to modify the steepness (bias) of the articulation.



6. Repeat until all the articulations and bones of the chain are correctly aligned to the element it is linked to.
7. With the Deformation Group still selected, click on the Copy Resting Position to Current  button. This will make sure to set the current resting position as the current frame one.
8. In the Deformation toolbar, disable the Setup Mode  and test your modifications using the Transform  tool.



For optimal results, make sure the size of the articulation is about the same size as the drawing.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#)

# Manipulating a Deformer to Create Animation

The Bone, Articulation and Curve deformers have very different ways of being manipulated. When you are choosing the type of deformation chain to use on each part, keep in mind the kind of animation movement they can create.

This topic is divided as follows:

- [Manipulating a Bone and Articulation Deformer](#) below

You will learn how to manipulate the main types of deformer.

---



To learn how to manipulate secondary types of deformer, refer to the desired effect module:

- [AutoFold](#) on page 804
  - [Deformation-Scale](#) on page 807
  - [Deformation-Uniform-Scale](#) on page 811
  - [Deformation-Uniform-Scale](#) on page 811
  - [Fold](#) on page 812
- 


## Related Topics

- [Deformation](#) on page 777
- [Creating a Basic Deformation Rig](#) on page 779
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig](#) on page 817

# Manipulating a Bone and Articulation Deformer

The Bone deformer operates the same as a human limb does and is composed of a pivot, as a starting point, and bones and articulations.

**To manipulate a Bone and Articulation deformer:**

1. In the Deformation toolbar, disable Setup Mode . When Setup Mode is disabled, the default colour of the deformation control is light green.






If you leave Setup Mode on, you will modify the resting position of the deformer chain, instead of animating it.

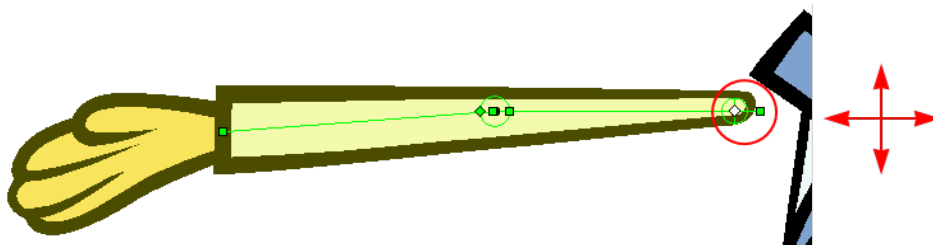
---



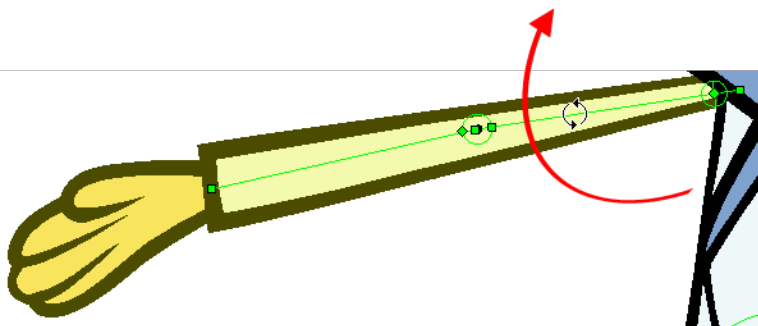


If you had made changes to your rig in Setup mode, you can select the deform group and click on **Copy Resting Position to Current** button. This resets the rig outside Setup mode to match what the rig looks like in Setup mode.

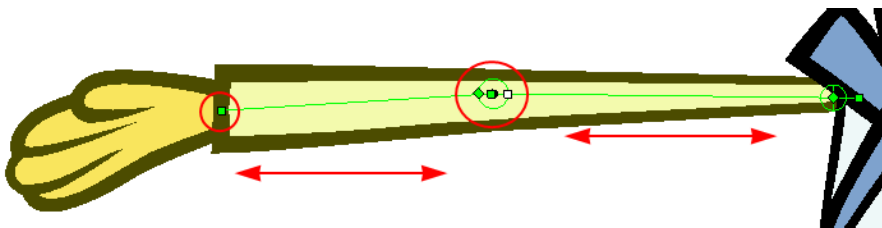
2. In the Tools toolbar, if you want to create keyframes, enable the Animate  mode.
3. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
4. In the Top level of the Network view, press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X) to select all the modules, you can also select **Edit > Select All** from the top menu.
5. In the Camera View toolbar, select Show Control  or press [Shift] + [F11]. This will display all the deformation controls in your scene.  
Refer to [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) to learn other control display option.
6. In the Camera view:



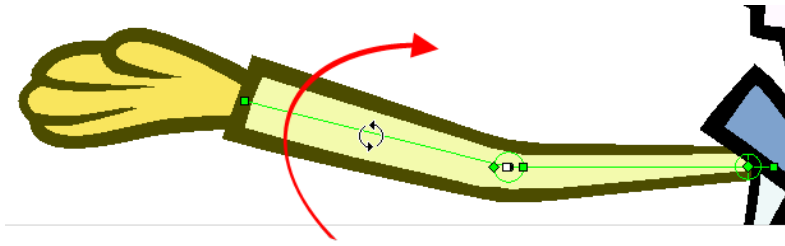
- ▶ Click on the centre of the Deformation-Root pivot and drag it around to reposition the entire limb.



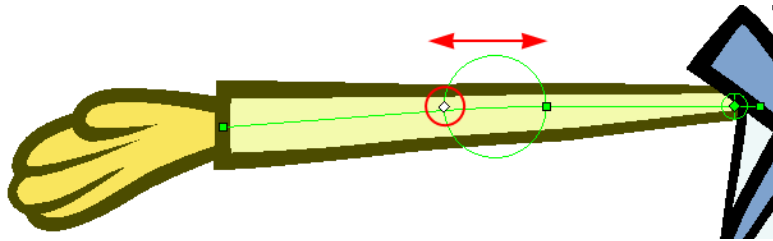
- ▶ Use the first bone or the pivot square handle to rotate the entire limb.



- ▶ Use the square control point located at the extremity of a bone to stretch or shorten its length.



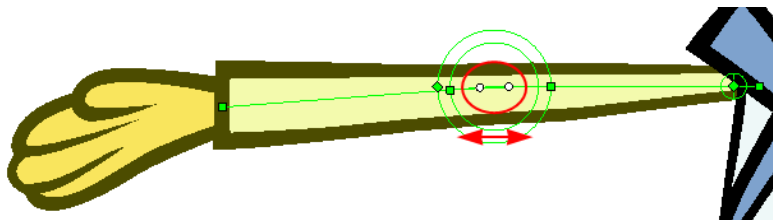
- ▶ Use a bone next to an articulation to rotate it. You can also hold down the [Alt] key, this will lock all the controls and movement and only allow the rotation of the articulation.



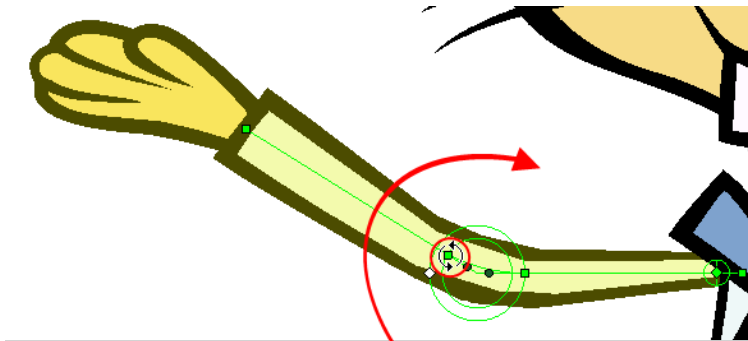
- ▶ Click and drag the articulation's diamond-shaped control point to modify its radius.

7. If needed, in the Deformation toolbar, disable the Show Simplified Manipulators option to display the advanced controls.

8. In the Camera view:

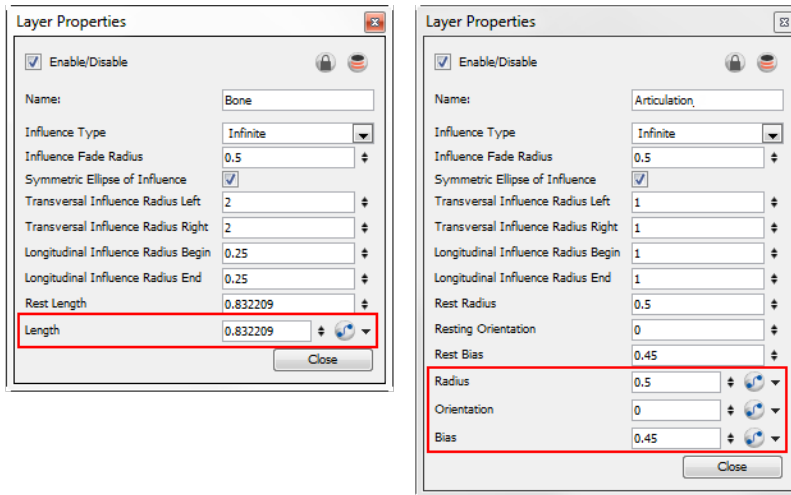


- ▶ Click and drag the round articulation control points to adjust the steepness (bias) of the articulation.



- ▶ Use the square articulation control point to rotate it.

You can also manipulate the deformer by typing values directly in the Layer Properties of the deformation effect modules.



## Related Topics

- [Articulation on page 801](#)
- [Manipulating a Deformer to Create Animation on page 784](#)

# Deformation Basics

The following topics explain the essential items you need to know before starting to work with Deformation effects:

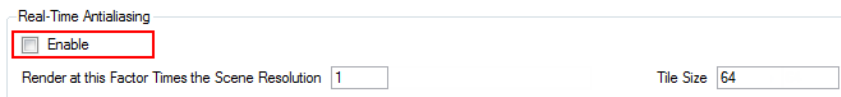
- [Setting the Performance Preferences](#) below
- [Displaying the Deformation Controls](#) below
- [Deformation in the Network and Timeline Views](#) on the facing page

## Setting the Performance Preferences

There are some preferences that you must set in order to work efficiently with the Deformation effects. Do the following:

### Setting up the performance preferences:

1. Open the Preferences panel:
  - ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
  - ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
  - ▶ Or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. Choose the OpenGL tab.
3. In the Settings section:
  - ▶ Enable the Use Hardware Vertex Texture Fetching if Available preference. This preference is disabled by default, however it is strongly recommended that you enable it before using the deformers. If your CPU and graphic card allow it, the system will use vertex shaders to considerably help the process of deformation.
4. In the Real-Time Antialiasing section:



- ▶ Make sure the Real-Time Antialiasing options are disabled. Uncheck the Enable checkbox.

### Related Topics

- [Displaying the Deformation Controls](#) below
- [Deformation in the Network and Timeline Views](#) on the facing page

## Displaying the Deformation Controls


To be able to manipulate the deformer outside of the Setup Mode, you must enable the Deformation Controls.




If you have just created the bone rig, the controls will still be showing. However, whenever you close your project the deformer are turned off, so when you reopen the project you can show the ones you need while you're animating.

You can also select all the modules from your Network view and select **View > Show > Controls** from the top menu.

#### To display the selected deformation controls:


1. In the Network view, select the Deformation Group containing the deformation chain you want to display.
2. In the Camera View toolbar, click on the Show Control  button. You can also select **View > Show > Control** from the top menu or press [Shift] + [F11].

#### To display the selected deformation controls and hide all the others:


1. In the Network view, select the Deformation Group containing the deformation chain you want to display.
2. In the Deformation toolbar, click on the Show Selected Deformers and Hide All Others  button.

The selected deformation controls will appear in the Camera view and all the others will be hidden.

#### To display all the deformer controls at the same time:

1. In the Top level of the Network view, select **Edit > Select All** from the top menu to select all the modules or press [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
2. In the Camera View toolbar, select Show Control  or press [Shift] + [F11]. This will display all the deformation controls in your scene.

#### To hide the deformer controls:

- ▶ In the Camera View toolbar, click on the Hide All Controls  button. You can also select **View > Hide All Controls** from the top menu or press [Shift] + [C].

## Related Topics

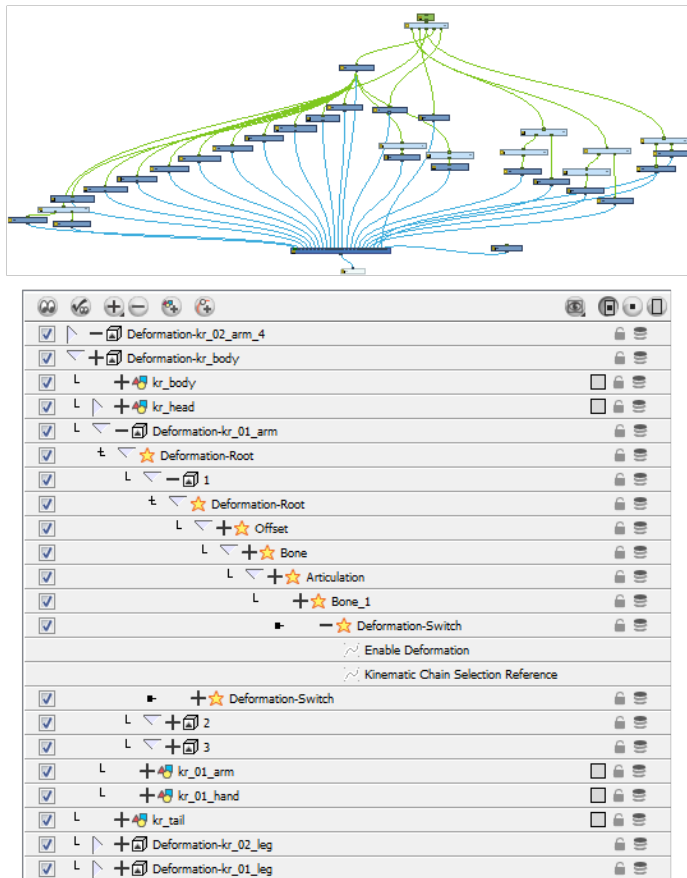
- [Setting the Performance Preferences on the previous page](#)
- [Deformation in the Network and Timeline Views below](#)

# Deformation in the Network and Timeline Views

The deformation effect layers and modules are visible in the Network and Timeline views. You can modify the value and set up the function curves using both views.



Refer to [Animation Paths on page 907](#) to learn how to work with functions.



## Related Topics

- [Setting the Performance Preferences](#) on page 788
- [Displaying the Deformation Controls](#) on page 788

# Deformation Toolbar

The Deformation toolbar contains the various tools and options used to create the Deformation Effect, the toolbar is displayed in the default interface.



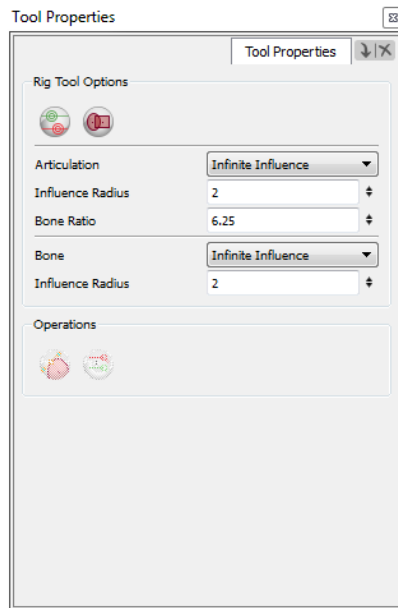
## Related Topics

- [Rigging Tool](#) below
- [Setup Mode](#) on page 794
- [Show All Manipulators](#) on page 795
- [Show All Zones of Influence](#) on page 795
- [Show Simplified Manipulators](#) on page 796
- [Show Selected Manipulators and Hide All Others](#) on page 796
- [Insert Deformation Above](#) on page 796
- [Insert Deformation Under](#) on page 797
- [Create Kinematic Output](#) on page 797
- [Copy Resting Position to Current](#) on page 797
- [Convert Ellipse](#) on page 798
- [Convert to New Drawing and Add Pose](#)

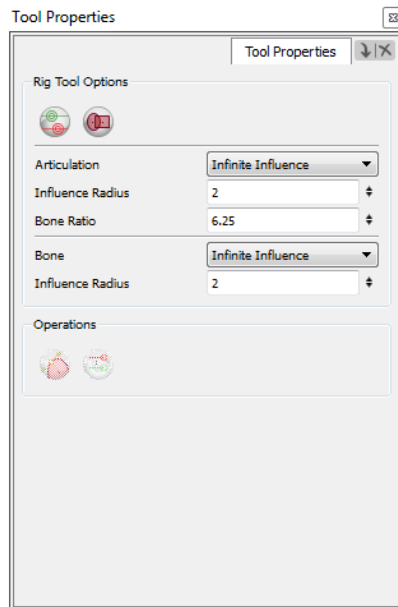
## Rigging Tool



The Rigging Tool is used to create a Bone Deformation Chain and automatically create a Deformation Group on a selected element. Using this tool considerably speeds up the rigging process by automatically creating all the necessary links and modules for your Deformation Chain.



## Rigging Tool Properties





In the Rigging Tool Properties dialog box, you can customize not only the behavior of the tool but also the settings of the deformers that you will create:



- [Mode on the facing page](#)
- [Options on the facing page](#)
- [Operations on page 794](#)




## Mode


-  **Show All Manipulators:** The Show All Manipulators mode lets you immediately see the resting position in red (Setup) and the animated position in green. Refer to the [Show All Manipulators on page 795](#) section below to learn more.
-  **Show All Zones of Influence:** The Show All Zones of Influence lets you visualize the area within which the art will be influenced by the deformation effect. Refer to the [Show All Zones of Influence on page 795](#) section below to learn more.

## Options

- **Articulation:** You can choose which Zone of Influence setting will be used by default when creating an articulation using the Rigging tool. You can choose between these 4 options:
  - **Zero Influence:** The Zone of Influence does not exist. No deformation will happen.
  - **Infinite Influence:** This is the default option and is the most commonly used. The Zone of Influence has no boundary and covers the whole element to which the deformer is linked and its children, excluding areas that are already part of another elliptic or shaped **Zone of Influence**. The Infinite Influence zone will extend from the centre of your skeleton to infinity, working perpendicular to the skeleton.
  - **Elliptic Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by an elliptical shape which size can be customized using the Bone or Articulationmodule properties or by using the Transform  tool. The Elliptic Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you wish to deform.
  - **Shaped Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by a shape which you can customize using the Transform  tool. The Shaped Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you wish to deform.
- **Influence Radius:** This value is the size of the influence zone. The default value is 2.
- **BoneRatio:** This value sets the size of the articulation that will be created relative to the size of the bone that precedes it.
- **Bone:** You can choose which Zone of Influence setting will be used by default when creating a bone deformer using the Rigging tool. You can choose between these 4 options:

- **Zero Influence:** The Zone of Influence does not exist. No deformation will happen.
- **Infinite Influence:** This is the default option and is the most commonly used. The Zone of Influence has no boundary and covers the whole element which the deformer is linked to and its children, excluding areas that are already part of another elliptic or shaped Zone of Influence. The Infinite Influence zone will extend from the centre of your skeleton to infinity, working perpendicular to the skeleton.
- **Elliptic Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by an elliptical shape which size can be customized using the Bone, or Articulation module properties or by using the Transform  tool.



The Elliptic Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you wish to deform.

- **Shaped Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by a shape which you can customize using the Transform  tool. The Shaped Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you wish to deform.
- **Influence Radius:** This value is the size of the Zone of Influence. The default value is 2.
- **Influence Radius:** This value is the size of the Zone of Influence. The default value is 2.





Refer to the section [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#) > [Zones of Influence on page 835](#) to learn more about zones of influence and how to set them.

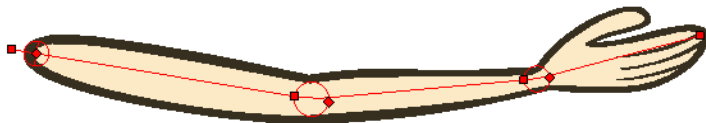
## Operations

-  **Convert Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shape:** After you have created a deformation chain using Elliptic as the Zone of Influence type, you can select your deformer and click on this button to convert it to a Shape type. Control points will appear around the shape making it easy to customize.
-  **Copy Resting Position to Current:** Use this option to copy the resting position of the deformation skeleton to the current frame.

## Setup Mode

When you are in Setup Mode  you can use the Transform  tool to adjust the position, resize and tweak the

Bone and Articulation and deformers which you created using the Rigging tool. When in Setup Mode, the manipulators appear in red in the Camera view.

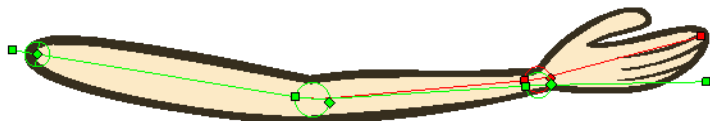





Refer to the [Deformation Basics on page 788](#) > [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) topic to learn how to make the manipulators visible in the Camera view.

Refer to the [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#) > [Setting Up The Resting Position on page 831](#) topic to learn how to use the Setup Mode to modify your deformation chain.

## Show All Manipulators

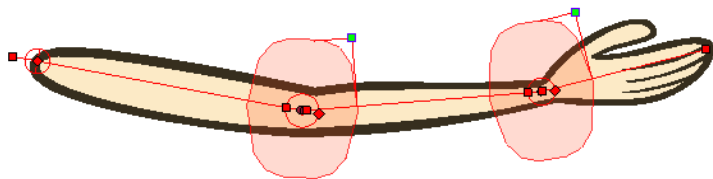



The Show All Manipulators  option lets you visualize the resting position in red (Setup Mode) and the active position in light green at the same time.



Refer to the [Deformation Basics on page 788](#) > [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) topic to learn how to make the manipulators visible in the Camera view.

## Show All Zones of Influence




This option will display the Zones of Influence  for all of the deformer's in your project. Note that the deformer's controls must be visible in order for its Zone of Influence to show. Zones will not be displayed when a deformer's Zone of Influence is set to Infinite or Zero.

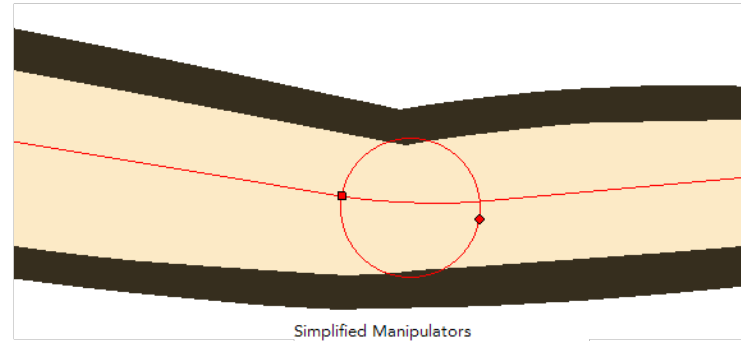
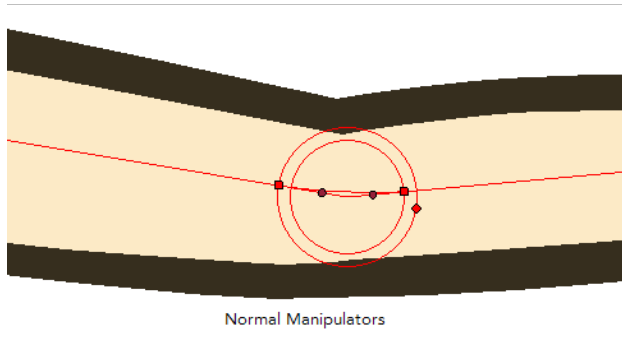


Refer to the [Deformation Basics on page 788](#) > [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) topic to learn how to make the manipulators visible in the Camera view.

Refer to the [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#) > [Zones of Influence on page 835](#) topic to learn more about using the zones of influence.


## Show Simplified Manipulators

Enabling the Show Simplified Manipulators  will hide some of the more advanced control handles that are visible in the Camera view. This can prove useful when animating, as it prevents you from inadvertently moving the handles.



Refer to the [Deformation Basics on page 788](#) > [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) topic to learn how to make the manipulators visible in the Camera view.


## Show Selected Manipulators and Hide All Others

When you click on this  button, all manipulators displayed in the Camera view will all be hidden and only the manipulators for the selected deformation module will be displayed.




Refer to the [Deformation Basics on page 788](#) > [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) topic to learn how to make the manipulators visible in the Camera view.


## Insert Deformation Above

This  option adds a Deformation Group above the selected element. This contains all the basic deformation module that you need to begin the manual construction of a deformation chain, i.e. Deformation-Root, Deformation-Composite and Deformation-Switch. If your preferences are set to create pose deformation, the subgroups linking to each of the drawings of the selected elements will also be created. After which you can use the various Deformation Effect modules from the Module Library and start rigging.




If you are planning to rig your element using the Rigging  tool, you will not need to use this option, as the Rigging tool will do it automatically.


## Insert Deformation Under

This  option adds a Deformation Group under the selected element. This contains all the basic deformation module that you need to begin the manual construction of a deformation chain, i.e. Deformation-Root, Deformation-Composite and Deformation-Switch. If your preferences are set to create pose deformation, the subgroups linking to each of the drawings of the selected elements will also be created. After which you can use the various Deformation Effect modules from the Module Library and start rigging.



If you are planning to rig your element using the Rigging  tool, you will not need to use this option, as the Rigging tool will do it automatically.


## Create Kinematic Output

This  option adds an output to your deformation which lets you hook a separate element that you want to be linked to the deformation chain but not be part of the deformation. For example, a hand connected to a wrist or when assembling different parts of a character without having the different deformation chains influencing one another. These elements will follow movement of the chain just like a regular cut-out character hierarchy piece without being influenced by the deformation of the arm.




Refer to the topic [Assembling the Parts on page 823](#) to learn more about the use of Kinematic Output.

## Copy Resting Position to Current

The resting  position is the original setup of your skeleton, that is the position it has before undergoing any deformation. Once you have created a deformation chain, you can use the Setup Mode to adjust the position and appearance of the rig to fit the element. Once your skeleton is in place you can use the Copy Resting Position to Current option, this will reset the current frame position to the resting position which you just modified leaving everything in place once you exit the Setup Mode. If you do not use this option, the rig will undergo a deformation and revert to the position it was before you set up your skeleton, in relation to the new resting position.

## Convert Ellipse

Once you have created a deformation chain using Elliptic as the Zone of Influence type, you can select your deformer and click on this button  to convert it to a Shape type. Control points will appear around the shape making it easy to customize. This option is also available in the Rigging tool Tool Properties view.




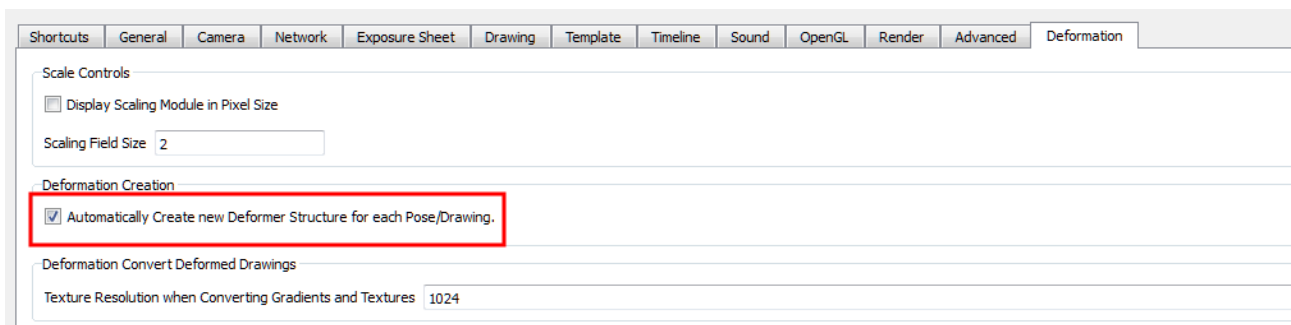
Refer to the [Zones of Influence on page 835](#) topic to learn more about using the zones of influence.



You can also use the Convert Elliptic Deformation ROI to Shape function in order to convert your Elliptic zone of influence to a shape. In the top menu, select **Animation > Deformation > Convert Elliptic Deformation ROI to Shape**. This function will create a much smaller initial zone of influence than if you were to convert it directly to a shape.

## Convert to New Drawing and Add Pose

The Convert to New Drawing and Add Pose  option will take the pose/drawing and the deformer of the selected frame and convert it to a new pose/drawing with the corresponding deformer. This option works with the default deformation preference settings. Go to **Edit > Preferences > Deformation** and make sure that Create new Deformer Structure for each Pose/Drawing is selected.



Keep the naming convention of the drawing consistent between all views or else the link of the drawing will be broken.

# Storing the Character in the Library

Once your character is rigged and all set, you can store it as a template in the Library and then reuse it in different scenes. You can create different kinds of templates.



Refer to [Storing the Character in the Library on page 742](#) to learn how to do it.

---

## Related Topics

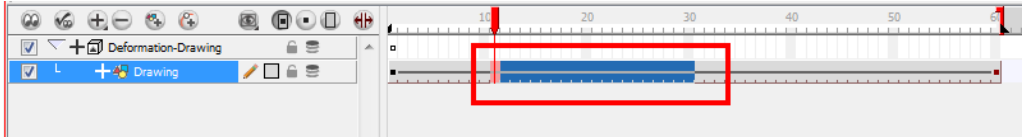
- [Creating a Basic Deformation Rig on page 779](#)
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#)

# Converting your Deformation Animation to Drawings

You may at times want to adjust your deformation animation using the drawing tools in order to perfect something, or add detail. You might also want to change the timing and set it on double frame, rather than single frame. Animate Pro offers you the option to convert your deformation animation to an image sequence.

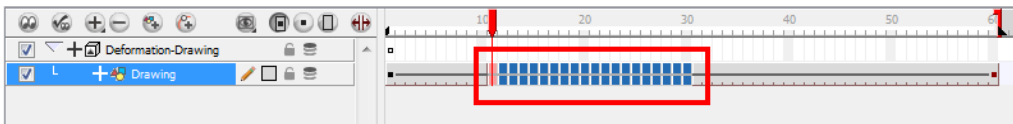
## To convert your deformation animation to drawings:

1. In the Timeline view, select the deformation frame range for which you wish to convert to drawings.



2. In the top menu, select **Animation > Deformation > Convert Deformed Drawing to Drawings**.

The Baking Drawing process window opens. Wait for the baking to complete.



## Related Topics

- [Creating a Basic Deformation Rig on page 779](#)



# Deformer Effects

There are 10 deformer effects modules. These enhance the existing deformation by applying specific types of effects to the Bone Deformer. Secondary deformers **must** be used in conjunction with the Bone Deformer to work:

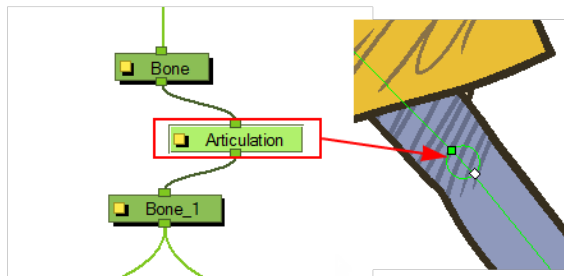
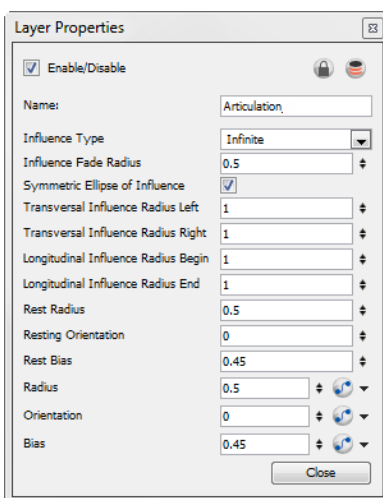
- [Articulation](#) below
- [AutoFold](#) on page 804
- [Deformation-Composite](#) on page 804
- [Deformation-Root](#) on page 806
- [Deformation-Scale](#) on page 807
- [Deformation-Switch](#) on page 810
- [Deformation-Uniform-Scale](#) on page 811
- [Fold](#) on page 812
- [Offset](#) on page 814

## Articulation

The Articulation module is used between two bones to create a joint where the limb or element will rotate.

When you create a bone structure using the Rigging  tool, an Articulation module is automatically added

between every two bones that you create. You can also add an Articulation module to your Bone deformation effect in the network to add a supplementary articulation to any existing limb previously built using the Rigging tool and Setup Mode. This module can also be used to manually build a bone structure. The Articulation module works best when inserted between two Bone modules.



If you adjust your rig in Setup Mode with the Transform tool, it will adjust these parameters for you. However, you can manually set the Articulation effect module parameters in the Layer Properties dialog:

- **Name:** Use this field to rename the Articulation module.

- **Influence Type:** Use the drop-down menu to choose between the different Zone of Influence types. This is the area of the drawing surrounding the deformer which will be influenced by the deformation.
- **Influence Fade Radius:** Enter the your Fade Radius value for the Zone of Influence. You can also use the up and down arrow buttons to select a value.
- **Symmetric Ellipse of Influence:** This option is enabled by default. When enabled, the shape of the ellipse will be symmetrical on both transversal and longitudinal radius.
  - When Symmetric Ellipse of Influence is ENABLED: The value for Transversal Influence Radius Left will define the value for the Transversal Influence Radius Right.
  - When Symmetric Ellipse of Influence is ENABLED: The Transversal Influence Radius End value will define the value for the Transversal Influence Radius Begin.



If you want to define individual values for these, then disable the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence and enter the values required for each.

---

- **Transversal Influence Radius Left:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, this field controls both the Left and Right Transversal Radius values. When the option is disabled, enter the value in this field to control the size of the Left Transversal Radius.
- **Transversal Influence Radius Right:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, the value in this field will be unused. When the option is disabled, enter the value in this field to control the size of the Right Transversal Radius.
- **Longitudinal Influence Radius Begin:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, the value in this field will be unused. When the option is disabled, enter the value in this field to control the size of the radius at the beginning of the deformer.
- **Longitudinal Influence Radius End:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, this field controls both End and Begin longitudinal radius values. When the option is disabled, enter the value in this field to control the size of the radius at the end of the deformer.
- **Rest Radius:** This is the resting radius of the articulation (size of the circle). You can enter your own radius value directly in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the radius value.
- **Resting Orientation:** This is the resting rotation angle value of the articulation. You can enter your own angle degree value in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the angle value.
- **Rest Bias:** This is the resting bias value of the articulation, which can also be seen as the steepness of the articulation. The smaller the bias value the smoother the articulation angle and the larger the bias value the more angular the articulation is. You can enter the bias value in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the value.
- **Radius:** This is the radius of the articulation (size of the circle). You can enter the radius value directly in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the radius value. When animated, this value will be connected to a function.
- **Orientation:** This is the rotation angle value of the articulation. You can enter the angle degree value in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the angle value of your choice. When animated, this value will be connected to a function.

- **Bias:** This is the bias value, which can also be seen as the steepness of the articulation. You can enter the bias value in this field or use the up and down arrow buttons to set the value of your choice. When animated, this value will be connected to a function.



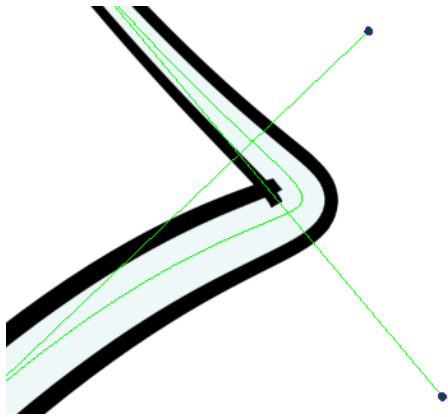
These settings can also be modified and set up in the Camera view. Refer to following topics to learn how:

- [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#)
  - [Manipulating a Deformer to Create Animation on page 784](#)
- 

## Related Topics


- [Deformer Effects on page 801](#)
- [AutoFold on the next page](#)
- [Deformation-Composite on the next page](#)
- [Deformation-Root on page 806](#)
- [Deformation-Scale on page 807](#)
- [Deformation-Switch on page 810](#)
- [Deformation-Uniform-Scale on page 811](#)
- [Fold on page 812](#)
- [Offset on page 814](#)

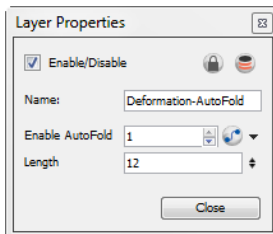
## AutoFold



The AutoFold module is used to automatically fix the folding area of a deformer so that no line overlap occurs. The AutoFold module is similar to the Fold module, but since it is automated it is optimized to fit the most standard folding point with less controls to set up.

### To use the AutoFold module:


1. In the Camera view, enable Render  mode to preview what the fold will finally look like.
2. In the Network view, navigate to the deformation effect module which is causing the unwanted overlap.
3. In the Module Library, select an AutoFold module and drag it to the Network view. Note that the AutoFold module name changes to AutoFold as it enters the Network view.
4. Connect the AutoFold module directly under the deformation effect module which is causing the unwanted line effect.
5. Click on the square yellow button to open the AutoFold Layers Properties dialog box. This is where you can customize the AutoFold settings.

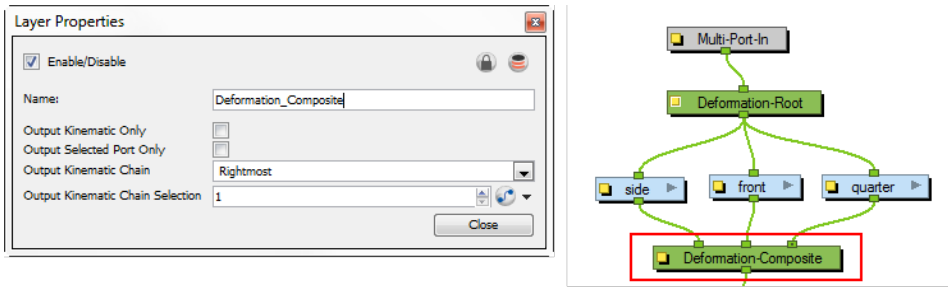


- ▶ In the Enable AutoFold field, type 1 to enable it or 0 to disable the effect. If you connect this option to a function then you can enable or disable the effect at a specific point in your animation.
- ▶ In the Length field, use the up and down arrows to set the length of the fold axis line or directly type in the desired value.
- ▶ Click on Close to close AutoFold Layer Properties dialog box.

## Deformation-Composite

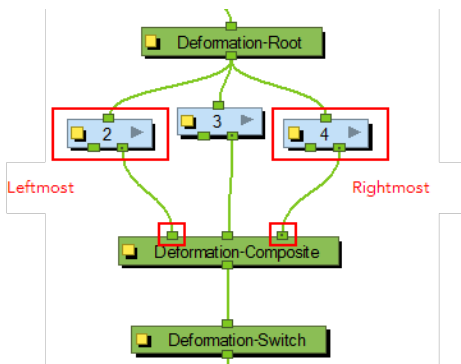
Just like a standard Composite module, the Deformation-Composite module is used to bring together all the elements that are connected to it, allowing you to customize parameters that will influence the result of the output.

The Deformation-Composite links the deformation chain to the graphic element it is related to. This is automatically added to your Deformation **Group** when creating a deformer chain with the Rigging  tool.



You can set up the following parameters in the Deformation-Composite Layer Properties dialog box:

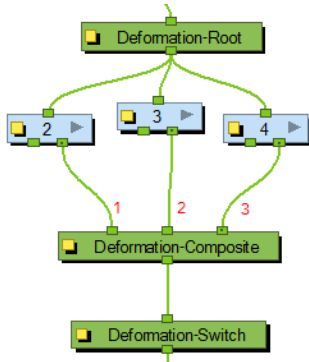
- **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
- **Output Kinematic Only:** This option is disabled by default, allowing the deformation chain to be output correctly. This option should be enabled in order to output the chain information position only. This will allow you to connect a part to the hierarchy without it undergoing the deformation applied to the rest of the chain. [See \*Assembling the Parts\* on page 823.](#)
- **Output Selected Port Only:** This option is important if you have several deformation chains for one element, as in the case of a character with multiple poses.
  - If this option is disabled, all the different chains for this element will be used at once.
  - If this option is enabled, it will only use the selected chain, which you will be able to define in the Output Kinematic Chain options of the Deformation-Composite. In some situations, this option is enabled and setup automatically (For example, when you are working with the Create Posed Deformer in Create Deformation Above/Under enabled). [See \*Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig\* on page 817.](#)
- **Output Kinematic Chain:** This parameter is used when the Output Selected Port Only option is enabled. This drop-down menu lets you select which deformation chain option to use.



- **Rightmost:** If you select this option, only the first chain connected to the right of the composite module will be used.
- **Leftmost:** If you select this option, only the first chain connected to the left of the composite module will be used.
- **Select:** If you select this option, you can define which chain to output according to the order they are connected from left to right.
- **Use First Connected Element's Exposure as Key:** This option allows the deformation effect to automatically detect which deformation chain to use (subgroup), by detecting the exposure of the first

element connected to the deformation. This option is used in the case of a multiple pose rig. [See \*Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig\* on page 817.](#)

- **Use Parent Composite’s Connected Element Exposure:** This option is used with the Output Kinematic Only option enabled. It uses the information from the parent element’s exposure to attach the child to the correct chain, following which pose is exposed. [See \*Assembling the Parts\* on page 823.](#)
- **Output Kinematic Chain Selection:** This option is used when the Output Selected Port Only option is enabled AND the Select option is used as the **Output Kinematic Chain** setting. Use this field to define which deformation chain you wish to use on your element. Select the number which corresponds to the left to right order that the chains are connected to the Deformation-Composite module.




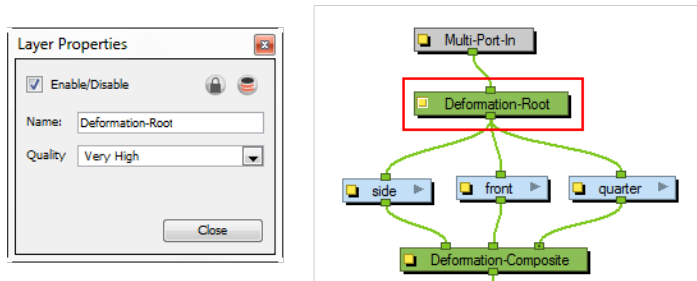
You can attach this value to a function and enable different chains over a period of time on specific frames. This value can be modified in the Timeline view by using the Deformation-Switch layer. Since the Deformation-Composite module is only visible in the Network view, the layer has a reference to this parameter enabling you to easily edit the value when working in the Timeline view



Note that if you are working with Create Posed Deformer in Create Deformation Above/Under enabled, you will not need to setup this option. The settings in the Deformation-Composite module will automatically be setup and the system will recognize which chain to use following the element’s exposure. [See \*Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig\* on page 817.](#)

## Deformation-Root

The Deformation-Root is the starting point and pivot for the deformer chain. When you use the Rigging  tool, this module is automatically added to the top of your deformation chain in the Deformation Group.



You can modify the quality level of the deformation effect in the Deformation-Root Layer Properties dialog box:

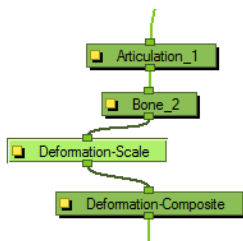
- **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
- **Quality:** The quality level decides the number of slices the graphic is split into and used when undergoing a deformation. The higher the quality level, the more slices are created and the smoother the deformation applied to the graphic. Use the drop-down menu to choose between 5 levels of quality:
  - Low
  - Medium
  - High
  - Very High
  - Extreme

## Deformation-Scale

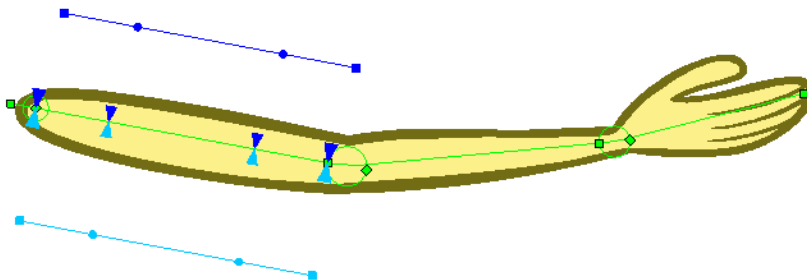
The deformers can only be scaled along the centre axis to adjust the length of the limb. The Deformation-Scale can be used in combination with a Bone or Curve deformer to scale a drawing so it follows the opposite direction of the deformer axis (the width). For example, when combined with function curves this can be used to create advanced muscle effects. All these settings can be animated over time.

**To set up the Deformation-Scale effect module:**

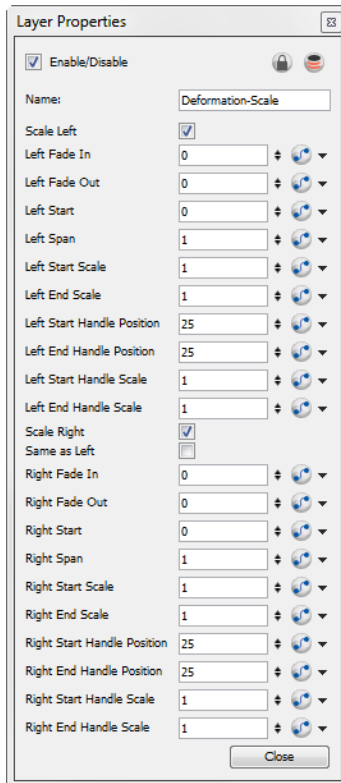
1. In the Network view, navigate inside the Deformation Group to which you want to add a Deformation-Scale effect.
2. In the Module Library, select a Deformation-Scale module and drag it to the Network view. Note that the Deformation-Scale module name changes to Deformation-Scale as it enters the Network view.
3. Connect the Deformation-Scale module directly under the lower deformer module of your chain.




4. In the Network view, select the Deformation-Scale module and select **View > Show > Control** to display its controls in the Camera view. Refer to [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) for more information about display options.



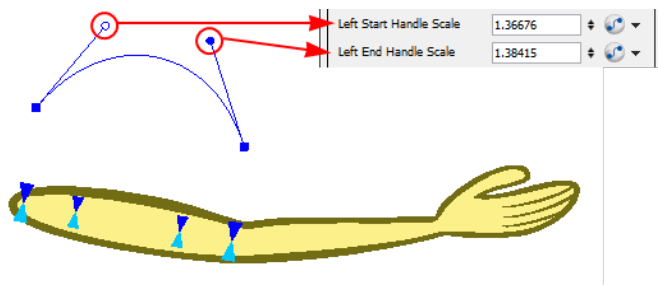
5. Click on the square yellow button of the Deformation-Scale module to open the Layer Properties dialog box.



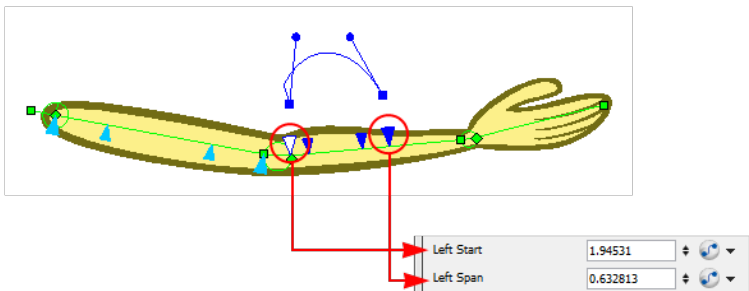
- ▶ **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
  - ▶ **Scale Left:** This option is enabled by default. It allows the left side of the deformer to be scaled. In the Camera view, the dark blue controls are used for the left side. If you disable this option, the controls will be hidden and no scaling deformation will occur for this side.
  - ▶ **Left Fade In:** The value is set to 0 no fade, by default. Increase the value to add a fade effect to smoothen the transition between the starting point of the scale and the area situated before it.
  - ▶ **Left Fade Out:** The value is set to 0 no fade, by default. Increase the value to add a fade effect to smooth the transition between the Left Span point of the scale and the area situated after it.
  - ▶ This series of options controls the left side scaling deformation.
  - ▶ **Scale Right:** This option is enabled by default. It allows the right side of the deformer to be scaled. In the Camera view, the light blue controls are used for the right side. If you disable this option, the controls will be hidden and no scaling deformation will occur for this side.
  - ▶ **Same as Left:** This option is disabled by default. It means that the left and right sides will use different scaling parameters. If you enable this option, the right side controls will be hidden in the Camera view and the left parameters will be used for both side for a symmetrical scaling effect.
  - ▶ **Right Fade In:** The value is set to 0 no fade, by default. Increase the value to add a fade effect to smoothen the transition between the starting point of the scale and the area situated before it.
  - ▶ **Right Fade Out:** The value is set to 0 no fade, by default. Increase the value to add a fade effect to smoothen the transition between the **Right Span** point of the scale and the area situated after it.
  - ▶ This series of options controls the left side scaling deformation.
6. In the Layer Properties dialog box, you can set up all the parameters.
  7. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
  8. In the Camera view, setup the Deformation-Scale module (you can also setup these parameters directly in the Layer Properties):



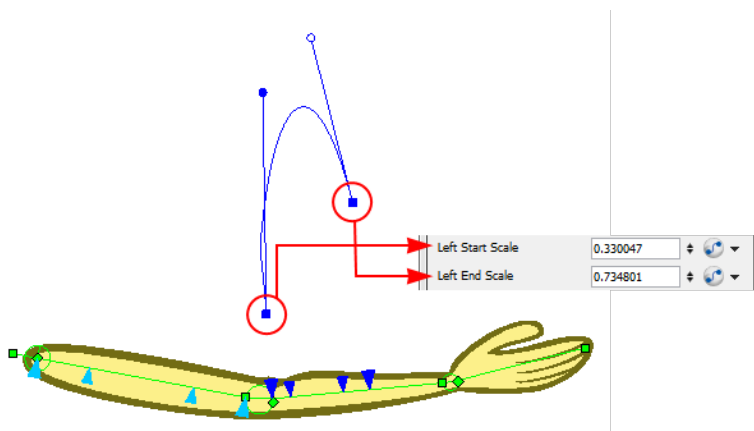
- ▶ To modify the scaling value of the curve, drag the two control handles away and forward from the deformation axis.



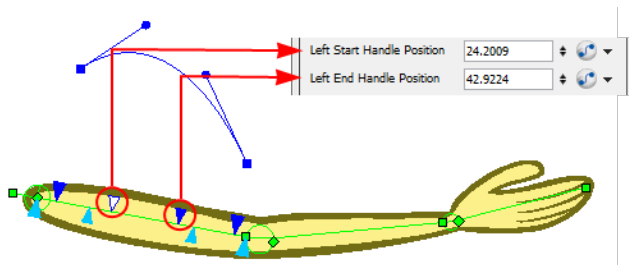
- ▶ Move the first blue arrow along the deformer's central axis to setup the starting point of the Deformation-Scale and the last arrow to setup the length (span) of the transformation.




- ▶ Drag the square scaling curve control points away and forward the deformer axis to setup the scaling value at the starting and ending point.



- ▶ Drag the two middle blue arrows along the deformer's centre axis to setup the position of the curve handles.



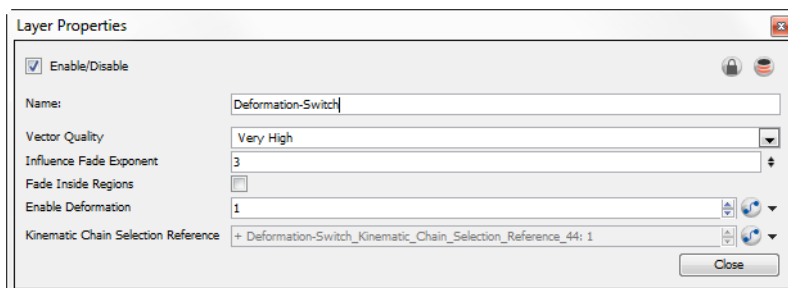
9. You can animate the different parameters of the Deformation-Scale module by enabling the Animate  mode in the Tools toolbar and adding keyframes. In this case, different values will be connected to functions.



If you feel the controls are too far away from the deformer, you can change the default display of the Deformation-Scale and Deformation-Uniform-Scale controls in the Preferences panel to bring them closer. Refer to [Deformation](#) on page 846 to learn more.

## Deformation-Switch

The Deformation-Switch module acts as a On and Off switch for the deformation chain. It is also the module which controls the Zone of Influence Fade area. The Deformation-Switch also displays a Kinematic Chain Selection Reference option, this allows you to modify the chain selection directly in the Timeline view.



- **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
- **Vector Quality:** The quality level influences the quality of the deformation effect when your drawings are stretched and deformed:
  - Low
  - Medium
  - High
  - Very High
  - Extreme
- **Influence Fade Exponent:** Use the up and down arrows to modify the exponent value, or enter the exact value in the field.
  - A value of 1 is similar to a linear curve.
  - A higher value will result in an ease-in type of curve.
  - A lower value will result in an ease-out type of curve.
- **Fade Inside Region:** This option is disabled by default. The fade effect will occur outside of the Zone of Influence. You can enable this option to have the fade effect inside the Zone of Influence.
- **Enable Deformation:** This field acts as an On/Off switch for the deformation. The value of this field is set to 1 by default, this means the deformation is enabled. You can enter a value of 0 to disable it.
- **Kinematic Chain Selection Reference:** This parameter determines which chain is selected and used at a specific frame. It is a reference to the option you can find in the Deformation-Composite module. Having

this reference in the Deformation-Switch module allows you to use and modify the chain selection value directly in the Timeline view since the Deformation-Composite module is only visible in the Network view.



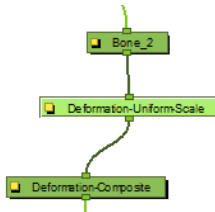
Refer to [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#) > [Zones of Influence on page 835](#) to learn more about Zones of Influence.

## Deformation-Uniform-Scale

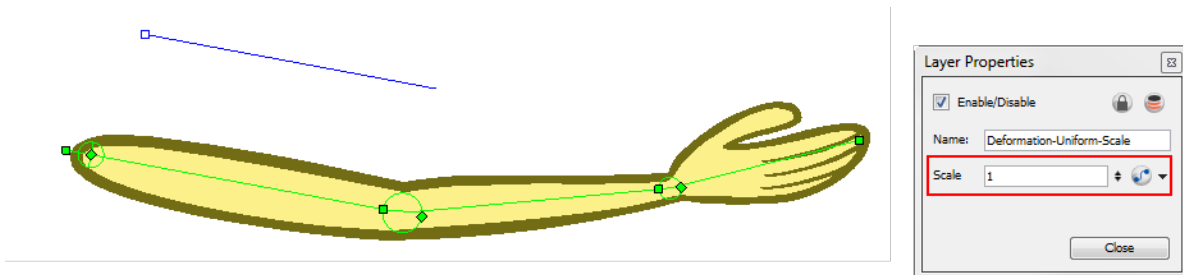
The Deformation-Uniform-Scale effect module is used to create the squash and stretch effect on your animated deformation rig. It will let you scale the rigged element on the opposite axis of the deformer (width).

**To use the Deformation-Uniform-Scale module:**

1. In the Network view, navigate inside the Deformation Group to which you want to add a Deformation-Uniform-Scale module to.
2. In the Module Library, select an Deformation-Uniform-Scale module and drag it to the Network view. Note that the Deformation-Uniform-Scale module name changes to Deformation-Uniform-Scale as it enters the Network view.
3. Connect the Deformation-Uniform-Scale module directly below the lowest deformation module in your chain.



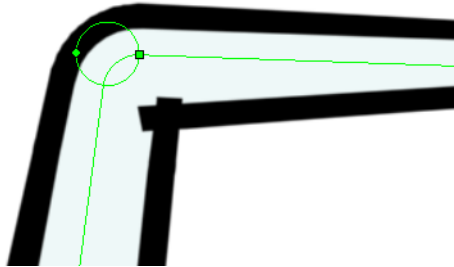
4. In the Network view, select the Deformation-Uniform-Scale module.
5. To display the Uniform Scale controls in the Camera view, or press [Shift] + [F11]. Refer to [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) for more display options.
6. In the Camera view, grab the handle and drag it to resize the width of the limb. You can also use the Scale field to type in a specific value. This parameters can be animated over time.



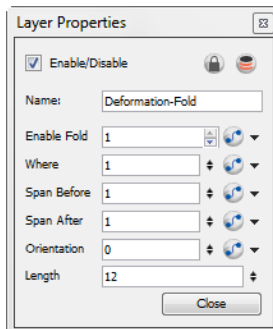


If you feel the controls are too far away from the deformer, you can change the default display of the Deformation-Scale and Deformation-Uniform-Scale controls in the Preferences panel to bring them closer. Refer to [Deformation Preferences on page 845](#) > [Deformation on page 846](#) to learn more.


## Fold

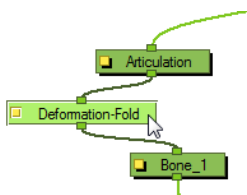



The Fold is used when bending a deformation further than the drawing is able to take it. This may result in an unwanted overlap of the line art at the junction of the articulation or deformation. The Fold will let you control certain parameters that will help eliminate the unwanted line effect.



### To set up the Deformation-Fold effect module:

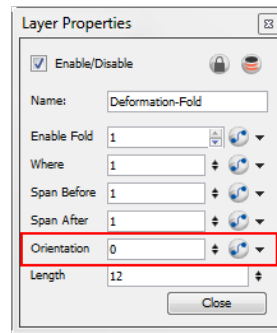
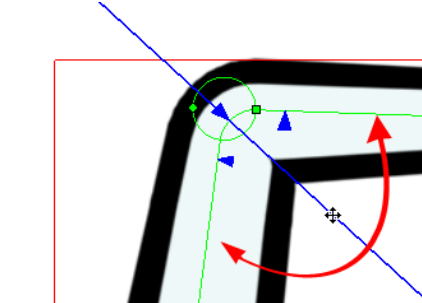
1. In the Camera view, enable Render  mode to preview the fold. This will help you setup the Deformation-Fold effect as accurately as possible.
2. In the Network view, navigate to the deformation effect module causing the unwanted overlap. (In this case, an articulation)
3. In the Module Library, select a Fold module and drag it to the Network view. Note that the Fold module name changes to Deformation-Fold as it enters the Network view.
4. Connect the Deformation-Fold module directly under the deformation effect module which is causing the unwanted line effect.



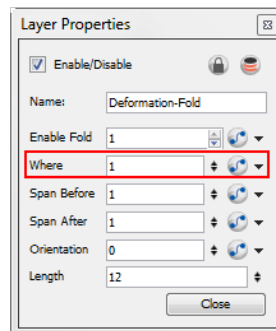
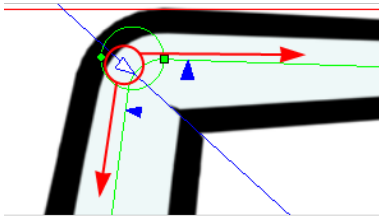
5. In the Network view, select the Deformation-Fold module and select **View > Show > Control** to display its controls in the Camera view. Refer to [Displaying the Deformation Controls on page 788](#) for more display options.
6. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.

7. In the Camera view, setup the Deformation-Fold (you can also set these parameters directly in the **Deformation-Fold** Layer Properties):

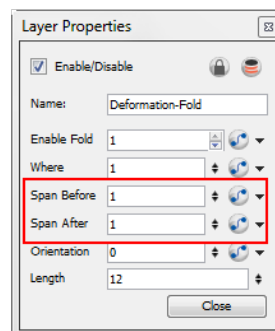
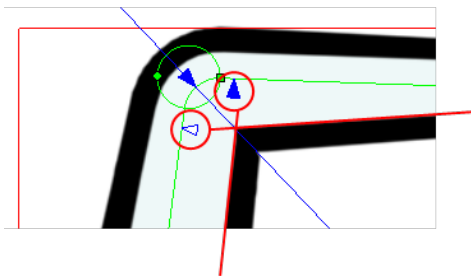
- ▶ Click on the fold axis and rotate it to match the angle of the bend articulation.



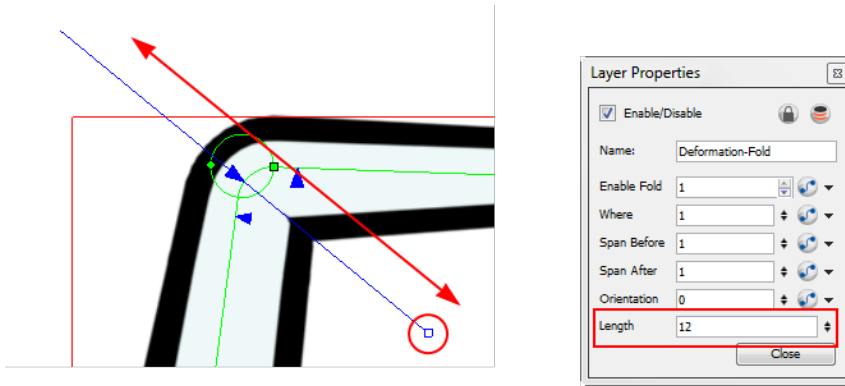
- ▶ Use the middle arrow to position the axis along the deformer's central line. It should be in the corner of the bending area.




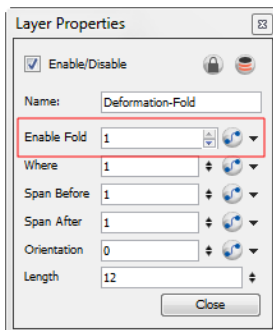
- ▶ Use the right and left arrows to control the appearance of the two overlapping lines.




- ▶ Use the axis' square handle to elongate or shorten the length of the axis.




8. If your character moves a lot and you need to adjust the fold at different positions to follow the limb animation, you can setup the Deformation-Fold effect in a different position over time. Do this by enabling the Animation  mode in the Tools toolbar and adding keyframes. In this case, the different values will be connected to functions.
9. You can also enable and disable the Deformation-Fold effect over time by connecting a function to the Enable Fold parameter in the Layer Properties. A value of 1 enables the effect, a value of 0 disables the effect.

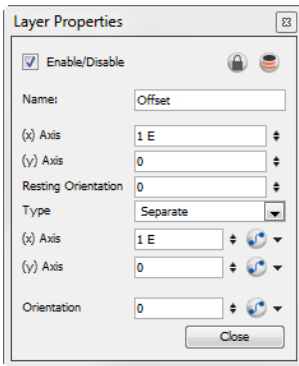













## Offset


The Offset module lets you position the root of your deformation chain. It is automatically added to your Deformation Group when you create a deformation rig using the Rigging  tool.



When you move your chain using Setup Mode , the values at the top section of Layer Properties will be

updated to follow the new resting position. If you move the chain without being in the Setup Mode, you will be able to animate the active position of the chain over time, in that case the bottom values will be connected to functions.



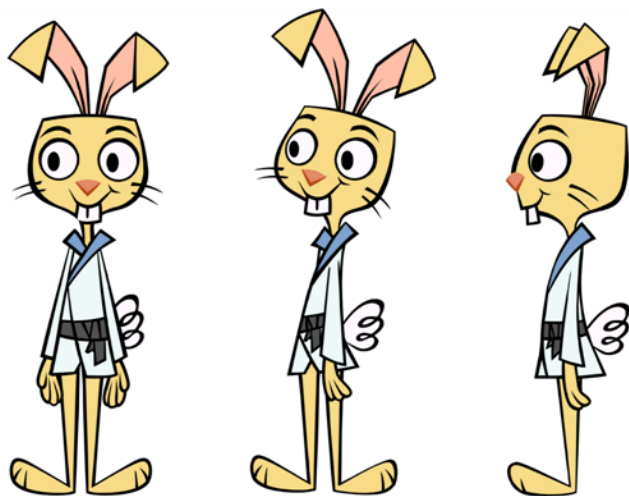
- **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
- **(x) Axis:** This value sets the resting position of the Deformation-Root on the X (east/west) axis. You can enter the value, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose a value, or use the Transform  tool while in Setup Mode  to reposition the deformation chain.
- **(y) Axis:** This value sets the resting position of the Deformation-Root on the Y (north/south) axis. You can enter the value, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose a value, or use the Transform  tool while in Setup Mode  to reposition the deformation chain.
- **Resting Orientation:** This value sets the rotation angle of the resting position of the Deformation-Root. You can enter the angle, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose the desired value, or use the Transform  tool while in Setup Mode  to rotate the deformation chain.
- **Type:** Use this drop-down menu to choose the type of coordinates you want to use:
  - **Separate:** The two coordinates are set separately. If they are connected to a function, each one will have its own function curve. This is the default setting.
  - **2D Path:** The two coordinates are set together within a single 2D path function.
- **(x) Axis:** This option is only available when the Type is set to Separate. It is used to set the active position value of the Deformation-Root on the X (east/west) axis. You can enter the value, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose a value, or use the Transform  tool when Setup Mode is NOT enabled to move the deformation chain. Remember, that if you want to add a keyframe, you need to enable Animation  mode from the Tools toolbar.
- **(y) Axis:** This option is available when the Type is set to Separate. It is used to set the active position value of the Deformation-Root on the Y (north/south) axis. You can enter the value, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose a value or use the Transform  tool when Setup Mode is NOT enabled to move the deformation chain. Remember, that if you want to add a keyframe, you need to enable Animation  mode from the Tools toolbar.
- **Path:** This option is only available when the Type is set to 2D Path. It is used to set the active position value of both Y and X axis. Use the Transform  tool when Setup Mode is NOT enabled to move the

deformation chain along the 2D path. Remember, that if you want to add a keyframe, you need to enable the Animation  mode from the Tools toolbar.

- **Orientation:** This value sets the rotation angle of the active position of the Deformation-Root. You can enter the angle, use the up and down arrow buttons to choose the desired value, or use the Transform  tool when Setup Mode is NOT enabled to rotate the deformation chain. Remember, that if you want to add a keyframe, you need to enable Animation  mode from the Tools toolbar.



# Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig



Creating and rigging a Full Character Turnaround is a complex process, but it can easily be achieved by following the step-by-step process explained in this chapter.

For a more simplified process, you can keep each view of your character separate on the Timeline or in the Network view. If you create separate rigs for each view, then you can simply turn on or off the exposure of each view in the Timeline when needed. In this case, you can simplify the process by not having to create posed deformers, or use drawing pivots.

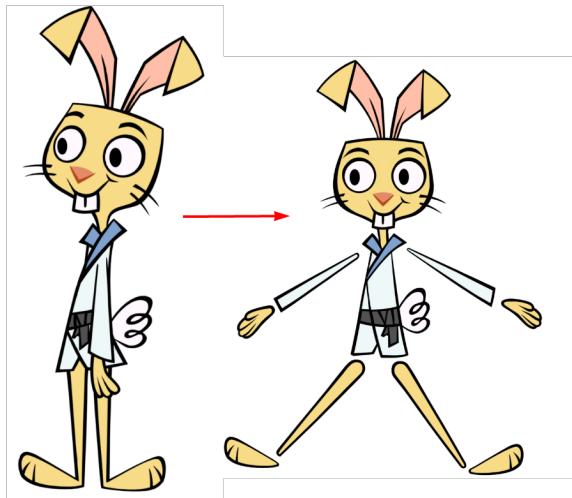
However if you want to keep the entire character, with all views, in one group/rig on your Timeline, then you can follow the process described here.

## Related Topics

- [Preparing the Character below](#)
- [Renaming the Drawings on page 820](#)
- [Rigging the Parts on page 821](#)
- [Assembling the Parts on page 823](#)

## Preparing the Character

You need to prepare your character before building a puppet's deformation skeleton. The best way to proceed is to have the limbs on separate drawing layers, this is similar to a standard cut-out puppet preparation, but uses less pieces. Since this is a more advanced type of puppet you should keep the character's head, hands, feet and facial features on a separate layer from the body, arms and legs. This will avoid the extremities from being distorted if the limbs are stretched during an action. It will also let you use the drawing substitution to swap hands, feet, eyes and mouth poses during animation.



There are many ways to break down a cut-out puppet. The example described in this chapter uses these pieces:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Body</li> <li>• Head</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Left Ear</li> <li>• Left Eye</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right Ear</li> <li>• Right Eye</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mouth</li> <li>• Nose</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Left Eyebrow</li> <li>• Left Arm</li> <li>• Left Hand</li> <li>• Left Leg</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right Eyebrow</li> <li>• Right Arm</li> <li>• Right Hand</li> <li>• Right Leg</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Left Foot</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right Foot</li> </ul>



Refer to [Swapping Images on page 1057](#) to learn more about drawing substitution.

Refer to the following topics to learn how to breakdown your character:

- [Importing a Model on page 683](#)
- [Relative Sizes on page 685](#)
- [Studying the Model on page 687](#)
- [Breaking Down the Character on page 698](#)
- [Adding Extra Drawings on page 730](#)

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on the previous page](#)
- [Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference on the facing page](#)
- [Renaming the Drawings on page 820](#)
- [Rigging the Parts on page 821](#)

- [Assembling the Parts](#) on page 823

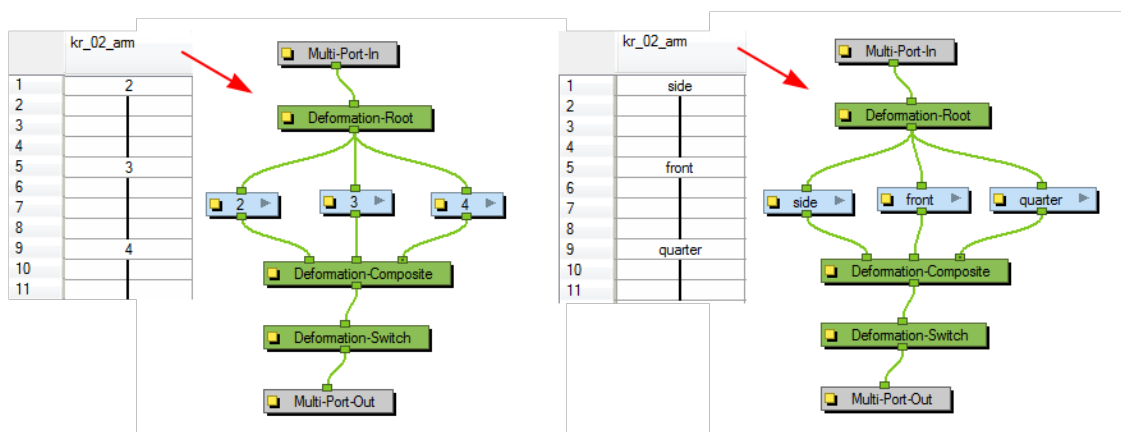
## Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference



The first thing you should do when rigging your character turnaround is to make sure to enable the Create Posed Deformer in Create Deformation Above/Under preference. This preference is located in the Preferences panel, under the Deformation tab and is enabled by default.

When rigging with this preference enabled, you will notice that the structure of the deformation inside the Deformation Group is slightly different than it is when executing a basic rig with the preference disabled.

Each pose you rig within the same element is part of a separate subgroup all of which are gathered together by a Deformation-Composite module, each subgroup is called by its drawing number or name. These subgroups cannot be renamed once the rig is complete, as the name of the group and drawing is the link between them. If you kept the default drawing numbering 1, 2, 3, etc., your groups will be called 1, 2, 3, and so on. For this reason, you might want to rename your drawing before you start rigging so that the names correspond to the poses, for example: front, side, quarter, etc.



Refer to [Deformation Preferences](#) on page 845 to know more about this preference.

Refer to the next topic [Renaming the Drawings](#) on the next page to learn how to rename the drawings.

### Related Topics

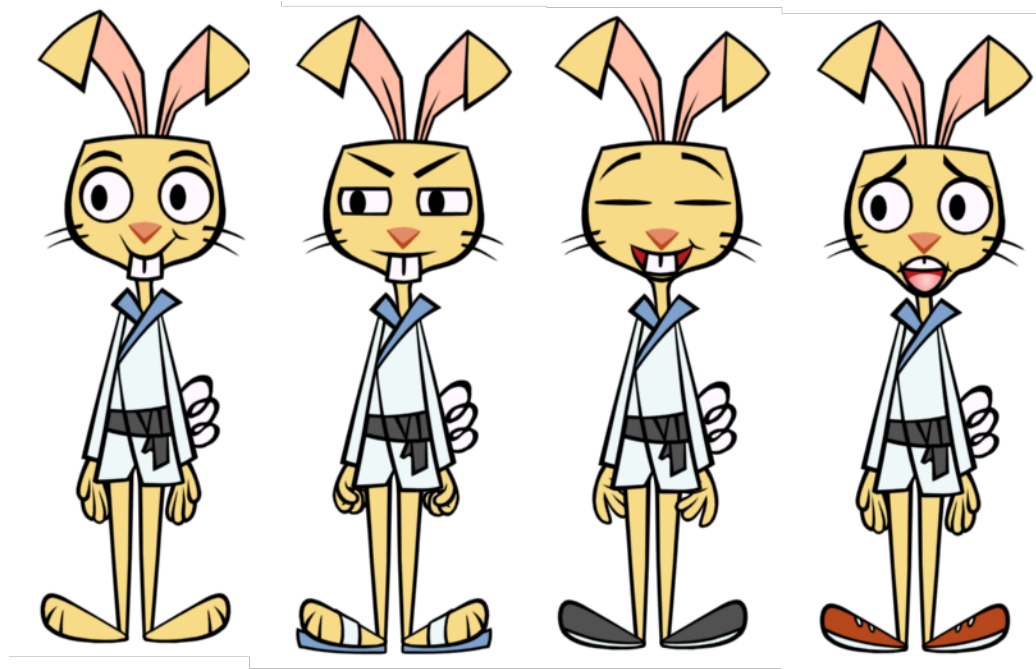
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig](#) on page 817
- [Preparing the Character](#) on page 817
- [Renaming the Drawings](#) on the next page
- [Rigging the Parts](#) on page 821
- [Assembling the Parts](#) on page 823

## Renaming the Drawings

Although renaming your drawings is not mandatory, it can prove useful in maintaining a clear project Network structure. If you leave your drawing as is and do not rename it, your deformation subgroups will be automatically named according to the drawing numbering. However, you should consider renaming, especially if you have several drawings using the same rig within an element.



If you plan to have several drawings using the same rig within an element, for instance, drawing substitution, then it is recommended you rename these extra drawings before starting your rig, or you will find that extra unused subgroups will be created automatically.



To rename drawings to link them to the same chain:

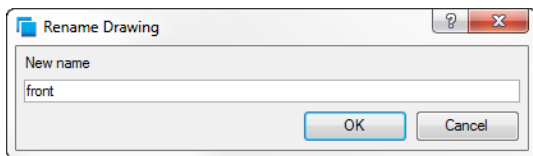
1. In the Xsheet view, locate the column corresponding to the element which includes several drawings that will use the same chain, for example a character that has several costumes which you plan to swap by using drawing substitution. In this case, the rabbit's feet, which will all use the same deformation curve.

	kr_D2_foot	kr_D2
1	f1	
2	f2	
3	f3	
4	f4	
5		
6		
7		
8		

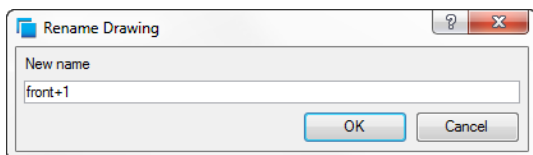


2. In the Xsheet view, select the first drawing of the column. This is the one that will be rigged.

3. Select **Drawing > Rename Drawing** or press [Ctrl] + [D] (Windows) or [⌘] + [D] (Mac OS X).
4. In the Rename Drawing dialog box, type a relevant new name for the drawing and click OK to validate.



5. In the Xsheet view, select the next drawing in the column and select **Rename > Rename Drawing**.
6. In the Rename Drawing dialog box, type the same name that you gave the first drawing of the column, exactly as it was written and add a plus sign and any number. For example, if the first drawing is named **front**, the subsequent drawings will need to be named: **front+1**, **front+2**, **front+3**, etc.



You must strictly adhere to this rule, if you want the extra drawings to be linked to the deformation chain of the main drawing.

7. Repeat step 5 and step 6 for each subsequent drawing that needs to be linked to the same deformation chain.

## Related Topics

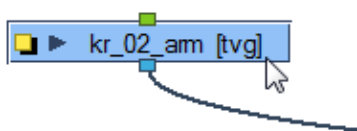
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#)
- [Preparing the Character on page 817](#)
- [Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference on page 819](#)
- [Rigging the Parts below](#)
- [Assembling the Parts on page 823](#)


## Rigging the Parts

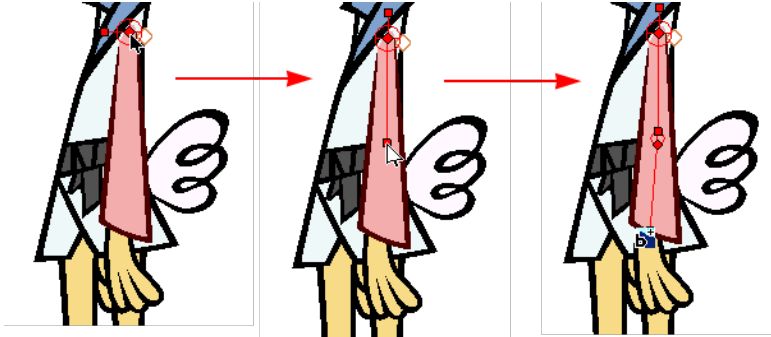
You can start your deformation rig by creating the Bones on the character's arms and legs.

**To rig the arms and legs of the character turnaround:**

1. In the Timeline view, make sure that the time marker is set to the frame displaying your first drawing.
2. In the Network view, select your character's arm or leg.





3. In the Deformation toolbar, select the Rigging  tool.
4. To create a Bones and Articulations structure:
  - ▶ Click on the extremity corresponding to the shoulder or hip of the limb and release to create the first rotation point.
  - ▶ Click again in the middle of the limb where the elbow or knee is located to create the first articulation.
  - ▶ Click one last time at the end of the limb, where the wrist or ankle rests to create the second bone.



5. In the Timeline view, move the time marker to display the frame with the next pose of that drawing element.
6. Repeat the previous steps until all of the element's different poses are rigged, then begin the whole process again for each limb. Although it is recommended to keep consistency in your rigging of different poses in the same element, you can choose a different type of rig for each pose if necessary.



Once you create a chain, you can modify its position and orientation using the Setup  Mode and Transform  tool. Refer to the topic [Optimizing the Skeleton](#) on page 831 to learn how.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig](#) on page 817
- [Preparing the Character](#) on page 817
- [Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference](#) on page 819
- [Renaming the Drawings](#) on page 820
- [Assembling the Parts](#) on the facing page

## Linking Extra Drawings to a Single Rig

When you have several drawings that will use exactly the same rig there is a special naming rule you need to follow so that the same rig is linked to these different drawings. This can happen when you have drawing substitution in this layer.




You should rename your extra drawings **BEFORE** rigging the main drawing of your element. If you do not do this an unnecessary subgroup will be created for each extra drawing. Refer to [Renaming the Drawings on page 820](#) to learn how.

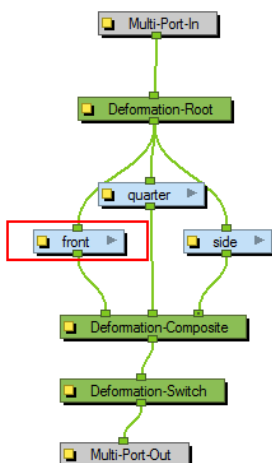
Once your drawings are correctly named, you can start the rigging process.

#### To link extra drawings to a single rig:

1. In the Timeline view, make sure that the time marker is on the first frame, or the frame displaying the main drawing.
2. In the Network view, select your element's module.



3. In the Deformation toolbar, select the Rigging  tool.
4. In the Camera view, build your Curve deformation chain. Refer to [Rigging the Parts on page 821](#).
5. To switch to the next drawing or press [G]. You will notice that the subsequent drawings that are part of the link already have a deformation chain. This is the same as you just created for the main drawing.
6. If you look in the Deformation group of your element in the Network view, you will notice there are no subgroups created for the extra drawings, they are all automatically linked to the main drawing's deformation chain.



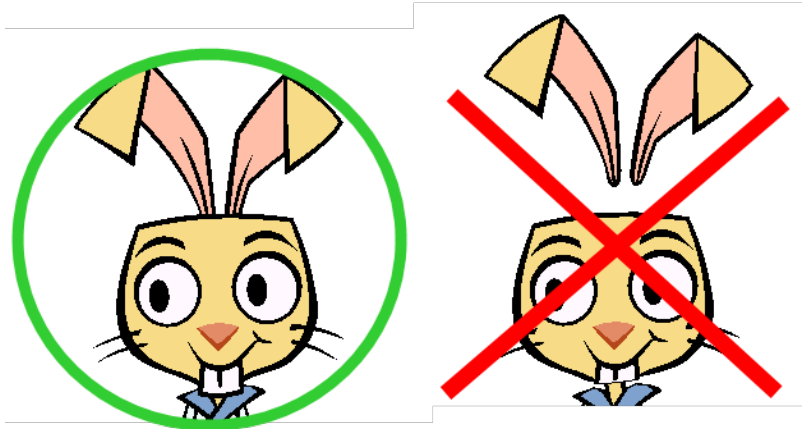
#### Related Topics

- [Rigging the Parts on page 821](#)

## Assembling the Parts

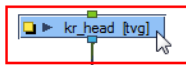
After you have created all the deformation chains for your character you will need to assemble these separate body parts into a puppet.

To avoid problems such as having the head stretched by the neck deformers or a hand modified by the neck and body deformers, it is recommended to put them on a separate layer. When they are on a separate layer, rig them using a Kinematic output coming directly from your Deformation Group, instead of the normal hierarchy connection between modules. This will let you connect a part directly to it, so it will only be influenced by the position of its parent and will not undergo any deformation. This is recommended as a method of optimizing the functionality of the puppet and also as a way of avoiding any unwanted distortion effects for any assembled parts.

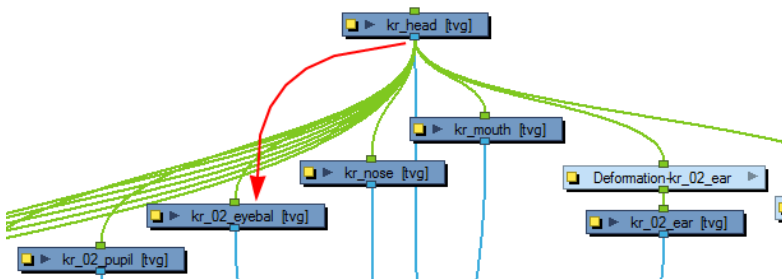


**To assemble the puppet's parts:**

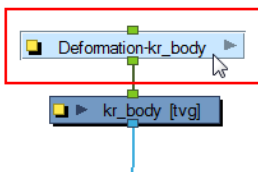
1. In the Network view, locate the puppet's head. You can also select the head in the Camera view using the Transform tool and then use [O] in the Network view to use the Centre on Selection feature.




2. If you did not add a deformation effect to this module, you can connect all the facial feature modules as it's children, just as you would normally do with a typical cut-out character rig.



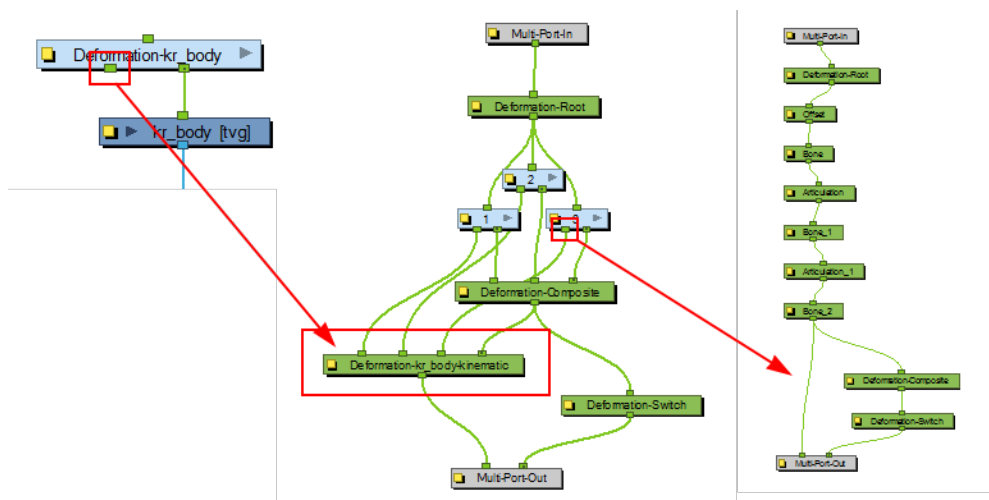
1. In the Network view, locate the body of your puppet. Select the Deformation Group linked to the character's body module.



2. In the Deformation toolbar, click on the Create Kinematic Output  button.




This will add a Deformation-Composite module inside your Deformation Group. This is setup to create a special output which you can use to connect your modules and create the puppet's hierarchy. It also automatically creates the necessary connections, so that every pose is part of the setup. The deformation will not influence the modules that are connected to this output.

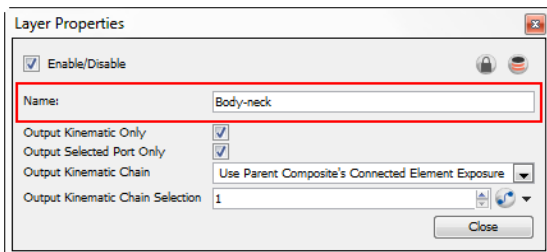


By default, the last deformer module of each deformation chain is connected to this new Deformation-Composite. The extremity of this deformer is where the child element will be attached. In this case, the last bone is the neck.

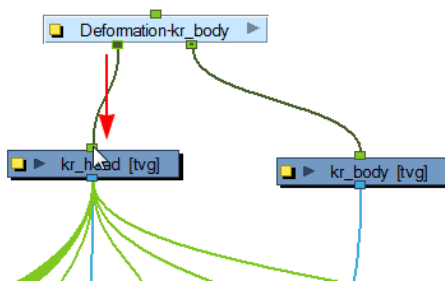



If your network becomes tangled, select the lower module of the tree and click on the Order Network Up  button. Leave the settings to default and click OK.

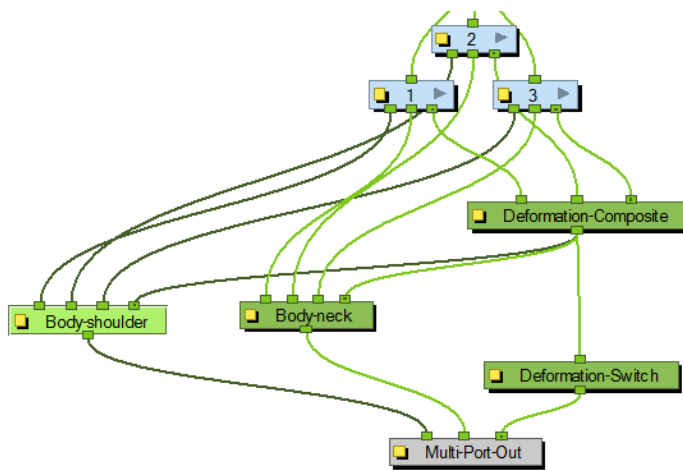
- As there are going to be several parts connected to this body Deformation Group we recommend that you rename the new Composite module with a relevant name, Click on the module's square yellow button to display the Deformation-Composite module's Layer Properties.



- Rename the module using the Name field and click on Close to validate it.
- In the Network view, exit the Deformation Group and go back to Top level.
- Connect the new bottom port of the body Deformation Group module into the top port of the head module.

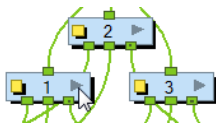


7. In the Network view, select the body Deformation Group module again and click on the Create Kinematic Output  button to create another kinematic output.
8. Enter the Deformation Group and rename the newly created Deformation-Composite module. In this example: body-shoulder.



By default, the last deformer of each subgroup is linked to this new Deformation-Composite module. In this case, this Composite will act as the shoulder attachment for the two arms. If the connections are left as is, the arms will follow the movements of the neck and the head. For this reason, it is important to select the correct Bone or Articulation.

9. In the Network view, enter the first deformation subgroup.

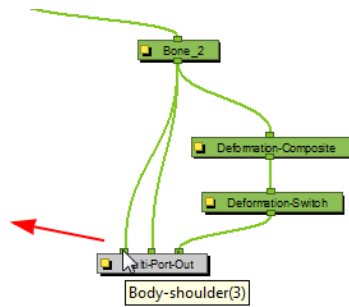


10. Inside the first subgroup, locate the connection you have to break.



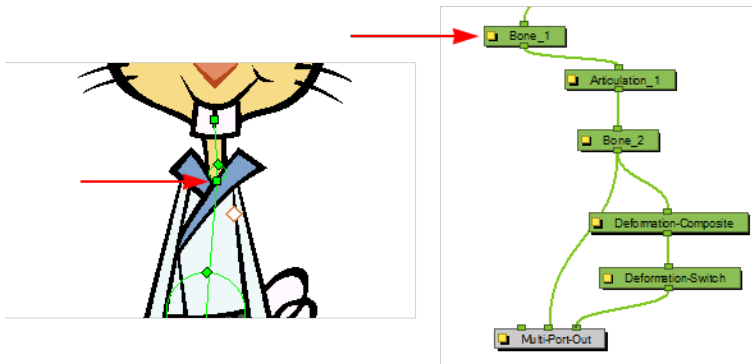
If you pause the cursor over the top of a node on the Multi-Port-Out module, a tool tip window will pop up, displaying information about the module and port number it is connected to.

In this example, we need to break the connection to the Body-shoulder module. Click on the node and pull out the cable to disconnect it.

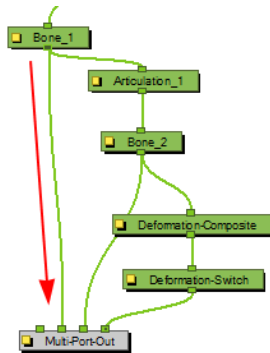


You will notice that the disconnected node will still be visible on the Multi-Port-Out module, this is because a cable is still connected to the output port outside of the subgroup. This will be removed at a later step.

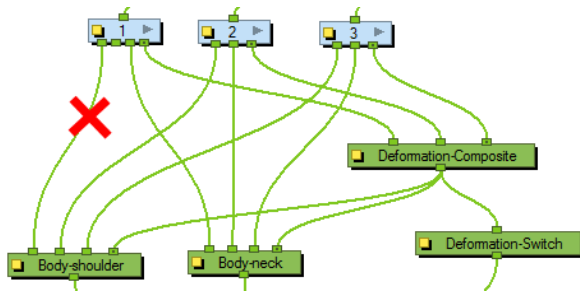
11. Locate the Bone, Articulation which you want to connect the arms to and find it's module in the deformation chain. In this example, the arms should be connected to the previous bone in the chain. They should not be connected to the articulation in between, because the arms would follow the rotation of the articulation instead of following the steady position of the shoulders.



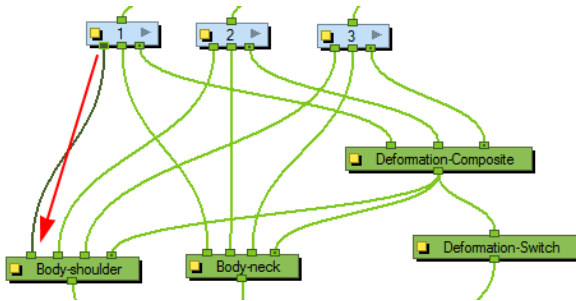
12. Click on the desired deformer module bottom node and drag the cable to the Multi-Port-Out module to create a connection.



13. Exit the subgroup and go back to the body Deformation Group.
14. Disconnect the current unused connection between your first subgroup and the shoulder Deformation-Composite module. This will also remove the empty node on the Multi-Port-Out module inside your subgroup.



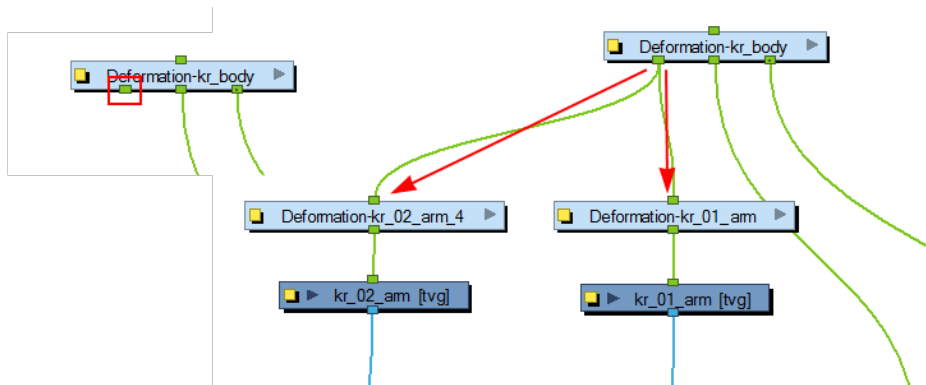
15. Connect the remaining bottom node of your subgroup to the shoulder Deformation-Composite module.



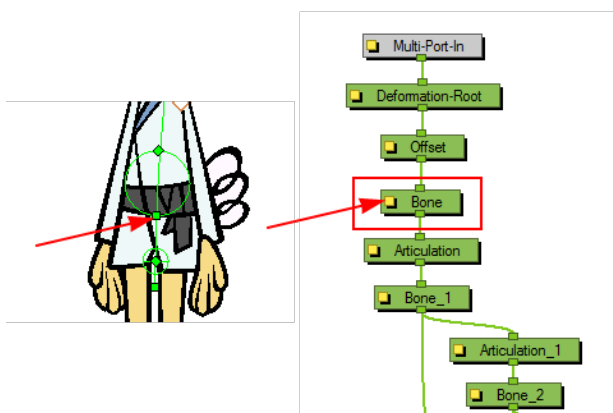
16. Repeat Step 9 to Step 15 for each subgroup contained in your body Deformation Group.

17. In the Network view, go back to the Top level.

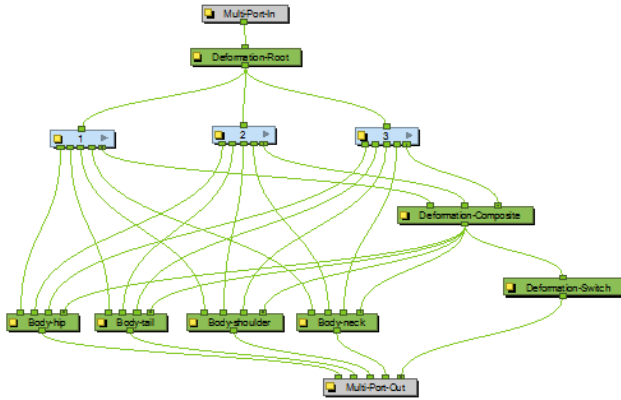
18. Connect the two arms to the available bottom node of the body Deformation Group.



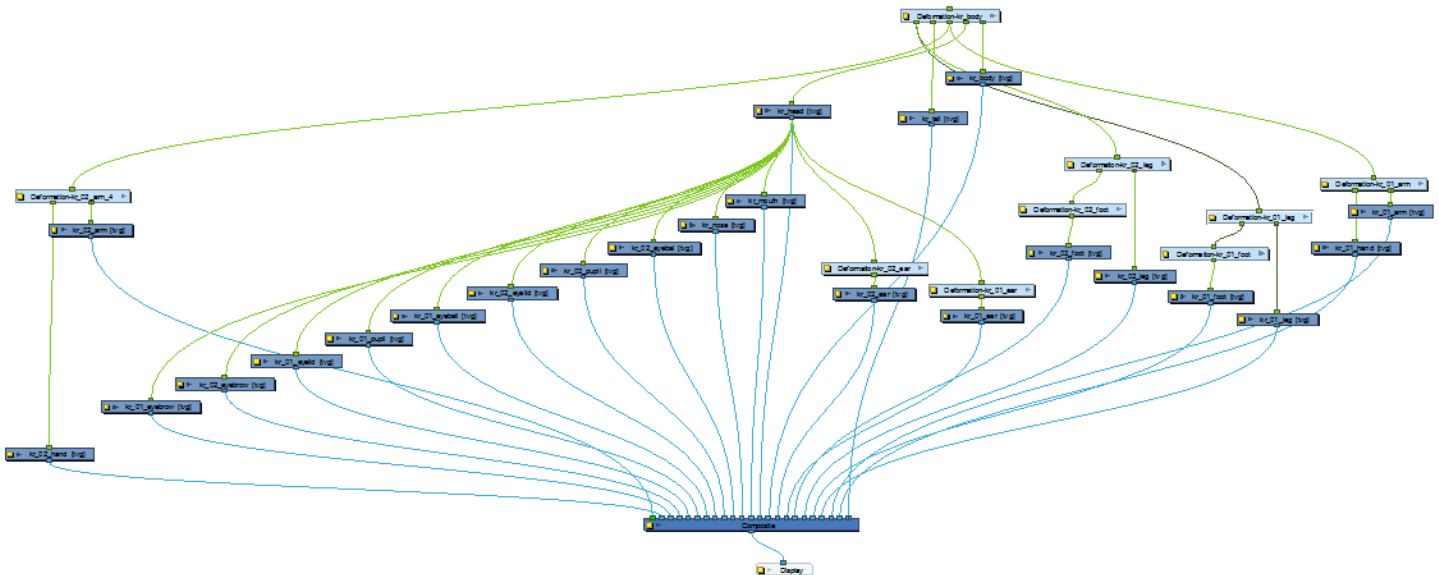
19. Repeat Step 7 to Step 18 for the legs and any other parts that needs to be assembled. Remember to link the deformer modules used for the hips to the Kinematic output.



When you have completed this process the body Deformation Group should look similar to this.



And the final network should look similar to this.



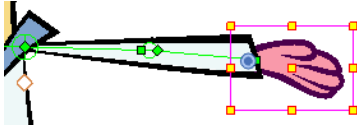
## Related Topics

- [Setting Up the Pivots](#) below
- [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig](#) on page 817
- [Preparing the Character](#) on page 817
- [Enabling the Posed Deformer Preference](#) on page 819
- [Renaming the Drawings](#) on page 820
- [Rigging the Parts](#) on page 821

## Setting Up the Pivots

When building a cut-out puppet with deformation effects each part controlled by a deformation chain will automatically rotate from the Deformation-Root point, which acts like a pivot. Because it is unlikely that every

piece of your character will be rigged with a deformation chain, you must set pivot points.




Refer to [Setting the Pivots on page 732](#) to learn how to set pivot points.

---

## Related Topics

- [Assembling the Parts on page 823](#)

# Optimizing the Skeleton

Once your character is rigged and assembled, you can modify the deformation chain's position and shape in the Camera view by using the Setup Mode  to optimize it.

You can also modify the area which will be influenced by the deformer by setting up the zones of influence.




You can modify the chains and zones of influence as you create each of them, but it can also be done at any time.

## Related Topics

- [Setting Up The Resting Position](#) below
- [Zones of Influence](#) on page 835

## Setting Up The Resting Position

Once you have a deformation chain created, you can optimize its positioning to fit the element it will deform. This task is done in the Setup Mode . The Setup Mode lets you set the resting position of the deformers to

make sure it is at the optimal position.

The Bone and Articulation deformers have different sets of controllers:

- [Setting up a Bone and Articulation Chain](#) below

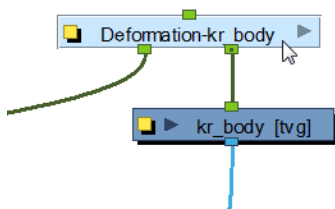
## Related Topics



- [Optimizing the Skeleton](#) above

## Setting up a Bone and Articulation Chain

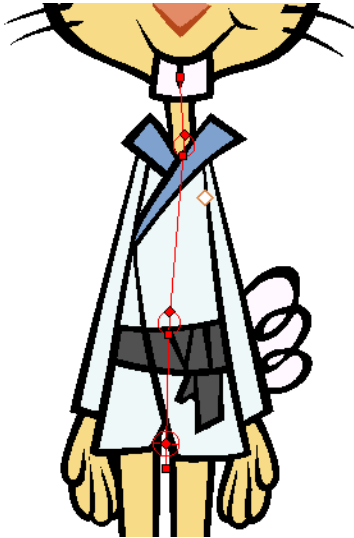
To setup a bone and articulation deformation chain:


1. In the Network view, select the Deformation Group you want to setup.

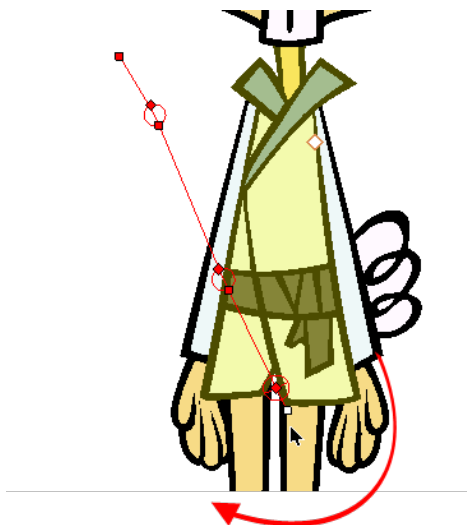


2. In the Deformation toolbar, click on the Show Selected Deformers and Hide All Others  button to display the deformer controls in the Camera view. This also hides all the deformer controls that were displayed.
3. In the Deformation toolbar, enable the Setup Mode .

The chain will turn from light green to red. If the chain is displayed in green, it means the Setup Mode is disabled. Click the button once more to enable it.

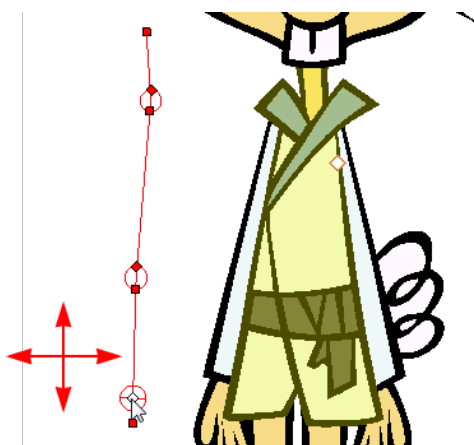


4. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
5. In the Camera view, setup the deformation chain.
  - Use the Pivot rotation handle to change the angle of the chain.

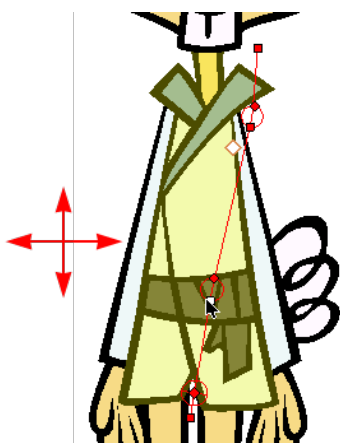


- Use the Pivot centre control point to reposition the entire chain.

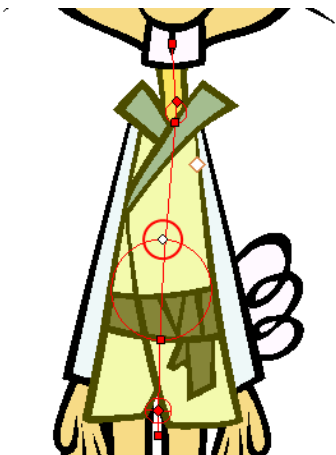




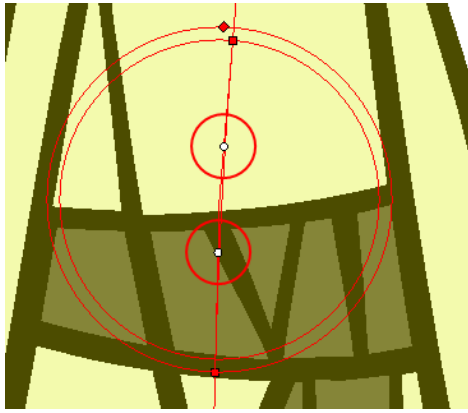
- Use the Articulation control point, the square at the bottom, to reposition the articulation. This will elongate, shorten or change the direction of the first bone.






- Use the Articulation, top diamond-shaped, control point to change the size of the articulation. For quality purposes it is recommended to have an articulation which fits the diameter of the part it controls.



- In the Deformation toolbar, if desired, you can disable the Show Simplified Manipulators option to display all the manipulators. You can choose to work with the simplified deformer, but if you need more fine-tune control you can also access the full deformer. You will notice two extra square control points appearing in the middle of the articulation circle. Drag these up and down to modify the steepness (bias) of the articulation.

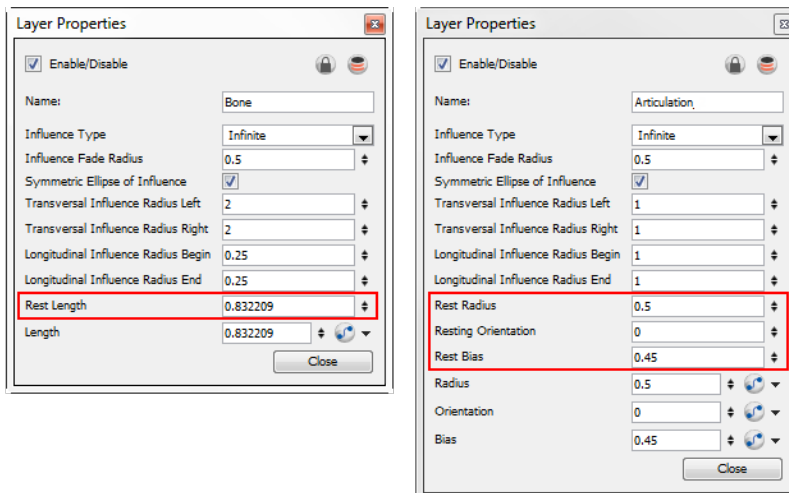


6. Repeat until all the articulations and bones of the chain are correctly aligned to the element it is linked to.
7. With the Deformation Group still selected, click on the Copy Resting Position to Current  button. This will make sure to set the current resting position as the current frame one.
8. In the Deformation toolbar, disable the Setup Mode  and test your modifications using the Transform  tool.



For optimal results, make sure the size of the articulation is about the same size as the drawing.

You can also set up the resting position of the deformers by typing values directly into the Layer Properties of the deformation effect modules.



Refer to and [Articulation](#) on page 801 to learn more.

## Related Topics

- [Setting Up The Resting Position on page 831](#)

## Zones of Influence



To increase the quality of your animation and the accuracy of the deformation effect, you can modify the zones of influence around the deformation chains. A Zone of Influence is the area around the deformer within which art will be influenced by the deformation. The deformer has the power to shape all art contained within the influence area on its own element or on its children elements.

Zones of Influence are different depending on the deformer type and zone type you selected:

- [Selecting the Zone Type on the next page](#)
- [Setting up the Elliptic Zone of Influence on page 838](#)
- [Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped on page 840](#)
- [Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence on page 841](#)
- [Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius on page 843](#)

You can find the settings for the zones of influence in the Layer Properties of the Bone and Articulation modules as well as in the Rigging Tools Properties.

When working on a cut-out puppet built on several element layers, the best choice is to keep the default Infinite option as the Zone of Influence type. In the following examples, the zones of influence will be explained through deformation chains on a single bitmap image. The image was previously imported and vectorized with colour.



Refer to [Importing Bitmap Images on page 512](#) to learn more about importing and vectorizing Bitmap images.




You can also prevent a child's element from undergoing its parent deformation by connecting it through a kinematic output. Refer to [Assembling the Parts on page 823](#) to learn how.

## Related Topics

- [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#)
- [Selecting the Zone Type below](#)
- [Setting up the Elliptic Zone of Influence on page 838](#)
- [Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped on page 840](#)
- [Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence on page 841](#)
- [Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius on page 843](#)

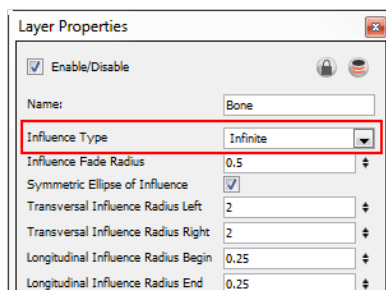
## Selecting the Zone Type

To select a zone type:


1. In the Deformation toolbar, enable the **Setup Mode** .
2. Once you have created a Bone and Articulation or Curve deformation chain, in the Network view, navigate to your deformer module, inside the element's Deformation Group and inside the pose subgroup if applicable.



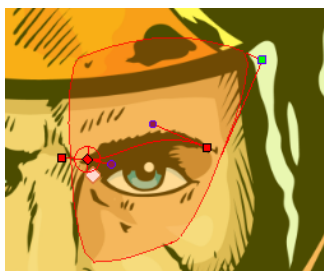
3. Click on the deformer module's square yellow button to open the Layer Properties dialog box.
4. In the deformer Layer Properties, use the Influence Type drop-down menu to select the type of Zone of Influence you want.




- **Zero Influence:** The Zone of Influence does not exist. No deformation will happen.

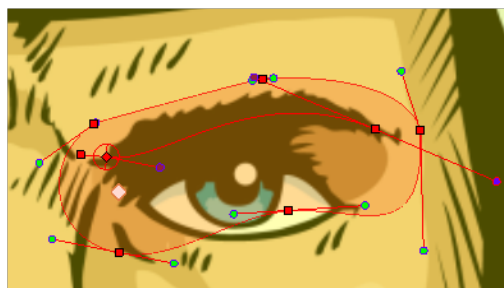
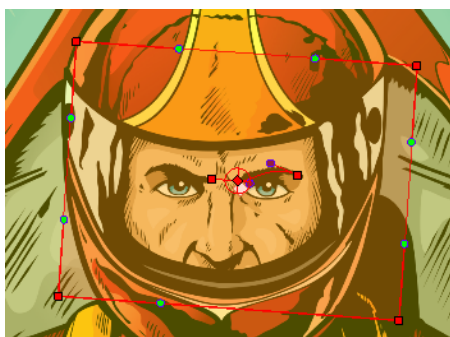
- ▶ **Infinite Influence:** This is the option selected by default and is the most commonly used. The Zone of Influence has no boundary and covers the whole element to which the deformer is linked to and its children, excluding areas that are already part of another elliptic or shaped Zone of Influence. The Infinite influence zone will form from the center of your skeleton, going toward infinity, working in perpendicular with the skeleton. This is the recommended Zone type for a cut-out puppet assembled from several element layers.
- ▶ **Elliptic Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by an elliptical shape whose size can be customized using the Bone, Articulation module properties or by using the Transform  tool. The

Elliptic Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you wish to deform.



- ▶ **Shaped Influence:** The Zone of Influence boundary is defined by a shape which you can customize using the Transform  tool. The Elliptic Influence will most likely be used on a bitmap picture you

wish to deform.



5. When you select the Elliptic or Shaped type, the Zone of Influence appears in the Camera view where you can customize the shape using the Transform tool and Layer Properties options.



Note that this example also applies to the Bone and Articulation deformers.



You can also select the Zone of Influence type in the Rigging Tool Properties and change the default setting before creating a deformation chain. Refer to [Rigging Tool Properties](#).



You can also use the Convert Elliptic Deformation ROI to Shape function in order to convert your Elliptic zone of influence to a shape. In the top menu, select **Animation > Deformation > Convert Elliptic Deformation ROI to Shape**. This function will create a much smaller initial zone of influence than if you were to convert it directly to a shape.



## Related Topics

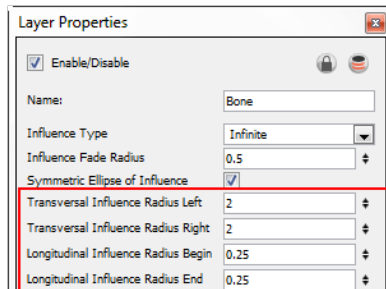
- [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#)
- [Zones of Influence on page 835](#)
- [Setting up the Elliptic Zone of Influence below](#)
- [Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped on page 840](#)
- [Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence on page 841](#)
- [Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius on page 843](#)

## Setting up the Elliptic Zone of Influence

When you set up the shape of your Elliptic Zone of Influence you should be as accurate as possible and make sure that only the element that you want to follow the deformation is included inside the zone.

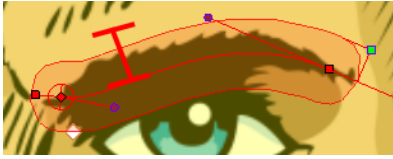
### To set up the Elliptic Zone of Influence:

1. In the Deformation toolbar, enable the Setup Mode .
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
3. In the Network view, select the deformer's module to which you want to customize the Elliptic Zone of Influence.
4. Click on the deformer module's square yellow button to open the Layer Properties dialog box.

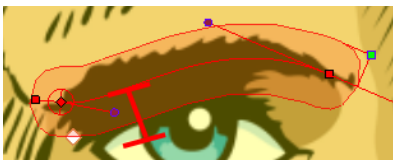


5. In the deformer Layer Properties, setup the ellipse shape by adding values to the various fields:
  - **Symmetric Ellipse Influence:** This option is enabled by default. When enabled, the shape of the ellipse will be symmetrical on both the transversal and longitudinal radii. In this case, use the Transversal Influence Radius Left field to set the transversal radius value and use the Longitudinal Influence Radius End field to set up the longitudinal radius value. The two other fields will remain unused, unless you disable the Symmetric Ellipse Influence option. In that case, you can set up different radii sizes for the four radii directions.

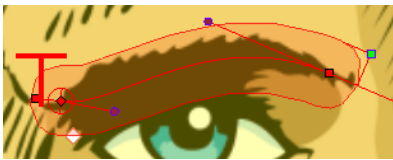
- ▶ **Transversal Influence Radius Left:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, this field controls both Left and Right transversal radius values. When the option is disabled, it controls the size of the left transversal radius. By default this value is set to 2, use the up and down arrow to select a value or type the desired one directly in the field.



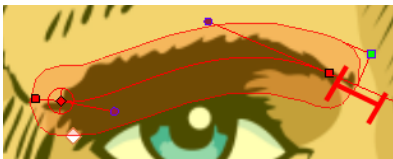
- ▶ **Transversal Influence Radius Right:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled this field loses its influence and the Left Transversal radius value is automatically applied to the Right Transversal. When the option is disabled, it controls the size of the Right Transversal radius. By default this value is set at 2. Use the up and down arrows to select a value or type the desired one directly in the field.




- ▶ **Longitudinal Influence Radius Begin:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, this field loses its influence, the End Longitudinal value is automatically applied to the Begin Longitudinal. When the option is disabled, it controls the size of the Begin Longitudinal radius. By default this value is set to 0.25, use the up and down arrows to select a value or type the desired one directly in the field.

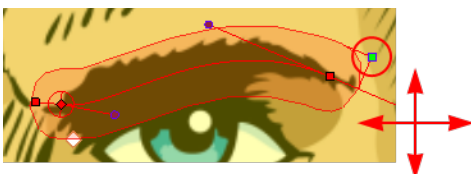


- ▶ **Longitudinal Influence Radius End:** When the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, this field controls both Begin and End Longitudinal radius values. When the option is disabled it controls the size of the End Longitudinal radius. By default this value is set to 0.25, use the up and down arrows to select a value or type the desired one directly in the field.

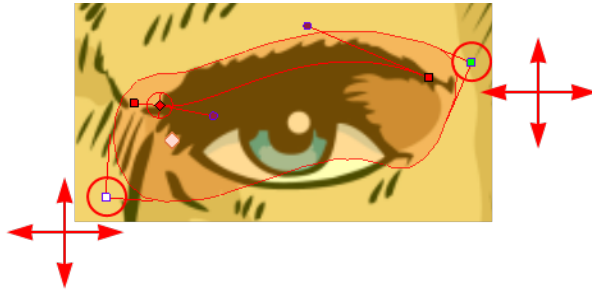


6. You can also modify the elliptic shape in the Camera view, using the Transform  tool.

- ▶ If the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence option is enabled, one control point will be available in the Camera view. Drag this point in any direction to increase or decrease the size of the Zone. Dragging it left/right will modify both longitudinal radius sizes. Dragging it up/down will modify both transversal radius sizes.



- ▶ If the Symmetric Ellipse of Influence is disabled, two control points will be available in the Camera view. Drag the top corner point left/right to modify the end longitudinal radius size and up/down to modify the left transversal radius size. Drag the bottom corner control point left/right to modify the beginning longitudinal radius size and up/down to modify the right transversal radius size.




You can also select the Zone of Influence type in the Rigging Tool Properties to change the default setting before creating a deformation chain. Refer to [Rigging Tool Properties](#) on page 792.


## Related Topics

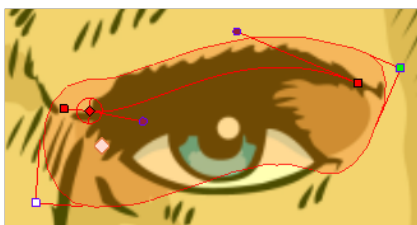
- [Optimizing the Skeleton](#) on page 831
- [Zones of Influence](#) on page 835
- [Selecting the Zone Type](#) on page 836
- [Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped](#) below
- [Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence](#) on the facing page
- [Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius](#) on page 843

# Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped


When you have an Elliptic Zone of Influence selected in the Network view, you can convert it to a Shaped Zone type using the option **Convert Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shape** .

To convert an Elliptic Zone of Influence to a shape:

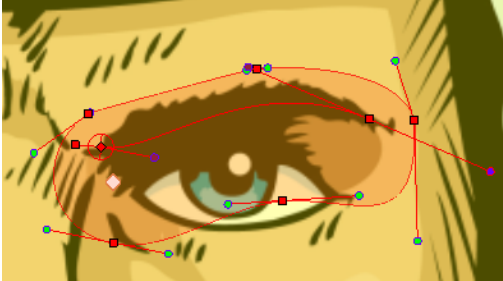
1. In the Deformation toolbar, enable the Setup Mode .
2. In the Network view, select the deformer module that has an elliptic Zone of Influence type.





3. In the Deformation toolbar or Rigging Tool Properties, click on the Convert Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shape  button.

The Zone of Influence will automatically be converted to a shape. It will keep the shape it was when the button was pressed except, control points will appear all around the zone to allow the shape to be customized.



Refer to the section [Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence](#) below below to learn how to customize a shaped Zone of Influence.



## Related Topics

- [Zones of Influence](#) on page 835
- [Selecting the Zone Type](#) on page 836

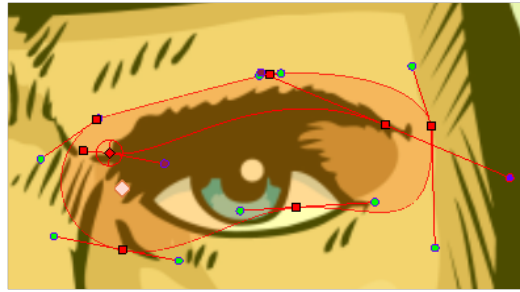
## Setting up a Shaped Zone of Influence

When you set up the boundaries of your Shaped Zone of Influence, you should be as accurate as possible and make sure that only the elements that you want to follow the deformation are included inside the zone.

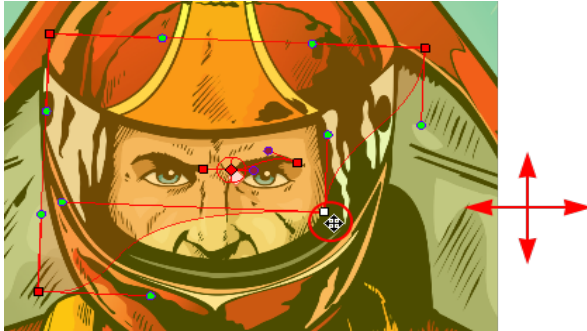
### To set up the Shaped Zone of Influence:

1. In the Deformation Toolbar, enable the Setup Mode .
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool.
3. In the Network view, select the deformer module in which you want to customize the Shaped Zone of Influence.

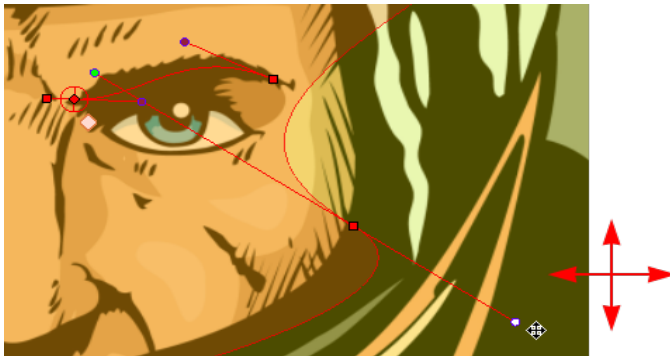
If you selected the Shaped option in the Layer Properties dialog box or in the Rigging Tool Properties view, the Zone of Influence will be square. This square has control points on all four corners and each control point as two control levers. If you converted an elliptic zone to a shape, the zone will have more control points and handles.



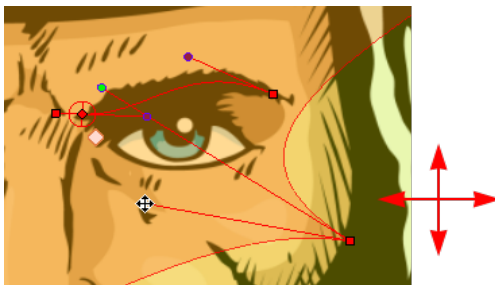
- ▶ Click and drag a control point to redefine its position and the shape.



- ▶ Click and drag the control lever handle to modify the corners and redefine the shape.



- ▶ Hold [Alt] down while dragging the control lever handle to move one handle at a time.



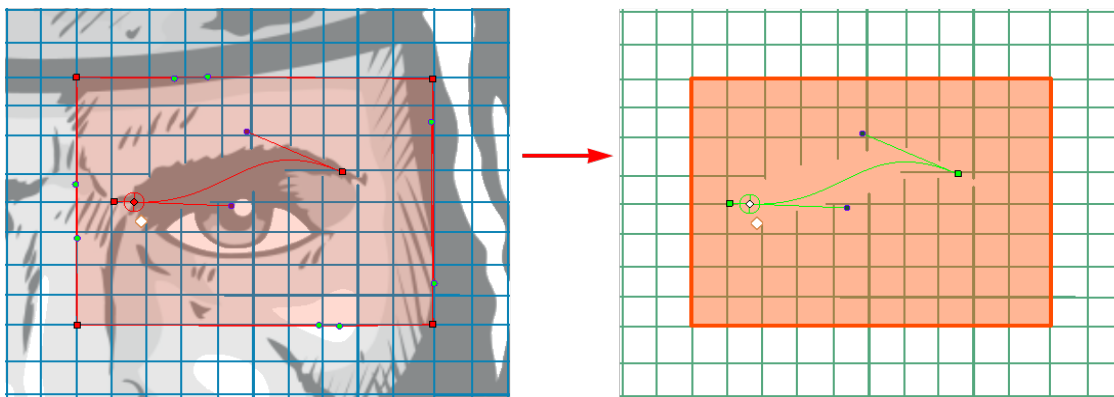
Refer to the section [Converting an Elliptic Zone of Influence to Shaped](#) on page 840 to learn how to convert an elliptic zone to a shape.

## Related Topics

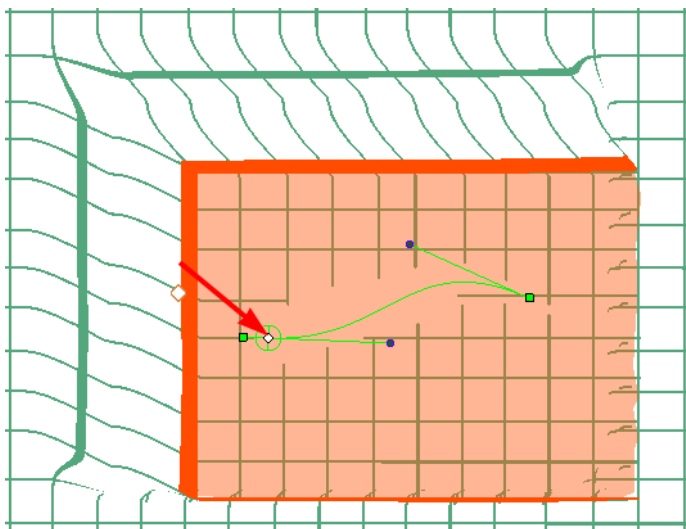
- [Optimizing the Skeleton](#) on page 831
- [Zones of Influence](#) on page 835

## Setting up the Zone of Influence Fade Radius

To better illustrate the Zone of Influence Fade Radius and its effect, the bitmap picture will be swapped with a grid pattern.



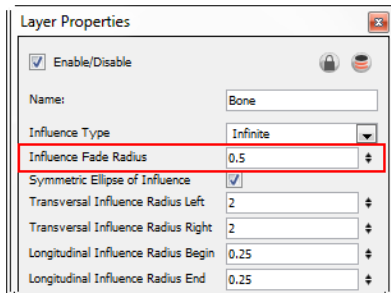
There is an area called the deformer Fade which surrounds the Zone of Influence, this is the link between the strict boundaries of the Zone of Influence and the surrounding region. This area gradually stretches or squashes following the deformation. You can edit the Fade Radius value to modify the size of this area and the exponent of the deformation fade effect.



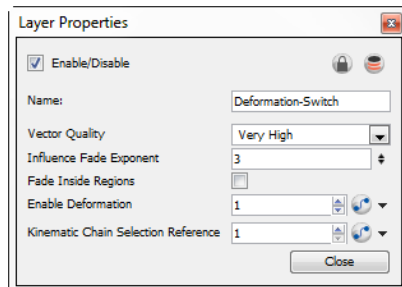
You can change the default behaviour so that the fading effect is inside the Zone of Influence instead of outside. This is explained in this exercise.

### To modify the Fade Radius and Exponent:

1. In the Network view, select the deformer module you want to modify. Note that this deformer needs to have an Elliptic or Shaped Zone of Influence type.
2. Click on the square yellow button of the module to open the Layer Properties dialog box.



3. Use the Influence Fade Radius field to modify size of the fading area. The default value is 0.5. You can use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the radius, or type a specific value directly in the field.
4. Click on Close to exit the Layer Properties dialog box.
5. In the Network view, locate the Deformation-Switch module situated just under the Deformation-Composite module in your deformation chain.
6. Click on the square yellow button on the Deformation-Switch module to open the Layer Properties dialog box.

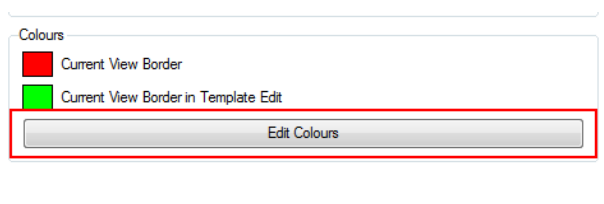


7. In the Layer Properties dialog box:
  - ▶ **Influence Fade Exponent:** Use the up and down arrow to modify the exponent value or type the exact value in the field.
    - A value of 1 is similar to a linear curve.
    - A higher value will result in an ease-in type of curve.
    - A lower value will result in an ease-out type of curve.
  - ▶ **Fade Inside Region:** By default this option is disabled, meaning that the Fade effect will occur outside of the Zone of Influence. You can enable this option so that the fade effect is inside the Zone of Influence.

## Related Topics

- [Optimizing the Skeleton on page 831](#)

# Deformation Preferences



You can customize the display of deformation, its functionality and the performance of the system by altering the preferences.

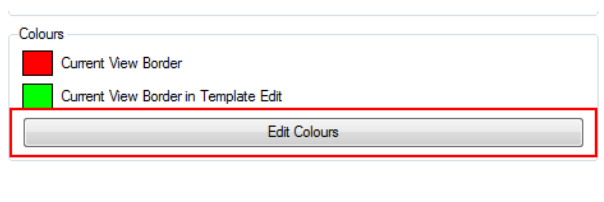
You will find the preferences listed under the following tabs:

- [General](#) below
- [Deformation](#) on the next page

To open the Preferences panel:

- Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- Or press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## General



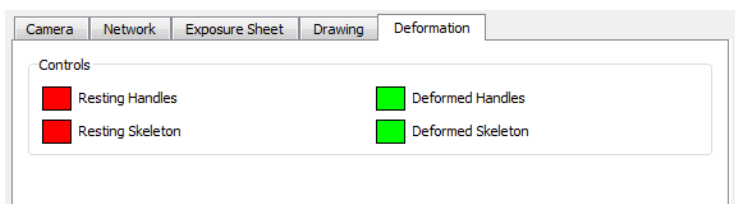
## Colours

You can change the default colours of the deformation controls in the Preferences panel.

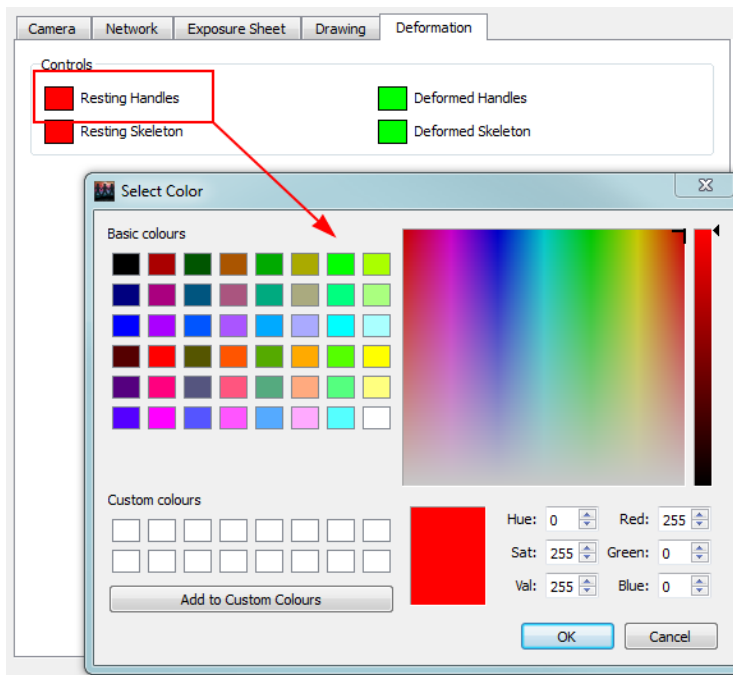
To change the deformation control colours:

1. In the Preferences Panel, under the General tab, click on the **Edit Colours** button.

The Colours dialog box opens.



2. In the Colours dialog box, select the **Deformation** tab.
3. To open the **Select Colour** dialog box, click on the square colour sample corresponding to the specific control you want to change the colour of.



4. Select a new colour and click **OK** to close the Select Colour dialog box.
  5. Click **OK** once again to exit the Colour dialog box.
- You can click **Restore All Defaults** to go back to the default colours.

## Related Topics

- [Deformation Preferences](#) on the previous page
- [OpenGL](#) on page 1
- [Deformation](#) below
- [Displaying the Deformation Controls](#) on page 788

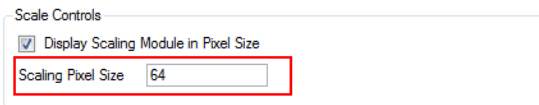
# Deformation

## Scale Controls

The Scale Controls Preferences let you customize the appearance of the Deformation-Scale and Deformation-Uniform-Scale controls by setting the desired distance from the deformer axis.

- **Display Scaling Module in Pixel Size:** This preference is disabled by default. The distance between the controls and the deformer axis is calculated using fields as a value. You can enable this option to change the value to pixels.
- **Scaling Field Size:** The default value is 2 fields, meaning that the distance between the controls and the deformer axis is 2 fields. You can enter any field value you want. When the Display Scaling Module in Pixel Size preference is enabled, this option changes to Scaling Pixel Size.

- **Scaling Pixel Size:** When the Display Scaling Module in Pixel Size is enabled, this option appears instead of Scaling Field Size. The default value is 64 pixels, meaning that the distance between the controls and the deformer axis is 64 pixels. You can enter any pixel value you want.



## Deformation Creation

- **Automatically Create new Deformer Structure for each Pose/Drawing:** This preference is enabled by default. When enabled, the Deformer groups will automatically be built using the more advanced structure, which lets you rig and manipulate deformers for several views of a character turnaround within a single element. When this preference is disabled, the structure within the Deformation Group will be simpler and will disallow a different rig on each drawing of the same element.



Refer to the topic [Creating a Full Character Turnaround Deformation Rig on page 817](#) to learn more about Posed deformer.

Refer to the topic [Creating a Basic Deformation Rig on page 779](#) to learn more about rigging with this preference disabled.

## Deformation Convert Deformed Drawings

- **Texture Resolution when Converting Gradient and Textures:** This preference sets the size of the bitmap texture used during the conversion of deformed drawings to drawings. The maximum value accepted is 2048 pixels.

### Related Topics

- [Deformation Preferences on page 845](#)
- [General on page 845](#)
- [OpenGL](#)





# Chapter 14: 3D Space



Toon Boom is well known for its multiplane space where you can move your layers forward and backward on the Z-axis. Animate Pro now brings you a true three-dimensional space where you can actually rotate your camera and layers on all axes. This permits you to perform a 360 degree rotation around your elements, create a floor and even build sets!

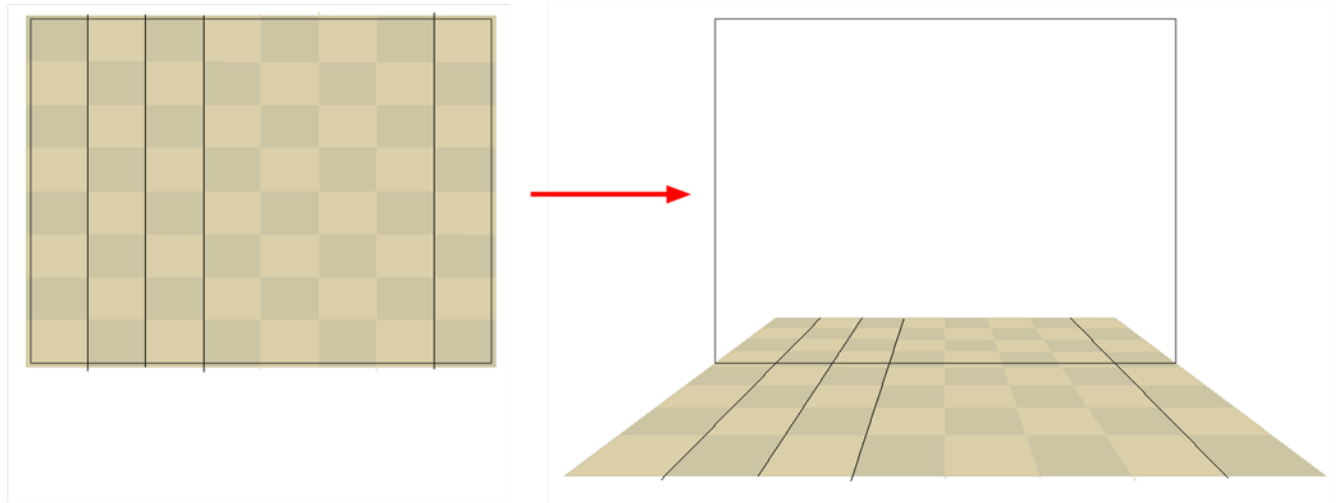


If you use 3D effects in your animation, it NOT recommended to render your project as an SWF as these effects are not supported by that format.

## Related Topics

- [Enabling the 3D Option](#) on the next page
- [3D Tools](#) on page 856
- [Positioning Elements in 3D Space](#) on page 861
- [3D Camera Motion](#) on page 868

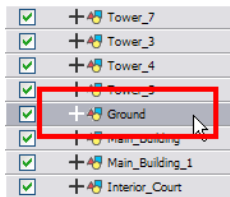
# Enabling the 3D Option



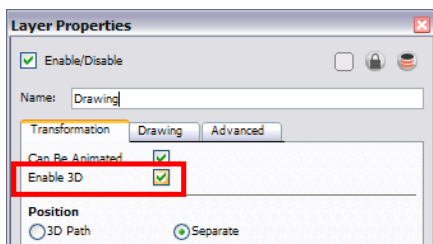
To rotate layers in three axes instead of two, you must enable the 3D option in the layer properties. By default, when you create layers in Animate Pro, you can only move them as flat layers.

## To enable the 3D option:

1. In the Timeline view, select the layer you want to move in the 3D space.

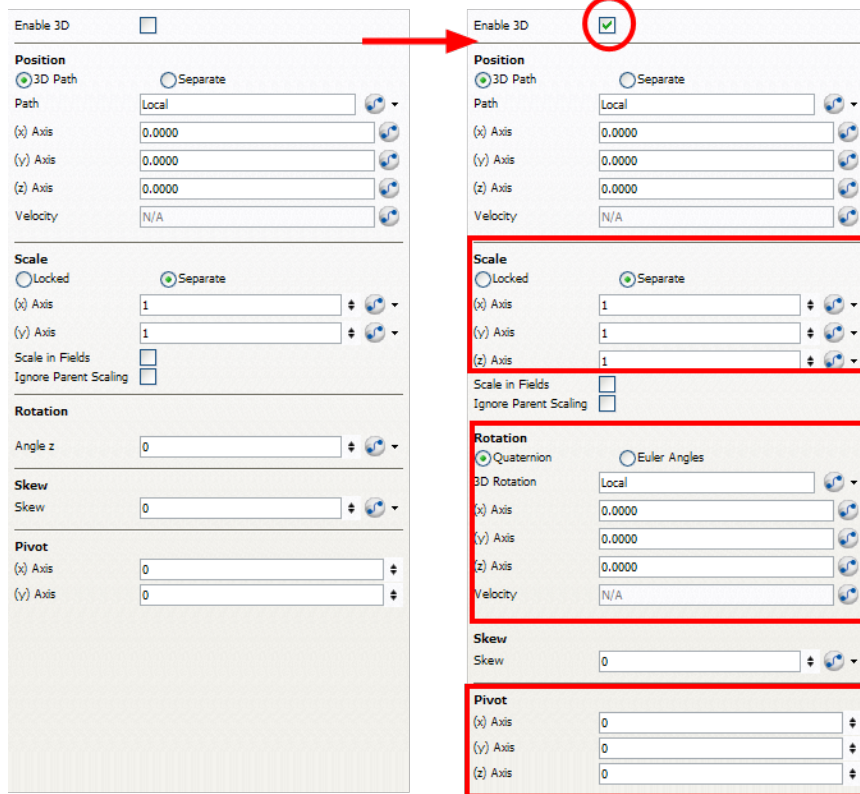


2. Click on the selected layer once to display its properties in the Layer Properties view or double-click on it to open properties in a dialog box.
3. In the Layer Properties dialog box, click on the Transform tab.



4. Click on the **Enable 3D** option checkbox to display the 3D parameters for that particular layer.
5. Click **Close**.

New parameters appear in the Layer Properties window.



## Related Topics

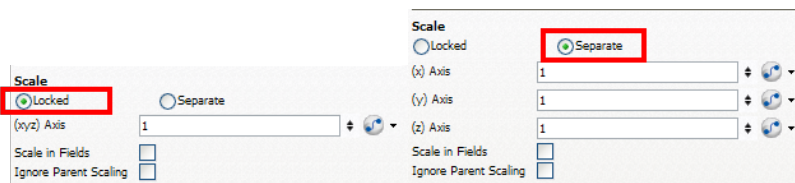
- [3D Parameters below](#)

## 3D Parameters

When you enable the 3D option, you will notice that three sets of parameters are modified:

- [Scale below](#)
- [Rotation on page 853](#)
- [Pivot on page 854](#)

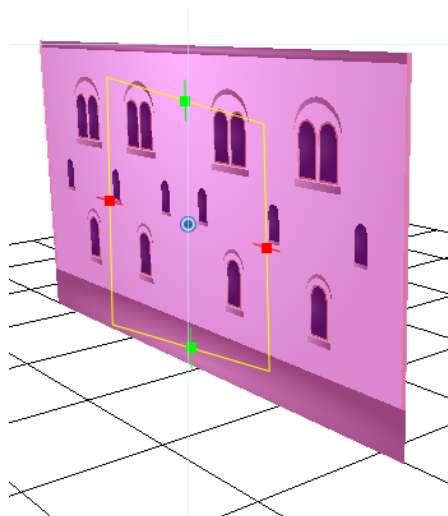
## Scale



When the 3D option is enabled, the Z-axis parameter is added to the list of settings. You can either have the Scale to be locked or separated.

When the Scale is locked, the object you are scaling is uniformly resized in three directions.

When the Scale is separated, the object you are scaling can be squashed and stretched in any direction without affecting the other ones.

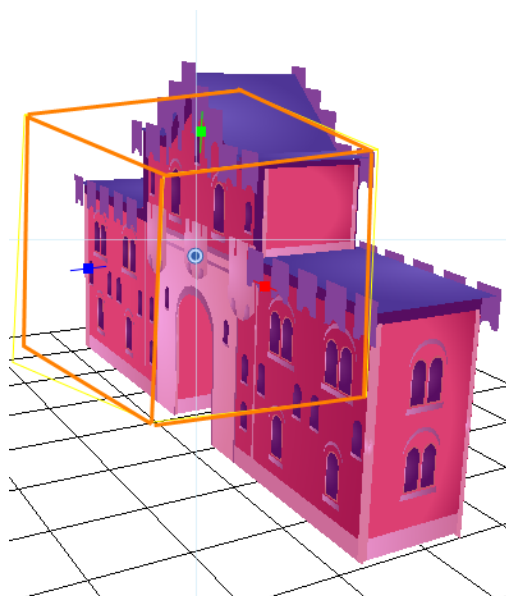


Two-dimensional Scale



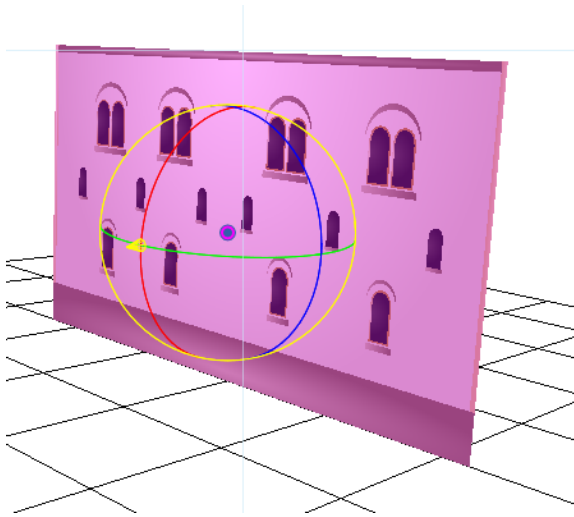
You cannot add thickness to an object by scaling it in the third dimension. Three-dimensional scaling is used to scale objects that were rotated on their axes or to scale a group of objects laid out in three-dimensions.

---



Three-dimensional Scale

## Rotation

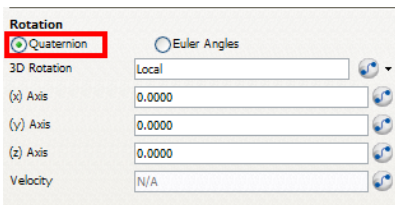


The main parameter you will use when working in three-dimensions is rotation. Without using the 3D rotation, you are simply working using the multiplane technique.

3D rotation can be used in two different ways:

- [Quaternion Rotation](#) below
- [Euler Angles Rotation](#) below

## Quaternion Rotation

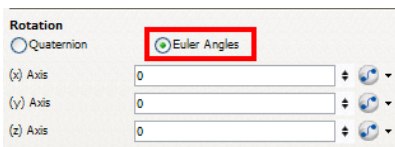


Quaternion Rotation is very similar to the 3D path position parameters. A Quaternion is composed of three rotation functions: X, Y and Z to control the rotation on three axes, and a velocity function to control the velocity of the three rotation functions simultaneously.

The X, Y and Z functions are linked together, when you add a keyframe on one of them, it also adds it on the two others.

If you are planning to animate an element such as the camera, you should use the Quaternion rather than the Euler Angles. Quaternion creates smooth trajectory and interpolation since the path is controlled by the same keyframes and a single velocity.

## Euler Angles Rotation

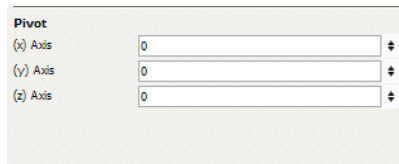


The Euler Angles Rotation is very similar to the Separate position parameters. The Euler Angles parameter is composed of three functions: X, Y and Z to control the rotation on three axes. These three functions are independent from one another, each having its own velocity.

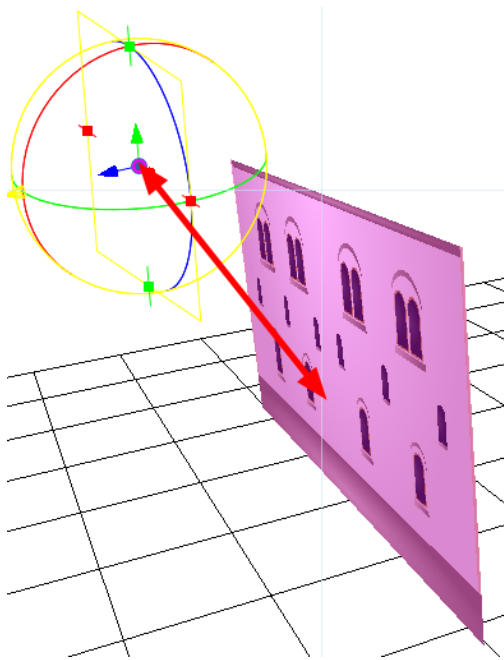
When you add a keyframe on one function, the other ones do not receive it, allowing you to control each axis independently.


Euler Angles are mainly used to position elements with exact coordinates and rotating elements on a single axis. The interpolation between the keyframes will not be as smooth as the Quaternion one since each function works individually.

## Pivot



When you enable the 3D option, the drawing or layer pivot becomes a location that can move on three axes. When you work in two-dimensions, the pivot is mainly an anchor point somewhere in the drawing from where the transformations will be performed. Once you switch to the 3D mode, the transformations are made on three axes, so the centre of rotation and scaling also becomes three-dimensional.



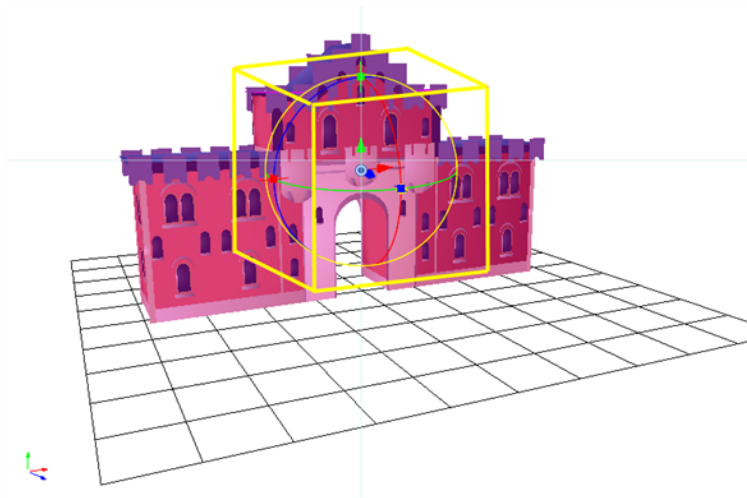
By default, the pivot is positioned at the centre of the stage: (0,0,0). When you use the Pivot  tool to reposition the centre of transformation, the pivot position is changed on the X and Y axes, but the Z-axis remains at zero until you change it in the Top, Side or Perspective view using the transformation tools.


## Related Topics

- [Function Curves](#) on page 958
- [Layer Parameters](#) on page 919

- [Function View](#) on page 951
- [Function Drop-down Menu](#) on page 963

# 3D Tools




Once the 3D option is enabled, your transformation tools become 3D transformation tools. These tools are found in the Advanced Animation toolbars as well as the Transform  tool. Instead of letting you move elements only on the X and Y axes, you can also manipulate them on the Z-axis.

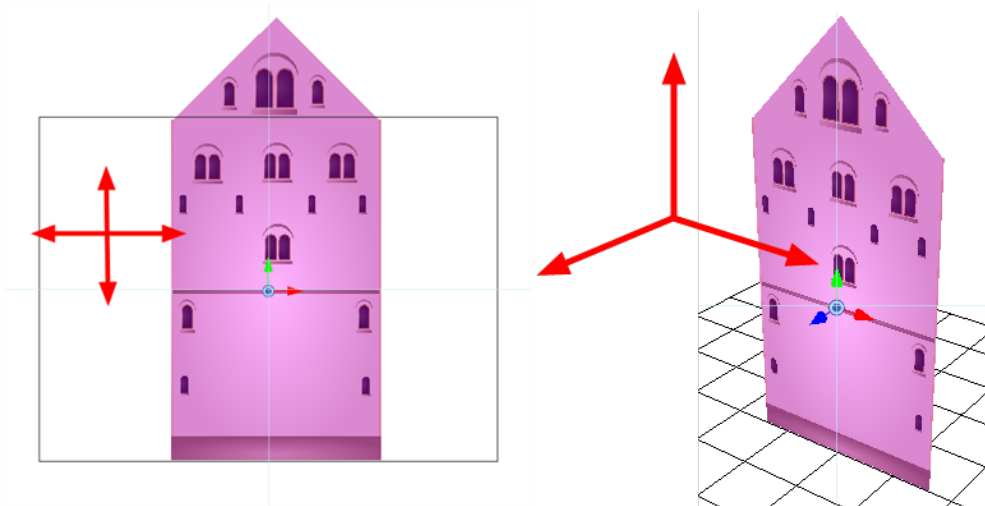
## Related Topics

- [3D Translate Tool](#) below
- [3D Rotate Tool](#) on page 858
- [3D Scale Tool](#) on page 858
- [3D Transform Tool](#) on page 859
- [Positioning the Scene Components](#) on page 566

## 3D Translate Tool

Once you enable the 3D option, the 3D Translate  tool becomes available and you will see direction arrows appear around the pivot points to indicate the different axes.

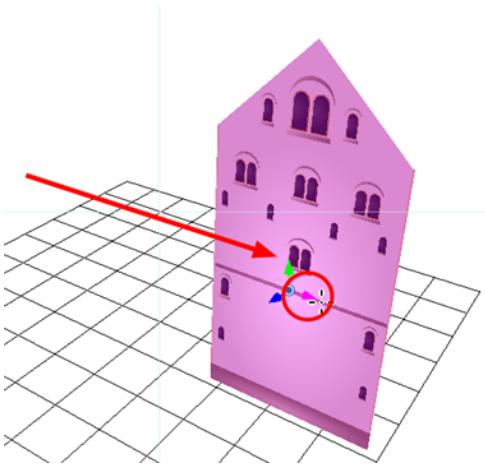




You can click on the direction arrows to move your layer on only one axis. If you click anywhere else, the layer can move freely on two axes at once. Once the arrow is selected, it will turn pink.




If you move the layers in the Perspective view, it may be difficult to control the motion since you may not have the optimum point of view on your stage to understand the setup. In this case it is best to use the direction arrows.

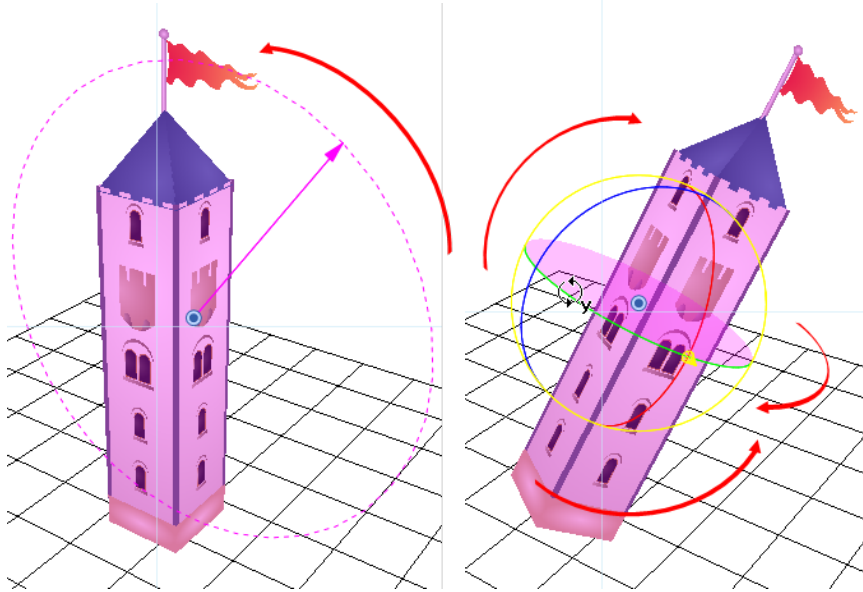


## Related Topics

- [3D Rotate Tool](#) on the next page
- [3D Scale Tool](#) on the next page
- [3D Transform Tool](#) on page 859

## 3D Rotate Tool

Once you enable the 3D option, the 3D Rotate  tool becomes available and you will see a rotation sphere appear around the pivot points indicating the different axes.



You can click on the direction ellipses to rotate your layer on one axis only. If you click anywhere else, the layer rotates freely on two axes at once. Once the ellipse is selected, it will turn pink.



If you move the layers in the Perspective view, it may be difficult to control the motion since you may not have the optimum point of view on your stage to understand the setup. In this case it is best to use the direction ellipses.

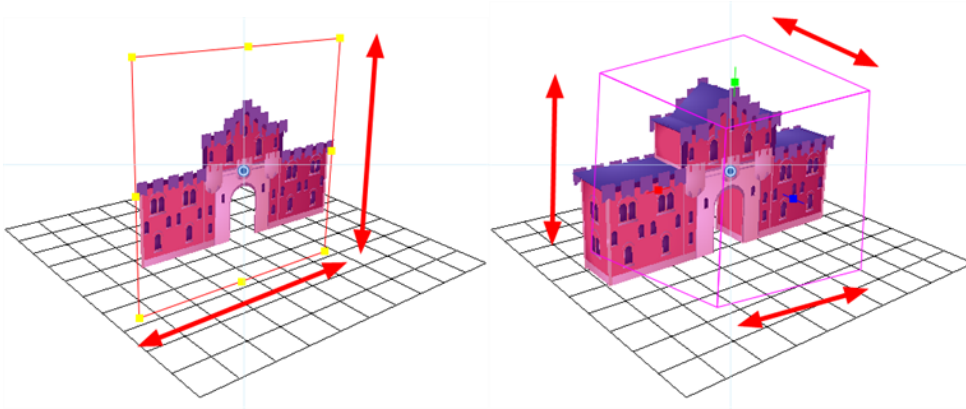
### Related Topics

- [3D Translate Tool](#) on page 856
- [3D Scale Tool](#) below
- [3D Transform Tool](#) on the facing page

## 3D Scale Tool

Once you enable the 3D option, the 3D Scale  tool is available. You will see one of two things:

- A scaling rectangle that appears if your drawing is flat.
- A scaling cube that appears if your object has some rotated layers around the pivot points, indicating the different axes.



Click on one of the three control points to scale the shape on one axis. Hold down the [Shift] key to scale the object proportionally. Once the control point is selected, it will turn pink.

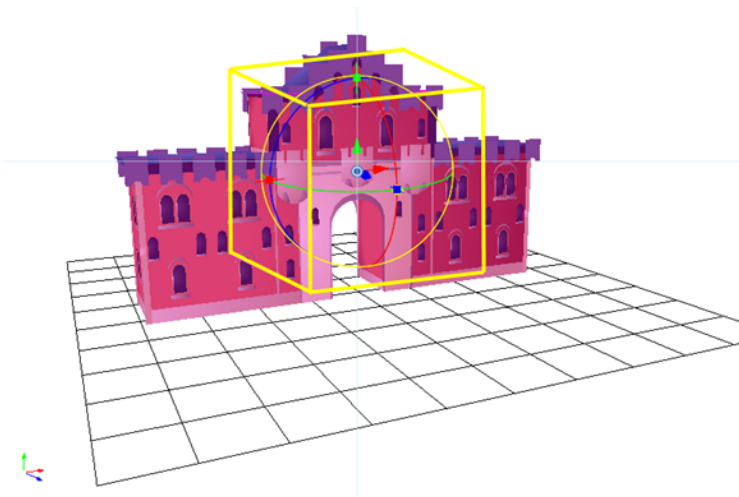


If you move the layers in the Perspective view, it may be difficult to control the motion since you may not have the optimum point of view on your stage to understand the setup.

## Related Topics

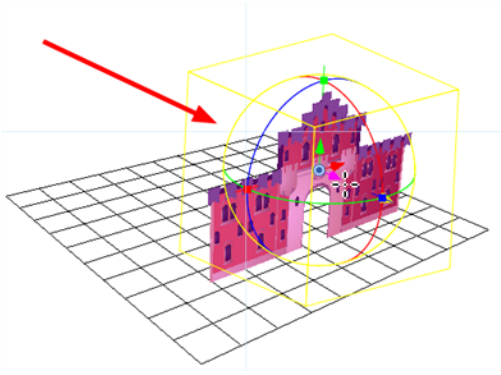
- [3D Translate Tool](#) on page 856
- [3D Rotate Tool](#) on the previous page
- [3D Transform Tool](#) below

## 3D Transform Tool

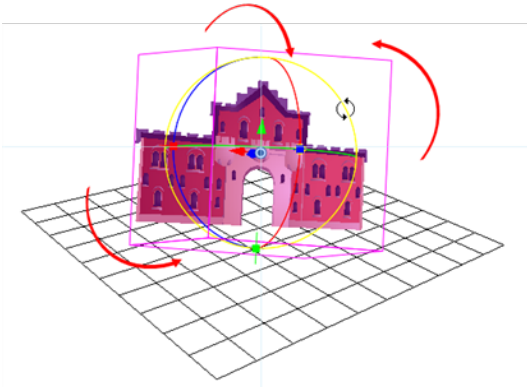


Once you enable the 3D option, the 3D Transform tool become available. This tool is a combination of the 3D Translate, 3D Rotate and 3D Scale tools.

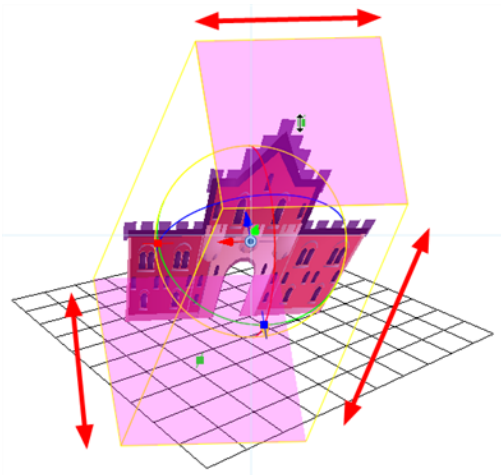
To translate an element, grab the direction arrows in the same way that you would with the Translate tool.



To rotate an element, grab the rotation ellipses in the same way that you would with the Rotate tool.



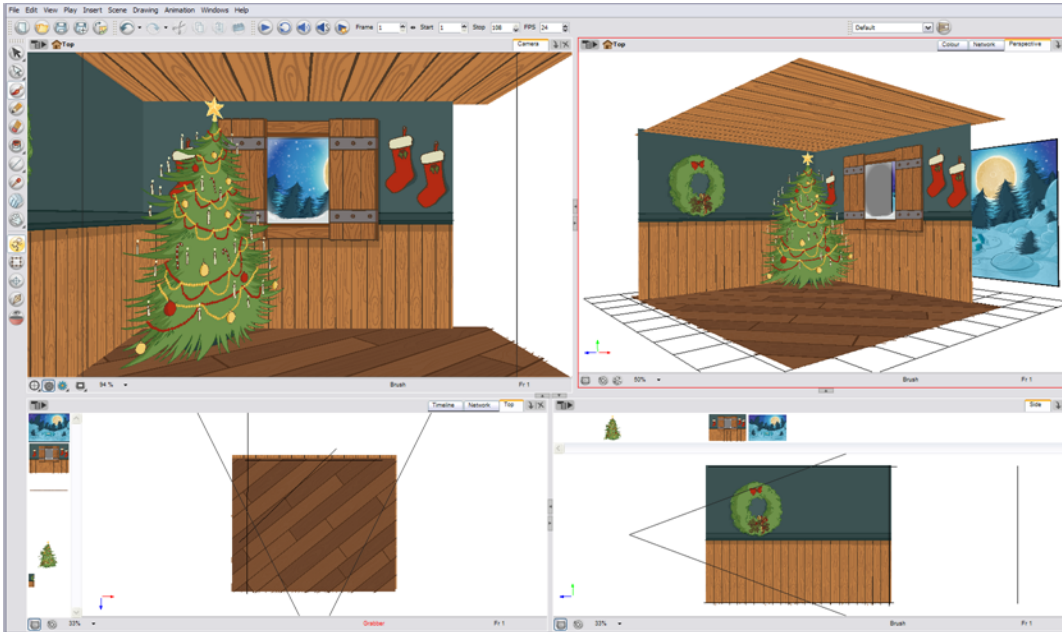
To scale an element, grab the scaling control points in the same way that you would with the Scale tool.



## Related Topics

- [3D Translate Tool](#) on page 856
- [3D Rotate Tool](#) on page 858
- [3D Scale Tool](#) on page 858

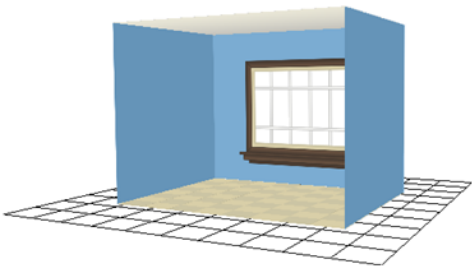
# Positioning Elements in 3D Space



To position elements in 3D space, you need to understand what you want to build and what is involved in building it.

Simple sets like the above one are easy to build, light to manage and probably what you will use 3D staging for most often.

If you have a project based in a room, it can be useful to build it in 3D. This saves you having to redraw the background for each scene and it will be entirely vector based.



Here, you can see some of the different backgrounds you can get in only three seconds from this set.

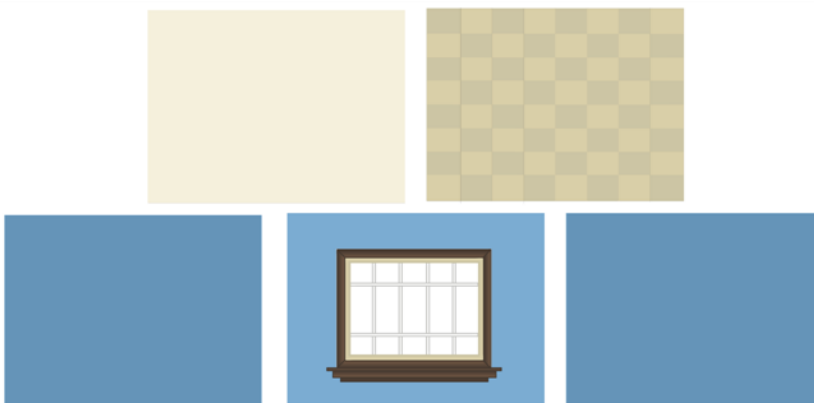


## Related Topics

- [Planning Your Pieces](#) below
- [Using Complex Sets in Production Scenes](#) on page 864
- [Positioning the Layers](#) on page 865

## Planning Your Pieces

When you are building a room, there are only a few pieces to prepare. Before starting to build your set, map out the parts you need.



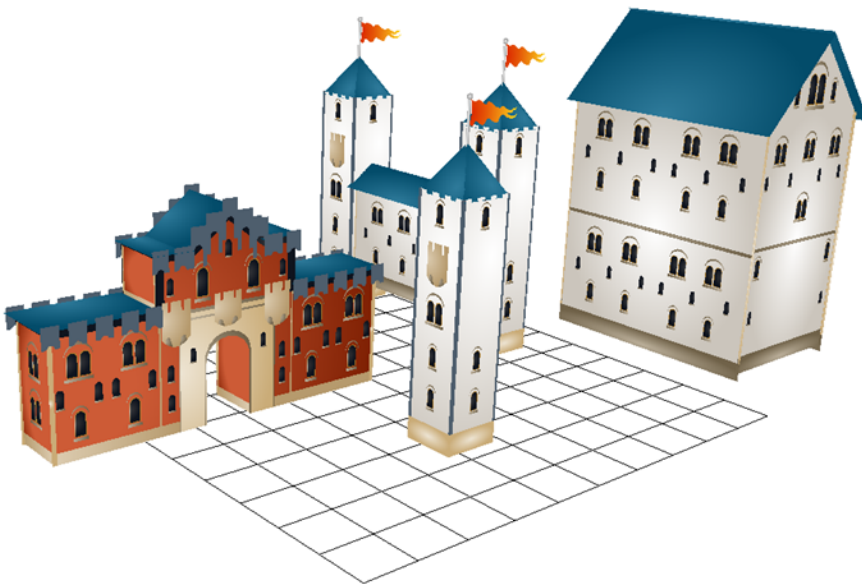
A complex set, that is more intricate in its design, will require more careful planning. Not only will you have to list the pieces you'll need, but you will also have to think about what can be reused. If you have a series of windows in your set, you would create a symbol out of the drawing, rather than copy paste it several times all over your set. This way, if you need to make any correction to its design, you will only need to do it once and all the instances of your symbol throughout your set will be corrected. The same can be done with for each pieces of your set.

Here is an example of all the source drawings required to build the castle.



Those are the only drawings required to build the entire castle. As you can see there are not that many considering the final result. The rest is constructed by assembling symbols and through reuse. However, keep in mind that although you are using simple drawings and symbols to optimize your set, the more you add to your project, the heavier the toll it takes on your machine's RAM. While the scene's package itself is really light, running the scene places heavy demands on your RAM and video card.

Using the drawings shown previously, here are a couple of pieces that were put together.



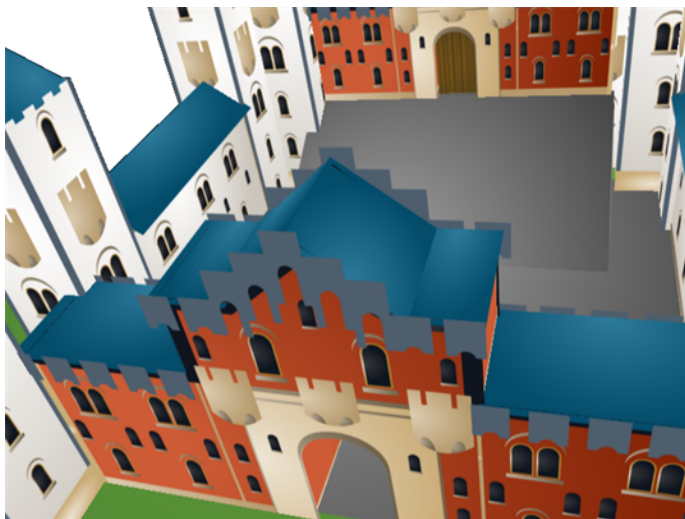
Here is the final result, a large and impressive fortress.



## Related Topics

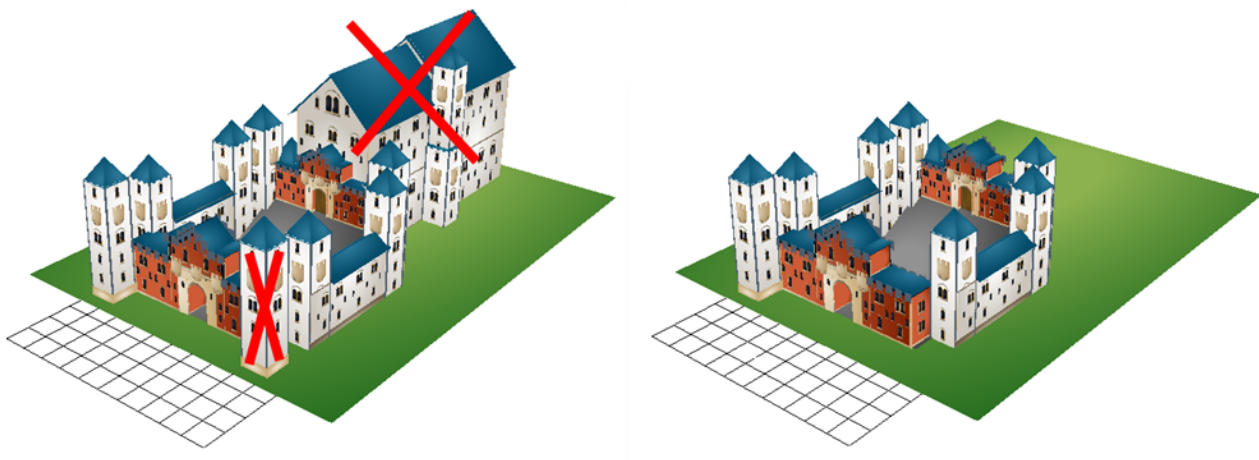
- [Using Complex Sets in Production Scenes](#) below
- [Positioning the Layers](#) on the facing page
- [Creating a Symbol](#) on page 654
- [Importing a Symbol](#) on page 669

## Using Complex Sets in Production Scenes



When your main set is built, you will want to store it in the Library. It is important to know that when you import such a large structure in one of your production scenes, the set may be slow to run. To avoid long rendering sessions or slow manipulation, remove all faces and planes that are not visible in your scene.





## Related Topics

- [Planning Your Pieces on page 862](#)
- [Positioning the Layers below](#)

## Positioning the Layers

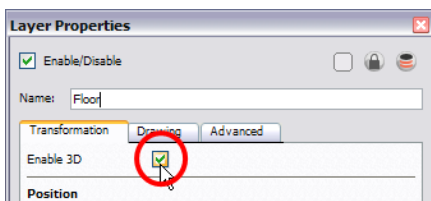
Once you have your drawings and symbols assembled, it is time to position them. This section explains how this is done using the simple room shown previously.

To position your layers, you require the following elements:

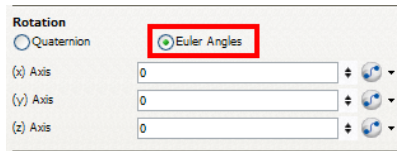
- Camera View
- Top View
- Side View
- Perspective View
- Library View
- Timeline View
- 3D Transformation Tools
- Layer Properties View or dialog box

To position layers in the 3D space:

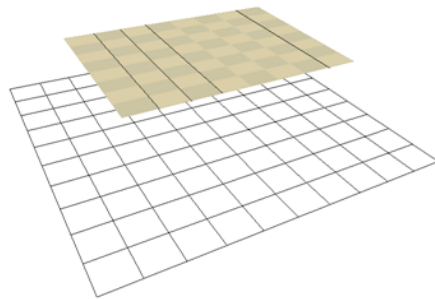
1. In the Timeline view, double-click on the new layer to open the Layer Properties dialog box.
2. In the Transformation tab, check the **Enable 3D** option.





3. In the Rotation section, enable the Euler Angle option.



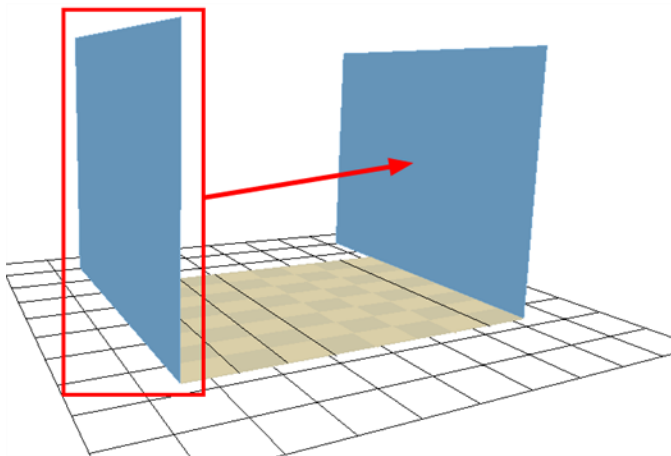
4. Type **90** in the Rotation's (x) Axis field to flip the floor so that it is flat on the ground.



5. To position the height of the floor, you can either type values in the Position section of the Layer Properties, use the 3D Translate  tool or the 3D Transform  tool.
6. Repeat the process for the other pieces to import.
7. If you have parallel walls, once you have positioned one, select the Wall layer in the Timeline view.
8. In the top menu, select **Edit > Duplicate** to duplicate the layer.

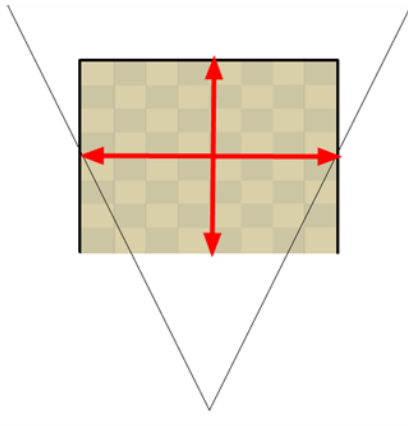


If the drawing is contained inside a symbol, the symbol will not be duplicated, only the layer containing the symbol. This way you are still using the same drawing.

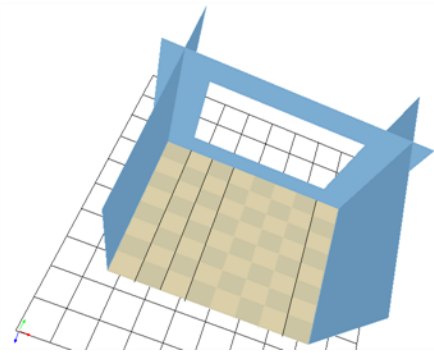


9. Once the layer is duplicated, use either the Layer Properties window to type the positioning values, or use the 3D transformation tools.

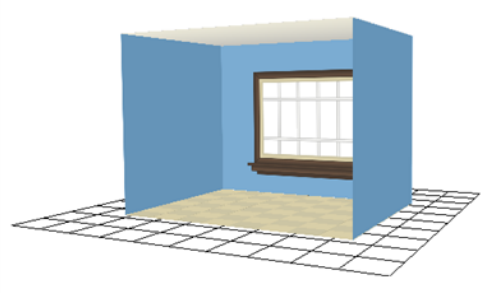
10. When you are using the transformation tools, use the Camera, Top or Side view to position the elements instead of the Perspective view to position your layers precisely.



11. If your walls are touching each others, you should have them intersect by extending one end of the wall through the other wall. This prevents seeing a small gap in-between them.



There you go, you now have a complete 3D room.





## Related Topics

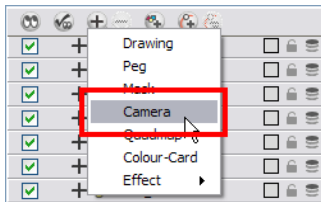
- [3D Tools](#) on page 856
- [Top View and Side View](#) on page 627
- [Perspective View](#) on page 628


# 3D Camera Motion

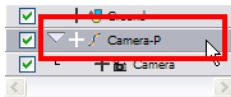
Once you have a 3D set, the exciting part is to do a camera motion in it. This section teaches you the main steps required to perform a 3D camera motion. Once you know how to do this you can enjoy the delights of working in 3D space and travelling through your creations!

## To create a 3D camera motion:

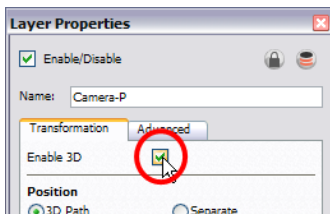
1. In the Tool toolbar, enable the **Animate**  mode.
2. In the Timeline view, click on the **Add Layers**  button and select **Camera** to add a camera to your scene.



3. In the Timeline view, select the new camera layer.
4. In the Timeline Layer toolbar, click on the **Add Peg**  button to add a parent peg to the camera.
5. In the Timeline view, double-click on the new peg layer to open the Layer Properties dialog box.

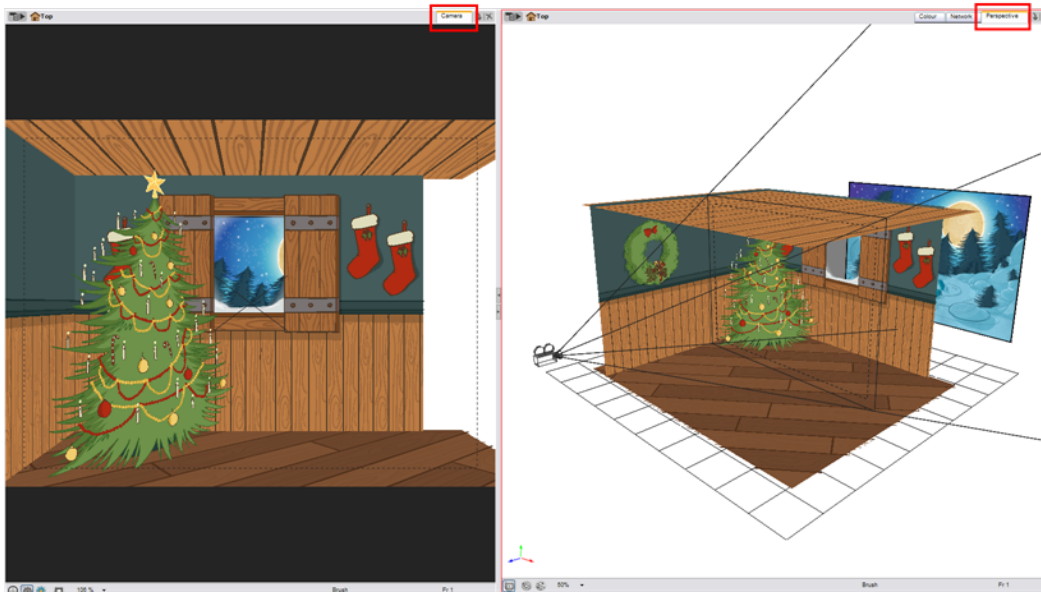


6. In the Layer Properties dialog box, go to the Transformation tab and check off the **Enable 3D** option.



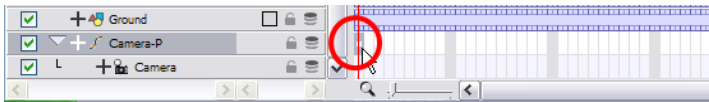
7. In the Rotation section, enable the **Quaternion** option.
8. In the Perspective view, click on the **Show/Hide Camera** button to see your camera cone.

9. Setup your workspace to display the Camera view and Perspective view at the same time so you can compare the results.

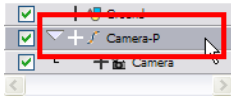


10. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.

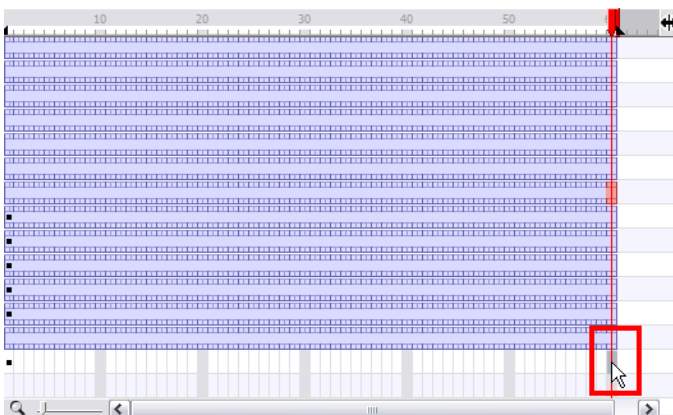
11. In the Timeline view, select the Camera-Peg layer first frame and select **Insert > Keyframe**.



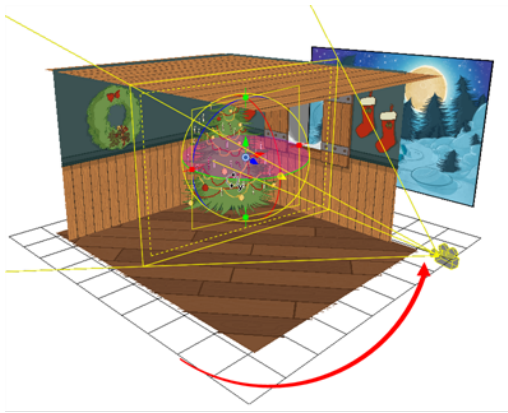
12. In the Timeline view, select the **Camera-Peg** layer.



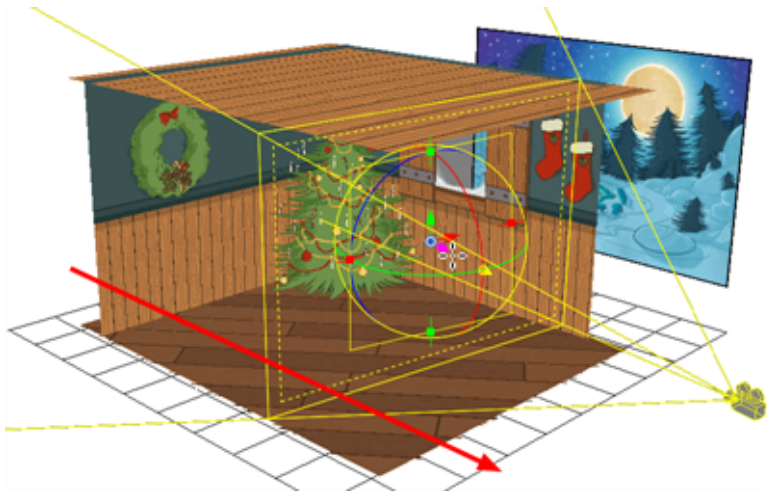
13. In the Timeline view, go to the last frame.



14. In the Perspective view, grab one of the rotation ellipses and rotate the camera on one axis only. Always do one axis at a time, this keeps control of the positioning.



15. Once the camera is rotated in the correct angle, grab one of the direction arrows to move the camera to the correct position.



## Playing Back Your 3D Camera Moves

In order to see a playback of your 3D camera moves, you must be in the Perspective view.

To enable the playback mode in 3D:

1. In the top menu, select **Play > Enable Playback > Perspective View**.
2. In the Playback toolbar, press the **Play** button to see the results.

### Related Topics

- [Locking Flat Drawings to the Camera Angle on the facing page](#)
- [Animating the Camera on page 932](#)

## Locking Flat Drawings to the Camera Angle



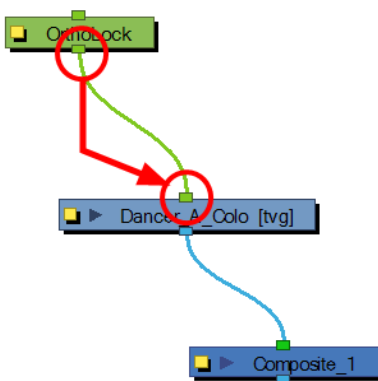
When you create a 3D camera motion in your scene, you will notice that layers are treated as flat objects, animation layers that are supposed to face the camera at all times will look like a flat sheet of rotating paper. Use the Ortholock layer when mixing flat animation layers with a set built in 3D. Ortholock forces your drawing layer to always follow the Camera angle. It does not follow its position or zooming level, only the rotation. This prevents drawings from being distorted by the camera motion.



Adding an Ortholock layer in a symbol will not give the correct result. The Ortholock contained inside a symbol does not consider the position of the camera contained in the root scene. Keep your Ortholock layers in the root scene.

### To add an Ortholock layer:

1. In the Module Library view, go to the Move tab.
2. Select an Ortholock module and drag it to the Network view.
3. In the Network view, drag an output cable from the Ortholock module and connect it to the module you want to keep facing the camera.



### Related Topics

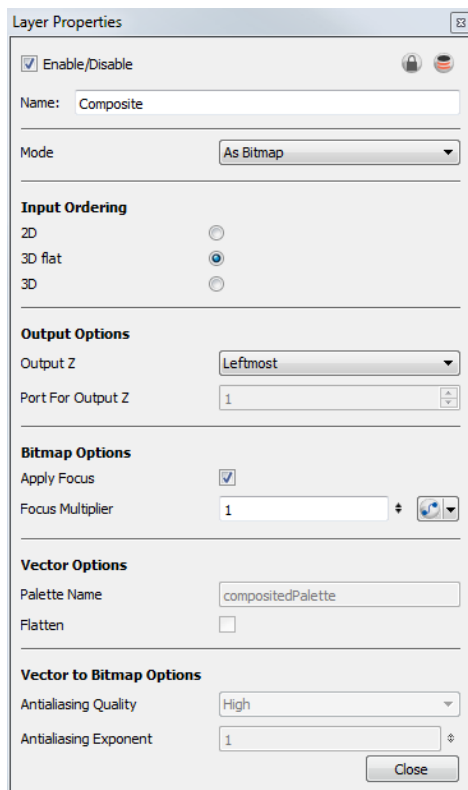
- [3D Camera Motion on page 868](#)

# Managing a Network with a 3D Scene Setup

In Animate Pro, you can create very advanced networks using effects, complex connections and multiple-level compositing.

The Composite module's main task takes all of your image's output and converts it into a single flat image that you can render out. You can alter it further by manipulating a three dimensional scene setup. You can also modify a Composite's behavior as seen in the [Scene Setup on page 559](#) chapter.

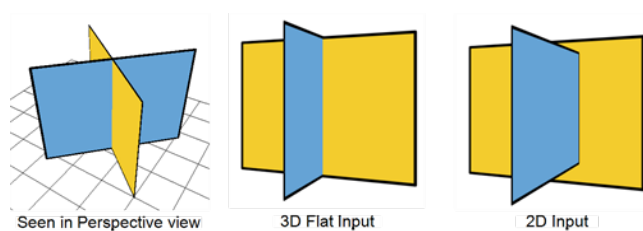
## Input and Output Options



The default options combination is:

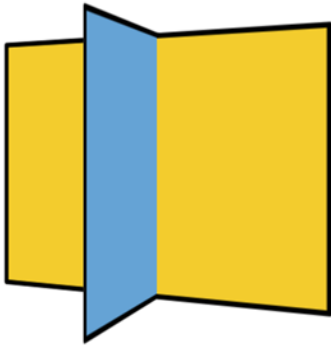
- As **Bitmap**, for the output behaviour
- **3D flat**, for the input ordering

By default, a Composite module is set to output a flat bitmap image and to correctly composite elements positioned in 3D space.





For example, if you have two intersecting walls, and use the default combination, you will see the following result:



This image is correctly represented in the Camera view and is output from the Composite module as a flat drawing. The Z-axis value of your elements are not retained, it becomes an independent composition with only one forward-backward value.



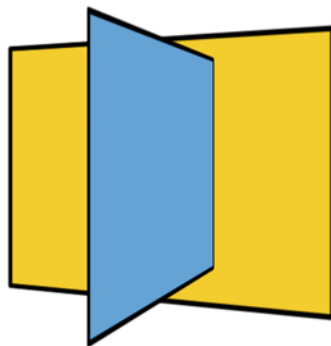
When building a 3D set out of planes, it is recommended that you set the composite mode to As Seamless Bitmap. This avoids intersection issues when rendering the 3D objects created out of planes.

## 3D Input Ordering Option

The visual result for the 3D Input Ordering option is the same as the 3D Flat option. The visual result in the Camera view will be correct, but the elements will not be converted into a flat image. The 3D position of your images will be remembered until the next Composite module. This mode is quite advanced and should only be used in very advanced cases. Most of the time you will use the 3D Flat Input ordering option.

## 2D Input Ordering Option

If you switch the Input Ordering option to 2D, the walls will be calculated as flat 2D objects and not as 3D objects. The perspective caused by the 3D rotation will be correctly represented, but the elements will not intersect. The result will be similar to the following:



## Related Topics

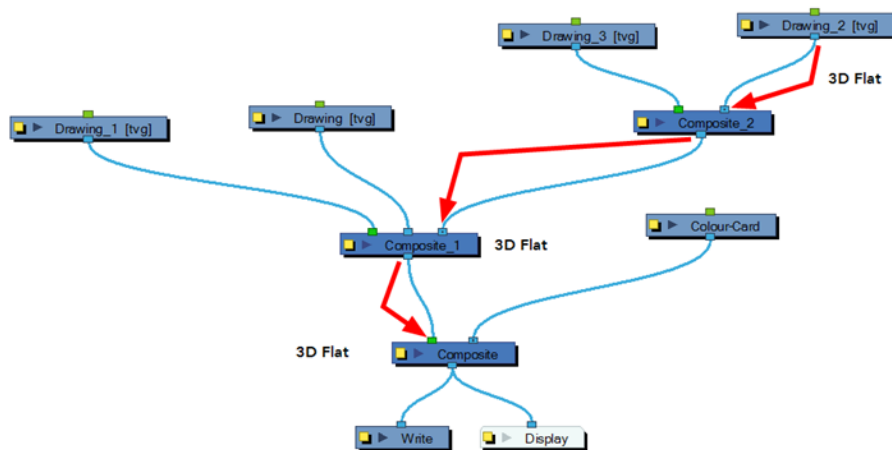
- [How to Organize your 3D Composite Modules](#) below
- [Composite Layer Properties](#) on page 607

# How to Organize your 3D Composite Modules

If you start combining several composite modules in your Network view, you must understand the way they work if you want to get the desired result.

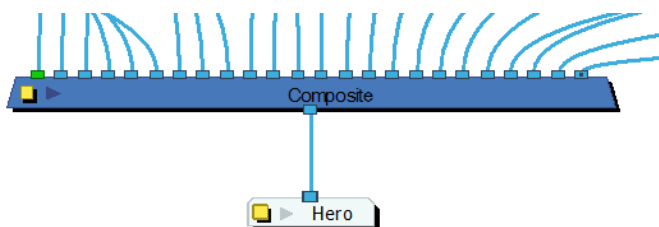
There is a specific order in which you should set your Composite modules.

It is important to understand that each time you process images through a 3D Flat Composite module, the images will be merged together. Images processed in later Composite modules cannot be inserted between images of the previous composite since it is a flat image.



If you place Pass-Through type Composite modules in your network, the images will not be processed together before the final Composite. It is important to keep your final Composite as a 3D Flat Composite in order to read the layer ordering correctly.

The most efficient networking system to use to obtain the desired result is likely the Pass-Through composite mode throughout the whole network. This way, you can create individual compositions to keep your network clean and organized, but process everything together at the end.





When building a 3D set out of planes, it is recommended that you set the composite mode to As Seamless Bitmap. This avoids intersection issues when rendering the 3D objects created out of planes.

---



# Chapter 15: Sound



With Animate Pro, you can import soundtracks and dialogue into your animation to make it more engaging and entertaining. There are several sound editing features that can be used to synchronize sounds to individual frames or moments in time. You can also use them to trim unwanted seconds from the beginning and end of your sound files, as well as to loop sounds that you want to continue throughout your animation.

Your ability to add dialogue to animation is greatly enhanced with the Animate Pro lip-sync tools. Animate Pro can analyze voice tracks to determine which of the eight animation phonemes (lip positions) would best apply to each frame of sound. With the mouth chart that the software generates, you can easily draw lip positions for your character. Furthermore, Animate Pro can automatically apply drawings of lip positions to each frame of your animation based on the mouth chart.



You can also synchronize your animation to a music score, refer to [Tempo Markers on page 450](#) to learn more.

## Topics Covered

- [Importing a Sound File on the next page](#)
- [Sound Layer Properties on page 880](#)
- [Sound Displays on page 882](#)
- [Sound Playback on page 883](#)
- [Sound Scrubbing on page 884](#)
- [Editing a Sound File on page 887](#)
- [Add Empty Sound Layer on page 896](#)
- [Lip-sync on page 898](#)
- [Sound Preferences on page 906](#)

# Importing a Sound File

If you decide to add sound to your movie, you must first prepare this sound outside of Animate Pro. When this is done you must add a sound element in Animate Pro to the organize sound files in your animation. Sound will play in the movie until it reaches the end of the file or a stop frame that you have created in the Sound Element Editor.



If you first create your project in Toon Boom Storyboard Pro, the sound will be cut up into the different scenes for you automatically.

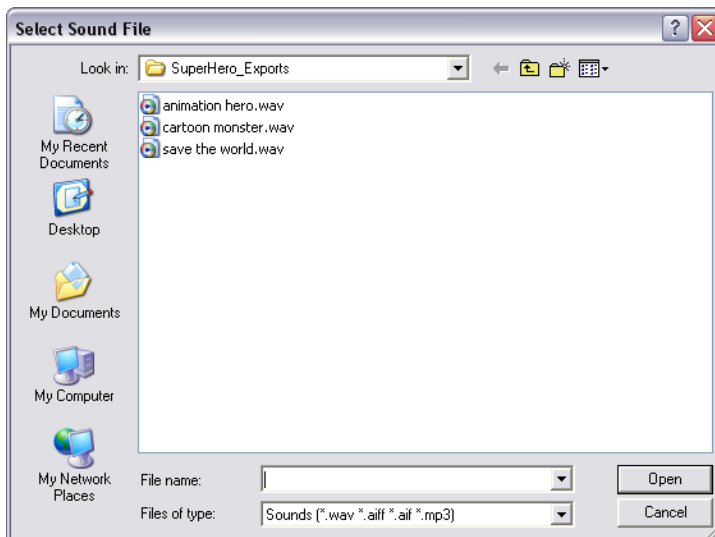
You can import WAV, AIFF or MP3 sound files using any of the methods listed below.

## To import a sound file:

### 1. Select File > Import > Sound

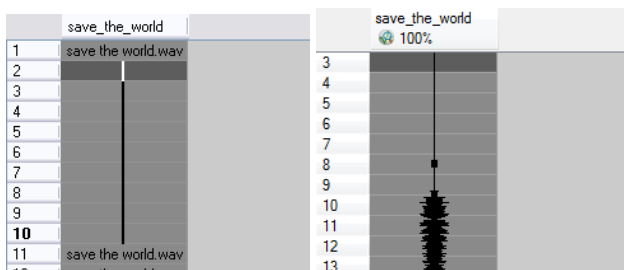
- ▶ Right-click anywhere in the frame zone of the Xsheet view.
- ▶ From the Top menu
- ▶ From the Xsheet View menu
- ▶ From the Timeline View menu

The Select Sound File dialog box opens.



### 2. From the Select Sound File dialog box find and select your sound file from your computer.

Your sound file appears as a layer in both the Timeline and Xsheet view.



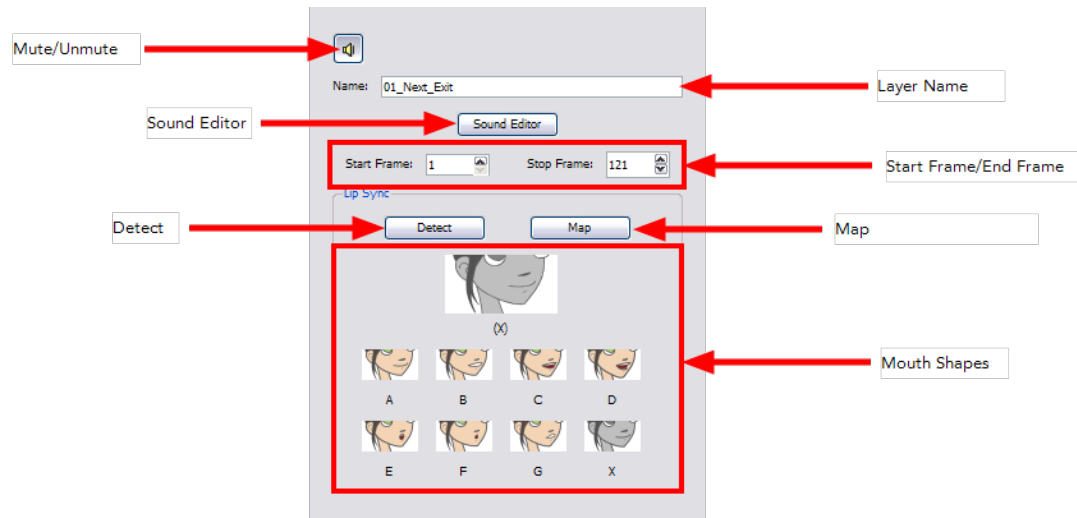


## Related Topics

- [Sound Layer Properties](#) on the next page
- [Sound Displays](#) on page 882
- [Sound Playback](#) on page 883
- [Sound Scrubbing](#) on page 884
- [Editing a Sound File](#) on page 887
- [Add Empty Sound Layer](#) on page 896
- [Lip-sync](#) on page 898

# Sound Layer Properties

When you select a sound layer in the Timeline view, the options related to that layer appear in the Layer Properties view.



- Mute/Unmute**  
 This button mutes and unmutes the sound layer during the scene play back.
- Layer Name**  
 This field displays the layer's name.
- Sound Editor**  
 This button opens the Sound editor.
- Start Frame/End Frame**  
 These fields determine the start and end frame of the sound file.
- Detect**  
 This button launches the automated lip-sync detection.
- Map**  
 This button opens the Map Lip-sync dialog box.
- Mouth Shapes**  
 This section shows the automated lip-sync detection during the scene play back. Click on the thumbnail image of each mouth to change the phoneme assigned to the current frame.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Sound File on page 878](#)
- [Sound Displays on page 882](#)
- [Sound Playback on page 883](#)
- [Sound Scrubbing on page 884](#)






- [Editing a Sound File](#) on page 887
- [Add Empty Sound Layer](#) on page 896
- [Lip-sync](#) on page 898

# Sound Displays

Within the **Xsheet** view, the sound file can be displayed in different ways, depending on your sound editing needs.

## To change the sound display:

1. Right-click in the sound column or on the sound column header, choose **Sound Display >** and one of the following:
  - ▶ **Sound Name:** Shows the name of the sound file, as well as the file format. The line running vertically through the column frames between the same file name indicates a continuity of the same sound file in these frames.
  - ▶ **Mouth Shapes:** Show the letter (or name depending on the way you named your character's different mouth positions) in the column's frames. There is only one mouth position allotted per frame and this position should correspond to the sound file after performing a lip-sync.
  - ▶ **Waveform:** Shows a vertical display of the sound file's actual waveform. In the column header, in the field under the column name, you can type in a percentage to zoom-in or zoom-out on the waveform, or pass the scroll cursor  over the Zoom Waveform  icon.

	Sound_Name	Mouth_Shapes	Waveform
16	13_STARS.MP3	X	 200%
17		X	
18		X	
19		X	
20		X	
21		X	
22		X	
23		X	
24		X	
25		X	
26		X	
27		X	
28	13_STARS.MP3	X	



You can show/hide the waveform in the Timeline view by pressing the Waveform button in the Timeline View toolbar.

## Related Topics

- [Lip-sync on page 898](#)
- [Sound Preferences on page 906](#)

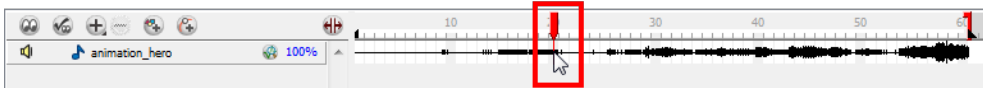
# Sound Playback



Before playing back any sound, click on the Enable Sound  button in the Playback toolbar or enable it

through the Play menu in the top menu. This will make sure that you can hear the sound layers in your scene, even the ones included within symbols.


## To play back your sound sample:

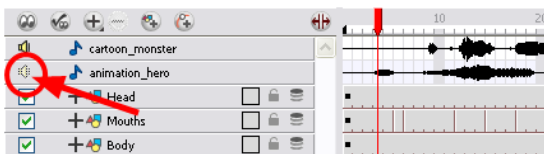
- To select a starting point:
  - In the Xsheet view, click on a cell in the sound column.
  - In the Timeline view, click on a cell in the sound layer. You can also slide the red playhead to the correct cell.



- Click on the Play  button in the Playback toolbar or in the top menu select **Play > Play Scene Forward** or click on the [Enter/Return] key.
- If you would like to hear your sound sample played back again and again, click the Loop  button in the Playback toolbar or the **Loop** option from the Play menu.

## Mute

If you have two or more sound layers and would like listen to them independently, you can disable the unwanted sound by clicking on the **Mute Sound**  icon located on the sound name layer in the Timeline view.



## Related Topics

- [Importing a Sound File on page 878](#)
- [Sound Layer Properties on page 880](#)
- [Sound Displays on the previous page](#)
- [Sound Scrubbing on the next page](#)
- [Editing a Sound File on page 887](#)
- [Add Empty Sound Layer on page 896](#)
- [Lip-sync on page 898](#)

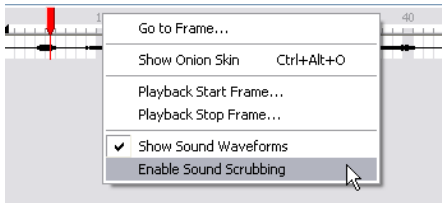
# Sound Scrubbing

Animate Pro uses a process known as Sound Scrubbing to let you hear sound in real-time while you move the playback pointer forward or backward. This is very useful for finely-tuned lip-synching. You can scrub sounds from the Timeline view.

**To scrub a sound from the Timeline view:**

1. In the Playback toolbar, click on the **Sound Scrubbing**  button or from the top menu, select

**Play > Enable Sound Scrubbing.** You can also activate Sound Scrubbing by right-clicking in the Timeline view's frame bar.



2. At the top of the Timeline view, drag the red frame marker along to hear the sound at each frame. The [Ctrl] + [Up Arrow] and [Ctrl] + [Down Arrow] (Windows) and [⌘] + [Up Arrow] and [⌘] + [Down Arrow] (Mac OS X).



## Related Topics

- [Analog Sound Scrubbing below](#)

## Analog Sound Scrubbing

Animate Pro is set to the digital sound scrubbing mode by default. This means that all sounds are played in real time. It also means that as you scrub over a frame you will hear the section of your sound file that is allotted to that frame. As you are scrubbing, although it is accurate, the sound can sound clipped. It can also be difficult to hear nuances in pitch and tone.

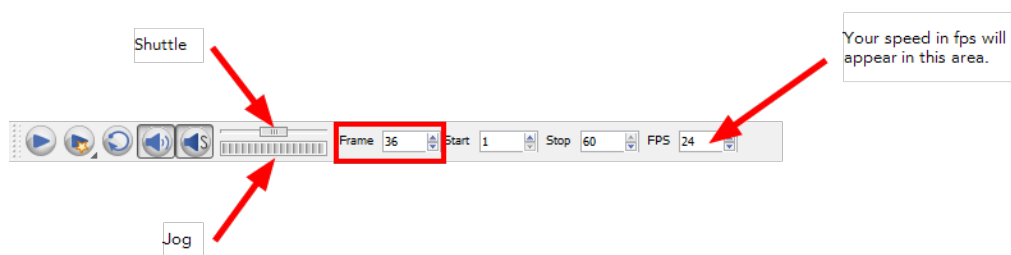
Animate Pro has an analog sound scrubbing option. When sound scrubbing in this mode, the sound is played back according to the speed that the playhead or jog is manually adjusted. Animate Pro's interface offers shuttle and jog sliders to perform analog sound scrubbing, however, external hardware and their corresponding software can be used in conjunction with Animate Pro for improved analog sound scrubbing results.



Please refer to the device's manual to configure its functionality with Animate Pro.

## Performing an Analog Sound Scrub in Animate Pro

Before you can perform an analog sound scrub in Animate Pro, you have to learn about the Shuttle and Jog.

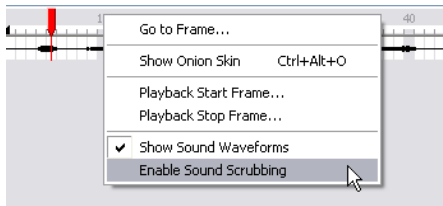


- **Shuttle:** Pull the Shuttle backward or forward to make the red playhead, in the Timeline view, jump by large increments in the direction you are moving the shuttle.
- **Jog:** Click and drag along the Jog to make the "dial" rotate. The Jog controls finer incremental movements along the soundwave. Use the Frame field to see the frame number which you are on. As you rotate the dial, your speed in fps appears directly after the FPS field.

**To perform an analog sound scrub:**

1. In the Playback toolbar, click on the **Sound Scrubbing**  button or from the top menu, select **Play >**

**Enable Sound Scrubbing.** You can also activate **Sound Scrubbing** by right-clicking in the Timeline view's frame bar.



2. In the top menu, go to **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X).
3. In the Sound tab enable the **Analog Sound Scrubbing** option.
4. Click on the **OK** button.
5. In the Playback toolbar, use the Shuttle to find the general location of where you would like to start your sound scrub, or in the Timeline view, drag the red playhead to the desired location.
6. In the **Playback** toolbar, use the **Jog** to fine tune your scrub to just a few frames.

## Related Topics

- [Sound Scrubbing on page 884](#)

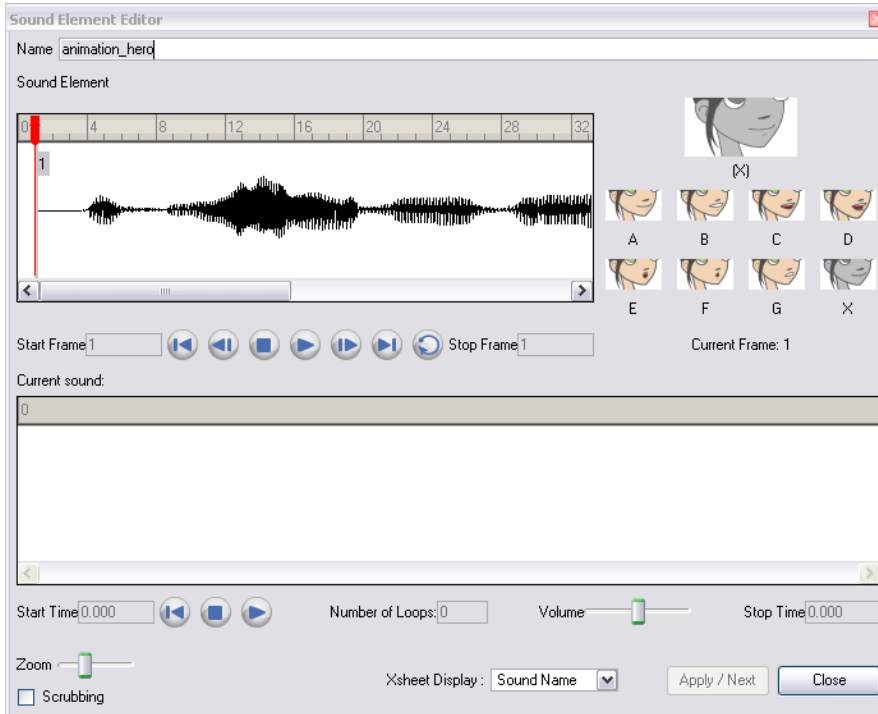
# Editing a Sound File

Now that you have successfully imported your sound file into Animate Pro, it is time to familiarize yourself with the sound editing interface. The Sound Element editor makes it possible to edit sounds that were created outside of Animate Pro and imported into your scene.

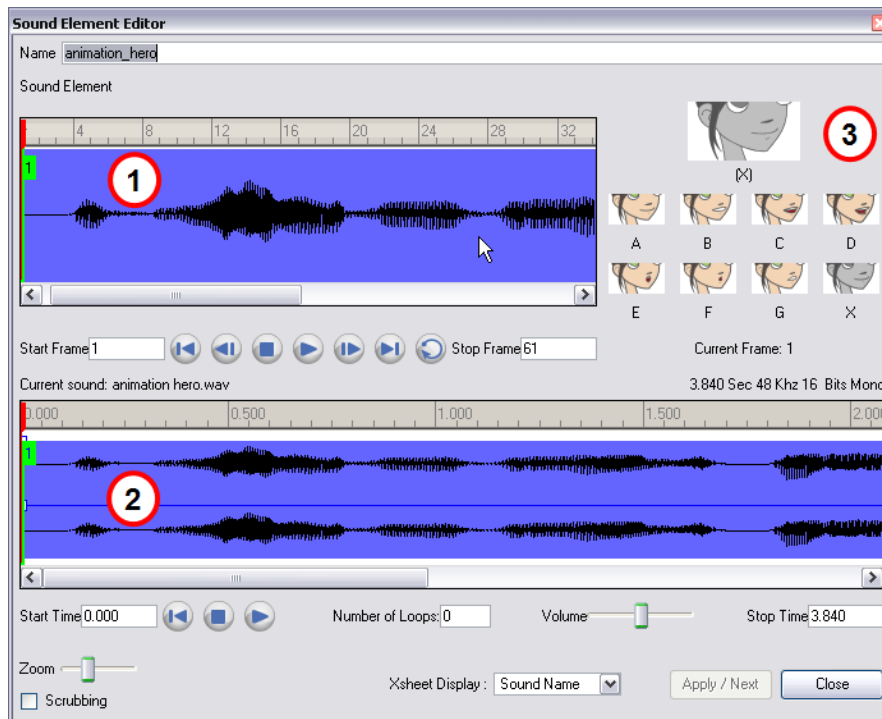
## To open the Sound Element editor:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view.

The Sound Element Editor dialog box opens.



The Sound Element editor consists of three main parts.



**1. Sound Element** - The wave form seen in the top Sound Element window is the actual sample that will be heard when the final movie is rendered. It may be shorter than the original sound sample due to length of the scene. If any edits are made to the sound sample, they can be heard here.

In the Sound Element panel you will see some coloured tabs, these tabs represent the frames. The frame number is shown inside the tab flag marker. Note that these tabs indicate the start and end frames of a sound segment.

**2. Current Sound** - The Current Sound window displays the original sound file in its entirety and is where you can edit its properties. This window remains empty until you click inside the Sound Element window.

**3. Lip-sync Preview** - Is used to preview the automated detection and to manually insert different mouth positions to correspond with the sound sample.

You can accomplish the following in the Sound Element editor:

- [Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound on the facing page](#)
- [Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File on page 891](#)
- [Looping a Sound on page 892](#)
- [Mixing the Sound Volume on page 893](#)
- [Customizing the Playback Range on page 894](#)
- [Recomputing the Mouth Chart on page 904](#)

## Related Topics

- [Lip-sync on page 898](#)



# Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound

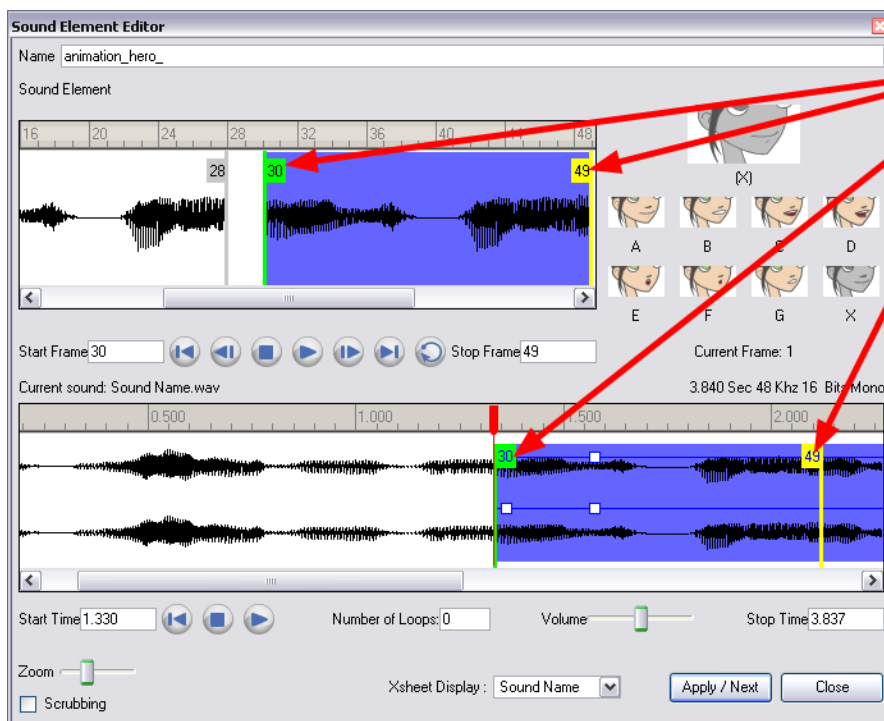
To synchronize the sound with specific images in your scene, you must set a start frame for your sound. To make sure the sound ends by a certain frame, you must set an end frame.




In the Sound Element panel you will see some coloured tabs, these tabs represent the frames. The frame number is shown inside the tab flag marker. These tabs indicate the start and end frames of a sound segment.

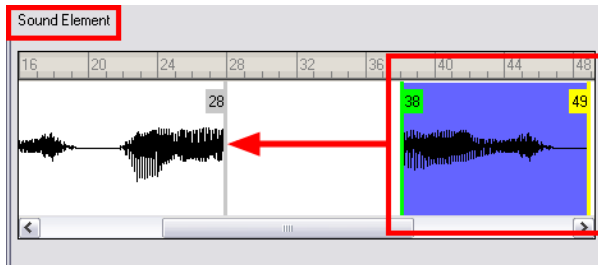
## To change start or end frame of a sound:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. Select the sound sample you want from the Sound Element panel. To distinguish one sound section from another on the same sound layer, check the frame numbers that appear on tabs flanking the start and stop lines of each waveform section.



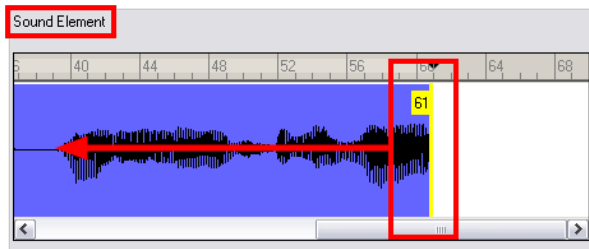
Click on the Play  button in the Current Sound panel (only the selected sound plays).

3. Within the Sound Element panel, click and drag the selected clip to the frame number where you want it to start playing.

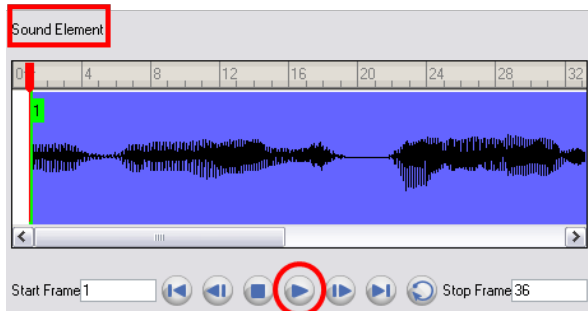


You can only move the clip to a section that does not already contain a clip; you cannot overlap two clips in the same element.

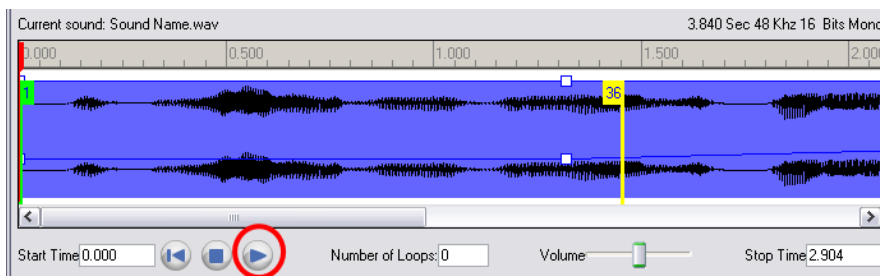
- To change the end frame, drag the yellow marker at the end of the waveform to the frame position.



- To hear how all of the clips fit together in the element, click on the Play button in the Sound Element panel.



If you only want to hear the selected clip, click on the Play button in the Current Sound panel.



- Click Apply/Next when done.  
The Xsheet and Timeline views display the sound clip at the start frame you selected.

## Related Topics

- [Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File on the facing page](#)


- [Looping a Sound](#) on the next page
- [Mixing the Sound Volume](#) on page 893
- [Customizing the Playback Range](#) on page 894

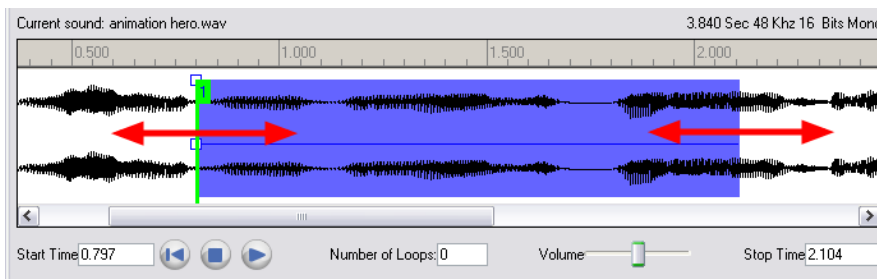
## Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File


To play only a section of a sound file, use the Sound Element Editor to select the exact part you want to use. For example, if there is a bit of noise at the start of the sound, use the Sound Element Editor to cut the noise.

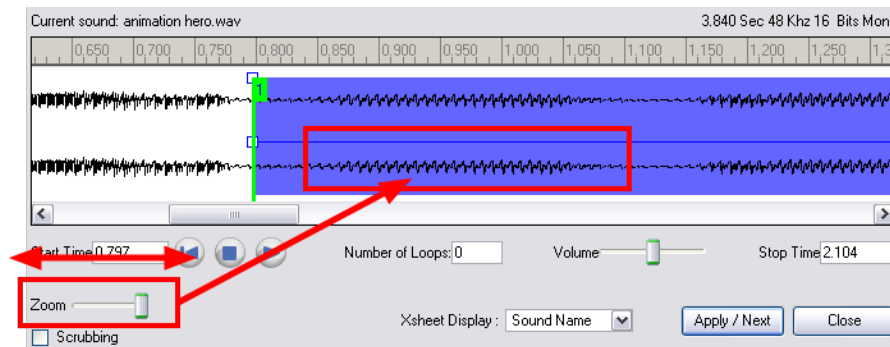
The Sound Element Editor does not change the original sound file; it only plays a section of it, ignoring the rest. This means that the entire sound file is included on export. If you need to be mindful of file size, it is better to edit sound files completely in a sound editor before bringing them into Animate Pro.

### To trim the start and end of a sound file:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. Select the sound you want to work on from the Sound Element panel.
3. Select the sound sample you want from the Sound Element panel. To distinguish one sound section from another on the same sound layer, check the frame numbers that appear on tabs flanking the start and stop lines of each waveform section. Or select a soundwave and click on the Play  button in the Current Sound panel (only the selected sound will play).
4. Using the Current Sound panel, you can decide which part of the file you want to play by dragging the left and right boundaries of the selection area.



5. Click on the Play  button in the Current Sound panel to check that you have trimmed the desired sections. Use the Zoom slider at the bottom of the panel to zoom in on the wave form so that you can trim it more accurately.



6. Click on the **Apply/Next** button.

The trimmed sound sample should now appear in both the Timeline and Xsheet views at the start and end positions that you selected.

## Related Topics

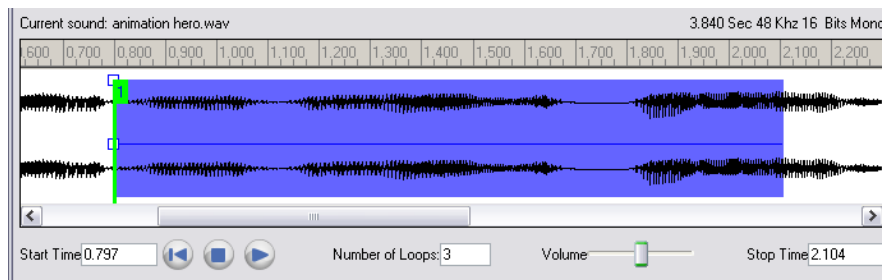
- [Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound on page 889](#)
- [Looping a Sound below](#)
- [Mixing the Sound Volume on the facing page](#)
- [Customizing the Playback Range on page 894](#)

## Looping a Sound

To repeat a sound, specify the number of times that you want it to loop in the Sound Element editor.

To loop a sound sample:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. From the Sound Element panel, select the sound section that you want to loop.
3. In the Current Sound panel, type the number of times you want the sound to play in the Number of Loops field.



4. Press on the [Enter/Return] key. The looped sound appears after the current sound. They are indicated by their grey waveforms, as opposed to black.

When you loop a sound, the looped sections fill the cells in the sound element (column or layer) until the next sound sample starts or until the scene ends. This means that the looping could effectively get cut if the next sound sample starts too soon, or if the scene ends too quickly.

## Related Topics

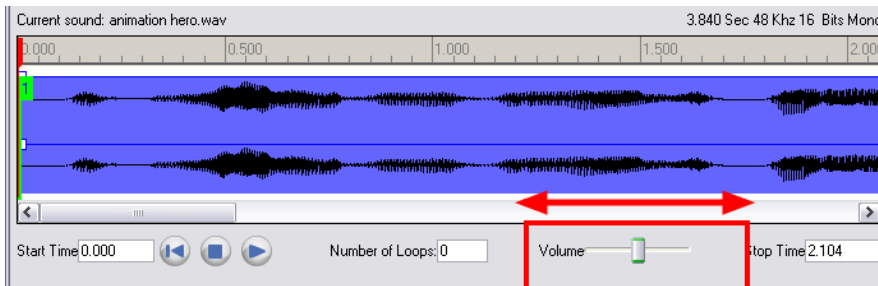
- [Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound on page 889](#)
- [Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File on the previous page](#)
- [Mixing the Sound Volume on the facing page](#)
- [Customizing the Playback Range on page 894](#)

## Mixing the Sound Volume

You can adjust the volume of an entire sound clip or modify the volume in increments by adjusting the fade-in and fade-out times, otherwise known as sound envelopes. The fade edit only affects the play back; the original sound file is not affected.

### To adjust the overall volume of the entire sound clip:

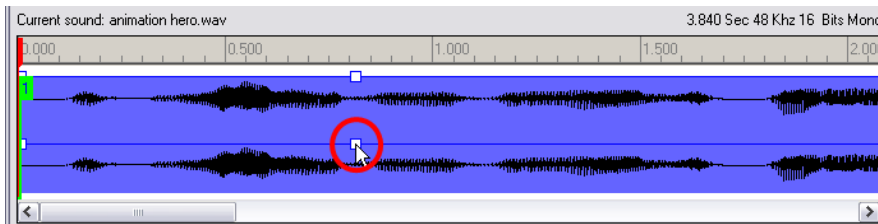
1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. In the Sound Element panel, select the sound that you want to work on. A more detailed version of the selected sound appears in the Current Sound panel.
3. In the Current Sound panel, use the Volume slider to adjust the volume.



4. Click on the Play button in the Current Sound panel to verify the volume.

### To create the fade in/out effect on a sound clip:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. In the Sound Element panel, select the sound you want to work on.
3. In the Current Sound panel, click on the thin blue line above waveform to add an envelope marker.

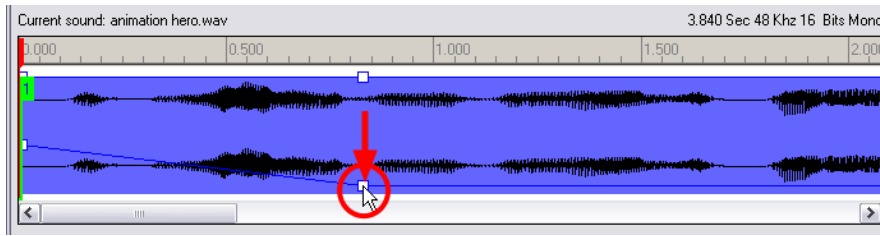



4. Drag the envelope markers to adjust the volume at that frame and to create the time of the transition. The line from the edge of the clip to the envelope marker identifies how the volume either increases (fades-in) or decreases (fades-out) over time.

Dragging the marker to the bottom of the channel will mute the volume, while dragging it upwards will increase the volume.



To create an even effect, be sure to adjust the envelope markers uniformly in both the left and right (bottom and top) channels.



5. Click on the Play  button in the Current Sound panel to check the fade envelopes.

## Related Topics

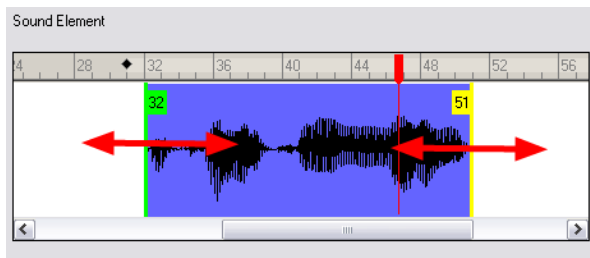
- [Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound on page 889](#)
- [Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File on page 891](#)
- [Looping a Sound on page 892](#)
- [Customizing the Playback Range below](#)


## Customizing the Playback Range

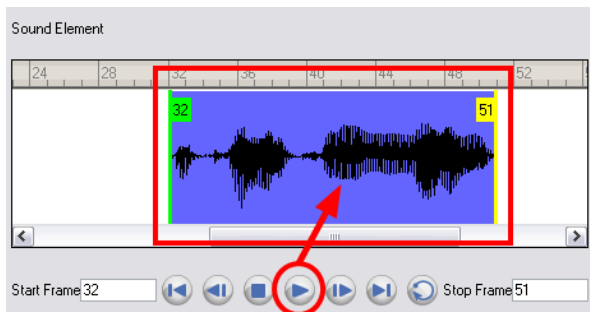
To hear a specific section of the sound element, adjust the playback range in the Sound Element Editor to start or stop at specific frames. This customized playback range does not affect the actual sound in the Sound element.

To change the playback range in the Sound Element Editor dialog box:

1. Drag the start or end range markers in the Sound Element panel to the boundary frames you want.



2. When you click on the Play  button to play back your sound in the Sound Element editor, it only plays the sound which exists between the two markers.



## Related Topics

- [Changing the Start or End Frame of a Sound](#) on page 889
- [Trimming the Start and End of a Sound File](#) on page 891
- [Looping a Sound](#) on page 892
- [Mixing the Sound Volume](#) on page 893

# Add Empty Sound Layer

When performing sound editing tasks, it can be useful to chop up a sound sample into different layers. For example, when performing a lip-sync, only a single view of the various mouth positions for a character can exist on one layer. Therefore, if you would like to have your character turn its head from a profile view to a three-quarter view and have mouth position changes to fit with the sound sample from these two different views, you would need to cut-up the sound samples needed for the profile view mouth positions on one layer and the sound samples needed for the three-quarter view on another.


For this task, you will need an empty sound layer.

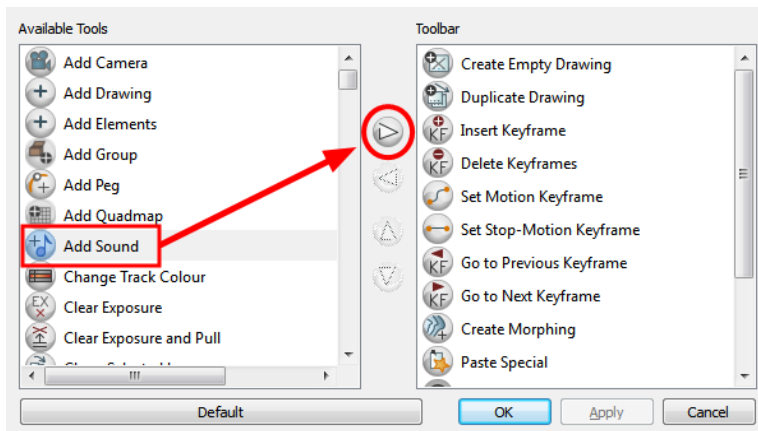
**To add an empty sound layer:**

1. In the top menu, select **Windows > Toolbars > Timeline View**.

The Timeline view toolbar appears at the top of the Timeline view.

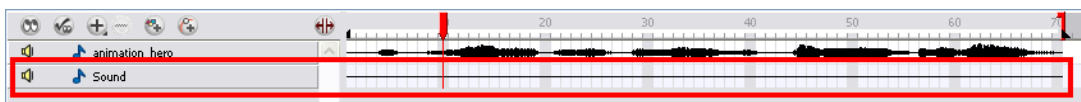


2. Right-click on the Timeline View toolbar and choose **Customize**.
3. Choose the **Add Sound**  button from the Available Tools column on the left and add it to the Toolbar column on the right. Click **Ok** to accept the change.

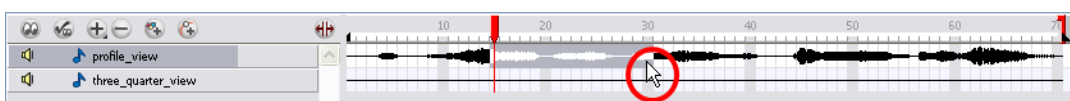


4. Click on the **Add Sound**  button.

An empty (silent) sound layer should appear in both your Timeline and Xsheetviews.

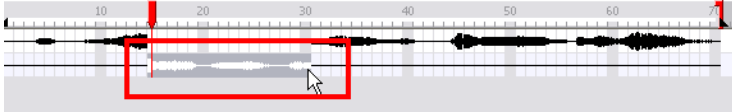


5. Rename your layers accordingly.
6. Click the cell where you wish to start the cut and [Shift] + click on the final cell of the cut. The sample to be cut becomes highlighted.





7. Drag the selection into the empty sound layer below.



8. You can now continue to cut-up and distribute the sound sample between the two layers or carry on to the lip-synching process for each layer and its corresponding facial view.



If you need to duplicate your sound layer to keep an unedited copy for safety, you can click on the Duplicate Selected Layers button, located in the Timeline View toolbar.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Sound File on page 878](#)
- [Sound Layer Properties on page 880](#)
- [Sound Displays on page 882](#)
- [Sound Playback on page 883](#)
- [Sound Scrubbing on page 884](#)
- [Editing a Sound File on page 887](#)
- [Lip-sync on the next page](#)

# Lip-sync



Adding a lip-sync to a project can really enhance its quality and storytelling. However, it can be difficult to shape a character's mouth so that it matches the sound at the precise frame.

To solve this problem Animate Pro provides a lip-sync feature which analyzes the contents of a sound element and generates a mouth chart (see below) based on the eight animation phonemes (A, B, C, D, E, F, G, and X, which is used to represent silence).

The mouth shapes used by Animate Pro are based on the conventional mouth chart used in the animation industry.

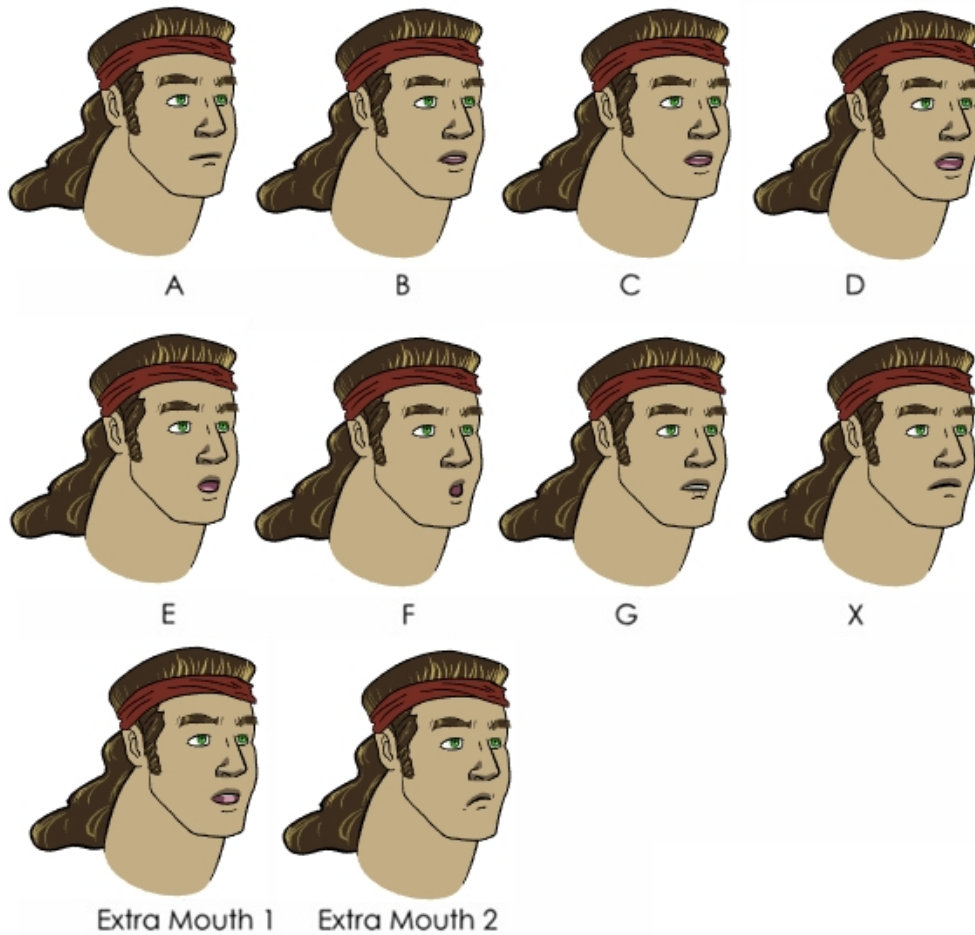


The letters used to represent the shapes do **NOT** correspond to an actual sound.



If you are doing cut-out animation, refer to [Adding Extra Drawings on page 730](#) to learn how to add extra drawings to your character.

---



Here is an approximation of which sound each mouth shape can produce:

- A: m, b, p, h
- B: s, d, j, i, k, t
- C: e, a
- D: A, E
- E: o
- F: u, oo
- G: f, ph
- X: Silence, undetermined sound

You can lip-sync the traditional way or let the system automatically create the basic detection.

You can refer to the mouth chart positions as you draw the shape of your character's mouth.

## Related Topics

- [Generating a Lip-sync Detection on the next page](#)
- [Mapping the Lip-Sync Detection on page 901](#)

- [Modifying the Lip-sync Detection](#) on page 903
- [Manual Lip-sync](#) on page 905

## Generating a Lip-sync Detection

There are three places where you can perform a lip-sync detection:

- [Timeline and Xsheet Views](#) below
- [Generating a Lip-sync Detection](#) above
- [Layer Properties View](#) on the facing page

### Timeline and Xsheet Views

To generate a sound detection for your lip-sync using the Xsheet or Timeline view:

1. To show the mouth chart letters, if they are not already present in the Xsheet view, right-click on the sound column and select **Lip-Sync > Sound Display > Mouth Shapes** from the pop-up menu.
2. In the Xsheet view or Timeline view, right-click on the sound layer's cells and select **Lip-Sync > Auto Lip-Sync Detection** from the pop-up menu. You can also select **Animation > Lip-Sync > Auto Lip-Sync Detection** from the top menu.

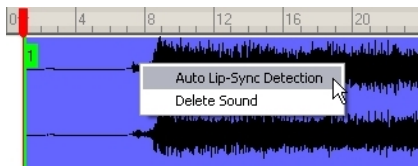


Animate Pro analyzes the selected sound clips and assigns a lip-sync letter to each frame. The X markers in the frame are replaced by these designated letters.

### Sound Element Editor

To generate a sound detection for your lip-sync using the Sound Element Editor:

1. Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
2. In Sound Element panel, select the waveform you want to generate the mouth chart for.
3. Right-click on the sound file and select **Auto Lip-Sync Detection** from the pop-up menu.

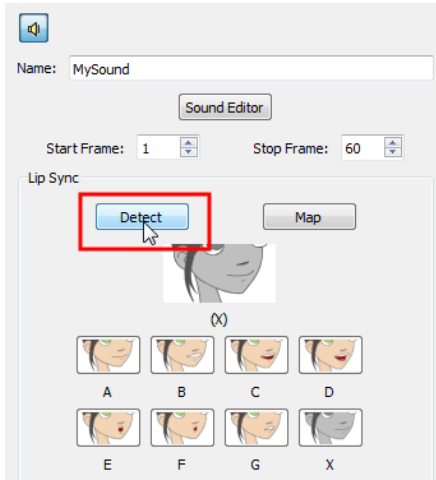


A progress bar appears while Animate Pro analyzes the selected sound clips and assigns a lip-sync letter to each sound cell.

## Layer Properties View

To generate a sound detection for your lip-sync using the Layer Properties view:

1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select your sound layer.
2. In the Layer Properties, click on the Detect button.



A progress bar appears while Animate Pro analyzes the selected sound clips and assigns a lip-sync letter to each sound cell.

### Related Topics

- [Manual Lip-sync on page 905](#)
- [Mapping the Lip-Sync Detection below](#)
- [Modifying the Lip-sync Detection on page 903](#)

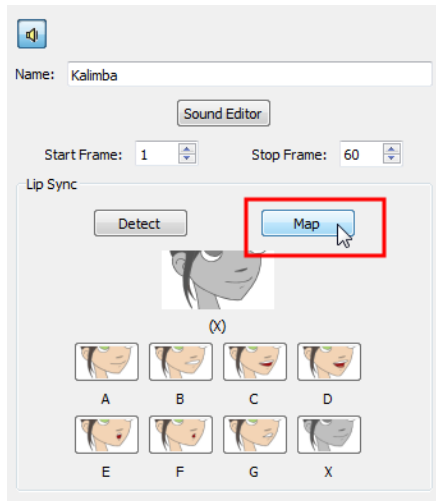
## Mapping the Lip-Sync Detection

Animate Pro can automatically map drawings in an element to the mouth chart you have generated for a sound. This can save time when you are lip-synching a voice track.

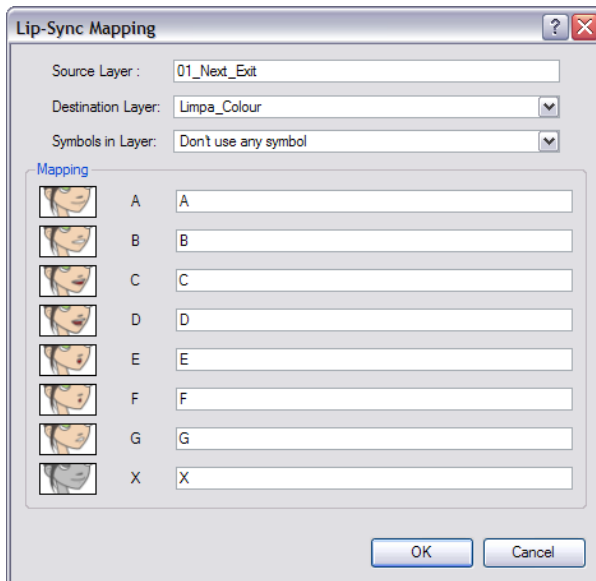
In the Lip-Sync Mapping dialog box, you can identify each lip drawing of a character. Animate Pro then automatically labels all of the cells in the character's element with the appropriate name.

To automatically map lip-sync drawings to a mouth layer:

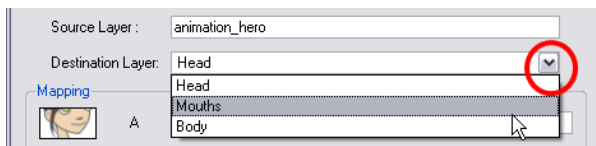
1. To open the Lip-Sync Mapping dialog box:
  - In the Timeline view, right-click on any cell in the sound sample layer. From the pop-up menu, select **Lip-Sync > Map Lip-Sync**. You can also select **Animation > Lip-Sync > Map Lip-Sync** from the top menu.
  - OR
  - In the Timeline view, select your sound layer and in the Layer Properties view, click on the Map button.





The Lip-Sync Mapping dialog box opens.



- From the **Destination Layer** drop-down list, select the layer that contains the mouth positions for the character's voice track.



- If the selected layer contains symbols, you can map the lip-sync using drawings located directly on the layer or use the symbol's frames. In the Symbol Layer field select **Don't Use Any Symbol** if you want to use the drawings or select the desired symbol from the drop-down menu.
- In the Mapping section, type the drawing name or Symbol frames in the field to the right of the phoneme it represents. If your drawings are already named with the phoneme letters, you do not have to do anything.
- Click on the OK button.

- Press the Play  button in the Playback toolbar to see and hear the results in the Camera view. To play back your scene with sound, enable the Sound  button in the Playback toolbar.

## Related Topics

- [Generating a Lip-sync Detection on page 900](#)
- [Manual Lip-sync on page 905](#)
- [Modifying the Lip-sync Detection below](#)

## Modifying the Lip-sync Detection

You can change the mouth position that has been assigned to a frame if you think that another position would be more appropriate.

For example, you may have a character who says nothing for ten frames, in between two speeches. Animate Pro would normally assign an X image for the silence period. However, if you want your character's mouth to hang open in astonishment for these ten frames, you can change the lip assignment for these frames from an X to an F.

### To change the lip assignment of a sound in the Xsheet:

- Right-click in the cell that contains the mouth position that you want to change.
- From the pop-up menu, select **Lip-Sync > Change Mouth Shape to** and choose the letter that reflects the mouth position that you want to use for that sound. You can also select **Animation > Lip-Sync > Lip-Sync > the desired mouth shape** from the top menu.

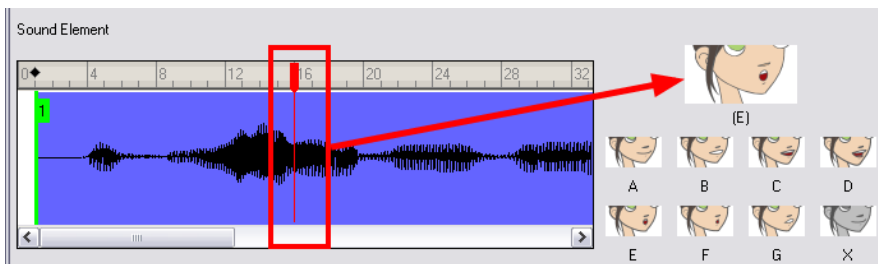
The drawing will automatically be updated in the **Camera** view.

You can also change the mouth assignment of a sound in the Sound Element editor.

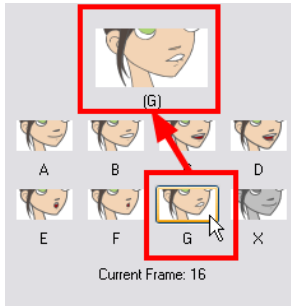
### To change the mouth position assignment of a sound from the Sound Element editor:

- Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet View to open the Sound Element editor.
- In the Sound Element panel, drag the frame slider to the frame you want to change the mouth position assignment on.

In the Lip-sync image area, the image on top represents the lip position assigned to the current frame.



- To change the image assigned to the frame, click on the image of the mouth position you want from below the preview image. The preview image changes to the mouth position image you select. You can perform the same operation in the Layer Properties view.



The position will also be updated in the Timeline and Xsheet views.



Note that if you modify the lip-sync detection you must remap the detection to your mouth layer. See [Mapping the Lip-Sync Detection](#)

## Related Topics

- [Recomputing the Mouth Chart below](#)

## Recomputing the Mouth Chart

When you generate the mouth chart for a sound in a sound element, you can either accept the mouth positions assigned by Animate Pro or assign your own lip-sync images.

However, if you change the sound's start frame or reassign its mouth position, you must reanalyze the sound and regenerate the mouth chart for it. This erases any manual modifications you may have made to the mouth assignments in the mouth chart.

### To recompute the mouth chart for a selected sound from the Sound column:

- In a Sound column in the Xsheet or Timeline view, right-click on a cell that contains the sound file you want to recompute the lip-sync for. Select **Lip-Sync > Auto Lip-Sync Detection** from the pop-up menu. The mouth position assignment for each frame is recomputed, erasing any modifications you have made.

### To recompute the mouth chart for a selected sound from the Sound Element Editor:

- Either double-click the sound layer name in the Timeline view or the sound column header in the Xsheet view to open the Sound Element editor.
- Click on the waveform in the Sound Element section in the Sound Element editor.
- Right-click and select **Auto-Lip Sync Detection** from the pop-up menu.

## Related Topics




- [Generating a Lip-sync Detection on page 900](#)

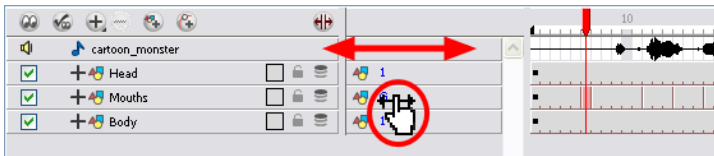


# Manual Lip-sync

Animate Pro allows for the manual swapping of mouth position drawings to match a voice track. For this process, both sound scrubbing (listening to a soundwave broken up frame-by-frame) and drawing substitutions from the Library View are used.


## To perform a manual lip-sync:

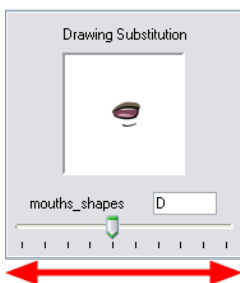
1. In the Playback toolbar, enable the **Sound Scrubbing**  button.
2. In the Timeline view, drag the red position indicator along the sound layer waveform.
3. When you reach a frame where a mouth position should go, for example, an open mouth with rounded lips for an "oh" sound, click on that frame on your mouth shapes layer.
4. In the Timeline view, click on the **Expand**  button to display the Data view.
5. Staying on your mouth shapes layer, place your cursor on top of the drawing name (often a letter) until it changes to the swapping  pointer.
6. Pull the cursor to see the list of mouth shape names and choose the one you want. The current drawing automatically changes to the new selection.



You can also use the Library view to swap drawings.

## To perform a manual lip-sync using the Library view:

1. In the Playback toolbar, enable the **Sound Scrubbing**  button.
2. In the Timeline view, drag the red playhead along the waveform of your sound layer.
3. When you reach a frame where a mouth position should go, for example, an open mouth with rounded lips for an "oh" sound, click on that frame on your mouth shapes layer.
4. In the Drawing Substitution window of the Library view, click and drag the slider to choose a mouth shape. The current drawing is swapped for the one in the preview window.



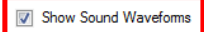
## Related Topics

- [Preview and Drawing Substitution on page 646](#)
- [Sound Scrubbing on page 884](#)

# Sound Preferences

When working with sound in Animate Pro, you can set some preferences to help you work more efficiently.

## Timeline Tab



### Show Sound Waveform

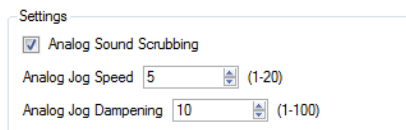
Enable this option if you would like to see your imported sound's waveform in the Timeline view.



You can always toggle the visibility of the waveform in the Timeline view by adding the Show Sound Waveform button from the Toolbar Manager. This button will work whether you have the Show Sound Waveform option enabled or disabled in the Preferences panel.

---

## Sound Tab



### Analog Sound Scrubbing

Enable this option to switch from digital to analog sound scrubbing.

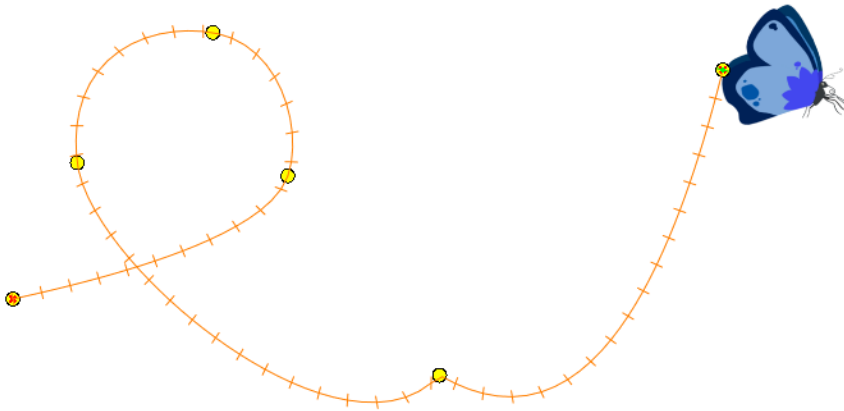
### Analog Jog Speed

Choose a value between 1-20 for the Analog Jog Speed. The greater the jog speed value, the slower you can scrub to have the sound play at an average pace. This controls how sensitive you would like the jog slider or dial to be.

### Analog Jog Dampening

Choose a value between 1-100 for the Analog Jog Dampening. The greater the value, the less precise the software is at responding to the jog's changes in speed. However, the greater the value, the more smooth the play back is using the jog slider or dial.

# Chapter 16: Animation Paths



Movement is the essence of creating an animation; it is essentially what animation is: bringing drawings to life. Sometimes this movement comes from the characters or objects themselves, while other times, it is the camera moving through elements set-up on the camera "stage". Often these movements can be complex, such as a helicopter moving across the screen with its rotor blades rotating, as the helicopter disappears into the distance, it appears to get smaller in size as it recedes in space. Although this seems like a simple motion, you must coordinate three movements to produce the correct effect.

The sophisticated systems integrated in Toon Boom Animate Pro have been specifically developed to accommodate the your complex motion needs.

## Topics Covered

- [Animating a Layer on page 909](#)
- [Differences between Pegs and Animated Layers on page 912](#)
- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes on page 924](#)
- [Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes on page 927](#)
- [Animating the Camera on page 932](#)
- [Modifying a Path in the Camera View on page 937](#)
- [Modifying a Path in the Timeline View on page 947](#)
- [Modifying a Path in the Function View on page 951](#)
- [Modifying a Path in the Xsheet View on page 956](#)
- [Function Curves on page 958](#)
- [Copying and Pasting a Motion on page 967](#)
- [Adjusting the Ease on page 976](#)
- [Expression Columns on page 983](#)

- [Animation Path Preferences](#) on page 989

# Animating a Layer

This section describes the basics of animating a layer. Animate Pro's wide range of features let you produce accurate trajectories. However, before reaching this level you must learn how to create a simple motion and practice everything you learn in this chapter.


In this topic, you will find out about the two key elements in creating a motion:

- [Animate Mode](#) below
- [Animating a Layer](#) below
- [Enabling the Playback](#) on page 911

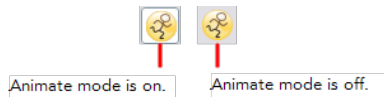
## Animate Mode

If you enable this mode when you animate layers, Animate Pro will apply a transformation to the current frame. If you don't, it will apply a transformation on the entire layer instead of only the current frame.

To enable the Animate Mode:

- ▶ In the Tools toolbar, click the **Animate Mode**  button.




The Animate Mode button is highlighted.

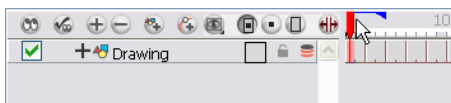


## Animating a Layer

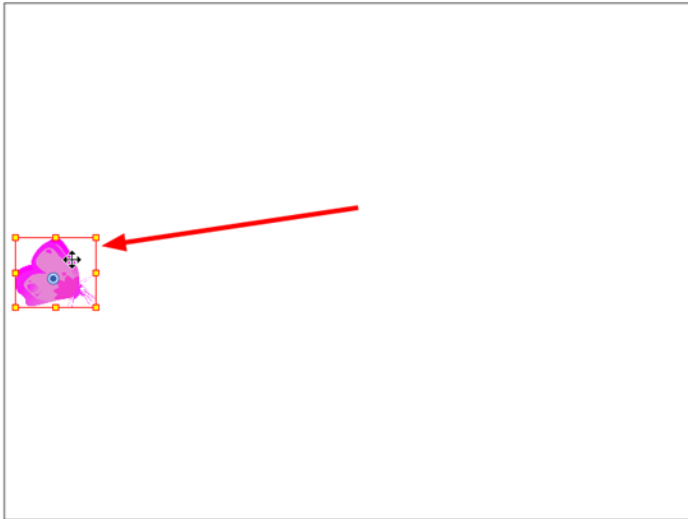
Follow these simple steps to perform a basic layer animation.

To animate a layer:

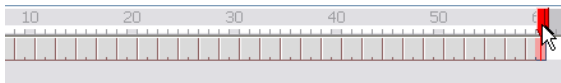
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
  - ▶ In the Tool Properties view, make sure the **Peg Selection Mode**  button is disabled so you can select your drawing layer directly and not the pegs. Refer to the section to learn more about this option.
2. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Animate**  mode .
3. In the Timeline view, go to the first frame.



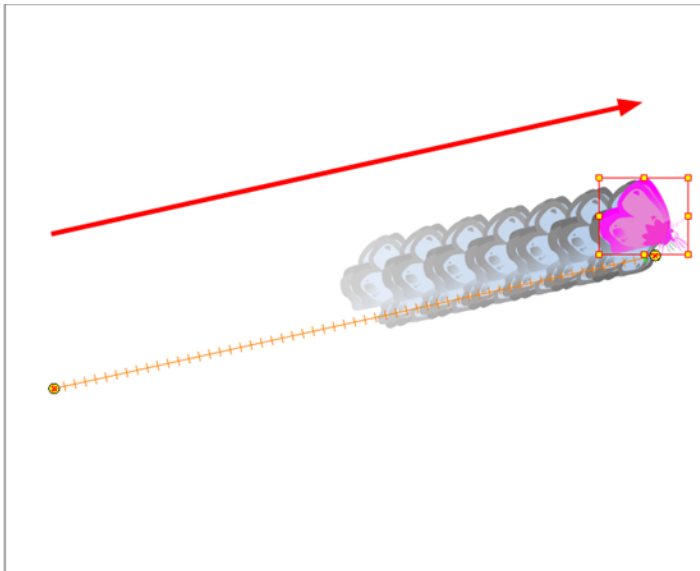
4. In the Camera view, select the element to animate and move it to its first position.



5. In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you would like to set the second position.



6. In the Camera view, move the selected element to its new position.



Refer to [Displaying a Path in the Camera View on page 937](#) to learn how to display the trajectory.

---

7. In the Playback toolbar, click the Play  button to view your work.

# Enabling the Playback

To see your motion animations in the **Top**, **Side** or **Perspective** views while you play back, you must enable the Playback option.

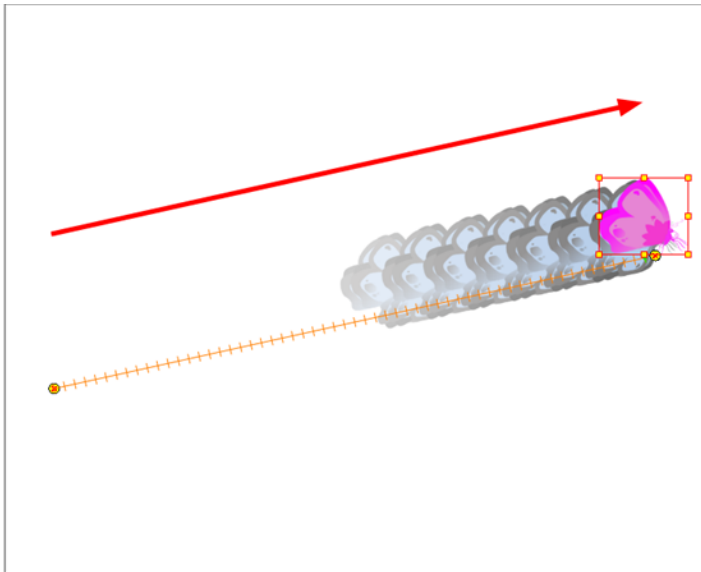
To enable the Playback option:

1. In the top menu, select **Play > Enable Playback > Top View, Side View or Perspective View**.

## Related Topics

- [Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes on page 927](#)

# Differences between Pegs and Animated Layers



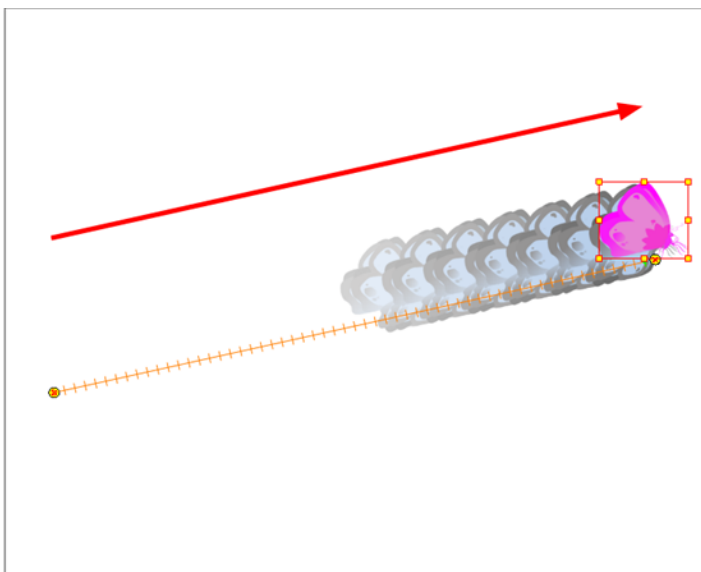
To animate the position of your drawings you need to create motion paths. Motion paths are trajectories on which you can hook your drawing objects to. You will use keyframes to record the key positions along this trajectory.

There are two ways in which to create motion paths:

- [Animated Layers below](#)
- [Pegs on page 914](#)

Animated drawing layers and pegs have different purposes which you will discover in the following topics.

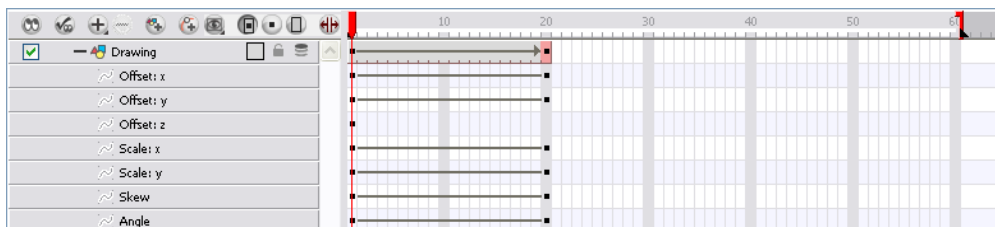
## Animated Layers





You can create a motion path directly on your layers.

Drawing layers can house drawings and symbols. Also, in that same layer you can create a motion path using keyframes and all the artwork contained in the layer will follow.



You can control and define your trajectory using several different parameters. These parameters are:

- X, Y and Z positions
- Angle (rotation)
- Skew
- X and Y scales

Each parameter has its own function curve where you can add keyframes and control the easing.

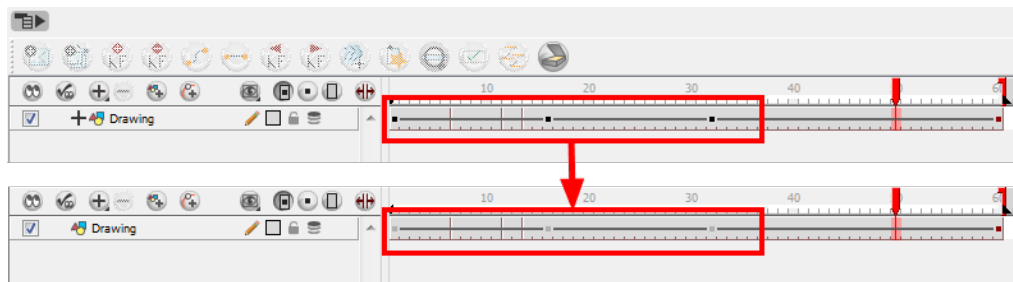
Do not worry about using graphs and function curves if you are not familiar with this concept. Animate Pro has a series of easy-to-use tools for visually controlling your trajectories in the **Camera** view.

To animate a simple object such as an arrow in flight or a wheel spinning, you can use the integrated trajectory. Also, each part of a cut-out puppet will be animated directly on the drawing layer.



If you do not want to animate a drawing layer, you have the option of disabling its animation parameter. To do so, simply select the layer and in the **Layer Properties** view, deselect the **Animate Using Animation Tools** option under the **Advanced** tab.

If your layer was already animated and you deselect the **Animate Using Animation Tools** option, your keyframes will be dimmed, enabling you to easily identify them as ones that cannot be modified. Select the option in order to modify them again.



## Prevent Drawing Layers from being Animated

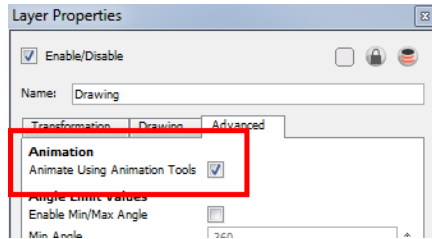
By default, a drawing layer can be animated but you can disable this feature and render a specific layer to be still. Being able to switch your drawings so they can be animated or not has certain advantages. When selecting the element in the **Camera** view, the actual Drawing layer is selected, but the motion you will create will automatically be transposed to the Peg layer (if parented to a peg layer). This means that you can have access to

the drawing substitution feature for this drawing layer, while being able to create keyframes on it's parent peg. This feature is also available for backward compatibility.

### To disable the animation feature on a layer:

1. In the Timeline view, double-click the layer on which you want to set the parameter.

The Layer Properties editor opens.



2. In the Advanced tab, deselect the **Animate Using Animation Tools** option.

## Related Topics

- [Pegs below](#)
- [Layer Parameters on page 919](#)

# Pegs

A Peg layer is a trajectory that contains no drawings on which you can hook your drawings.

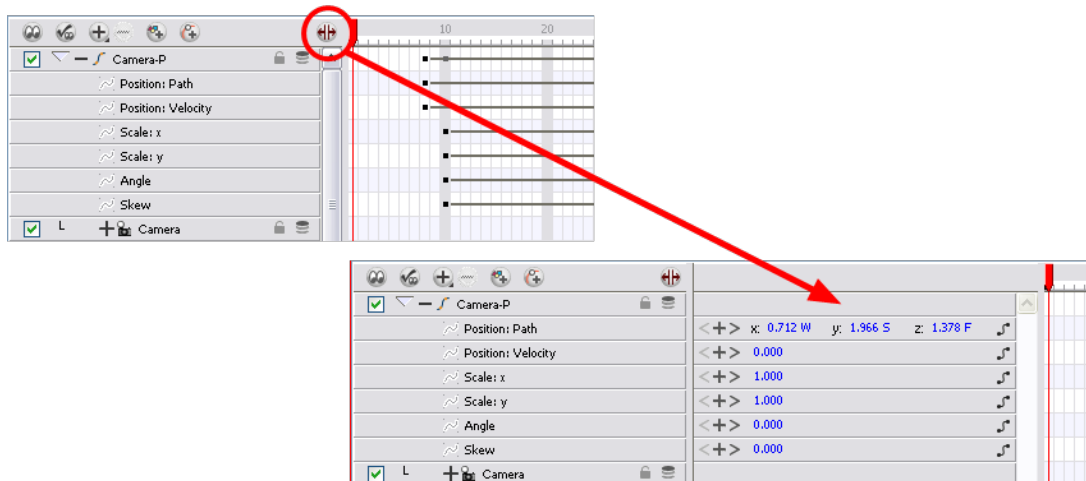
## Related Topics

- [Why Use a Peg Layer? below](#)
- [The Origins of the Peg on the facing page](#)
- [Adding a Peg to the Timeline View on page 916](#)
- [Adding a Peg to the Network View on page 916](#)
- [Peg Selection Mode on page 918](#)

## Why Use a Peg Layer?

A peg is composed of many customizable parameters including:

- X, Y and Z positions
- Angle (rotation)
- Skew
- X and Y scales
- 3D Rotation (when the 3D option is enabled)



You can control a peg's trajectory the same way as the animated drawing layer.

Peg layers are mainly used to control a series of drawing layers together. If you have several drawing layers such as clouds or a character split into many parts, you can hook those to a peg layer and have them follow a trajectory as one unit. When building a puppet, most of the time you will add a master peg to control your puppet as one object.

## The Origins of the Peg



Pegs have been used for a long time in the traditional animation process, mainly for registration purposes. Peg holes at the bottom (or top) of animation paper are used to keep all of the sheets even and at the same registration.

There are three peg holes in regular animation paper. The centre peg hole is circular while the left and right ones are rectangular. These rectangular peg holes are situated, one on each side and four inches away from the centre peg hole.

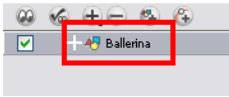
To keep the drawings together, the animator uses a peg bar. This peg bar has three pins corresponding to the shape and location of the peg holes. Peg bars are normally found at the bottom and top of animation discs.

Before digital compositing, the peg bars were also used to move levels under the camera stand. They were the equivalent of digital trajectories. Animate Pro makes use of these concepts to create animation and camera moves.


## Adding a Peg to the Timeline View

To add a peg:

1. Select the layer on which you want to attach to the peg.



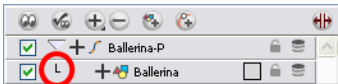
2. Add the peg by doing one of the following:

- ▶ From the Timeline View layers' toolbar, click the **Add Peg**  button.
- ▶ From the top menu, select **Insert > Peg**.
- ▶ Right-click on the layer and select **Add > Peg**.

The layer that was originally selected becomes a child of the new parent peg layer.

The new peg layer automatically takes the name of its child layer, with the addition of the suffix **-P**.

The indentation of the layer, along with the L-shaped line indicates hierarchy and that the layer is attached to the Peg layer. Their relationship is known as *parent-child*.



If you intend adding multiple pegs, or if the layer name that was added to the peg does not accurately represent the content of the peg layer, you can rename it. You can do this by clicking on the layer name and typing in the editable field, or double-clicking on the layer and entering the new name into the dialog box.



If you did not create your peg layer directly above the layer you intended on parenting it to, then click and drag the layer you want to attach to the peg and drop it directly below the peg layer. The indentation of the layer below the Peg layer will be an indication of whether it was correctly attached or not.

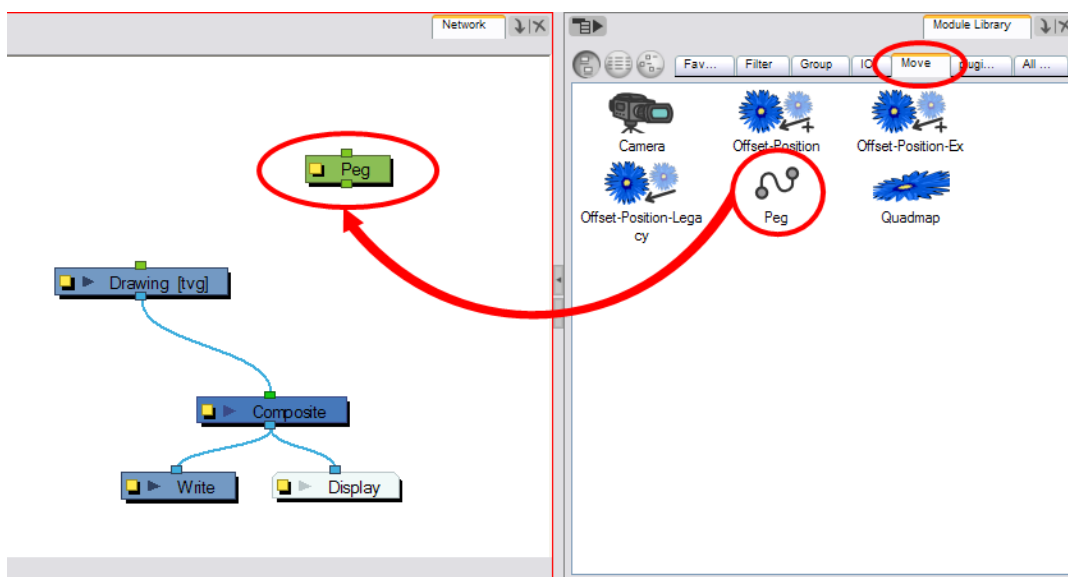


## Adding a Peg to the Network View

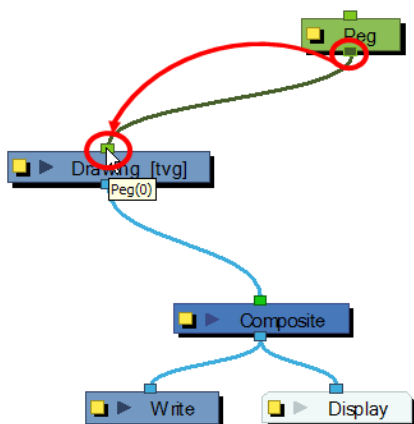
In Animate Pro, you can add pegs to the Network view using the Module Library view and they will instantly appear in the Timeline view. The modules you add to the Network view will be synchronized with the ones appearing in the Timeline view.

To add a peg in your **Network** view via the **Module Library**:

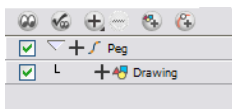
1. In the Module Library view, select the **Move** tab.
2. Select a Peg module and drag it to the **Network** view.



3. In the Network view, select the **Peg** module's out port and connect it to a **Drawing** or **Camera** module.



The advanced connections in the Network view are shown in the Timeline view, unless they cannot be reproduced in a timeline layout.



### To add a peg to your Network view using a keyboard shortcut:

1. In the Network view, position the pointer at the location to which you want to add the new peg module.
2. Add a new peg by pressing [Ctrl] + [P] (Windows) or [⌘] + [P] (Mac OS X).

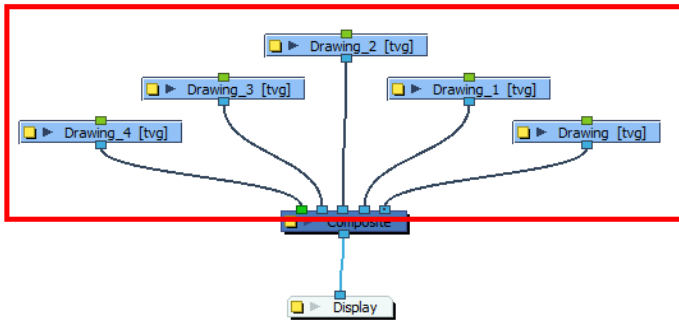
The new peg appears in the Network view.

## Making an Automatic Connection to a Parent Peg in the Network View

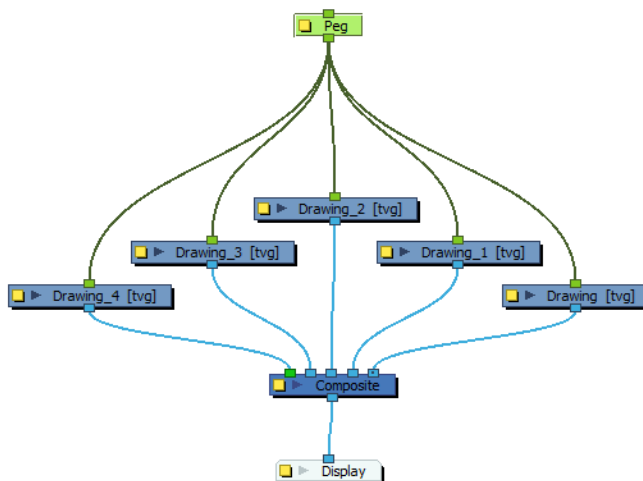
You can automatically create connections between modules in the Network view without having to drag cables out of the ports.

### To create an automatic connection to a Parent Peg:

- ▶ In the Network view, select one or several drawing modules that are not parented to any other module.



- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [P] (Windows) or [⌘] + [P] (Mac OS X) to add a new peg module to the Network view and automatically connect it to the selected modules.





- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [P] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [P] (Mac OS X) to add a peg to each individual module.

## Peg Selection Mode

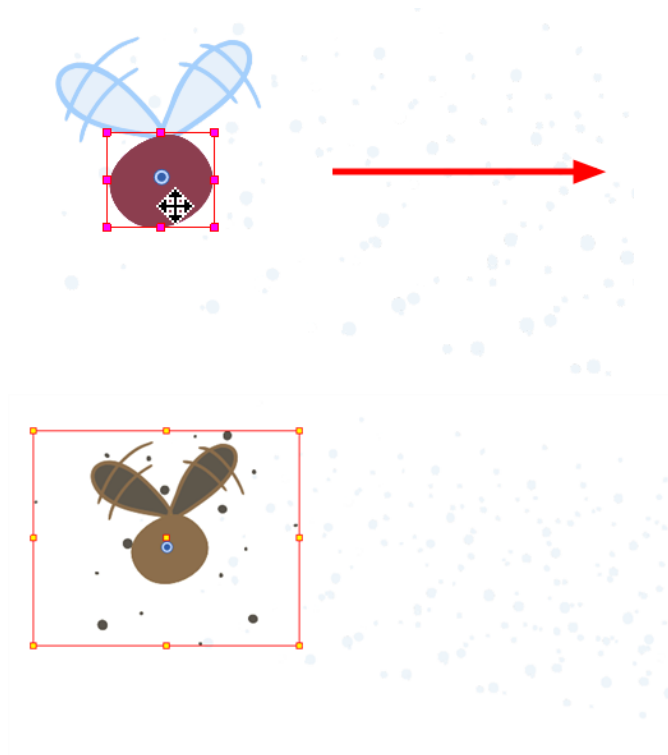
In the Transform Tool Properties view, the **Peg Selection Mode**  lets you automatically select the peg layers in the Camera view instead of the drawing layers.

If you animate with pegs instead of animating the drawing layers directly, enable the **Peg Selection Mode** to avoid having to select in the Timeline view or use the **Select Parent Skipping Effects** command.

### To enable the Peg Selection Mode:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.
2. In the Tool Properties view, click the **Peg Selection Mode**  button.

- In the Camera view, select an element parented to a peg.

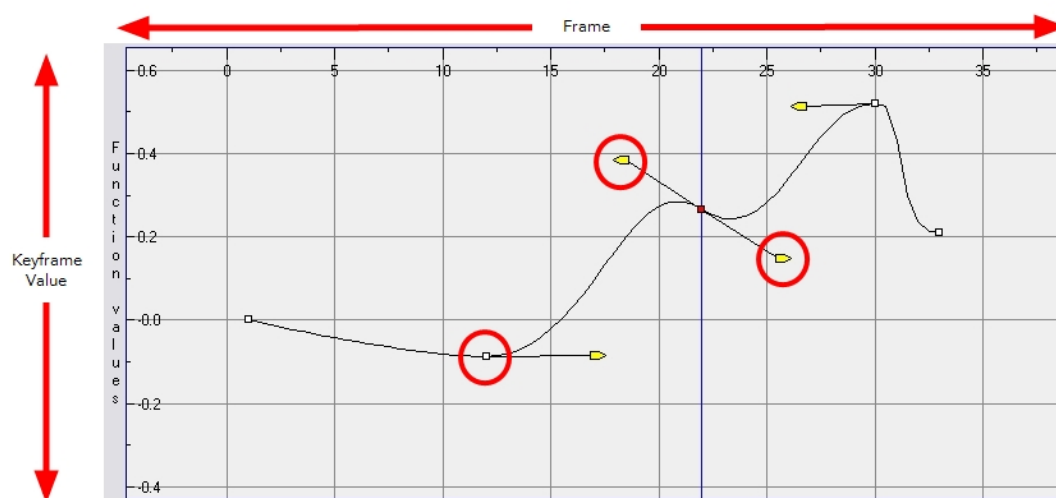


## Related Topics

- [Layer Parameters below](#)

## Layer Parameters

A layer is composed of many customizable parameters, such as the X, Y and Z positions, angle (rotation), skew and scales. Each parameter has its own function. A function is a mathematical formula expressing a relation between position values. You can view each function on a graph as a simple curve such as this one.



Learn more:

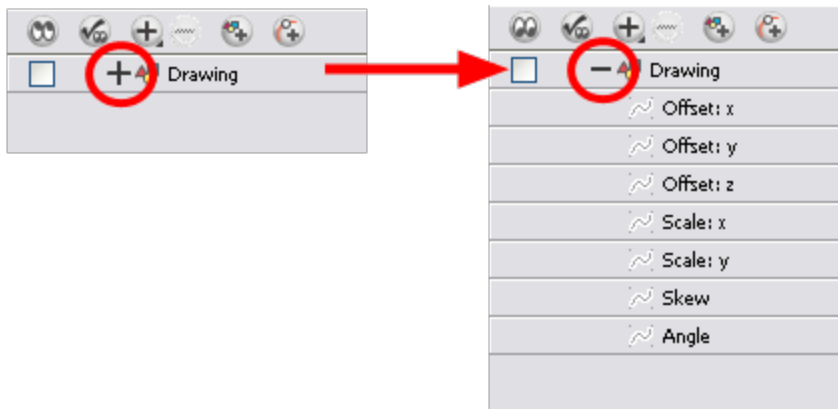
- [3D Path](#) on the facing page
- [Separate Positions](#) on the facing page
- [Locked Scales and Separated Scales](#) on page 922
- [Setting the Parameters](#) on page 922

**To display the Layer parameters in the Timeline View:**

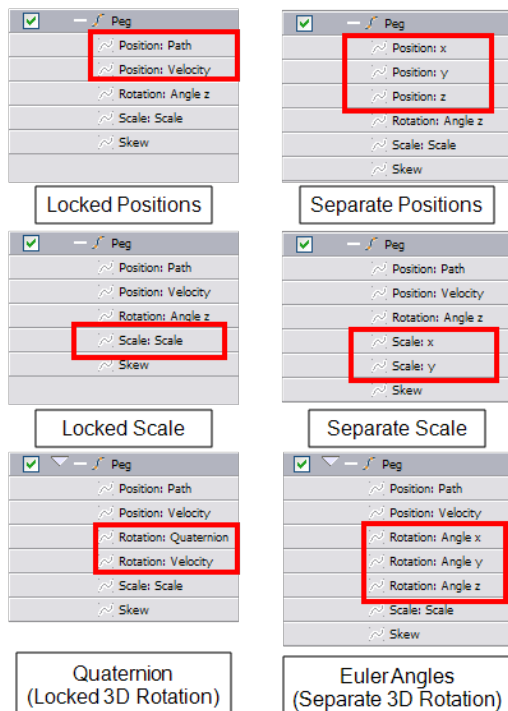
- ▶ In the **Timeline**'s left-hand side, click on the **Expand Function** **+** button or press [Alt] + [F].

OR

- ▶ Select the layer whose functions you want to display, go to the **Timeline View** menu and select **View > Show Functions**.



There are six options available for setting up the function parameters:



- Locked Positions (3D Path)
- Separate Positions



- Locked Scales
- Separate Scales
- Quaternion (3D Rotation)
- Euler Angles (3D Rotation)



You can set the preferences to suit your way of working. In your general preferences, enable **Default Separate Positions** to get separate X, Y and Z positions, or disable it to get a 3D path. The 3D path is set by default.

Enable the **Default Separate Scale** to get separate X and Y scales. It is highly recommended that you use default separate scales.



You must lock or unlock your functions before starting the animation. When you lock or unlock parameters, this does not convert the functions from one to the other, but creates new ones.

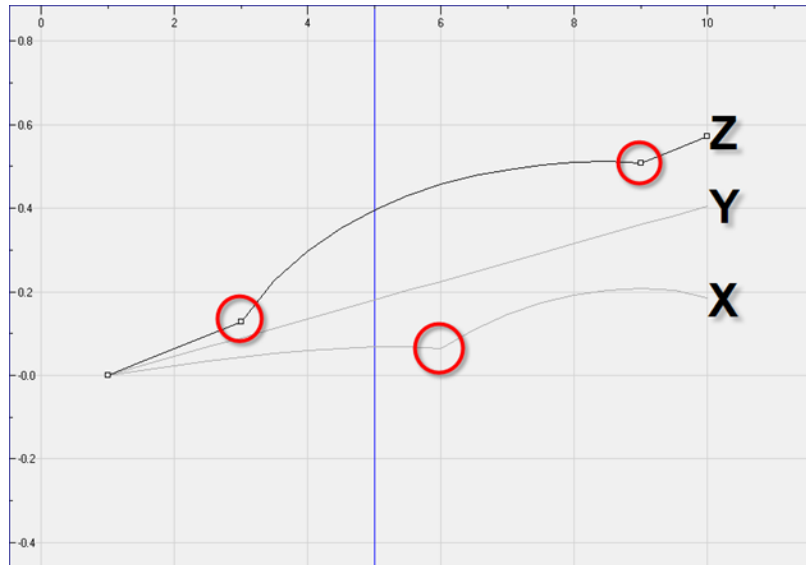
## 3D Path

In a 3D Path, the X, Y and Z curves are locked together and controlled by a single velocity function. When you add a keyframe, it is added on all three trajectories at once, as is the velocity. This is very useful for long, smooth trajectories.



## Separate Positions

When the **Separate Positions** option is used, the X, Y and Z curves are independent and have velocity controls directly on their function curve. This is useful when you want to set keyframes on one of the curves without affecting the others.



## Locked Scales and Separated Scales

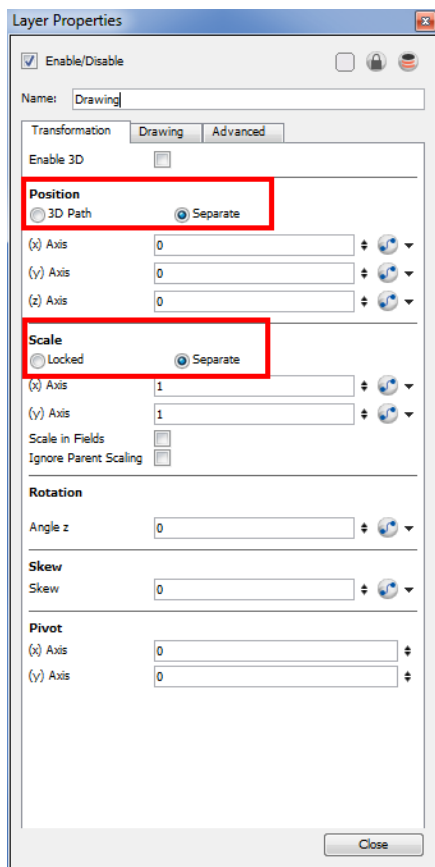
When using the scale function, you can have a single function curve controlling both the vertical and horizontal scale, or have the two scales separate. This means that when using the single function, the values will be the same for the X (horizontal) and the Y (vertical) axes, enabling a uniform size change without distortion. However, if you separate the scale functions, you will be able to squash, stretch and skew your elements.

## Setting the Parameters

This topic will cover the 2D motion parameters.

### To set the parameters:

1. In the Timeline view, double-click the layer on which you want to set the parameter.  
The Layer Properties editor opens.



2. Select the **Transformation** tab.
3. In the Position section, select the **3D Path** or **Separate** option.
4. In the Scale section, select the **Locked** or **Separate** option.
5. Click **Close**.

## Related Topics

- [3D Parameters](#) on page 851
- [3D Space](#) on page 849

# Adding and Deleting Keyframes

You can create a keyframe in several different ways. You can add a coordinate keyframe, position keyframe or a keyframe along with your drawing duplication.

## Related Topics

- [Coordinate Keyframe](#) below
- [Add Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing](#) below
- [Position Keyframe](#) on the facing page
- [Delete Keyframe](#) on the facing page


## Coordinate Keyframe

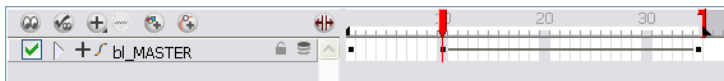
To create keyframes:

1. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to add a keyframe.



2. Do one of the following:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **Insert > Keyframe**.
- ▶ Right-click on the selection and select **Add Keyframe**.
- ▶ Click the **Add Keyframe**  button in the Timeline View toolbar.
- ▶ In the Camera view, if the **Animate** mode is enabled, as soon as you move the selected element, a keyframe will be automatically created on the current frame.

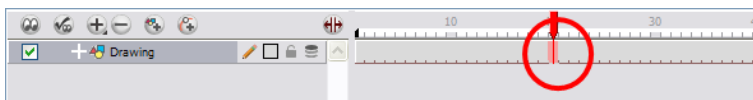


## Add Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing

The method described previously only creates a keyframe without a drawing. It adds a new coordinate points but the drawing in the layer stays the same. You may want to duplicate your drawing at the same time if you need to modify it and do not want to modify the original one. In this case, you can use the Add Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing function.

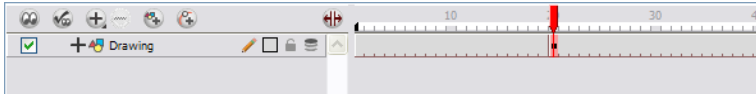
To create a keyframe and duplicate your drawing at once:

1. In the **Timeline** view, select the cell containing the drawing where you want to add a keyframe and duplicate.



2. Here are the different ways to add a keyframe and duplicate:

- ▶ In the top menu, select **Insert > Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing**.
- ▶ Right-click on the selection and select **Insert Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing**.



## Position Keyframe

You can also add a Position keyframe instead of a regular keyframe. When you add a Position keyframe, keyframes will only be added on the X, Y and Z parameters of the selected layer. Keyframes are not added on the **Angle**, **Scale** and **Skew** parameters.

To add a Position keyframe:


1. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to add a position keyframe.

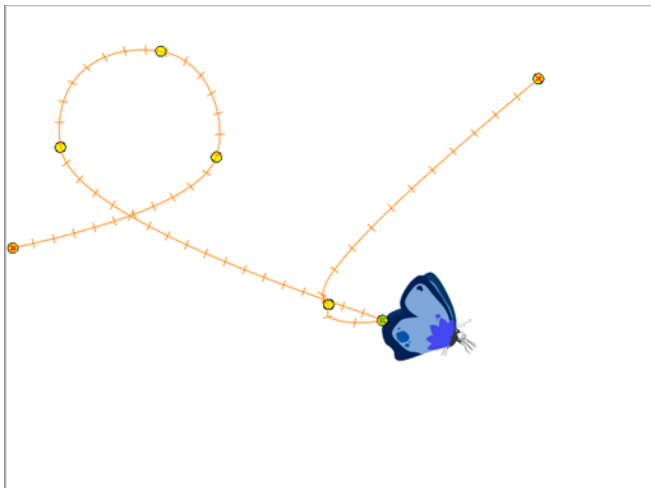


2. In the top menu, select **Insert > Position Keyframe**.
  - ▶ If you select a keyframe in the Timeline view and press the [Delete] key, you will also delete the drawing exposure. To only delete the keyframe, you must use the **Delete Keyframe** command.

## Delete Keyframe

To delete a keyframe:

- ▶ With the **Transform**  tool selected, choose the keyframe to be deleted from the trajectory in the **Camera** view and press the [Delete] key.



OR

- ▶ In the Timeline view, click on the keyframe to be deleted, right-click and select **Delete Keyframes** or press [F7]. You can also select **Animation > Delete Keyframe** from the top menu.

## Related Topics

- [Modifying a Path in the Camera View](#) on page 937
- [Modifying a Path in the Timeline View](#) on page 947
- [Modifying a Path in the Function View](#) on page 951

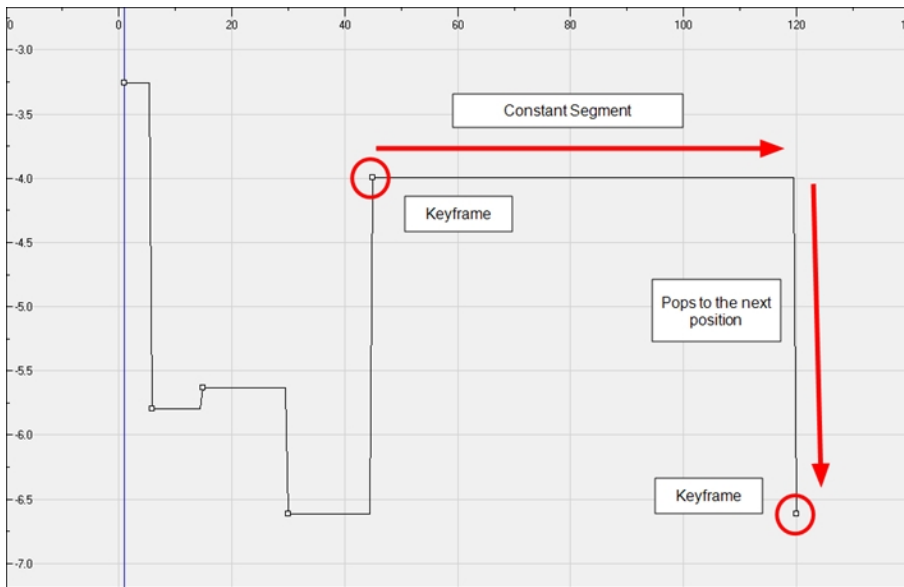
# Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes

Interpolation is the computer-generated motion between two keyframes. Some animators and composers create their own in-betweens, others have the computer do it. Animate Pro gives you stop-motion and motion keyframes.

- [Stop-motion Keyframes below](#)
- [Motion Keyframes below](#)

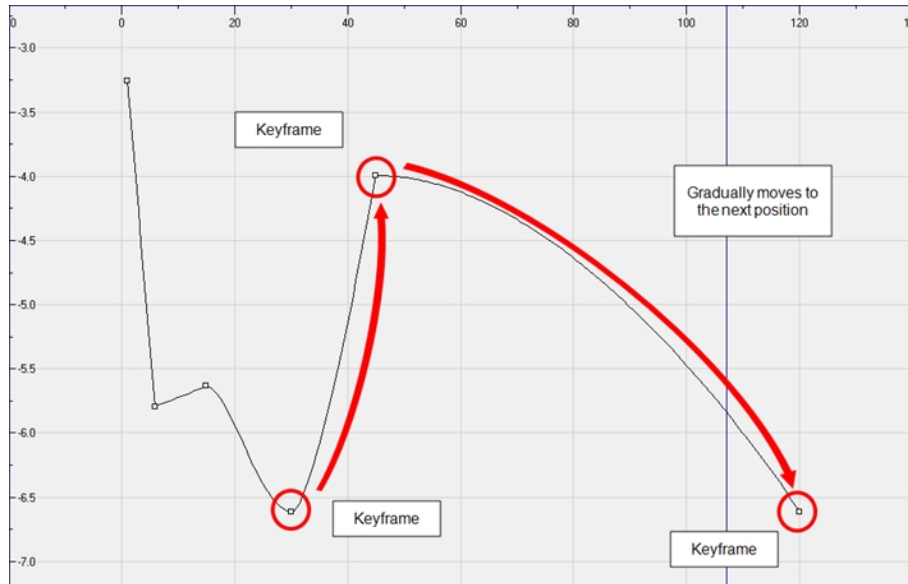
## Stop-motion Keyframes

A stop-motion keyframe means that there is no computer-generated motion between two keyframes. The segment is constant or flat.



## Motion Keyframes

A motion keyframe means that there is computer-generated motion between two keyframes. The segment has a variation over time.



## Related Topics

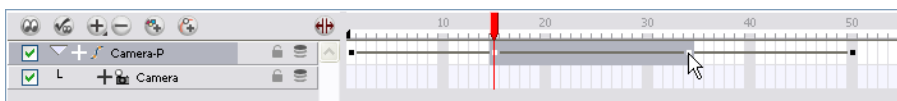
- [Toggling between Motion and Stop-motion Keyframes below](#)
- [Constant Z on page 931](#)



# Toggling between Motion and Stop-motion Keyframes

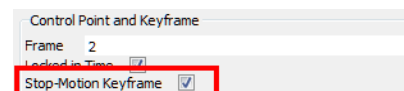
You can switch a keyframe between stop-motion and motion at any time in the Timeline view and Function Editor.

**To toggle between motion and stop-motion in Timeline view:**

1. On the right side of the Timeline view, select one or more keyframes to be modified.



2. To toggle between motion and stop-motion:
  - ▶ Right-click on the selected keyframes and select **Set Motion Keyframes** or **Set Stop-Motion Keyframes**.
  - ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [L] and [Ctrl] + [K] (Windows) or [⌘] + [L] and [⌘] + [K] (Mac OS X).
  - ▶ In the Timeline View toolbar, click the **Motion Keyframe**  and **Stop-Motion Keyframe**  buttons.
  - ▶ In the Camera view, select the keyframe to convert. In the Coordinates and Control Point view, select/deselect the **Stop-Motion Keyframe** option.



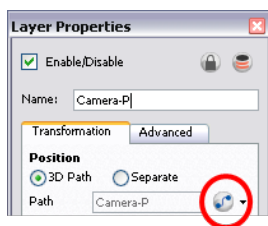


## To toggle between motion and stop-motion keyframes in the Function Editor:

### 1. Open the **Function Editor**:

- In the Timeline view, double-click on the layer that contains the keyframes you want to convert.

The Layer Properties dialog box opens.



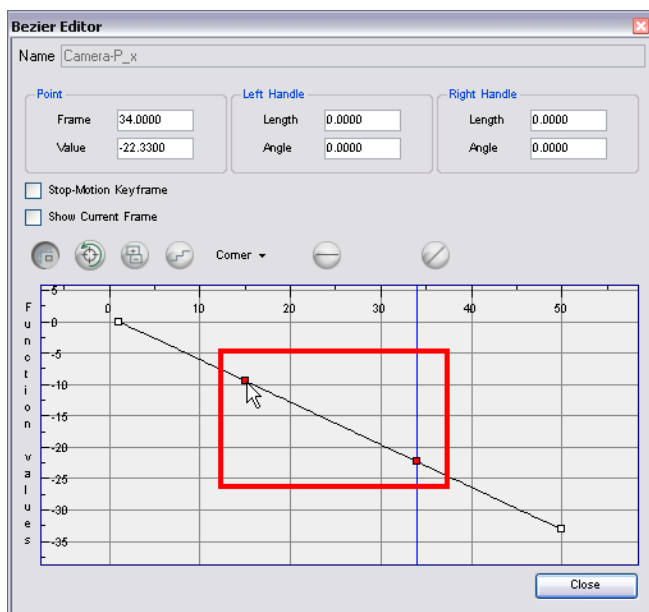
In the Transformation tab, click the **Function Editor**  button to display the **Editor** window.

OR

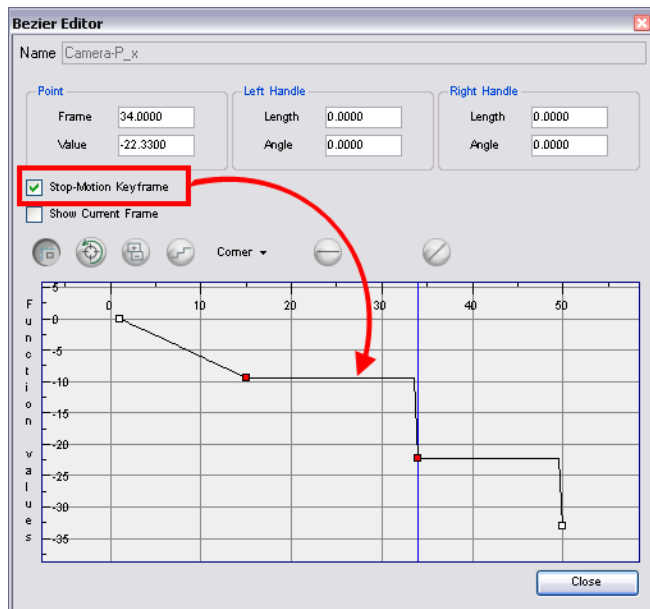
- In the Timeline view, click the **Expand Function**  button and double-click on the function to edit.

You can also press [Alt] + [F].

### 2. Select one or more keyframes to be modified on the function curve.

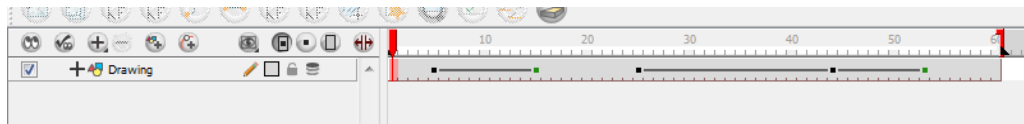


### 3. Select/deselect the **Stop-Motion Keyframe** option to set a stop-motion or motion keyframe.



## Setting a Different Colour for Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes

In the **Preferences** dialog box, you can set a different colour for your stop-motion keyframes in order to create a greater visual difference in the Timeline view.



To set the stop-motion keyframe colour:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box by pressing [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).
2. In the General tab, in the **Colours** section, click on the **Edit Colours** section.
3. In the Colours window, select the **Exposure Sheet** tab.
4. In the Others section, click the **Stop Motion Keyframe** swatch.
5. In the Select Colour window, select a new colour.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Select Colour** window.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Colours** window.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Preferences** dialog box.

## Related Topics

- [Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes on page 927](#)
- [Constant Z on the facing page](#)

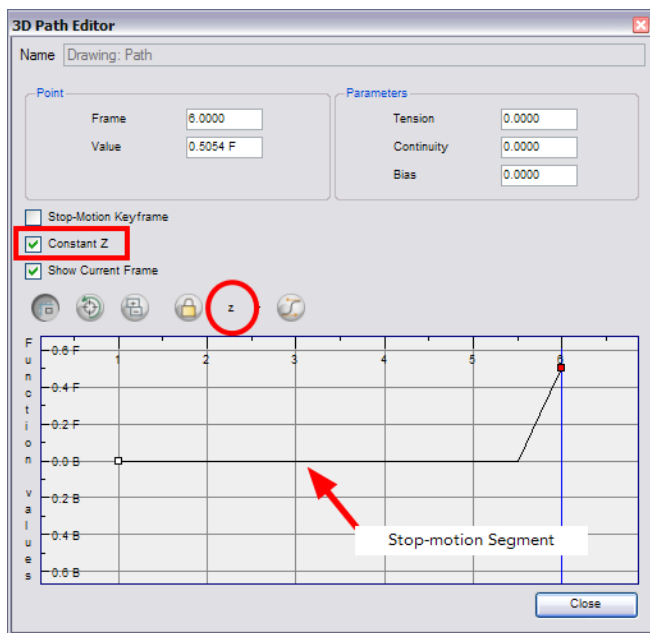
# Constant Z

The Constant Z is used when creating motion keyframes. The Z function will use stop-motion keyframes and will not be interpolated, this can be very useful for cut-out animation. The Constant Z feature only works with 3Dpaths.

You can also enable the Constant Z option directly in the Function Editor or Function view for specific functions.

## To enable the Constant Z option:

1. In the Timeline view, expand the function of the layer you want to set to **Constant Z**. Note that the 3D Path option must be enabled for that particular layer.
2. Double-click on the **Position** function to open the **Function Editor**.
3. In the Function Editor window, select the **Constant Z** option.



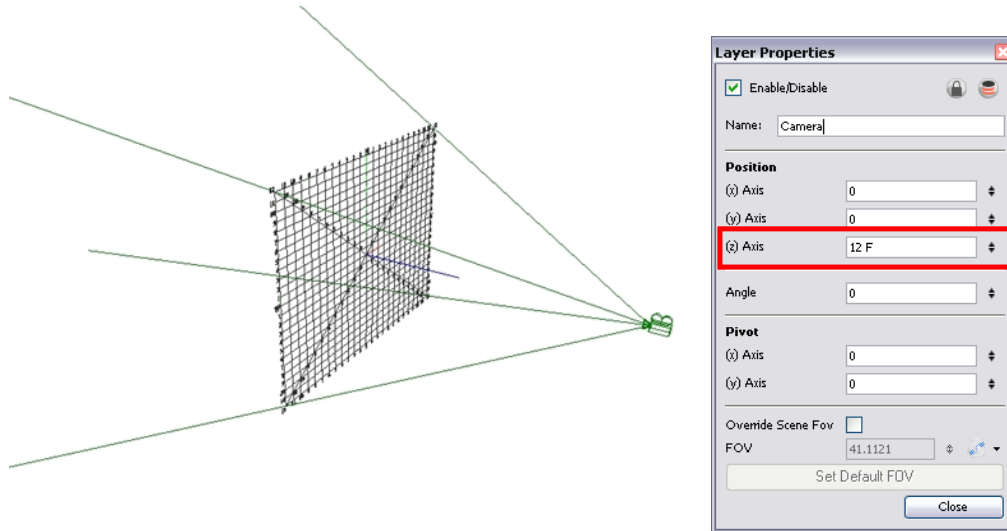
## Related Topics

- [Toggling between Motion and Stop-motion Keyframes on page 928](#)
- [Stop-motion and Motion Keyframes on page 927](#)

# Animating the Camera

Just as in a live-action film, scenes are not only composed of characters moving around in a static camera field, but also of camera movements. Although it is not always something that we think about, often it is the exact opposite—the character is static while the camera moves through elements on the stage. Camera pans, jumps, cuts and zooms are as important to storytelling as the story itself.

Animate Pro has a camera that can move along the X, Y, and Z axes. Having the camera move on the Z-axis offers the possibility to create truck in and truck out, as well as multiplane camera moves. The default camera position is centred and backed up to 12 fields.

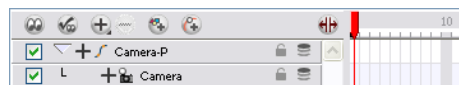


## Related Topics

- [Basic Camera Move below](#)
- [Camera Truck-ins and Line Thickness on page 935](#)


## Basic Camera Move

The camera is treated the same way as any other element. The same tools and selection modes are used to offset or animate it. To animate the camera, you need to connect it to a peg element.



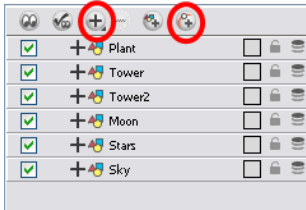
This means that you can animate the camera visually, with the function curve, or by typing values in the Xsheet column.

### To add a camera with a peg to your scene:

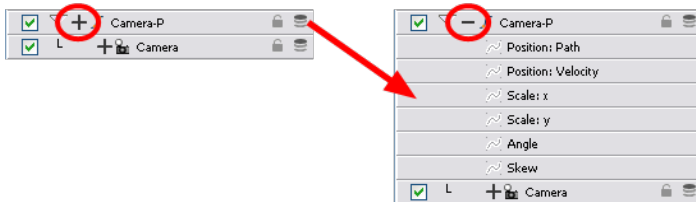
1. If you do not already have a camera layer, add one in one of two ways:
  - ▶ From the top menu, select **Insert > Camera**
  - ▶ From the Timeline View Layers toolbar, click the Add Layers  button and select Camera.
  - ▶ From the Library view, select a Camera module and drag it to the Network view.

A new camera layer is added to your scene and appears in the Timeline view.

- From the Timeline View Layer toolbar, click the Add Peg  button.




A peg layer appears directly above the camera layer so that the camera layer is automatically attached to it. The peg layer automatically takes on the name of the camera and adds the suffix **-P** to indicate that it is a peg layer, for example **Camera-P**.

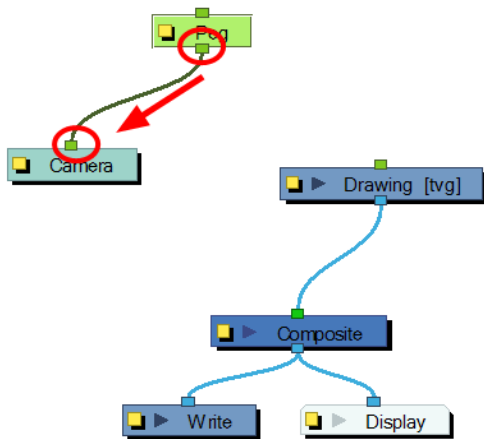


If the new peg layer did not appear directly above the camera, you may have clicked elsewhere in the scene, deactivating the layer on which you want to add the peg layer.

- ▶ Select the camera layer and drag and drop in under the new peg layer.

OR

- ▶ Delete the misplaced peg layer, select the camera layer and click the Add Peg  button again.
- ▶ Select a Peg module from the Library view and drag it to the Network view and then you can connect the peg's out port to the camera's input port.

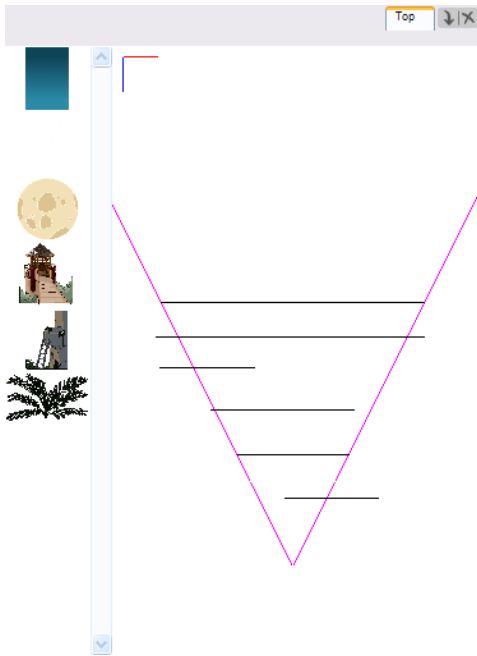


You are now ready to animate your camera.



It is recommended to use both the Top and Camera views while making camera moves. You can open this view is one of two ways:

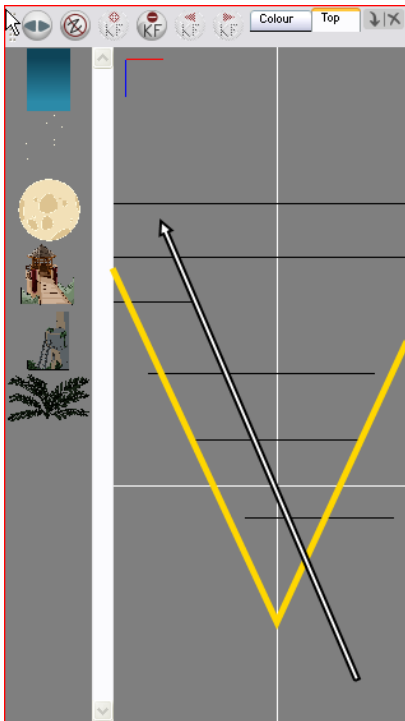
- From the top menu, select **Windows > Top**.

- From any existing window already open in your project, click the arrow  button in the top-right corner and select **Top**.



#### To animate your camera:

1. Make sure that the Animate  button and Transform  tool are activated.
2. In the Top, Side or Camera view, select the camera and move it to the desired position.
  - ▶ In the Top and Side view, the camera is the large V cone. You need to click directly on one of the edge.
  - ▶ In the Camera view, the camera is represented by a thin frame. You need to click directly on one of the edge.

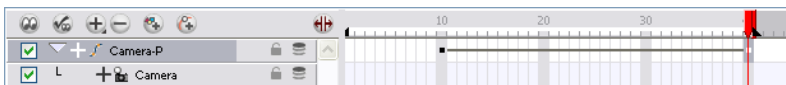


3. In the Timeline view, click on a cell in the Camera Peg layer where you want the camera move to begin.
4. Right-click and select Insert Keyframe.




A keyframe appears in that cell. Any frames preceding this keyframe cell will hold the same camera position as in this keyframe.

5. Click on another cell, further down your scene's Timeline, where you want the camera move to end.
6. Select the camera in the Top view and move it to the desired position.



A second keyframe appears and a line is created between the two frames to indicate that the subsequent motion between the frames will be calculated and rendered by the program.

7. Play back  the camera move in the Camera view to watch the results.

## Related Topics

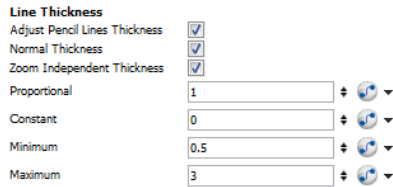
- [Camera Truck-ins and Line Thickness below](#)

## Camera Truck-ins and Line Thickness

As you move the camera into your scene along the Z-axis, you may notice that the lines of your elements which were drawn with pencil lines instead of brush strokes appear too thick. There is a simple way to taper down the pencil line thickness while performing a camera zoom-in.

## To adjust the pencil line thickness of a particular drawing in the Camera view:

1. In the Timeline view, double-click on a drawing layer to bring up the **Layer Properties** panel.
2. Select the **Advanced** tab.
3. Under the **Line Thickness** section, adjust some of the following parameters until you achieve the desired effect.



- ▶ **Adjust Pencil Lines Thickness:** Checking this option allows for the adjustment of pencil lines thickness and activates the adjustable parameters in this section.
- ▶ **Normal Thickness:** This is the default option and when it is the only selection, negates the adjustable parameters and keeps the line thickness at their original proportions to the camera position. In general, it is good to keep this option checked. If you uncheck this option, all your pencil lines will disappear if you have nothing on the colour art layer. If you do have artwork on the colour art layer, your lines will be replaced by the colour art.
- ▶ **Zoom Independent Thickness:** Checking this option will keep all lines at their default thickness regardless of the camera zoom. This may create the illusion as the camera zooms-in that the lines become thinner, when in fact they have remained the same thickness.
- ▶ **Proportional :** This parameter is set to 1 by default. All pencil line thickness in the scene will be multiplied by the value entered in this field. For example, if the value entered is 2, then a pencil line thickness of 5.5 will become 11, while a pencil line thickness of 21.7 will become 43.4.
- ▶ **Constant:** This parameter is set to 0 by default. Changing the value in this field will multiply the line thickness by the pixel portion of the camera frame.
- ▶ **Minimum:** Enter a value into this field or use the arrows to set a minimum line thickness that cannot be exceeded.
- ▶ **Maximum:** Enter a value into this field or use the arrows to set a maximum line thickness that cannot be exceeded.



This feature can only be viewed in the Camera view's render mode.

## Related Topics

- [Function Drop-down Menu on page 963](#)
- [Function Types on page 964](#)



# Modifying a Path in the Camera View

Although the example cited in the [Animating the Camera on page 932](#) section seems simple enough, camera moves and motion paths can become complex, especially with moves through 3D space. That is why Toon Boom has developed a way to view your camera's path and make adjustments to it from both a 2D and 3D perspective.

## Related Topics

- [Displaying a Path in the Camera View below](#)
- [Shaping a Path on page 939](#)
- [Offsetting a Trajectory on page 945](#)

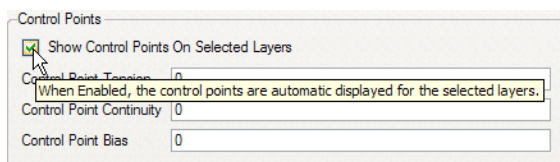
## Displaying a Path in the Camera View

You can display the trajectory for your motion path when you select an object in the Timeline or Camera view.

If you want to see the trajectory, enable the **Show Control Points on Selected Layers** preference.

To enable the **Show Control Points on Selected Layers** preference:

1. In the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X). The [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).  
The Preferences dialog box opens.
2. Select the **Camera** tab.
3. In the **Control Points** section, enable the **Show Control Points on Selected Layers** preference.

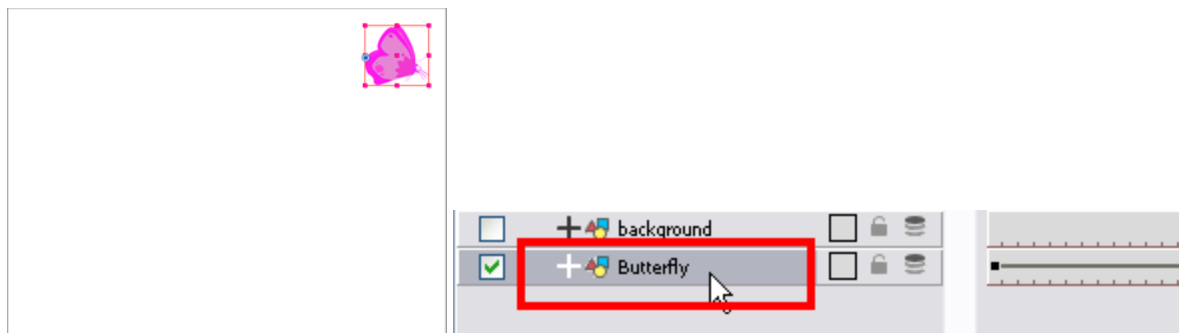


4. Click **OK**.

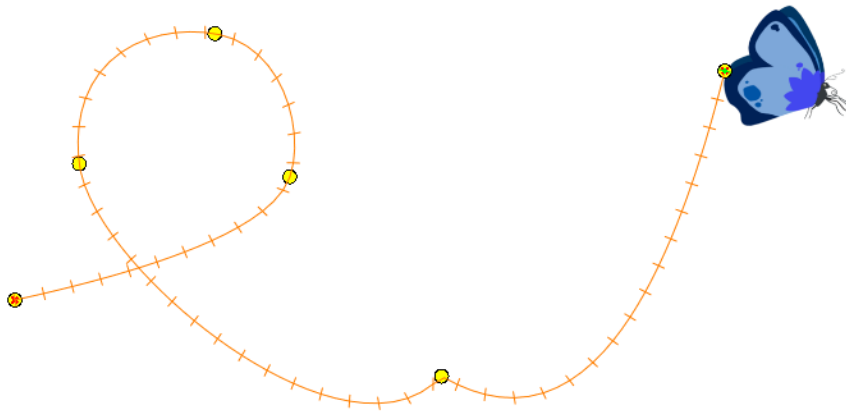
If the trajectory is hidden when you select an element, you may want to display it using the Control command.

To view your layer's trajectory using the **Control** command:

1. Verify that the **Camera** view (click on its tab) is selected and that the layer that you wish to display the trajectory of is selected in the Timeline view.



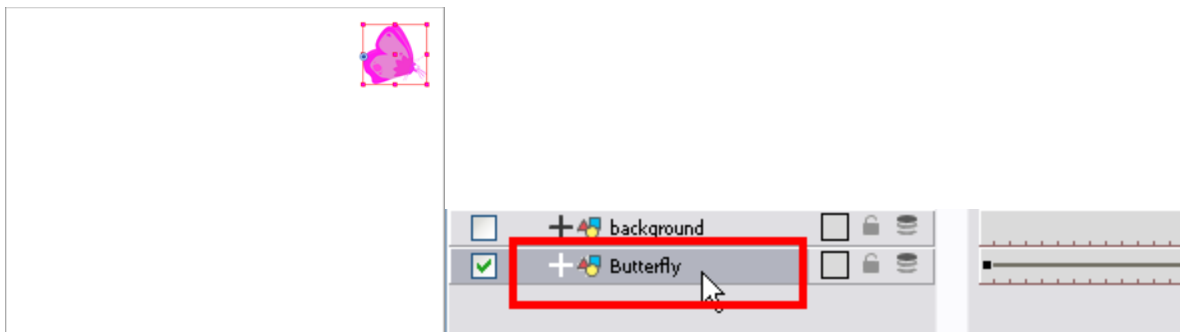
- ▶ From the top menu, select **View > Show > Control**.
- ▶ Press [Shift] + [F11].



If nothing appears in the **Camera** view, you may not have animated or selected the layer.

### To hide your layer's trajectory:

1. Verify that the **Camera** view (click on its tab) is selected and that the layer that you want to hide the trajectory of is selected in the **Timeline** or **Camera** view.



- ▶ From the top menu, select **View > Show > Control**.
- ▶ Press [Shift] + [F11].
- ▶ If you want to hide all of your trajectories at once without selecting any layer, select **View > Hide All Controls** or press [Shift] + [C].

### Related Topics

- [Shaping a Path](#) on the facing page

## Shaping a Path

A motion path is as easy to manipulate as shaping the vector points of a drawing layer in the **Camera** view. One important concept to understand is that a trajectory contains both keyframes and control points. Both can be used to shape a path, each have their own significance and behaviours, however only keyframes appear in the Timeline view. Their descriptions, in terms of their use along a path, are listed below:

- **Keyframe:** A marker that signifies a change (size, position, direction, etc.) along the normal of a path or function and has a precise position and frame.
- **Control Point:** Has a position but no fixed frame or timing. It is mainly used to deform a trajectory. There are no velocity handles available on a control point. The velocity segments are set between keyframes only, making curves and trajectories much smoother. Control points can only be added on 3D Path.

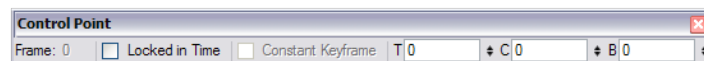
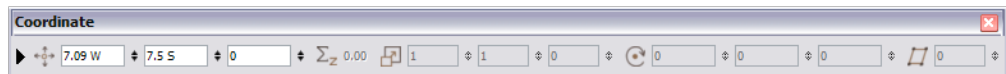
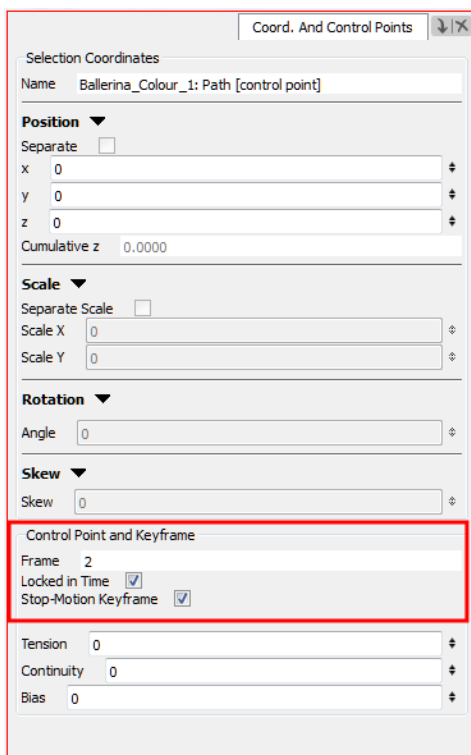


To resize an entire animation path so it fits into your scene's composition better, convert the animation into a Symbol, then resize the Symbol itself. Refer to the [Library on page 643](#) chapter to learn how to create and import Symbols.

You can edit keyframes and control point parameters, such as the position, continuity, bias, tension and lock-in-time using the Coordinates and Control Point view.

## Coordinates and Control Points View

Each time a keyframe or a control point is selected in the Camera, Timeline or Xsheet view, its parameters appear in the Coordinates and Control Points view. You can also see the same information in the Coordinate and Control Point toolbars.



## Adding Control Points

A control point has a position but no fixed frame or timing. It is mainly used to deform a trajectory. There are no velocity handles available on a control point. The velocity segments are set between keyframes only, making curves and trajectories much smoother.

A control point will not show in the **Timeline** view because it has no precise frame to be displayed on. It will appear on the function curve and in the **Camera** view. There are different ways to add control points:

- Displaying the trajectory in the **Camera** view, the [P].
- Add a keyframe on the function curve and disabling the **Lock in Time** option.

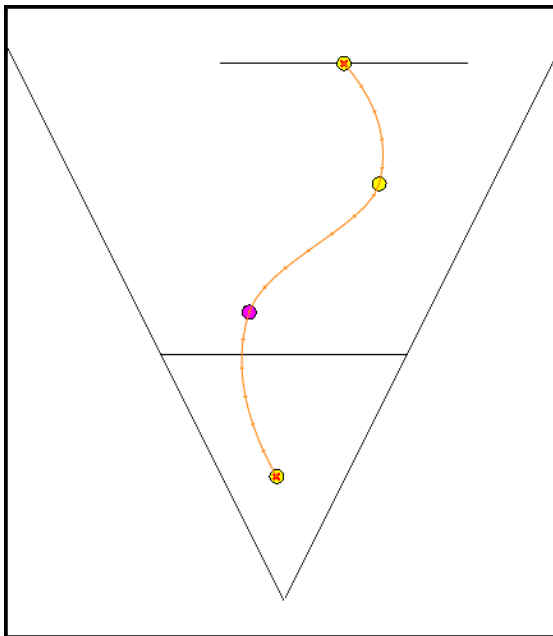
The control point is displayed as a circle.

You can display your trajectories in the **Camera**, **Top** and **Side** views to better understand the way that your elements move in your scene. This also makes it easier to modify them. You can display a peg or layer's control to be able to see where your elements are going, modify the curve and add keyframes and control points.

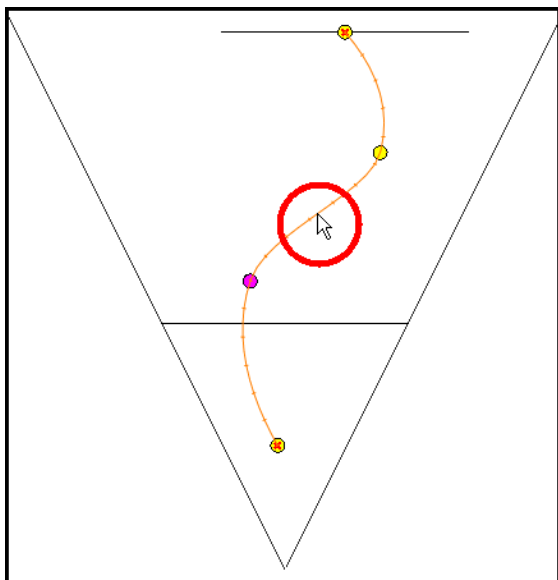
### To add a Control Point on a trajectory:

1. In the **Timeline** or **Camera** view, select the peg or layer you want to add the control point on.
2. If the selected element's trajectory is not displayed, select **View > Show > Control** in the top menu. The [Shift] + [F11].

The trajectory appears in the **Camera**, **Top**, **Side** and **Perspective** views.



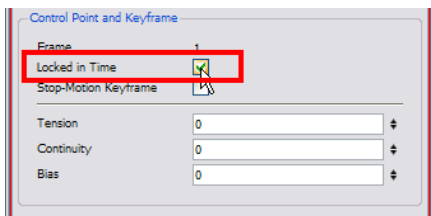
3. You can add control points on a 3D path trajectory by placing your mouse where you want to add the point. The [P].



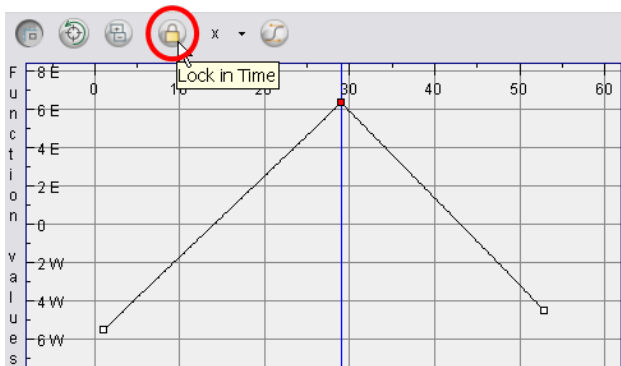
## Toggling Between Keyframe and Control Points

To toggle between Keyframe and Control Points:

1. In the **Camera** view, using the **Transform** tool select the point you want to convert.
2. To convert the point:
  - In the **Coordinates and Control Point** view, enable or disable the **Locked in Time** option.



- In the top menu, select **Animation > Lock in Time**. The [Alt] + [L].
- In the **Function** view or **Function** editor, select the keyframe to convert and click on the **Lock in Time** button.



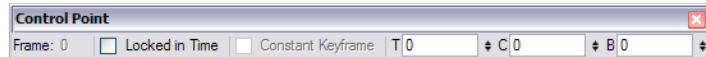
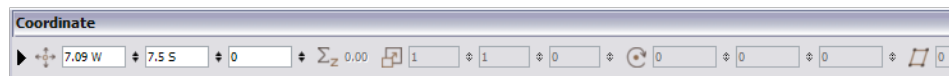
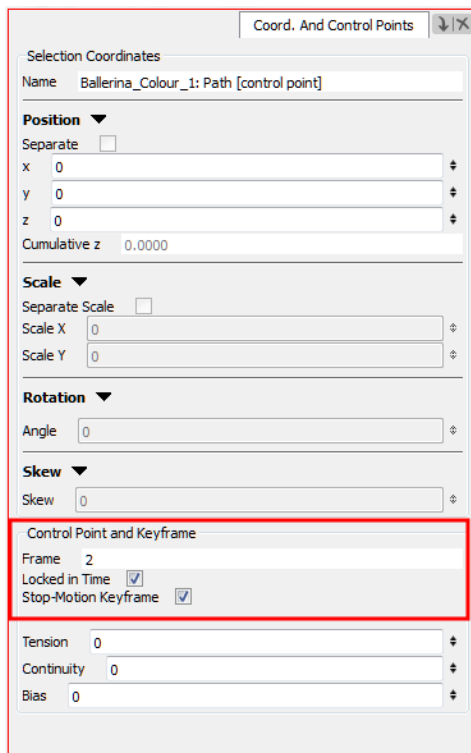
## Related Topics

- [Adjusting the Tension, Bias and Continuity below](#)
- [Modifying a Path in the Camera View on page 937](#)

## Adjusting the Tension, Bias and Continuity

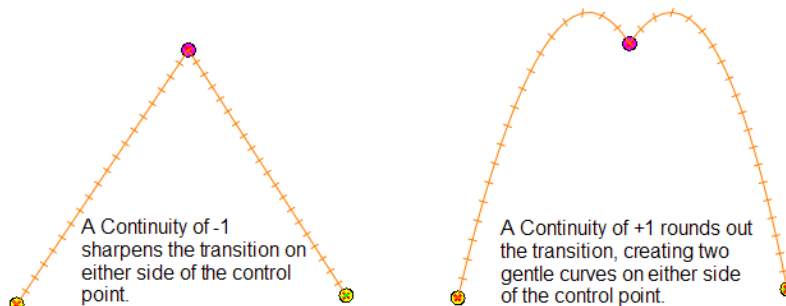
You can edit keyframes and control point parameters, such as the position, continuity, bias, tension and lock in time using the **Coordinates and Control Point** view.

Each time a keyframe or a control point is selected in the **Camera**, **Timeline** or **Xsheet** view, its parameters appear in the **Coordinates and Control Point** view. You can also see the same information in the **Coordinate and Control Point** toolbars.

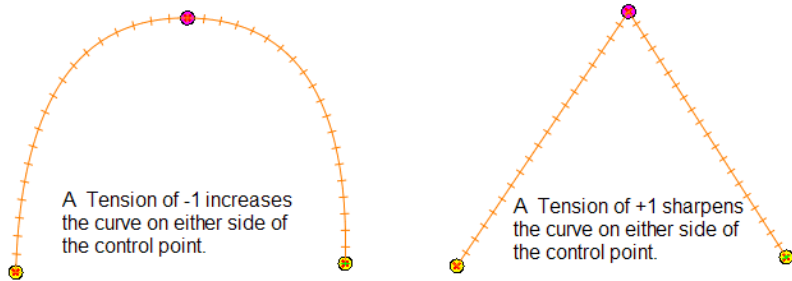


You can adjust the **Tension**, **Bias** and **Continuity** parameters on existing control points and keyframes by selecting the point in the Camera view with the **Transform**  tool.

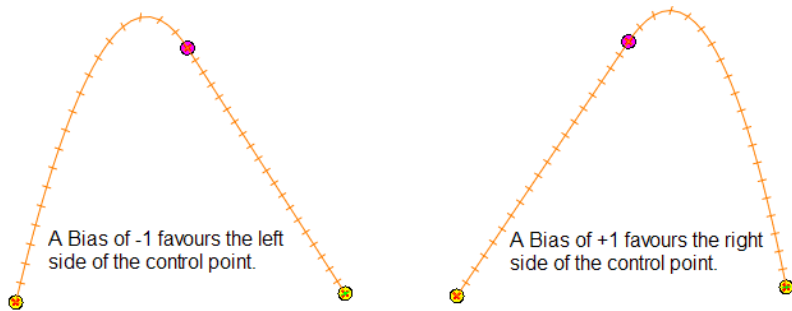
- **Continuity** controls the smoothness of a transition between the segments joined by a point.




- **Tension** controls how sharply the path bends as it passes through a control point or keyframe.

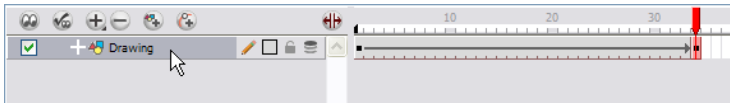


- **Bias** controls the slope of the path so that it flows towards one side of the motion point or the other.

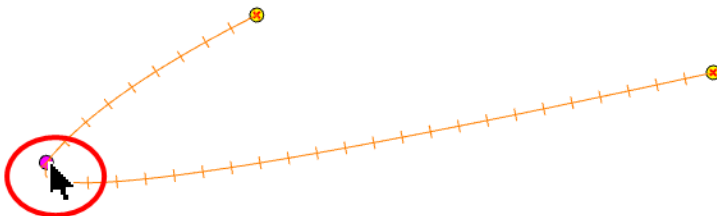


#### To adjust the Continuity, Tension and Bias parameters:

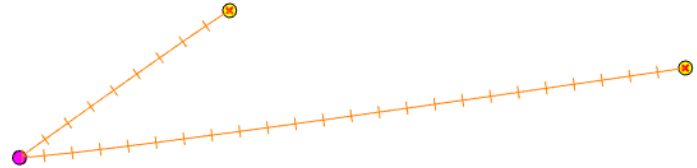
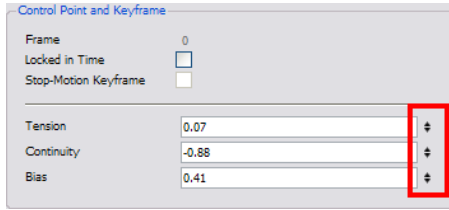
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.
2. In the Timeline view, select the layer that you want to adjust the parameters for.



3. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Control** or press [Shift] + [F11] to display the trajectory.
4. In the Camera view, select the control point or keyframe you want to adjust.



5. In the Coordinates and Control Points view, adjust the **Continuity**, **Tension** and **Bias** parameters.



If you find that you are using the same Continuity, Tension and Bias settings, you can set a preference to remember your settings.

### To adjust the Point Setting Preferences:


1. From the top menu, select **Edit > Preferences** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences** (Mac OS X). The Preferences dialog box opens.
2. Select the **Camera** tab and look at the entire right section.

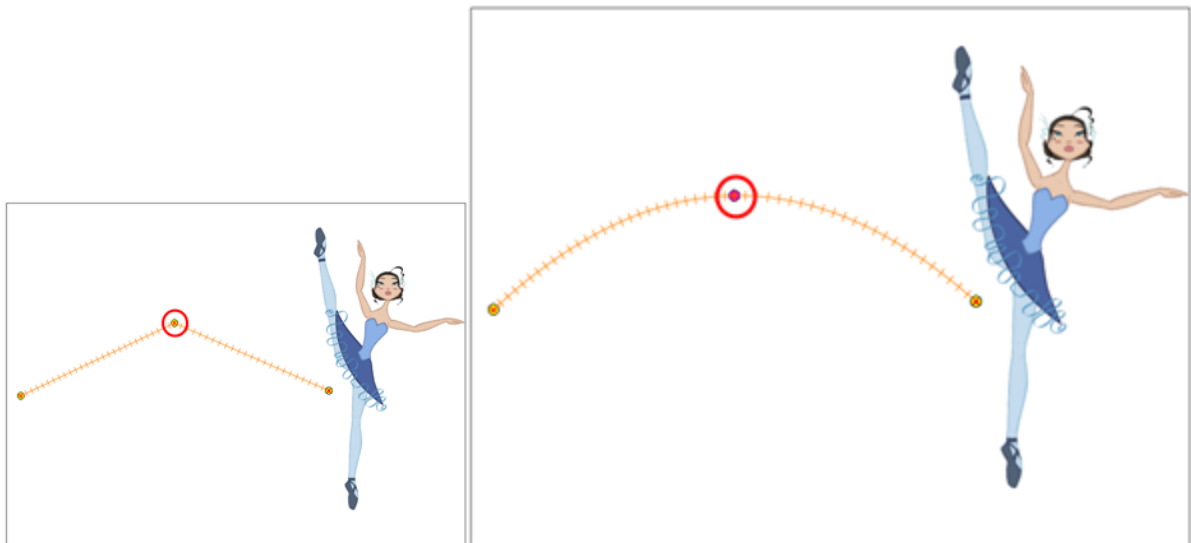


## Toggleing between a Linear or Curved Motion

When you select a control point on a path, you can toggle between a rounded or square corner by using the **Linear/Curve** command.

### To toggle between a linear or curved corner:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select the point to convert.
3. In the top menu, select **Animation > Linear/Curve**.





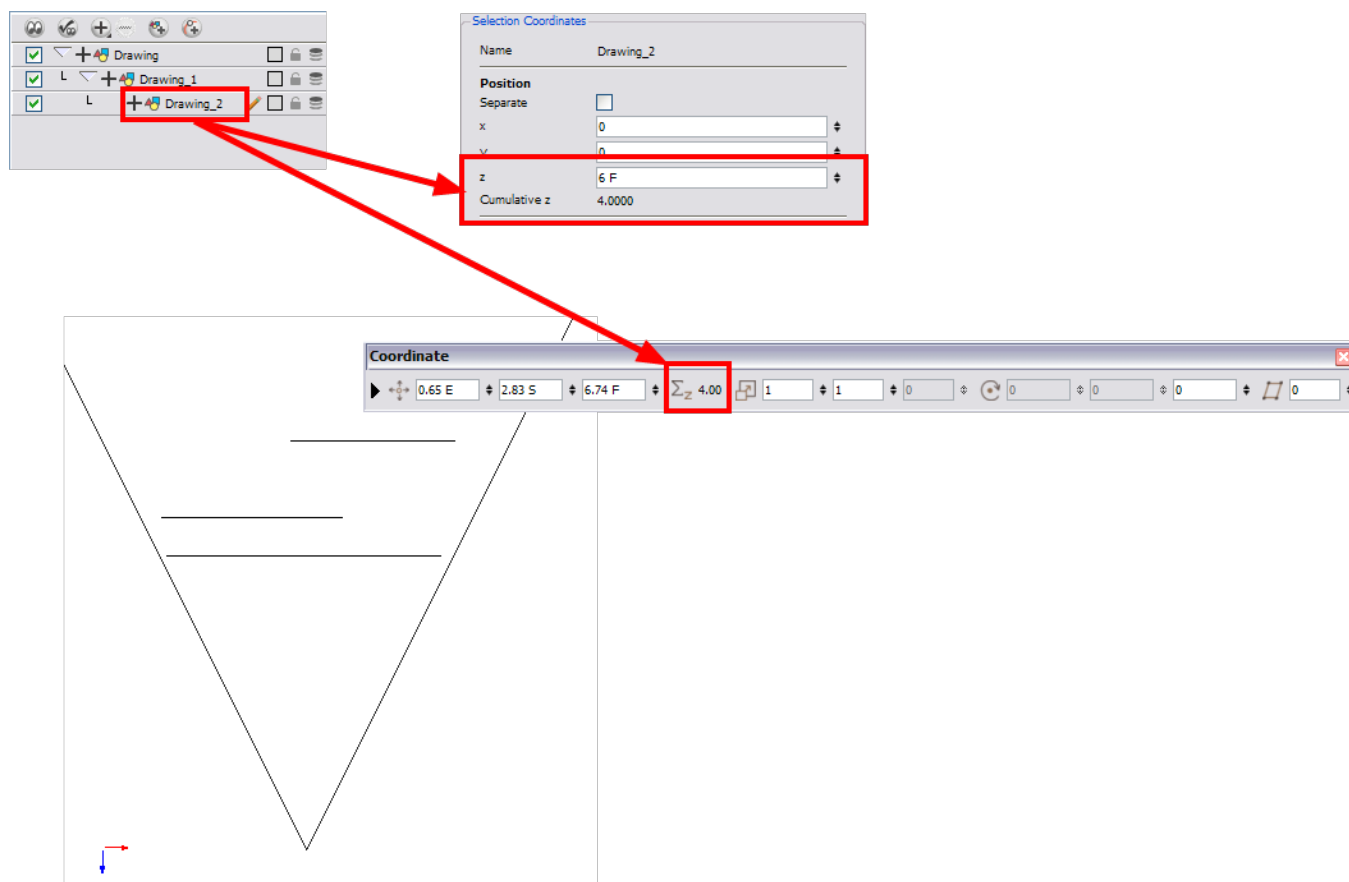
## Related Topics

- [Shaping a Path on page 939](#)

## Cumulative Z Value

You can see the cumulative Z Value information in the **Coordinates and Control Points** view. When you select a drawing cell including a keyframe, it will display the **Cumulative Z** value.

When a layer is parented to other layers that are moved forward or backward on the Z-axis, the currently selected layer's position Z value may not be accurate since its parent will also have an offset on the Z-axis. The **Cumulative Z** value is a compilation of all the Z-axis offsets to give the real Z-axis offset value related to the (0,0) centre.



## Related Topics


- [Shaping a Path on page 939](#)

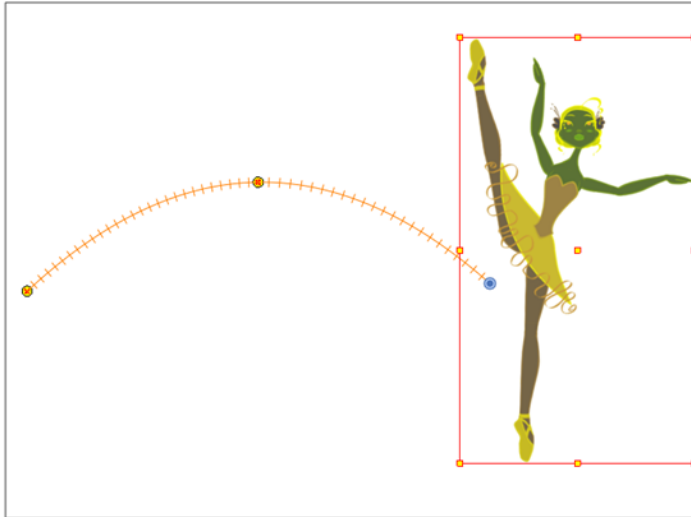
## Offsetting a Trajectory

To reposition the visual trajectory to a more convenient location, you can use the **Spline Offset** tool.

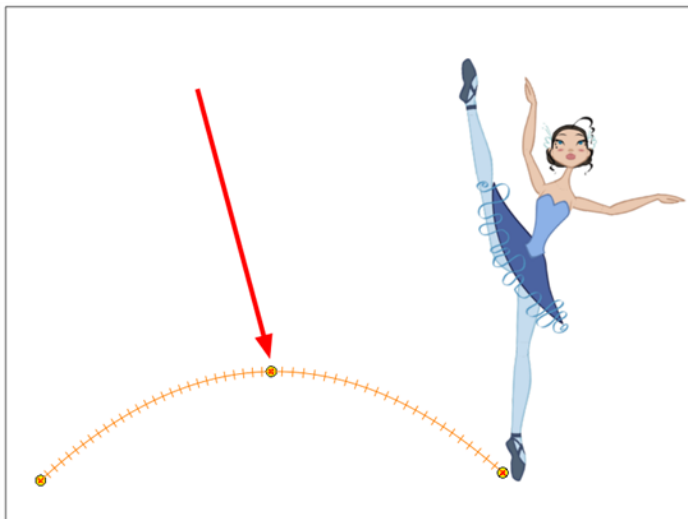
Offsetting your trajectory will not offset or modify your animation. It will facilitate your work.

**To offset a spline/trajectory:**

1. In the Animation Tools toolbar, select the **Spline Offset**  tool or press [Alt] + [9].
2. In the Camera or Timeline view, select the layer to be offset.
3. In the top menu, select **View > Show > Control** to display the trajectory. If you do not display the trajectory, the transformation done using the **Spline Offset** tool will be ignored.



4. In the Camera view, move the trajectory to the proper position. You can move it on the X and Y axes, but also on the Z-axis using the **Top** and **Side** views.

**Related Topics**

- [Modifying a Path in the Camera View](#) on page 937

# Modifying a Path in the Timeline View

When you select a peg or drawing layer in the Camera view and move it around, Animate Pro will automatically create the corresponding function curves.

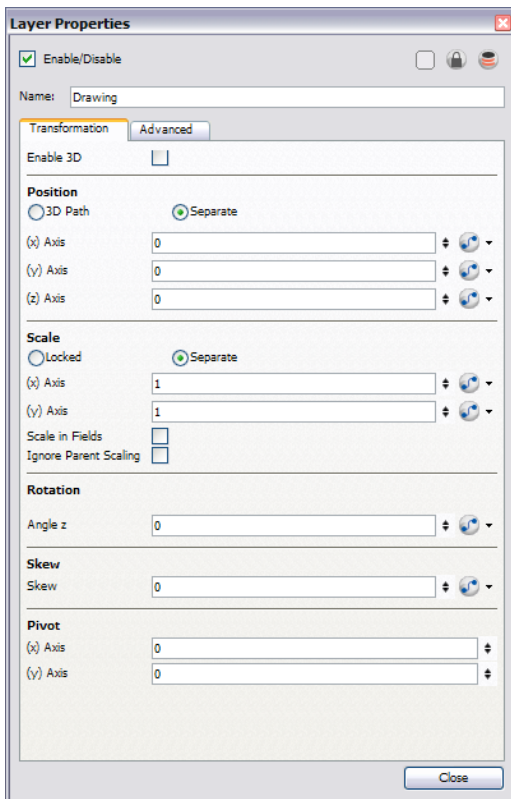
If you would then like to modify these functions, you can always do it through the peg's or layer's parameters in the Timeline view.

- [Creating a Function below](#)
- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Timeline View on the next page](#)
- [Changing Keyframe Values on the next page](#)
- [Flipping Between Keyframes on page 950](#)

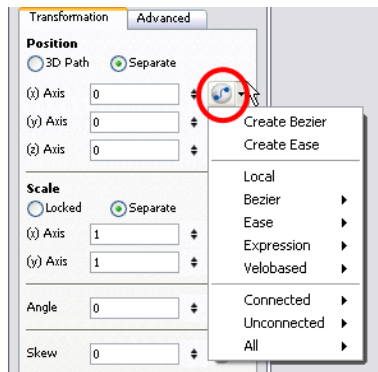
## Creating a Function

To create the function curve in the Timeline view:

1. Double-click on a Drawing or Peg layer.  
The Layer Properties panel opens.



2. Identify the section of the type of function that you want to create.
3. Click the **Function Arrow** button at the end of the corresponding row.

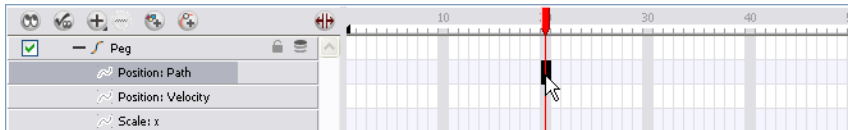


4. Select **Create Bezier** or **Create Ease**.

## Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Timeline View

To insert a Keyframe:

1. On the right side of the **Timeline** view, select a cell on the layer's function that you want to animate.



2. Right-click the selected cell and select **Insert Keyframe** or press [F6].

To delete a keyframe:

1. On the right-hand side of the **Timeline** view, select a cell with the keyframe that you want to delete.
2. Right-click on the selected keyframe and select **Delete Keyframes** from the menu that appears.

You can [Shift] + click on several keyframes to select a group before selected the **Delete Keyframes** option.

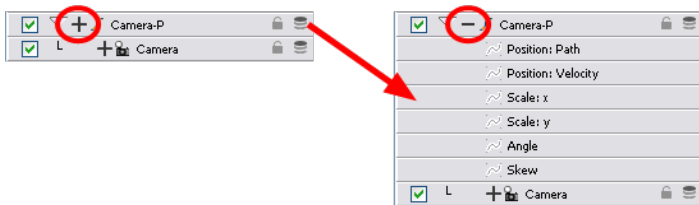



If you select a keyframe or group of keyframes and press [Delete], it will also delete the corresponding drawings on that cell.

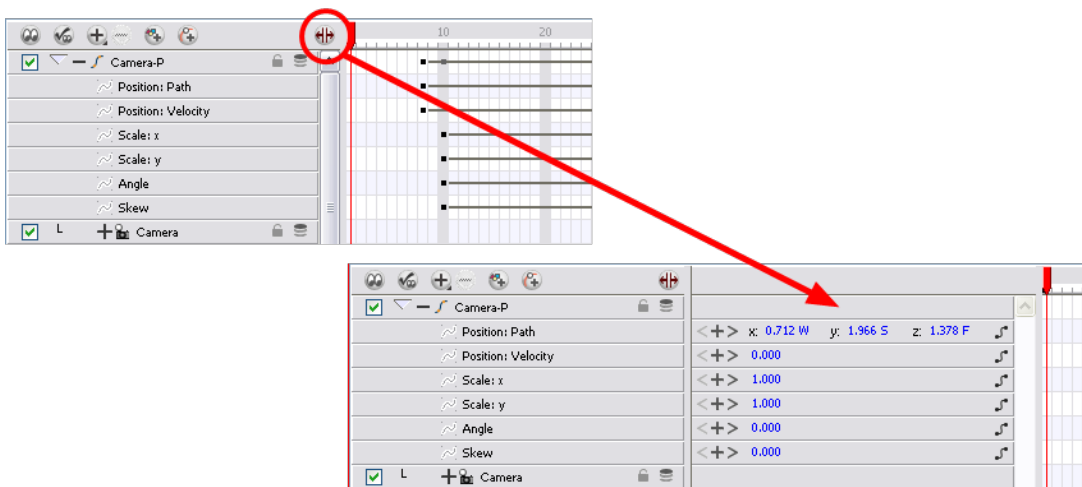
## Changing Keyframe Values


To change the keyframe values in the Timeline:

1. Open the layer's parameters by clicking the **Expand Function** **+** button next the layer's name or press [Alt] + [F].



2. Click the **Show/Hide Data View**  button at the top of the **Timeline** view, between the layer names and the timeline fields.

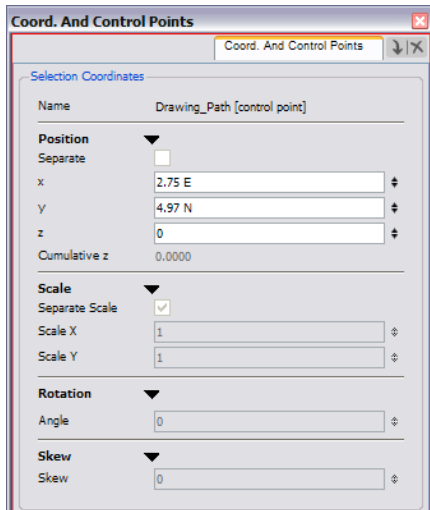


3. Select the parameter that you wish to create a function curve for: **Path**, **Velocity**, **Scale: x** or **y**, **Angle** or **Skew**. For this example we will use **Velocity**.
4. Pass the cursor over the blue number value of the parameter layer that you wish to modify.
  - ▶ Wait until the cursor becomes a white hand with a two-way arrow  and then click and drag the hand slightly to the left or right to decrease or increase the value.




OR

- ▶ Click directly on the blue number and enter a value into the white field that appears.
- ▶ If you selected the keyframe in the **Camera** view, you can modify the values in the **Coordinate and Control Points** view.



A function is automatically created as soon as the values are no longer zero.

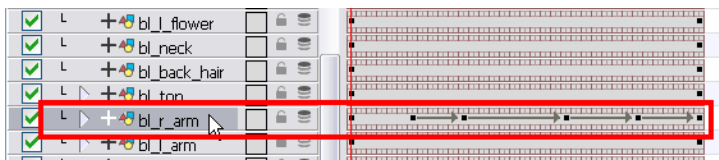
5. Press [Enter/Return] or click on the **Play**  button to view the changes you have made in the **Camera** view.

## Flipping Between Keyframes

Animate Pro lets you flip between the selected layer's keyframes.

To flip through your poses:

1. In the **Camera** or **Timeline** view, select the layer you want to see the keyframes for.



2. In the top menu, select **Animation > Go to Previous Keyframe** or **Go to Next Keyframe**. The [;] and ['].

### Related Topics

- [Function Types](#) on page 964

# Modifying a Path in the Function View

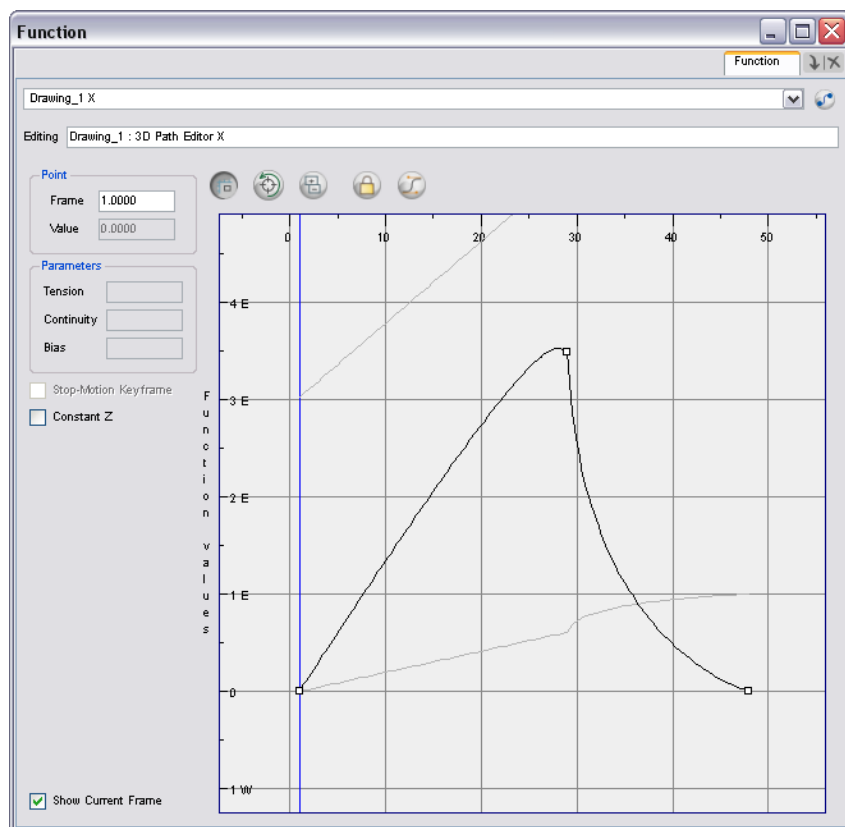
If you are used to graphs and function curves, you can use the Function view to define your trajectories.

## Related Topics

- [Function View](#) below
- [Editing a Function in the Function View](#) on page 953
- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Function View](#) on page 953
- [Changing a Keyframe's Values](#) on page 955

## Function View

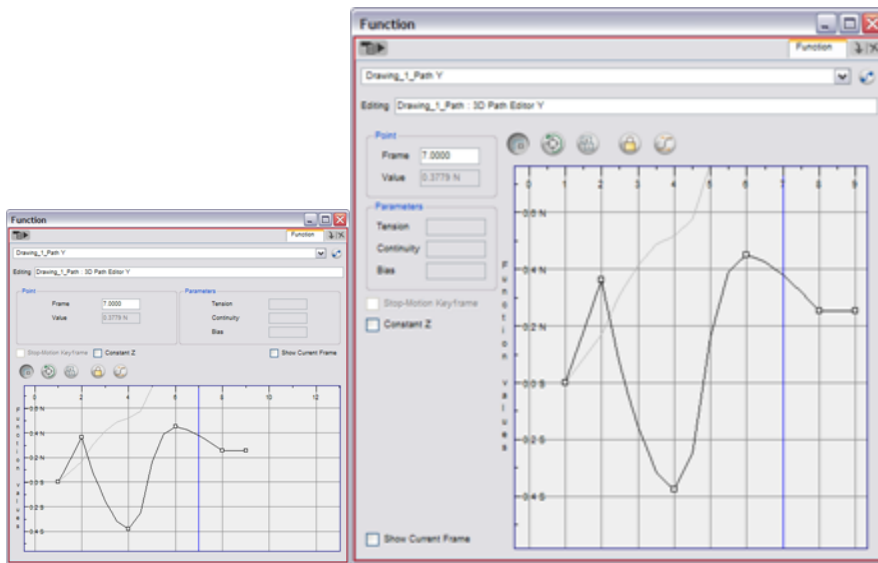
While editing the X function of this 3D motion path, you can see the graphs for the Y, Z and velocity.



The **Function** view allows you to display multiple functions in the background as a reference. While you are editing one function, you can see other selected functions, this helps you synchronize changes in one function with other functions.


You can set the orientation of the Function view to be vertical (portrait) or horizontal (landscape).

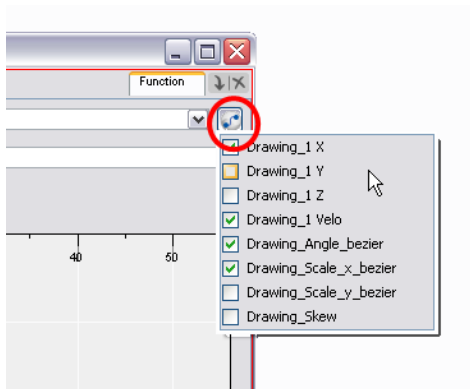
- ▶ In the **Function View** menu, select **View > Set Vertical Layout/Set Horizontal Layout**.



To display a function in the Function view, click its name in the Timeline view. You can also display several functions in the Function View.

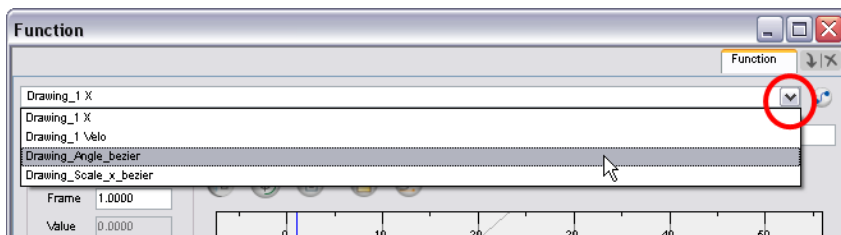
**To display functions in the Function view:**

1. Open the **Function** view.  
The **Function** view is blank until you select the functions you want to display.
2. Click on the **Function**  button and scroll down the list of available functions. Click the checkbox next to the function name to display it in the view.



▶ To display a function in the **Function** view, click its name in the **Timeline** view.

3. To select the function you want to edit, select its name from the function drop-down menu.





## Related Topics

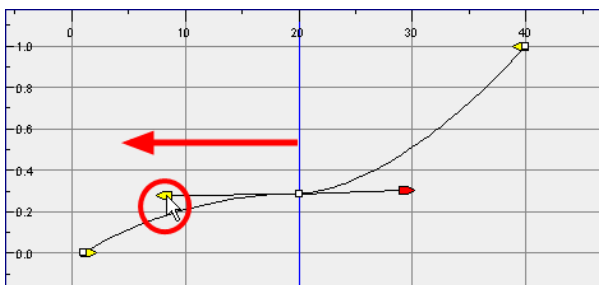
- [Editing a Function in the Function View below](#)

# Editing a Function in the Function View

The graph displays the motion over the first and last keyframes set in the scene, as well as any keyframes created between. If the scene is 60 frames, but the character's motion ends at frame 40, then the editor will only display up to frame 40.

To edit a function in the Function view:

1. In the graph of the **Function** editor, select one of the white keyframes. If selected properly, the keyframe turns red and displays a pointed yellow handle.
2. Click and drag the point either up or down or click and pull one of the handles to adjust the curve of the graph.



In this case, changing the velocity from a straight line (constant velocity) to a curved one, changes the ease-in (where the curve shoots up and then flattens-out) and ease-out (where the curve flattens-out and then shoots up) values.

The centre keyframe can not be dragged up or down because the velocity is set. Theoretically dragging it downwards towards zero would put it back to a place of non-movement.

3. Press the [Enter/Return] key with the **Parameter** window still open to watch the result of your curve adjustment in the **Camera** view.

## Related Topics

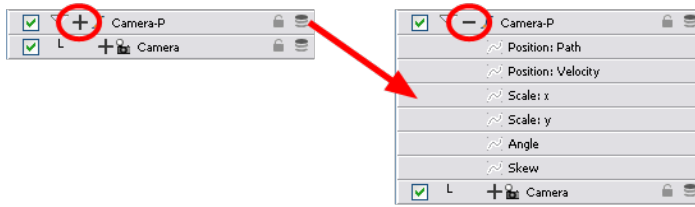
- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Function View below](#)

# Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Function View

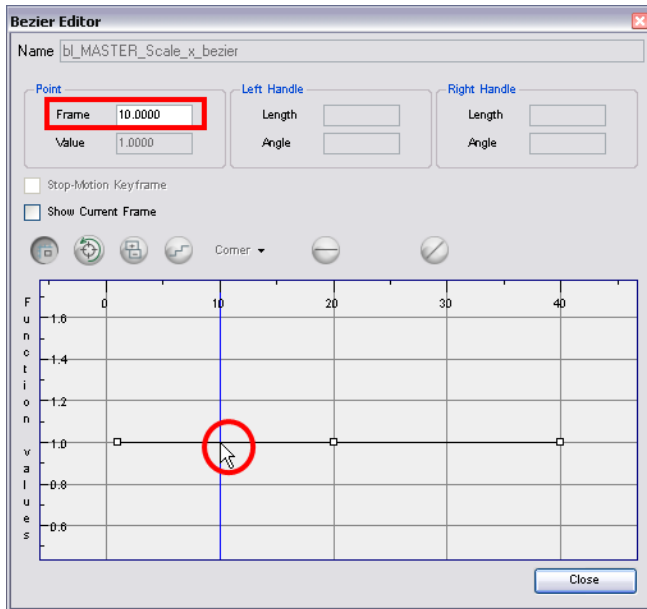
If you want to change a parameter between two motion keyframes in the **Timeline** view, such as the scale, you can do so by adding keyframes in the **Scale** editor.


To add or remove keyframes in the parameter editor:

1. Open the layer parameters by clicking the **Expand Function**  button next the layer's name.




2. Select the parameter that you wish to create a function curve for: **Path**, **Velocity**, **Scale: x or y**, **Angle** or **Skew**. For this example we will use **Scale: x**.
3. Double-click on the parameter layer name to open the **Function** editor window or click once on the parameter layer to display it in the **Function** view.



4. In the graph section, click on the frame number where you would like to make changes or in the **Point** section, enter the frame number directly into the **Frame** field.  
In the graph section, a vertical blue line will indicate the frame number selected.
5. Click the **Add/Remove Keyframes**  button.



6. Click on the newly created keyframe and drag it up (to decrease the width of the object) or down (to increase the width of the object) or pull on the handles to create a smooth fluctuation of the drawing object's width.
7. If you do not like the changes made, you can delete the new keyframe by selecting the keyframe, if it is not already selected, and press the [Delete] key, or by clicking on the **Add/Remove Keyframes**  button.

You can delete an already existing keyframe by using the same process.

## Related Topics

- [Modifying a Path in the Function View on page 951](#)

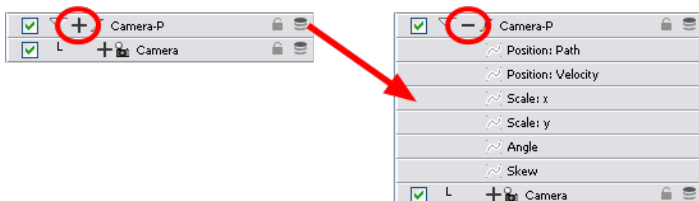
## Changing a Keyframe's Values

In the example cited above, once a keyframe is created, it can be moved and its handles manipulated to change the shape of the curve. Once a keyframe is manipulated its value changes. This value is displayed in the **Value** field of the **Point** section in the **Function** editor.

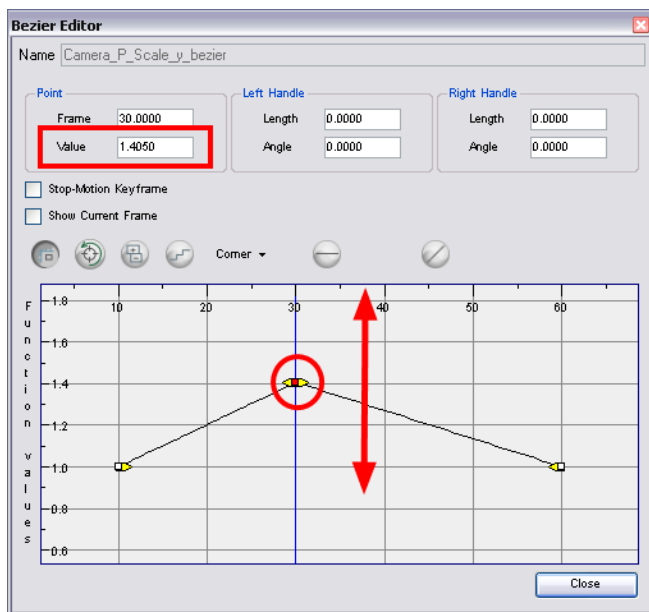
However, it is possible to work the other way around; it is possible to enter values into the Value field and watch the keyframe change position and the curve along with it.


To change a keyframe's value:

1. Open the peg element's parameters by clicking on the **Plus**  sign next the peg layer's name.



2. Select the parameter that you wish to create a function curve for: **Path**, **Velocity**, **Scale: x or y**, **Angle** or **Skew**. For this example we will use **Scale: y**.
3. Double-click on the parameter layer name to open the **Editor** window or click once on the parameter layer to display it in the **Function** view.



4. In the **Point** section, enter a value in the **Value** field or drag up or down the keyframe you want to modify.
5. Press [Enter/Return] or click the **Play**  button to view the changes made in the **Camera** view.
6. Keep adjusting your values accordingly, until you are satisfied with what you see.
7. Click **Close**.

### Related Topics

- [Adding and Deleting Keyframes in the Function View on page 953](#)

# Modifying a Path in the Xsheet View

If you are used to working with the Exposure Sheet, you can also create keyframes and type values in the Xsheet view.

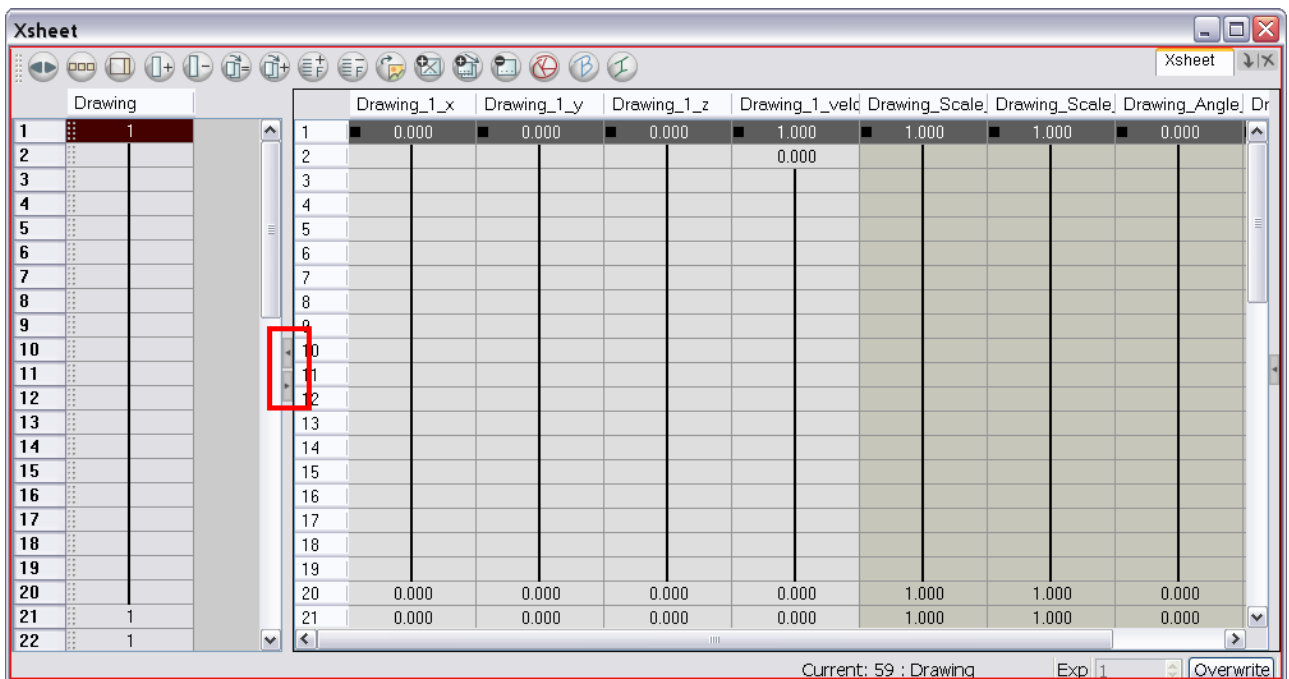
You cannot create function curves directly in the Xsheet view. You must do this in either the Layer Properties editor or the Timeline view.

To edit a function column in the Xsheet view, you must first display the Functions section of the Xsheet view and then select the layer you want to modify.

**To display the function columns in the Xsheet view:**

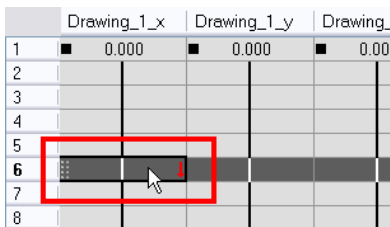
1. In the **Xsheet** view, click on the **Expand Function Section** button.
2. In the **Timeline** view, select the layer containing the parameters to modify.

The columns appear in the **Xsheet** view.



**To add a keyframe in the Xsheet view:**

1. In the **Xsheet** view, go to the function column where you want to add a keyframe.



2. Double-click on the cell where you want to add a keyframe and type a numeric value.

	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z
1	0.000	0.000	0.000
2			
3			
4			
5			
6	5		
7			
8			

- Click on [Enter/Return] to continue to the next cell.
- Click on [Esc] to exit the typing mode.

	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z
1	0.000	0.000	0.000
2	1.000 E		
3	2.000 E		
4	3.000 E		
5	4.000 E		
6	5.000 E	0.000	0.000
7			
8			

### To convert a cell into a keyframe:

- In the **Xsheet** view, go to the function column where you want to add a keyframe.
- Select the cell to convert.

	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z	Drawing_1
1	0.000	0.000	0.000	
2	1.000 E			
3	2.000 E			
4	3.000 E			
5	4.000 E			
6	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	
7				

- Right-click on the cell and select **Set Selection As Keyframe** or press [F6].

	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z	Drawing_1
1	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
2	1.000 E			0.200
3	2.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.400
4	3.000 E			0.600
5	4.000 E			0.800
6	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	1.000
7				0.000

- If you want to remove a keyframe, select the keyframe, right-click on the cell and select **Clear Keyframe in Selection** or press [F7].

If you double-click on a function column's header, you will display the corresponding function curve in the **Function** editor.

### Related Topics

- [Modifying a Path in the Timeline View on page 947](#)

# Function Curves

By default, when a drawing or peg is added to the scene, no function curve is created. You will generally create the ones needed to avoid having an overload of useless functions.

When you select an element in the **Camera** view and move it around, it will automatically create the corresponding function curves.

If you need to create certain functions manually, you can always do it through the **Layer Properties** view or editor.

You can also link a layer's parameter to an existing function curve.

## Related Topics

- [Creating Function Curves](#) below
- [Sharing Functions](#) on page 960
- [Function Drop-down Menu](#) on page 963
- [Function Types](#) on page 964

## Creating Function Curves

You can manually create a function in the **Layer Properties** view or the **Layer Properties** editor. You can either share it with other layer's parameters or to set your keyframes directly on the function curve instead of the **Timeline** or **Camera** view.


To create the function curves for your project:

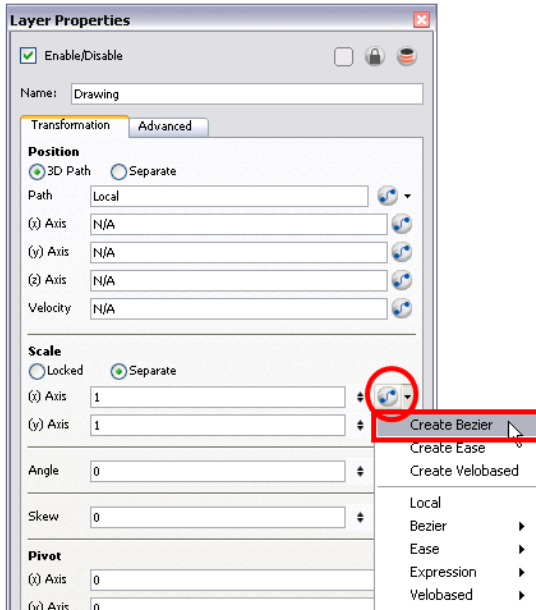
1. To open the Layer Properties editor, in the **Timeline** view, double-click on the layer or click once to display it in the **Layer Properties** view.



The **Layer Properties** editor opens.



2. Select the **Transformation** tab.
3. Click the **Function Arrow**  button beside the local function information.
4. Create a **3D Path**, **Bezier**, **Ease** or **Velobased** curve.
  - You can also create an **Expression** column. Refer to the [Expression Columns on page 983](#) section to learn more.



You can click on the **Function**  button to open the **Function** editor.

5. Click OK.

## Related Topics

- [Function Types on page 964](#)

# Sharing Functions



You can hook several parameters to the same function curve. For example, if you have an aircraft performing loops between clouds, you may want the camera to follow the aircraft's motion path. If you attach the camera to the aircraft's layer, the camera will also loop, but this may produce undesirable results and even induce a feeling of motion sickness as you watch the final animation. Instead, what you can do is to share the X, Y and Z aircraft's position with the camera's peg layer, but ignore the angle, scale and skew.

By default all the function curves you create are private. This means that the function curves can only be used and modified using their original parameter. If you want another layer or parameter to use the same function curve, you must make the function public.

There are two ways to share a function:

- Share Functions command
- Layer Properties Editor

**To share a function using the Share Functions command:**

1. In the Timeline view, select the function layer to share.



2. Right-click on the selection and select **Share Functions**.

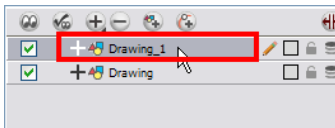
The function now becomes public to the other layers and parameters and can be shared.

Public functions are visible in the main section of the Xsheet view.



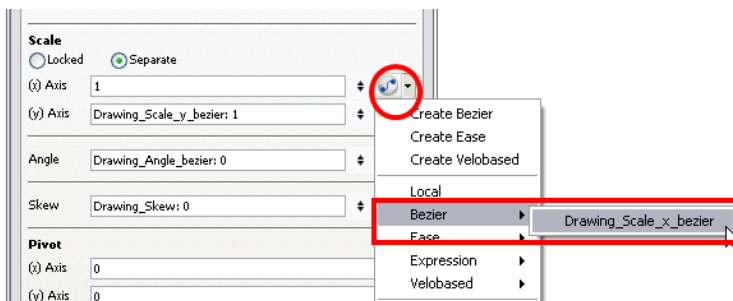
	Drawing	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z	Drawing_1_velc
1	1	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
2		1.000 E			0.200
3		2.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.400
4		3.000 E			0.600
5		4.000 E			0.800
6		5.000 E	0.000	0.000	1.000
7					0.000
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
13					
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					
19					
20					
21	1	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.000
22	1	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.000

- In the **Timeline** view, open the **Layer Properties** editor of the layer you want to link its parameter to the public function.
- To open the **Layer Properties** editor, in the **Timeline** view, double-click on the layer containing the function to share or click once to display it in the **Layer Properties** view.



The **Layer Properties Editor** opens.

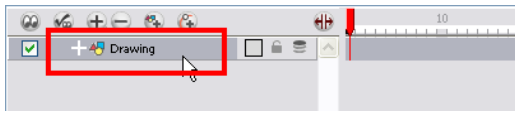
- Go to the **Transformation** tab.
- Click on the **Function Arrow** button beside the function you want to link to the function column.
- In the drop-down menu, select the function you just turned public from either, the **3D Path**, **Bezier**, **Ease**, **Velobased**, **Expression**, **3D Path**, **Connected**, **Unconnected**, **All** menu, and hook it to your parameter.





The two parameters are now both linked to the same function curve and should follow the same path. If you modify the curve, both parameters will update.

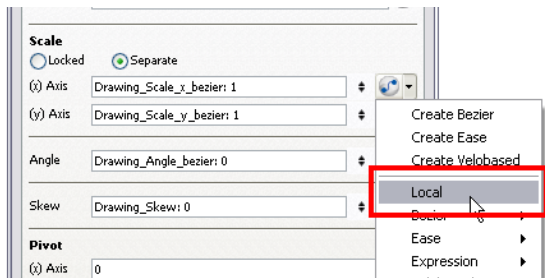
#### To share function curves:

- To open the **Layer Properties** editor, in the **Timeline View**, double-click on the layer containing the function to share or click once to display it in the **Layer Properties** view.



The **Layer Properties Editor** opens.

2. Go to the Transformation tab.
3. Click on the Function Arrow  button beside the function to share.
4. In the drop-down menu, select the Local option.
5. Click on the Function Arrow  button beside the Function field and choose an existing function from the drop-down list.



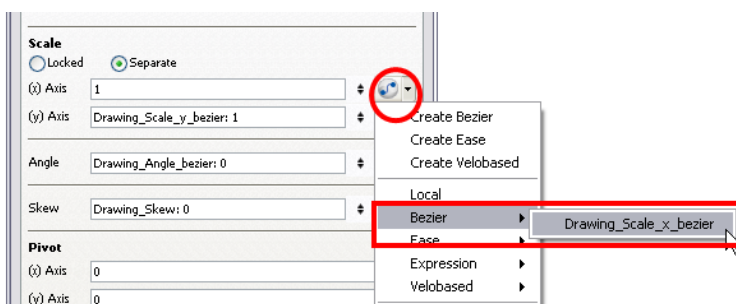
The function now becomes public to the other layers and parameters and can be shared.

Public functions are visible in the main section of the Xsheet view.

**Xsheet**

	Drawing	Drawing_1_x	Drawing_1_y	Drawing_1_z	Drawing_1_velc
1	1	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
2		1.000 E			0.200
3		2.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.400
4		3.000 E			0.600
5		4.000 E			0.800
6		5.000 E	0.000	0.000	1.000
7					0.000
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
13					
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					
19					
20					
21	1	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.000
22	1	5.000 E	0.000	0.000	0.000

6. In the same drop-down menu, where you choose the Local option, select the function you just turned public from either the 3D Path, Bezier, Ease, Velobased, Expression, 3D Path, Connected, Unconnected, All menu and hook it to your parameter.



7. In the **Timeline** view, open the **Layer Properties** editor of the other layer you want to link its parameter to the public function.
8. In the **Layer Properties** editor or view, hook the parameter to the public function the same way you did for the first layer.

The two parameters are now both linked to the same function curve and should follow the same path. If you modify the curve, both parameters will update.

## Related Topics

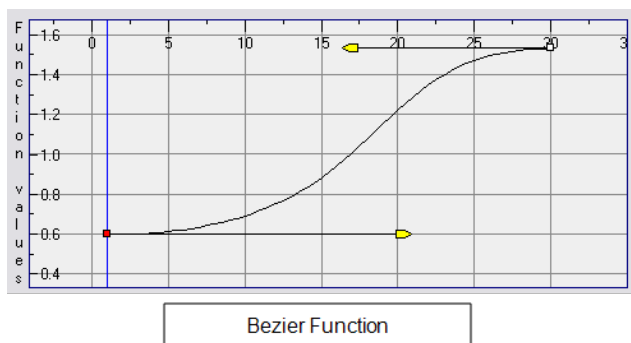
- [Function Drop-down Menu below](#)

## Function Drop-down Menu

When you create a function curve in the **Layer Properties** view or editor, you have several choices available:

- **Create 3D Path:**  
Creates a new 3D Path Column set.
- **Create Bezier**  
Creates a new Bezier curve.
- **Create Ease**  
Creates a new Ease curve.
- **Local**  
Disconnects the parameter from any function and turns it public.
- **3D Path**  
Displays the list of every public 3D Path function available.
- **Bezier**  
Displays the list of every public Bezier curve available.
- **Ease**  
Displays the list of every public Ease curve available.
- **Velobased**  
Displays the list of every public velocity based curve available.
- **Expression**





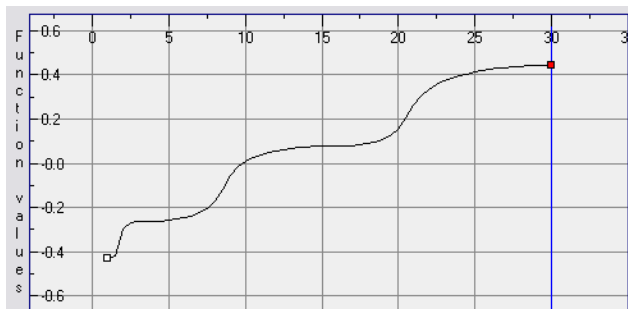
These function editors present different ways of editing the values over time. The shape of the created graph indicates the velocity of the function, regardless of the chosen editor. The type of function that you choose is largely based on your own working preference.

With the **Ease** editor, you can edit the shape of the function curves using the ease-in and ease-out controls. You may choose to use this type of function if you are used to working with ease-in and ease-out values.

## Velobased Functions

You can also create Velobased functions for certain effects, like changes in rotation or size over time. In these cases, the Velobased functions are linked to the velocity of a 3D path. You cannot change the shape of a Velobased function to control its velocity.


With Velobased functions, you can link changes in rotation or scaling to the velocity of a 3D path. This makes it possible for changes in rotation or scaling to progress at the same speed as changes to the position of an element.



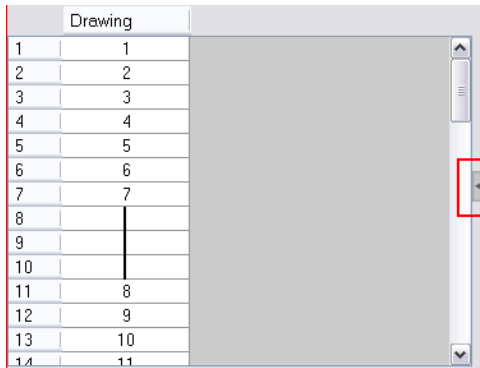
## Converting Ease and Bezier Functions

To convert Ease and Bezier functions so that you can edit them using the controls offered by that editor.

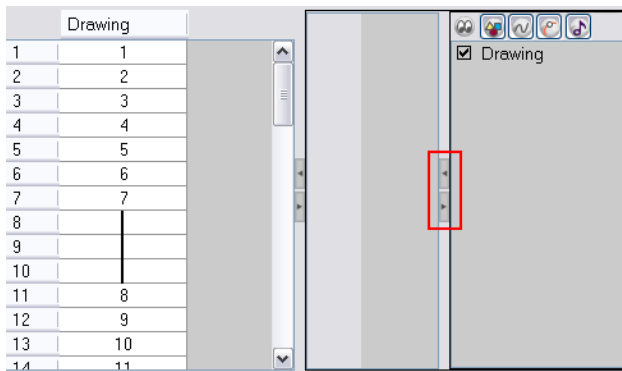
**To convert Ease and Bezier functions:**

1. In the **Xsheet** view, if not done yet, show the function columns.
2. In the **Xsheet** view, click on the Expand button located on the right side of the main section to show the Functions section. Click on the same button to collapse it. You can also use the **Show Column List** 

button in the **Xsheet View** toolbar.



3. Click the **Expand** button on the right side of the **Functions** section to display the **Column List** section.



4. In the **Timeline** view, click the layer you want to display the function columns from.



5. In the Xsheet view, right-click the column's header and select one of the following from the **Convert** menu:

- ▶ **Convert the column:** The values of multiple effects may be linked to the original column. When you use the Convert the Column command, all links to the original column will transfer to the new converted column.
- ▶ **Create a new column and update links:** Creates a new function from the original. All links to the original column will transfer to the new column. The original function column will remain in the exposure sheet in case you decide you want to switch back to it.
- ▶ **Create a new unused column:** Creates a new column based on the values in the original column and leaves all links pointing to the original column. You can use this command to experiment with various functions and then link effect values to the new function curve column.

## Related Topics

- [Function Curves](#) on page 958

# Copying and Pasting a Motion

In the Timeline view, you can easily drag keyframes to change the animation timing, delete them, cycle them and even copy them.

When you have position keyframes set in your drawing layer and you want to move them around with moving your drawing's timing, you can use the Paste Special feature to only move the keyframes selected.

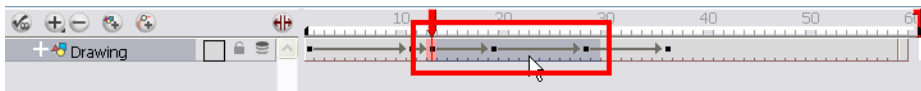
You can also use the Paste Cycle and Paste Reverse feature to cycle your selection including keyframes and drawings.

- [Paste Special below](#)
- [Paste Special Dialog Box on the next page](#)
- [Pasting Cycles on page 973](#)

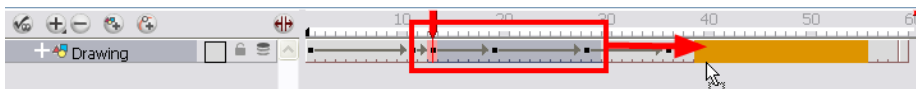
## Paste Special

To copy and paste a motion:

1. In the Timeline view, select the keyframes, to copy and paste. If you want to move the keyframes, move on to step 3.

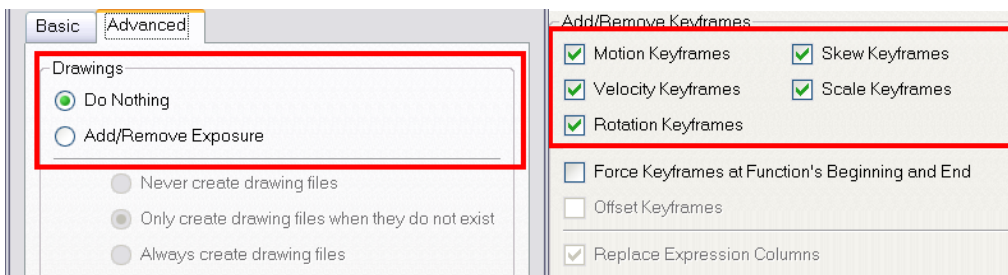


2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. To edit your selection:
  - ▶ To paste the selection, in the **Timeline** view, select the first cell where you want to paste your keyframes and in the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Special**.
  - ▶ To move the selection, in the **Timeline** view, drag the selection and hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X). Drop the selection where you need it before releasing the hot key.

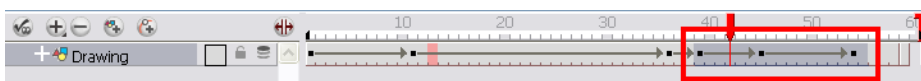


The Paste Special window opens.

4. Set the **Drawing, Pegs and Functions, and Cycles** parameters. and



5. Click OK.



## Paste Special Dialog Box

To open the Paste Special dialog box:

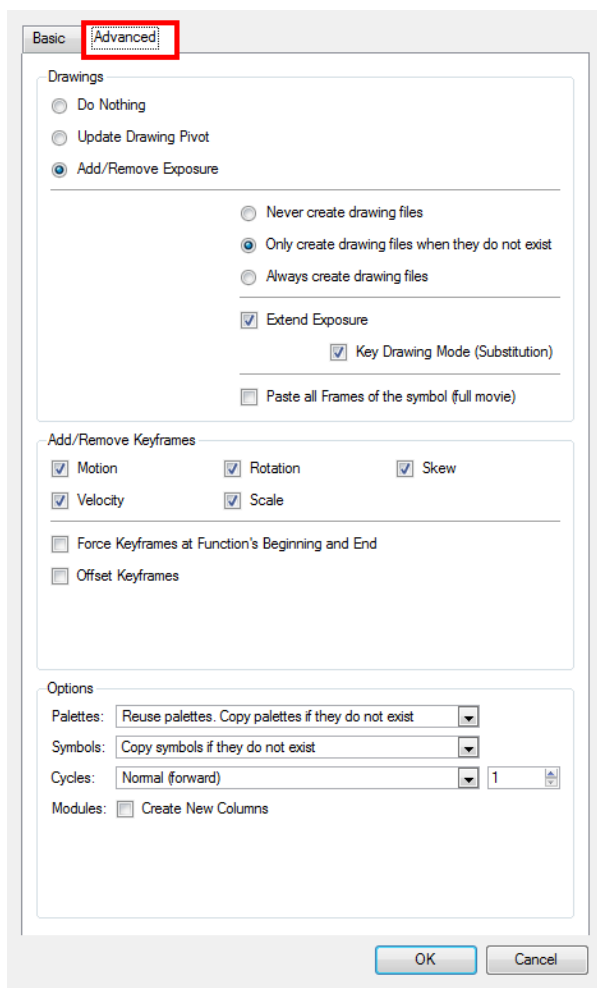
1. In the Library view, select the symbol or template to import.
2. While dragging the selection to the **Timeline** view, hold down the [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X).



Drop the selection in the **Timeline** view before releasing the hot key.

The Paste Special window opens.

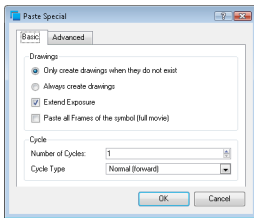
3. Set the parameters.



Advanced Tab



## Paste Special - Basic Tab



### Drawings

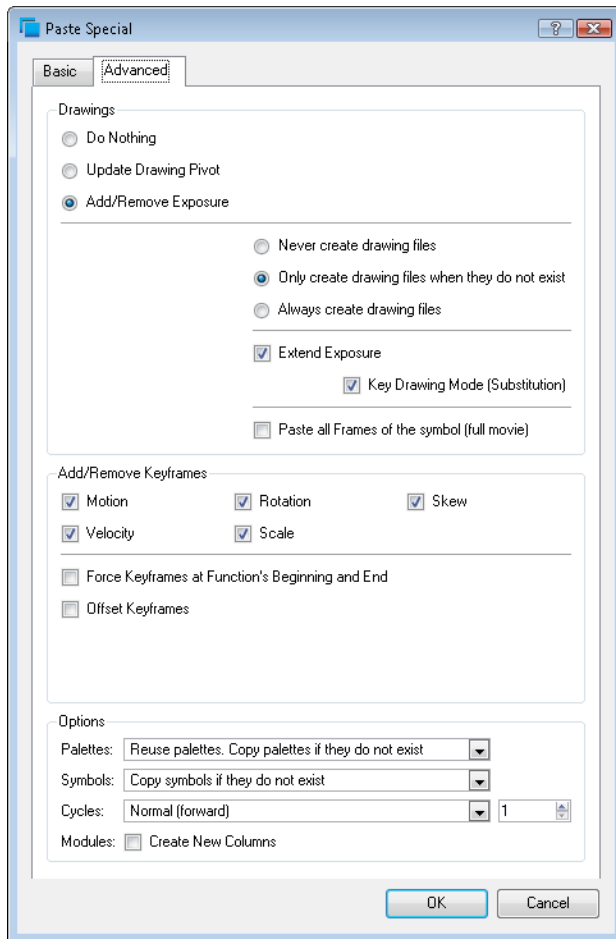
- **Only create drawing files when they do not exist:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will be created only when drawings with the same name do not already exist in the destination.
- **Always create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will always be created. If drawing files with the same name already exist, Animate Pro will create a new name for the drawing.
- **Extend Exposure:** Extends the exposure of drawings to fill the range of cells to the destination frame.
- **Paste all Frames of the Symbols (full movie):** When enabled, the Paste Special command will expose all the Symbol's frames instead of the first one only.

### Cycle

- **Number of Cycles:** Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the number of cycles you want to paste. You can also type the value directly in the field.
- **Cycle Type**

- **Normal (forward):** This pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
- **Reverse:** This pastes your selection in reverse, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
- **Forward -> Reverse:** This pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
- **Reverse -> Forward:** This pastes your selection as a reverse yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.

## Paste Special - Advanced Tab



### Drawings

- **Do Nothing:** Does not create or overwrite drawings.
- **Update Drawing Pivot:** Revises the drawing pivot in the destination to use the same drawing pivot as the first drawing in the template. If you have a range of drawings selected in the destination, the pivot points of all selected drawings will be updated.
- **Add/Remove Exposure:** Creates/deletes exposure values in the selected layer.

You have the following choices as to how to treat drawings that will be created when adding an exposure:

- **Never create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, drawing files will not be created.
- **Only create drawing files when they do not exist:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will be created only when drawings with the same name do not already exist in the destination.
- **Always create drawing files:** When adding exposures to a drawing layer, new drawings will always be created. If drawing files with the same name already exist, Animate Pro will create a new name for the drawing.
- **Extend Exposure:** Extends the exposure of drawings to fill the range of cells to the destination frame.
- **Key Drawing Mode (Substitution):** Pasting an exposure value replaces the cell value in the current frame and in all frames following in sequence with the original cell value.
- **Paste all Frames of the Symbols (full movie):** When enabled, the **Paste Special** command exposes all the Symbol's frames instead of only the first one.

### Add/Remove Keyframes

- **Motion:** Copies the properties of the selected motion keyframe to the new frame.
- **Velocity:** Copies the properties of the selected velocity keyframe to the new frame.
- **Rotation:** Copies the properties of the selected rotation keyframe to the new frame.
- **Skew:** Copies the properties of the selected skew keyframe to the new frame.
- **Scale:** Copies the properties of the selected scale keyframe to the new frame.
- **Force Keyframes at Function's Beginning and End:** Adds a keyframe to the beginning and end of the pasted function, reproducing the source function.
- **Offset Keyframes:** When pasting functions, this option offsets the keyframes from the function's last value by the values in the pasted function. This will continue the progression of a function rather than repeat the values.

### Option

- **Palette Option**

- **Do nothing:** Does not create, overwrite, merge or link palettes.
- **Reuse palettes. Copy palettes if they do not exist:** Palettes in the destination drawings are left as they are.
- **Copy and overwrite existing palettes:** Overwrites destination palettes with the palettes from the source drawings.
- **Copy and create new palette files:** Creates new palette files, placing them at the same relative environment and scene level as the source. If the palettes in the templates were stored at the environment level of the source scene, the paste operation will place the palettes in the environment level of the destination scene.
- **Copy and create new palette files in element folder:** Creates new palette files in the element folders of the destination scene, rather than in the same relative job or environment.
- **Copy palette and merge colours. Add new colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination palettes and ignores colours that are the same in the two palettes.
- **Copy palette and update existing colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination palette and updates duplicate colours in the destination with colour values from the source.
- **Link to original palettes (colour model):** Links the colour palettes in the destination scene to the palettes in the source. Use this to link drawings to the palettes in a colour model.
- **Copy scene palettes and merge colours. Add new colours only:** Adds new colours to the destination scene palettes and ignores colours that are the same in the two palettes.
- **Copy scene palettes and update existing colours:** Adds new colours to the destination scene palette and updates duplicate colours in the destination with the colour values from the source.
- **Duplicate All Symbol Content:** Instead of linking the Symbol instance to the original one, the Symbol will be duplicated. A new Symbol is created in the Library.
- **Symbols**
  - **Copy symbols if they do not exist:** This is the default setting for this operation and will prevent Symbols in a Action template from being copied.
  - **Duplicate symbols:** Creates a duplicate of the Symbol instead of linking the Symbol instance to the original one. The new Symbol is created in the Library.
  - **Overwrite symbols:** If a modification was made to a Symbol that does not exist in the basic rig template for a character, select this option to overwrite the previous Symbol.
- **Cycles:**
  - Cycle Types:
    - **Normal (forward):** This pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
    - **Reverse:** This pastes your selection reversed, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
    - **Forward -> Reverse:** This pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
    - **Reverse -> Forward:** This pastes your selection as a reverse yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.
  - **Number of Cycles:** Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the number of cycles you want to paste. You can also type the value directly in the field.
- **Modules: Create New Columns:** If you enable this option a new column will be created when you copy and paste modules from the Network view or Layer in the Timeline view. If the layers are linked to function curves, the function curves, the drawings and the timing will be duplicated.

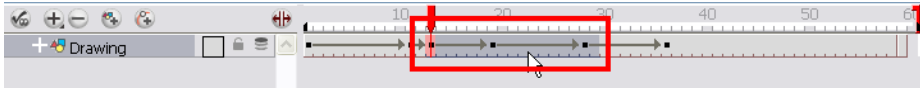
## Related Topics

- [Pasting Cycles below](#)

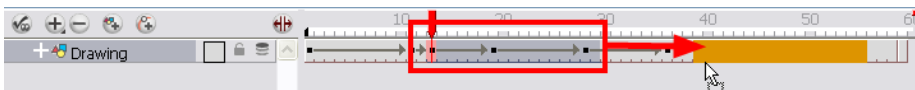
# Paste Special

To copy and paste a motion:

1. In the Timeline view, select the keyframes, to copy and paste. If you want to move the keyframes, move on to step 3.

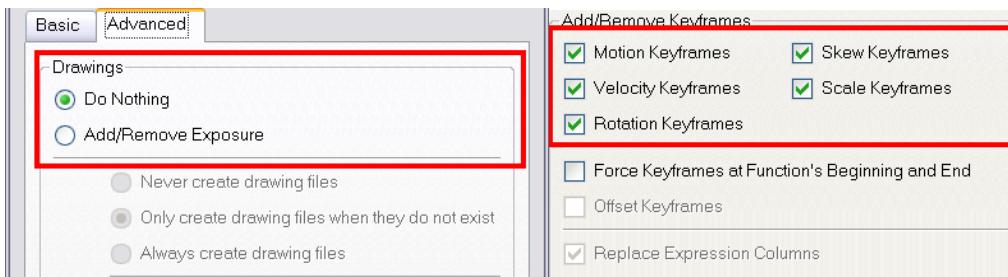


2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. To edit your selection:
  - ▶ To paste the selection, in the **Timeline** view, select the first cell where you want to paste your keyframes and in the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Special**.
  - ▶ To move the selection, in the **Timeline** view, drag the selection and hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X). Drop the selection where you need it before releasing the hot key.

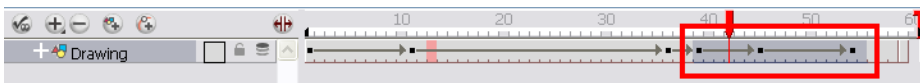


The Paste Special window opens.

4. Set the **Drawing, Pegs and Functions, and Cycles** parameters.



5. Click OK.



## Related Topics

- [Pasting Cycles below](#)

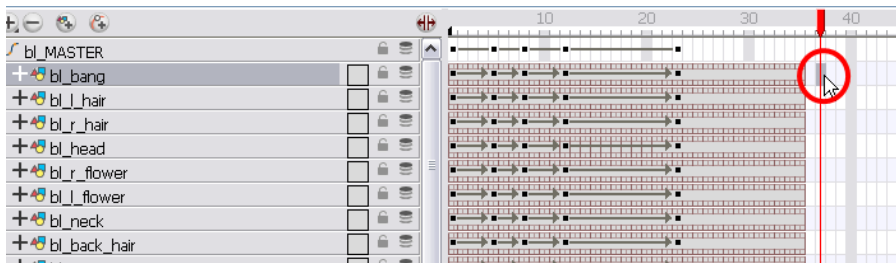
# Pasting Cycles

If you want to cycle a portion of your animation, you can use the Paste Cycle command. You can also use the Paste Reverse command to completely reverse the flow of your animation.

To use the Paste Cycle command:

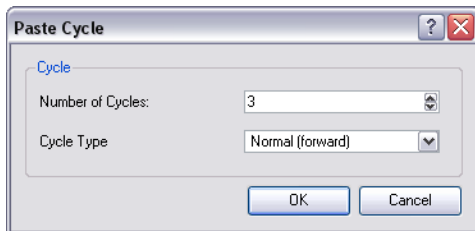
1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range and keyframes to loop.

- In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
- In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.

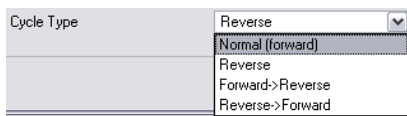


- In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Cycle** or press [Ctrl] + [/] (Windows) or [⌘] + [/] (Mac OS X).

The Paste Cycle dialog box opens.



- In the **Number of Cycles** field, use the up and down arrow to increase or decrease the amount of cycles you want to paste. You can also directly type the value.
- In the **Cycle Type** drop-down menu, select the type of cycle you want to paste.

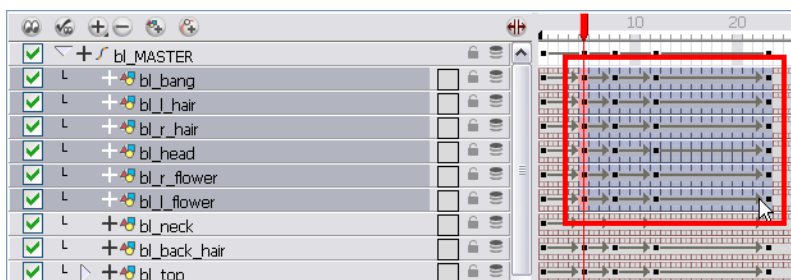


- ▶ **Normal (forward)**: Pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
- ▶ **Reverse**: Pastes your selection reversed, starting with the last cell and ending with the first one.
- ▶ **Forward -> Reverse**: pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.
- ▶ **Reverse -> Forward**: pastes your selection as a reversed yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.

- Click OK.

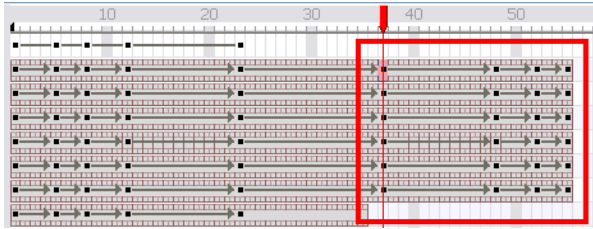
#### To use the Paste Reverse command:

- In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range and keyframes to paste inverted.



- In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy** or press [Ctrl] + [C] (Windows/Linux) or [⌘] + [C] (Mac OS X).
- In the **Xsheet** or **Timeline** view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.

4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Reverse** or press [Ctrl] + [.] (Windows) or [⌘] + [.] (Mac OS X).



## Related Topics

- [Copying and Pasting a Motion on page 967](#)

# Adjusting the Ease

To add ease in and ease out on your motion paths, you can display the function curve and modify the Bezier or Ease curve. To apply an ease to multiple functions and keyframes, you can use the **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters** script and set the amount desired.

The Velocity, or ease, is used on motion keyframes. The velocity has to be adjusted directly on the function curve in either the Function view or the **Function** editor. When a keyframe is selected, easing values appear in the right handle and left handle fields, as well as Bezier handle or Ease wheel controls on each selected keyframe. Pull on them to adjust the ease in and ease out, or type values in the fields.

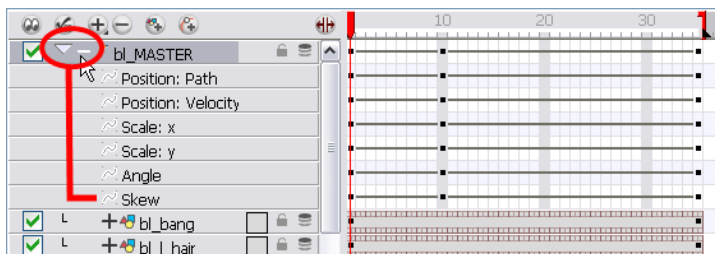
## Related Topics

- [Displaying the Velocity Curve below](#)
- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Bezier Controls on the facing page](#)
- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Ease Controls on page 978](#)
- [Creating a Stepped Velocity on page 979](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time on page 980](#)

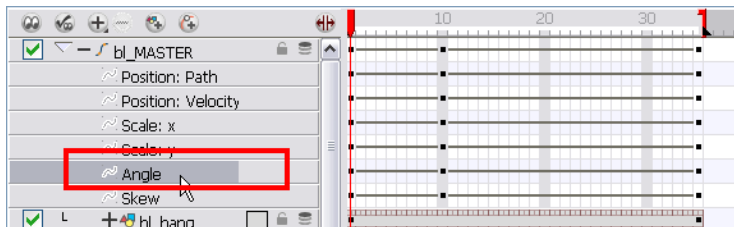
## Displaying the Velocity Curve

To display the velocity curve:

1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Expand Function**  button to display the layer's functions.

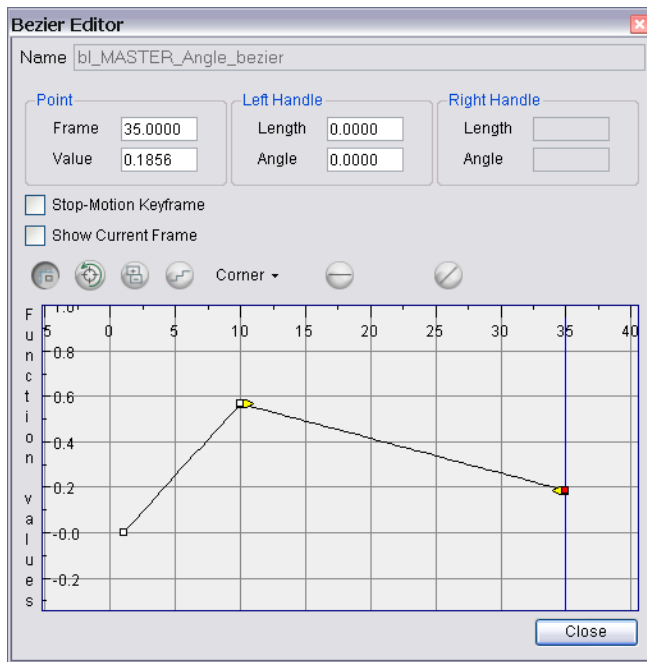


2. Double-click on the desired function.



The Function Editor opens.





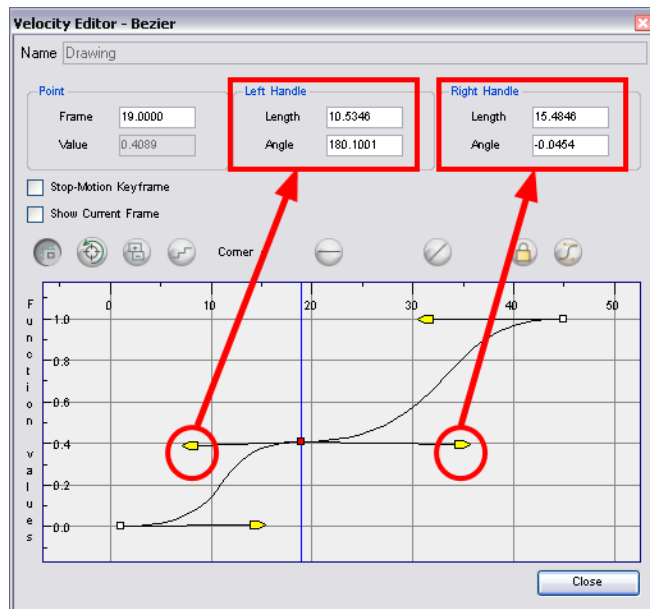
The editor will not be displayed if the function does not already exist.

## Related Topics

- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Bezier Controls below](#)
- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Ease Controls on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Stepped Velocity on page 979](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time on page 980](#)

# Reshaping a Velocity Function using Bezier Controls

You can reshape the velocity function using Bezier controls.



You can reshape the function using either the Bezier or Ease controls.

#### To reshape a function using Bezier controls:

1. Click on the keyframe to select it.
2. Drag the handles to modify the shape of the curve.

The Continuity options, Corner, Straight and Smooth, influence how you can move the handles.

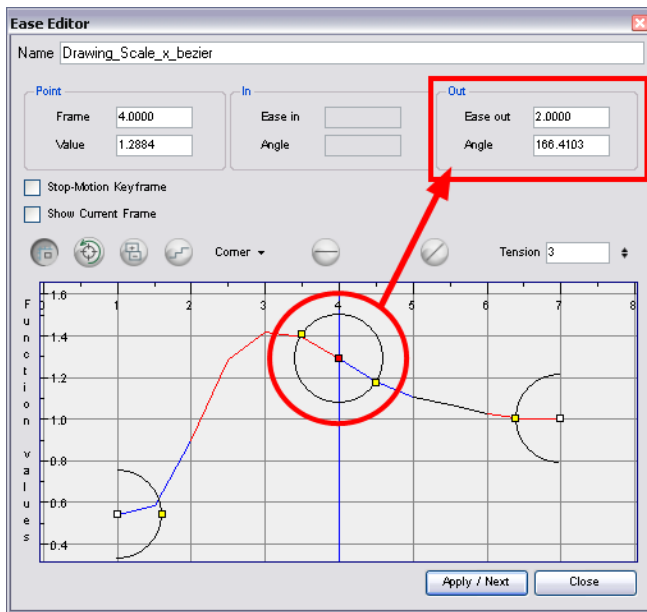
- **Straight:** allows you to move the handles together, maintaining the same angle to the point.
- **Corner:** allows you to move the handles independently.
- **Smooth:** allows you to move the handles together, maintaining the same distance and angle to the point.

#### Related Topics

- [Displaying the Velocity Curve on page 976](#)
- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Ease Controls below](#)
- [Creating a Stepped Velocity on the facing page](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time on page 980](#)

## Reshaping a Velocity Function using Ease Controls

You can reshape the velocity function using Ease controls.



### To reshape the function using Ease controls:

1. Click on the keyframe to select it.
2. To set the number of frames in the ease-in, press [Alt], click to the right of the keyframe and drag the green line. The ease in slope is indicated in blue.

As you change the values visually, the value in the Ease In field is updated. This value represents the number of frames in the ease-in.

3. To set the number of frames in the ease-out, press [Alt], click to the left of the keyframe and drag the green line. The ease out slope is indicated in red.

As you change the values visually, the value in the **Ease Out** field is updated. This value represents the number of frames in the ease-out.

4. To adjust the ease-in or ease-out, drag the handles around the keyframe.

The **Continuity** options, **Corner** and **Straight**, influence how you can move the handles:

- **Straight:** allows you to move the handles together, maintaining the same angle to the point.
- **Corner:** allows you to move the handles independently.

### Related Topics

- [Reshaping a Velocity Function using Bezier Controls on page 977](#)
- [Creating a Stepped Velocity below](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time on the next page](#)

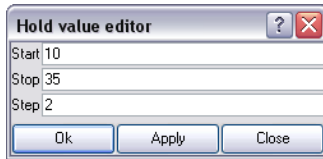
## Creating a Stepped Velocity

You can create a stepped curve to hold the same value over a selected number of frames. This works well when you are animating drawings on 2's, for example, and you want to hold the same value for a function over those two frames.

**To hold the same value over several frames:**

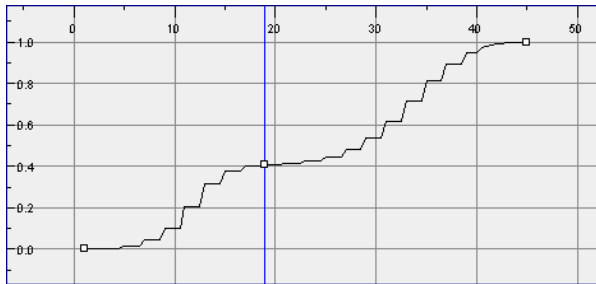
1. Click the **Hold Value Editor**  button.

The Hold Value editor opens.




2. In the Hold Value editor, enter the following values:
  - ▶ In the **Start** field, enter the starting frame for the effect.
  - ▶ In the **Stop** field, enter the last frame for the effect.
  - ▶ In the **Step** field, enter the number of frames that you want to hold the value for.
3. Click **Apply**.
4. Click **OK**.

The function curve is updated based on the values you entered.



You can reshape the curve to create a linear velocity so that the values are interpolated (tweened) consistently between keyframes (that is, there is no acceleration in the effect).

**To create a linear velocity between two keyframes:**

- ▶ Click the keyframe to select it and then click the **Linear Velocity**  button. This command resets the handles on the Ease or Bezier function so that the velocity is linear.

**Related Topics**

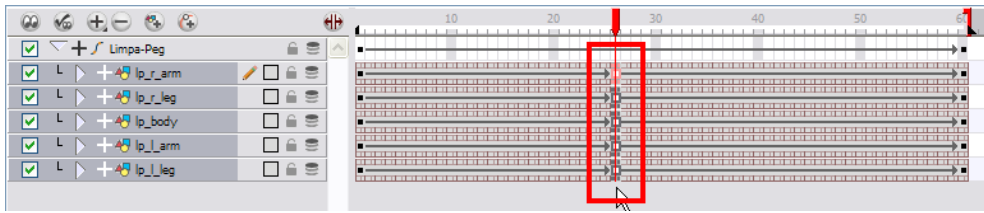
- [Adjusting the Ease on page 976](#)

## Adjusting the Velocity of Several Layers at the Same Time

If you have several functions you would like to adjust the velocity for at the same time, you can use the Set Ease for Multiple Parameters dialog box. It allows you to apply the same velocity parameters to all the selected keyframes in a same frame.

**To set eases on multiple parameters:**

1. In the **Timeline** view, select a keyframe on one or many layers.

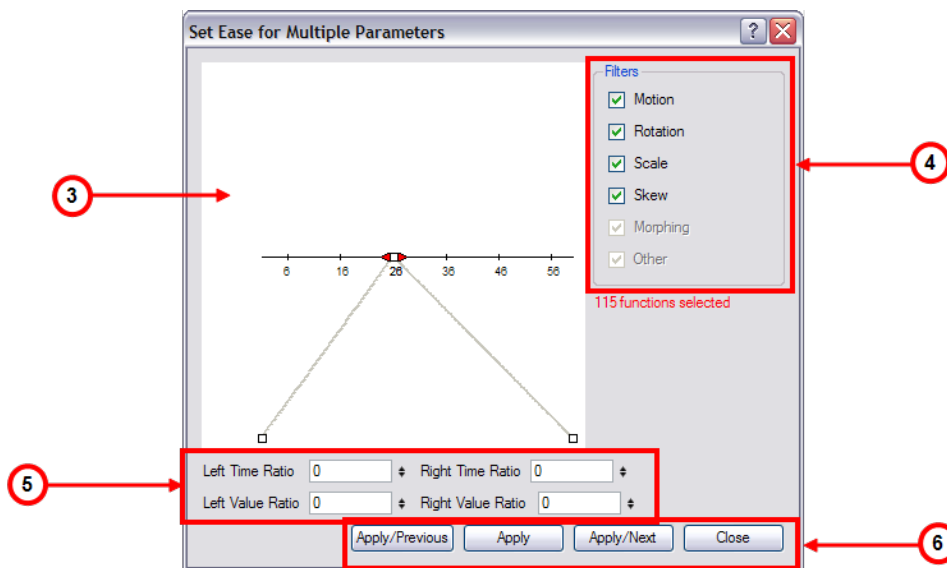


Only the first selected keyframe will be considered when using the **Set Ease For Multiple Parameter** function. If many keyframes are selected on a same layer, the ease values will be applied only to the first one and the rest will be ignored.

- In the Timeline view, right-click and select **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters**. In the **Timeline View** toolbar, you can click on the **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters**  button. This button is available in the

**Timeline View** toolbar's extra buttons. Refer to the chapter on [Toolbar Manager](#) on page 114 to learn how to customize your toolbars.

The **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters** dialog box opens.



- In the graph interface, pull on the Bezier handle to adjust the velocity for all the selected functions.



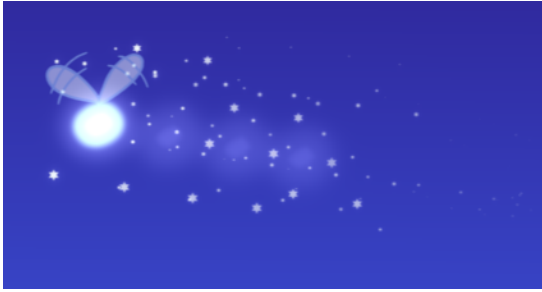
- To apply these easing parameters to a specific type of function only, such as Rotation or Scale, go to the **Filters** section and disable the function types you do not want to affect.

- ▶ **Motion:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected **Position X**, **Position Y**, **Position Z** and **3D Path** functions
  - ▶ **Rotation:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected **Angle** functions.
  - ▶ **Scale:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected **Scale** functions.
  - ▶ **Skew:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected **Skew** functions.
  - ▶ **Morphing:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected **Morphing Velocity** functions. Note that it applies to the Morphing velocity function found in the **Layer Properties** dialog and not to the basic morphing ease in the **Tool Properties** view.
  - ▶ **Other:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to all the other the selected functions such as all functions created to animate effect parameters.
5. You can also adjust the easing by typing values in the **Time Ratio** and **Value Ratio** fields. The values are calculated in percentage.
- ▶ In the **Left Time Ratio** and **Right Time Ratio** fields, type the percentage value corresponding to the length of time you want the easing to last for. It is recommended to remain between 0% and 100%. If you go beyond 100%, your motion will overshoot.
  - ▶ In the **Left Value Ratio** and **Right Value Ratio** fields, type the percentage value of how strong you want the easing out to be. It is recommended to remain between 0% and 100%. If you go beyond 100%, your motion will overshoot.
  - ▶ If your **Time Ratio** and **Value Ratio** values are equal, you will have a linear motion.
6. Once done, click on one of the following button:
- ▶ **Apply:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes.
  - ▶ **Apply/Previous:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes and then selects the previous keyframe in the timeline.
  - ▶ **Apply/Next:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes and then selects the next keyframe in the timeline.
  - ▶ **Close:** This closes the dialog box. If you did not apply the modifications, they will be cancelled.

## Related Topics

- [Adjusting the Ease on page 976](#)

# Expression Columns



In Animate Pro, you can use expressions to automate the calculation of effect values based on the values in another function. An expression is a mathematical formula that allows you to manipulate the value in the source function to create new values for the destination effect.

For example, if you take two characters and one is walking across the stage and the other is following the same path two steps behind. Without expressions, you would have to manually enter the values for the position of the peg so that it was one frame behind the original element. However, you can save time by building an expression that does this process for you. Then, if you change the position of the element in the original column, Animate Pro automatically updates the Expression columns linked to it.

## Related Topics

- [Operators and Operands](#) below
- [Creating an Expression for an Effect](#) on page 985

## Operators and Operands

Expressions include operators and operands.

- Operators are symbols that represent an action, like + for addition.
- Operands are values that are manipulated by the operators.

In the expression (10 + 5), 10 and 5 are the operands and + is the operator.

In Animate Pro, you build expressions with following operators:

- + (addition)
- - (subtraction)

You must include spaces around the minus sign when it is part of a mathematical expression because "-" is also a valid character in element names. Further, you can also use "-" as a unary minus sign, meaning that you can negate entire operations with the minus sign. For example, -(5-3) would result in the value -2.

- \* (multiplication)
- / (division)

Multiplication and division are performed before addition and subtraction. You can use parentheses ( ) to enclose discreet operations.

To refer to the values in a column, you use the column name and the frame number. If you do not state the frame number, then Animate Pro assumes you want the value of the current frame. You can refer to the frame numbers

in the following ways:

- **frame**: refers to the current frame number.
- **previous**: refers to the frame before the current frame.

You must provide an argument in parentheses () to get a value. The argument is the name of the column whose previous frame values you want to retrieve.

- **Nframe**: refers to the total number of frames in a scene.
- **[ ]**, in the square brackets you can refer to specific frame numbers.

For example `[frame - 2]` refers to the frame before the previous frame. You must put space between frame, the minus sign and the number for the expression to be valid.

Consider the expression: `previous(peg_x)`

- This expression says that the current frame value will be the same as the previous frame value of the element `peg_x`.

Now consider this expression: `peg_angle[frame - 2] * 3`

- In this expression, we are telling the Animate Pro to look two frames before the current frame in the column "peg\_angle" and multiply the value by 3 to derive the value for the current frame of the expression column.

There are also a number of predefined functions that you can use:

- **sum**: adds all previous frames to create the value at the current frame).
- **tan** (tangent), **cos** (cosine), **sin** (sine), **atan** (arc tangent), **acos** (arc cosine) and **asin** (arcsine).  
These functions are useful in calculating camera angles and angles of rotation.
- **round**: rounds a number with digits after the decimal to the nearest whole number.
- **int**: removes the values after the decimal point to make a whole number.
- **atan2(y, x)**: unlike the other arc tangent function (`atan`), this function gives you a value between -180 and 180. In the other arc tangent function you would lose the positive/negative signs that indicate which quadrant the value would be in. With the `atan2` function, the resulting quadrant is preserved. You would use this function when working with a directional blur where the direction of the blur is important to preserve.
- **ceil**: rounds the value to the next integer. For example:
  - If the value is 3.7, the ceil value is 4.
  - If the value is 3, then the ceil value is 3.
- **floor**: rounds the value to the lower integer. For example:
  - If the value is 3.7, the floor value is 3.
  - If the value is 3, then the floor value is 3.
- **abs**: the absolute value of the number. For example:
  - If the number is -2, then the result of this function would be 2.
  - If the number is 2, the result of the function would be 2.
- **sqrt**: square root of the value.



- **Comparison functions** (=, ==, !=, <, <=, >, >=): these functions compare arguments. When the function is true, the result is 1. When the function is false, the result of the function is 0 (zero). You can use these functions with the conditional (if) function.
  - =, == : compares the two arguments to find out if they are equal
  - !=: compares the two arguments to find out if they are **NOT** equal
  - < : less than
  - <= : less than or equal to
  - > : greater than
  - >= : greater than or equal to
- **exp**: indicates that the argument is an exponent of e (2.71828).  
For example:  $\text{exp}(5) = 2.718285$
- **In**: logarithm of a value
- **Conditional function (if, then, else)**: use this function to execute calculations conditionally.

You can use conditional expressions with the comparison functions. The value 0, is considered false. Any value not 0 is considered true.

For example: `if (peg_x >= pegant_x) then (peg_x * 2) else pegant_x * 2`

This conditional expression says that if the `peg_x` column is greater than or equal to the value in the `pegant_x` column, then the value of the function is `peg_x` multiplied by 2, otherwise the value of the function is `pegant_x` multiplied by 2.

## Related Topics

- [Creating an Expression for an Effect below](#)

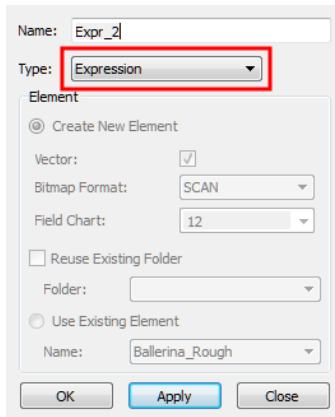
# Creating an Expression for an Effect



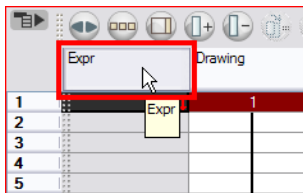
To create an expression for an effect, you must add an Expression column to the Xsheet view, build the expression and then link the Expression column to the parameter you want to control.

### To build an expression for an effect:

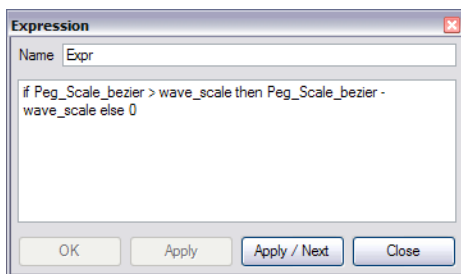
1. In the **Xsheet** view menu, select **Columns > Add Column** or press [Shift] + [C].



2. In the **Add Column** dialog box, type a name for the column and select **Expression** from the **Column Type** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Double-click on the column's header to open the **Expression** dialog box.



5. Type the expression in the dialog box.

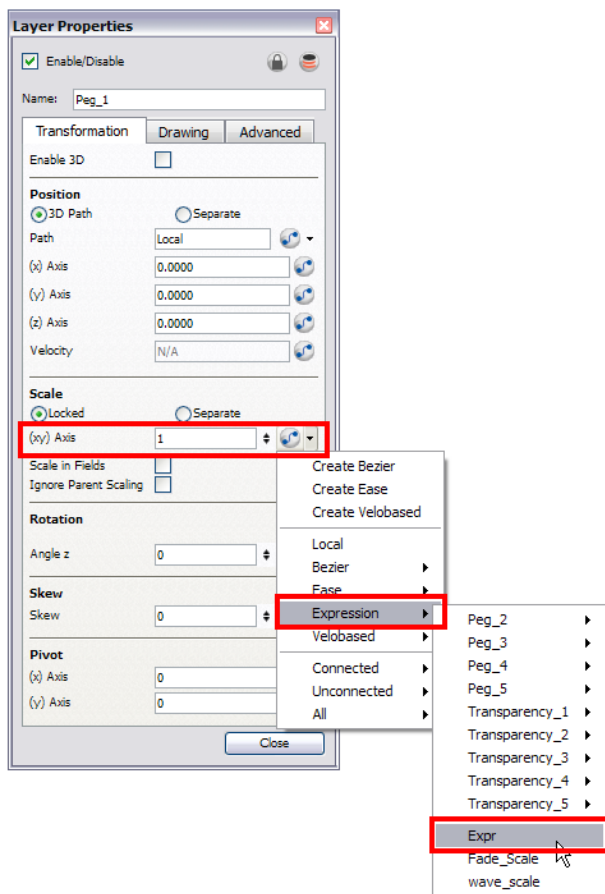


6. Click **OK** or **Apply** to activate the expression.

The cells in the expression column are populated with values based on the expression you created.

	Peg_Scale_bezier	Ripple	Transparency_Trans	Expr	Ripple_1
1	1.000	1	0.000	0.000	1
2	1.343				
3	1.686				
4	2.029				
5	2.371				
6	2.714				
7	3.057				
8	3.400				
9	3.743				
10	4.086				
11	4.429				
12	4.771				
13	5.114			0.114	
14	5.457			0.457	
15	5.800			0.800	
16	6.143			1.143	
17	6.486			1.486	
18	6.829			1.829	
19	7.171			2.171	
20	7.514			2.514	
21	7.857			2.857	
22	8.200			3.200	
23	8.543			3.543	
24	8.886	1	0.000	3.886	1

- To apply the values in the expression column to an effect, you must link the expression column to the parameter values. In the drawing layer's editor, link the function to the new expression column.



## Related Topics

- [Sharing Functions](#) on page 960

# Animation Path Preferences

While creating motion paths and setting up your scenes, there are preferences you can set to make your work more efficient.

To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Related Topics

- [General Preferences](#) below
- [Camera Preferences](#) on the next page
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences](#) on page 991
- [Timeline Preferences](#) on page 992

## General Preferences

The screenshot shows the 'General' preferences tab. The 'Options' section includes checkboxes for 'Auto Apply', 'Native Windows Playback', 'Use Menu Bars in Detached Views', 'Snap Keyframe', 'Editors Always on Top', 'Close Previous Editors', 'Focus On Mouse Enter', 'Auto Render', 'Cycle Exposure', 'Display Cardinal Coordinates', and 'Flat Tool Toolbar (Requires Relaunch)'. The 'Settings' section includes checkboxes for 'Stop-Motion Keyframes', 'Default Separate Position for Pegs', 'Default Separate Scale for Pegs', 'Default Separate Position for Elements', 'Default Separate Scale for Elements', 'Default Bezier', and 'Default Bezier Velocity'. Below these are input fields for 'Minimum FOV', 'Maximum FOV', 'Field Chart' (X, Y, Z), 'Levels of Undo', and 'HTML Browser for Unix'.

## Options

- **Snap Keyframe:** If two keyframes have the same value, they will both update to the same new position when the first of the two keyframes is modified. The previous keyframe has to be a Stop-Motion keyframe.

## Settings

- **Stop-Motion Keyframes:** New keyframes are created as stop-motion keyframes.
- **Default Separate Positions for Pegs:** New pegs are created with separate position functions.
- **Default Separate Scale for Pegs:** New pegs are created with separate scale functions.
- **Default Separate Positions for Elements:** New elements are created with separate position functions.
- **Default Separate Scale for Elements:** New elements are created with separate scale functions.
- **Default Bezier:** New functions curves are created as Bezier Curves.
- **Default Bezier Velocity:** New velocity curves are created as Bezier Curves.

## Related Topics

- [Camera Preferences](#) below
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences](#) on the facing page
- [Timeline Preferences](#) on page 992

## Camera Preferences

The screenshot shows the Camera Preferences panel with the following settings:

- Tools:**
  - Initial Animation Mode: On
  - Show Locked Drawings As Outlines:
  - Bounding Box Selection Style:
  - Nudging Factor: 1
  - Set Keyframes on all Functions with the Transform Tool:
  - Set Keyframe at Frame One with First Application of the Transform Tool:
  - Paste/Drag & Drop adds keyframes at beginning and end:
  - Select tool Works on Single Drawing:
  - Use Rotation Lever with transformation tools:
- Zoom Settings:**
  - Camera View Default Zoom: Fit to View
  - Top/Side View Default Zoom: 0.5
- Settings:**
  - Thumbnail Size: 64 pixels
  - Small Bitmap Resolution: 512 pixels
  - Override Small Bitmap Files:
  - TV Safety: 0.1 (ratio)
- Inverse Kinematics:**
  - Min/Max Angle Constraint Weight: 0.0005
- Wash Background:**
  - Enable in Camera:
  - Enable in Camera Drawing Mode:
  - Wash Background Percentage: 70
- Preview Wash:**
  - Enable For Out Of Date Previews:
  - Wash Background Percentage: 0.2
- Control Points:**
  - Show Control Points On Selected Layers:
  - Control Point Tension: 0
  - Control Point Continuity: 0
  - Control Point Bias: 0

## Tools

- **Initial Animation Mode:** Determines which animation mode are enabled when the scene is opened.
- **Set Keyframes on All Functions With the Transform tool:** A keyframe is added by default on all the functions of the selected layer when you perform a transformation with the transform tool. Disable this option if you want the Transform tool to add a keyframe only on the transformation you are doing, such as a rotation or scale.

- **Set Keyframe At Frame One With First Application On the Transform Tool:** When this preference is enabled, wherever you set a keyframe on your layer, there will be a keyframe added on your frame 1. If the preference is disabled, there will be only a keyframe added to the current frame. If later on, you add a keyframe on your frame one, it may modify the first keyframe you added.

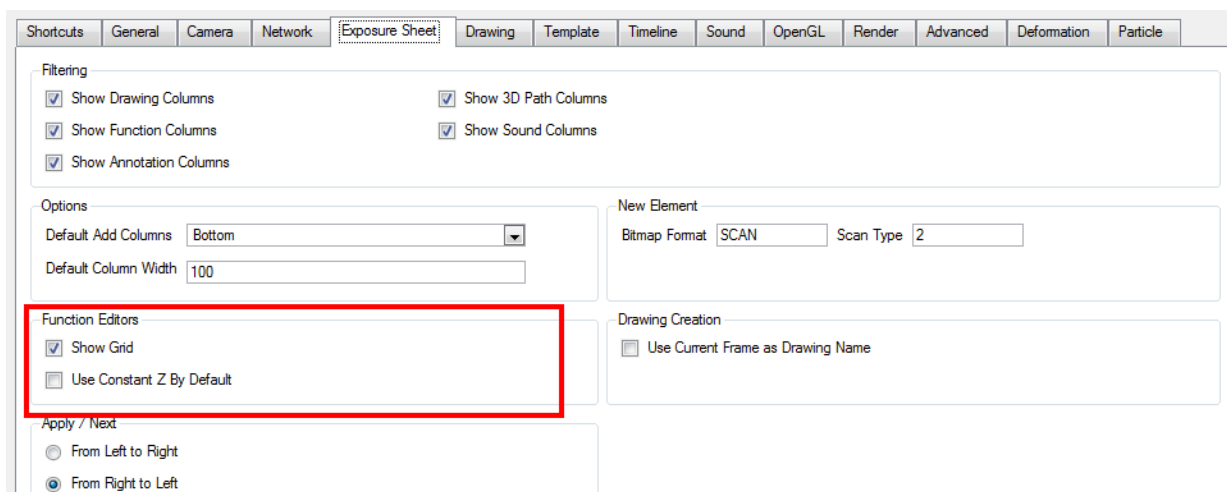
## Control Points

- **Show Control Points On Selected Layer:** By default, when you select an element with the Transform tool, the motion path related to the object is displayed.
- **Control Point Tension:** The default Tension value for new keyframes and Control Points.
- **Control Point Continuity:** The default Continuity value for new keyframes and Control Points.
- **Control Point Bias:** The default Bias value for new keyframes and Control Points.

## Related Topics

- [General Preferences on page 989](#)
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences below](#)
- [Timeline Preferences on the next page](#)

## Exposure Sheet Preferences



## Function Editors

- **Show Grid:** When selected, the grid is displayed by default when opening the Function Editor.
- **Use Constant Z By Default:** When selected, the Constant Z option will be enabled by default in the Function Editor.

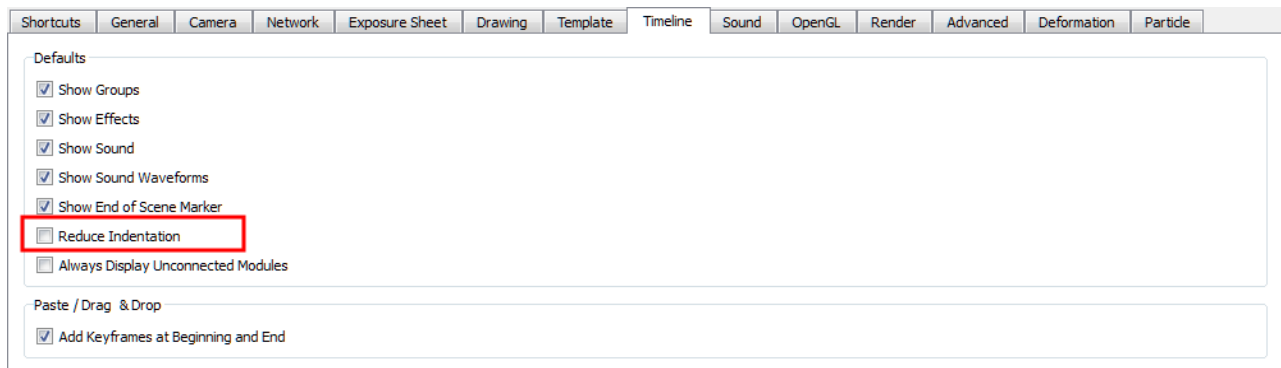
Constant Z means that even when creating Motion keyframes, the Z function will use Stop-Motion keyframes and will not be interpolated, this can be very useful for cut-out animation. The Constant Z feature only works with 3Dpaths.

You can also enable the Constant Z option directly in the Function Editor or Function view for specific functions.

## Related Topics

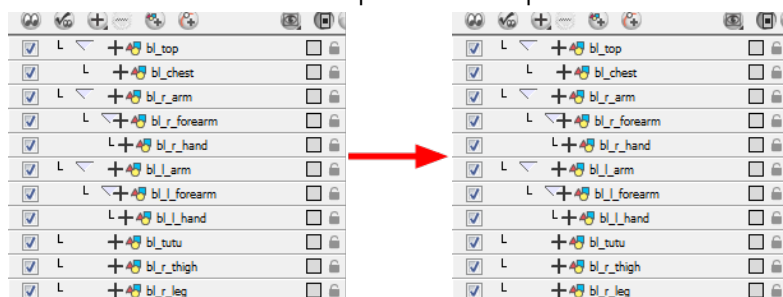
- [General Preferences on page 989](#)
- [Camera Preferences on page 990](#)
- [Timeline Preferences below](#)

## Timeline Preferences



## Defaults

- **Reduce Indentation:** When this option is enabled, the horizontal indentation for parented modules in the **Timeline** is reduced to optimize the amount of space taken in the **Timeline**. When you have a cut-out character and there is a long cascade of parented modules, you can enable this option so that the **Timeline** left size does not required to be expanded too wide to see all of your modules.



## Related Topics

- [General Preferences on page 989](#)
- [Camera Preferences on page 990](#)
- [Exposure Sheet Preferences on the previous page](#)



# Chapter 17: Cut-out Animation



Animate Pro provides you with some great tools to animate your puppets. You can create simple animation using the Transform tool and you can make advanced animation using both forward and inverse kinematics. Animate Pro has advanced onion skinning and image swapping features to help you animate efficiently and quickly. To give you animation freedom you are able to mix several different techniques of animation such as simple rigging, hierarchy and symbol animation.

## Topics Covered

- [Getting the Character](#) on page 995
- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks](#) on page 999
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1001
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position](#) on page 1004
- [Navigating the Hierarchy](#) on page 1008
- [Animating using the Transform Tool](#) on page 1010
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics](#) on page 1013
- [Animating in Stop-motion](#) on page 1033
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation](#) on page 1035
- [Flipping Through Poses](#) on page 1041
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1043
- [Flipping Parts](#) on page 1046
- [Animating Using Symbols](#) on page 1048
- [Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions](#) on page 1054
- [Swapping Images](#) on page 1057
- [Adding a New Drawing](#) on page 1060
- [Ordering Layers Over Time](#) on page 1061
- [Resetting a Transformation](#) on page 1063

- [Creating Cycles](#) on page 1065
- [Adding Pegs](#) on page 1070
- [Offsetting Part of an Animation](#) on page 1072
- [Cut-out Animation Preferences](#) on page 1074

# Getting the Character

The first step in animating your character is to import a master template from the library.

- [Importing a Character from the Library below](#)
- [Importing Network Templates on the next page](#)

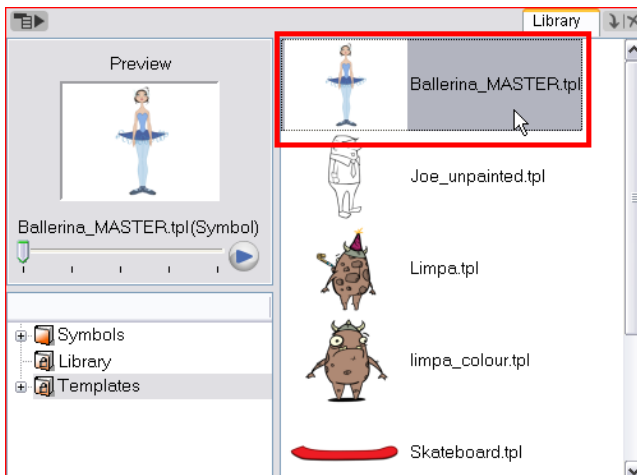


If the template you are importing was created in the Network view, make sure to import it first and to drop it into either the Network view or the left side of the Timeline view. If you don't do this you may break some network connections.

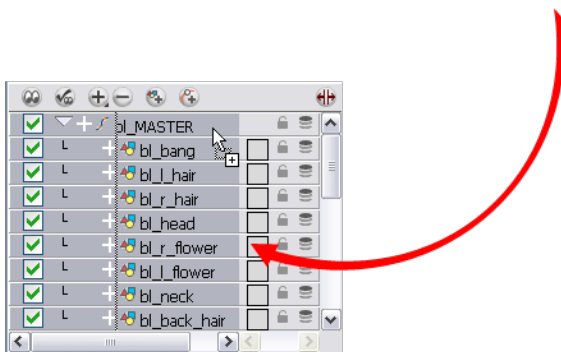
## Importing a Character from the Library

To import your character from the library:

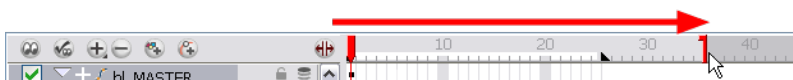
1. Create your new Animate Pro project.
2. In the Library view, select the character's master template you want to animate.



3. Drag the selected template to the Camera or Timeline view's left side.



4. In the Timeline view, drag the scene length bracket to extend or shorten your scene length.

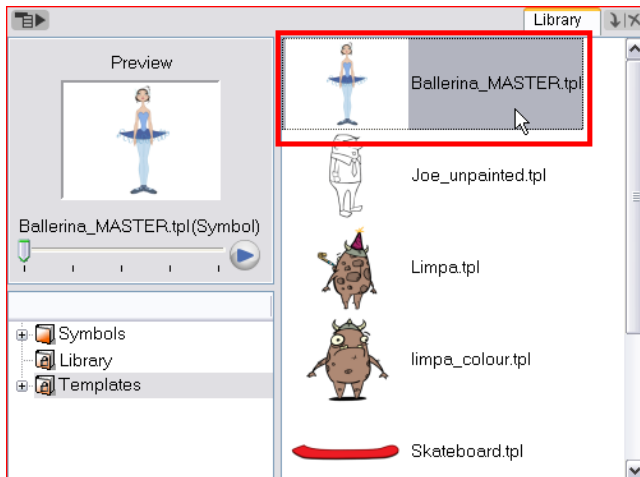


# Importing Network Templates

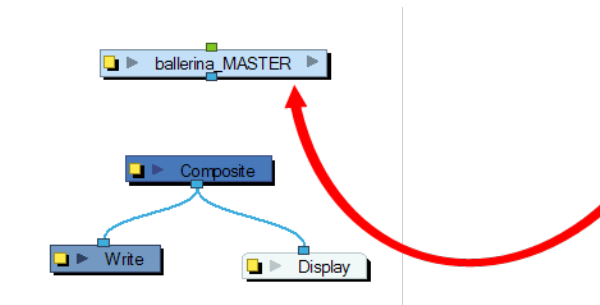
In Animate Pro you can create your character template from the Network view.

**To import a Network template:**

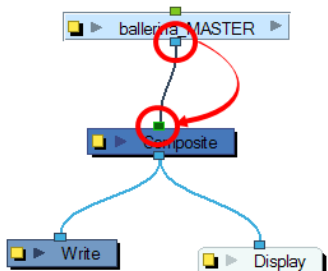
1. Create your new Animate Pro project.
2. In the Library view, select the character's master template you want to animate.



3. Drag the selected template to the Network, Camera or Timeline view's left side.



4. In the Network view, connect the template's Group module to the Composite module, by clicking it's out-port and dragging the connection to the Composite module until an in-port appears.



5. In the Timeline view, extend or shorten the scene length by dragging the scene length bracket.



## Related Topics

- [Selecting the Pose below](#)
- [Extending the Exposure on the next page](#)

## Selecting the Pose



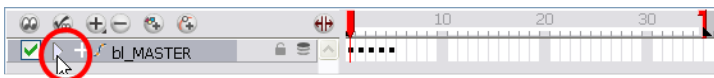
If the template you imported contains several poses, you must choose which pose you will use to start your animation and remove the other ones.



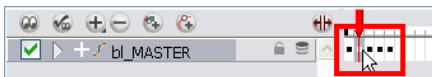
If you created your different views in separated templates, you can import them on separated layers and turn them on and off in the Timeline view depending on which one you need.

### To select the character's pose:

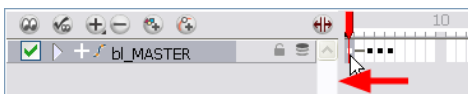
1. In the Timeline view, collapse your character's layers.



2. In the Timeline view's right side, select the keyframe corresponding to the pose you want to keep.



3. Drag the selected keyframe to the first frame.



4. Select all of the extra drawings and keyframes that you do not need and press the [Delete] key.



## Related Topics

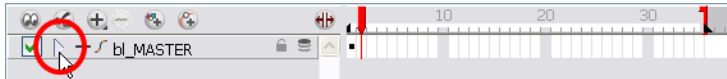
- [Extending the Exposure below](#)

# Extending the Exposure

Once your pose is chosen, all that is left to do is to extend the exposure of your character to the end of your scene.

To extend the exposure of your character:

1. In the Timeline view, collapse your character.

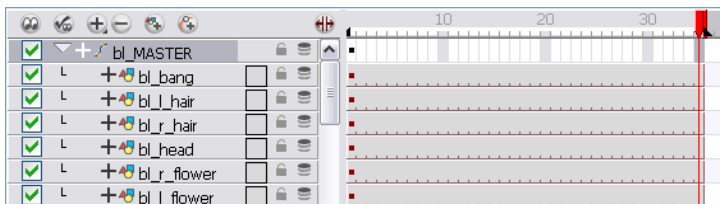
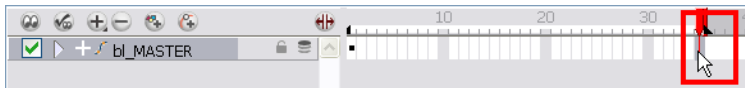


2. In the Timeline view's right side, select the last cell of your character.



3. Right-click on the select and select **Extend Exposure** or press [F5]. You can also copy the first pose and paste it in the last cell.

The drawing exposure is extended to the end. You will not see any changes in your timeline while the master peg is collapsed.



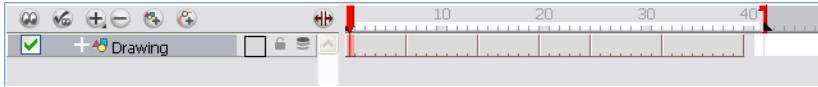
## Related Topics

- [Getting the Character on page 995](#)

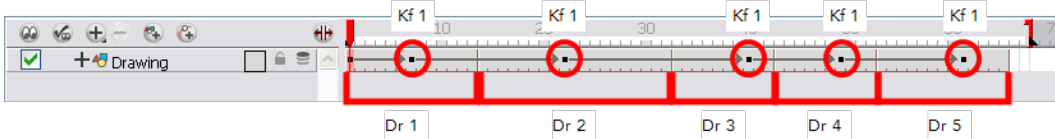
# Keyframes and Drawing Blocks

When you extend the exposure of a drawing it is represented by a grey block in the Timeline view. When you expose a second drawing, a second grey block is displayed.

You can consider these blocks as drawing blocks.



To animate the position of a block over time, you do not need to create a second block, you simply need to add a position keyframe. The position keyframes are coordinates indicating the position of your drawing on a particular frame. These appear as black squares in the Timeline view. If you refer to the example below, you can see that the keyframes are positioned on frames independently from the beginning and end of each drawing block.



You can keyframe three different positions for your drawing in the same drawing block and create a motion path between them.


## Timeline Behaviour

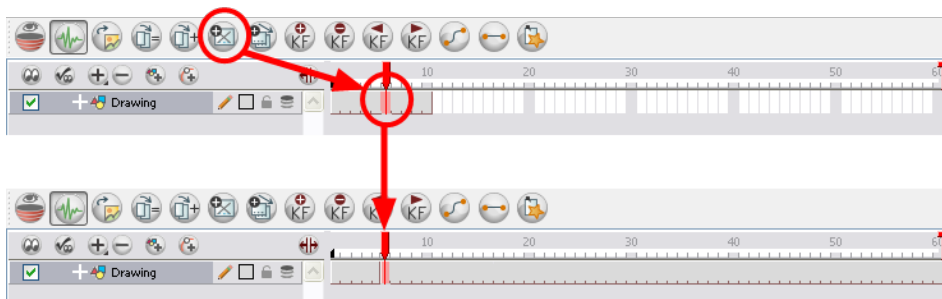
In the Timeline view, you can see how the Timeline behaves differently depending on whether you either create a new drawing, a new keyframe, or both at the same time.

- [Creating a Drawing in the Timeline View below](#)
- [Creating a Keyframe in the Timeline View on the next page](#)
- [Creating a Drawing and a Keyframe in the Timeline View at the Same Time on the next page](#)

## Creating a Drawing in the Timeline View

You can use the Create Empty Drawing command to add a new drawing in the Timeline view. This will automatically insert a new drawing block.

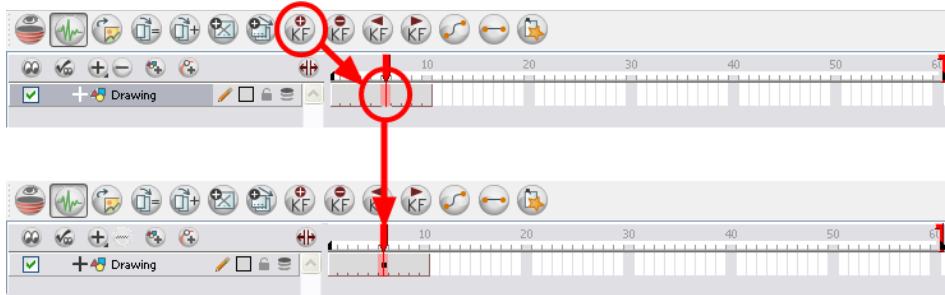
- ▶ Select **Drawing > Create Empty Drawing**. You can also use the **Create Empty Drawing**  button from the Timeline View toolbar.



## Creating a Keyframe in the Timeline View

You can use the Add Keyframe command to add a new keyframe in the Timeline view. This will automatically create a keyframe in your layer.

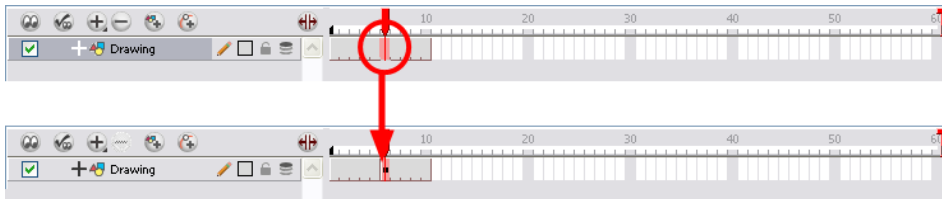
- ▶ Select **Insert > Keyframe** . You can also press [F6].
- ▶ You can also use the **Add Keyframe**  button from the Timeline View toolbar.



## Creating a Drawing and a Keyframe in the Timeline View at the Same Time

You can use the Insert Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing command to add a keyframe and a drawing at the same time. This will create a drawing block containing copies of the selected drawing and a keyframe.

- ▶ Select **Insert > Keyframe and Duplicate Drawing**.







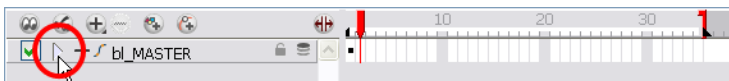
# Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation



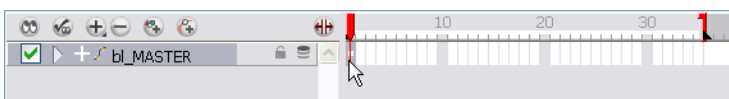
To create a simple cut-out animation, follow these steps so you can try out the animation tools you will learn in the next topics.

**To create a simple cut-out animation:**

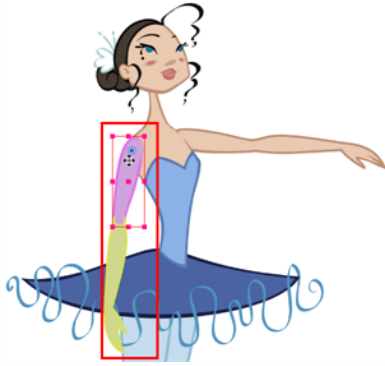
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform  tool. You can also press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Tools toolbar, enable the Animate  mode so that everything you move will be keyframed automatically.
3. In the top menu, select **Animation > Stop-Motion Keyframe** so that the interpolation is not created automatically between your keyframes.
4. In the Timeline view, collapse your character.




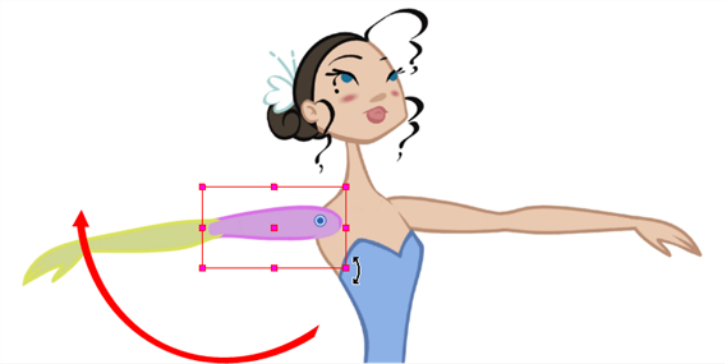
5. In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to set your first pose.




- In the Camera view, select the parts to animate.



- Using the Transform  tool, rotate, skew, scale or translate the selection to its new position.

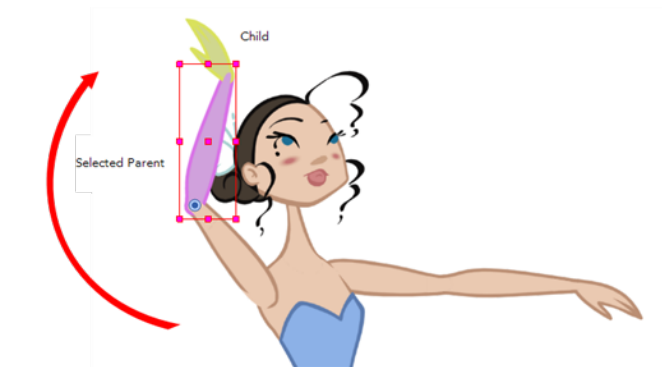


A new keyframe appears in the Timeline view.

- If you want to make sure that nothing will move on your new pose, in the Timeline view, select the frame corresponding to the pose, right-click and select Add Keyframe. You can also press [F6].
- In the Tools toolbar, enable the Onion Skin  feature.
- In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to set your second keyframe.



- In the Camera view, animate your character.

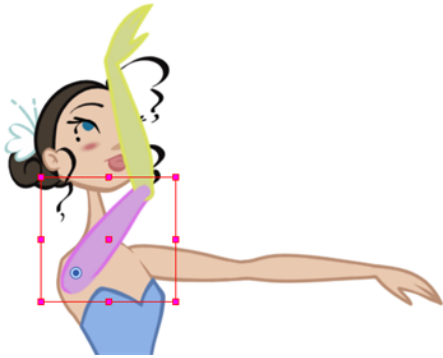


- Repeat this process until all your poses are done.

## Related Topics

- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position](#) on the next page
- [Animating using the Transform Tool](#) on page 1010
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation](#) on page 1035
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1043

# Selecting Layers to Animate or Position



When you are animating characters, it is important to understand how the Animate mode allows you to create keyframes on the current frame or to reposition the entire layer.

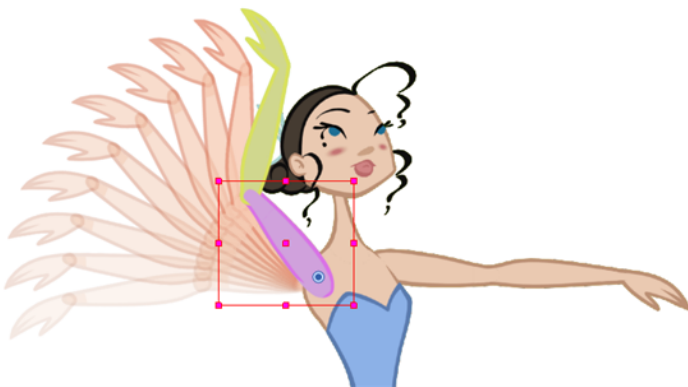
This topic is divided as follows:

- [Animate Mode below](#)
- [Selecting Drawing Layers using the Transform Tool on the facing page](#)

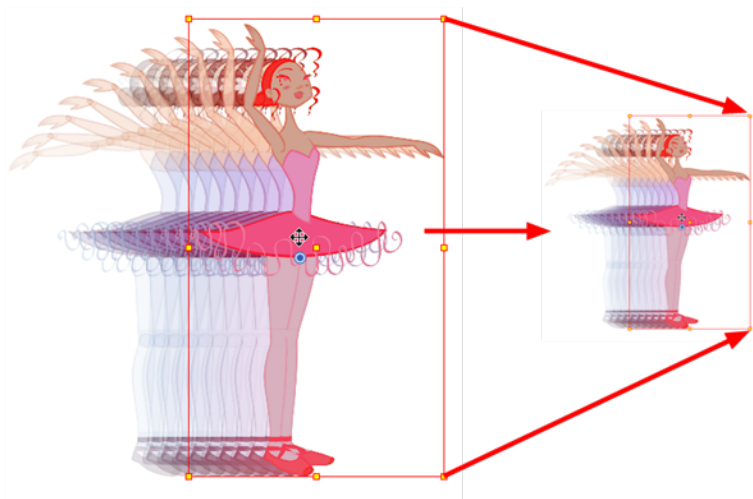
## Animate Mode

The Animate  button, in the Tools toolbar, toggles the keyframing option on or off.

When you enable the Animate mode, as soon as you move an element in your Camera view, a keyframe is positioned on the current frame in the Timeline view to indicate the new position.




When you disable the Animate mode, and you select and move an element, the entire animation in the layer will be offset at once.




This means that when you are animating your character, you must enable the Animate mode.

If you are scaling down your puppet to fit the scene composition and want to resize the entire animation, you must disable the Animate mode.

#### To enable and disable the Animate mode:

- ▶ In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Animate**  button. You can also enable and disable the Animate mode in the top menu under **Animation > Animate**.

## Selecting Drawing Layers using the Transform Tool

To manipulate your drawing layers in order to animate them, you must use the Transform  tool. The Select tool is used to modify the drawing strokes and not the actual drawing layer.




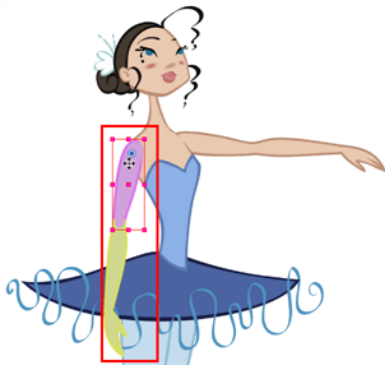
When selecting your drawing layers with the Transform tool, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode option is disabled in the Transform Tool Properties view. If this option is enabled it will limit the selection in the Camera view to pegs only.

This section is divided as follows:


- [Selecting an element in the Camera View using the Transform Tool](#) on the next page
- [Selecting a Layer in the Timeline View](#) on the next page
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position](#) on the previous page


#### To select using the Transform tool:

1. In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T]. You can also select the Transform tool in the top menu under **Animation > Tools > Transform**.
2. In the Camera view, select the element to animate.



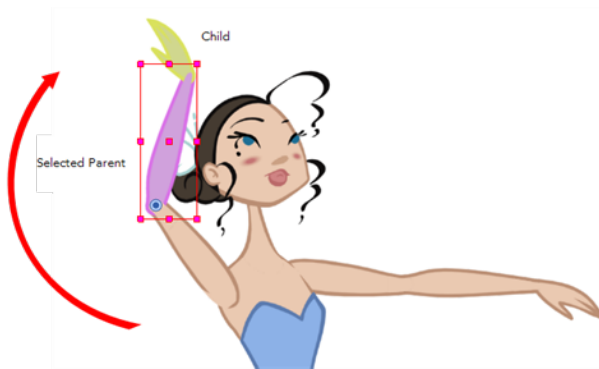
## Selecting an element in the Camera View using the Transform Tool

When you select an element in the Camera view using the Transform tool, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled in the Transform Tool Properties view, the element selected is the actual drawing layer

corresponding to the selected element. If you have a peg parented to that layer, you must either use the keyboard shortcuts to go up the hierarchy chain, select it in the Timeline view, or enable the Peg Selection Mode  option in the Transform Tool Properties view, this will limit the selection in the Camera view to pegs only.

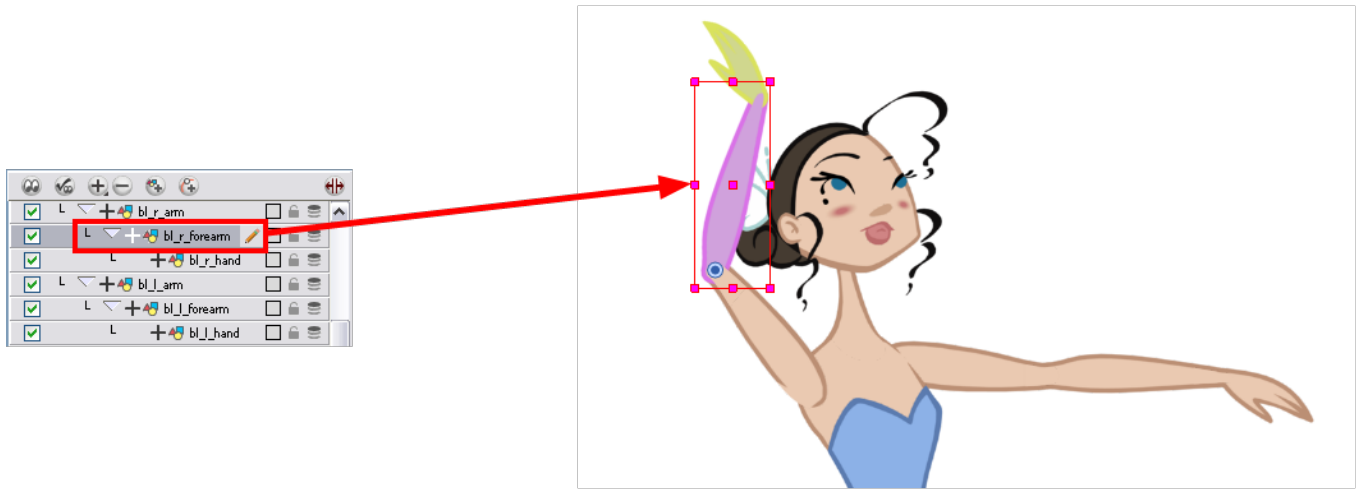


If the layer has child layers, they will also be highlighted.



## Selecting a Layer in the Timeline View

When you select a layer in the Timeline view, the corresponding element will be highlighted in the Camera view. If the selected layer has child layers, they will also be highlighted.




## Related Topics

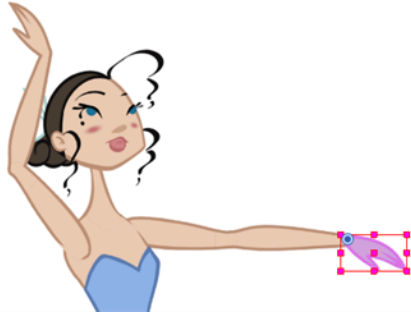
- [Navigating the Hierarchy on the next page](#)

# Navigating the Hierarchy

If you created a layer hierarchy when you built your puppet, you can use the keyboard shortcuts to travel up and down the parent-child chain. You can also travel between the children in a layer.

**To select the parent or child layer:**

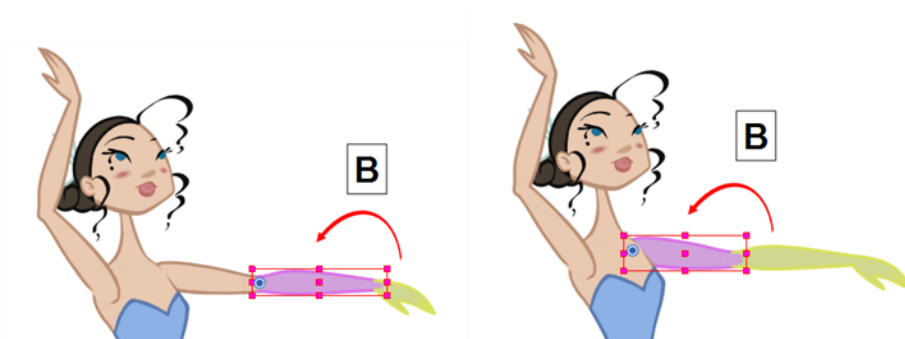
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.
2. In the Camera or Timeline view, select a layer attached to a hierarchy.




3. Select **Animation > Select Parent Skipping Effects** to select the parent layer and select **Animation > Select Child Skipping Effects** to select the child layer. The keyboard shortcuts are [B] and [Shift] + [B].



That these keyboard shortcuts will ignore any effect module encountered in the Network or Timeline view. Only drawing and peg modules will be considered. If you would like to navigate the hierarchy including the effect modules, you create a custom keyboard shortcut in the Preferences panel for the Select Parent Skipping Effects and Select Child Skipping Effects commands under the General category. Refer to [Customizing a Keyboard Shortcut on page 74](#) to learn how to create custom keyboard shortcuts.

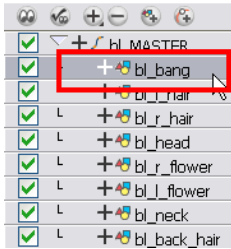


**To select the children layers:**

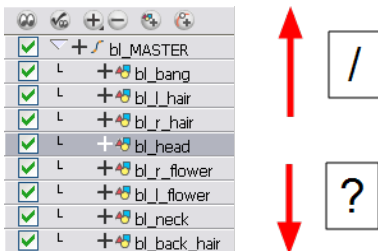
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool.



2. In the Camera or Timeline view, select a layer attached to a parent layer with several children or not parented at all.



3. Select **Animation > Select Previous Brother** to select the previous child layer and select **Animation > Select Next Brother** to select the next child layer. You can also select **Animation > Select Children** to select all child layers at once. The keyboard shortcuts are [/] and [?].

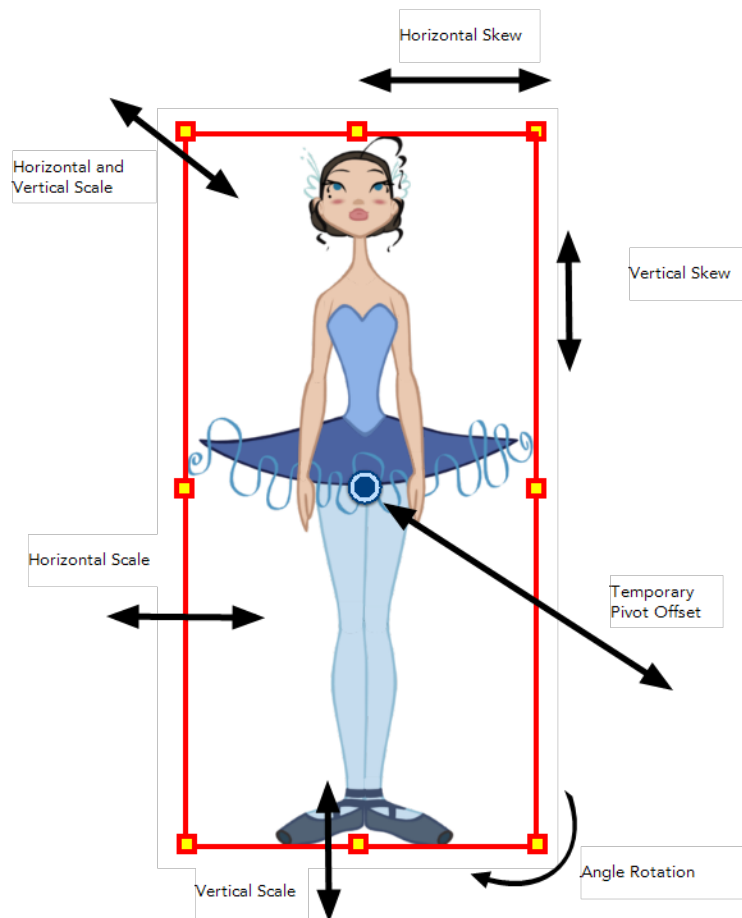


## Related Topics

- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position on page 1004](#)
- [Animating using the Transform Tool on the next page](#)
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)
- [Flipping Through Poses on page 1041](#)
- [Flipping Parts on page 1046](#)
- [Ordering Layers Over Time on page 1061](#)
- [Resetting a Transformation on page 1063](#)
- [Adding Pegs on page 1070](#)
- [Offsetting Part of an Animation on page 1072](#)


# Animating using the Transform Tool

The Transform tool is the main tool you use when working with a cut-out character. The Transform tool has many useful functions:

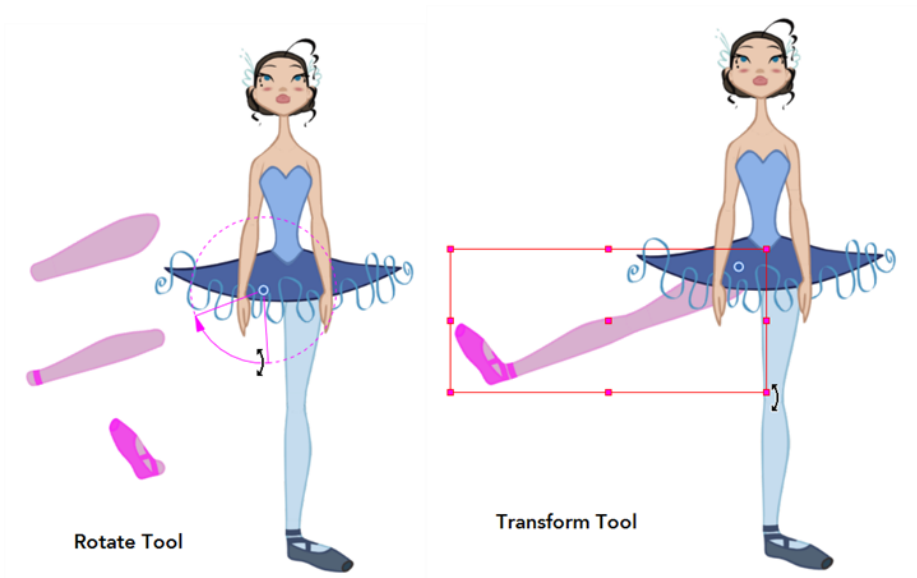


Using the individual Rotate, Translate, Scale and Skew tools is not recommended, as they move each piece from their own pivot point. They are compositing tools. The Transform tool will create a global selection, so when many parts are selected, the Transform tool will move it as one. The Transform tool is highly recommended for cut-out animation.



When animating with the Transform tool, make sure to select the right selection mode. In this example, make sure that the Peg Selection Mode  is disabled in the Tool Properties view or it will

limit the selection in the Camera view to pegs only.



If you have hierarchy connections in your cut-out character, the Transform tool will also be used as the Forward Kinematics equivalent.


The Transform tool can be used on any kind of rigging.

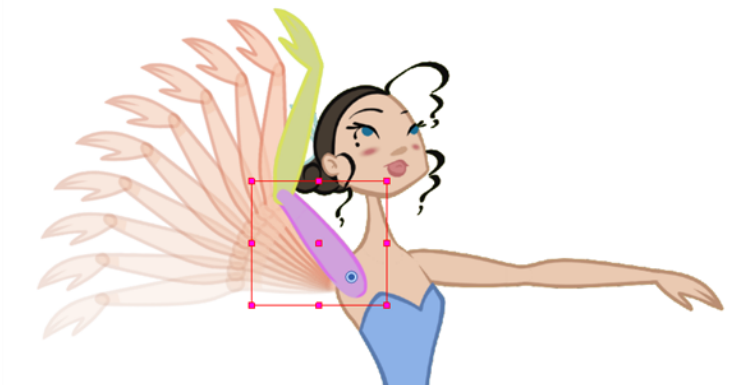
When many parts are selected with the Transform tool, the first selected part's pivot will be used as the global selection's pivot. This pivot can be moved temporarily for the animation. When you offset the pivot, the permanent pivot is displayed as a ghost.



The interpolation of your animation poses is always calculated from the permanent pivot.

### To use the Transform tool:

1. In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Camera view, select the element to animate and move it.



3. In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to set your next position.



4. In the Camera view, animate the character.

## Related Topics

- [Positioning an Element using the Transform Tool](#) on page 575

# Animating using Inverse Kinematics



The Inverse Kinematics tool (IK) allows you to pull on your character's extremities, such as the hands and feet, and have the rest of the body follow.

The Inverse Kinematics tool will animate from an extremity and make the rest of the hierarchy follow (called the IK chain). It can be used on any piece connected in a hierarchy. However, you do not have to use IK every time that you have a hierarchy rig. This tool is useful when you want to bend a character's knees, make him sit and move the rest of the body, etc.

Inverse Kinematics helps a new animator to understand how a puppet should move. It will also help any animator easily create difficult moves.

Inverse Kinematics will not work on basic rigs without hierarchy because there is no hierarchy chain present, IK only works on hierarchy parenting when the pivots are properly set.

When animating a hierarchy puppet, an animator will use the Transform and Inverse Kinematics tools.

## Topics Covered

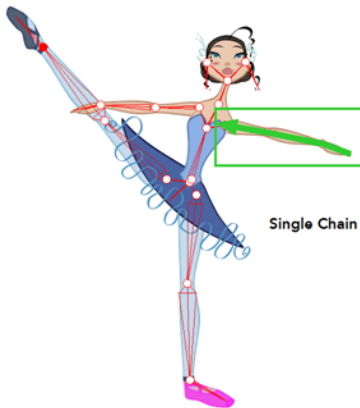
- [IK Hierarchy Chains](#) on the next page
- [Where to Start with Inverse Kinematics?](#) on page 1015
- [Inverse Kinematics Tool Properties](#) on page 1017
- [Setting up the Character to use IK](#) on page 1021
- [Nails](#) on page 1025
- [Minimum and Maximum Angle](#) on page 1026
- [IK Keyframes](#) on page 1028
- [When to use the Inverse Kinematics Tool](#) on page 1029

# IK Hierarchy Chains

Before we go any further, a word about IK chains. There are three types of chains:

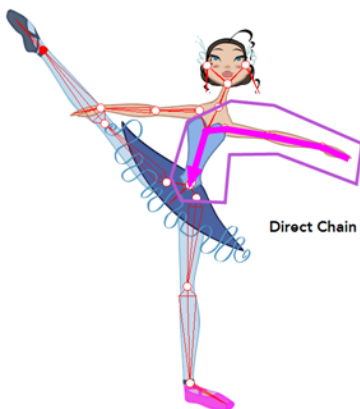
- [Single Chains](#) below
- [Direct Chains](#) below
- [All Chains](#)

## Single Chains



These are the most basic of chains. A single chain is a straight line with no secondary chain attached.

## Direct Chains



These link directly to the core of the character rigging. A direct chain is a single chain which goes directly to the core.

## All Chains



All chains are attached and move simultaneously when one part is moved.

### Related Topics


- [Where to Start with Inverse Kinematics? below](#)
- [Inverse Kinematics Tool Properties on page 1017](#)
- [Setting up the Character to use IK on page 1021](#)
- [Nails on page 1025](#)
- [Minimum and Maximum Angle on page 1026](#)
- [IK Keyframes on page 1028](#)
- [When to use the Inverse Kinematics Tool on page 1029](#)

## Where to Start with Inverse Kinematics?

This section explains the basics of the Inverse Kinematics tool. IK works best when you lock a part of the character to the spot, such as a foot on the floor, then select the entire body or another extremity and move it.

To lock a part in place, you use the IK Nail option.

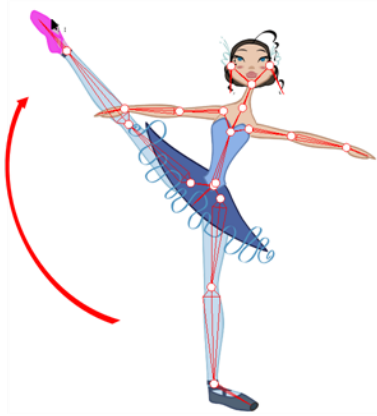
**To use the Inverse Kinematics tool:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Camera view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on a part of the body.

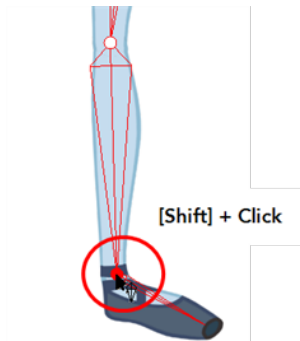
The entire IK skeleton appears.



3. Click on a part of the body and pull on it to move the character.



4. Hold down the [Shift] key and click on the pivot belonging to the part you want to lock in place.



5. Click on another part of the character and pull on it. You can [Shift] + click on a bone to lock the orientation of the bone.

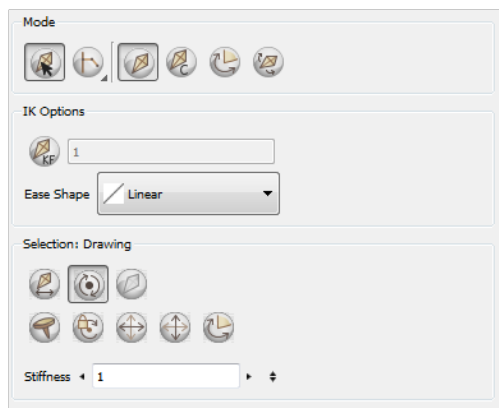
## Related Topics

- [IK Hierarchy Chains](#) on page 1014
- [Inverse Kinematics Tool Properties](#) on the facing page
- [Setting up the Character to use IK](#) on page 1021
- [Nails](#) on page 1025
- [Minimum and Maximum Angle](#) on page 1026



- [IK Keyframes](#) on page 1028
- [When to use the Inverse Kinematics Tool](#) on page 1029







## Inverse Kinematics Tool Properties



- [IK Modes](#) below
- [IK Tool Options](#) on the next page
- [Selection](#) on page 1019

## IK Modes

The IK tool has six different modes that can be found in the Tool Properties view:

-  [Bone Selection Mode](#) below
-  [Chain Menu](#) on the next page
-  [IK Manipulation Mode](#) on the next page
-  [Apply IK Constraints Mode](#) on the next page
-  [Edit Min/Max Angle Mode](#) on the next page
-  [Bone Editing Mode](#) on the next page

## Bone Selection Mode

The Bone Selection mode is enabled by default. This option allows you to click on any bone in your character and move it without having to select the actual layer.

Once you disable this option, you can not move any bone except the selected one. This allows you to grab and rotate the selected part from many angles and location. You can click completely outside the character and move the pieces.

## Chain Menu

The Chain drop-down menu allows you to choose from three types of chain:

- **Simple Chain Mode:** this is the default mode and will only allow for the movement of parts attached to a single chain up to the point of intersection. A single chain is a straight line with no secondary chain attached
- **Direct Chain Mode:** this mode will allow the movement of parts up a simple secondary chain to a principle chain as long as translation movement is possible (the principle chain is attached to its own peg), but will ignore all secondary chains. A direct chain is a single chain which goes directly to the core.
- **All Chain Mode:** this mode allows for the movement of all parts attached to all chains in the IK skeleton. All chains are attached and move simultaneously when one part is moved.

## IK Manipulation Mode

The IK Manipulation mode is the main working mode for the Inverse Kinematics tool. Enable this mode when you want to animate and position your puppet.

[Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on a body part to select it. You do not need to select a part to be able to move it.

## Apply IK Constraints Mode

The Apply IK Constraints mode is used to correct a part's position on a series of frames. For example, if the character's foot seems to be sinking into the floor, you can correct its position and angle over a series of frames using the IK Constrains mode.

## Edit Min/Max Angle Mode

The Edit Min/Max Angle mode is used to set a rotation restriction on some of your parts, such as elbows, knees and ankles.

## Bone Editing Mode

The Bone Editing mode is used to fix the bone orientation on extremities such as hands and feet.

## IK Tool Options

The IK tool has two special options that can be found in the Tool Properties view:

- [IK Keyframe below](#)
- [Ease Shape on the facing page](#)

## IK Keyframe

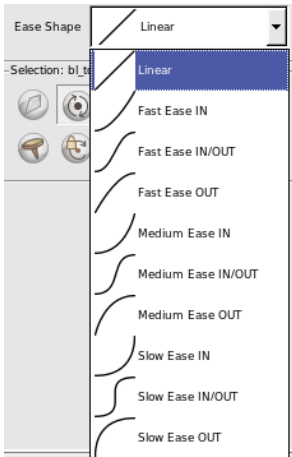
The IK keyframe option is used in combination with the IK Constraints mode. It determines the starting frame of the constraint you will apply.

## Ease Shape



While you animate with the IK tool, prior to doing a movement you can set an easing preset so that your motion is not so mechanical.



Before moving your part, select a preset from the list in the drop-down menu.





If you select a new preset in the list and move the part again on the same keyframe, the easing will be automatically updated.

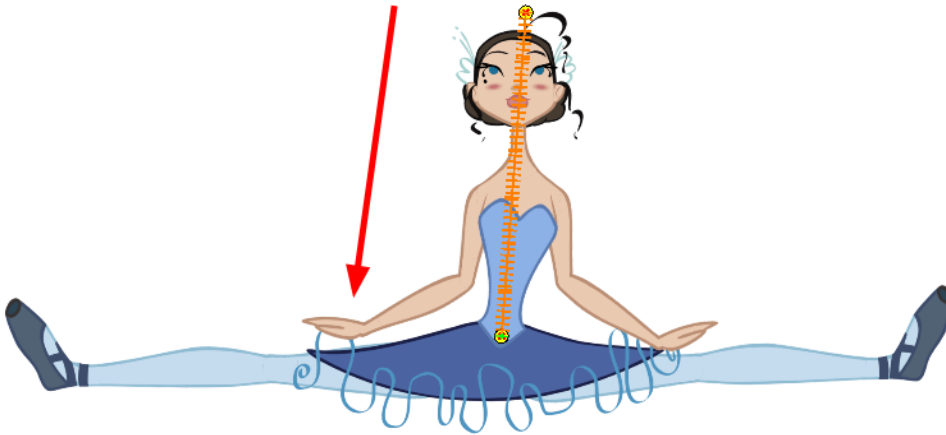
## Selection

With the IK tool, you are able to do the following that can be found in the Tool Properties view:

-  [Enable Translation If Top of Hierarchy on the next page](#)
-  [Enable Rotation on the next page](#)

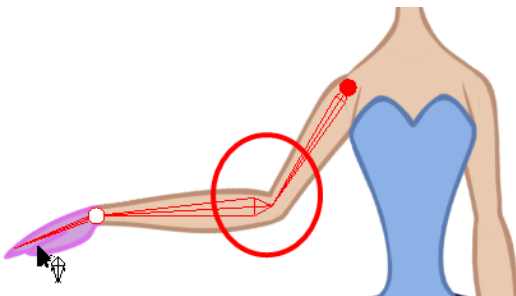
-  [Exclude From IK below](#)
-  [IK Nails on the facing page](#)
- [Stiffness on the facing page](#)

## Enable Translation If Top of Hierarchy



This option is mainly used on master pegs. You will need to use the Enable Translation If Top of Hierarchy option when you have a situation such as this; if you want your character to do a perfect split (sitting down with the legs at right angles to the body or at the sides with the trunk facing forwards), then the hip will need to translate and not just rotate on the spot. And since IK is all about rotation, you would select the hip layer and enable the translation option.

## Enable Rotation



The Enable Rotation option is enabled by default. If you disable this option, the selected part will not be able to rotate anymore and will remain in the same position all the time. You can use this option to simulate an arm in a plaster cast.

When you enable this option, the pivot will disappear but you will still see the bone.

## Exclude From IK

You can use the Exclude From IK option when you want certain parts of your puppet such as the eyes and mouth to be excluded from the IK influence.

## IK Nails



IK nails are used to temporarily fix a part of a character to a spot either in translation or rotation, or to enable maximum and minimum angle usage.

## Stiffness

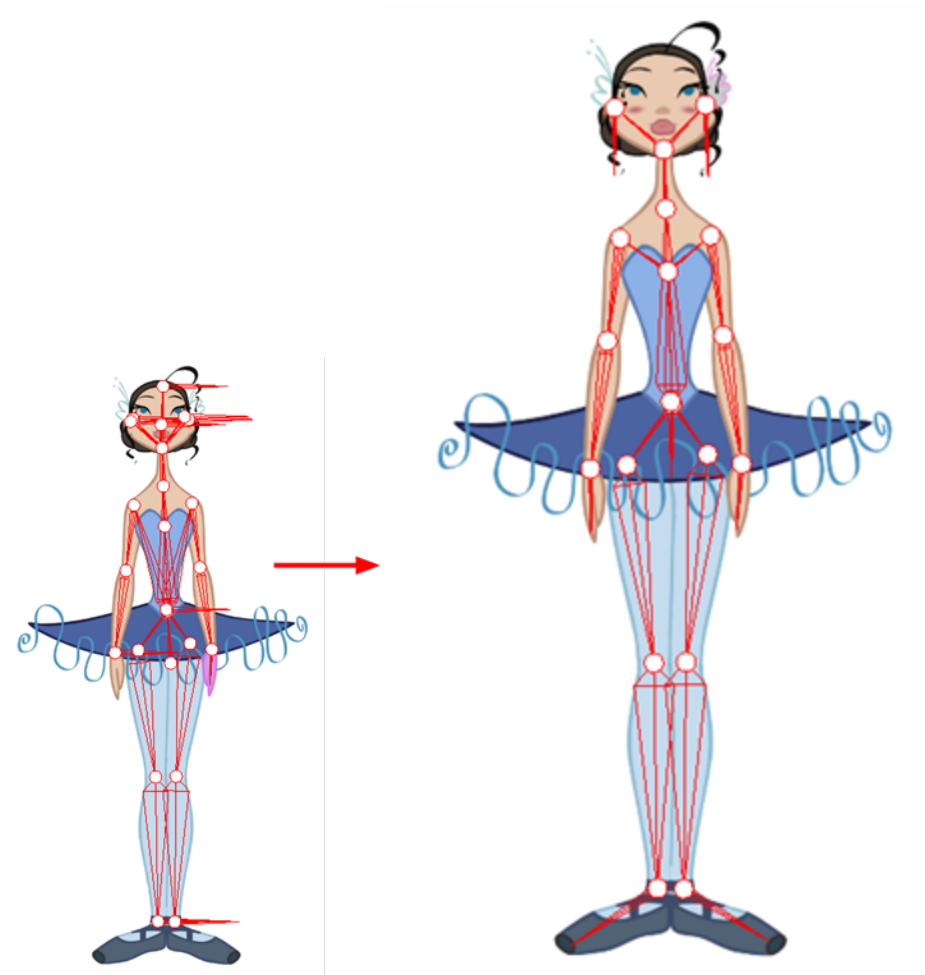
When a certain part is selected, you can apply a stiffness value to it. A different stiffness value can be set to each body part individually. The greater the Stiffness value applied, the more difficult it is to make that part rotate, thereby rendering it stiff while the other parts continue to move freely on their joints.

## Related Topics

- [Nails on page 1025](#)
- [IK Hierarchy Chains on page 1014](#)
- [Minimum and Maximum Angle on page 1026](#)

## Setting up the Character to use IK

The first time you display the character's skeleton, you will notice a series of bones on the extremities which are out of place, and there may also be some elements that you would like to exclude from the Inverse Kinematics chain.



You should setup the skeleton before starting your animation. There are three things to do to setup the character:

- [Connecting any Hierarchy Chain below](#)
- [Excluding Extra Elements from IK on the facing page](#)
- [Setting Up the Bones for the Extremities on the facing page](#)

## Connecting any Hierarchy Chain

Before fixing any bones, or excluding layers from the IK, it is important that you make sure all the elements you want to be parented in a chain are setup.



You do not need to have a chain all over the body. It can be on the legs and arms. If the body is not completely rigged in hierarchy, the skeleton will look a bit more messy, but the IK tool will still work without any problem.

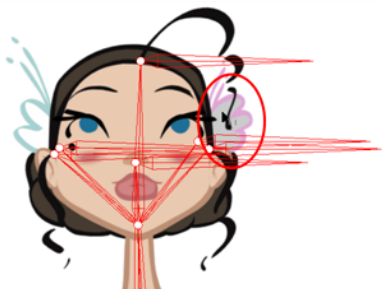
## Excluding Extra Elements from IK




When working with the IK tool, you will probably want to move the main parts around, but not necessarily the small ones such as the nose or ears. In this case, you can select some elements on your character and exclude them from the skeleton.

**To exclude elements from the skeleton:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Tool Properties view, make sure the **IK Manipulation Mode**  is enabled.
3. In the Camera view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the part to exclude from the IK.



4. In the Tool Properties view, click on the **Exclude from IK**  button.





5. Repeat the process for every part to be excluded from the IK.

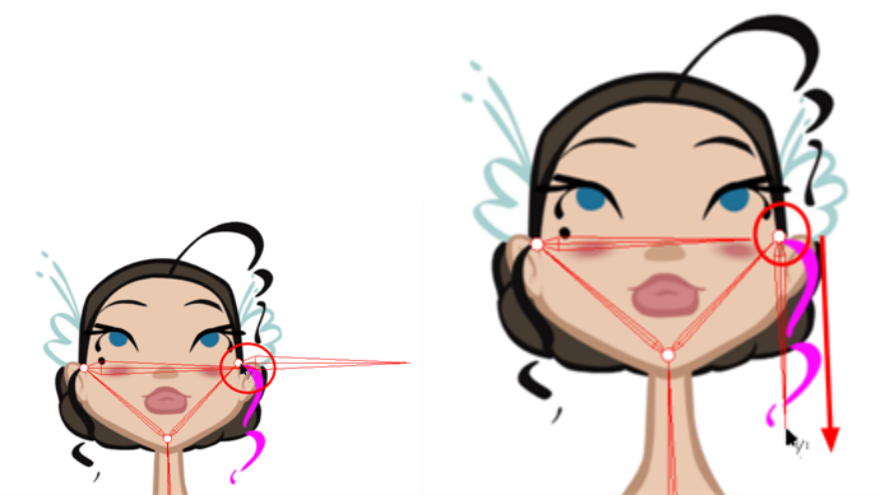
## Setting Up the Bones for the Extremities

Once you remove the extra elements from your skeleton, you will want to set the bone orientation for the extremity parts. By default they are oriented horizontally towards the right. This orientation often works for the

feet but not necessarily for the hair or hands,

**To set the bone orientation:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Tool Properties view, enable the **Bone Editing**  mode.
3. In the Camera view, click on the pivot belonging to the part you whose bone you want to reposition, then pull the pivot in the direction you want the bone to be.

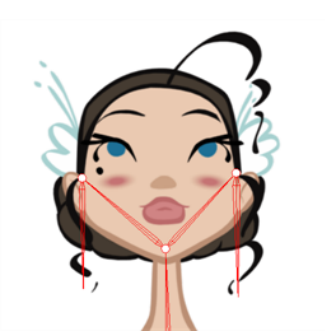


4. Repeat this process for each bone you want to position.



This command will only work on the extremities.

---



**Related Topics**

- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)



# Nails

Using the Inverse Kinematics tool, if you pull a hand the system will animate all of the character's parts included in the hierarchy chain; the torso, the hips and the legs, depending on your rig. Often, you will only want to animate part of a character, such as the arm and not the whole body. To do so, you need to make use of IK constraints such as IK nails that are used to temporarily cut or constrain the chain. IK nails can be used to cut an IK chain or to block a part on the spot. For example, you can fix a character's feet to the ground when he walks.

There are different types of constraints that can be placed on the chain:

-  IK Nail

Blocks the X, Y and Z positions.

-  Hold Orientation


Blocks the angle

-  Hold X

Blocks only the X position



-  Hold Y

Blocks only the Y position

-  Enable Maximum and Minimum angle

Sets limitations on the angle parameter to prevent the puppet from bending too far.

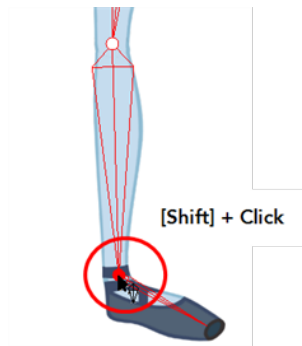
## To set an IK nail:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Tool Properties view, make sure the **IK Manipulation Mode**  is enabled.
3. In the Camera view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the part to set a nail on.
4. In the Tool Properties view, click on the type of nail you will use.



- You can also hold down the [Shift] key and click on any part's pivot to set a regular nail on it without having to select it.
- You can hold down the [Shift] key and click on the bone to set a Hold Orientation nail.

- ▶ You can select the nail type in the top menu by selecting **Animation > IK Constraints > the desired nail**.

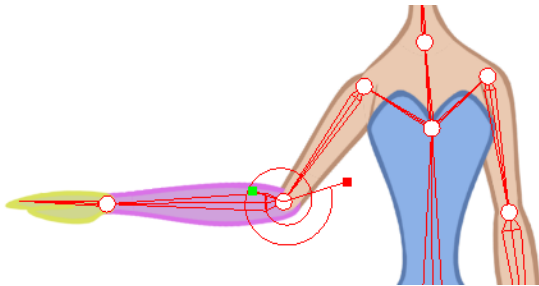


- ▶ You can remove the nail at anytime using the same technique you did to place the nail. It will not affect the animation.
5. To remove every nail except the Enable Min/Max Angle ones, in the top menu select **Animation > IK Constraints > Remove All Constraints**.

## Related Topics

- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)

# Minimum and Maximum Angle



Animate Pro allows you to set a minimum and maximum angle constraint on certain joints such as the knees or elbows.

When using the Inverse Kinematics tool or even the Forward Kinematics (Transform Tool), it is possible that some joints will bend in the wrong direction.





It is recommended to use the minimum and maximum angles only if the character does not change view. For example, if a character is facing the camera and has some angle limitations enabled, it could be problematic if the character switches to side or quarter view since the joints won't bend the same way.

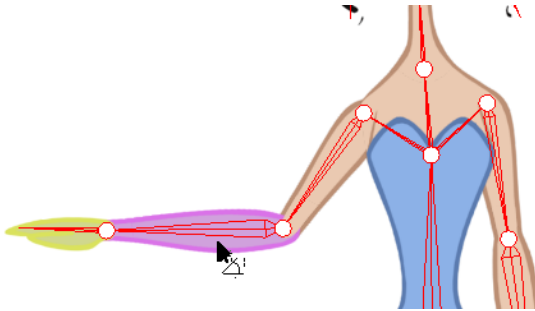
You can use the minimum and maximum angle constraints if your character's views are in different templates or layers. If the character's views are in the same layers, you are better off not using the angle constraints.


---

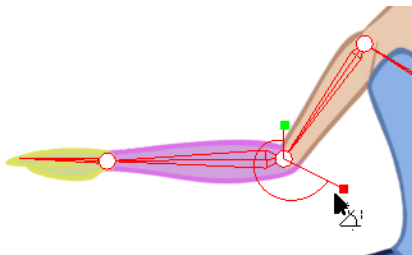
If you plan to animate a lot with the Inverse Kinematics tool, it is a good idea to try the angle constraints. It depends on your taste. The angle constraints can be set by the character builder or by the animator in some particular scenes where it is needed.


### To set the minimum and maximum angles:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Tool Properties view, in the Mode section, make sure the **Edit Min/Max Angle Mode**  is enabled.
3. In the Camera view, [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) on the piece to set the minimum and maximum angle for.



4. In the Tool Properties view, in the Selection section, click on the **Enable Min/Max Angle**  option.
5. In the Camera view, rotate the Minimum and Maximum handles to set the angle.



6. Test your angles using the **IK Manipulation Mode** .
7. For additional control over your Min/Max Angle go to **Edit > Preferences > Camera > Inverse Kinematics** (Windows) or **Animate Pro > Preferences > Camera > Inverse Kinematics** (Mac OS X) and take a look at the Min/Max Angle Constraint Wight. Although the maximum value goes up to 1.0, in a production setting, the most practical value would be closer to 0.1. This value acts similar to the Stiffness setting in the Tool Properties view. The greater the value, the more difficult it becomes to approach the minimum and maximum values.

### Related Topics

- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)

# IK Keyframes




When you animate a walking character and lock the feet down, the locked position will be perfect on the key poses. However, when you use the Motion keyframes to auto in-between the animation, you will notice a movement of feet. This motion is caused by the in-betweening of the rotations.

The nail holds in place the body part on the keyframe, but it will not hold it for the whole duration between keyframes.



If you place a nail on the shoulder to move just the arm, you do not necessarily want to keep the shoulder in the same place until the next key pose. You will probably want the shoulder, or any other part that is nailed, to have a slight, natural motion following the main body action. Of course, this is not the case when you fix a hand or a foot on the spot. If you have a fixed hand or foot, you will probably want it to stay exactly where you placed it. That is why you can apply an IK constraint on a frame range and on selected body parts.

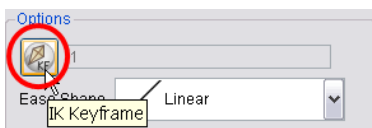
To fix the part on the same spot requires an angle (rotation) correction on the parts that are moving too much. For example, to fix a foot that is moving too much, you will correct the angles on the foot, leg and thigh. To fix a hand, you will correct the angles on the hand, forearm and upper arm.

## To apply IK constraints on a frame range:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Inverse Kinematics**  tool or press [Alt] + [8].
2. In the Camera view, click on the part you want to apply the constraint to.
3. In the Timeline view, set the cursor to the first frame where you want to start applying the constraint.



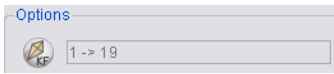
4. In the Tool Properties view, enable the **Apply IK Constraints Mode** .
5. In the Tool Properties view, click on the **IK Keyframe**  button to enter the first frame number.



6. In the Timeline view, move the playhead to the last frame where you want to apply the constraint.



The IK Keyframe field should now look like this:



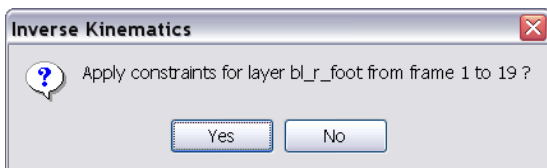
- In the Camera view, set a nail at the top of the limb you are correcting. In the case of a foot, set the nail on the thigh by holding down the [Shift] key and clicking in its pivot.



- In the Tool Properties view, select the type of constraint you want to apply to your piece. The most common case is a combination of the regular **Nail**  and **Hold Orientation**  options.

- In the Camera view, click on the bone of the part you want to apply a constraint to.

A warning message appears and requesting you to confirm that you want to add your constraint on that particular piece and for that frame duration.



- Click on the OK button.

Your constraint are now be applied.

## Related Topics

- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)

# When to use the Inverse Kinematics Tool

This summarizes what you have read so far.

Animate Pro provides different tools with which to animate cut-out characters and trajectories. The two main tools used to animate characters are the Transform and the Inverse Kinematics tools.

Here, we will compare the usage of these tools and explain the Inverse Kinematics philosophy.

- **The Transform Tool**

The Transform tool is also known as Forward Kinematics. This is the main tool to use for cut-out animation. The Transform tool rotates, scales, moves and skews all the elements selected as one global element.

Forward Kinematics means that the element will be animated from the parent element down to the last child as a single piece. In other words, if the shoulder is animated, the arm, forearm and hand will follow as a complete arm drawing.

- **The Inverse Kinematics Tool**

The Inverse Kinematics tool (IK) is an assistance tool. This tool will help you to achieve complex motions such as sitting down or knee bending. The Inverse Kinematics tool will move and rotate every selected element as a chain.

Inverse Kinematics means that the element will be animated from the child element up to the parent element. In other words, if the hand is animated, the forearm, arm and shoulder will follow the hand in a fairly natural way in terms of the movement, rotation and bending.

## Inverse Kinematics in Toon Boom Animate Pro

In most 3D animation software, Inverse Kinematics is implemented as a skeleton system. Animate Pro uses the rigging hierarchy already created in the Timeline view, so there is no need to place bones in the character. Inverse Kinematics in Animate Pro uses the connection between each of the parts' pivots.

## IK Tool and Rigging

The IK tool can not be used on every type of cut-out character. It depends on the way the pieces and parts are attached to one another. In other words, it depends on the rigging type.

There are several ways to rig a puppet. These are the three main rigging techniques:

- The Basic Rig technique is the simplest.
  - There are no connections between the parts.
  - They are free to move, rotate and scale independently one from the other.
  - The Inverse Kinematics tool CANNOT be used on this type of rigging.
- The Hierarchy Rig technique is the most complex.
  - All the parts are connected one to the other.
  - As they move, rotate and scale, they will influence all the other parts.
  - The Inverse Kinematics tool can be used on this type of rigging.
- The Mix Rig technique is the best of the Basic and Hierarchy rig.

- Some parts are independent such as the torso.
- Some parts are setup into a hierarchy such as the arms and legs
- The Inverse Kinematics tool can be used on this type of rigging.

## Animating with the Tools

Puppets are animated by using a combination of Transform and Inverse Kinematics tools.

You will mainly use the Transform tool (Forward Kinematics) as it has all the main motions; rotate, scale, skew, move and select. You can also control the exact position of the parts while using the Transform tool. As well, the Transform tool creates a temporary global pivot on the selection that can be moved around for the animation purpose.

To complete complex motions, such as bending the knees while keeping the feet on the ground, you will use Inverse Kinematics tool as an assistance tool. By adding IK Constraints (Nails), it is possible to lock the feet or any other parts on the spot and move the rest of the body, which will react to the constraints.

## Inverse Kinematics Philosophy

It is important to keep in mind that the Inverse Kinematics tool is an assistance tool. You won't use it to animate all the time.

Also, the Inverse Kinematics tool can be used to do the character's posing faster. Posing is a crucial part in the animation process. The IK tool can be used to pose the character more naturally, depending on your own preferences.

An IK Nail can be added anywhere on the character to animate only a small part of the hierarchy chain, such as an arm or a portion of the arm.

## Tips and Tricks for Inverse Kinematics

Here are some tips and tricks to help you to use the Inverse Kinematics tool.

- **IK on Mix Rigging**

The Inverse Kinematics tool can be used on a full puppet's body even if it is connected as a mix rigging, meaning some parts are rigged in a hierarchy and others not. For example, you can add IK Nails on the puppet's feet, select the full body master peg and move the character as if it was connected in a full hierarchy rig. This technique works on most of the mix rigging.

- **IK Constraints**

It is important to remember that you can add and remove IK Constraints (Nails, Hold Orientation, etc.) at anytime during the animation. They hold a certain part on the spot while you animate the rest of the body. Because they are not constricting one part to another object, you can add or remove them without affecting any of the animation you have already done.

- **Useful Shortcuts**

- While using the IK tool, you can [Ctrl] + click (Windows) or [⌘] + click (Mac OS X) to select any part.
- You can hold down the [Alt] key to rotate the selected part without affecting the IK chain.
- You can press the [Shift] key and click in a part's pivot to add or remove an IK Nail.
- You can press the [Shift] key and click on a bone to add or remove and Hold Orientation constraint.

## Related Topics

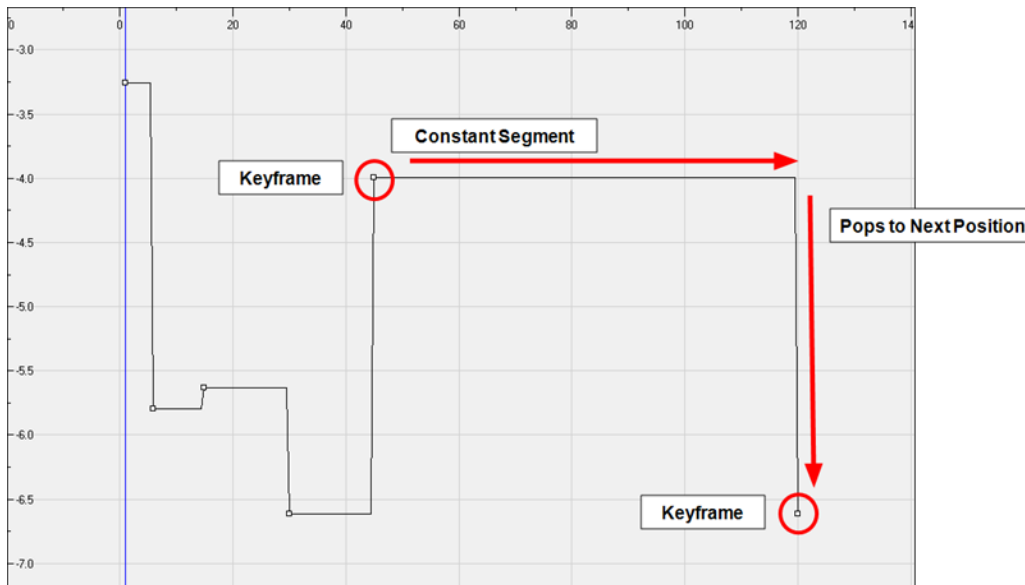
- [Where to Start with Inverse Kinematics? on page 1015](#)



# Animating in Stop-motion

To start animating your character, start by doing your key poses. In fact, most of your time will be spent doing your key poses. It is better to work with Stop-motion keyframes as Animate Pro will not automatically create the interpolation between your keyframes.

When using Stop-motion keyframes, also known as *step* keyframes, the segment between two keyframes is constant. There is no animation generated by the computer between the poses. The drawing will remain in position until the next keyframe, then pops to its new position.




## Creating a Stop-motion Keyframe

You can create a stop-motion keyframe in several different ways. You can have Animate Pro create it automatically, transform a motion keyframe into a stop-motion keyframe, or even switch your preferences to get Animate Pro to always create stop-motion keyframes by default.

To automatically create stop-motion keyframes:

1. In the top menu, make sure that the **Animation > Stop-Motion Keyframe** option is enabled.
2. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to add a keyframe.

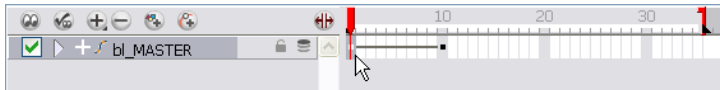


3. Right-click on the selection and select **Add Keyframe** or press [F6]. You can also click on the **Add Keyframe**  button available in the Timeline View toolbar.
  - In the Camera view, if the Animate mode is enabled, as soon as you move the selected element, a keyframe is automatically created on the current frame.



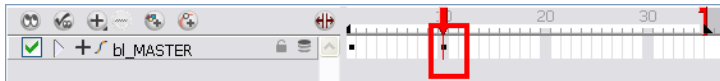
**To convert a Motion keyframe into a Stop-Motion keyframe:**

1. In the Timeline view, select the motion keyframes to convert into stop-motion keyframes or press [S].



2. Right-click on the selection and select **Set Stop-Motion Keyframes** or press [Ctrl] + [L] (Windows) or [⌘] + [L] (Mac OS X). You can also click on the **Stop-motion Keyframe**  button available in the Timeline

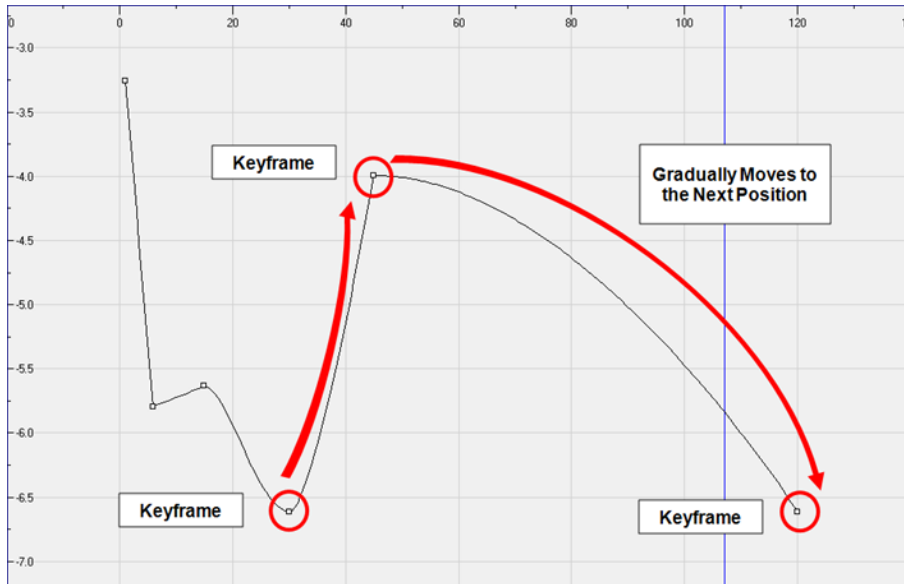
View toolbar.

**Related Topics**

- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation](#) on the facing page

# Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation

After you have created the key poses you can animate the in-between poses yourself or let Animate Pro do it using motion keyframes. When you use motion keyframes, your drawings will gradually move to the next position instead of staying on the spot until the next keyframe.

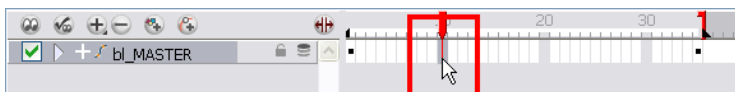



## Creating a Motion Keyframe

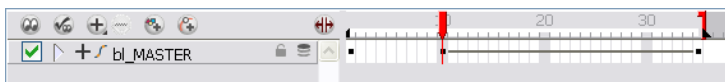
You can create a motion keyframe in several different ways. You can have Animate Pro create it automatically, transform a stop-motion keyframe into a motion keyframe and even switch your preferences to get Animate Pro to always create Motion keyframes by default.

**To automatically create motion keyframes:**

1. In the top menu, select **Animation > Motion Keyframe**. Make sure the option is disabled.
2. In the Timeline view, select the cell where you want to add a keyframe.

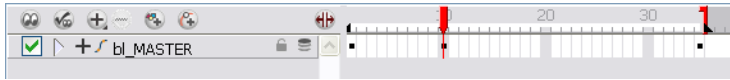


3. Right-click on the selection and select **Add Keyframe** or press [F6]. You can also click on the **Add Keyframe**  button available in the Timeline View toolbar.
  - In the Camera view, if the Animate mode is enabled, as soon as you move the selected element, a keyframe will be automatically created on the current frame.



**To convert a stop-motion keyframe into a motion keyframe:**

1. In the Timeline view, select the stop-motion keyframes to convert into motion keyframes.



2. Right-click on the selection and select **Set Motion Keyframes** or press [Ctrl] + [K] (Windows) or [⌘] + [K] (Mac OS X). You can also click on the **Motion Keyframe**  button available in the Timeline View toolbar



## Related Topics

- [Animating in Stop-motion on page 1033](#)

## Adjusting the Ease



To add ease in and ease out on your motion paths, you can display the function curve and modify the Bezier or Ease curve. To apply an ease to multiple functions and keyframes, you can use the Set Ease for Multiple Parameters feature and set the amount which you want.

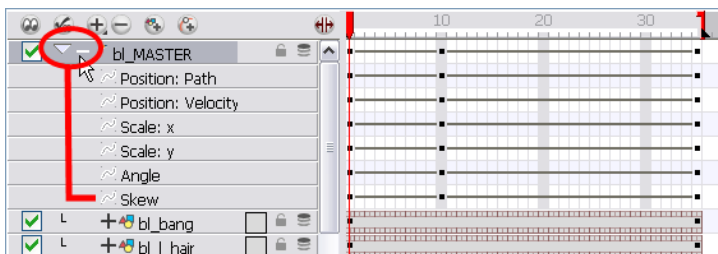
The Velocity, or ease, is used on motion keyframes. The Velocity has to be adjusted directly on the function curve in either the Function view or the Function editor. When a keyframe is selected, easing values appear in the right handle and left handle fields, as well as Bezier handle or Ease wheel controls on each selected keyframe. Pull on them to adjust the ease in and ease out, or type values in the fields.

- [Adjusting the Velocity in the Function View on the facing page](#)
- [Adjusting the Velocity on Multiple Elements Concurrently on page 1038](#)

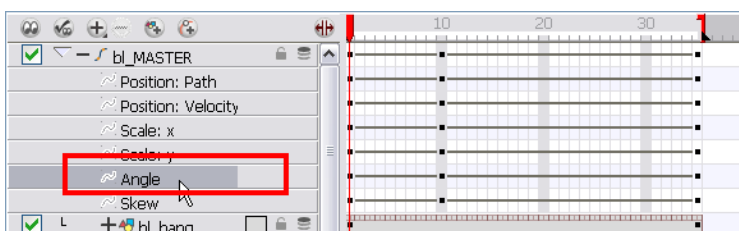
## Adjusting the Velocity in the Function View

To adjust the velocity in the Function view:

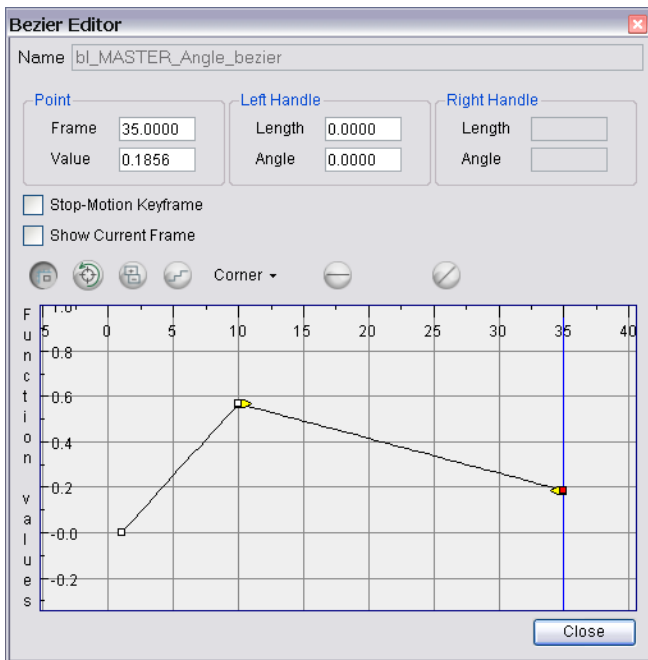
1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Expand Function**  $\oplus$  button to display all of the layer's functions.



2. Double-click on the desired function.

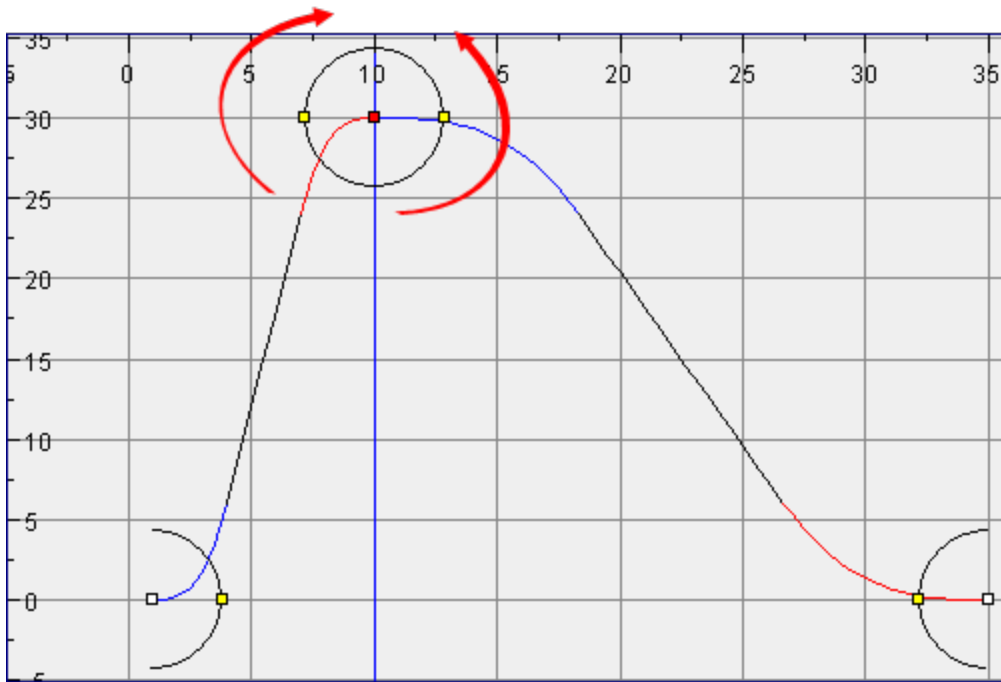
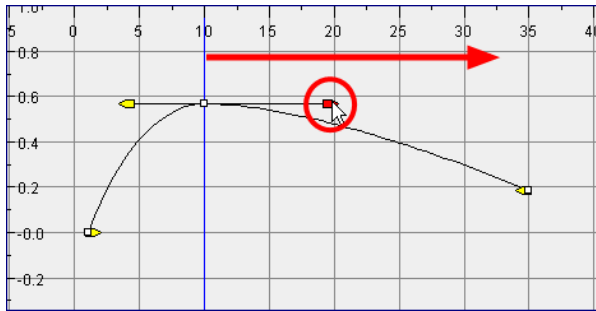


The Function Editor opens.



Note that the Function Editor will not be displayed if the function does not already exist.

3. Select a keyframe and pull on its Bezier handles or Ease wheel to adjust the velocity.

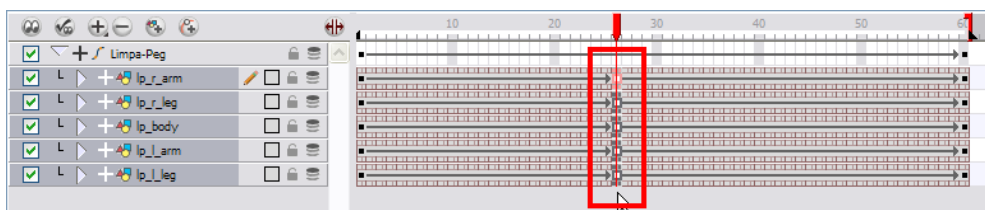


## Adjusting the Velocity on Multiple Elements Concurrently

If you have several functions you would like to adjust the velocity for at the same time, such as the hand, forearm and arm of a cut-out character, you can use the Set Ease for Multiple Parameters dialog box. It allows you to apply the same velocity parameters to all the selected keyframes in one frame.


**To set an ease for multiple parameters:**

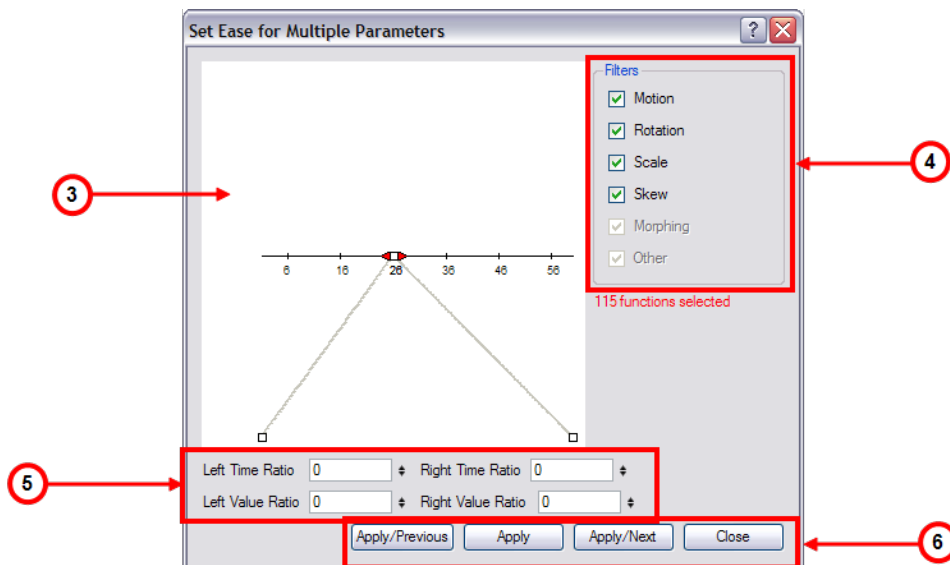
1. In the Timeline view, select a keyframe from one or many layers.





Only the first keyframe selected on a given layer will be considered when using the Set Ease For Multiple Parameter function. If many keyframes are selected on the same layer, the ease values will only be applied to the first one, the rest will be ignored.

- In the Timeline view, right-click and select **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters**. In the Timeline View toolbar, you can click on the **Set Ease For Multiple Parameters**  button. If the button is not in the Timeline View menu by default, you can add it through the Toolbar Manager (Customize). The Set Ease For Multiple Parameters dialog box opens.



- In the graph interface, pull on the Bezier handle to adjust the velocity for all the selected functions.



- If you want to apply these easing parameters to a certain type of function only, such as Rotation or Scale, in the Filters section, disable the function types you do not want to affect.
  - ▶ **Motion:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected Position X, Position Y, Position Z and 3D Path functions
  - ▶ **Rotation:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected Angle functions.
  - ▶ **Scale:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected Scale functions.
  - ▶ **Skew:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected Skew functions.
  - ▶ **Morphing:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to the selected Morphing Velocity functions. Note that it applied to the Morphing velocity function found in the Layer Properties dialog and not to the basic morphing ease in the Tool Properties view.

- **Other:** If this option is enabled, the easing parameters will be applied to all the other selected functions such as all functions created to animate effect parameters.
5. You can also adjust the easing by typing values in the Time Ratio and Value Ratio fields. The values are calculated in percentage.
- In the Left Time Ratio and Right Time Ratio fields, type the percentage value corresponding to the length of time you want the easing to last for. The value must be between 0% and 100%.
  - In the Left Value Ratio and Right Value Ratio fields, type the percentage value of how strong you want the easing out to be. The value must be between 0% and 100%.
  - If your Time Ratio and Value Ratio values are equal, you will have a linear motion.
6. Once done, click on one of the following button:
- **Apply:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes.
  - **Apply/Previous:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes and then selects the previous keyframe in the timeline.
  - **Apply/Next:** This will apply the easing parameters to the selected keyframes and then selects the next keyframe in the timeline.
  - **Close:** This closes the dialog box. If you did not apply the modifications, they will be cancelled.

## Related Topics

- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation on page 1035](#)



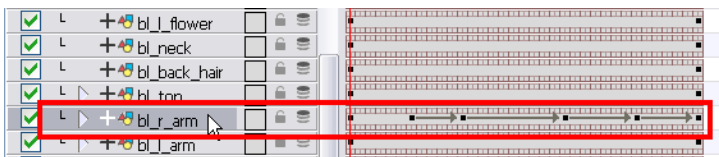
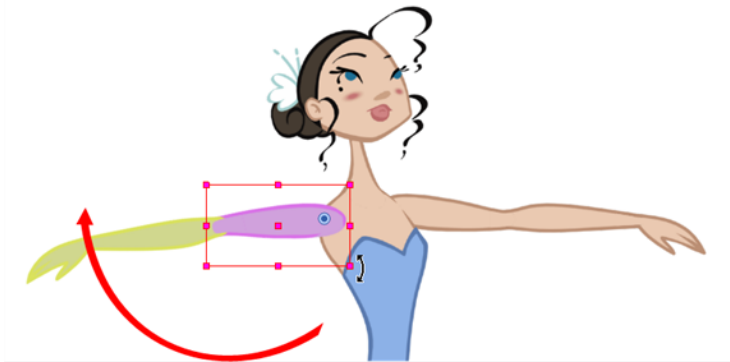
# Flipping Through Poses



When animating, it is useful to flip through your poses to see the flow of your animation without going through each frame in your Timeline. Animate Pro lets you flip between the selected element's keyframes.

**To flip through your poses:**

1. In the Camera or Timeline view, select the layer you want to see the poses for.



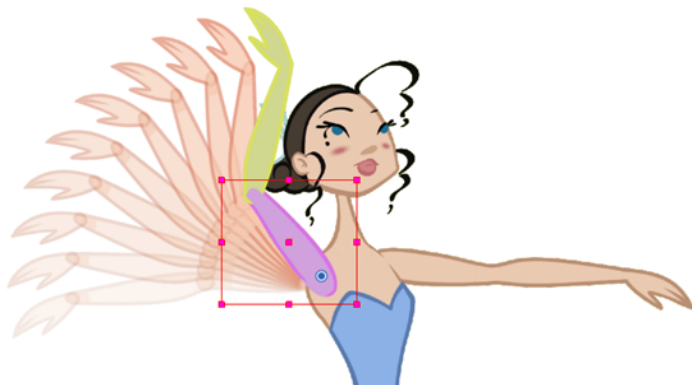
2. In the top menu, select **Animation > Go to Previous Keyframe** or **Go to Next Keyframe**. The keyboard shortcuts are [;] and ['].

## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks on page 999](#)
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)

- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position](#) on page 1004
- [Navigating the Hierarchy](#) on page 1008
- [Animating using the Transform Tool](#) on page 1010
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics](#) on page 1013
- [Animating in Stop-motion](#) on page 1033
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation](#) on page 1035
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation](#) on the facing page
- [Animating Using Symbols](#) on page 1048
- [Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions](#) on page 1054
- [Swapping Images](#) on page 1057
- [Adding a New Drawing](#) on page 1060
- [Ordering Layers Over Time](#) on page 1061
- [Resetting a Transformation](#) on page 1063
- [Offsetting Part of an Animation](#) on page 1072


# Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation



When animating cut-out characters, it is useful to see the previous and next frames on the animation. However, it can sometimes be confusing to see the onion skin for every part of the character. You will often only want to see the onion skin on a single part or a few parts, such as the arm, that are currently being animated. Animate Pro offers that possibility.



While animating in the Camera view, there are four different onion skin options:

- [Add to Onion Skin on the next page](#)
- [Remove from Onion Skin on the next page](#)
- [Remove Unselected from Onion Skin on the next page](#)
- [Add All to Onion Skin on page 1045](#)
- [Remove All from Onion Skin on page 1045](#)

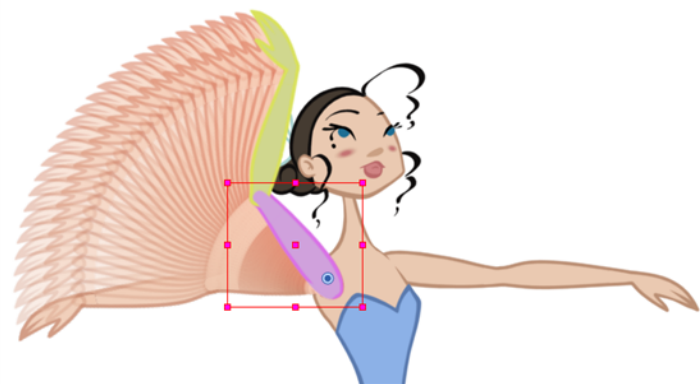
You can enable these options in the menu or manually in the Timeline view using the layer's Show Onion Skin  button.

Unless you change the onion skin options when you display the onion skin, only the selected layers will be displayed in the onion skin preview.

## To use the onion skin options:

1. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Onion Skin**  option or press [Alt] + [O].
2. In the Tools toolbar, click on the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
3. In the Camera view, select one or many elements.
4. In the top menu, select **View > Onion Skin > Add to Onion Skin, Remove From Onion Skin, Remove Unselected from Onion Skin, Add All to Onion Skin** or **Remove All from Onion Skin**.

## Add to Onion Skin



The Add to Onion Skin command is used to add a series of selected elements to the onion skin preview. The keyboard shortcut is [Shift] + [S].

## Remove from Onion Skin



The Remove From Onion Skin command is used to remove a series of selected elements from the onion skin preview.

## Remove Unselected from Onion Skin



The Remove Unselected from Onion Skin command is used to remove all elements except the ones selected from the onion skin preview.

## Add All to Onion Skin



The Add All to Onion Skin command is used to add all of the scene's elements to the onion skin preview. The keyboard shortcut is [Alt] + [Shift] + [O].

## Remove All from Onion Skin

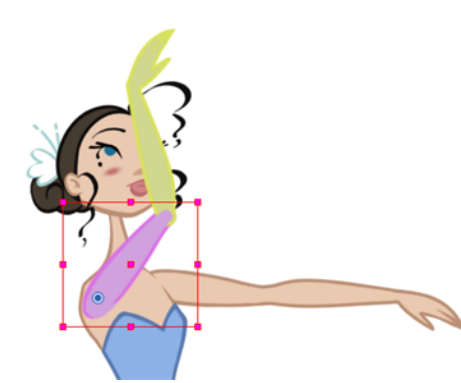


The Remove All Onion Skin command is used to remove all of the scene's elements from the onion skin preview. The keyboard shortcut is [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [O] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [O] (Mac OS X).

### Related Topics


- [Flipping Through Poses on page 1041](#)

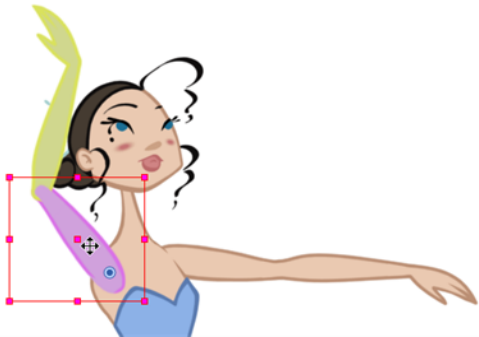
# Flipping Parts



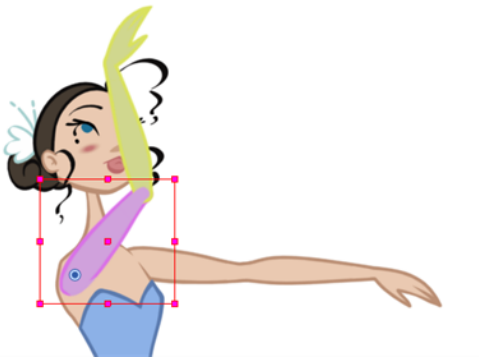
If you want to flip a part, a limb or a whole puppet, use the Transform tool and the Flip Horizontal and Flip Vertical options.

## To flip a selection

1. In the Animation Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Camera view, select the parts to be flipped.



3. In the Tool Properties view, click on the **Flip Horizontal**  or **Flip Vertical**  option. The keyboard shortcuts are [4] and [5] respectively.





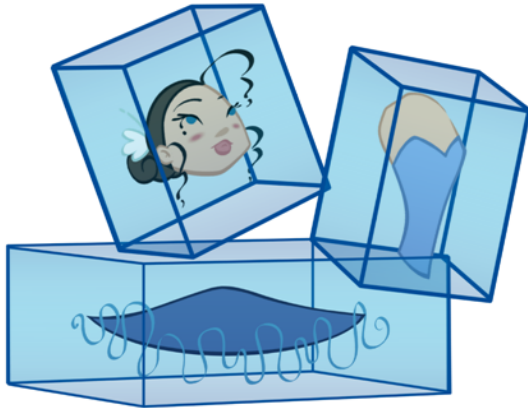
If the scaling parameter is not set to Separate Scale, the flip is not applied to the selection.

---

## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks on page 999](#)
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position on page 1004](#)
- [Navigating the Hierarchy on page 1008](#)
- [Animating using the Transform Tool on page 1010](#)
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)
- [Animating in Stop-motion on page 1033](#)
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation on page 1035](#)
- [Flipping Through Poses on page 1041](#)
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation on page 1043](#)
- [Animating Using Symbols on the next page](#)
- [Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions on page 1054](#)
- [Swapping Images on page 1057](#)
- [Ordering Layers Over Time on page 1061](#)
- [Resetting a Transformation on page 1063](#)

# Animating Using Symbols



You can use symbols to animate your puppet. Symbols are boxes in which you can place whatever you feel like. You can use the symbols to create reusable animations such as blinking.

A symbol combines animation, artwork or layers into a single object that you can control in one layer. You can also create symbols out of each body part in your cut-out puppets.

To do so, you can either duplicate an existing symbol or create a new blank one in the Library. You can then drop the symbol anywhere in your animation.

## Related Topics

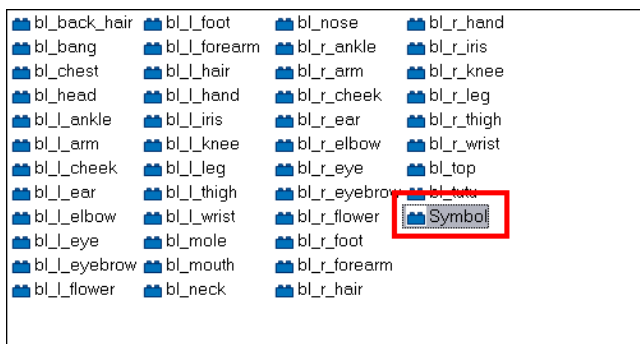
- [Creating a Blink Symbol](#) below
- [Importing a Template with Symbols](#) on page 1052
- [Duplicating a Symbol](#) on page 1052

## Creating a Blink Symbol

You can make an eye blink by creating a blink symbol. Here is an example of a blinking animation created in a blink symbol.

**To create a blink symbol:**

1. In the Library view's right side, right-click and select **New Symbol**.



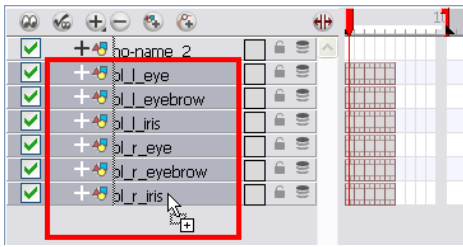
The new symbol appears in the Symbol library.

2. Rename it Blink.

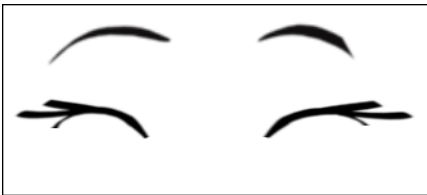




Animate Pro then automatically enters the symbol so you can edit it.

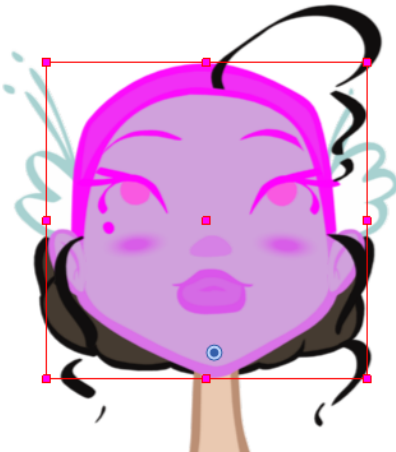
3. Drag the eyes, pupils and eyebrows symbols or template from the Library view to the Timeline view's left side. If you do not already have your eyes, pupils and eyebrows in your library, you should create either symbols or templates out of them.



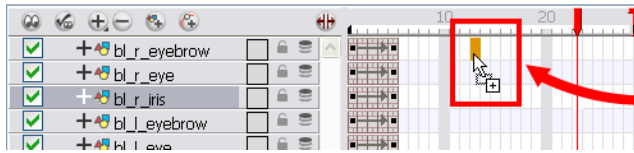
4. In the Timeline and Camera view, animate the blink.



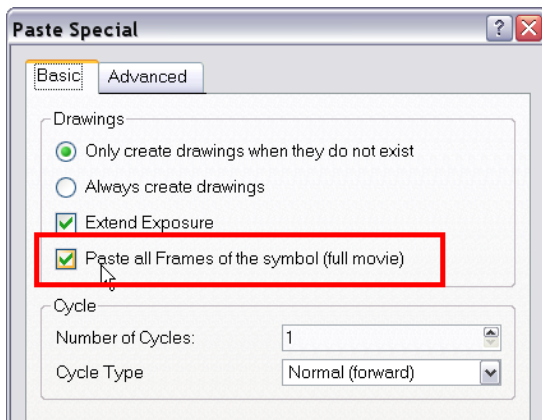
- If you enter the eyelid or eye symbol to add more drawings, they will be added into each instance of that symbol. If you modify the exposure of the eye symbol within the Blink symbol, it will not be modified in the other instances.
5. In the top menu, select **File > Save**.
  6. In the Camera view's top area, click on the **Top**  button to go back to the scene's timeline.
  7. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
  8. If your head is a symbol containing all the facial feature symbols in the Camera view, double-click on the head's symbol to edit it.



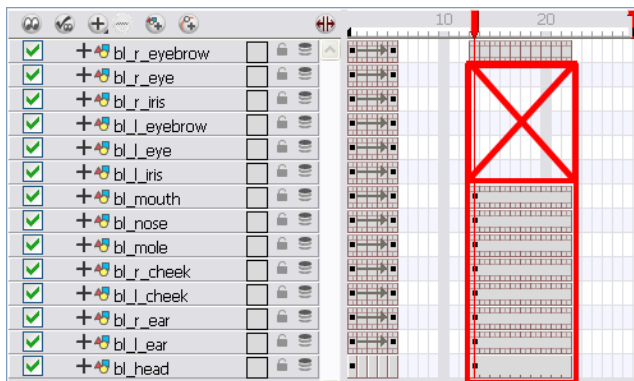
9. From the Library view, drag the new Blink Symbol and drop it into one of the eye feature layers. Before dropping the symbol in the Timeline, hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X).
10. Drop it into a series of blank frames. Do **NOT** drop it where there already is an exposure.




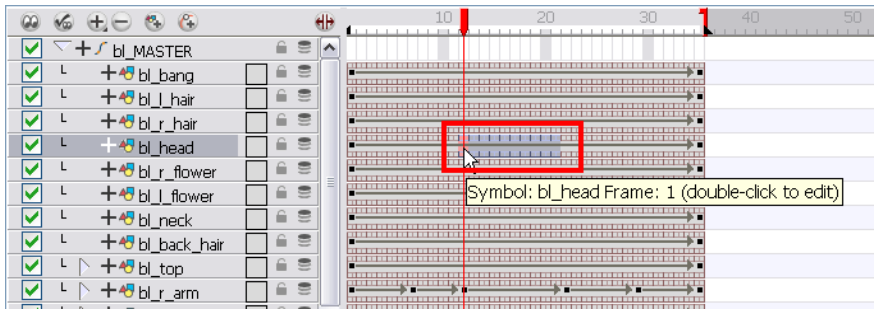
The **Paste Special** dialog box opens.



11. In the Paste Special dialog box, enable the **Paste All Frames of the Symbol (full movie)** option.
12. Click on the **OK** button.
13. In the Timeline view, expose the other facial features and head drawings.

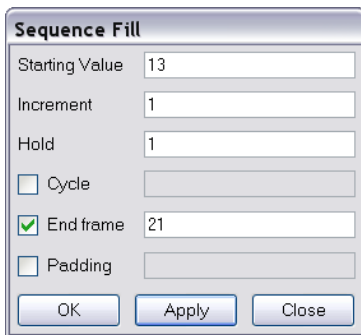


14. If you are editing the head symbol and not dropping the new symbol into the main timeline, click the **Top**  button to go back to the root timeline.
15. To expose the blink frames you just inserted inside the head symbol, in the Timeline view, select the head layer's cell range where you want to expose the blink.

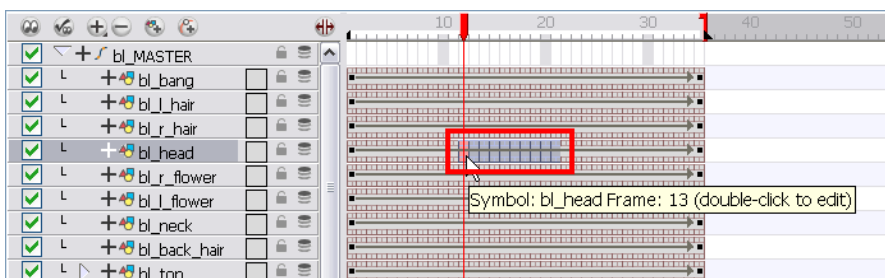


- In the top menu, select **Animation > Cell > Sequence Fill** or press [Ctrl] + [M] (Windows) or [⌘] + [M] (Mac OS X).

The Sequence Fill dialog box opens.



- In the Starting Value field, type the first frame number where you exposed your blink inside the head symbol.
- In the Hold field and Increment field, type "1" .
- If necessary, type the frame number on which you want the system to stop exposing the symbol.
- Click on the OK button.



You can create walk cycle animation symbols or head turn animation symbols and drop them directly into your main timeline in any drawing layer.

## Related Topics

- [Importing a Template with Symbols on the next page](#)

- [Duplicating a Symbol](#) below

## Importing a Template with Symbols

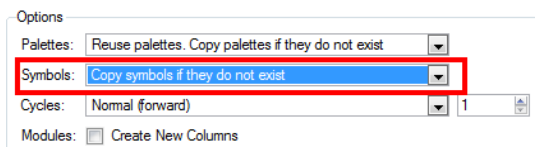
Sometimes a character's rig is not straightforward to do. Rigs, which are usually saved as templates, can contain symbols, such as a leg that was made with a patch. However, a symbol does not work in the same way as an Action template. When dropped on the right side of the Timeline layer and into a symbol of the exact same structure, instead of adding itself to the previous symbol, the new symbol becomes a copy.

To take more control of how the Action template will behave when brought into the Timeline, bring it in using a Paste Special.

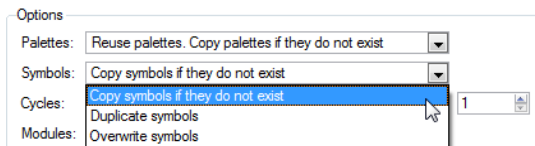
**To import a template with symbols:**

1. Select the Action template containing symbols from the right side of the **Library**.
2. As you drag it from the Library to the right side of the Timeline to drop it next to a template with the exact same rig, hold down [Alt] (Windows) or [⌘] (Mac OS X).

The Paste Special window appears.



3. Select one of the following options from the symbols drop-down menu:



- **Copy symbols if they do not exist:** This is the default setting for this operation and will prevent symbols in a action template from being copied.
- **Duplicate symbols:** Select this option if you wish to make copies of the symbols in your template.
- **Overwrite symbols:** If for some reason, a modification was made to a symbol in the Action template that does not exist in the basic rig template for a character, select this option to overwrite the previous symbol.

### Related Topics

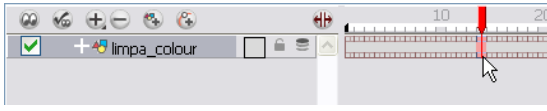
- [Creating a Blink Symbol](#) on page 1048
- [Duplicating a Symbol](#) below

## Duplicating a Symbol

You must duplicate a symbol if you want to modify a copy of it without altering the original symbol and the other copies.

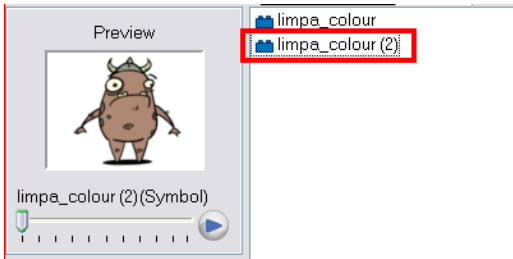
**To duplicate a symbol:**

1. In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to duplicate the symbol.
2. Select the symbol's cell.



3. In the top menu, select **Edit > Duplicate Selected Symbol**.

In the Library view, the symbol is duplicated and in the Timeline view, the current cell is replaced with the new symbol. You can now modify the symbol's content.



Symbols nested inside another symbol are not duplicated. If you modify them the original and other instances will also be modified

If you created an animation inside the duplicated symbol, you can expose it using the Fill Sequence command as shown previously in the new symbol creation process.

## Related Topics

- [Creating a Blink Symbol on page 1048](#)
- [Importing a Template with Symbols on the previous page](#)

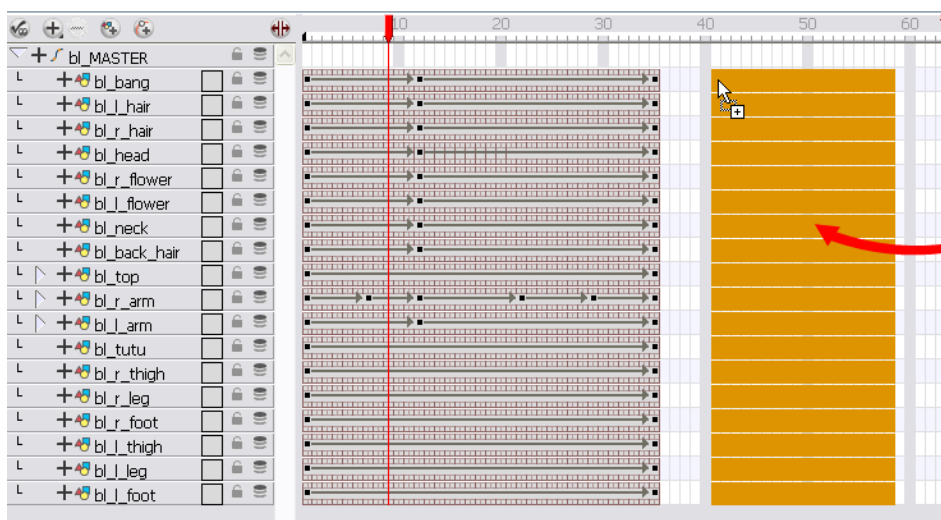
# Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions



Reusing animation and assets is an important aspect of cut-out animation. This is why Animate Pro includes a library for storing all of the reusable information. To save time, you can take an action which you have already animated such as a walk-cycle or jump and use it again. You can store the initial animation in the Library view, then select and drag it into a new scene as often as you need it.

You can import a master template into the Timeline view and start animating with it, then later on decide to import an action template. You can import the template into the window on the right side of the Timeline view. This is where all the keyframes are located. An action template is a template that allows you to store drawings (like a blink) or keyframes (like a walk cycle) that you want to reuse in an animation sequence.

To insert a template into another one, the layer ordering has to be the same. If it is inconsistent, the system will indicate that the templates cannot be combined. In that case, you could bring the action to the Timeline's left window to create a new set of layers or convert it into a symbol and drop it into any layer.





You can create a single keyframe action template of the different viewpoints (front, three-quarter or side view). Then import and insert those action templates into the animation to turn the character. The same pattern can be created for a head, arm, full upper body, etc.



If the master template you are importing was created in the Network view, make sure to import it first and to drop it into either the Network view or the left side of the Timeline view. Failure to do this may break some network connections.



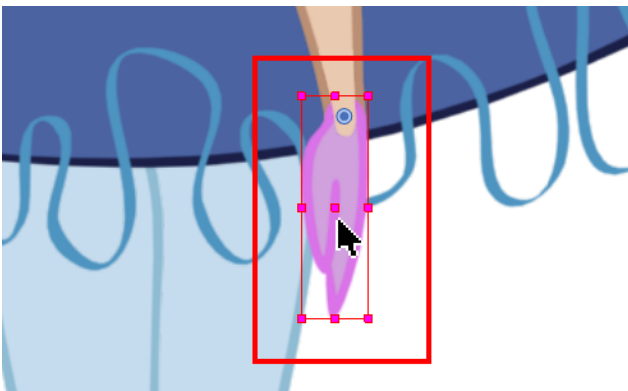
If you created templates for different body parts you can reuse them in your scene by dragging them in your layers. You can also open a template as a folder and select a particular drawing from it and drag it into your drawing layer.

If your layers are symbols, you will need to drag the templates inside the symbols. When you import extra drawings, such as different hand and mouth positions, use the pivot that was set on your drawings and copy them to the symbol's cells. You can do this by using the Copy Pivot to Parent Symbol command.

When you copy your pivots to the parent symbol, there is no link between the drawing's pivots and the symbol's. It is simply a copying operation. If you modify the drawing pivot later, it will not be copied to the symbol and you would need to perform the operation again. If you need to modify the symbol's pivots, do it directly on the symbol's cells.

### To import extra drawings and insert them into symbols:

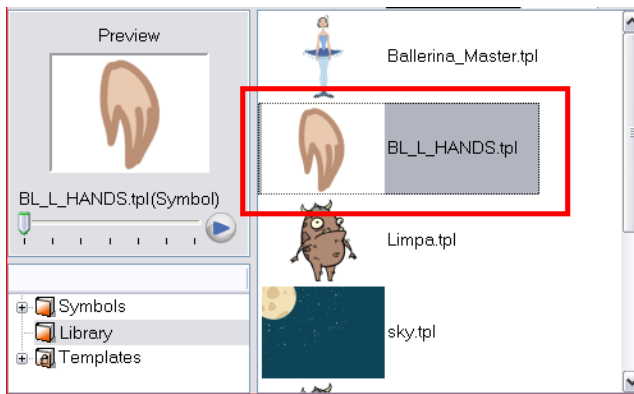
1. In the Camera or Timeline view, double-click on the symbol you want to add new drawings in.



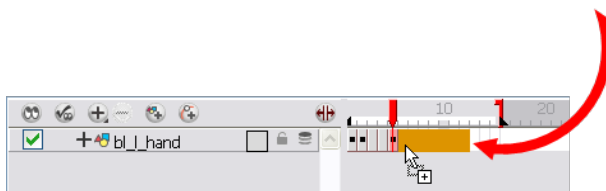
2. In the symbol's timeline, extend the length if necessary.




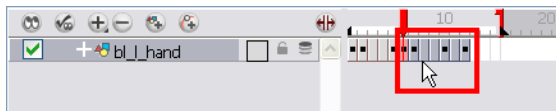
3. In the Library view, browse to the template containing the new drawings to import in your symbol.





4. From the Library view, drag the select template and drop it into the Timeline view's right side into the corresponding layer.



5. In the Tools toolbar, select the Pivot  tool.
6. In the Timeline view, select the new drawings you just imported.



7. In the Tool Properties view, click on the **Copy Pivot to Parent Symbol**  button.
  - If the pivots were not set on your drawings, use the Pivot  tool to set them before performing the copy operation.

## Related Topics

- [Opening a Template as a Folder on page 672](#)
- [Templates on page 663](#)



# Swapping Images



Cut-out animation is not only about moving parts around, it's also about swapping drawings to give the animation a more traditional animation look.



You can add as many new drawings as you want in your character parts symbols and use them in your current animation. You can also add new drawings directly in your scene or import them from the library.

You do not need to remember the frame on which you drew or imported the drawings as you will be able to see them in the Drawing Substitution's interface.

You cannot swap a symbol for another one, only the symbol's frames or layer's drawings.

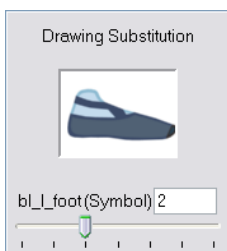
You can swap images in the **Timeline** or Library view. When you use the Drawing Substitution window in the Library view, you are not selecting drawings from the **Library** but from drawings contained in your scene's layers.

## To swap images in the Library view:

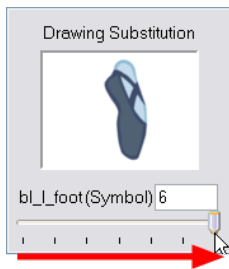
1. In the Camera view, with the **Transform**  tool.
2. In the Camera view, select the part you want to swap using the **Transform**  tool.



3. In the Library view, go to the **Drawing Substitution** panel.




4. Move the substitution slider to the right or left to scroll through the symbol's frames or drawings. The keyboard shortcuts are `[+] + [ ]` to perform the scroll, or from the top menu select **Animation > Substitute Drawing Previous** or **Substitute Drawing Next**.

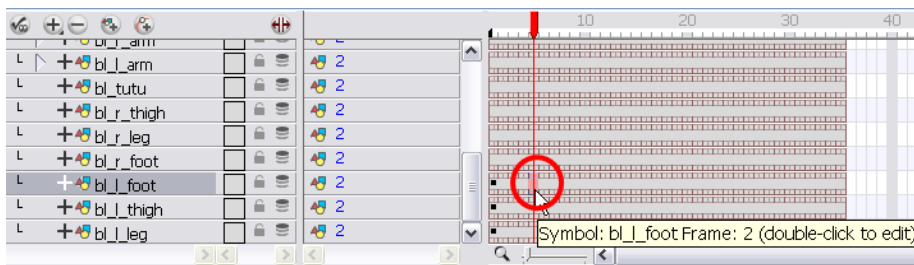


The drawing or symbol's cell on the current frame is replaced by the selected one.

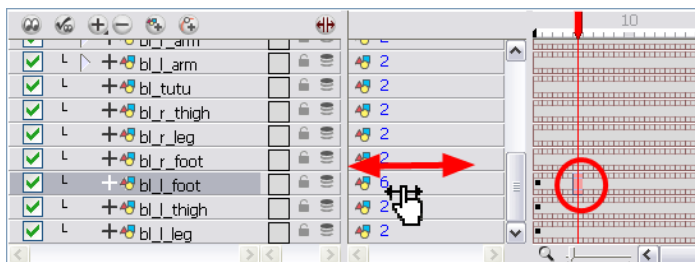


**To swap images in the Timeline view:**

1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Show Data View**  button to expand the Data view.
2. In the Timeline view's right side, select the cell containing the drawing or symbol's cell to swap.



3. In the Data view, drag the pointer left or right to change the cell or drawing exposed for another one. You can also directly type the drawing name or symbol's cell number if you know it.



**Related Topics**

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks](#) on page 999
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1001
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position](#) on page 1004

- [Navigating the Hierarchy on page 1008](#)
- [Animating using the Transform Tool on page 1010](#)
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)
- [Animating in Stop-motion on page 1033](#)
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation on page 1035](#)
- [Flipping Through Poses on page 1041](#)
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation on page 1043](#)
- [Flipping Parts on page 1046](#)
- [Animating Using Symbols on page 1048](#)
- [Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions on page 1054](#)
- [Adding a New Drawing on the next page](#)
- [Ordering Layers Over Time on page 1061](#)
- [Resetting a Transformation on page 1063](#)

# Adding a New Drawing

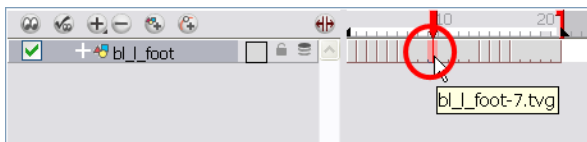
If you need to add a new drawing in your scene, you can either do it inside the body part's symbol or, if you do not use symbols, directly on the part's layer by duplicating the existing drawing on the current frame.

## Duplicating a Drawing

If your character does not use symbols, you need to duplicate the drawing on the cell where you need to use a new drawing. You could also create a new blank drawing, but duplicating the existing drawing allows you to keep the pivot you previously set and you can also reuse a portion of the existing artwork. When you create a new drawing, you get a blank cell with a pivot set at the centre of the Camera view.

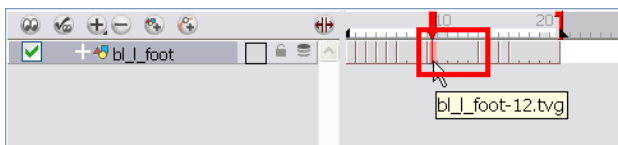
**To duplicate a drawing:**

1. In the Timeline or Camera view, select the drawing to duplicate.



2. In the top menu, select **Drawing > Duplicate Drawing** or press [Alt] + [Shift] + [D].

The new drawing appears in the currently selected cell.



3. In the Camera view, draw the new piece.

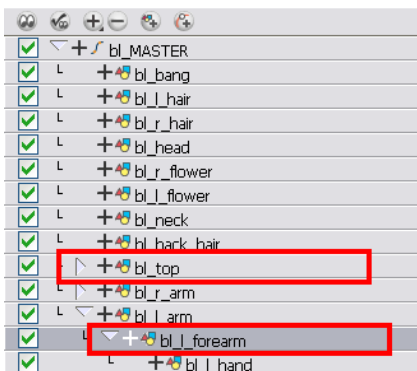
## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks](#) on page 999
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1001
- [Flipping Through Poses](#) on page 1041
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1043
- [Flipping Parts](#) on page 1046
- [Reusing Extra Drawings, Poses and Facial Expressions](#) on page 1054
- [Swapping Images](#) on page 1057

# Ordering Layers Over Time





The layer ordering system in Animate Pro saves time and simplifies your work. There is no need to create a new layer or to copy and paste artwork into other layers to change the order. The Z-axis (forward - backward) allows the user to create a multiplane and move elements closer to or further away from the camera. This allows the puppet's pieces to be moved in front or behind the other ones without physically changing the layer position.



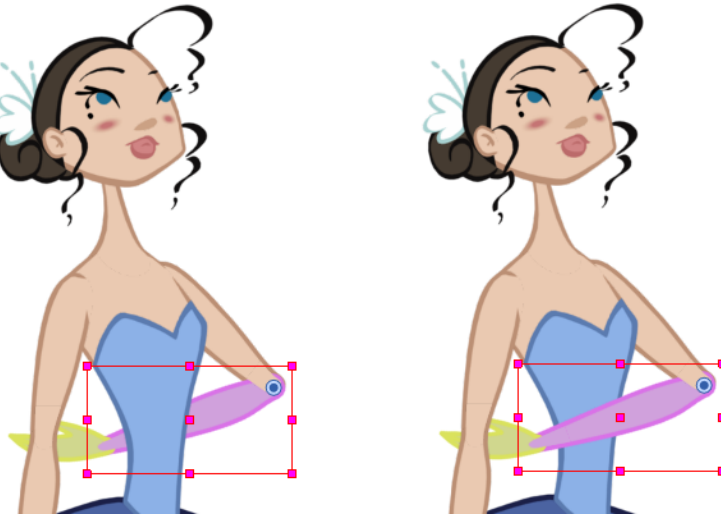
Animate Pro provides you with a shortcut to move the piece with a micro nudge on the Z-axis. The program creates a keyframe where different Z values can be entered. This allows for the piece to move forward and backwards in space without having to change the drawing's original position or break the layer hierarchy.

This also means that the layer ordering is maintained throughout the whole scene. You can combine animation assets so that the system can interpolate them.

## To nudge elements on the Z-axis:

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or press [Shift] + [T].
2. In the Tools toolbar, enable the **Animate**  mode.

3. In the Camera view, click on the part to be repositioned and hold down the [Alt] key. Using the [Up] or [Down] arrow keys, nudge the part until it moves to the desired position. Make sure that the Camera view has a red outline around it.



## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks on page 999](#)
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)
- [Animating in Stop-motion on page 1033](#)
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation on page 1035](#)
- [Flipping Through Poses on page 1041](#)
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation on page 1043](#)
- [Flipping Parts on page 1046](#)
- [Swapping Images on page 1057](#)
- [Adding a New Drawing on page 1060](#)
- [Resetting a Transformation on the facing page](#)
- [Offsetting Part of an Animation on page 1072](#)

# Resetting a Transformation

You may want to reset your character's position if you have made too many transformations and it is not going where you want it to go, or simply because you want to reset a pose you are reusing from another animation.

Once your layers are positioned in the Camera view, you can easily reinstate them to their original position.



When using the Transform tool to select element in the Camera view, always make sure that the Peg Selection Mode option in the Tool Properties view is disabled or else it will limit the selection to peg only.





In the Timeline view, you can also use the Clear All Values command to reset all transformation values on the selected layers. Right-click on the selected layers and select **Layers > Clear All Values**.



There are three different ways to reinstate a transformation:

- [Reset below](#)
- [Reset All below](#)
- [Reset All Except Z on the next page](#)

## Reset

Use the Reset command to reset the value of the selected element to the initial value of the active tool. For example, if the Rotate  tool is active, the transformation angle will be reset to 0 and if the Transform  tool is active, the entire transformation values will be reset.

**To reset the transformation on the current frame:**



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or any **Advanced Animation**  tools.
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the drawing layers you wish to reset. You can select more than one layer at a time.
3. Select **Animation > Reset** or press [Shift] + [R].

The selected layers will automatically return to their original position.

## Reset All

The Reset All option will reset all transformations on the current frame in a selected layer. Your keyframe will remain, but all the values will be reinstated to the default position. It will reset all the transformation regardless of the tool you are using.

**To reset all transformations on the current frame:**



1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or any **Advanced Animation**  tools.
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the drawing layers you wish to reset. You can select more than one layer at a time.
3. Select **Animation > Reset All**.

The selected layers will automatically return to their original position.

## Reset All Except Z

The Reset All Except Z option will reset all the transformations on the current frame except the Z position. This is useful when doing cut-out animation. Cut-out puppets often have a particular Z ordering for the different views of a character. You might want to reset the transformation, but not necessarily the Z position. To do so, you need to use the Reset All Except Z option.

**To reset all transformations except the Z position on the current frame:**

1. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool or any **Advanced Animation**  tools.
2. In the Timeline or directly in the Camera view, select the drawing layers you wish to reset. You can select more than one layer at a time.
3. Select **Animation > Reset All Except Z**.

The selected layers will automatically return to their original position, except for the Z values.

### Related Topics

- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)

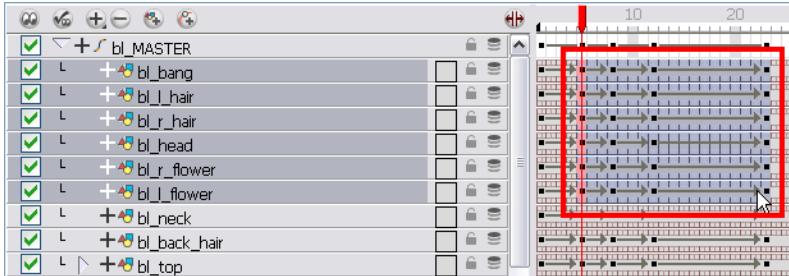


# Creating Cycles

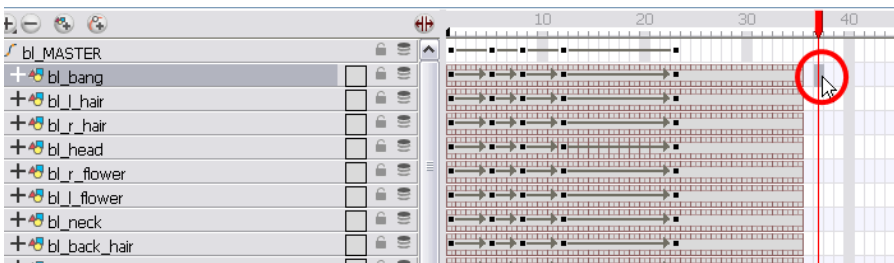
If you want to cycle a portion of your animation, you can use the Paste Cycle command. You can also use the Paste Reverse command to completely reverse the flow of your animation.

To use the Paste Cycle command:

1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range (or symbol cells) and keyframes to loop.

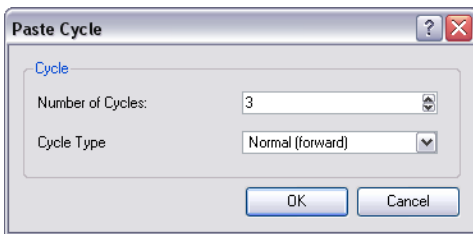


2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.

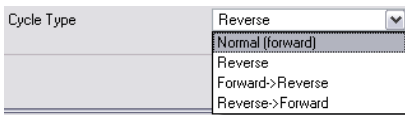


4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Cycle** or press [Ctrl] + [/] (Windows) or [⌘] + [/] (Mac OS X).

The Paste Cycle dialog box opens.



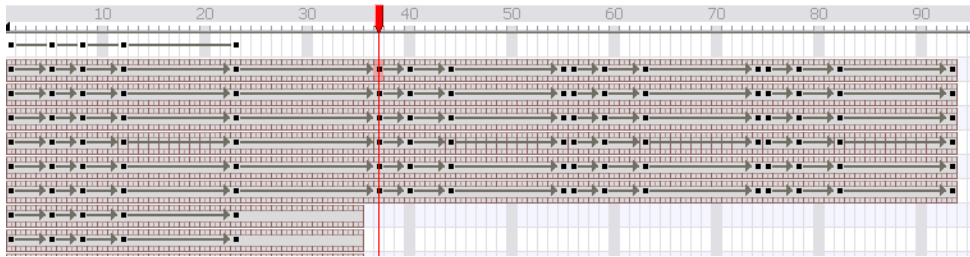
5. In the Number of Cycles field, use the up or down arrows to increase or decrease the number of cycles you want to paste. You can also type the value directly.
6. In the Cycle Type drop-down menu, select the type of cycle you want to paste.



- ▶ **Normal (forward)**: Pastes your selection as it is, starting with the first cell and ending with the last one.
- ▶ **Reverse**: Pastes your selection reversed, beginning with the last cell and ending with the first one.
- ▶ **Forward -> Reverse**: Pastes your selection as a yo-yo, starting with the first cell, going to the last one and ending with the first cell.

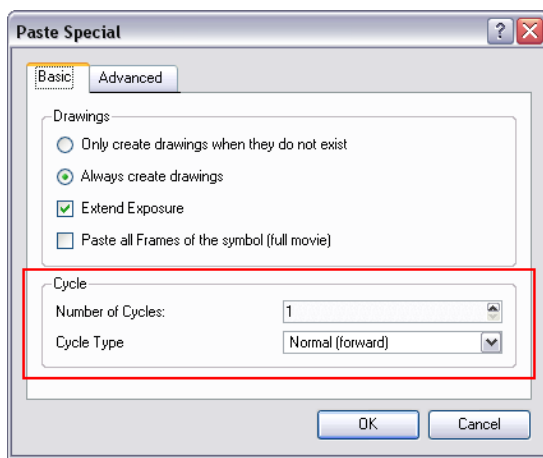
- ▶ **Reverse -> Forward:** Pastes your selection as a reversed yo-yo, starting with the last cell, going to the first one and ending with the last cell.

7. Click on the **OK** button to paste your cycles.



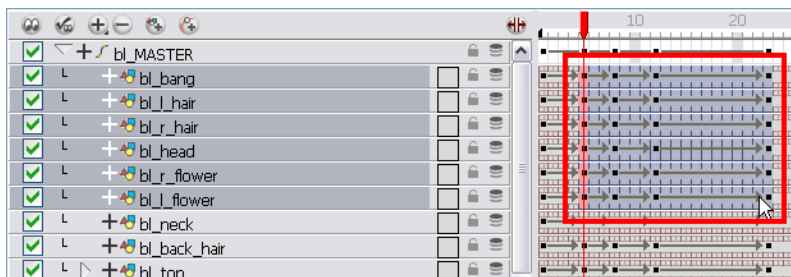
You can do the same operation using the Paste Special dialog box. To open the Paste Special dialog box, select

**Edit > Paste Special** or press [Ctrl] + [B] (Windows) or [⌘] + [B] (Mac OS X).

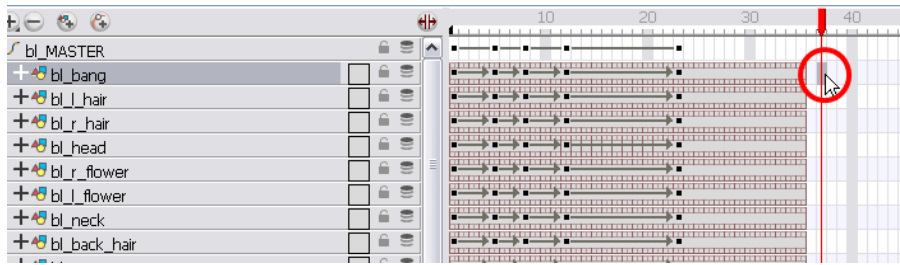


**To use the Paste Reverse command:**

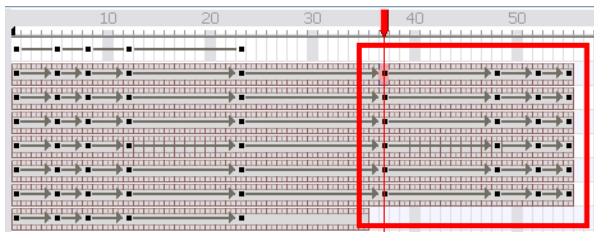
1. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell range and keyframes to paste inverted.



2. In the top menu, select **Edit > Copy**.
3. In the Xsheet or Timeline view, select the cell where you want your cycles to start.



4. In the top menu, select **Edit > Paste Reverse** or press [Ctrl] + [.] (Windows) or [⌘] + [.] (Mac OS X).






## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks](#) on page 999
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1001
- [Navigating the Hierarchy](#) on page 1008
- [Flipping Through Poses](#) on page 1041
- [Using the Onion Skin in Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1043
- [Creating Cycles](#) on page 1065
- [Cut-out Animation Preferences](#) on page 1074

# Copying and Pasting Animation

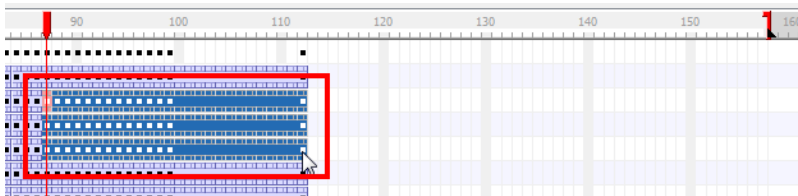
As you animate you will find that you may reuse a lot of positions, drawings and keys. However, you may only want to paste the drawings, or just the keys or maybe everything. There are different paste options available in the Timeline view which will give you the maximum flexibility when reusing and pasting.




There are three different modes for pasting your selection:

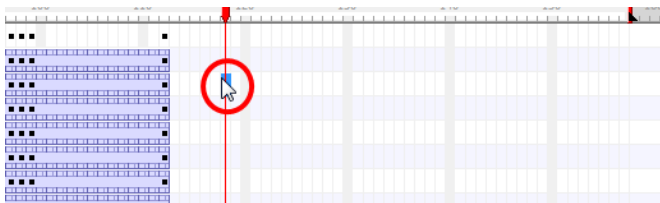
-  **Paste Mode: All Drawing Attributes**  
Pastes the drawing exposure and keyframes.
-  **Paste Mode: Keyframes Only**  
Pastes only the keyframes.
-  **Paste Mode: Exposures Only**  
Pastes only the drawing exposure.

To paste a selection using different modes

1. In the Timeline view, select the cells (or symbol cells) you want to copy and paste.



2. Select **Edit > Copy cells from the Timeline**.
3. In the Timeline view's left side, enable the desired **Paste**    mode.
4. In the Timeline view's right side, select the cell where you want to paste your selection.

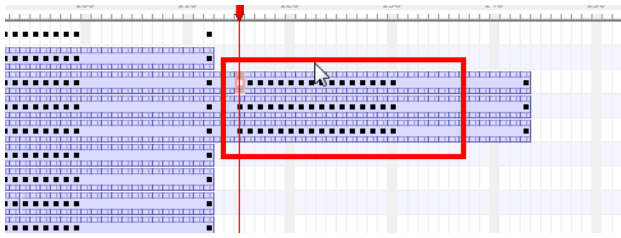


5. Select **Edit > Paste Cells in the Timeline**.

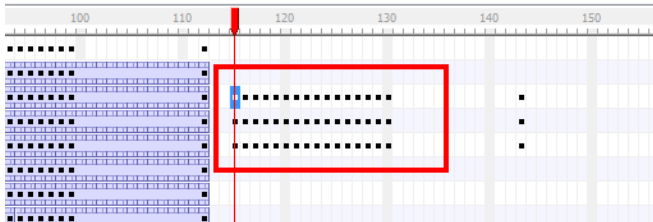


Note these modes also apply when you use drag instead of copy/ paste.

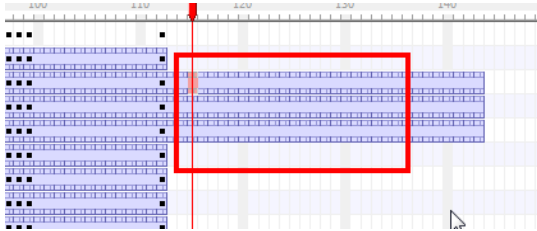
**Paste Mode:** All Drawing Attributes



Paste Mode: Keyframes Only



Paste Mode: Exposures Only



## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks](#) on page 999
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation](#) on page 1001
- [Animating using the Transform Tool](#) on page 1010
- [Swapping Images](#) on page 1057


# Adding Pegs

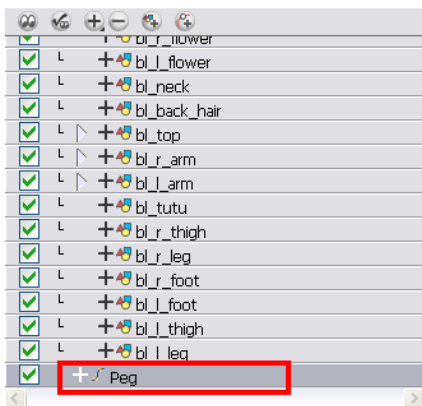
Now that you have your puppet on your stage, you probably need to resize and reposition it to fit your scene. When you need to scale down or move your character it's a good idea to hook (attach) the whole puppet to a trajectory.

In Animate Pro, there is a type of layer you can add to your timeline allowing you to create a motion path or reposition drawings. This trajectory layer is called a Peg. Any drawing or layer you hook to a peg will follow the defined motion path, rotation, scaling and skewing information.

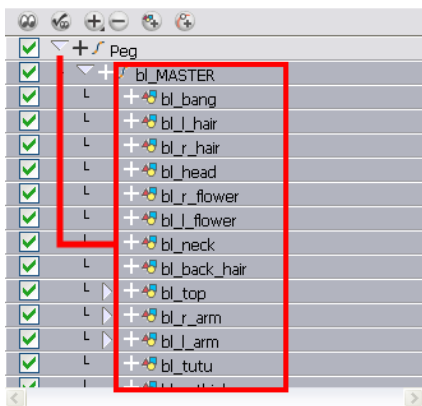
Attaching your puppet to a peg will allow you to scale it and reposition it without having to do it on all of your different parts and pieces. Only one layer will contain the position information, this makes your animation easier to modify and control.

## To add a repositioning peg:

1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Add Peg**  button.





2. In the Timeline view, select all of the layers you want to attach to your new peg.
3. Drag your selection right on the peg layer to parent all your character's pieces to the peg.

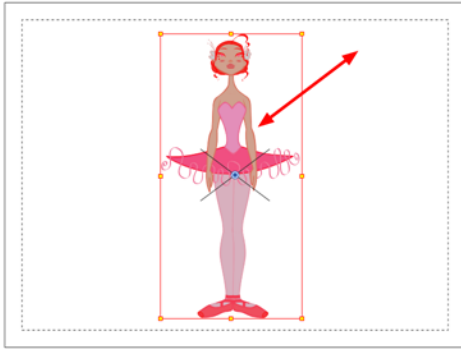


Next, you need to position your character on the stage by moving it and scaling it to the correct size. You will not scale each layer individually. You either want to do it on the top symbol or top peg layer.

## To reposition the character:

1. In the Timeline view, select the top peg layer (master peg).
2. In the Tools toolbar, select the **Transform**  tool and disable the **Animate**  mode.

3. In the Camera view, position the character.




### Related Topics

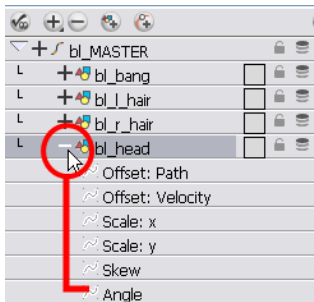
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)
- [Selecting Layers to Animate or Position on page 1004](#)
- [Navigating the Hierarchy on page 1008](#)

# Offsetting Part of an Animation

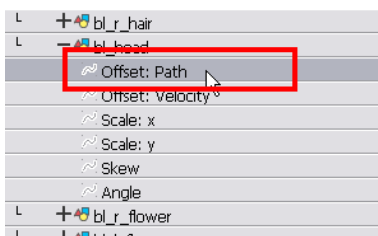
If there is a section of your animation that you want to reposition such as the head's height or the puppet's position, you can do it using the function curve.

**To reposition a portion of an animation:**

1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Expand Function**  button of the body part layer to reposition. If you want to reposition the entire body, expand the master peg's parameters.

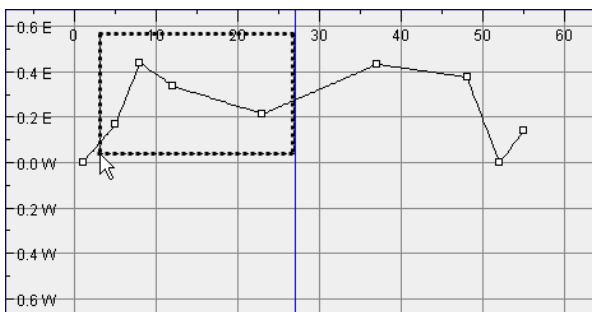


2. Double-click on the layer's parameter controlling the keyframes you want to reposition.

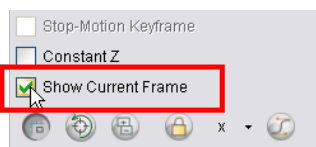


The Function Editor opens.

3. In the Function editor, select the keyframes you want to reposition by tracing a selection box.

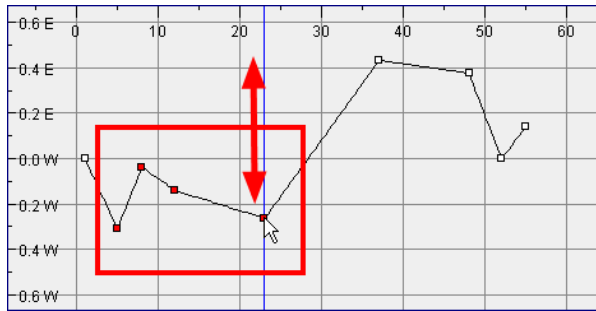


4. Enable the **Show Current Frame** option view the transformation results in the Camera view as you do them.



5. Drag the keyframes selection up or down to reposition your sequence.





6. Close the Function editor.

## Related Topics

- [Keyframes and Drawing Blocks on page 999](#)
- [Creating a Simple Cut-out Animation on page 1001](#)
- [Animating using Inverse Kinematics on page 1013](#)
- [Animating in Stop-motion on page 1033](#)
- [Animating using Computer Generated Interpolation on page 1035](#)

# Cut-out Animation Preferences

When looking for additional control over your Min/Max Angle when using Inverse Kinematics, you can find some help in the preference panel.

You will find the preferences listed under the following tab:


- **Camera**

To open the Preferences panel:

- Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- The keyboard shortcut is [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

## Camera

### Inverse Kinematics

- **Min/Max Angle Constraint Weight:** This value acts similar to the Stiffness setting in the Inverse Kinematics Properties panel. This preference only affects the minimum and maximum angle values set using the **Min/Max Angle Mode** . The greater the value is, the stronger your need to move the body part to approach the minimum and maximum values set. Although the maximum value goes up to 1.0, in a production setting, the most practical value to use would be closer to 0.1.

## Advanced

When you want to set the default layer type to only accept motion information through the use of a peg, you can find some help in the preference panel.

### Animate Using Animation Tools

- **Element Module “Animate Using Animation Tools” Default Value:** If you know that you prefer to work in the style of version 7.3 or earlier, or if you intend to substitute many drawings throughout your animation, you might wish to uncheck the **Animate Using Animation Tools Default Value** option. This way, you will not have to do it every time (through the **Layer Properties**) for each new drawing layer that you create.

# Chapter 18: Effects

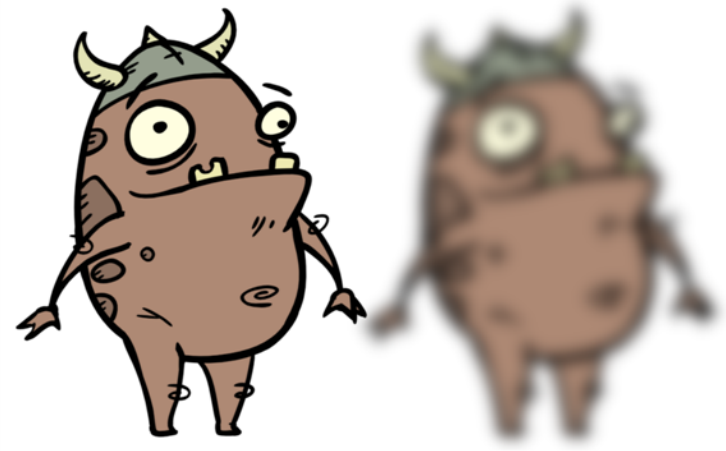


Once your animation is completed, you can add effects such as blurs and glows to make your project look even better! Animate Pro provides you with a series of essential effects that you can add to your layers.

## Topics Covered

- [Adding Effects](#) on the next page
- [Animating an Effect Over Time](#) on page 1087
- [How Does an Effect Work?](#) on page 1090
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092
- [Extra Commands](#) on page 1204
- [Effects Preferences](#) on page 1205

# Adding Effects



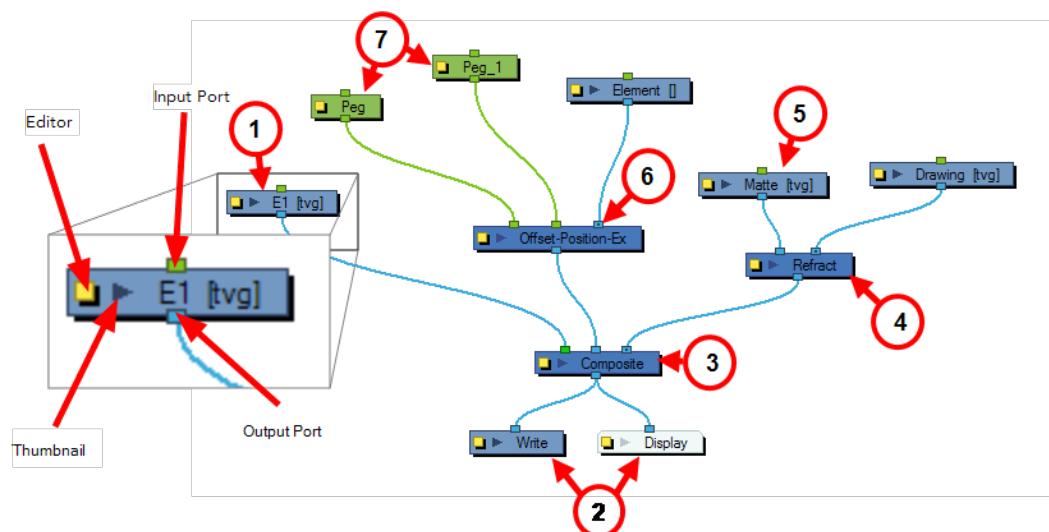
In Animate Pro, to add an effect, you will have to use the Network view. You can add an effect module to your network, you can drag modules from the Module Library view and connect them to the associated drawing elements and adjust the parameters to your taste.

## Related Topics

- [Network View](#) below
- [Module Library View](#) on page 1079
- [Importing a Module](#) on page 1081
- [Adding Effects Through the Timeline View](#) on page 1082

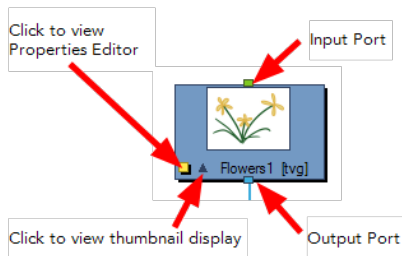
## Network View

In the Network view, you can connect effects and compositing modules to form a network. The organization of modules determines the flow of data during the compositing process and how your animation elements will be composited.

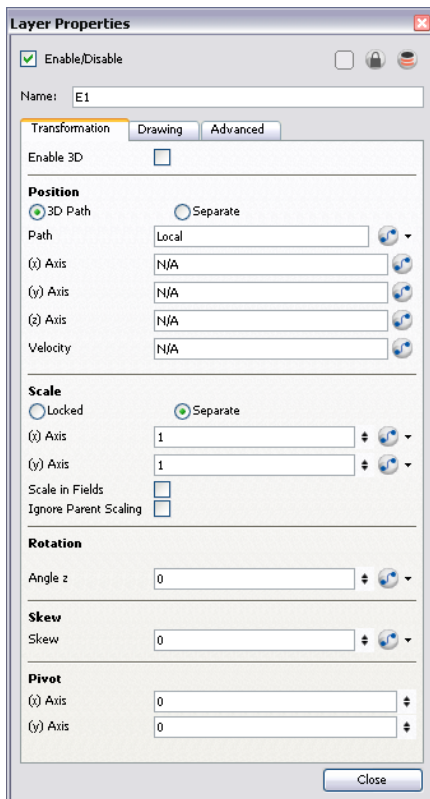


1. [Drawing Module](#) below
2. [Write and Display Modules](#) on the next page
3. [Composite Module](#) on the next page
4. [Effect Module](#) on the next page
5. [Matte Drawing](#) on page 1079
6. [Position Ports](#) on page 1079
7. [Peg Module](#) on page 1079

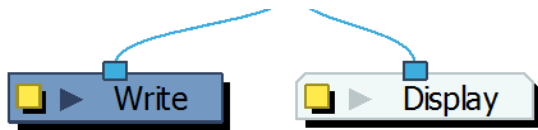
## Drawing Module



This is an example of an average module, in this case a simple drawing module that represents a layer in the Timeline view. This module has an Input Port (top) that allows information to flow through it. It has an Output Port (bottom) that exports its information in a downward flow. On the left side, there is a yellow box that brings up the module's Properties Editor, where all its available parameters can be adjusted. Lastly, there is a dark arrow that displays a Thumbnail of what the module contains.

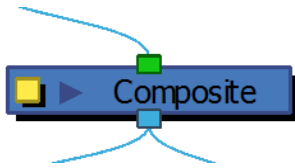


## Write and Display Modules



Both the Write and Display modules do not have output ports. This is because the information that flows into them can go no further in the network. The Write module records the images and renders the final output. The Display module captures the visual information and outputs it to the Camera view.

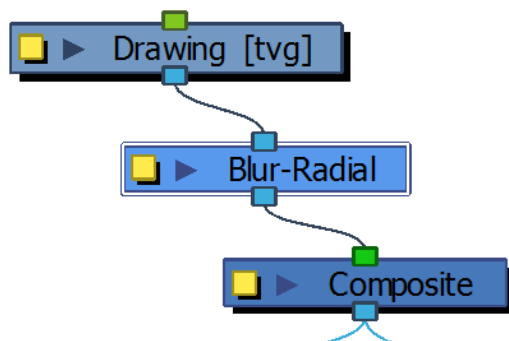
## Composite Module



The Composite module combines multiple source images (Drawing modules), including all transformations and effects, into a single bitmap or vector image for each frame.

The Composite module layers the images based on the composition order rule. First, the Z-value of the elements are analyzed to determine depth. When multiple elements have the same Z-value, the Depth values in the Drawing modules are consulted. If the Depth values are also the same between elements, the composition order is determined by the cable order of modules on the Composite module. By default, modules connected to the right are rendered below those connected to the left. You can override this default in the Composite module editor. The Composite module is an example of a module that can have an infinite number of Input Ports that can take-in multiple, individual sources of information. The left most Input Port on the Composite module is always green. This lets the user know that, in terms of stacking order, whatever is plugged into this port will appear on top of the composite after the z-depth is taken into account.

## Effect Module



An Effect module can often be found with two Input Ports. The right-most Input Port is for the drawing layer that is to be acted upon by this effect, while the left port is usually reserved for a matte. If an effect has a Matte port, it is required and not to be considered optional.

## Matte Drawing

A matte, also called mask, is the shape that will be used by the effect module to modify the original image. The effect will only be applied where the matte overlaps with the original image. Sometimes the matte will act as a negative shape that the effect will exclude. This all depends on the nature and editing properties of the effect in question.

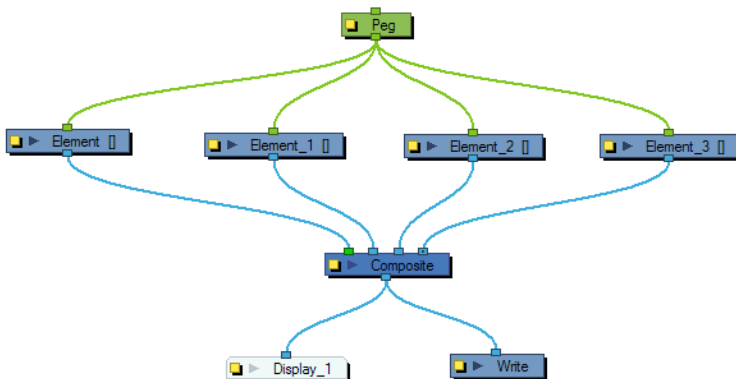
## Position Ports

Some effects contain three Input Ports. If the Input Ports are green, then they require a Peg module. In this case, the effect can accommodate two pegs.

## Peg Module

The Peg modules control the transformation of elements (position, scale, skewing and rotation) over time. The green ports at the top and bottom of the module indicate that it accepts position information and can then pass this information on.

One Peg can be used to control many different module or one module can accept more than one Peg. In a situation like the latter, one Peg might be used to modify the rotation, while the other used to modify the position of the effect and then animated differently over time.



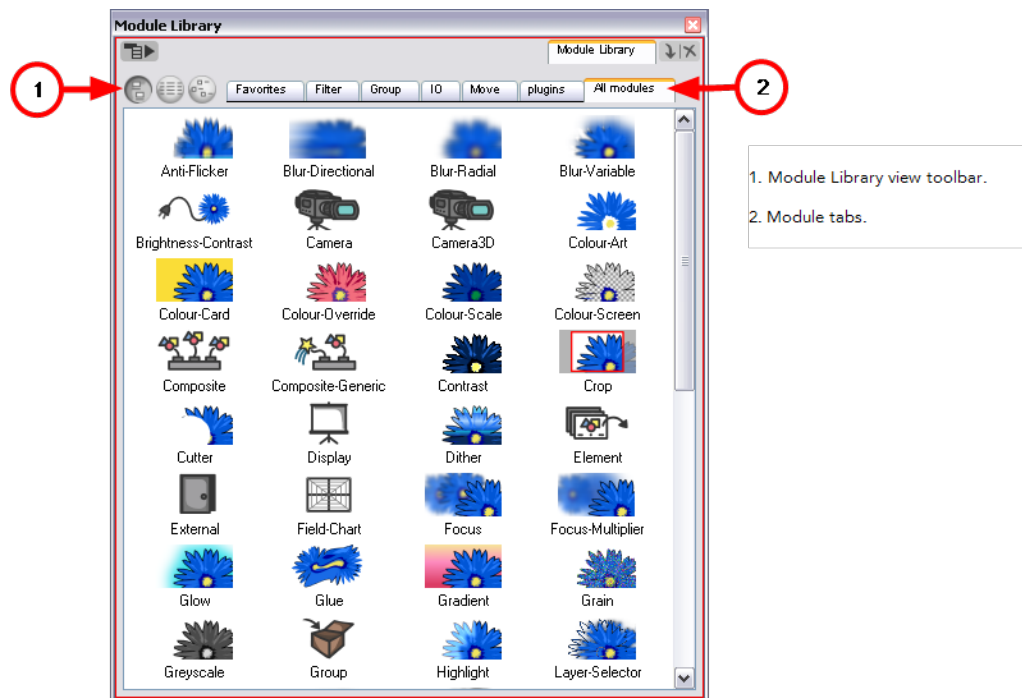
Refer to [Pegs on page 914](#) for further information about Pegs.

## Related Topics

- [Help View on page 1](#)

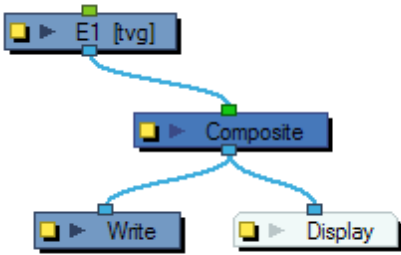
## Module Library View

If you need to add new effects and other modules to the Network view, you will need to get them from the Module Library.



- 1. Module Library view toolbar.
- 2. Module tabs.

When you create a new project in Animate Pro, the default network that appears in the Network view looks similar to the diagram below.



## Module Library View Toolbar

In the Module Library View toolbar, you can switch the display mode of the effect icons:

- View as Icons
- View as List
- View as Icons with Names

## Module Tabs

The Module Library is conveniently broken up into several sections or tabs:

- **Favorites**



Includes the most common modules.

- To add extra modules to the Favorites tab, select any module from any other section and drag it onto the Favorites tab.



- **Filter**

Includes effect modules, such as blurs.

- **Group**

Includes modules used for grouping, like Group modules and Multi-Port modules.

- **IO**

Includes Display, Drawing, Write and Note modules.

- **Move**

Includes modules used to change elements over time, like Peg modules, as well as certain transformations.

- **Plug-ins**

Includes plug-in modules.

- **All modules**

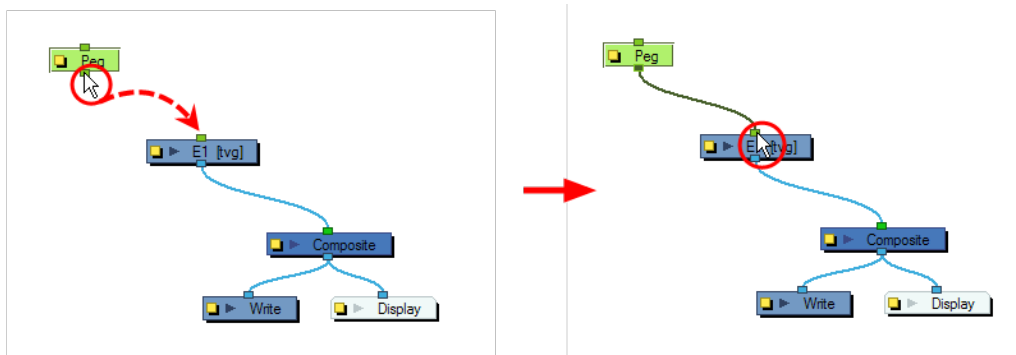
Lists all of the modules available.

## Related Topics

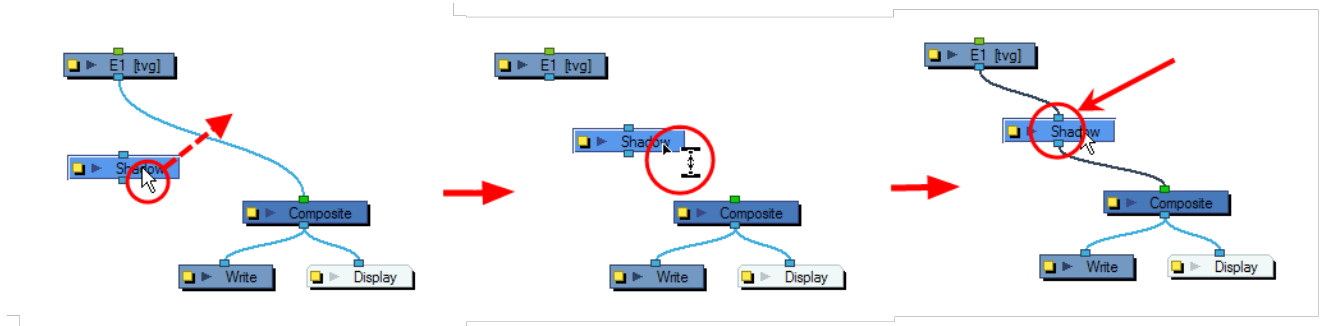
- [Importing a Module](#) below

## Importing a Module

To bring a module into your Network view, just drag it from the Module Library and drop it into the Network view. Once in the Network view, you can click on either the Input Port or Output Port of a module and drag out a cable. You can then connect this cable to either the Output Port or Input Port of another module.



If you would like to connect a module between two connected modules, you can use the [Alt] key as you drag the new module over the existing cable connection. Using the same [Alt] key, you can also disconnect a module.



If you want to remove a module you can click on it to select it and press [Delete] to remove it from the Network view.

## Related Topics

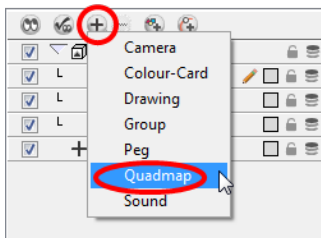
- [Adding Effects Through the Timeline View](#) below

# Adding Effects Through the Timeline View

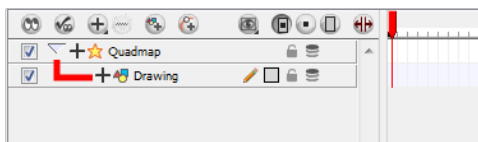
Although all effects should be added through the Network view, there are two effects that can be quickly added through the Timeline view. These effects, Colour Card and Quadmap, can also be added through the Network view in the usual manner. In addition, there is a special way of grouping elements that can only be done through the Timeline view.

**To add effects in the Timeline view:**

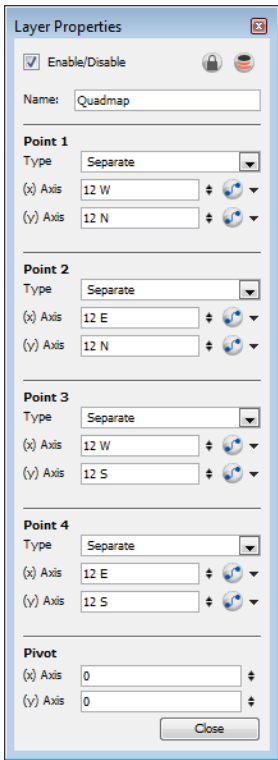
1. In the Timeline view, click on the **Add Layers**  button and from the Layers drop-down menu select the desired effect that you would like to add.



2. The effect appears in the Timeline view. The Colour-Card does not require to be parented to any layer.
3. For the Quadmap, drag the drawing layer onto the Quadmap layer to parent it.



4. In the Timeline view, double-click on the Quadmap layer to open the Layer Properties view.
5. In the Layer Properties view, adjust the parameters.

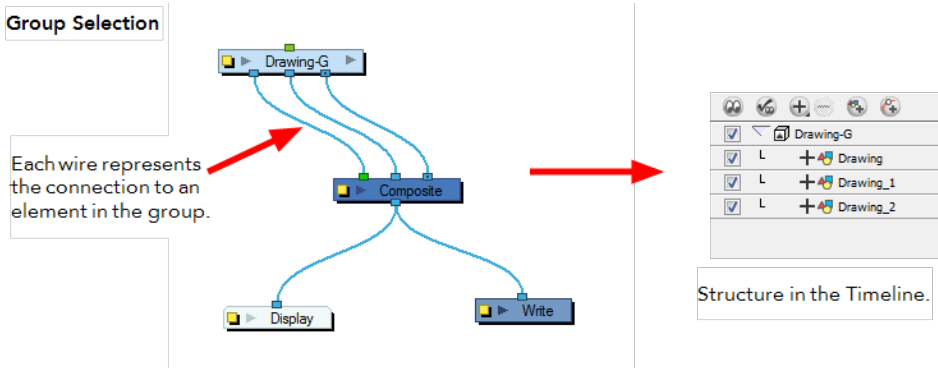


Once you have set the parameters for your effect, you can store it in the Library view as a template so you can quickly reuse it later on without having to set the parameters again. Refer to [Creating a Template on page 663](#) to learn more about creating templates.

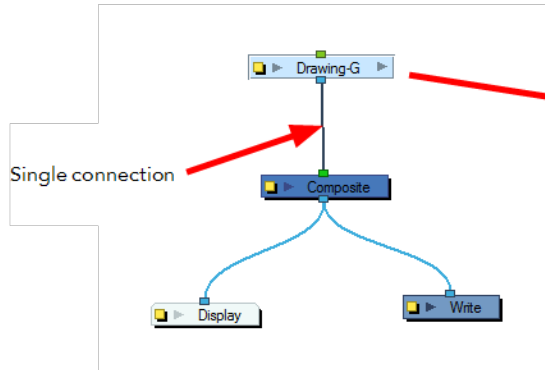
## Grouping from the Timeline View

There are several advantages to using the Group Selection With Composite command (only found through the Timeline) over the simple Group Selection (which references both the Group layer in the Timeline and the Group module in the Network view).

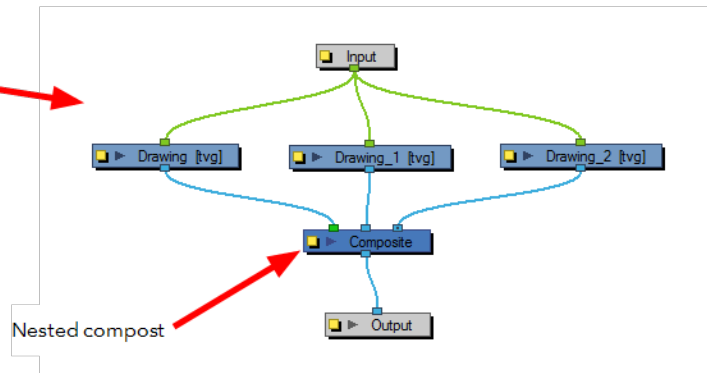
One of the advantages that this command has is that it groups all the selected elements into a neat module that has a nested composite. This means that there is only one connection coming out of the Group module. With the simple Group module or command, the Group displays the same number of connections as elements in the group. Both grouping commands display the same structure in the Timeline view.



**Group Selection with Composite**



**Inside the Drawing-G module**



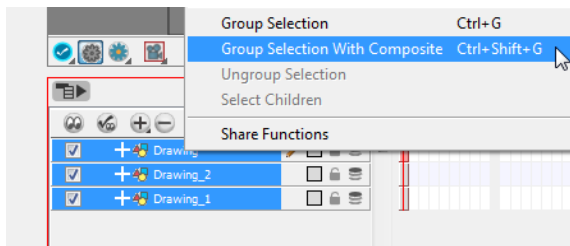
The Group Selection With Composite command should only be used before any work has been done in the Network view and it recommended for objects whose stacking order is of no consequence.



Using the Group Selection from Composite command on elements that have effects, have been tweaked in the Network view, or whose stacking order is of consequence, may cause the grouped elements to lose their properties once grouped in this way. In addition, though you may only select a few modules to group, if there are other layers in the timeline that exist between the selected layers, they will automatically be grouped, even if not selected.

**To group selected elements using the Group Selection With Composite command:**

1. In the Timeline view, in the layers section, select the elements that you wish to group.  
Any layers between the selected layers will automatically get grouped as well, so if the stacking order is of no consequence, move extra layers either above or below the layers that you wish to group.
2. Right-click on one of the highlighted layers and from the pop-up menu select Group Selection With Composite.



3. The layers appear indented under a new Group layer in the Timeline view and in a new Group module in the Network view.


**Related Topics**


- [Importing a Module](#) on page 1081

# Previewing Effects

Most effects need to be rendered in order to be previewed properly. Some effects can be displayed in the OpenGL view, but most of them have to be rendered and previewed in the Render Mode of the Camera view.

## To preview your effects:

1. In the Camera view, click on the Render Mode  button.


In the Camera view bottom left corner, the Preview Update  button indicates the status of the rendering. Depending on the size of the frame to render, it might take several seconds.

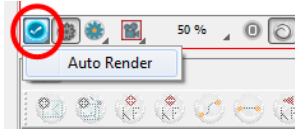
When the rendering is in progress, you will see the progress wheel icon, and once the progress is completed, you will see the Up-to-date Preview icon.



Once you preview your effect, you might want to adjust it. By default, as soon as you modify a parameter, Animate Pro will recalculate the preview image. If your scene is rather heavy and you do not want the system to perform the render preview automatically, you can disable the Auto-Render option and request the preview update yourself.


## To disable the Auto-Render option:

1. In the Camera view bottom left corner, click on the **Preview Update**  button to open the quick access menu.
2. Disable the **Auto-Render** option.




- ▶ In the Rendering toolbar, you can cancel the preview.



Once the Auto-Render option is disabled, you will need to request the preview update. You can do so by either clicking on the Preview Update  button, or by using the Rendering toolbar.

## To update the rendering preview:

1. In the Camera view's bottom left corner, click on the Preview Update  button to open the quick access menu.
2. Click on the Auto-Render option.





Note that you cannot playback your animation in Render mode. You need to actually perform a render, or preview render, to see your animation with the final effects. See [Previewing and Playing Back Effects](#) on page 1202.

---

## Related Topics

- [Previewing and Playing Back Effects](#) on page 1202

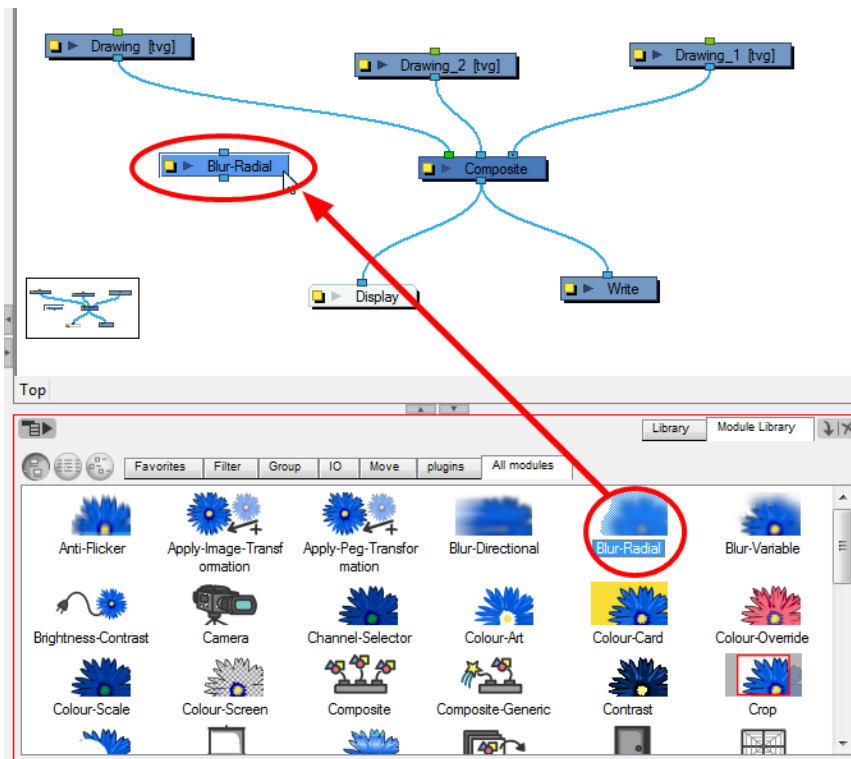
# Animating an Effect Over Time

When compositing your scene, it will often happen that you want to animate the parameters of an effect over time. You might want to have an object fading in or out by changing the transparency level over time or increasing the colour contrast on one of your drawings over a certain frame range.

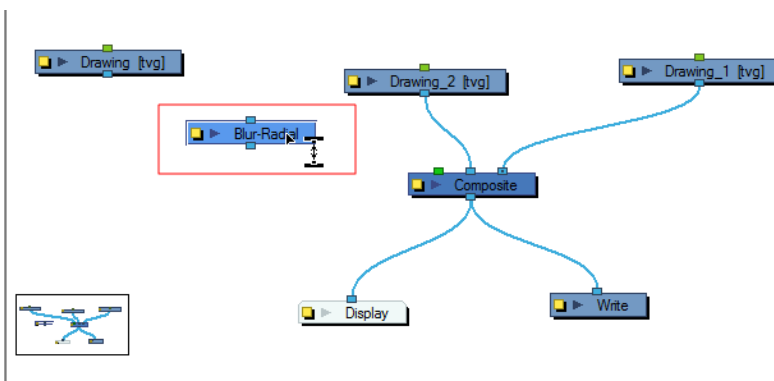
To animate an effect over time, create a function curve by adding keyframes to the parameters you want to animate. To do this, you will use the Layer Properties view, the Network view and the Timeline view. You can fine tune your animation using the Function view.

## To animate an effect over time:

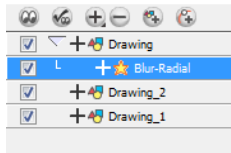
1. In the Network view, drag an effect module from the Module Library view and drop it into the Network view.



2. Plug the effect element between the drawing element that you would like to apply the effect to and a composite module. You can either do this manually by unplugging and plugging, or by holding down [Alt] as you drag it through a connection.

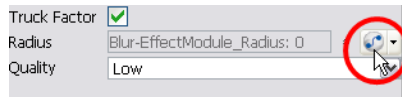


The effect should also appear in the Timeline view as well.




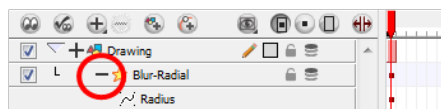
- To animate the value of the parameter, you must create a function curve and add keyframes on it. For example, you could get the Blur-Radial effect to have no blur on the first frame and become very blurry by the end of the scene by animating its Radius parameter. To create the function curve:


- In the Layer Properties view, click on the Function  button you want to animate to create a function curve.

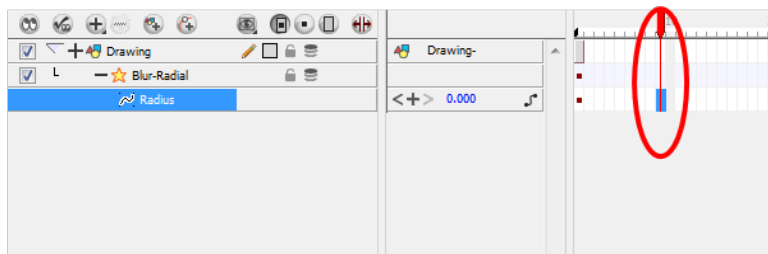



OR

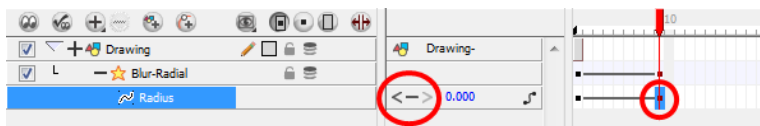
- You can also expand the effect layer's parameters in the Timeline view by clicking on the **Expand Function**  button and add a keyframe to the parameter you want to animate or press [F6].



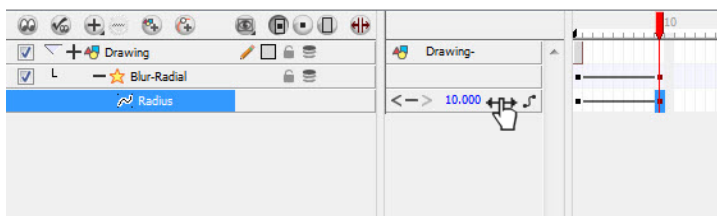
- In the Timeline view, click on the **Show Data View**  button.
- In the Timeline view, go to the frame where you want to start animating the effect.



- In the Data view, click on the **Add Keyframe**  button.



- In the Value field scroll to the keyframe value or type the value in the field.





- If your keyframes are stop-motion keyframes, in the Timeline view, select the new keyframes. Right-click on the selection and select **Set Motion Keyframe**.
8. Repeat this process for each keyframe to be added.



Refer to the [Previewing and Playing Back Effects](#) on page 1202 to learn how to preview animated effects.

---

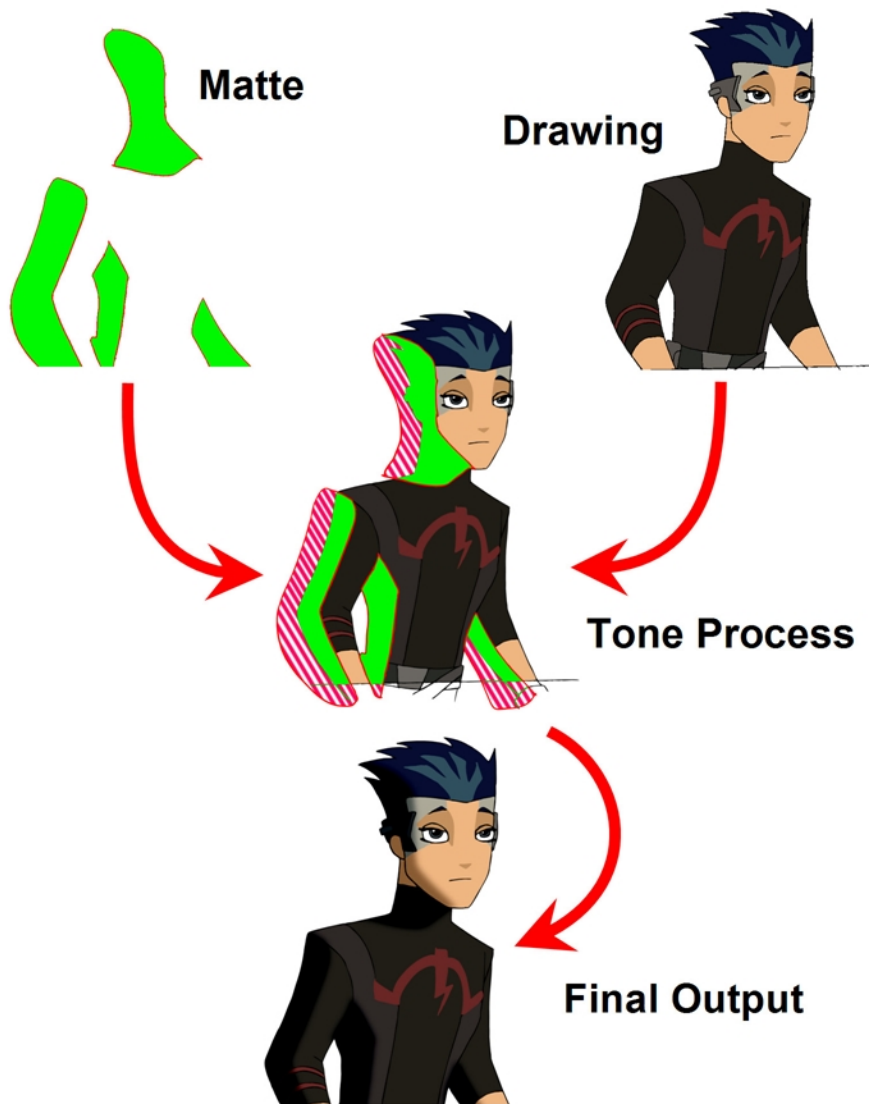
## Related Topics

- [Modifying a Path in the Function View](#) on page 951

# How Does an Effect Work?

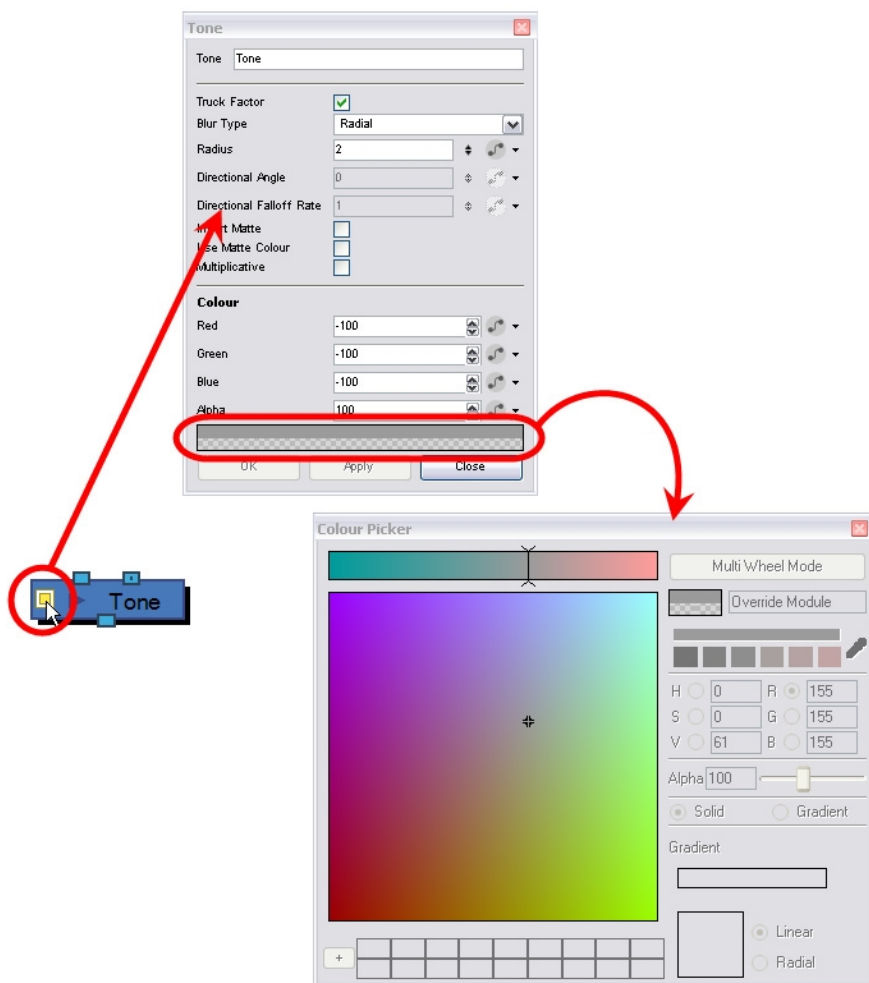
An effect always needs a drawing connection and sometime a matte or shape connection. A matte provides drawing information that will be used to determine the area where the effect will be applied on the drawing. The details and colours within the matte drawing do not matter, as the system will only use the shape and transparencies in it. A matte is also known as mask.

The matte principle can be demonstrated on the Tone effect.



The drawing layer is connected in the right port of the effect and the matte (mask) in the left port. The Tone effect then applies darker colours where the matte overlaps the image, blurs the tone edge, and finally clips out the extra tone zone outside of the drawing before outputting a final drawing with a tone.

The tone's parameters can be adjusted in the Layer Properties view and any of them can be linked to a function column to be animated over time. This means that all of the effects can be customized.



## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on the next page

# Using Effects

Here is the list of the main effects available in Animate Pro. Each effect and how to use it is described in the corresponding section.

- 
- [Anti-Flicker](#) on the facing page
  - [Apply Peg Transformation](#) on page 1094
  - [Apply Image Transformation](#) on page 1099
  - [Auto Patch](#) on page 1102
  - [Blending](#) on page 1104
  - [Blur-Directional](#) on page 1107
  - [Blur-Radial](#) on page 1109
  - [Blur-Variable](#) on page 1111
  - [Brightness and Contrast](#) on page 1112
  - [Channel Selector](#) on page 1113
  - [Chroma-Keying](#) on page 1114
  - [Colour-Art](#) on page 1119
  - [Colour Banding](#) on page 1120
  - [Colour-Card](#) on page 1122
  - [Colour-Override](#) on page 1123
  - [Colour-Scale](#) on page 1141
  - [Composite-Generic](#) on page 1142
  - [Contrast](#) on page 1147
  - [Cutter](#) on page 1148
  - [Dither](#) on page 1149
  - [External](#) on page 1151
  - [Focus](#) on page 1153
  - [Focus Multiplier](#) on page 1155
  - [Glow](#) on page 1156
  - [Glue](#) on page 1158
  - [Gradient](#) on page 1160
  - [Grain](#) on page 1162
  - [Greyscale](#) on page 1164
  - [Grid / Field Chart](#) on page 1166
  - [Highlight](#) on page 1170
  - [Layer Selector](#) on page 1172
  - [Line Art](#) on page 1174
  - [Matte-Blur](#) on page 1175
  - [Matte-Resize](#) on page 1177
  - [Motion-Blur](#) on page 1178
  - [Multi-Port-In](#) on page 1180
  - [Multi-Port-Out](#) on page 1180
  - [Negate](#) on page 1181
  - [Note](#) on page 1182
  - [Overlay Layer](#) on page 1183
  - [Pixelate](#) on page 1185
  - [Placeholder](#) on page 1186
  - [Quadmap](#) on page 1186
  - [Refract](#) on page 1188
  - [Remove Transparency](#) on page 1190
  - [Shadow](#) on page 1191
  - [Sparkle](#) on page 1194
  - [Tone](#) on page 1196
  - [Transparency](#) on page 1198
  - [Underlay Layer](#) on page 1200
- 



To learn about the Deformation modules, refer to [Deformer Effects](#) on page 801.



To learn about the Composite module, refer to [Composite Module](#) on page 602, [Composite Layer Properties](#) on page 607 and [Managing a Network with a 3D Scene Setup](#) on page 872.



To learn about the Display module, refer to [Display Concepts](#) on page 621.



To learn about Crop, Scale-Output and Write modules, refer to [Write Module](#) on page 1217, [Scale-Output Module](#) on page 1223, [Crop Module](#) on page 1225 and [Connecting the Required Modules](#) on page 1229.



To learn about the Ortholock, refer to [Locking Flat Drawings to the Camera Angle](#).



To learn about the Quake module, refer to [Animating a Camera Shake using the Quake Module](#).

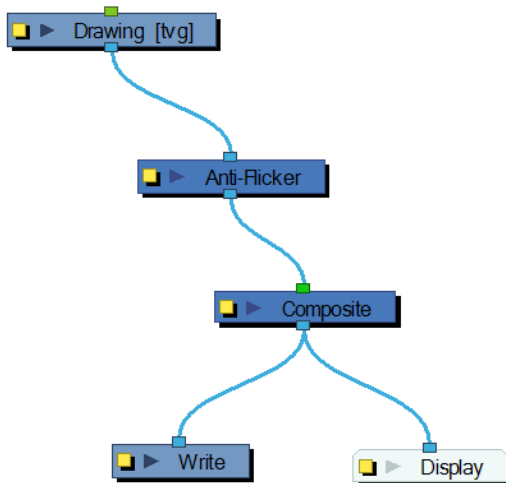
## Related Topics

- [How Does an Effect Work?](#) on page 1090

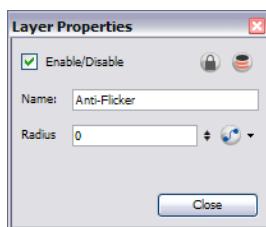
## Anti-Flicker



Use the Anti-Flicker to compensate for flickering in your output to TV formats. The Anti-Flicker effect applies a vertical blur to the rendered output. You should place the Anti-Flicker before a Write module in the Network view.



Use the Anti-Flicker editor to control the amount of blur that is applied to rendered output. In the Radius field, enter a value for the number of pixels to be considered in the blur.



## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Apply Peg Transformation



Use the Apply Peg Transformation module to apply a transformation coming from a Peg, Ortholock, or Quadmap module on a single module or a group of modules. When using the drawing layer's No Clipping option, you can use this module to apply all Camera and Peg transformations once all of the effects and modules connected above the drawing module are calculated.

You can use this effect module to create a simple highlight on a cut-out puppet or use the No Clipping option available in the drawing layer.

The No Clipping option, found under the drawing Layer Properties' Advanced tab is used when you do not want to crop your images before all effects are applied to your drawing. No camera motion or peg transformation will be applied to your drawing until you connect an Apply Peg Transformation.

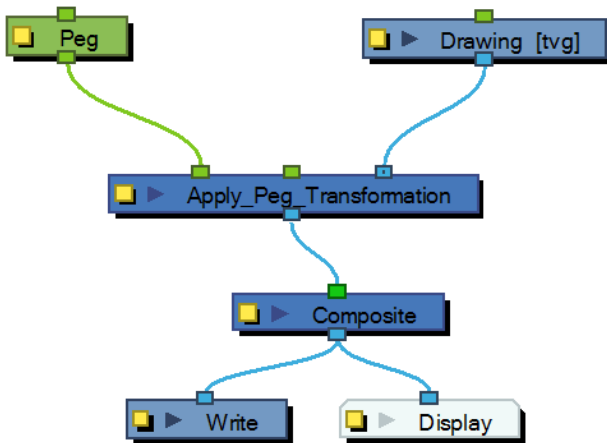


Refer to [Positioning an Element Using the Layer Properties](#) on page 583 to learn more about the drawing layer's Advanced tab.

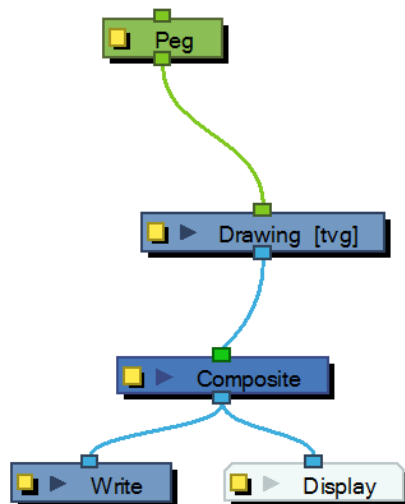
The advantage of this module is that you can create a second output of your image or puppet and offset it, scale it or apply any kind of transformation on it.

The transformations set in the Peg, Ortholock, or Quadmap module connected to the Apply Peg Transformation module are applied **BEFORE** the image is composited.

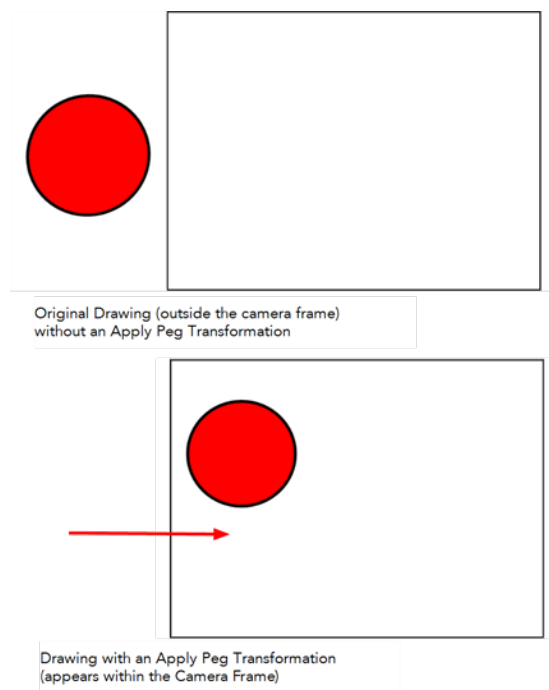
Here is an example of how to connect the Apply Peg Transformation module:



The transformation set in the Peg module from the example above is applied before the image is composited, which is the equivalent of the following network:



In the following images you can see the result of the transformation without the Apply Peg Transformation module and with it:



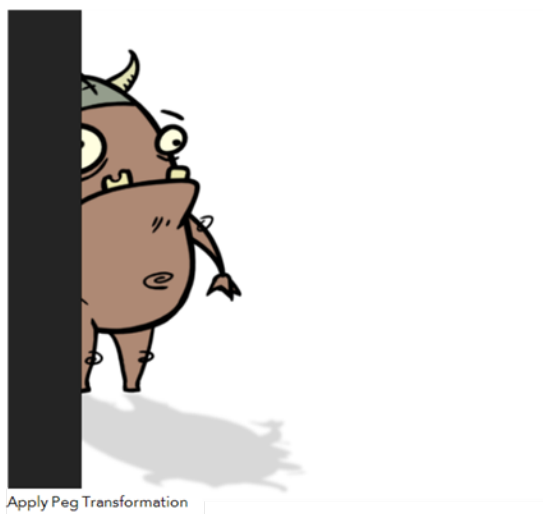
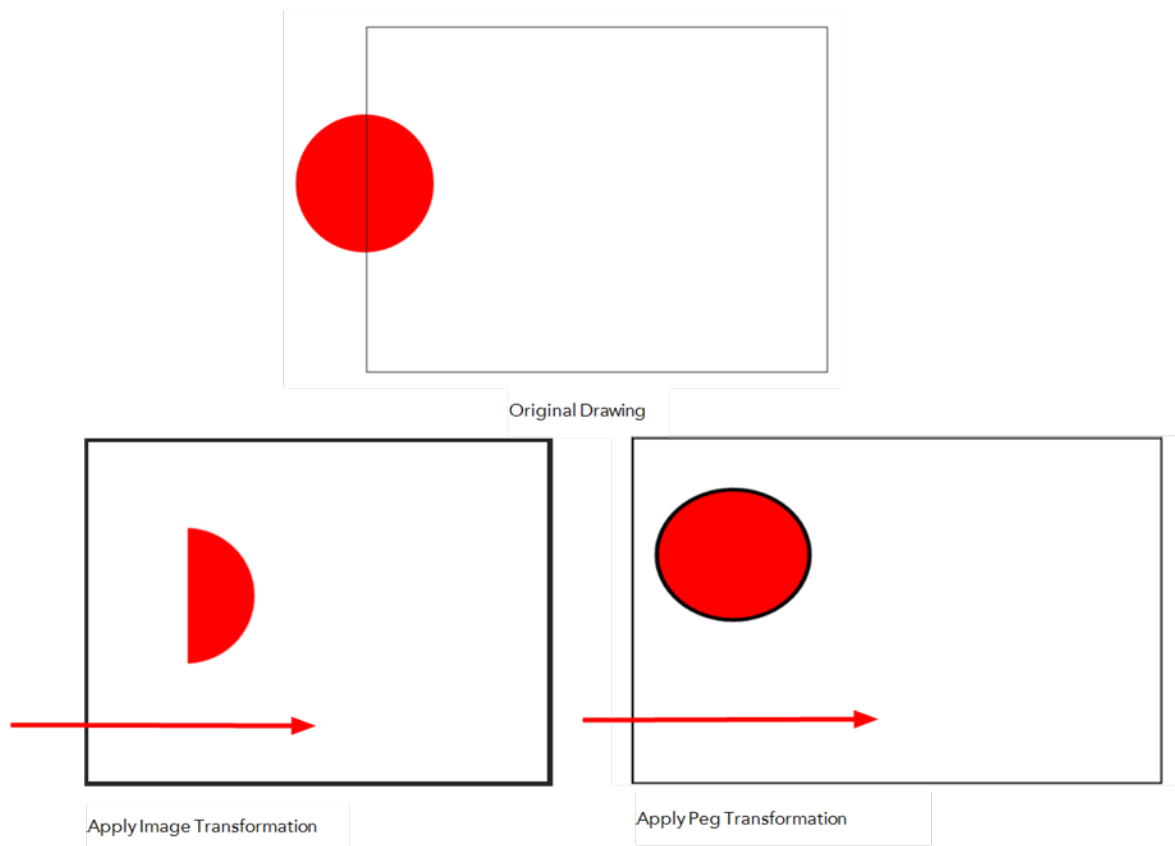
Using the Apply Peg Transformation you can apply transformation on drawings that are outside the camera frame and make them appear inside the frame.

If you are using the Apply Image Transformation module to create a drop-down shadow for a character, it will work correctly so long as the character is not going outside of the camera frame or that the drawing connected in it is a **VECTOR** drawing. The reason is the Apply Image Transformation module applies the transformation once the drawing is rendered, moved by its own set of Pegs, motion paths and quadmap and cropped to the camera frame size. This crop operation does not occur if the drawing is a vector drawing (\*.TVG). Although, as soon as the drawing is passed through an effect module or a bitmap type Composite module, the drawing is turned into a bitmap image and gets cropped.

So, if you offset a bitmap half inside and half outside the camera frame, the outside part is cropped out and then moved by the Apply Image Transformation module. A part of the original drawing is cut. You need to use the



Apply Peg Transformation module for the transformation to be applied before the image is processed and cropped.



## Related Topics

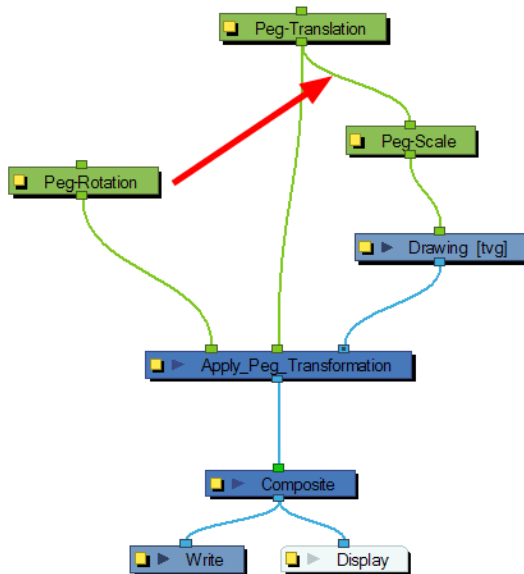
- [Advanced Apply Peg Transformation](#) on the next page
- [Apply Image Transformation](#) on page 1099

## Advanced Apply Peg Transformation

You can use the Apply Peg Transformation's middle port to apply the transformation you connected to the module after one of the Peg or Quadmap connected above the drawing module.

In the following example, two pegs were added to control the different motions on independent trajectories:

- Peg-Translation
- Peg-Scale



When there is no Apply Peg Transformation module, the Peg-Translation is the first trajectory to affect the drawing module. Then, once the translation is applied, the Scale trajectory affects the drawing module.

When using an Apply Peg Transformation module without using the middle port, the Peg-Rotation connected in the APT module is applied at the top of everything. The order in which the trajectories are applied to the drawing module is:

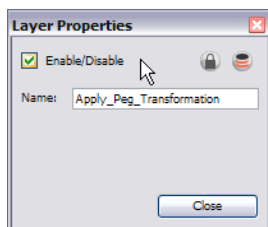
1. Peg-Rotation
2. Peg-Translation
3. Peg-Scale

When the Peg-Translation is connected in the Apply Peg Transformation's middle port, the Peg-Rotation is applied after the Peg-Translation and before the Peg-Scale. This means that the translation is done before the rotation instead of the rotation before the translation.

The order in which the trajectories are applied to the drawing module is:

1. Peg-Translation
2. Peg-Rotation
3. Peg-Scale

Use the Apply Peg Transformation editor to rename the module.



## Related Topics

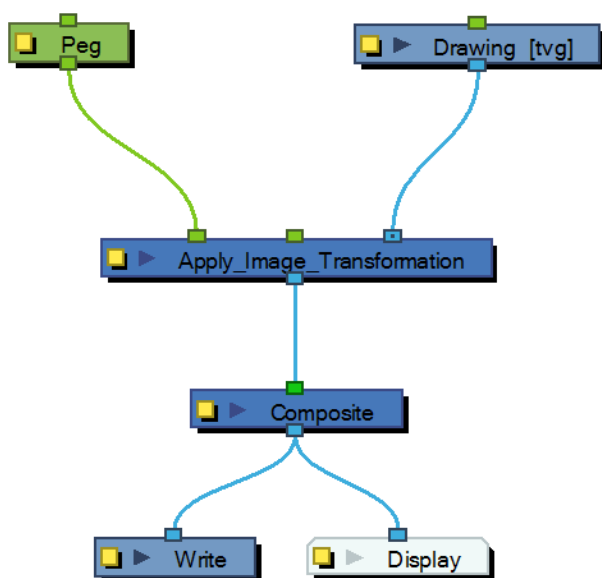
- [Apply Peg Transformation on page 1094](#)

# Apply Image Transformation

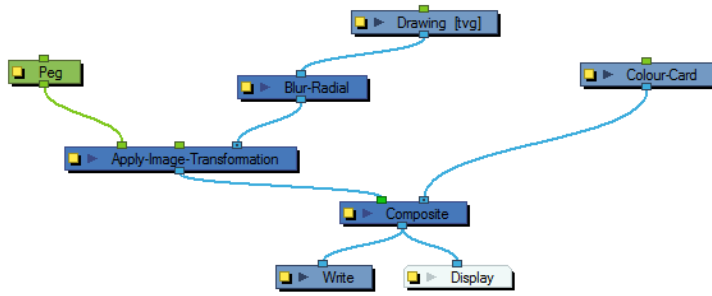
The Apply Image Transformation effect is mainly used when you want to pan an object out of the camera frame and that object has an effect such as a Glow or a Blur on it. When you use a peg or the Apply Peg Transformation module to translate an object such as the sun out of the camera frame, as soon as the sun starts to go outside of the camera frame, the sun's circle is cropped and the blur is applied on the shape left over. This also means that when the sun is completely out of the frame, the Blur is not calculated anymore and the Blur pops out.

To prevent this from happening, you must use the Apply Image Transformation module to pan the sun out.

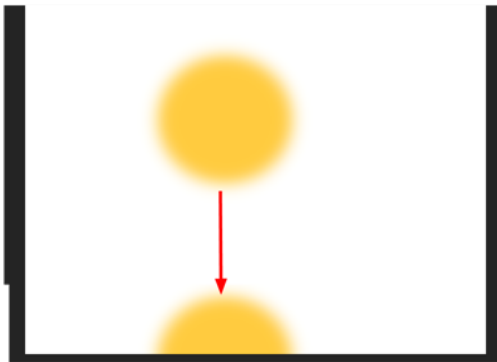
The Apply Image Transformation module applies the panning transformation once the full drawing of the sun is blurred, once the image is composited. Here is an example of this network:



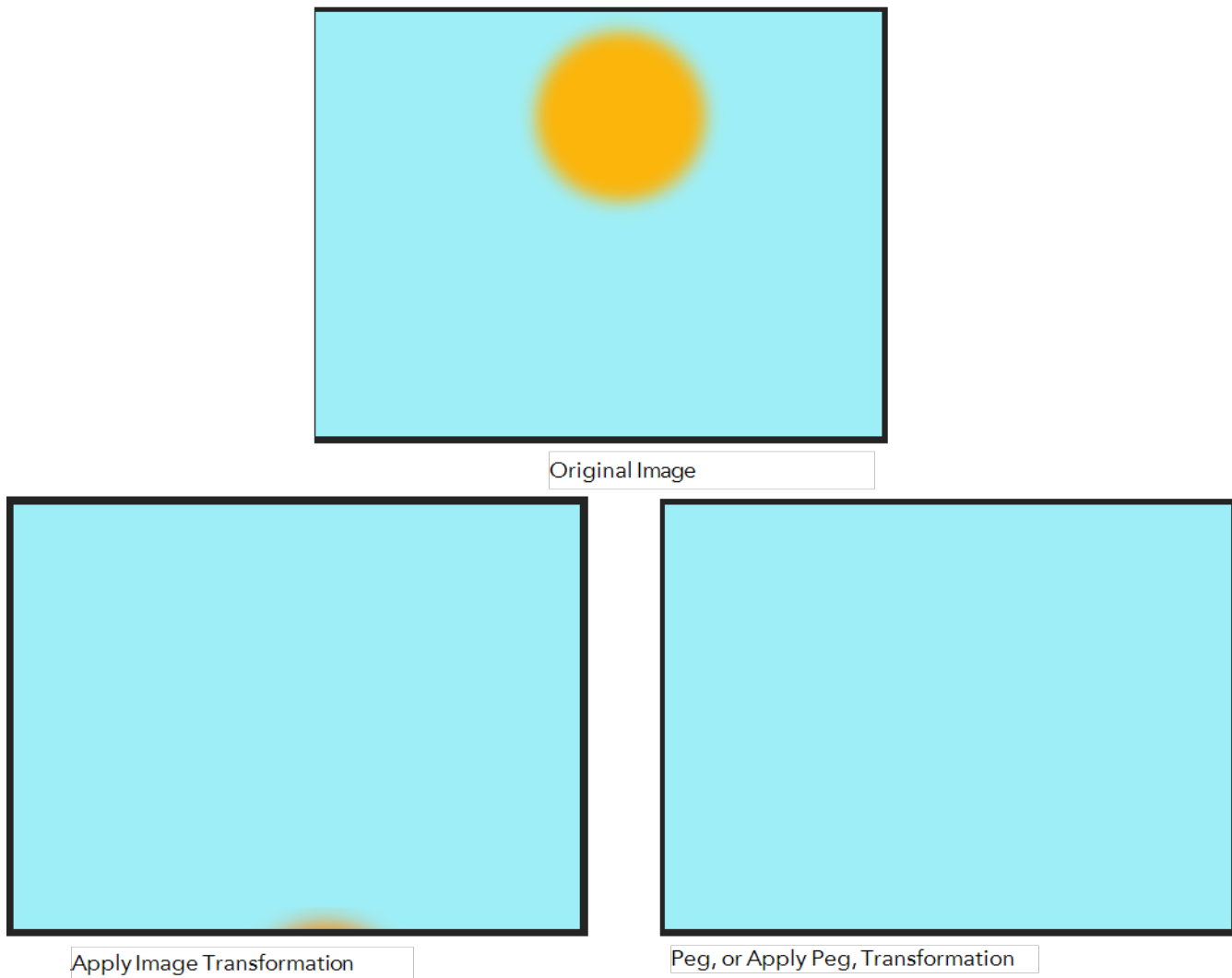
Here is how to connect the Blur effect for a sun panning out:



Here is the visual result of the blurred sun:

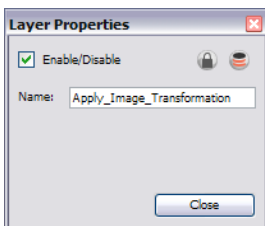


Look at the following example to understand better why using the Apply Image Transformation instead of a regular peg or the Apply Peg Transformation module.



The normal rendering behaviour is to crop the image before applying the effects. When planning a sunset using either a Peg or the Apply Peg Transformation module, as soon as the drawing of the sun is out of the camera frame, the drawing is cropped and there is no image left to blur. This means that the glowing edge pops out of the camera instead of panning out gradually. Using the Apply Image Transformation module, the image is blurred before being panned out, so this means that even once the drawing is out of the camera frame, its glowing edge will still show until the drawing is far enough from the camera border. This way, there is no pop when panning out blurred objects.

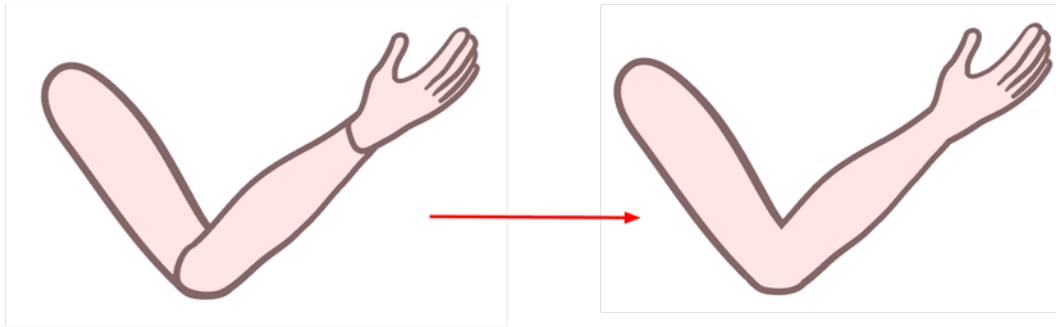
Use the Apply Image Transformation editor to change the name of the module.



## Related Topics

- [Apply Peg Transformation on page 1094](#)

## Auto Patch

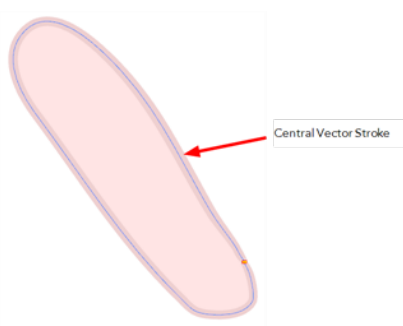


The Auto Patch module is used mainly when creating joint patches for cut-out puppet drawn with pencil lines and painted in the Colour Art layer. Instead of removing a portion of the outline to attempt to create a seamless joint, you can draw complete pieces and with the Auto Patch module, automatically create a perfect articulation.

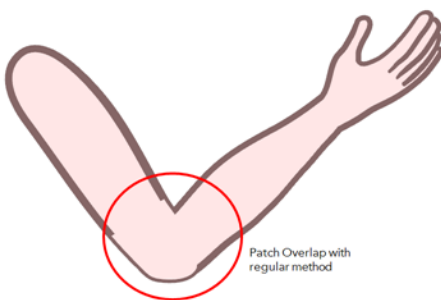
The requirements for this effect to work are:

- Drawing outlines must be drawn in pencil lines
- Drawing outlines must be drawn in the Line Art layer
- Drawing fill colours must be painted in the Colour Art layer

Pencil lines are central vector lines. The vector is located along the centre of the line. This means that when you paint a zone delimited by a pencil line, the colour fill will expand to the centre of the pencil line.

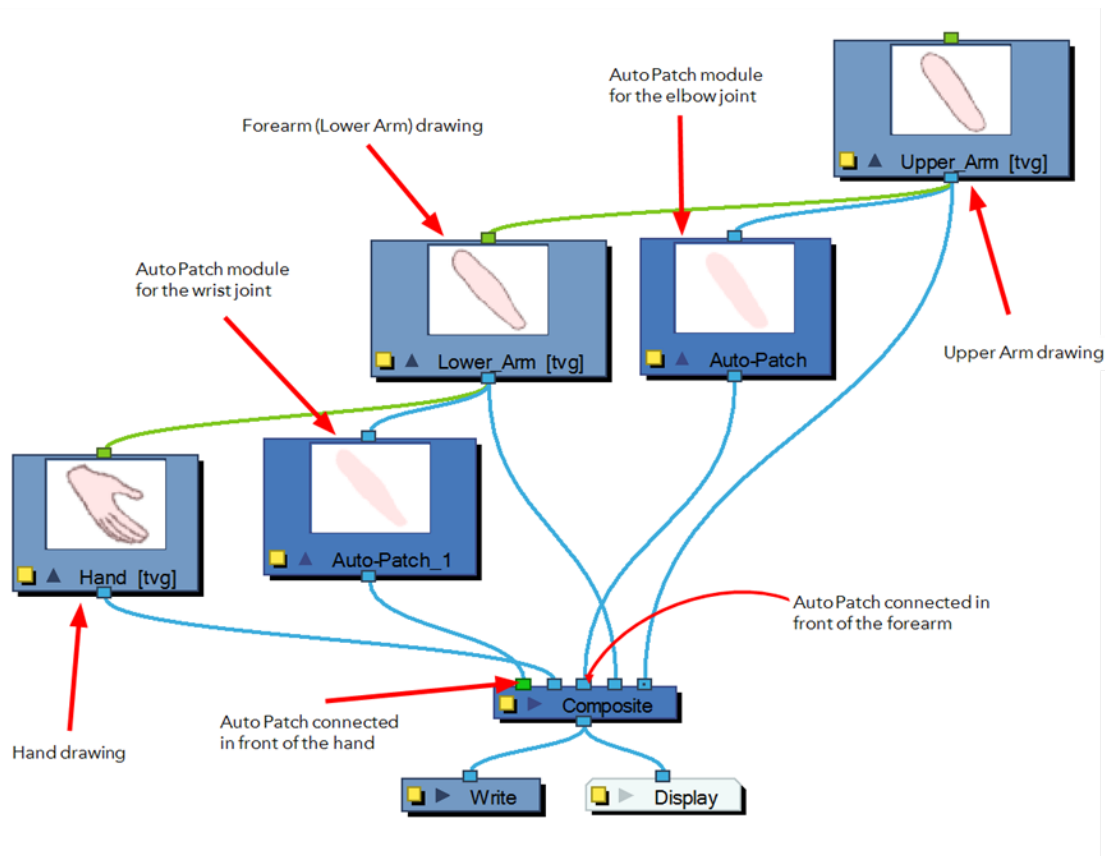


When using the regular patch technique, recommended for the brush line, the result with pencil lines is very odd looking because the colour fill zone is bigger than the pencil line inner contour.



Instead of using the regular patch method, you can use the Auto Patch module. It will automatically extract the Colour Art and clip it to the right size. Then, you can connect it in front of the piece to be covered.

The network connection for the Auto Patch is quite simple. Once your basic character rigging is done, you can add the Auto Patch module to the joints you want to cover. There is no need to set any parameter.



## Related Topics

- [Patch Articulation](#) on page 765
- [Deformation](#) on page 777
- [Character Building](#) on page 681

# Blending

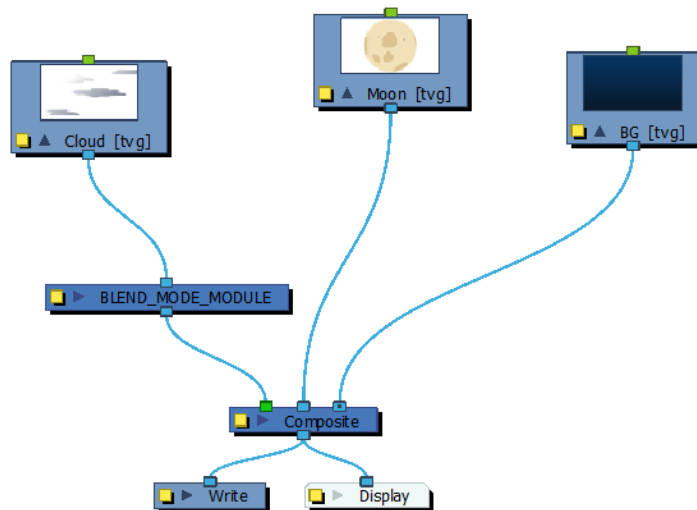


Effects modules, like the Tone module and Highlight module, can control the colour and alpha composite operations for you. These modules were created with pre-set colour and alpha composite operations to fit the most frequently used, composite operations.

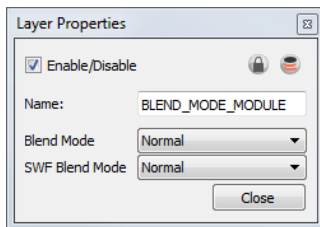
You might, however, still want to control the colour and alpha composite operation between two images using the Blending module, to create a multiplicity of lighting, shadow, filter or ambient effects. The Blending module combines two images into one output image, following the parameters you choose for your movie and images sequence or SWF movie exports.


The drawing module connected to the Blending effect will act as the blending image and will be applied to all the drawing layers situated under them in the Composite module or Timeline view order.





Use the Blending editor to control the settings of the Blending effect.



- **Name:** Use this field to rename the module.
- **Blend Mode:** Choose the blending effect mode you wish to apply to your layer. The Blend Mode type will only be visible when the Camera view is set to Render  mode and will only export to a bitmap movie file or sequence of images.
- **SWF Blend Mode:** Choose the blending effect mode you wish to apply to your layer. The SWF Blend Mode result will only be visible when exported to a SWF movie.

## Blend Mode and SWF Blend Mode

Both the Blending module and Composite-Generic module have regular blending modes and legacy blending modes. The regular blending modes will take the source images and unmultiply them before blending the two inputs together. The images will be remultiplied when being output from the module. The legacy blending modes use the pre-multiplied source images as is in order to apply the effect. Unmultiplying the images before processing them will give a final result closer to what can be found in software such as Adobe Photoshop.

Here is a list of the available Blending modes:

- **Normal:** The layer attached to the effect acts as a normal layer and will not create any blending mode effect.

- **Multiply:** This operation multiplies the blending element colour with the output image. This will darken the colour of the overlapping area.
- **Screen:** This operation multiplies the inverted colour of the blending element with the image. This will lighten the colour of the overlapping area.
- **Lighten (Lighten Legacy):** This operation lightens the area of the output image which, is darker than the blending element's colours. The lighter colours will remain unchanged.
- **Darken:** This operation darkens the area of the output image, which is lighter than the blending element's colours. The darker colours will remain unchanged.
- **Difference (Difference Legacy):** This operation subtracts the blending elements colour from the output image colours or vice-versa, depending on which of them has more bright colours. The final result will be colours that are more vibrant.
- **Add (Add Legacy):** This operation lightens the output image using the blending element.
- **Subtract (Subtract Legacy):** This operation darkens the output image using the blending element.
- **Invert:** This operation inverts the output image colours on the area overlapping the blending layer colours.
- **Overlay (Overlay Legacy):** This operation multiplies or screens the colours from the blending image, with those of the output image, depending on the base colour. Colours from the blending element overlay the colours of the drawing elements, while preserving the highlights and shadows of the base colour. The base colour is not replaced, but mixed with the blend colour to reflect the lightness, or darkness, of the original colour.
- **Hardlight (Hardlight Legacy):** This operation multiplies, or screens, the colours of the blending layer with those of the output image, depending on the blend colour. If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, the image is lightened, as if it were screened. This is useful for adding highlights to an image. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the image is darkened, as if it were multiplied. This is useful for adding shadows to an image. Painting with pure black or white results in pure black or white. Play with the Opacity value to create a subtler look.
- **Alpha:** This operation will blend the alpha value of the blending layer with the output image. This effect is not available for SWF Blend Mode.
- **Erase:** This operation produces a cutter effect using the blending element. This effect is not available for SWF Blend Mode.
- **Divide (Divide Legacy):** This operation divides the output image colour values by the blending layer colour values. The blending image colour values are inverted, creating a negative image. The negative image's colour values are then multiplied by the right image colour values. This effect is not available for SWF Blend Mode.
- **Replace:** This operation replaces the output image by the blending layer. This effect is not available for SWF Blend Mode.
- **Softlight:** This operation darkens or lightens the colours in a soft and diffuse way, depending on the blend colour (image in left port). If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, the image is lightened. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the image is darkened. Painting with pure black or white produces a distinctly darker or lighter area, but does not result in pure black or white.
- **Linear Light:** This operation burns or dodges the colours by decreasing or increasing the brightness depending on the colour of the underlying colour. If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, the colour is lightened because the brightness is increased. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the colour is darkened because the brightness is decreased.

- **Pin Light:** This operation will replace the colours, depending on the underlying colour . If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, pixels darker than the underlying colour are replaced, and pixels lighter than the underlying colour do not change. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, pixels lighter than the underlying colour are replaced, and pixels darker than the underlying colour do not change.
- **Vivid Light:** This operation burns or dodges the colours by decreasing or increasing the brightness depending on the colour of the underlying colour. If the colour is lighter than 50% grey, the blend colour is lightened because the contrast is decreased. If the colour is darker than 50% grey, the blend colour is darkened because the contrast is increased.
- **Exclusion:** This operation produces a similar result to the Difference mode, but with a lower contrast.
- **Dodge:** This operation will lighten the colour.
- **Burn:** This operation will darken the colour.
- **Hue:** This operation will result in a colour that will take the luminosity and saturation of the underlying colour, and the hue of the source colour.
- **Saturation:** This operation will result in a colour that will have the same luminosity and hue of the underlying colour, and the saturation of the source colour.
- **Colour:** This operation will result in a colour that will have the luminosity of the underlying colour, and the hue and saturation of the source colour.
- **Luminosity:** This operation will result in a colour which has the hue and saturation of the underlying colour, and the luminosity of the source colour. This mode is opposite to the Colour mode.



It is possible to select two different blending modes in the same Blending effect layer, in the event that you want to export your project to both a Bitmap and an SWF movie file with different results.

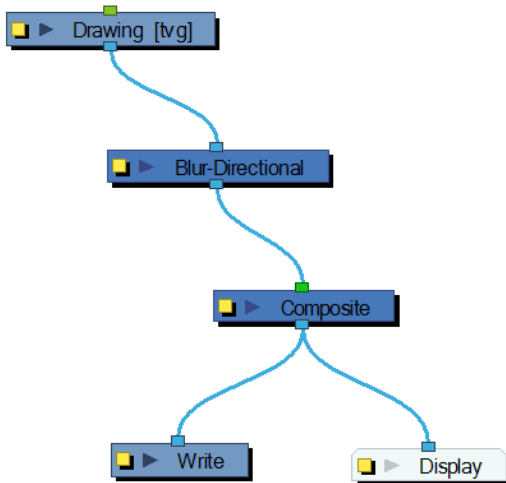
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

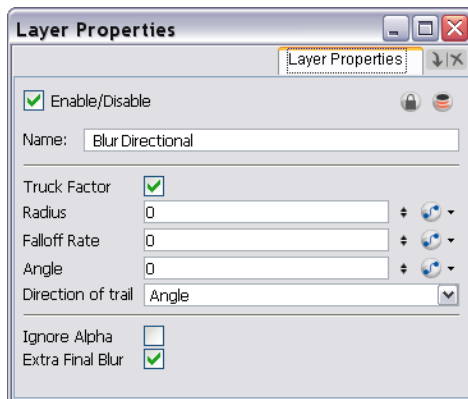
## Blur-Directional




The Blur-Directional effect creates the effect of a motion blur that pulls and smears the image from one contour edge to a different direction or angle. This effect is useful in creating the impression of speed, such as the streaks of colour that follow a car travelling at high speed.



Use the Blur-Directional editor to control the settings of the Blur-Directional effect.



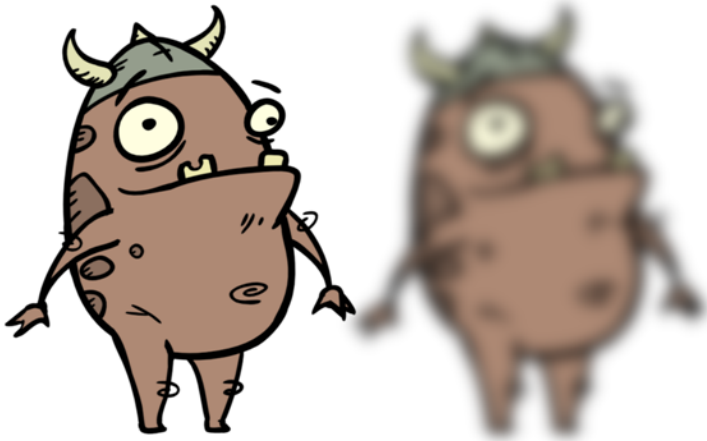
- Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the elements undergo a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the effect's values will remain unchanged regardless of any depth or scale changes. We recommend that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached to this effect. You can attach these values to function curves  to change them over time.
- Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.
- Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.

- A fall-off rate of 0 causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
- A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Angle:** The direction of the blur. Enter a value from 0 to 360.
  - **0:** blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** blurs the image to the north.
- **Direction of trail:** If you do not set an Angle for the direction of the blur, you can select a direction (north, south, east, or west) from this menu. The calculations for this feature are faster than the calculations for the Angle setting.
- **Ignore Alpha:** This option controls the leading edge of the blur. Deselect this option for a solid or hard leading edge on the blur.
- **Extra Final Blur:** This option causes the software to apply a second blur after the Blur-Directional is created. If you have a Blur-Directional that begins at 0 and gradually gets stronger, disable this option to ensure a smooth progression.

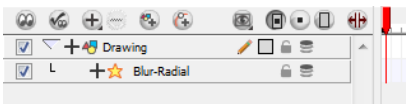
## Related Topics

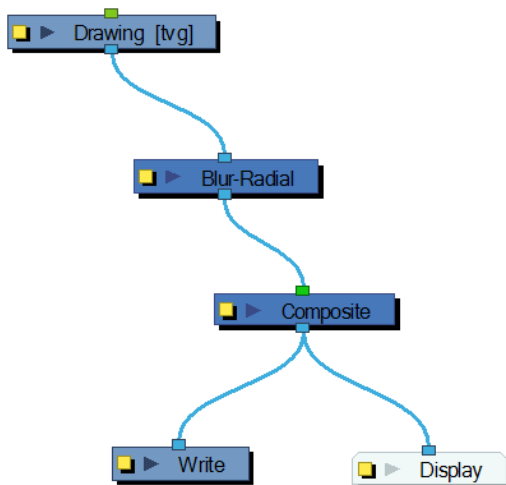
- [Using Effects on page 1092](#)

## Blur-Radial

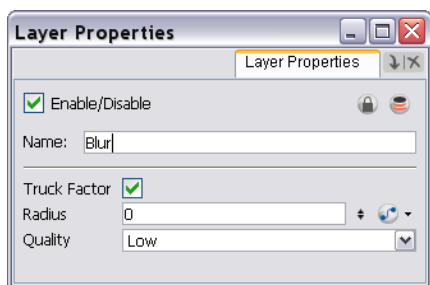


The Blur-Radial effect creates an effect that softens, fogs or obscures the image evenly in all directions. This effect is useful when you want to make cloudy images not realistically seen in detail, such as a drawing object that is farther back or in the background of your scene, usually blurry due to the laws of atmospheric perspective. Other uses include the general softening of objects such as snow, stars and shadows that do not naturally have a hard outline.





Use the Blur-Radial editor to change the values of the Blur effect.

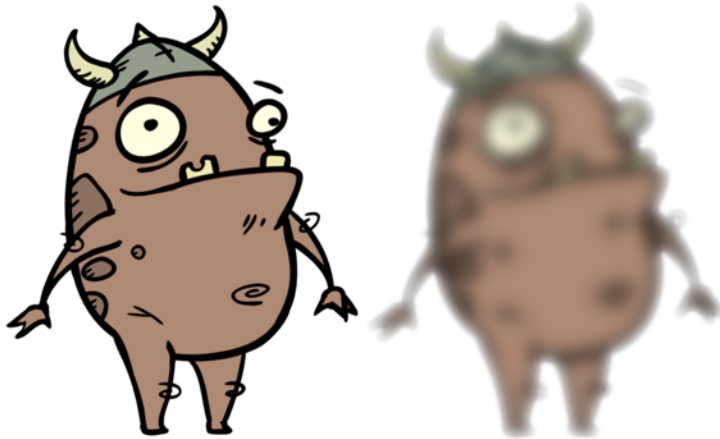


- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option reads only the blur when the elements undergo a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the layer's values will remain unchanged regardless of any depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached to this effect.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.
- **Quality:** Select High for a slow and accurate operation or Low for a faster operation with a more raw look.

## Related Topics

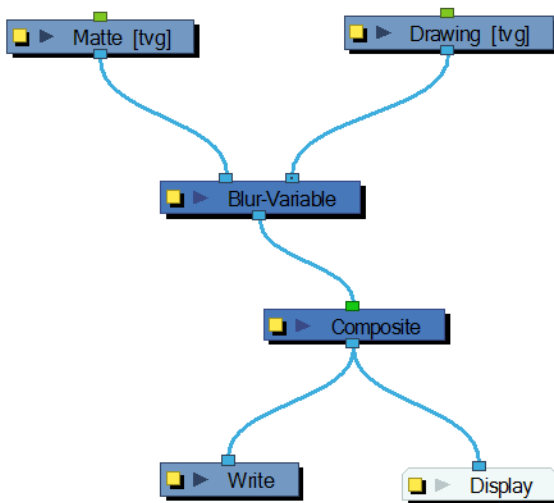
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Blur-Variable



Use the Blur-Variable effect to create a radial blur that varies within a single image based on the white and black values in the matte you supply. You can set one blur value for the black regions in the matte, and another blur value for the white regions. The blur value for each grey region is interpolated between your black and white blur settings.

The following example is a network for a variable blur effect. A black and white copy of the character was used to create the effect you see.



Use the Blur-Variable editor to control the blur value for the white and black radius.

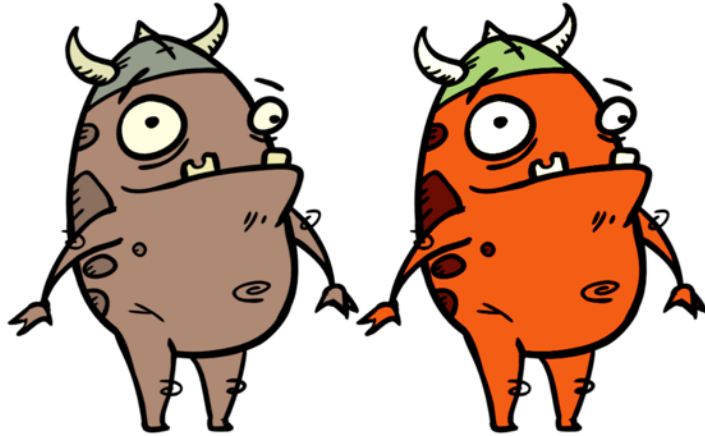
- **Black radius:** The amount of blur to apply to the black (transparent) values in the matte. Higher values create more blur in the colour image's regions that correspond to the black matte region.
- **White radius:** The amount of blur to apply to the white (opaque) values in the matte. Higher values create more blur in the colour image's regions that correspond to the white matte region.

- **Quality:** Select High for a slow and accurate operation or Low for a faster operation with a more raw look.
- **Keep inside source image:** This option confines the blur to the source image.

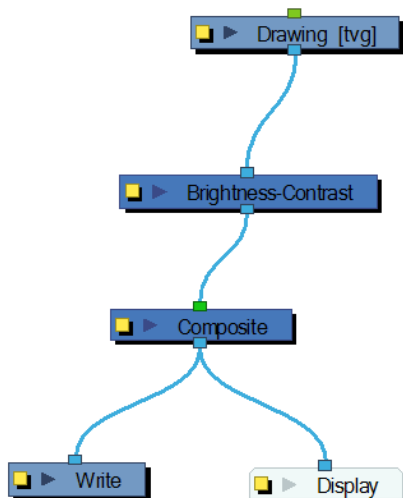
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Brightness and Contrast

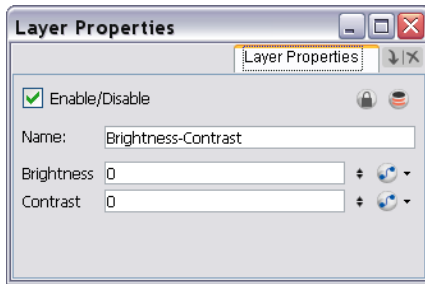


The Brightness and Contrast effect is used to modify the brilliance or dullness of an image or to create a greater difference between the lights and darks of an image by increasing their respective intensities. This effect can be used when an image appears too flat. Increasing the brightness or contrast can give a drawing a more attractive and 3D quality. This can be useful if you want to push your background to the rear by making it look dull and flat and pulling your foreground elements to the front by giving them a higher contrast.



Use the Brightness and Contrast editor to change the values of the Brightness and Contrast effect.





- **Brightness:** A value that is less than 0 will darken the image; a value greater than 0 will brighten it. Attach a Bezier or Ease function to change the brightness over time.
- **Contrast:** A value that is less than 0 will reduce contrast; a value greater than 0 will increase contrast. Attach a Bezier or Ease function to change the contrast over time.

## Related Topics

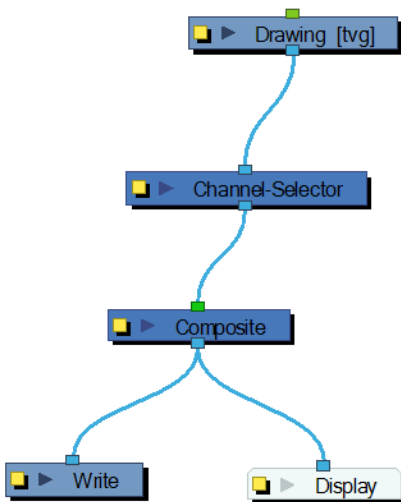
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Channel Selector

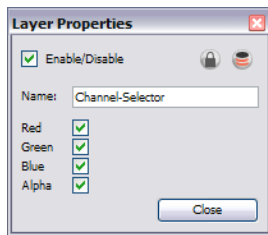


Use the Channel Selector effect to isolate one of the four colour channels of an image:





Use the Channel Selector editor to choose which channel to isolate.



## Related Topics

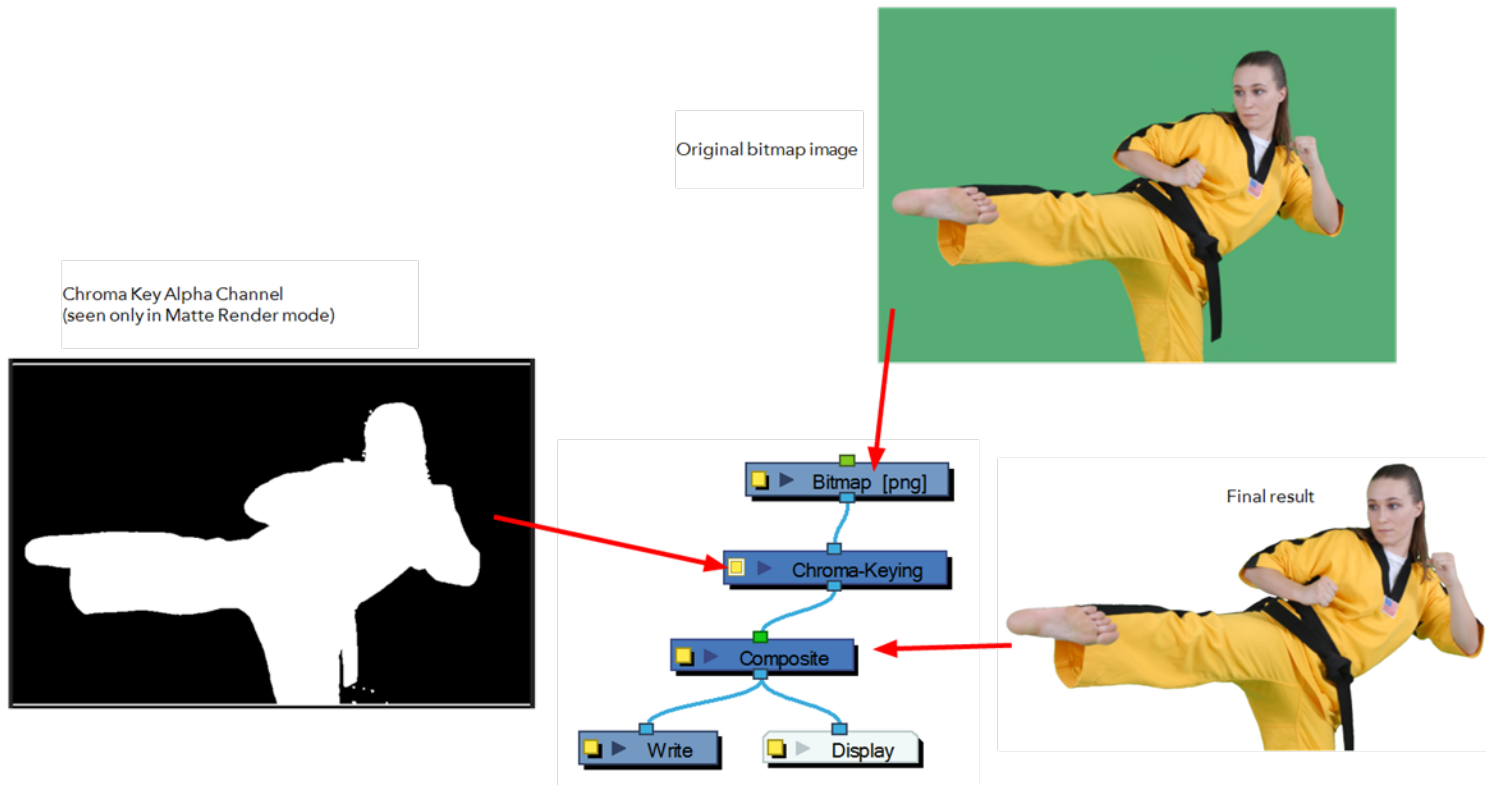
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Chroma-Keying

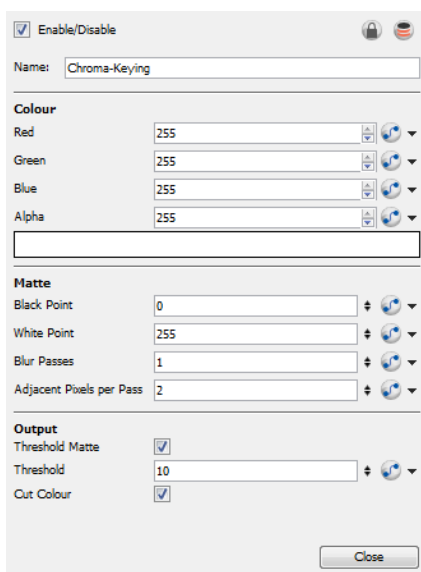


The Chroma-Keying effect lets you create an alpha channel (transparency zone) for your bitmap image or image sequence. For example, if you have a series of bitmap images with a character filmed on a green screen or blue screen, you can use this module to create an alpha channel based on the screen colour and cut it out from your image sequence.

The Chroma-Keying module **MUST** be connected to a bitmap image. The Chroma-Keying will create an alpha channel that can be seen in the Camera view in the Matte Render Mode. To cut the background colour from your image, you will need to use a Cutter module.

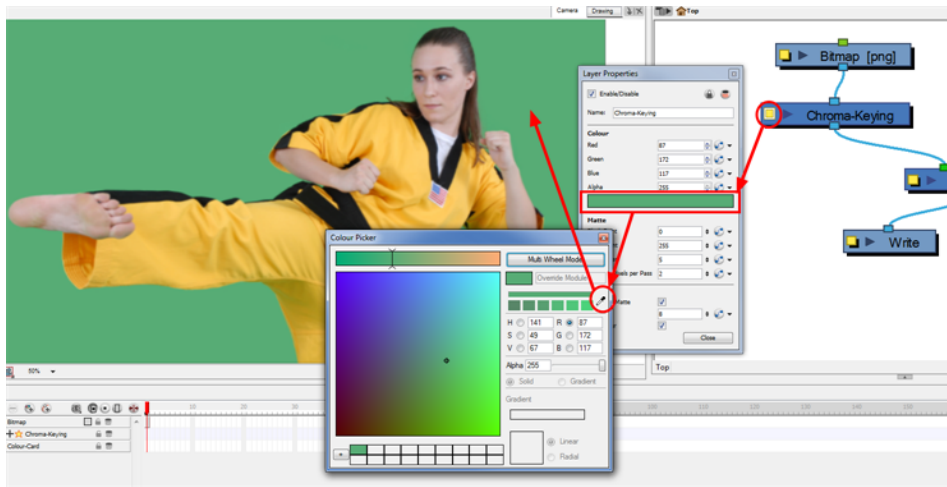


To obtain a better result than just extracting the raw colour, you can adjust some parameters such as the contour blurriness and the matte size. You can see all the options available in the Chroma-Keying Properties window.



- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the Colour section, you can enter the RGB value for the colour to extract from your image. You can also click on the colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and select a new

window. To select the exact colour in your image, you can use the Eye Dropper found in the Colour Picker window and pick it directly in your image.



- **Black Point:** The Black Point parameter will increase the transparent (black) portion of the Chroma Key matte. This means that it will reduce the edge of the visible image.



Black point: 0



Black point: 38

White Point: The White Point parameter will reduce the transparent (black) portion of the Chroma Key matte. This means that it will increase the edge of the

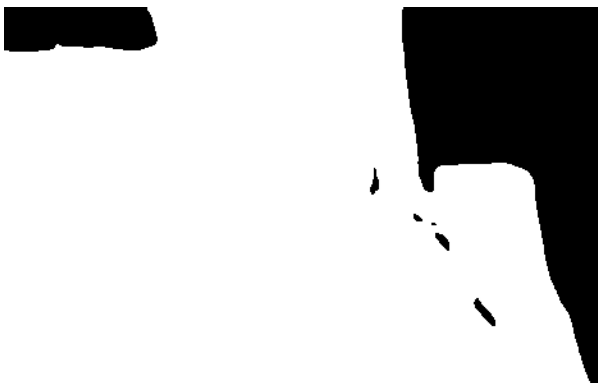


White point: 0



White point: 38

Blur Intensity: The Blur Intensity parameter will blur the overall edges to make them softer.



- **Adjacent Pixels Per Pass:** When blurring the matter edge's with the Blur Intensity parameter, the Adjacent Pixel parameter will blur the matte border with the next few pixels (amount indicated in the field) to create a nicer edge.



Adjacent Pixel: 0



Adjacent Pixel: 2

- **Threshold Matte:** This option will apply a threshold (tolerance) to the selected colour to be removed. The Threshold amount is set in the Threshold field.
- **Threshold:** The Threshold value will increase or decrease the tolerance for the selected colour to be removed from the image. The higher the value is the more coloured pixels will be considered in the Chroma-Keying matte. The pixel colour value will not have to be such a close RGB value to the one selected in the colour swatch. The lower the Threshold value, the closer RGB value the pixels will have to be to the selected colour to be part of the matte.



Threshold: 1



Threshold: 8

- **Cut Colour:** If this option is enabled, the selected colour will be removed from the image and will leave a transparent zone so that you can see the background and other layers behind the image. If the option is disabled, the colour will remain, but an Alpha channel is created that can be used with any other modules requesting a Matte input.

## Related Topics

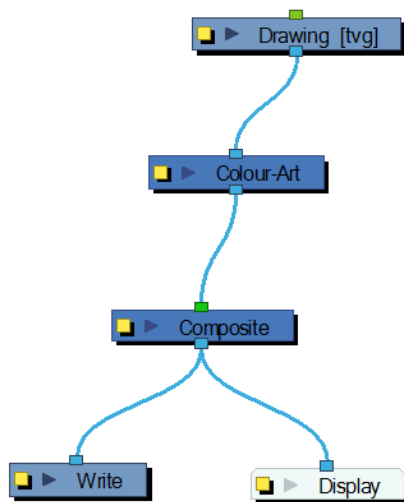
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Colour-Art

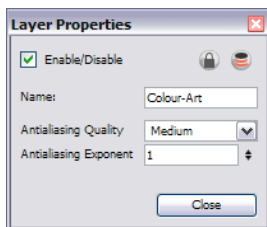


Use the Colour-Art effect to isolate the Colour-Art in a layer. Placing a Colour-Art module after a drawing module in the Network view only displays the Colour-Art output. The Colour-Art module can only be connected after a vector drawing layer or a vector type Composite module. Any bitmap information will not be processed.

This effect will only work if the user drew or painted something into the Colour-Art layer of the drawing.



Use the Colour-Art editor to control how the module renders the Colour-Art.



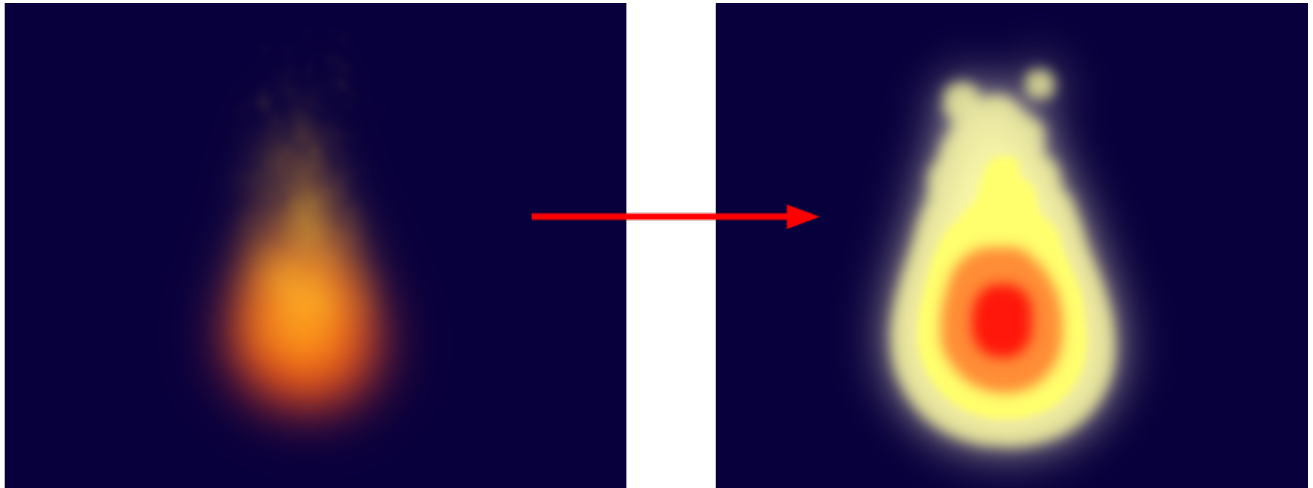
- **Antialiasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to Colour-Art. Choose from Low (no antialiasing), Medium Low, Medium and High (extensive antialiasing). The higher the setting, the greater the amount of antialiasing applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more memory from your system. Use a lower quality when rendering a pencil test.

- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the extent of the area around the Colour-Art edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.

## Related Topics

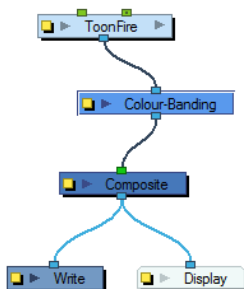
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Colour Banding



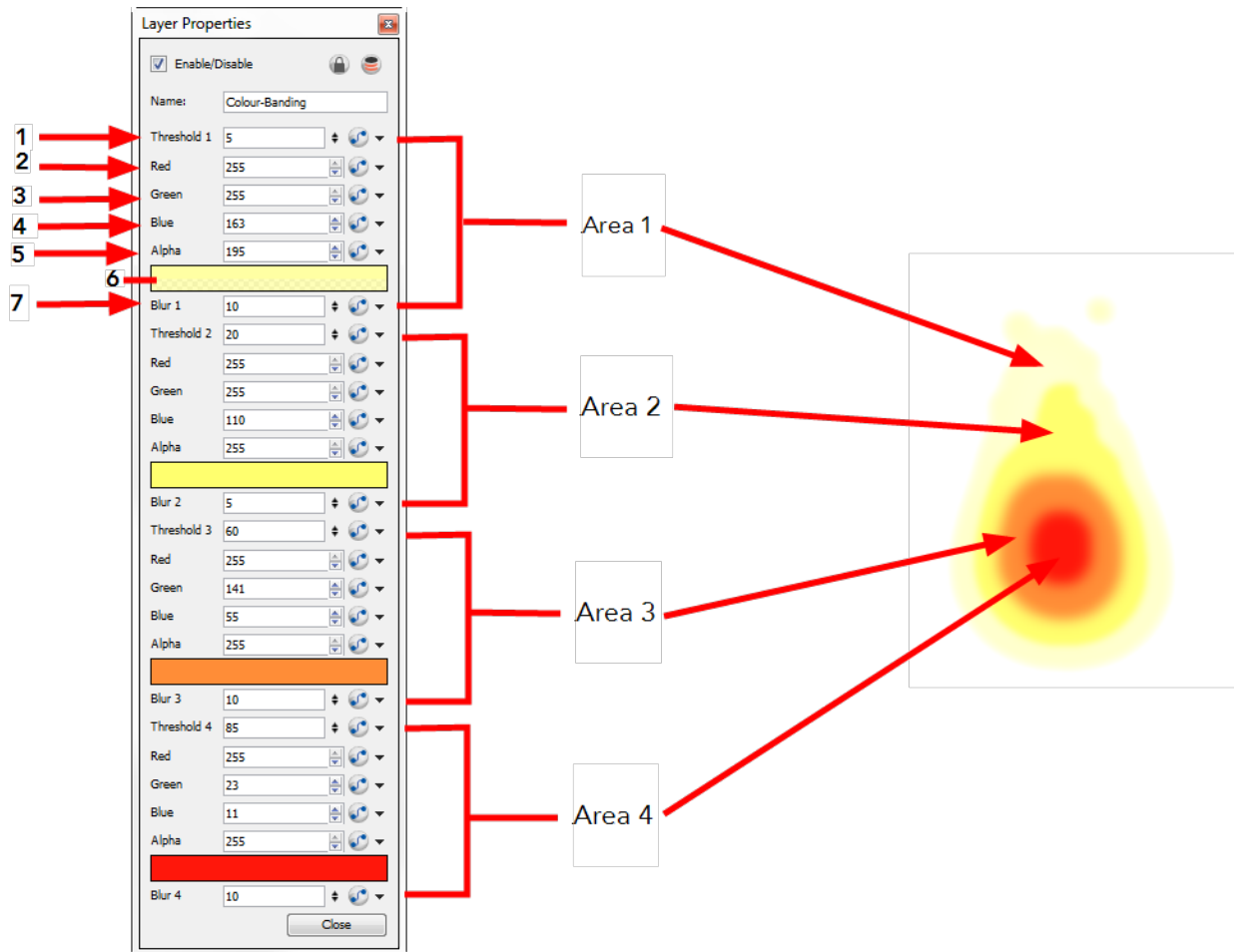
In this example, a Colour Banding module has been connected to a fire created with particle effects.

Use the Colour Banding effect to add a colour banding visual effect to your elements. The module will associate a flat colour to the different regions of your element. These regions are delimited according the alpha values that are set up in the effect module and which will be recognized on the original element. You can use this effect to change the visual style of a particle module, for example, by giving it a more cartoonish look.



Use the **Colour Banding** layer properties dialog box to set up the colour banding effect.





In the Colour Banding layer properties, you have four sections with which to set up the four different regions alpha and colour override values.

This is how the regions range are calculated.

- **Region 1:** Threshold 1 to Threshold 2
  - **Region 2:** Threshold 2 to Threshold 3
  - **Region 3:** Threshold 3 to Threshold 4
  - **Region 4:** Threshold 4 to 100% alpha
1. **Threshold 1:** Use this first threshold field to determine the first region outer limit. A value of 0 represent an alpha of 0 which is completely transparent. A value of 100 represents an alpha of 255 which is completely opaque. If for example, you enter a value of 5 for the first threshold, the region of your element which is within the range of alpha going from 5% to the Threshold 2 value, will be coloured with the Area 1 colour value.
  2. **Red:** Use this field to manually enter the value of red for the first region colour.
  3. **Green:** Use this field to manually enter the value of green for the first region colour.
  4. **Blue:** Use this field to manually enter the value of blue for the first region colour.
  5. **Alpha:** Use this field to manually enter the transparency value for the first region colour.
  6. **Colour:** Click in this colour space to open the Colour Picker dialog box and select a colour for the first region.
  7. **Blur 1:** Use this field to add a blur effect to the edge of the first region.

The three other sections will set up the regions two, three and four.

## Related Topics

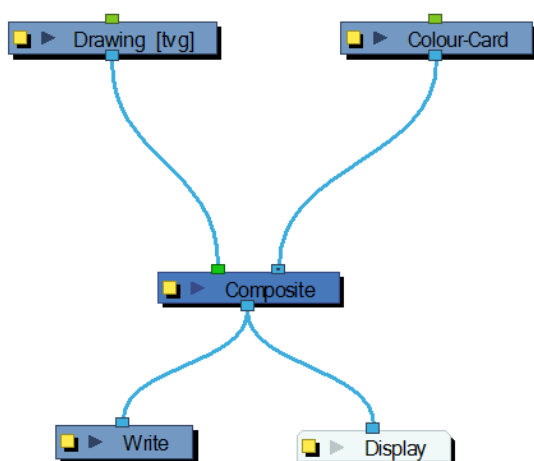
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Colour-Card

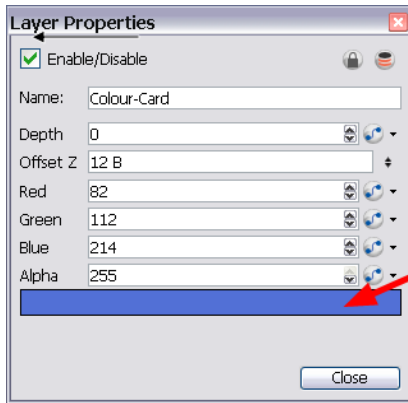


The Colour Card is a solid background the same size as the camera. The Colour Card can be used to fill the scene's background with a solid colour when there is no background image. If no background or colour card is added to the scene, the resulting export will appear with a black background.

By default, the Colour Card has a Z ordering value of **12 Backward**. This will cause the Colour card to be behind all elements that have a value lower than **12 Backward**. Most of the time, the Colour card will appear automatically behind all of your scene's elements as they are all set to **0 Backward**, except if you started playing with the Z ordering of your scene components. At that point, the Colour Card will be in front of the elements that are pushed back to more than 12 fields backward.



Use the Colour Card editor to change the colour values.



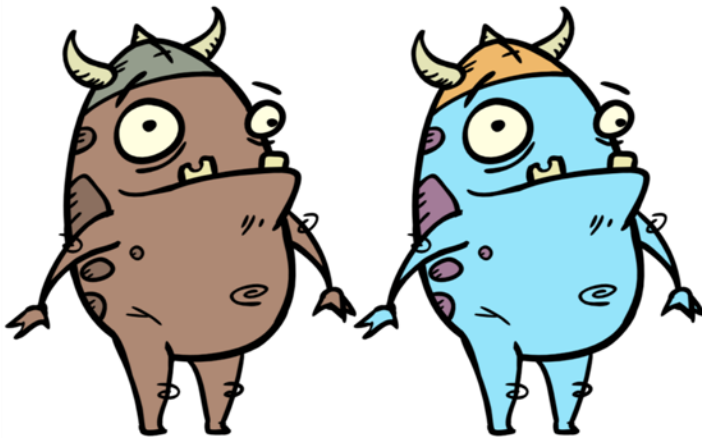
This bar indicates the card colour. Click on the bar to change colour.

- **Depth:** Animate Pro uses the Depth value to determine composition order when the Z value of two elements is the same.
- **Offset Z:** Enter the front-back position of the Colour Card layer in 3D space. This value can be verified in the Top view.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In these fields you can enter a static value for a colour and transparency of the Colour Card or you can attach these parameters to function columns to change their values over time. Click on the Colour rectangle to open the Colour Picker window and select a colour.

## Related Topics

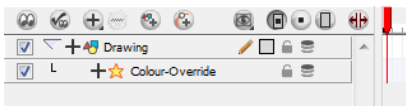
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

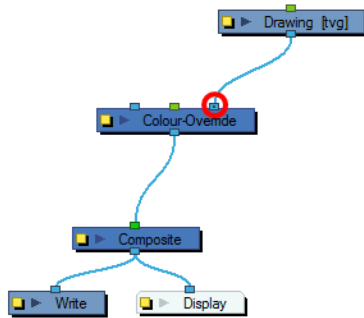
## Colour-Override



The Colour-Override processes the colours in a drawing layer. The drawings in this layer must be TVG files.

Using this effect you can change colours from the palette without affecting the actual palette, swap clone palettes, replace a specific colour zone with a bitmap texture or hide and display selected colours.





Use the Colour-Override effect to:

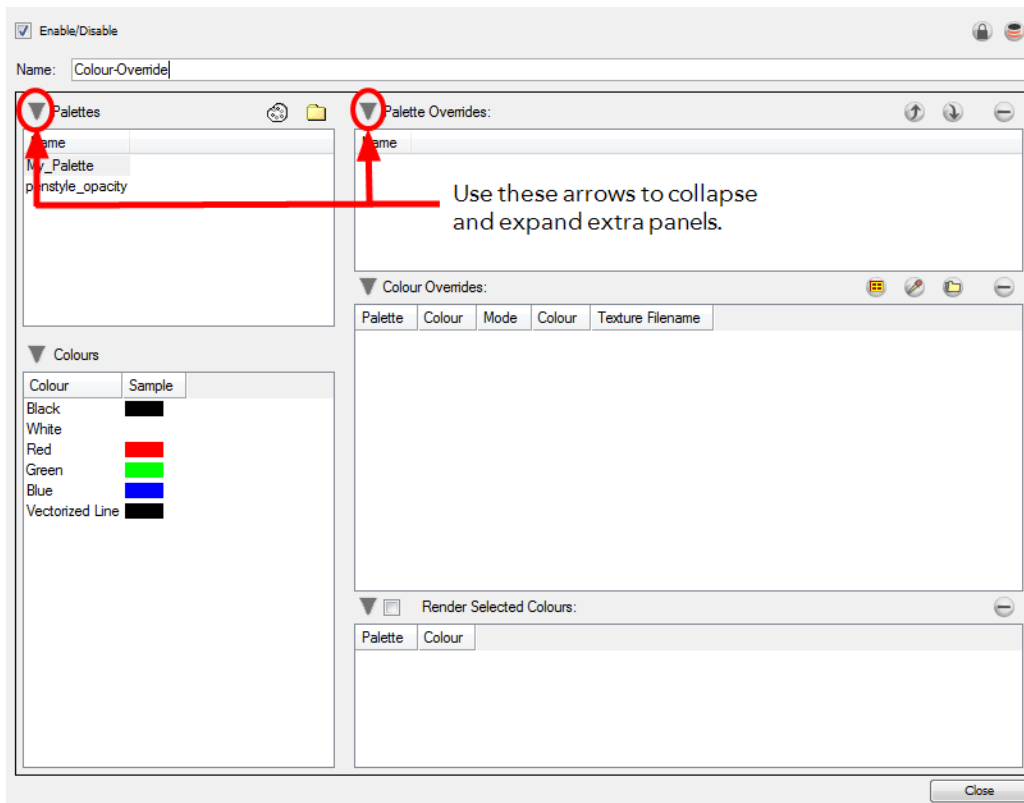
- Change colour values in drawings during the compositing process.
- Use colour values from a specific colour palette in the palette list.
- Establish the priority of override palettes in the palette list. For example, you may have different clones of the same palette, for example a daytime and nighttime version.
- Isolate specific areas of a drawing by selecting certain colours. For example, using specific colours to generate a matte for a glow effect.
- Hide certain colours.

Use the Colour-Override editor to set the colour override operations for TVG elements and their drawings.

## Related Topics

- [Colour-Override Editor Interface](#) on the facing page
- [Overriding a Colour](#) on page 1127
- [Overriding a Colour With a Texture](#) on page 1128
- [Rendering Selected Colours Only](#) on page 1132
- [Modifying a Texture Fill's Transformation](#) on page 1132
- [Overriding a Colour with a Bitmap Image Sequence](#) on page 1134
- [Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line](#) on page 1136

## Colour-Override Editor Interface



The Colour-Override editor interface is comprised of four sections:

- [Palettes](#) below
- [Colours](#) on the next page
- [Palette Overrides](#) on the next page
- [Colour Overrides](#) on the next page

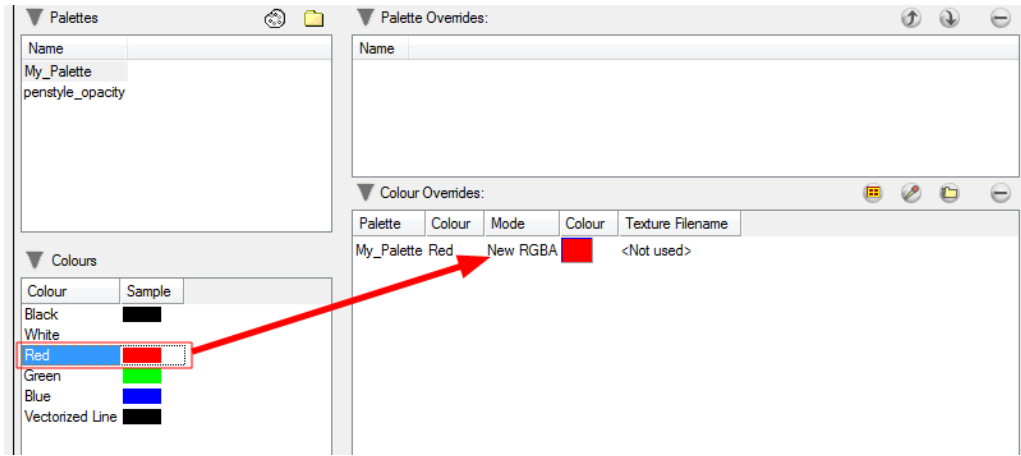
### Palettes

This section displays the palettes in the palette list of the selected layer. Drag these palettes into the Palette Overrides section to re-order them. You can load additional palettes in the palette list from either your project, by clicking on The Palette 🎨 button, or your computer by clicking on the Browse 📁 button.

- The Palette 🎨 button allows you to load a palette contained within the project hierarchy (Environment, Job, Scene and Elements).
- The Browse 📁 button allows you to load a palette located outside the project hierarchy, anywhere on your system or server.

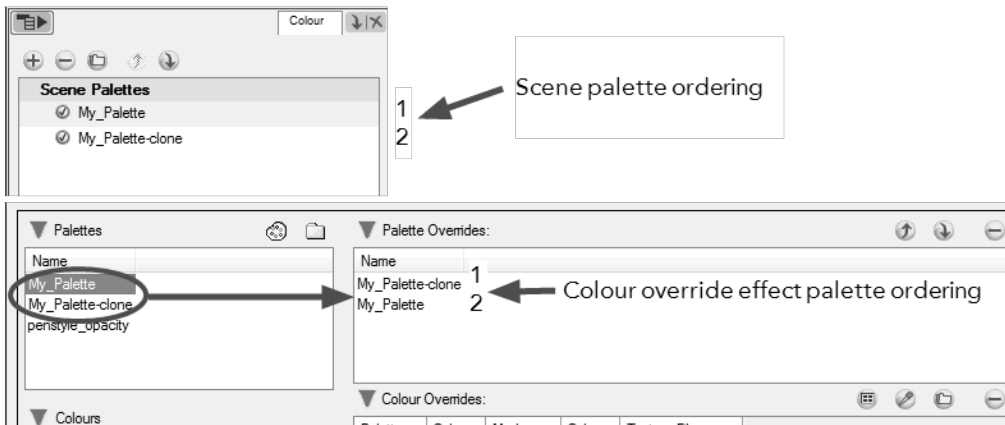
## Colours

This section displays the colours swatches of the selected palette. Drag a swatch into the Colour-Overrides section to change its value or drag it into the Selected Colours section to render only that colour.



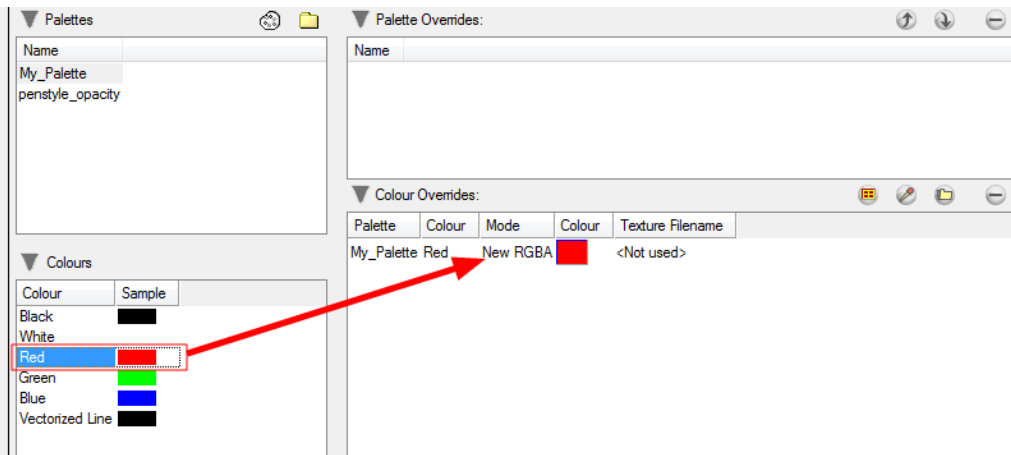
## Palette Overrides

This section forces the use of a particular palette or palette list order, during the composition process. You must drag palettes from the Palettes section to change their order. Animate Pro searches the palettes in the order that they appear in the palette list to find the colour values associated with the colour IDs of each image. To apply a different version of a colour palette, for example to switch from a day to a night palette, use the override section to change the order of colour palettes (you must be working with cloned palettes).



## Colour Overrides

Drag a swatch from the Colours section to this section to override its value. You can also override a colour with a texture.



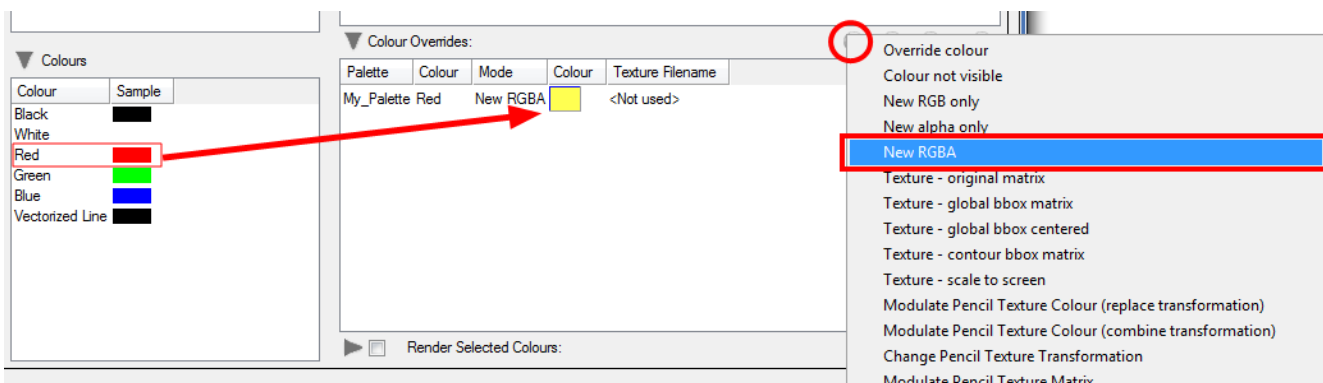
## Related Topics

- [Overriding a Colour below](#)
- [Overriding a Colour With a Texture on the next page](#)
- [Rendering Selected Colours Only on page 1132](#)
- [Modifying a Texture Fill's Transformation on page 1132](#)
- [Overriding a Colour with a Bitmap Image Sequence on page 1134](#)
- [Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line on page 1136](#)

## Overriding a Colour

With the Colour-Override module, you can change the colour of some swatches. To do so, from the Colours section, you must drag the colour swatch to modify to the Colour-Overrides section.




Several options are available to modify your colours.



Once the swatch appears in the Colour-Overrides section, click on the Select Override Mode button to right-click on the Override Colour word and select one of the following option in the drop-down menu:



- **Colour not visible:** Renders the selected colour invisible in the Camera view.

- **New RGB only:** Overrides the colour swatch while maintaining its original alpha value. You can select a new colour by pressing the eye dropper  button or clicking directly on the colour swatch and choosing a new colour from the Colour Picker window.
- **New alpha only:** Overrides the swatch's alpha channel while maintaining its original RGB values. You can select a new alpha value by pressing the eye dropper  button or clicking directly on the colour swatch and choosing an alpha value from the Colour Picker window.
- **New RGBA:** Overrides the swatch's colour and alpha values. You can select a new colour by pressing the eye dropper  button or clicking directly on the colour swatch and choosing an alpha value from the Colour Picker window.

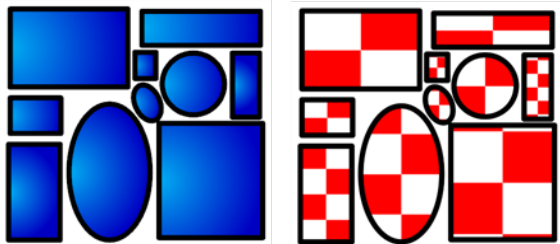
## Related Topics

- [Overriding a Colour With a Texture below](#)

## Overriding a Colour With a Texture

With the Colour Override module, can apply a texture over a selected colour. Any zone painted with the selected colour swatch will be overridden by the selected texture.

To apply a texture over a colour:



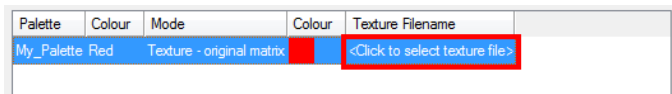
From the Colours section, select the colour swatch to override and drag it to the Colour Override section.

1. Once the swatch appears in the Colour Override section, select it and then click on the Select Override Mode button to right-click on the Override Colour word and select one of the following option in the drop-down menu:

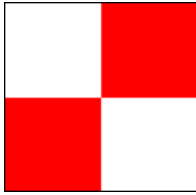


- Texture - original matrix
  - Texture - global bbox matrix
  - Texture - global bbox centered
  - Texture - contour bbox matrix
  - Texture - scale to screen
  - Override With This Texture Centered on Overridden Objects Centre
  - Texture - Use Input Peg
2. In the Colour-Override section, under the Texture Filename section, click on "Click to select texture file".



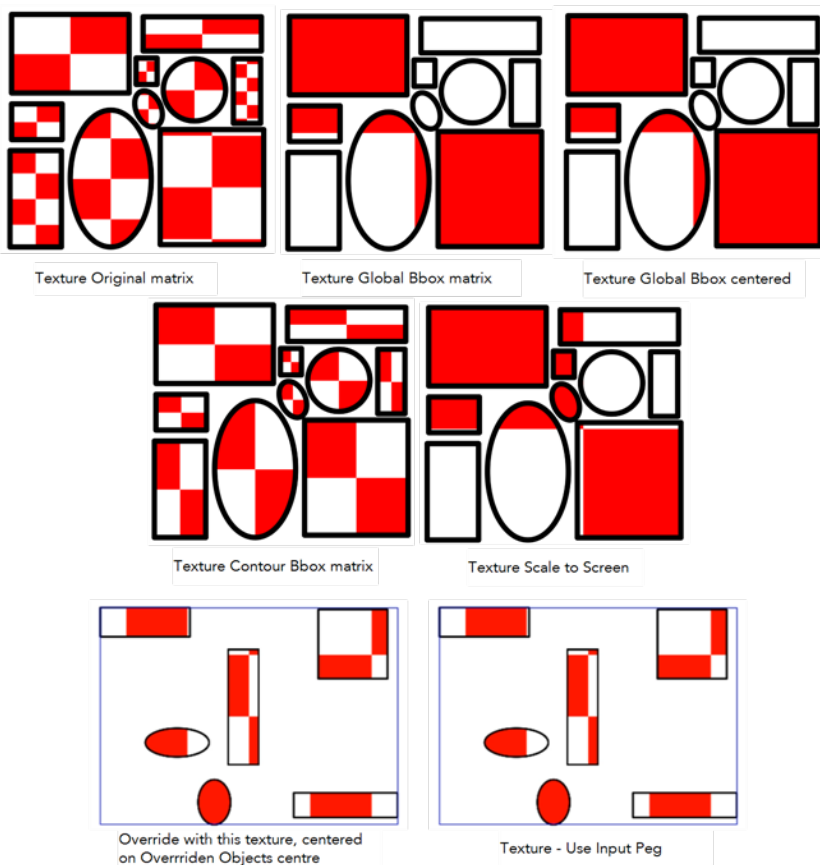


- Browse for your texture file.




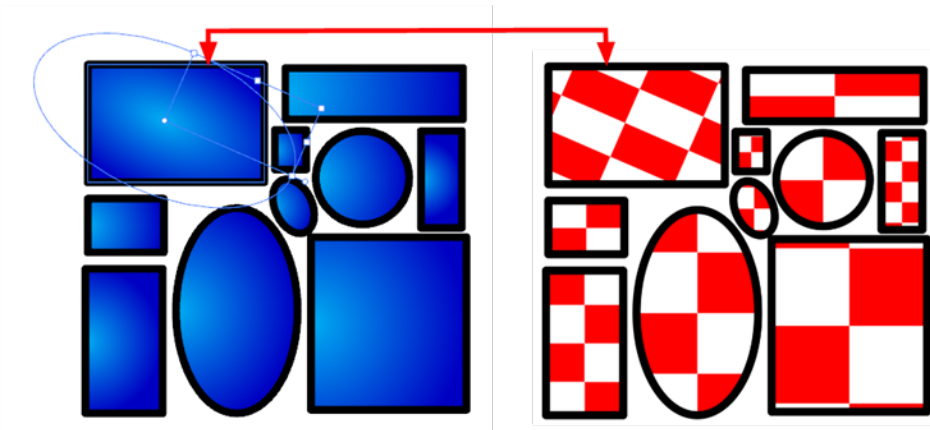
- Click on the Open button.

There are different ways to apply the texture over your colour:



The result will only be visible in the Camera view while in Render mode. In OpenGL mode, you will see your original colour.

The matrix position can be modified using the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool. To do so, your drawing zone must be painted with a gradient swatch or texture swatch.



## Texture - Original matrix

Overrides the swatch's colour with a pattern or texture. You must right-click under the Texture header to bring up the Browser window to search for your texture. The texture's default matrix (fixed proportion and orientation) is mapped the full size of the bounding box of each colour area to be overridden.

## Texture - Global bbox matrix

Overrides the colour with a texture that is scaled non-proportionally to the size of the bounding box encompassing the colour areas to be overridden. With multiple objects, it will look as though their fills were all traced and cut from the same piece of stretched or squashed fabric.

## Texture - Global bbox centered

Overrides the colour with a texture that is scaled proportionally to the size of the bounding box encompassing all colour areas to be overridden. With multiple objects, it will look as though their fills were all traced and cut from the same piece of fabric.

## Texture - Contour bbox matrix

Overrides the colour with a disproportionately scaled texture for each individual colour area. In other words, each fill area will not only have the texture scaled to its individual proportions, but also stretched or squashed to fit within its contours.

## Texture - scale to screen

Disproportionately scales the texture to the output resolution before applying it as an override.

## Override with this Texture Centered on Overridden Objects Centre

Overrides the colour with a texture that is centered in the bounding box encompassing all colour areas to be overridden. With multiple objects, it will look as though their fills were all traced and cut from the same piece of fabric. The texture will not be stretched or distorted. It will be tiled in proportion. The centre of the texture zone will be centered in the middle of the bounding box's centre.

With this option, you can connect a Peg in the middle port to apply a transformation on the texture's position. Refer to [Animating a Texture Override with a Peg](#) below to learn how.

## Texture - Use Input Peg

Overrides the colour with a texture that is scaled non-proportionally to the size of the bounding box encompassing the colour areas to be overridden. With multiple objects, it will look as though their fills were all traced and cut from the same piece of stretched or squashed fabric.

With this option, you can connect a Peg in the middle port to apply a transformation on the texture's position. Refer to [Animating a Texture Override with a Peg](#) below to learn how.

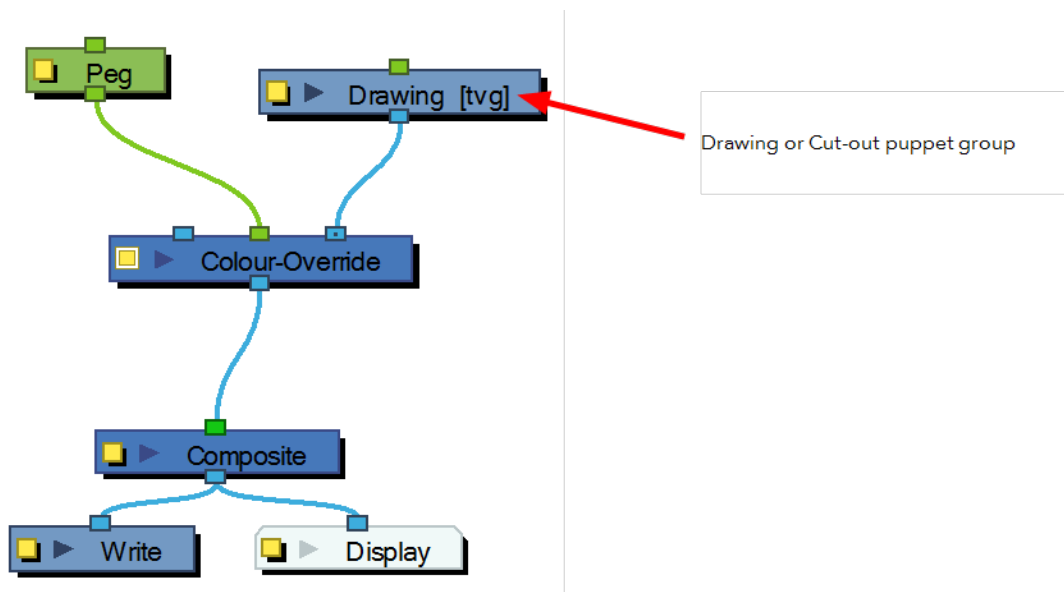
## Related Topics





- [Colour-Override Editor Interface](#) on page 1125
- [Overriding a Colour](#) on page 1127

## Animating a Texture Override with a Peg

The advantage of being able to animate the texture is that it can be adjusted, scaled, rotated and translated to follow the general motion of a character if you want the texture to follow instead of having the character moving across the fixed texture.

1. From the Module Library view, drag a Peg module and drop it in the Network view.



2. Connect the Peg module in the Colour Override's middle port. The green port will take the transformation of the Peg to modify the pencil texture's position.
3. In the Network view, select the Peg module.
4. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select either the Translate , Rotate  or Scale  tool.
5. In the Camera view bottom toolbar, enable the Render  mode.

- In the Camera view, move the Peg's position. As you move it, you will see the texture getting modified. You can animate the position by adding position keyframes in the Timeline view. You can use the Random Fill function to quickly create a random shake. [See Pegs on page 914.](#)

## Rendering Selected Colours Only

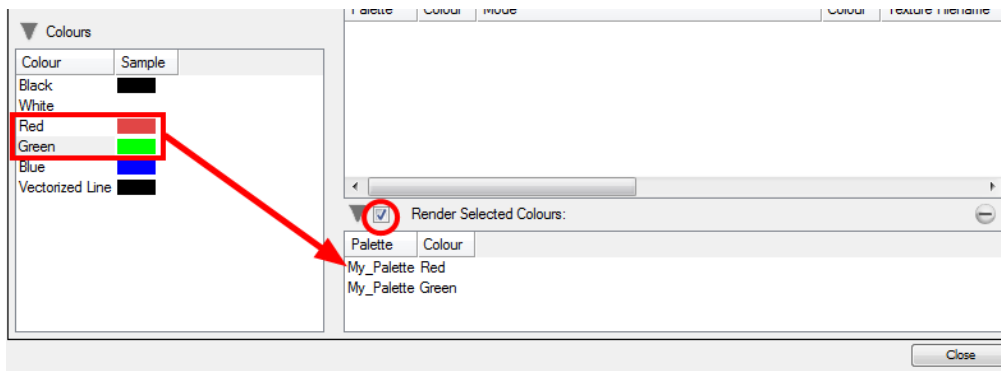
With the Colour-Override module, you can isolate some colours in your drawing and render those ones only.

To render selected colours:

- From the Colours section, drag the colour swatches to render and drop them into the Render Selected Colours section.



You have to enable the Render Selected Colours option for the module to proceed with the operation.



### Related Topics

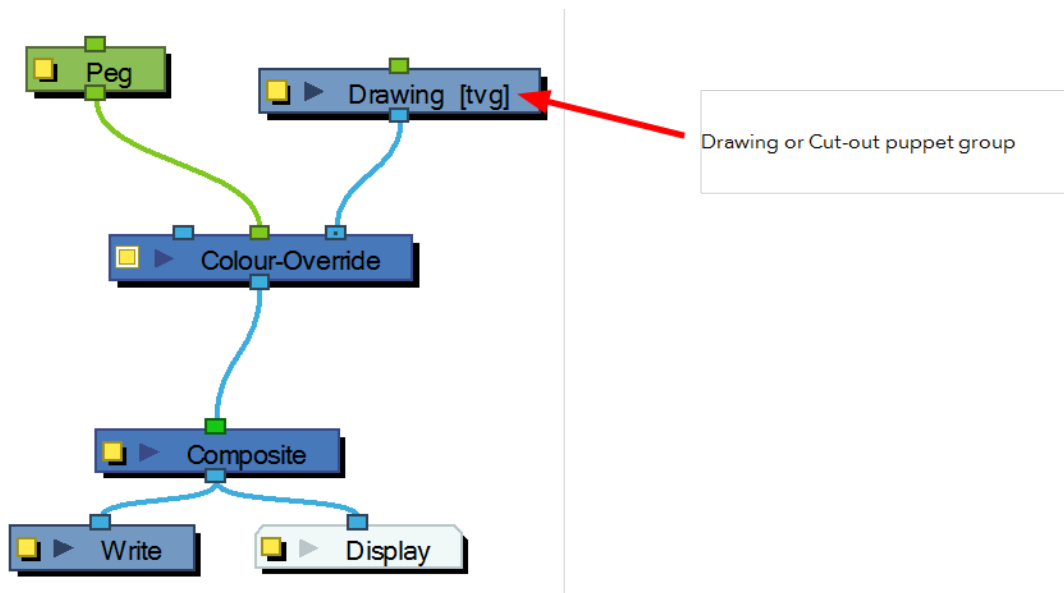
- [Colour-Override Editor Interface on page 1125](#)
- [Overriding a Colour on page 1127](#)

## Modifying a Texture Fill's Transformation

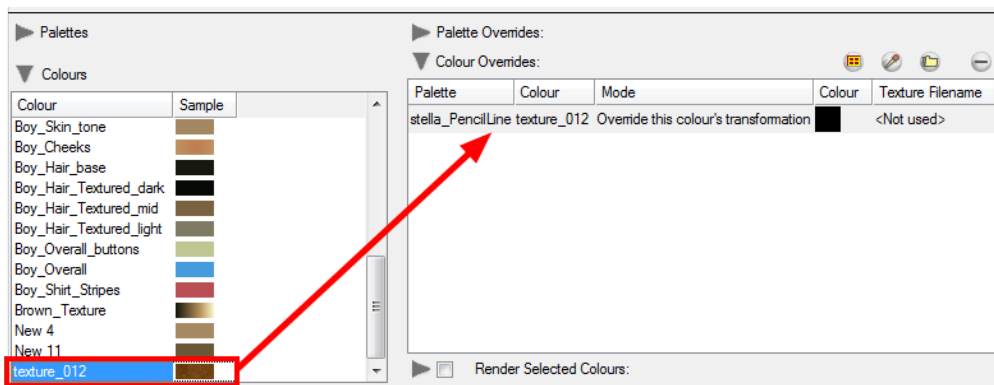
When you paint a zone with a bitmap texture swatch, you might want to modify the size or position of the texture's matrix at the compositing level. Maybe for an effect purpose you need to animate the position of the texture in a zone. With the Colour-Override module and a Peg, you can animate the texture.

To modify a texture fill's transformation:

- From the Module Library view, drag a Colour-Override module and drop it in the Network view.
- From the Module Library view, drag a Peg module and drop it in the Network view.





3. In the Network view, connect the Colour-Override module under the drawing module you want to animate the line for. Note that for a cut-out puppet, you would connect the Colour-Override under the final Composite, set as Pass-Through.
4. Connect the Peg module in the Colour-Override's middle port. The green port will take the transformation of the Peg to modify the pencil texture's position.
5. Click on the Colour-Override's yellow button to open the editor.
6. In the Colour-Override window, in the Palettes section, select the palette containing the bitmap texture swatch.
7. In the Colours section, select the texture swatch you used to paint the drawing and drag it to the Colour-Override section.







8. Once the swatch appears in the Colour-Override section, select it and then click on the Select Override Mode button to right-click on the New RGBA word and select one of the following option in the drop-down menu:

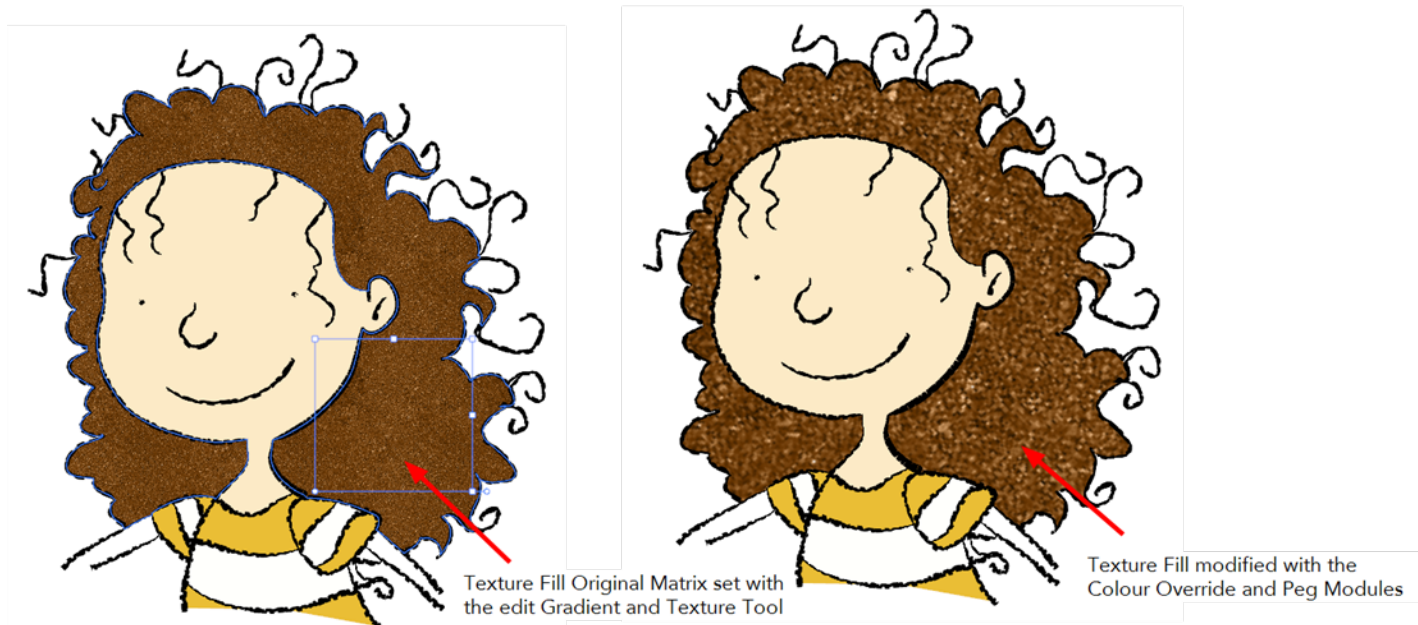


- **Override the colour's transformation:** This option will override the initial texture's transformation (matrix) established when you painted the zones or modified with the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool. This transformation override will be done by modifying the Peg's position.

- ▶ **Combine the colour's transformation:** This option will combine the initial texture's transformation (matrix) established when you painted the zones or modified with the Edit Gradient and Texture 

tool with the new position transformation you will create when modifying the Peg's position.

9. In the Network view, select the Peg module.
10. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select either the Translate , Rotate  or Scale  tool.
11. In the Camera view bottom toolbar, enable the Render  mode.
12. In the Camera view, move the Peg's position. As you move it, you will see the texture fills getting modified. You can animate the position by adding position keyframes in the Timeline view.



## Related Topics

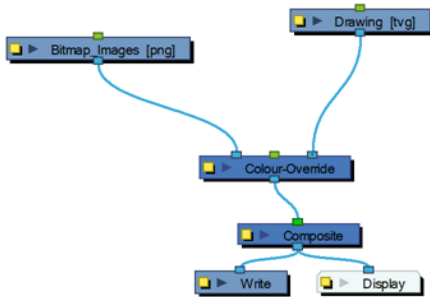
- [Overriding a Colour With a Texture on page 1128](#)
- [Rendering Selected Colours Only on page 1132](#)
- [Overriding a Colour with a Bitmap Image Sequence below](#)
- [Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line on page 1136](#)

## Overriding a Colour with a Bitmap Image Sequence

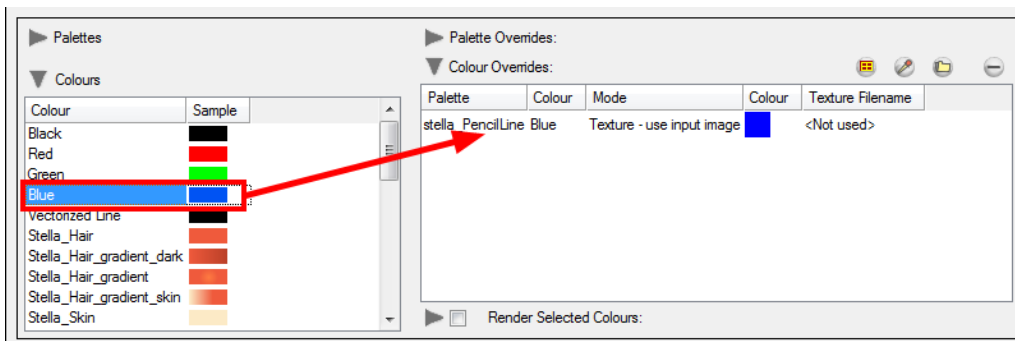
In production, it will happen that you need to map a live action sequence or bitmap image sequence into a zone or over several zone. For example, you could have a mirror shattered in several pieces and you want to map in it the video or someone talking. You can paint the mirror pieces with a specific colour swatch and use the Colour-Override module to map the image sequence into the pieces. It can also be a single image without having to be an image sequence.

### To override a colour with a bitmap image sequence:

1. From the Module Library view, drag a Colour-Override module and drop it in the Network view.



2. In the Network view, connect the Colour-Override module under the drawing module you want to animate the line for.
3. Connect the Live Action or Bitmap Image Sequence module in the Colour-Override's left port. The left blue port will input the images into the colour zones.
4. Click on the Colour-Override's yellow button to open the editor.
5. In the Colour-Override window, in the Palettes section, select the palette containing the colour to override.
6. In the Colours section, select the pencil texture you used to draw your lines and drag it to the Colour-Override section.



7. Once the swatch appears in the Colour-Override section, select it and then click on the Select Override Mode button to right-click on the New RGBA word and select Texture - Use Image Input.



8. In the Network view, select the bitmap image module.
9. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select either the Translate , Rotate or Scale tool.
10. In the Camera view bottom toolbar, enable the Render mode.
11. In the Camera view, move the Bitmap Image position. As you move it, you will see the texture fills getting modified. You can animate the position by adding position keyframes in the Timeline view.


### Related Topics

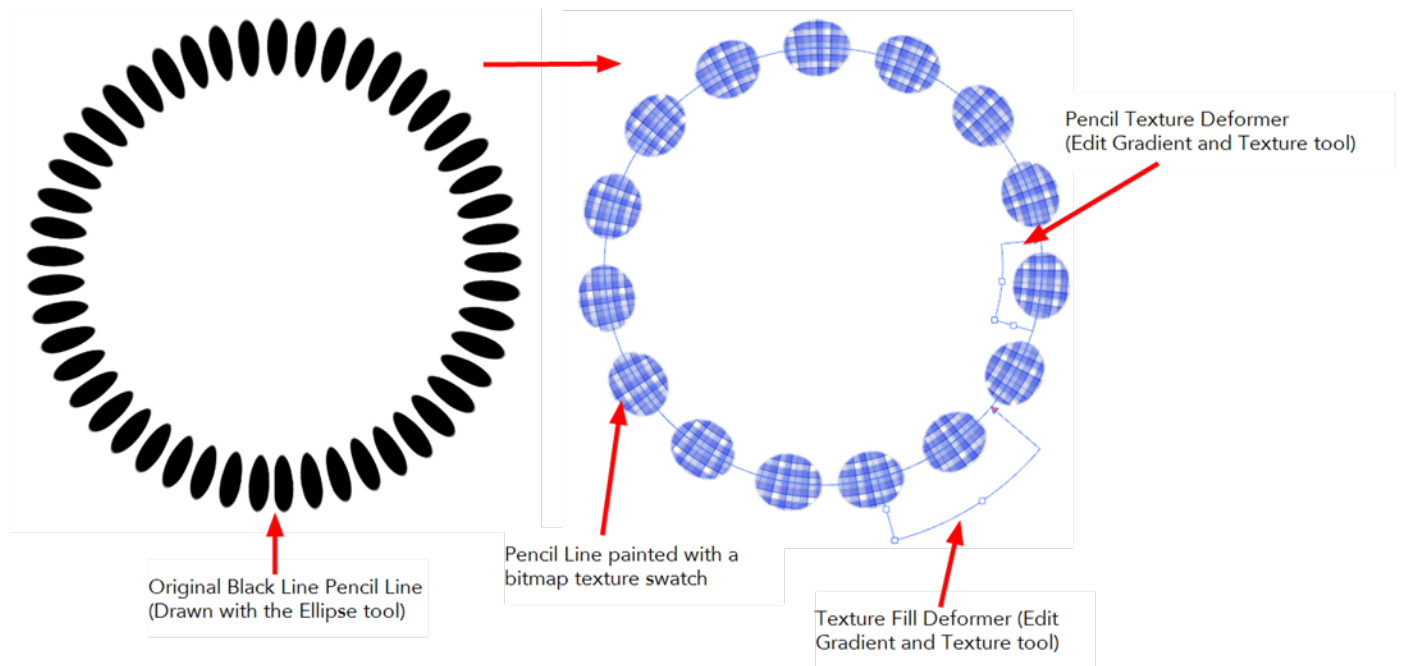
- [Overriding a Colour With a Texture on page 1128](#)
- [Modifying a Texture Fill's Transformation on page 1132](#)

- [Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line below](#)

## Overriding a Texture on a Pencil Line

A pencil line can be drawn with a texture but also painted with a texture swatch. With the Colour-Override module, you can either override either the pencil line's texture or texture fill and replace it by another one or you can also animate the texture's position.

With the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool, you can modify the size and position for both types of texture on a pencil line; the drawing texture and the filling texture. By doing that, you are actually modifying the texture's matrix.



### Related Topics

- [Modifying a Texture Fill on a Pencil Line below](#)
- [Modifying a Pencil Texture on page 1139](#)

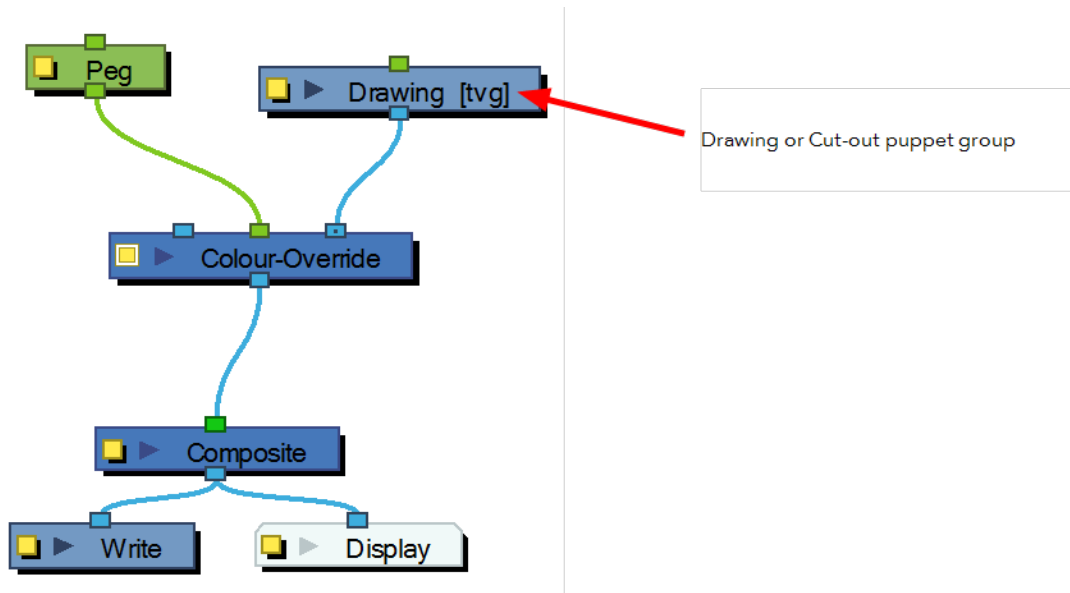
### Modifying a Texture Fill on a Pencil Line

When you paint a pencil line with a bitmap colour swatch, you can override the position of the texture fill using the Colour-Override module and a Peg.

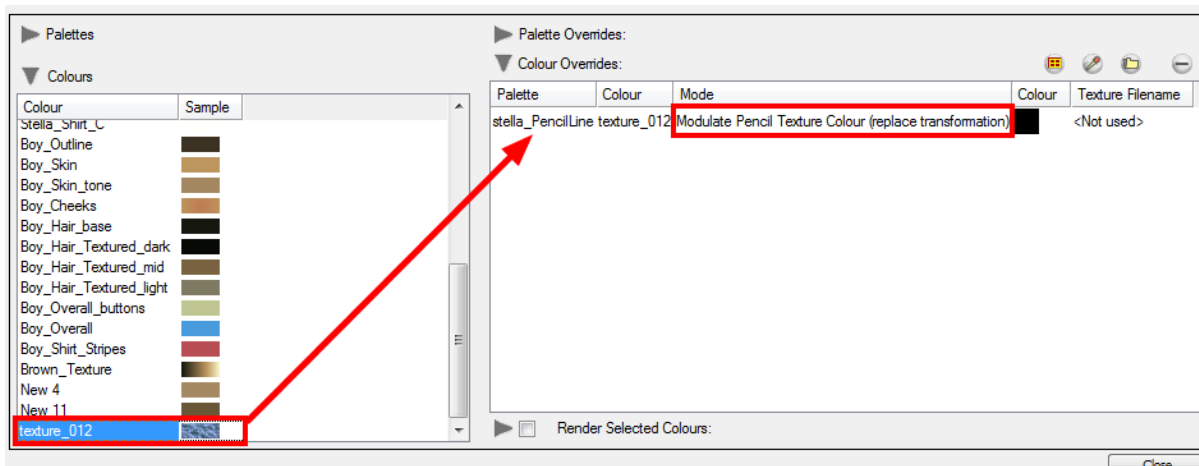
**To modify the pencil line texture:**

1. From the Module Library view, drag a Colour-Override module and drop it in the Network view.
2. From the Module Library view, drag a Peg module and drop it in the Network view.






3. In the Network view, connect the Colour-Override module under the Drawing module you want to animate the line for. Note that for a cut-out puppet, you would connect the Colour-Override under the final Composite, set as Pass-Through.
4. Connect the Peg module in the Colour-Override's middle port. The green port will take the transformation of the Peg to modify the pencil texture's position.
5. Click on the Colour-Override's yellow button to open the editor.
6. In the Colour-Override window, in the Palettes section, select the palette containing the colour to override.
7. In the Colours section, select the bitmap texture swatch you used to paint your lines and drag it to the Colour-Override section.




8. Once the swatch appears in the Colour-Override section, select it on Mac OS Xd then click on the Select Override Mode button to right-click on the New RGBA word and select one of the following option in the drop-down menu:



- **Modulate Pencil Texture Colour (replace transformation):** This option will override the initial texture fill's transformation (matrix) established when you painted the line or modified it with the Edit

Gradient and Texture  tool. This transformation override will be done by modifying the Peg's position.

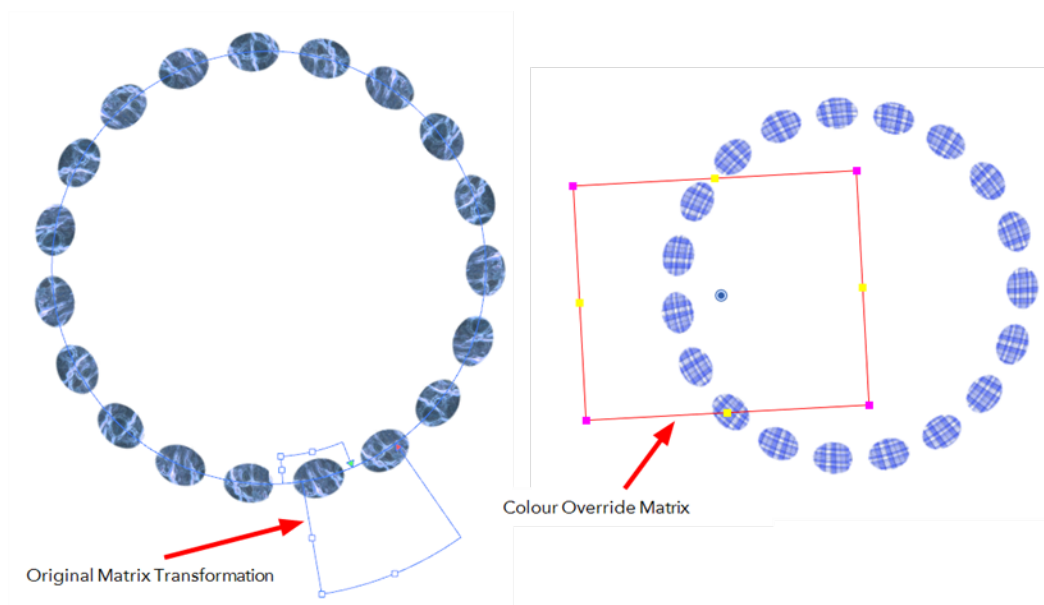
- ▶ **Modulate Pencil Texture Colour (combine transformation):** This option will combine the initial texture fill's transformation (matrix) established when you drew the line or modified it with the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool with the new position transformation you will create when modifying the Peg's position.

9. In the Network view, select the Peg module.

10. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select either the Translate , Rotate  or Scale  tool.

11. In the Camera view bottom toolbar, enable the Render  mode.

12. In the Camera view, move the Peg's position. As you move it, you will see the texture fill getting modified. You can animate the position by adding position keyframes in the Timeline view.



## Related Topics

- [Modifying a Pencil Texture](#) on the facing page

## Modifying a Pencil Texture

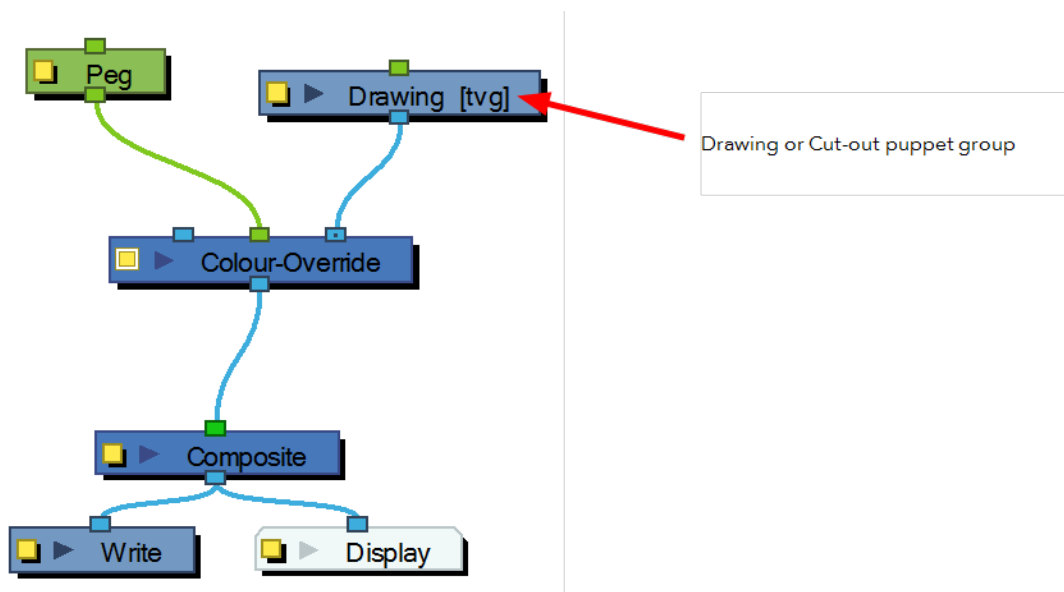


You can modify and animate a pencil texture's position using the Colour-Override module and a Peg module. This lets you create a shaky line style which is a very popular design style. The main issue with this style is that it works well in traditional and tradigital animation, when the artist draws the line differently on each drawing, but it does not work in cut-out animation where the same drawing is used for the entire animation. The same issue happens when the same drawing is held for more than a few frames. The line moves during the animation, but stops moving during the drawing hold, which looks bad.

With the Colour-Override module, you can animate the position of the pencil line texture independently from the drawing exposure. Even if a drawing's exposure is held over several frames, the line will move.

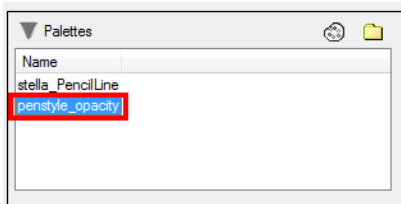
### To modify the pencil line texture:

1. From the Module Library view, drag a Colour-Override module and drop it in the Network view.
2. From the Module Library view, drag a Peg module and drop it in the Network view.

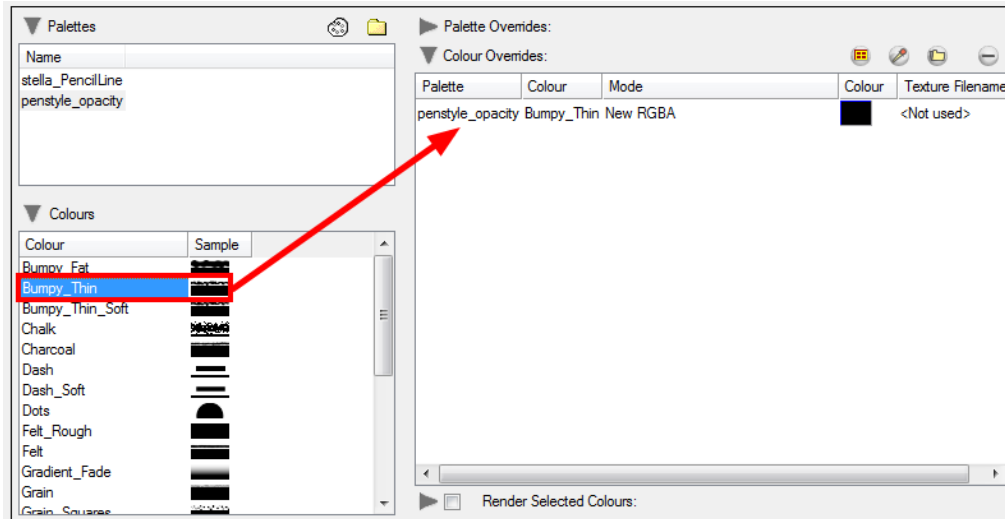


3. In the Network view, connect the Colour-Override module under the drawing module you want to animate the line for. Note that for a cut-out puppet, you should connect the Colour-Override under the final Composite, set as Pass-Through.
4. Connect the Peg module in the Colour-Override's middle port. The green port will take the transformation of the Peg to modify the pencil texture's position.

5. Click the Colour-Override's yellow button to open the editor.
6. In the Colour-Override window, in the Palettes section, select the **penstyle\_opacity** palette.









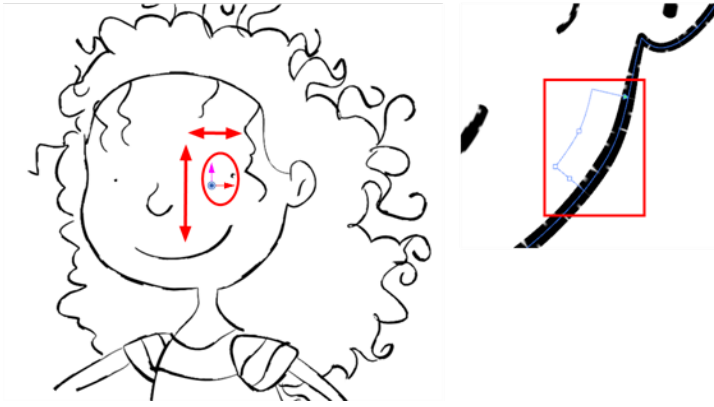
7. In the Colours section, select the pencil texture you used to draw your lines and drag it to the Colour Overrides section.



8. Once the swatch appears in the Colour-Override section, select it and click the **Select Override Mode** button to right-click on the New RGBA word and select one of the following:



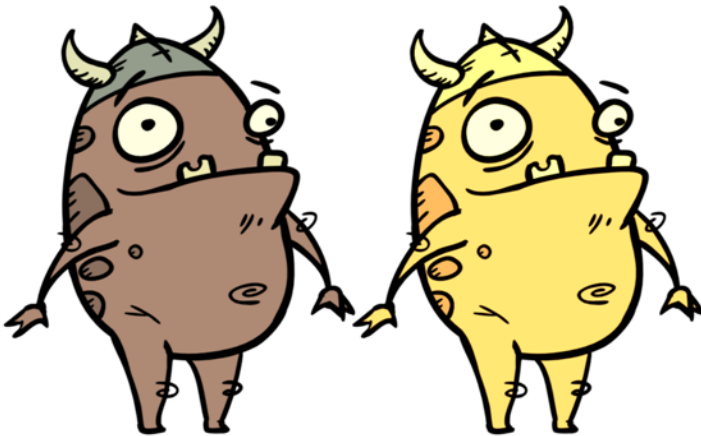
- **Change Pencil Texture Transformation:** Overrides the initial pencil texture's transformation (matrix) established when you drew the line or modified with the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool. This transformation override will be done by modifying the Peg's position.
  - **Modulate Pencil Texture Matrix:** Combines the initial pencil texture's transformation (matrix) that was established when you drew the line or modified with the Edit Gradient and Texture  tool with the new position transformation you will create when modifying the Peg's position.
9. In the Network view, select the Peg module.
  10. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select the **Translate** , **Rotate**  or **Scale**  tool.
  11. In the Camera view bottom toolbar, select the **Render**  mode.
  12. In the Camera view, move the Peg's position. As you move it, you will see the pencil texture getting modified. You can animate the position by adding position keyframes in the Timeline view. You can use the Random Fill function to quickly create a random shake.



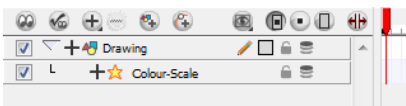
## Related Topics

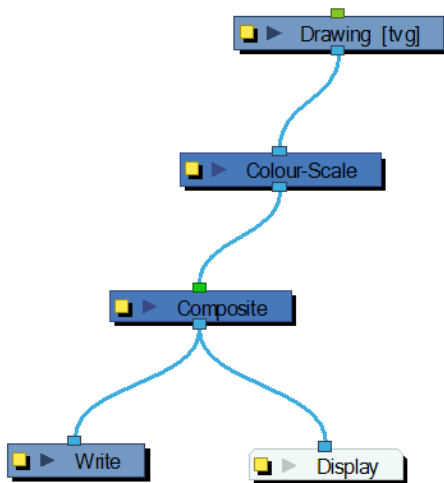
- [Modifying a Texture Fill on a Pencil Line on page 1136](#)

## Colour-Scale

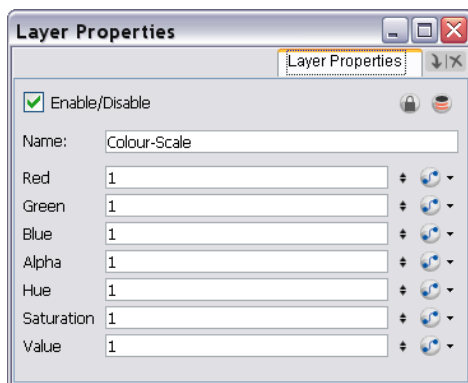


The Colour-Scale effect offsets an image's colours. This effect is useful in creating ambient transitions, such as from daytime to nighttime.






Use the Colour-Scale editor to set the colour scale effect by entering a value in the scale fields.



The actual colour values of the image are not changed; instead, the channels are multiplied by a selected amount. For example:

- If you enter a value of 1, the colour values do not change.
- If you enter a value greater than 1, you increase the colour channel value closer to 255 (or white).
- If you enter a value less than 1, you decrease the colour channel value closer to zero (0 or black).

You can set the colour scale value by entering a value in the field. You can also change the values of the colour scale effect over time by attaching it to a Bezier or Ease function curve  and adding keyframes.

## Related Topics

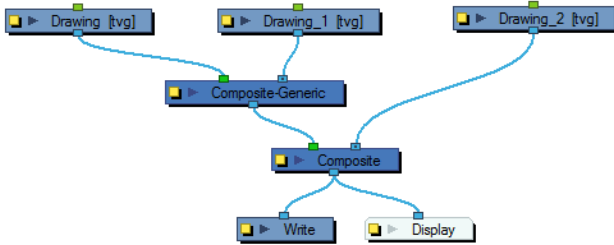
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Composite-Generic

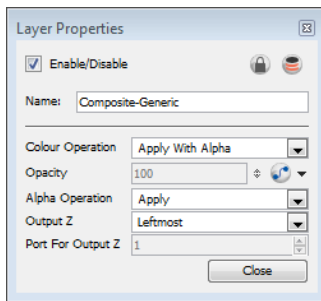
During the composition of images, colour and alpha values of an input image are combined with the image underneath to produce the output image.

Effects modules, like the Tone module and Highlight module, can control the colour and alpha composite operations for you. A Composite module was created, in which the colour and alpha composite operation are pre-set to the standard, and more frequently used, composite operations.

You might, however, still want to control the colour and alpha composite operation between two images using the Composite-Generic Module. The Composite-Generic module combines two images into one output image. The image linked to the left port of the module is layered on top of the image in the right port based on the selected colour and alpha composite operation.



Use the Composite-Generic editor to control the calculation of colour and alpha values during the composition process.



The following abbreviations are used in the descriptions of composite operations:

- **ORGB:** RGB values of the Output Image

The Output Image is the resulting image from a composite operation. In the formulas for the composite operations, this image is also processed through a composite operation, representing the bottom layer in the composited image.

- **LRGB:** RGB values of the Left Image
- **RRGB:** RGB values of the Right Image
- **LA:** Alpha of the Left Image
- **RA:** Alpha of the Right Image
- **OA:** Alpha of the Output Image

These are the different options available:

- [Colour Operation on the next page](#)
- [Alpha Operation on page 1146](#)
- [Output Z on page 1146](#)

## Colour Operation

During this operation, the colour values of the output image are determined based on the alpha and colour values of the left and right image.

Both the Blending module and Composite-Generic module have regular blending modes and legacy blending modes. The regular blending modes will take the source images and unmultiply them before blending the two inputs together. The images will be remultiplied when being output from the module. The legacy blending modes use the pre-multiplied source images as is in order to apply the effect. Unmultiplying the images before processing them will give a final result closer to what can be found in software such as Adobe Photoshop.

- **Right:** The colour values in the output image are derived from the image in the right port. Colour values in the left port are ignored.
- **Left:** The colour values in the output image are derived from the image in the left port. Colour values in the right port are ignored.
- **Apply With Alpha:**  $ORGB=[RRGB*(1-LA)]+LRGB$ . This is a standard composite operation called "alpha blending." During this operation, colour values of the left and right images are combined based on the alpha value of the left image. Where the left image is completely opaque ( $LA=1$ ), the ORGB will be replaced completely with LRGB. Where the left image is completely transparent ( $LA=0$ ), the ORGB is unaffected. Where the left image is partially transparent, you get a blend of the RRGB and the LRGB, where the values are added together and clipped to 255. The LA is the opacity of the left image. This operation  $(1-LA)$  calculates the amount of opacity to retain in the output image. The operation  $[RRGB*(1-LA)]$  removes as much of the output image as you are about to add from the left image. Remember that LRGB has been pre-multiplied by the LA, so the equation is really  $ORGB=[RRGB*(1-LA)]+(LRGB*LA)$ , which is simply the weighted average of L and R, with LA supplying the weight.
- **Apply Tone Highlight:**  $ORGB=RRGB+(LRGB*RA)$ . This operation restricts the output of the tone to the region of the matte ( $RA$ ), and uses the transparency and colour value of the input image to determine the colour values of the output. This is used to lighten or darken the output image. Darkening occurs when RRGB contains negative values.
- **Apply Add (Apply Add Legacy):**  $ORGB=RRGB+LRGB$ . This operation uses the transparency and colour value of the left image to determine the output values. Effects such as shadows and glows are calculated in this manner. Unlike the Apply Tone Highlight operation, the result is not clipped to the matte ( $RA$ ) of the output image.
- **Apply Matte For Overlay:**  $ORGB=RRGB*(1-LA)$ . This operation prepares the output image using the overlay's matte; the matte's RGB values are ignored. This operation prepares the output image to receive the colour portion of the overlay. It is typically used when an overlay and its matte are stored in separate images.
- **Apply Overlay Into Matte:**  $ORGB=RRGB+(LRGB*RA)$ . This operation maps an overlay into an area prepared by a matte. It is typically used when an overlay and its matte are stored in separate images, and Apply Matte For Overlay has been used to prepare the output image to receive the RGB portion of the overlay.
- **Apply Transparency:**  $ORGB=RRGB*(1-LA)$ . This operation is used for a cutter matte to prepare the output image to receive the colour values of another image. It has the effect of increasing the transparency of ORGB (but not OA), based on the LA. This function is the equivalent to Apply Matte for Overlay. It is almost always used with Apply Transparency Matte, an Alpha Composite Operation.
- **Apply Multiplicative Tone:**  $ORGB=RRGB*(LRGB+1-LA)$ . This operation multiplies the left and right images (see the Multiply colours selection), to be combined with the right image colour, creating a darker output colour. This effect created by this operation is identical to the Multiply Colour Blending effect in Photoshop.



- **Multiply Colours:**  $ORGB=RRGB*LRGB$ . This operation multiplies the left and right image colours. Multiplying colours filters the colour values of the right image from the output image. For instance, to make the left image less blue, you can add a right image to this module with a blue colour value and select this option.
- **Linear Light:** This operation burns or dodges the colours by decreasing or increasing the brightness depending on the colour of the underlying colour. If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, the colour is lightened because the brightness is increased. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the colour is darkened because the brightness is decreased.
- **Pin Light:** This operation will replace the colours, depending on the underlying colour. If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, pixels darker than the underlying colour are replaced, and pixels lighter than the underlying colour do not change. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, pixels lighter than the underlying colour are replaced, and pixels darker than the underlying colour do not change.
- **Vivid Light:** This operation burns or dodges the colours by decreasing or increasing the brightness depending on the colour of the underlying colour. If the colour is lighter than 50% grey, the blend colour is lightened because the contrast is decreased. If the colour is darker than 50% grey, the blend colour is darkened because the contrast is increased.
- **Exclusion:** This operation produces a similar result to the Difference mode, but with a lower contrast.
- **Dodge:** This operation will lighten the colour.
- **Burn:** This operation will darken the colour.
- **Hue:** This operation will result in a colour that will take the luminosity and saturation of the underlying colour, and the hue of the source colour.
- **Saturation:** This operation will result in a colour that will have the same luminosity and hue of the underlying colour, and the saturation of the source colour.
- **Colour:** This operation will result in a colour that will have the luminosity of the underlying colour, and the hue and saturation of the source colour.
- **Luminosity:** This operation will result in a colour which has the hue and saturation of the underlying colour, and the luminosity of the source colour. This mode is opposite to the Colour mode.
- **Divide Colours (Divide Colours Legacy):**  $ORGB=RRGB/LRGB$ . This operation divides the right image colour values by the left colour values. The left image colour values are inverted, creating a negative image ( $1/LRGB$ ). The negative's colour values are then multiplied by the right image colour values.
- **Lighten (Lighten Legacy):** This operation looks at the colour information coming from both the images in the left and right ports and selects the base or blend colour - whichever is lighter - as the result colour. Pixels darker than the blend colour are replaced, and pixels lighter than the blend colour do not change.
- **Softlight (Softlight Legacy):** This operation darkens or lightens the colours in a soft and diffuse way, depending on the blend colour (image in left port). If the blend colour is lighter than 50% grey, the image is lightened. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the image is darkened. Painting with pure black or white produces a distinctly darker or lighter area, but does not result in pure black or white.
- **Hardlight (Hardlight Legacy):** This operation multiplies or screens the colours of the image in the left port with those of the image in the right port, depending on the blend colour. If the blend colour (left port image) is lighter than 50% grey, the image is lightened, as if it were screened. This is useful for adding highlights to an image. If the blend colour is darker than 50% grey, the image is darkened, as if it were multiplied. This is useful for adding shadows to an image. Painting with pure black or white results in pure black or white. Play with the Opacity value to create a subtler look.
- **Overlay (Overlay Legacy):** This operation multiplies or screens the colours from the image connected to the left port, with those on the right, depending on the base colour. Colours from the left-port element

overlay the colours of the drawing elements connected to the right, while preserving the highlights and shadows of the base colour. The base colour is not replaced, but mixed with the blend colour to reflect the lightness or darkness of the original colour.

## Alpha Operation

- **Right:** The transparency of the output image is derived from the alpha values of the image in the right port. The values in the left port are ignored.
- **Left:** The transparency of the output image is derived from the alpha values of the image in the left port. The values in the right port are ignored.
- **Apply:**  $OA=[RA*(1-LA)]+LA$ . This operation computes the output alpha of the output image based on the alpha values of the left and right images. This is the standard method of combining alpha channels. Notice its similarity to the Apply With Alpha colour Composite Operation.
- **Add:**  $OA=RA+LA$ . This operation adds the alpha values of the two images to produce the alpha value of the output image.
- **Subtract:**  $OA=RA-LA$ . This operation subtracts the alpha values of the input image from the alpha values of the output image. It is useful in situations where two tone levels have been drawn with overlap, but a double-darkening in the overlap is not wanted. This operation will reduce the opacity of overlapping regions.
- **Apply Transparent Matte:**  $OA=RA*(1-LA)$ . This operation is used to increase the transparency of the output alpha in the final composited image.
- **Black:**  $OA=0$ . Sets the matte of the entire output image to black, so that it is transparent.
- **White:**  $OA=1$ . Sets the matte of the entire output image to white, so that it is opaque.

## Output Z

- **Leftmost:** Indicates that the Z value for the output image will be taken from the module in the left port.
- **Rightmost:** Indicates that the Z value for the output image will be taken from the module in the right port.
- **Backmost:** Indicates that the Z value for the output image will be taken from the image that is the farthest back in the scene.
- **Frontmost:** Indicates that the Z value for the output image will be taken from the image that is closest to the front of the scene.
- **Portnumber:** Indicates that the Z value for the output image will be taken from the module in the selected port. Enter the appropriate port in the **Port For Output Z** field.

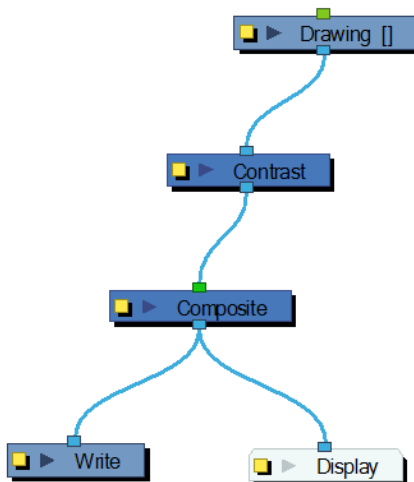
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

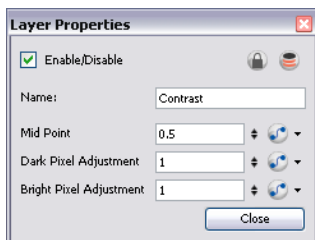
# Contrast



Use the Contrast effect to increase or decrease the level of contrast in an image. This is done by changing the contrast in the dark and bright pixels and setting the transition point between dark and bright.



Use the Contrast editor to control the output of the module.



- **Mid Point:** The value that separates dark from bright colours. The midpoint is a value between 0 and 1 that represents the percentage of the 0 to 255 RGB channel range.

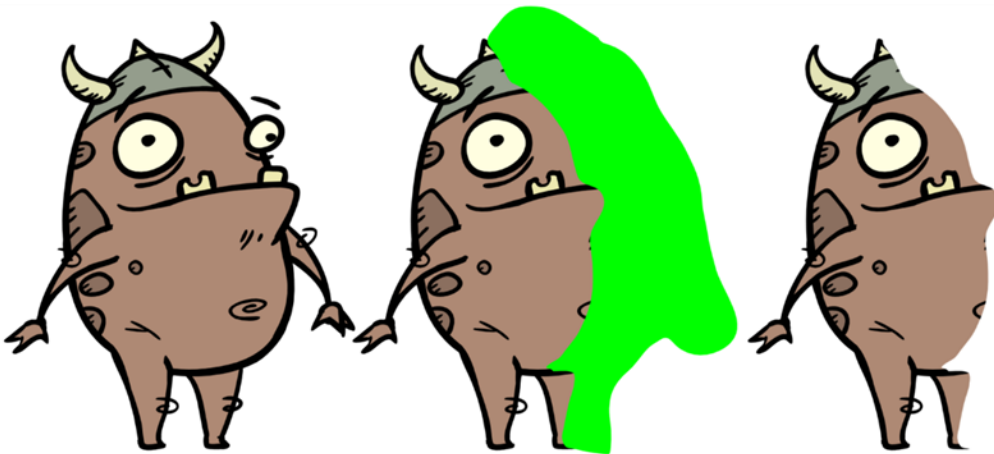
- **Pixels with colour values lower than the midpoint:** These are considered dark pixels.
- **Pixels with colour values higher than the midpoint:** These are considered bright pixels.
- **Dark Pixel Adjustment and Bright Pixel Adjustment:** The amount of contrast to be applied to pixels that fall on either side of the Mid Point value.
  - **A value equal to 1:** No change
  - **A value less than 1:** The module makes the pixel colours brighter
  - **A value greater than 1:** The module makes the pixel colours darker

You can enter static values in the dialog box fields or you can attach these values to function curves to change over time.

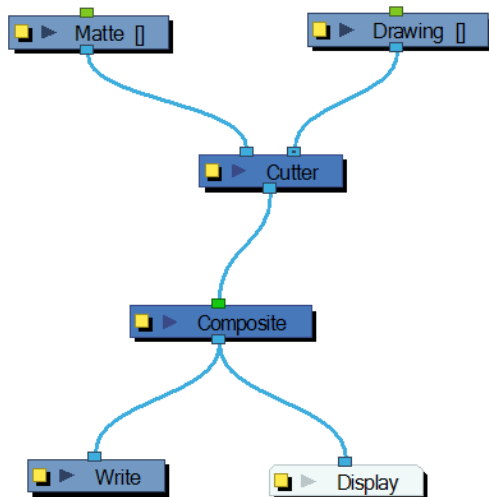
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

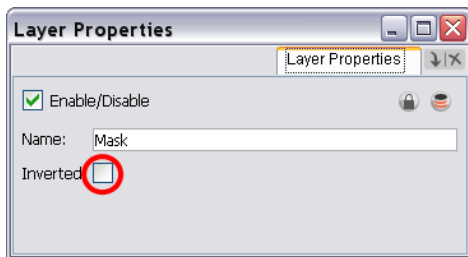
## Cutter



The Cutter cuts out a portion of an image using a matte drawing. You can use the Cutter to allow a character to disappear behind a background element or to cut a virtual hole into the layer itself. The Cutter requires a matte input.



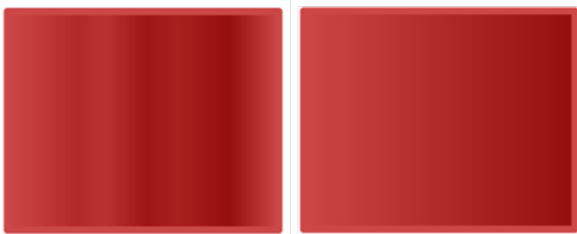
Use the Cutter editor to invert the effect of the matte on an image. Instead of the object being hidden by the mask, it will only be visible where it intersects with the matte shape area.



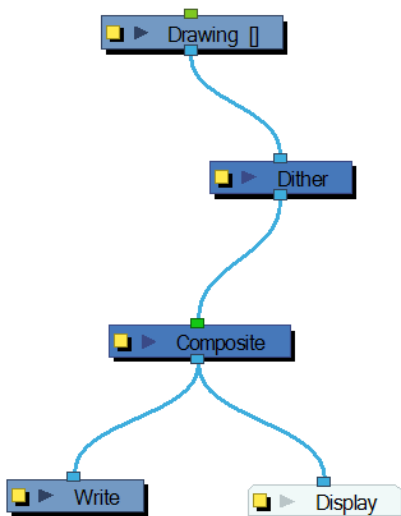
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Dither



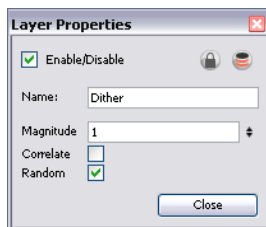
Dithering is the process of approximating a higher number of colours in a low bit-depth colour system. Use the Dither effect to give the appearance of greater colour variability in 8-bit per channel colour images.



The Dither effect is useful in the case of a gradient that varies between 100 and 105 in the blue channel, for example. Since the difference in the colour values is not great, banding might appear in the image. In this case, use the Dither module to give the impression of greater values of blue, decreasing the unwanted banding effect.

The results of the dither operation may be imperceptible.

Use the Dither editor to control the dithering effect.

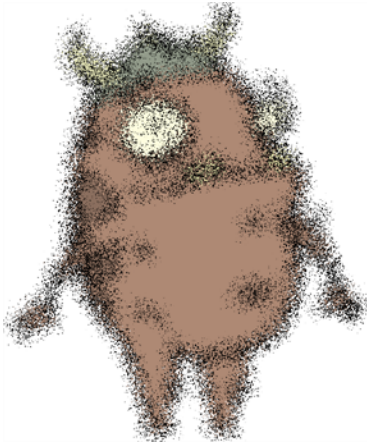


- **Magnitude:** A magnitude of 1 performs a normal dithering operation, using all bands of colour. A magnitude greater than 1 introduces a bias towards brighter colours. A magnitude of less than 1 creates a faster transition between bands of colour, lessening the bias towards brighter colours.
- **Correlate:** When selected, the three colour channels (RGB) are changed simultaneously, for better colour accuracy. When this option is not selected, the three channels are dithered separately, resulting in smoother transitions.
- **Random:** The standard algorithm for the dithering operation.

## Related Topics

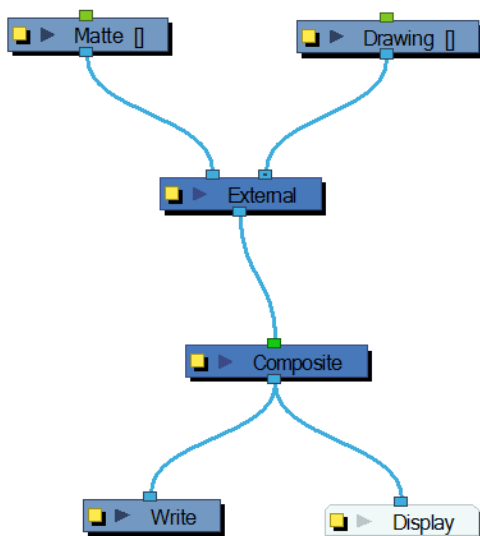
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# External



Use the External module to process images through external programs and input the resulting images back into the network. Note that not all programs work with the External module.

Using the External module avoids you having to export your animation to another software to do some processing over it and then bring it back to Animate Pro. This way, you can modify your scene and animation as much as you want and still use the effects or render process from a third-party software.



The External module writes input files to temporary files on the system. It then calls the external program, which will process the input images. If two images are input into the module, the program must composite them together to produce one output image. Finally, the file produced by the external program is read back into the network.

The command is sent to the external program in the following format:

```
program_name file_1 file_2 output_file numerical_param extension
```

Use the External editor to control the program that is launched by the module, the files that it reads, and the file that it outputs into the network.

```

Version: ImageMagick 6.3.0 11/06/06 Q16 http://www.imagemagick.org
Copyright: Copyright (C) 1999-2006 ImageMagick Studio LLC

Usage: mogrify [options ...] file [ [options ...] file ...]

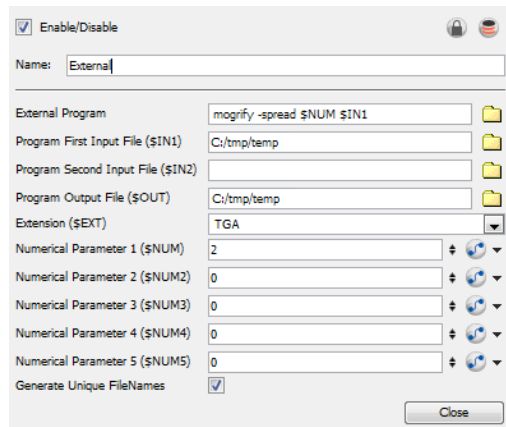
Where options include:
-adaptive-blur geometry          adaptively blur pixels; decrease effect near edges
-adaptive-resize geometry       adaptively resize image with data dependent triangulation

-adaptive-sharpen geometry      adaptively sharpen pixels; increase effect near edges
-affine matrix                  affine transform matrix
-annotate geometry text        annotate the image with text
-antialias                      remove pixel-aliasing
-authenticate value             decrypt image with this password
-auto-orient                   automatically orient image
-background color               background color
-bias value                     add bias when convolving an image

```

In this example, the ImageMagick 6.3 software was used without a matte connection.

Use the External editor to write down the parameters matching the chosen external program.



- **External Program:** The name of the program launched by the External module. This field can include a full or relative path to the executable file. If no path is entered, the user's path is searched to locate the program.

Enter the command directly into this field.

For example:

```
mogrify -spread $NUM $IN1
```

Where:

- **mogrify:** Is the name of the program,
- **spread:** Is the option to be applied,
- and **\$NUM** and **\$IN1:** Are the numerical parameter and first input file variable declared in the External module.
- **Program First Input File (\$IN1):** The name and location of the temporary file that Animate Pro will write to the file system for the external program to read. It must not include the dot or the extension; the External module will add these based on the Extension field.
- **Program Second Input File (\$IN2):** When processing two files through this module (such as an image and a matte), this is the name and location of the second temporary file that Animate Pro writes to the file system for the external program to read. It must not include the dot or the extension; the External module will add these based on the Extension field.
- **Program Output File (\$OUT):** The name and location of the temporary file that the external program will write to the file system so that Animate Pro can read it back into the network.
- **Extension (\$EXT):** The file type that will be processed by the external program.



- **Numerical Parameter (\$NUM):** A value passed to the external program as a file processing option. It can be attached to a function curve to change over time.

The program files are temporary files that are overwritten at each frame as the module is executed. They are only meant to temporarily store the image that is being processed at each frame.

- **Generate Unique FileNames:** If this option is enabled, the temporary output file will have a unique identification number added to its name to avoid any file override if another scene or External script is rendered at the same time. It could be possible to have an override when two scenes using the External modules are rendered in batch processing.

## Related Topics

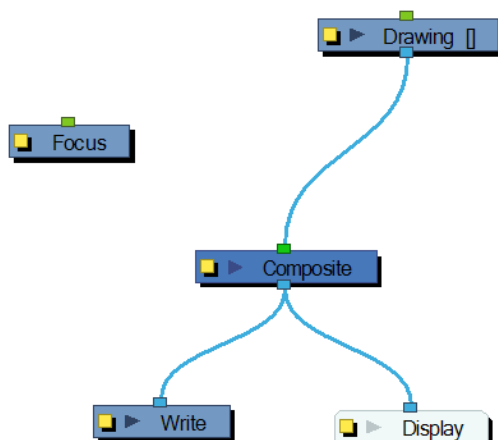
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Focus

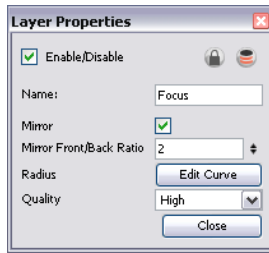


Use the Focus effect to set up depth-of-field effects for your scene. The Focus module is used to determine how much blur will be applied to images, based on their distance from the focal point.

The focal point can be the zero value of your scene or you can link the Focus module to another module, such as a drawing or peg layer, to retrieve the focal point from the module's Z-axis position.

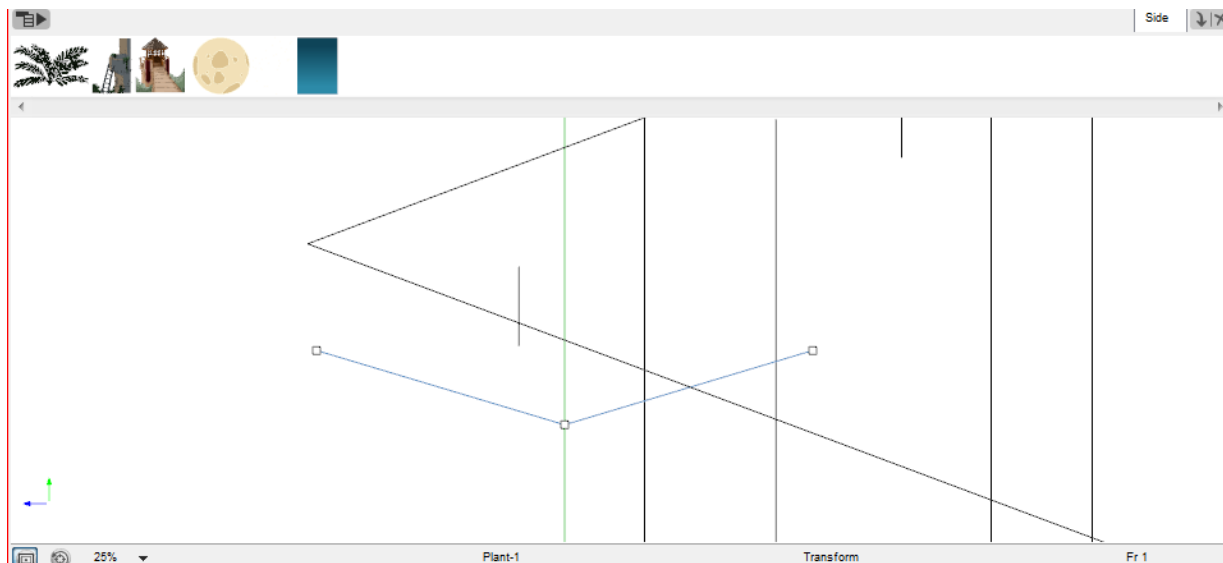


Use the Focus editor to determine how the focus will change as objects move farther from the focal point.

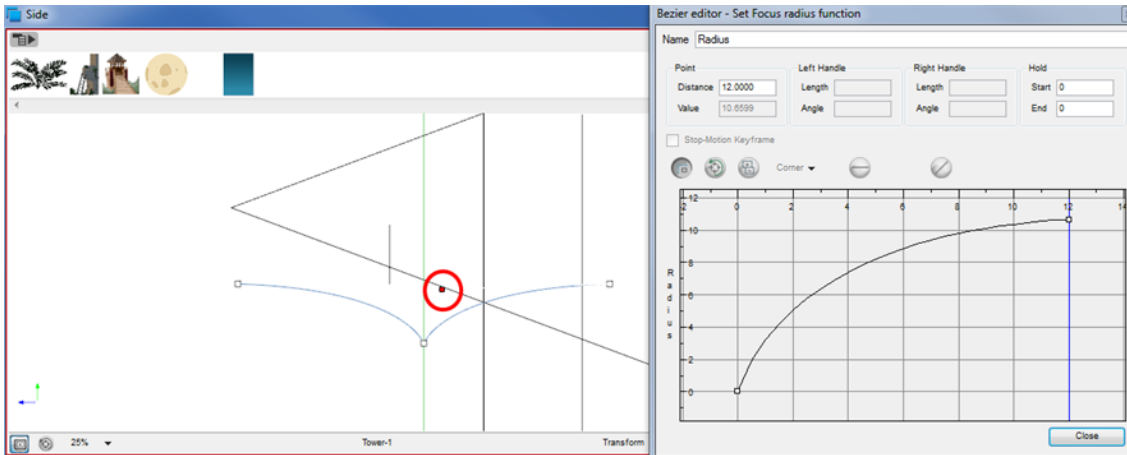


- **Mirror:** Select this option to also blur images in front of the focal point.
- **Mirror Front/Back Ratio:** When the Mirror option is selected, this ratio is applied to the calculation of the blur on images in front of the focal point. The default ratio of 1:2 produces realistic results. Experiment with different values to create customized effects.
- **Radius:** Controls the amount of blur applied to an element based on its distance from the focal point. Click on the Edit Curve button to change these values by adjusting the function curve.
- **Quality:** Controls the quality of the blur. A higher quality will achieve better results but will be slower to render.

In the Side view window, you can see how the blur values change based on their distance from the focal point. Select the Focus module in the Network view, then right-click on the Side view window and select Control from the pop-up menu.



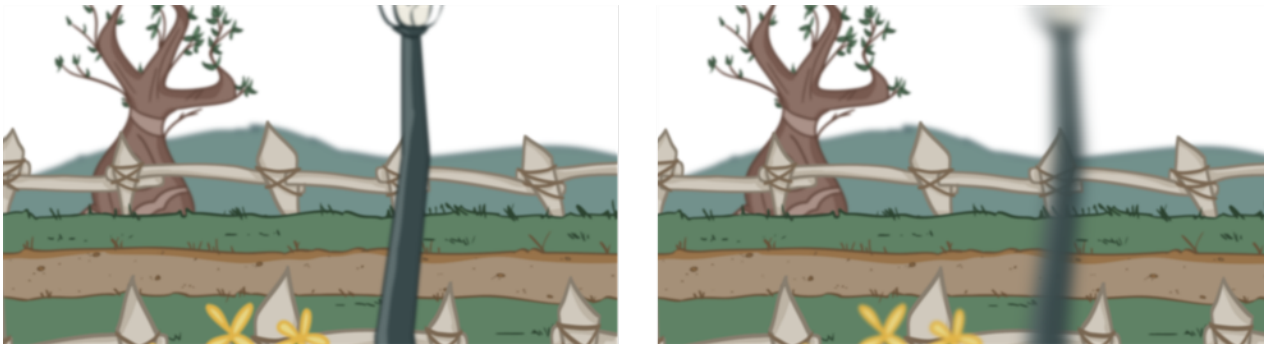
If you edited the function curve and adjusted the velocity, you can also adjust the Bezier handles in the Side view.



## Related Topics

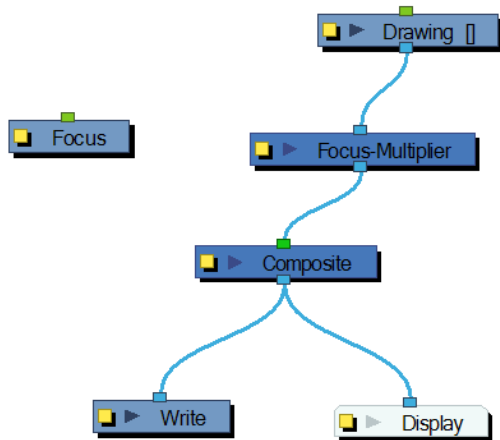
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Focus Multiplier



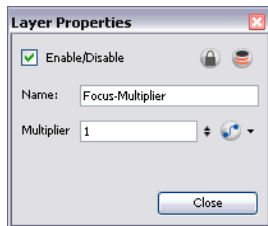
The Focus Multiplier effect works with the Focus effect. This module applies a blur to the selected layer, based on the blur radius in the Focus module.

Use the Focus Multiplier module when you want to apply the focus to selected elements or when you need to apply the focus before doing more effects in a composite operation.



You must disable the Apply Focus option in the Composite module in order to apply the focus effect to the selected module only. If you do not disable that option, the focus effect will be calculated twice on the selected module.

Use the Focus Multiplier editor to multiply the Focus Radius by a selected value. You can enter a static value in the Multiplier field or attach it to a function curve.



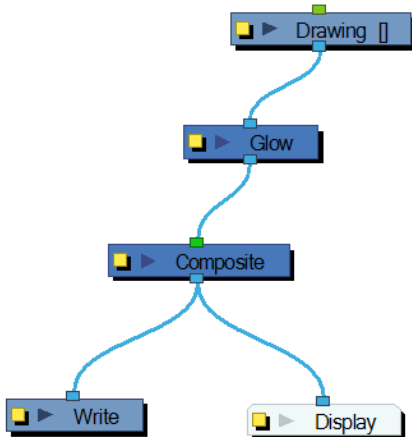
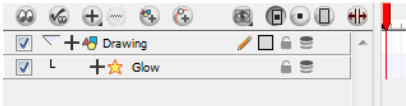
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

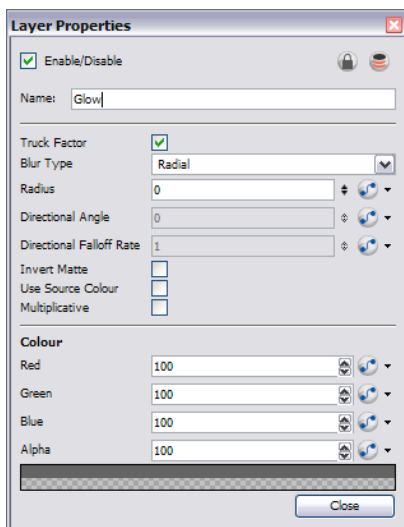
## Glow



The Glow effect adds a bright soft-edged light or diffuse light region around an image. The Glow effect is useful in creating a shining rim around objects such as the sun or stars.



Use the Glow editor to control the direction of the blur that creates the glow, as well as its colour.



- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the elements undergo a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the effect values remain unchanged regardless of any depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached to this effect.
- **Blur Type (Directional or Radial):**
  - If Directional is selected, the software will blur the matte in the direction you select. For example, if a character is walking east, the blur may fall to the west.
  - If Radial is selected, the software will blur the edges of the matte evenly around points that make up its edge.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.

- **Directional Angle:** If you select a Blur Directional Type, you can select the direction of the blur by entering a value from 0 to 360 in this field.
  - **0:** blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** blurs the image to the north.
- **Directional Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of zero causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to create the glow. Your matte will become a black silhouette while the glow will fill the background space.
- **Use Source Colour:** Select this option to use the colours painted in the matte for the glow effect. If you deselect this option, select a colour and alpha values in the Colour section.
- **Multiplicative:** Select this option to create a more diffused glow.
- **Colour:** Where you can choose the colour and alpha values for the glow effect.



If this effect is connected below a Composite module set to Pass-Through, the effect will be applied to each element connected in the Composite individually. If some of these elements are overlapping, the effect will also overlap.

---

## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Glue

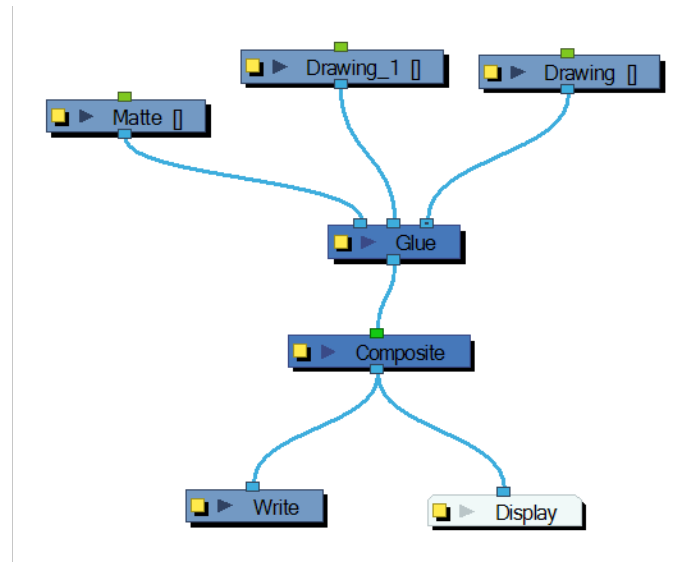
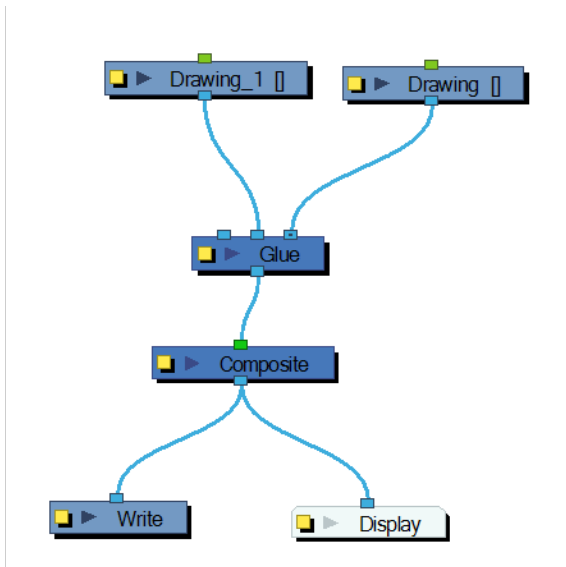


Use the Glue effect to repair the cracks that appear between joints during animation.

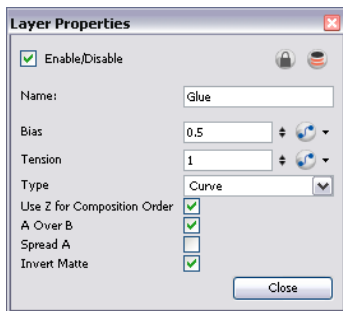


The Glue module has three ports:

- **Left Port (Matte):** Receives the matte.
- **Middle Port (Port A):** Receives the element that will not be used to fill the joint.
- **Right Port (Port B):** Receives the element that will be used to fill the joint.



For most effects with the Glue module, the default options are sufficient. However, you can modify these options using the Glue editor.



The Glue editor includes the following options:

- **Bias:** Indicates the tendency to favour the static or moving element. Set to 0, it favours element A; set to 1 it favours element B; set to 0.5 it is in between A and B.
- **Tension:** Indicates how tight the joint will be. Set to 1, the tension has no effect; set less than 1, the tension decreases; set greater than 1, the tension increases.
- **Type:** From this menu, select the type of joint to create. You can choose from among Curve (default), Line and Corner.

- **Use Z for Composition Order:** You can use this option to choose the drawing with the higher front-back value to create the joint.
- **A Over B:** Indicates which image is rendered on top in the final image. By default, A is rendered on top of B, which indicates that the image in the middle port (A) is rendered on top of the image in the right port (B).
- **Spread A:** By default, the image in port B is spread to fill the joint. You can use this option to choose the image in the A port to create the joint. If you select this option, the drawing module must receive position information from the "B" element. Thus, you must connect the Drawing module of the "B" element to the Drawing module of the matte.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to fill the joint. If you want to use the "B" element as the matte, you must select this element.

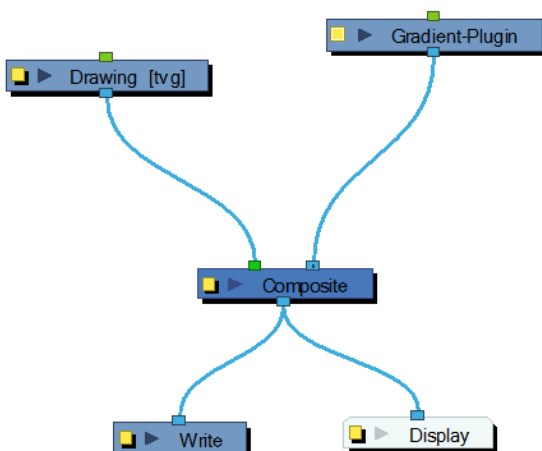
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Gradient



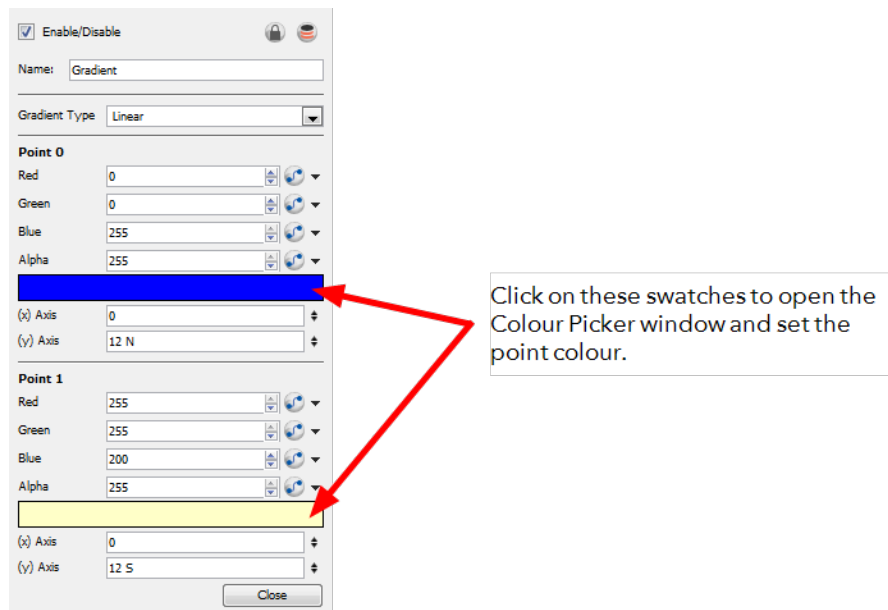
Use a Gradient effect to create a transition of colour or alpha values between two areas of colours. You can either create a linear or radial gradient. Use two points to indicate where those two coloured areas are. You can then move these points to create the transition.





The Gradient module covers the entire camera frame and beyond. You do not need to scale it up or down. It will automatically cover an infinite zone. You simply need to connect it behind your scene's elements. You can connect it in front of some elements you would like to cover. By default, the Gradient has a Z ordering value of 0.

Use the Gradient editor to control the values of the gradient and the position of its output.



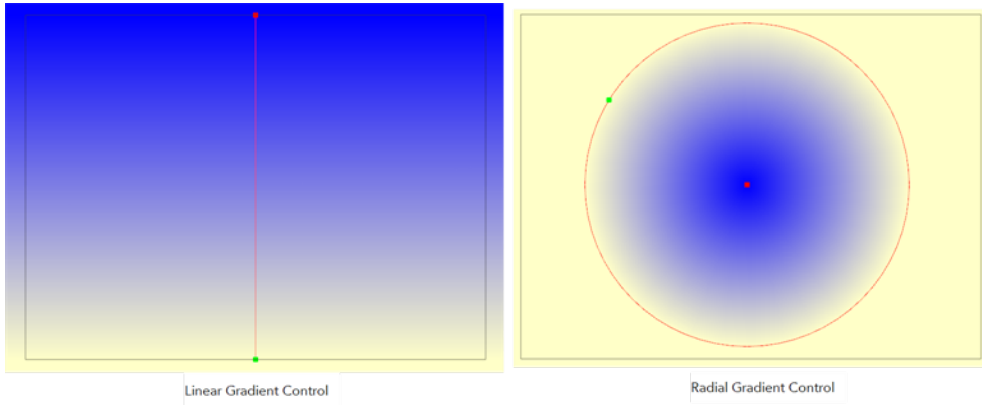
- **Gradient Type:** In the drop-down menu, select if you want your gradient to be linear or radial.
- **Point 0, Point 1:** These sections control the values of the first point (point 0) and the second point (point 1) in the gradient.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** These are the colour and alpha values of the corresponding point. You can also click on the colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and select a new colour. These colours can be animated over time if the value parameter is hooked to a function curve.
- **(x) Axis:** This sets the X coordinate for the corresponding point.
- **(z) Axis:** This sets the Y coordinate for the corresponding point.

## Controlling the Gradient in the Camera View

If you want to control the gradient's orientation and points position in the Camera view, you can use the Control command to display the points and move them.

**To control the gradient in the Camera view:**

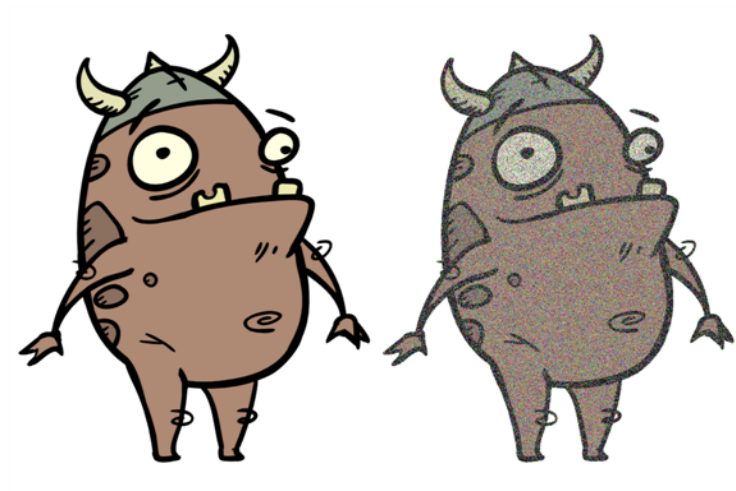
1. In the Tools toolbar, select the Transform tool.
2. In the Network view, select your Gradient module.
3. Select **View > Show > Control**.
4. In the Camera view, click on the Gradient's points and move them.



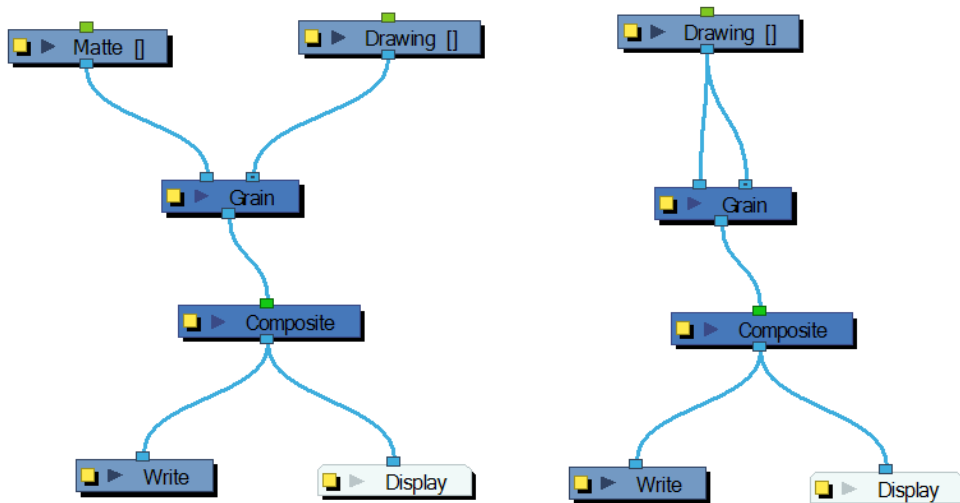
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Grain



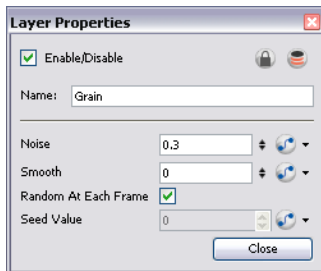
Use the Grain effect to add a film grain to an image; the film grain looks like video noise.



The Grain module has two input ports.

- On the left port, attach the element that will act as the matte defining the grain area.
- On the right port, attach the element on which you want to apply the grain effect.

Use the **Grain** editor to adjust the amount of grain to add to an image; you can also use it to adjust the sharpness or softness of the grain.

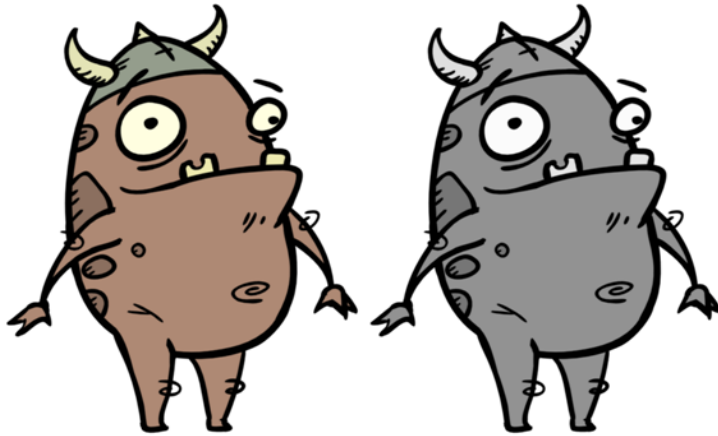


- **Noise:** The amount of grain to add to the image based on the percentage of pixels to alter. The larger the value, the coarser the grain. The smaller the value is to 0 (zero), the finer the grain.
- **Smooth:** The amount of blending to apply to the grain effect, based on the blur radius, to make the effect appear less pixelated. The larger the value, the greater the smoothing.
- **Random At Each Frame:** Computes the colour shift in the grain using a different value at each composite. This means that your images will look different each time you render them. Deselect this option and select a Seed Value to ensure the same result every time you composite the grain effect.
- **Seed Value:** This value corresponds to a unique pattern in the grain. If you want to retain this pattern in other frames, you can reuse this value.

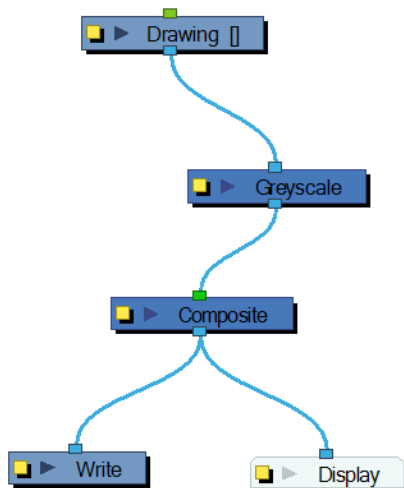
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

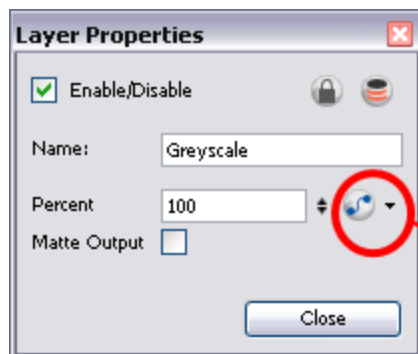
# Greyscale



Use the Greyscale effect to convert a colour image to greyscale. This example demonstrates what happens when you set the greyscale to 100% using the Greyscale module. The Contrast module can also be used to adjust the darkness and lightness of the pixels in your element.



Use the Greyscale editor to enter the percentage of black and white to apply to the image. You can enter a static value in the Percentage field or attach the value to a function curve to change over time.



Use these menus to create a function curve and attach

- **Matte Output:** When this option is activated, the colour values do not change. However, alpha values are read from the colours which you can see in the Camera view Matte View mode.

## How to Use the Matte Output Option

You can see in this section a concrete example on how to use the Matte Output option of the Greyscale module. We created a frosted window using a snowflake image over a blue rectangle and a colourful background.

Here are the three drawings used for the example:

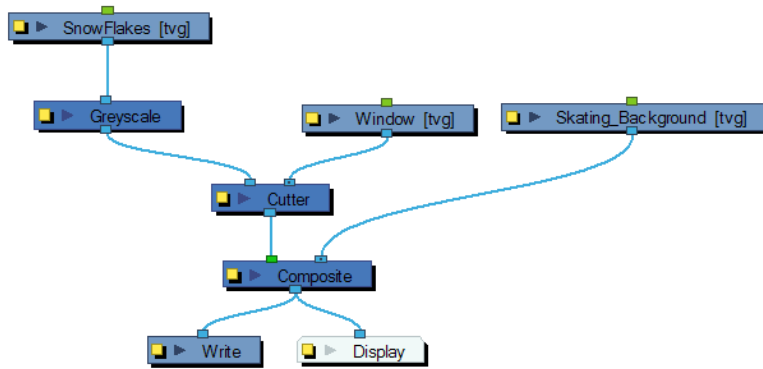


When the snowflake image is connected into the Greyscale module, it turns into a greyscale image. There is no transparency visible in the Camera view Matte View mode.



When the Matte Output option is enabled, the snowflake image colours are displayed as normal, but when the Matte View mode of the Camera view is enabled, you can see the transparency levels generated from the colour values.

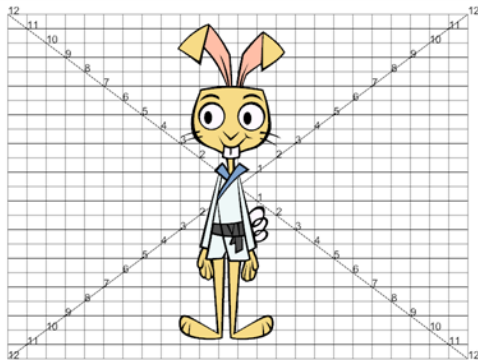
When you connect the Snowflake images into a Cutter effect's Matte port along with the Window images, the window will be semi-transparent, matching the alpha (transparency) channel generated by the Greyscale module.



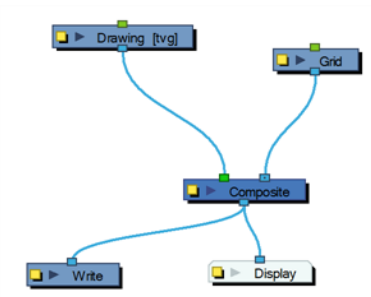
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

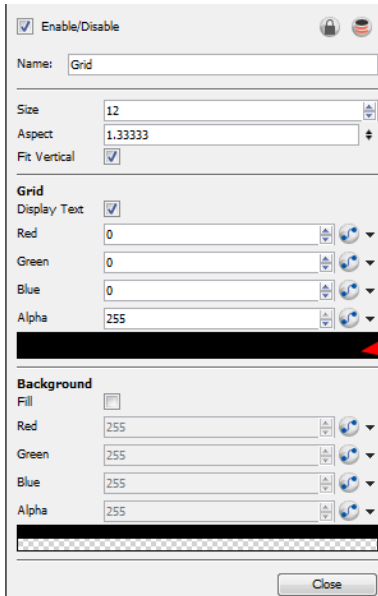
## Grid / Field Chart



The Grid module displays a grid, in field chart unit, which allows you to position elements in the Camera view windows. The Grid is also referred to as the Field Chart.

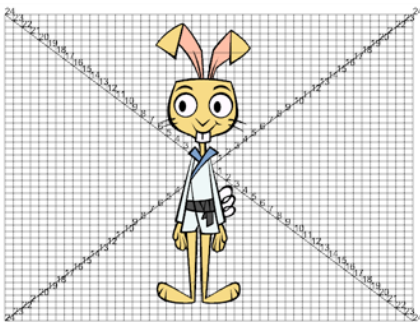


Use the Grid editor to control the quality and alignment of the field chart that appear in the Camera view.



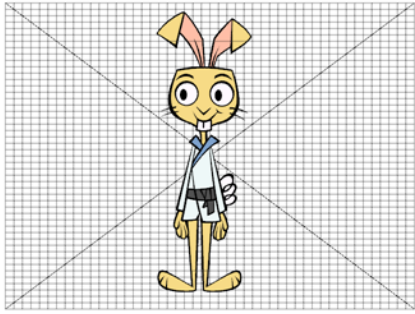
Click on these colour swatches to open the Colour Picker window and select a new colour.

## Size



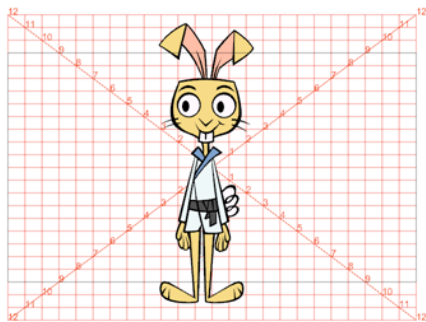
This parameter adjusts the amount of units in the grid (field chart). The grid size will always be a 4:3 ration, as per traditional animation standards, but will adjust the camera frame width. You can change the grid to adjust to the camera frame by disabling the Fit Vertical option.

## Display Text



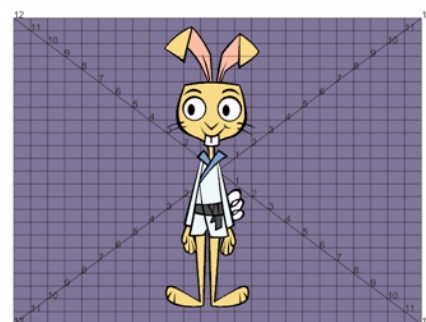
Disable this option if you only want to see the grid but not the numbers. Enable this option to see the number gradation.

## Red/Green/Blue/Alpha



The colour and alpha values of the corresponding point. You can also click on the colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and select a grid colour. You can click on the second colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and select a background colour.

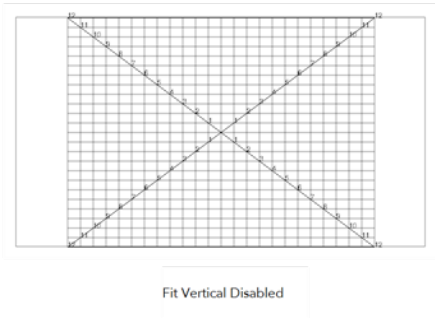
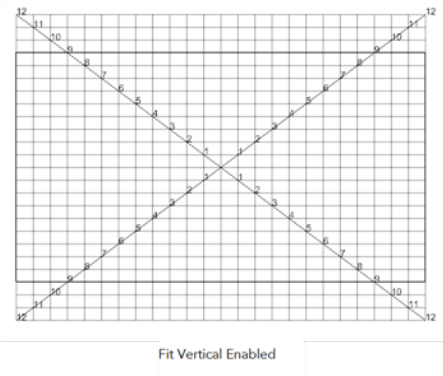
## Fill



When selected, the grid's background becomes opaque. Nothing behind will be shown. You can also click on the second colour swatch to open the Colour Picker window and select a background colour.

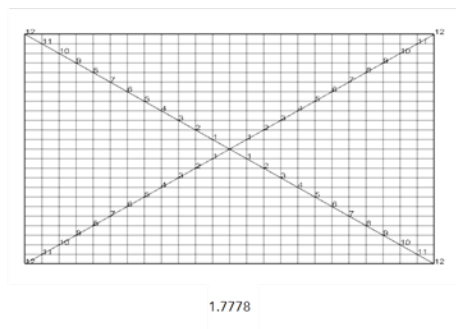
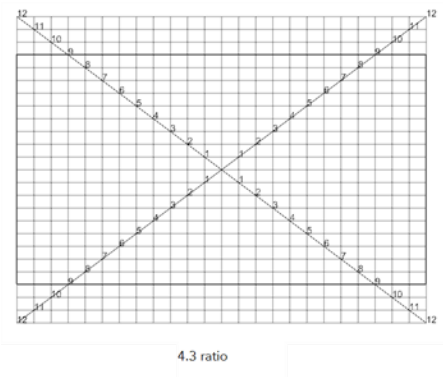


## Fit Vertical

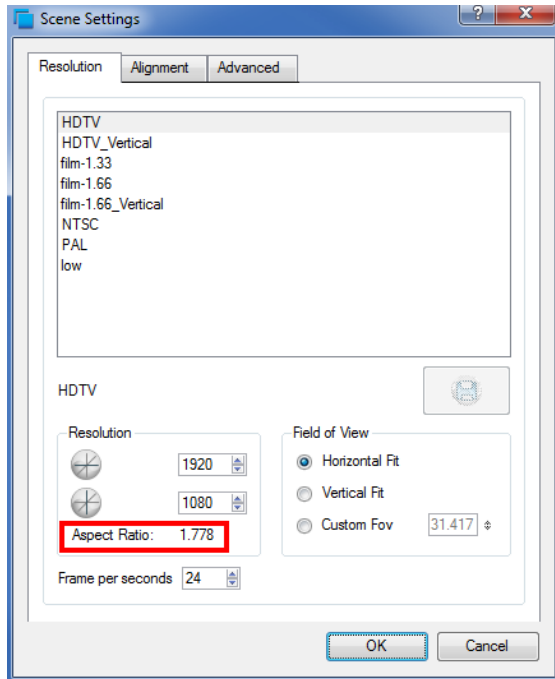


The grid size will adjust the camera frame. You can change the grid to either adjust to the camera width or height by disabling the Fit Vertical option.

## Aspect Ratio



The grid size default format is 4:3 ratio, as per traditional animation standards, but will adjust the camera frame width. You can change the grid ratio by entering a new ratio in the Aspect Ratio field. You can find your scene ratio under **Scene > Scene Settings**.



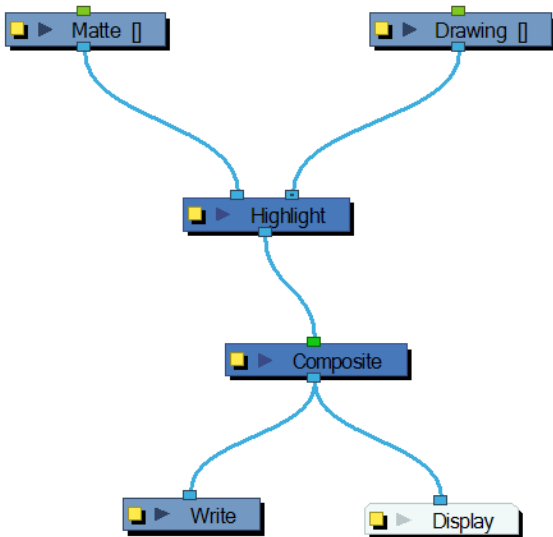
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

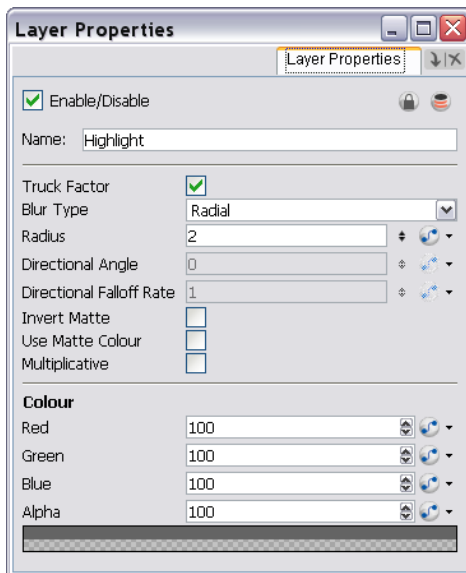
## Highlight



Use the Highlight effect to turn a drawing's area lighter to simulate a light source. To produce the highlight effect, you must draw a shape to control where the highlight will appear on the original drawing.



The Highlight effect uses a matte to determine the shape and position of the highlight on another element and can blur the edges to create a softer effect. Use the Highlight editor to control the type and amount of blur, as well as the colour of the highlight effect.



- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the element undergoes a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the effect's values remain unchanged regardless of depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached this effect.
- **Blur Type (Directional or Radial):**
  - If Directional is selected, Animate Pro will blur the matte in the direction you select.
  - If Radial is selected, Animate Pro will blur the edges of the matte evenly around points that make up the edge of it.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.

- **Directional Angle:** If you select a Blur Directional Type, you can select the direction of the blur by entering a value from 0 to 360 in this field.
  - **0:** blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** blurs the image to the north.
- **Directional Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the directional blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of 0 causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to create the highlight.
- **Use Matte Colour:** Select this option to use the colours in the matte for the highlight effect. If you deselect it, use the Colour section to select colour and alpha values.
- **Multiplicative:** Select this option to create a more diffused highlight.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the RGBA fields, enter the value that you want added to or subtracted from the colour channels in the drawings. Alternatively, you can attach these values to function columns to animate them over time.

## Related Topics

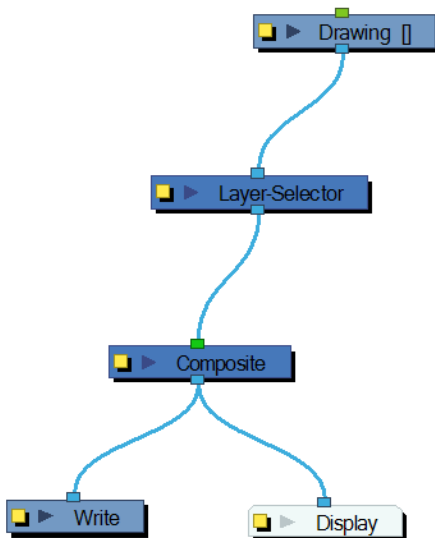
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Layer Selector

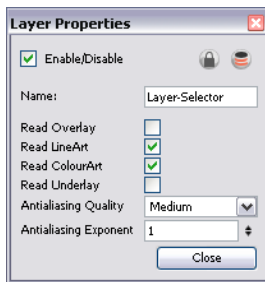


Use the Layer Selector effect to isolate and display one or several drawing layers:

- Overlay
- Line Art
- Colour Art
- Underlay



Use the Layer Selector editor to select the desired layers.

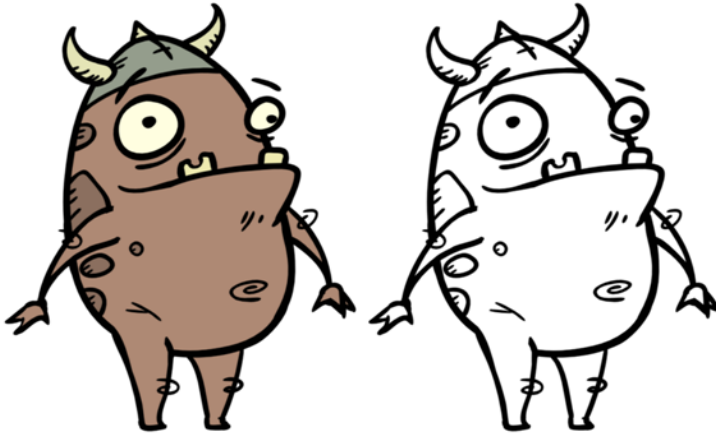


- **Antialiasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to the selected layers. Choose from Low (no antialiasing), Medium Low, Medium and High (extensive antialiasing). The higher the quality of the chosen setting, the greater the amount of antialiasing that is applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more memory from your system.
- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the amount of area around the selected layers edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.

## Related Topics

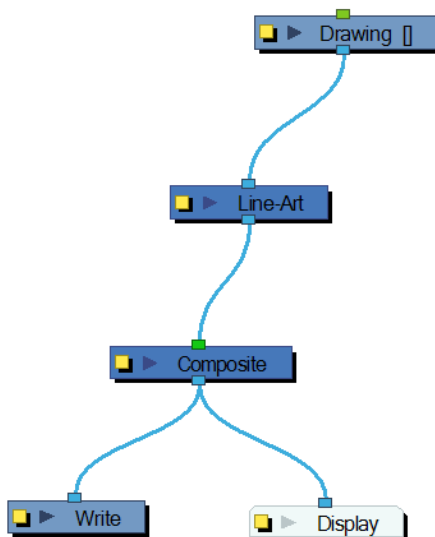
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Line Art

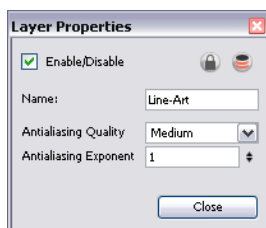


Use the Line Art effect to read only the Line Art in an element. Place a Line Art module after a drawing module in the Network view to display only the module's Line Art output. The Line Art module can only be connected after a vector Drawing layer or a vector type Composite module. Any bitmap information will not be processed.

This effect will only work if the user drew or painted something into the Line Art layer of the drawing.



Use the Line Art editor to control how the Line Art is rendered by the module.



- **Antialiasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to Line Art. Choose from Low (no antialiasing), Medium Low, Medium and High (extensive antialiasing). The higher the quality of the chosen setting, the greater

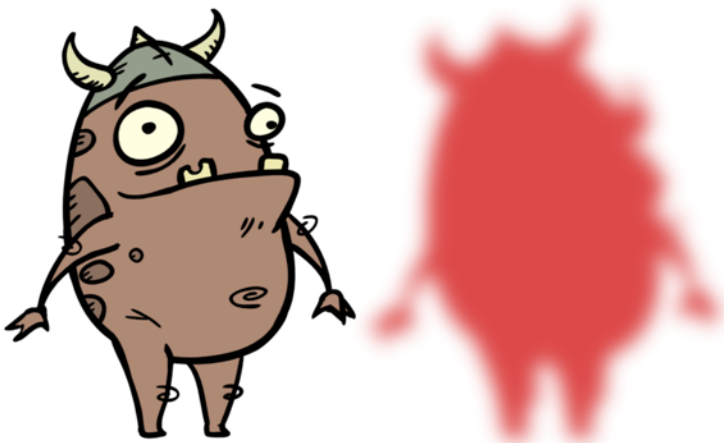
the amount of antialiasing that is applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more memory from your system.

- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the amount of area around the Line Art edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.

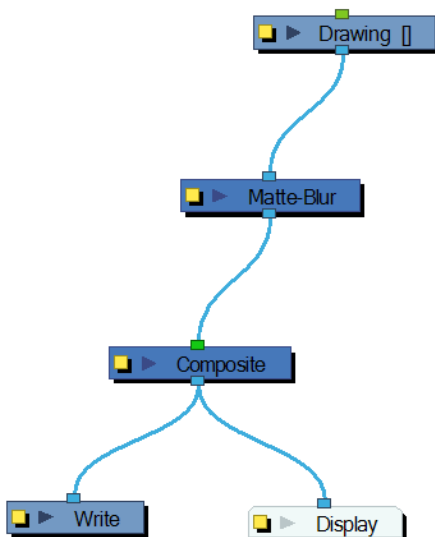
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

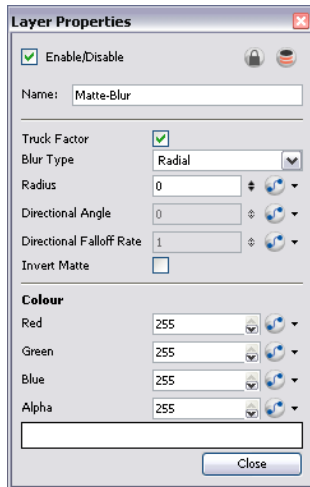
## Matte-Blur



Use the Matte-Blur effect to blur a matte or change its colour. Here is an example of a network with the result of a Matte-Blur effect.



Use the Matte-Blur editor to control the output of the module.



- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the element undergoes a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the module's values remain unchanged regardless of depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached this module.
- **Blur Type** (Directional or Radial): If Directional is selected, Animate Pro will blur the matte in the direction you select. If Radial is selected, Animate Pro will blur the edges of the matte evenly around points that make up the edge of the matte.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.
- **Directional Angle:** If you select a Directional-Blur Type, you can select the direction of the blur by entering a value from 0 to 360 in this field.
  - **0:** blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** blurs the image to the north.
- **Directional Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of 0 causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to create the blur.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the RGBA fields, you can enter the value you want added to or subtracted from the colour channels in the drawings. Alternatively, you can attach these values to function columns.



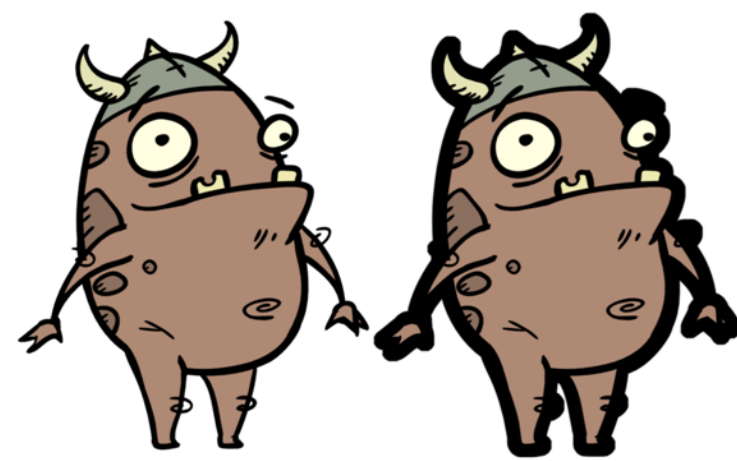
If you select the Pass Through option in the Layer Properties of a Composite where this effect is connected, the effect will be multiplied in areas where the drawing elements that the effect is acting on overlap.



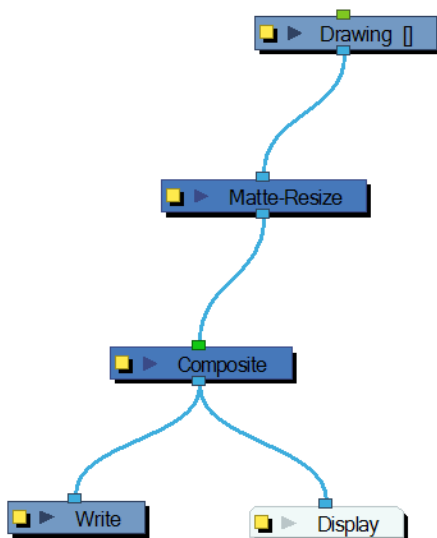
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Matte-Resize



Use the Matte-Resize effect to evenly expand a matte outward in all directions. The Matte-Resize module increases the size of a matte from its centre. Here is an example of a network with the result of a Matte-Resize effect.

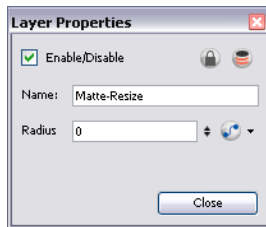


If you use the Matte-Resize module to create a pulsating glow you can enlarge the region without softening the edges. Using the Blur-Radial effect, the effect may be softer than you intend. This module produces a limited antialiased matte, which can have slightly jagged edges. You could use this module in combination with other modules, such as:

- Tone
- Highlight
- Glow
- Shadow

- Matte-Blur

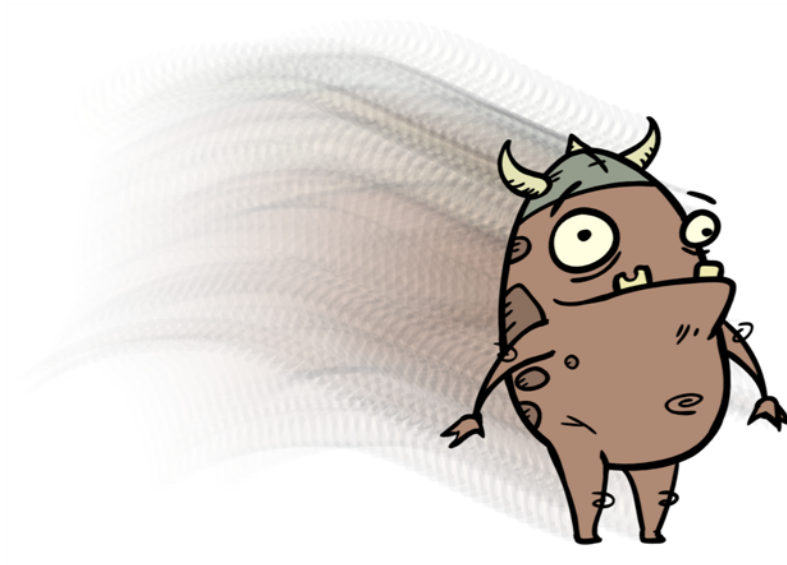
In the Layer Properties, you can enter a static value for the Radius of the resize operation. You can also attach the Radius value to a function column to change the value over time.



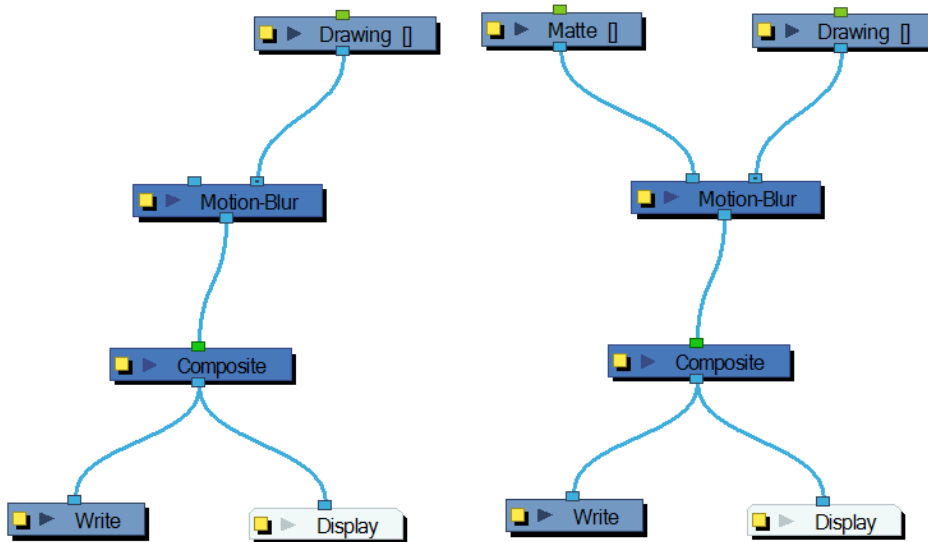
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Motion-Blur

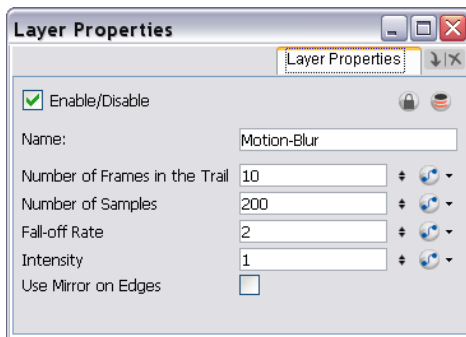


The Motion-Blur effect is used to create a faded trail behind objects animated on a motion path. You cannot create a Motion-Blur on a hand-drawn animation. The layer must be moving along a trajectory (motion path) in order to work properly.



The Motion-Blur effect automatically creates a matte for the drawing layer attached to it, so it is not necessary to connect any matte into the Mask layer.

Use the Motion-Blur editor to modify the motion blur, crowd simulation or particle system effect.



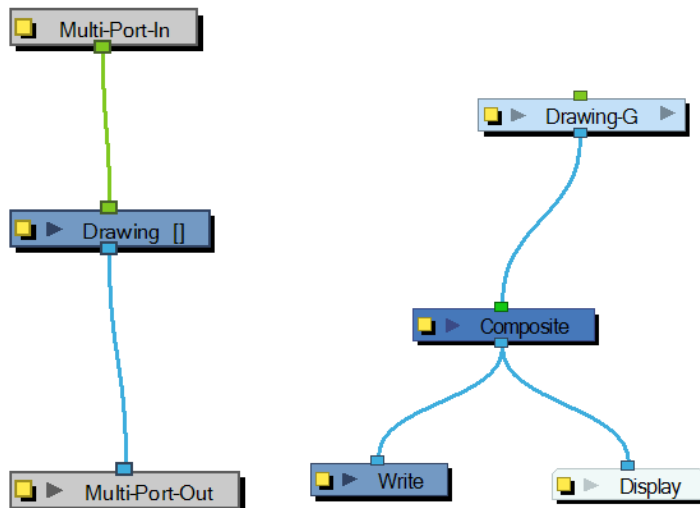
- **Number of Frames in Trail:** Number of frames before the current frame that will be used in the trail.
- **Number of Samples:** Number of copies of each drawing used in the trail. The higher the number, the more continuous the trail appears.
- **Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of 0 causes the trail to fade out slowly, distributing the colour evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the trail.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the trail to fade out quickly so that the trail is more opaque closer to the edge of the image and transparent at the end of the trail.
- **Intensity:** Select a value to define the opacity of the trail between 0 and 10. A value of 10 will make the trail very dark and almost opaque, whereas a value of 0 will make the trail quite pale and ghostly transparent.
- **Use Mirror on Edges:** When enabled this option appears when the image is close to the edge of the camera frame. It forces the software to use a mirror of the image to calculate the blur so that it appears on both sides of the drawing object. Without this option once your drawing reaches the edge of the Camera frame, it gets cropped so does the trail.

## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Multi-Port-In

A Multi-Port-In module is added by default in a new Group module. Use it to add one or more input ports to the Group module so that you can process an image through the modules in the Group module.

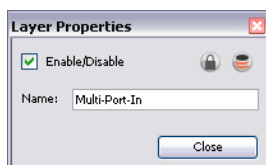


When you plug an element to a Multi-Port-In module, an input port appears at the top of the Group module. You can add additional ports to the modules as needed.

Pass your cursor over the Group module input port to see the name of the Port Image In module that it connects to. You will notice that the Group module in these examples has no output port. It requires a Multi-Port-Out module to output data from its network.

A Multi-Port-In is automatically added when you create a group.

Use the Multi-Port-In editor to rename the module.



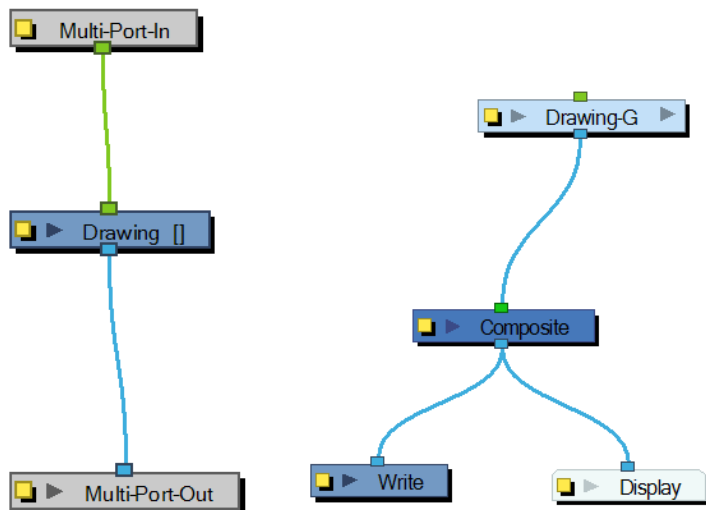
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Multi-Port-Out

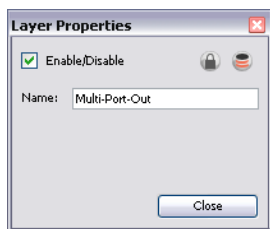
A Multi-Port-Out module is added in a new Group module by default. Use it to add output ports to the Group module so that you can output the result of the group operation to the rest of the network. After you plug an

element to a Multi-Port-Out module, an output port appears on the bottom of your Group module. You can add additional output ports as needed.



A Multi-Port-Out is automatically added when you create a group.

Use the Multi-Port-Out editor to rename the module in the network.



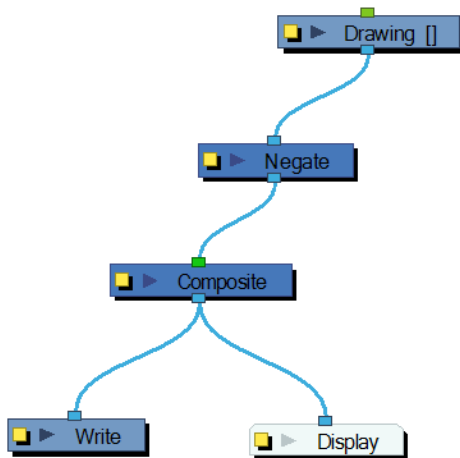
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

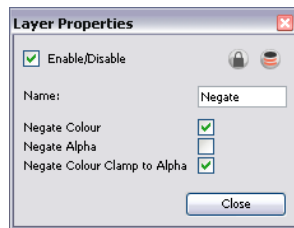
## Negate



Use the Negate effect to invert the colour and/or alpha values in the Colour Art and Line Art of an image. The Negate module subtracts the original value of each channel (RGB or A) from the maximum value of that channel (255 for 8-bit channels) to produce the negative image.



Use the Negate editor to select the colour and/or alpha values to invert.



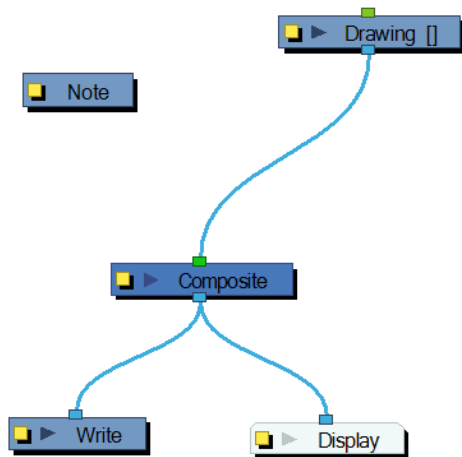
- **Negate Colour:** Inverts the values of the colour channels.
- **Negate Alpha:** Inverts the transparency value (alpha channel).
- **Negate Colour Clamp to Alpha:** Limits the negated area to the alpha channel.

## Related Topics

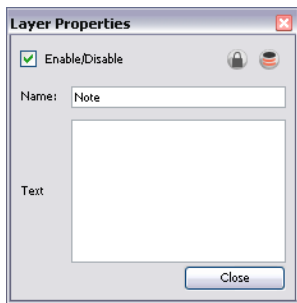
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Note

The Note module allows you to record any textual information that is relevant to your project. Use its editor to enter comments, suggestions or reminders. Note modules can be added anywhere in the network, including in groups.



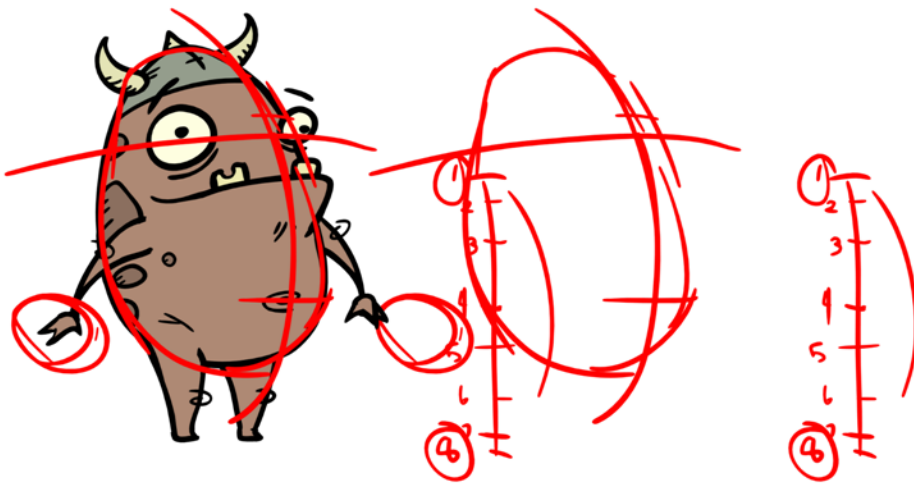
Use the Note editor to add or update relevant notes with any textual information.



## Related Topics

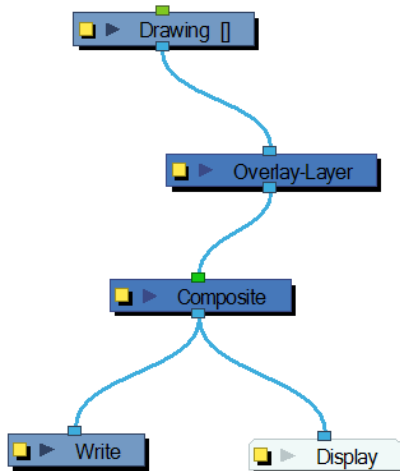
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Overlay Layer

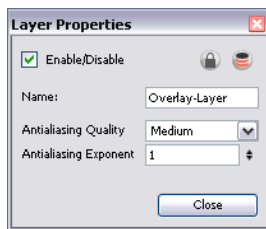


Use the Overlay Layer effect to read only the Overlay layer in an element. Place a Overlay Layer module after a drawing module in the Network view to display only the module's Overlay layer output. The Overlay Layer module can only be connected after a vector drawing layer or a vector type Composite module. Any bitmap information will not be processed.

This effect will only work if the user drew or painted something into the Overlay layer of the drawing.



Use the Overlay Layer editor to control how the Overlay layer is rendered by the module.



- **Antialiasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to the Overlay layer. Choose from Low (no antialiasing), Medium Low, Medium and High (extensive antialiasing). The higher the quality of the chosen setting, the greater the amount of antialiasing that is applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more memory from your system.
- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the amount of area around the Overlay layer edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.

## Related Topics

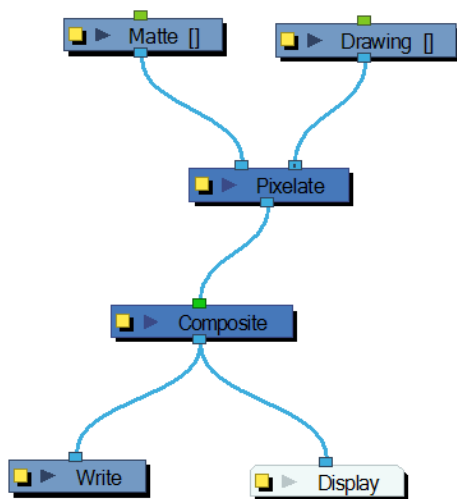
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092



# Pixelate



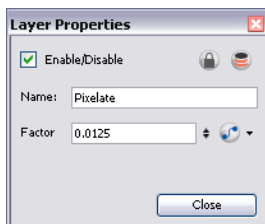
Use the Pixelate effect to apply a mosaic effect to an image (and its matte) based on the matte you supply. Pixelation makes the image look like it is made up of square tiles.



There are two input ports on the Pixelate module:

- The left port receives the matte
- The right port receives the image

Use the Pixelate editor to control the amount (Factor) the image is pixelated. You can attach the Factor value to a function curve to change the value over time.

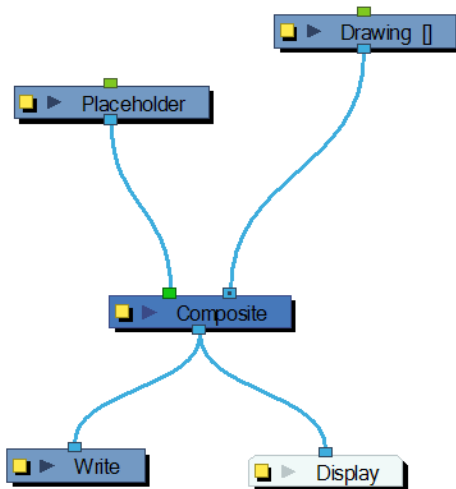


## Related Topics

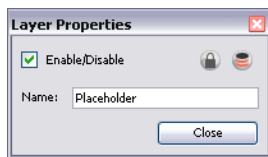
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Placeholder

Use the Placeholder module in a network when you are either unsure of which module you will put in its place or if you want to lay out a custom network for future use.



Use the Placeholder editor to rename the module.



## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092


# Quadmap

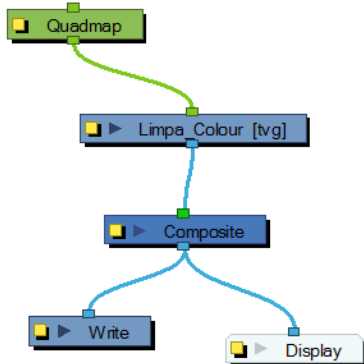


Use the Quadmap transformation layer to deform the shape of an element. For example, you can use it to create a drop-shadow effect on an element.

You can edit the Quadmap visually in the Camera view.

#### To edit the Quadmap the Camera view:

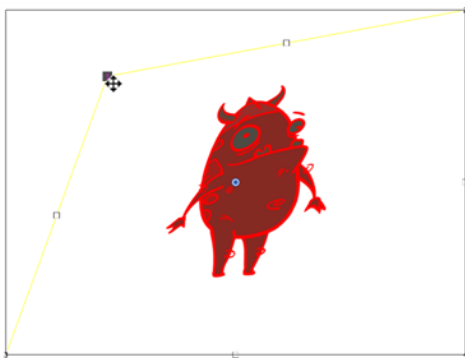
1. In the Timeline view, click on the Add Layer  button and select Quadmap from the drop-down menu.
2. Connect the Quadmap layer to the drawing layer that you want to deform, or in the Network view, drag in the Quadmap module from the Module Library and connect it above the drawing element module that you want the effect to act on.



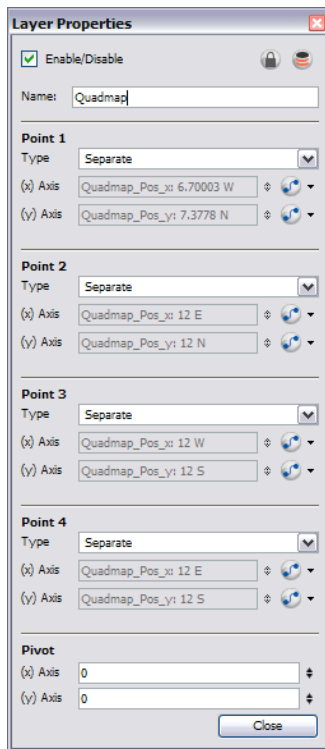
3. In the Tools toolbar, disable the Animate mode to change the value for the Quadmap over the entire duration of the element.
4. In the Timeline view, click on the Quadmap layer to select it.
5. Select **View > Show > Control** or press [Shift] + [F11].

The quadmap handles appear around the element in the window. There is also a pivot point at the centre of the quadmap frame that can be repositioned.

6. In the Camera View window, use the Transform tool to move the points on the quadmap. [Shift] + click to select multiple points.



The value of each point on the quadmap can be changed gradually. To do this, use the Quadmap module Layer Properties to attach the points to function curves.



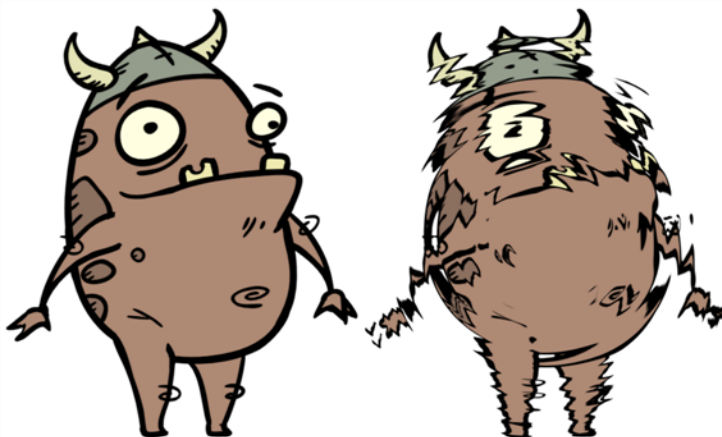
Only the X and Y values of each point in the quadmap can be changed.

- **2D Path:** change the X and Y values simultaneously and control the velocity of the change.
- **Separate:** change the X and Y values separately. Each of these can be attached to separate function curves.

## Related Topics

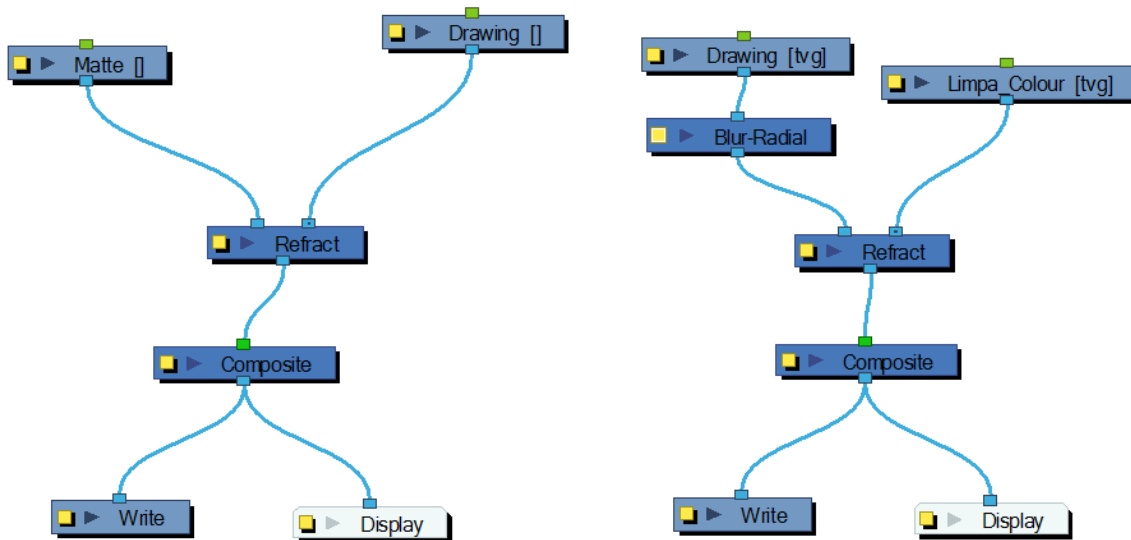
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Refract



Use the Refract effect to create effects such as ripples and heat haze. This effect is based on the refraction of light, which occurs when a beam of light passes through media of different density, causing the light to refract or

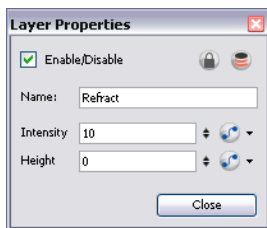
change angles. This effect makes objects appear distorted or offset from their actual positions. If you imagine an object in a pool of water the part beneath the surface of the water appears offset from its true position.



To create a refraction effect, you need a matte with alpha values. This creates the effect of a volume passing over an image, refracting the light that bounces off the contents below. For a ripple effect moving across an image, you must move the matte with a Peg layer.

If your matte is only black and white, meaning that there is no gradients and only solid colours in your matte drawing, you will need to connect a Blur Radial module after your matte Drawing module to soften the edges and get nicer waves.

Use the Refract editor to control the effect.



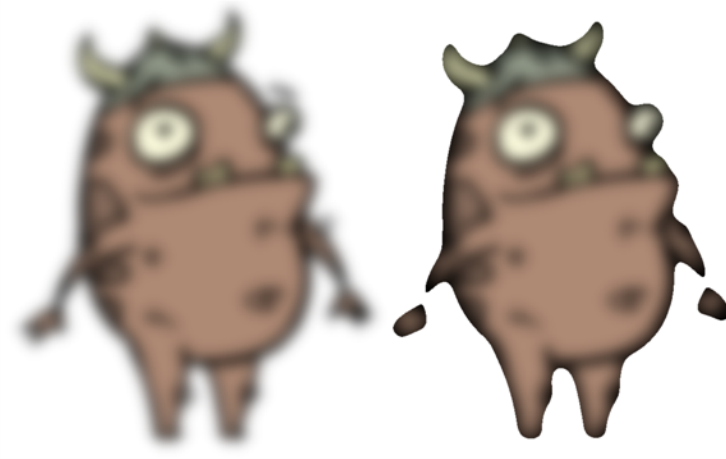
- **Intensity:** The amount of refraction to apply to the image.
- **Height:** The amount of depth to add to the refraction effect. When coupled with the Intensity effect, this value can create the effect of bending the objects below the refraction matte.

Attaching the Intensity and Height values to function curves changes their values over time.

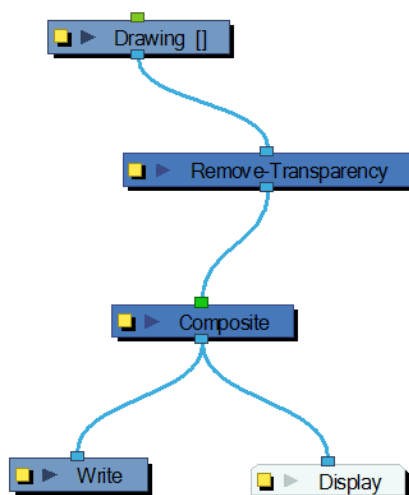
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

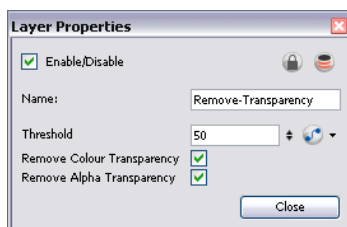
## Remove Transparency



The Remove Transparency effect negates transparent values in an image. You can use the Remove Transparency module to remove the result of antialiasing around an image.



Use the Remove Transparency editor to control the effects of the module.



- **Threshold:** All values above the Threshold represent a transparent value. In this field, you must identify the value above which all alpha values are considered transparent. Alpha is measured from 0 to 255.
- **Remove Colour Transparency:** When selected, the Threshold value is used to determine which pixels in the Colour-Art (RGB channels) to make fully opaque or fully transparent.

- **Remove Alpha Transparency:** When selected, the Threshold value is used to determine which pixels in the alpha channel to make fully opaque or fully transparent.

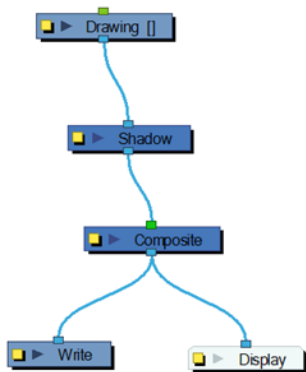
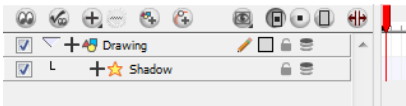
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

## Shadow



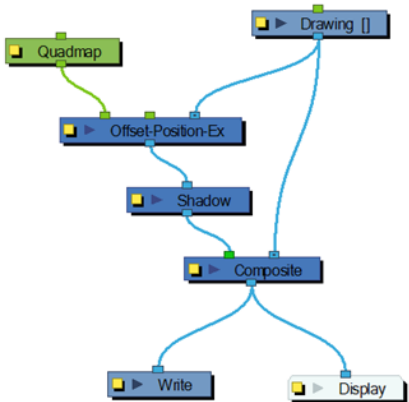
With the Shadow effect, you can turn a drawing into a shadow. It does not matter if your drawing layer is a fully coloured character, the Shadow effect will render it into a grey, semi-transparent, slightly blurry silhouette.



To add a shadow stretched out on the ground, simply add a Quadmap module to flip, stretch and skew the matte. Attach the entire effect to the same trajectory as your drawing layer and watch the shadow move along with your character.

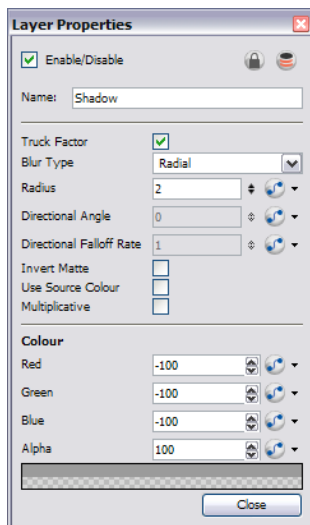


Do not forget that you need to connect your character in both the final Composite module and the Shadow effect if you want to see your character and its shadow.




Use the Shadow editor to modify the way the Shadow effect is created.

The Shadow effect uses the shape of the drawing connected to create the shadow behind another element and can blur the edges to create a softer effect. You can control the type and amount of blur, as well as the colour of the shadow, in this dialog box.



- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the elements undergo a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the effect's values remain unchanged regardless of any depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached to this effect.
- **Blur Type (Directional or Radial):**



- If Directional is selected, Animate Pro will blur the matte in the direction you select.
- If Radial is selected, Animate Pro will blur the edges of the matte evenly around points that make up the edge of it.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.
- **Directional Angle:** If you select a Directional Blur Type, you can select the direction of the blur by entering a value from 0 to 360 in this field.
  - **0:** blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** blurs the image to the north.
- **Directional Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of 0 causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to create the shadow. In the render mode, the background will appear grey, while a the matte shape will act as a cut-out window, allowing you to see the original background colours beneath.
- **Use Source Colour:** Create the shadow using the matte shape's colour. Be sure that you are in render mode  to see this effect and that your background is **NOT** white and that you do **NOT** have a white colour card module attached to the composite. As the shadow matte only gives colour information, but no alpha, the matte is automatically multiplied with the background colours. If there is no colour card attached and the background appears black, you will see the matte colour at full opacity. If it is multiplied with a white background, the colours disappear into the full 255.
- **Multiplicative:** Multiplies the shadow colours with the background.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the RGBA fields, you can enter the value to add or subtract from the colour channels in the drawings or you can attach these values to function curves.



If this effect is connected below a Composite module set to Pass-Through, the effect will be applied to each element connected in the Composite module individually. If some of these elements are overlapping, the effect will also overlap.

## Related Topics

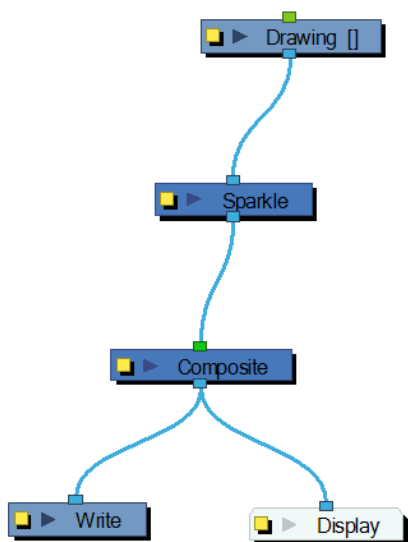
- [Using Effects on page 1092](#)

# Sparkle

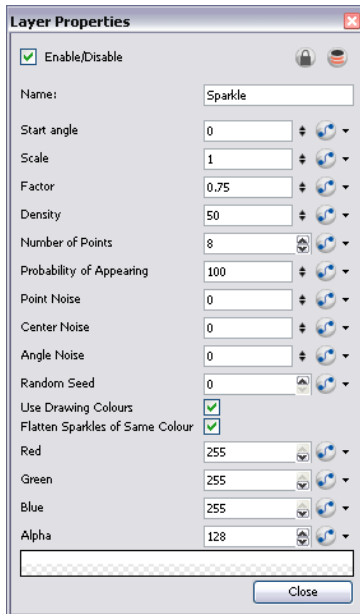


The Sparkle effect transforms a vector drawing into sparkles. You have a high degree of control over the appearance of the sparkles.

The sparkle effect can only be used with vector drawings. If the sparkle effect module is attached to a composite, verify that the Composite editor is set to Vector Flatten Output.



Use the Sparkle editor to modify how the Sparkle module creates the sparkle effect. You can also use Bezier and Ease function curves to change the values of factors over time.



- **Start Angle:** Enter a value between -360 and 360 to indicate the angle of rotation of each sparkle.
- **Scale:** Sparkles are determined by the size of the bounding box of the coloured areas in the drawing. Enter the multiple to use to scale the sparkle size.
- **Factor:** Enter a value between 0.1 and 1 to determine how pointy the sparkle is. A value closer to 0 will result in a more pointed sparkle. A value closer to 1 will result in a more rounded sparkle.
- **Density:** Adjusts the density level.
- **Number of Points:** Enter the number of points you want each sparkle to have.
- **Probability of Appearing:** Enter the percentage of possibility that sparkles will be displayed. Enter 100 to always show sparkles. Enter 0 to always hide sparkles.
- **Point Noise:** Enter a value between 0.1 and 1 to indicate the amount by which points in a sparkle will distort.
- **Centre Noise:** Enter a value between 0.1 and 1 to indicate the amount by which the angles between each point in a sparkle will distort.
- **Angle Noise:** Enter a value between 0.1 and 1 to indicate the amount by which the Start Angle in a sparkle will distort.
- **Random Seed:** Enter a positive integer value that will be used to determine the sparkle pattern.
- **Use Drawing Colours:** Select this option to use the colour attributes of the drawing for the sparkle colour. When this selection is disabled (default setting), the colour values will be used as they are entered in the editor.
- **Flatten Sparkles of Same Colour:** Flatten all drawings of the same colour into a single layer.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the RGBA fields, enter the values to use for the sparkle colour.

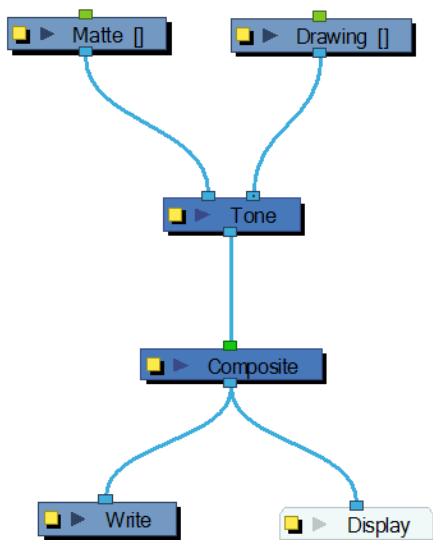
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

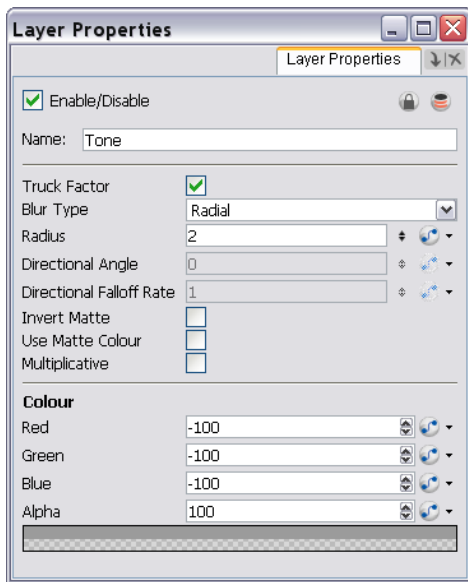
# Tone



Use a Tone effect to add a dark-coloured region to your drawing and simulate the shaded area away from a light source. To produce the tone effect, create a drawing to control where the tone will appear. The Tone effect uses a matte to determine the shape and position of the tone on your drawing and can be blurred at the edges to create a softer effect.



Use the Tone editor to control the type and amount of blur, as well as the colour of the tone.

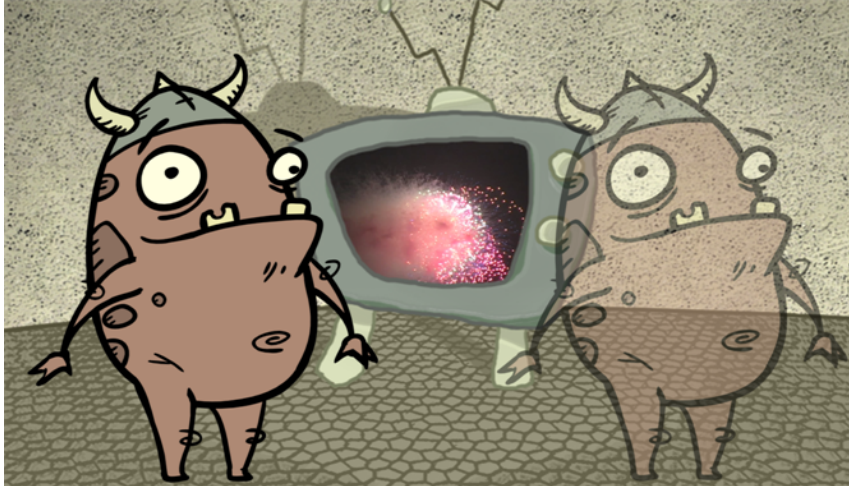


- **Truck Factor:** Activated by default, this option readjusts the blur when the elements undergo a change of depth or scale. When this option is disabled, the effect's values will remain unchanged regardless of depth or scale changes. It is recommended that this option be disabled when multiple drawings are composited and attached this effect.
- **Blur Type (Directional or Radial):**
  - If Directional is selected, Animate Pro will blur the matte in the direction you select.
  - If Radial is selected, Animate Pro will blur the edges of the matte evenly around points that make up the edge of the matte.
- **Radius:** Enter a value for the size of the blur. The larger the value, the greater the blur effect. The blur radius is affected by the drawing scale and camera position.
- **Directional Angle:** If you select a Directional Blur Type, you can select the direction of the blur by entering a value from 0 to 360 in this field.
  - **0:** Blurs the image to the west.
  - **90:** Blurs the image to the south.
  - **180:** Blurs the image to the east.
  - **270:** Blurs the image to the north.
- **Directional Fall-off Rate:** The distance where the blur fades from the edge of the image. Select a value between 0 and 1.
  - A fall-off rate of 0 causes the blur to fade out slowly, distributing the blur evenly from the edge of the character to the farthest edge of the blur.
  - A fall-off rate of 1 causes the blur to fade out quickly so that the blur is heaviest closer to the edge of the image.
- **Invert Matte:** Activate this option to invert the matte used to create the tone.
- **Use Matte Colour:** Uses the matte shape colour to create the tone.
- **Multiplicative:** Multiplies the tone colours with the background.
- **Red/Green/Blue/Alpha:** In the RGBA fields, you can enter the value you want added to or subtracted from the colour channels in the drawings or you can attach these values to function curves.

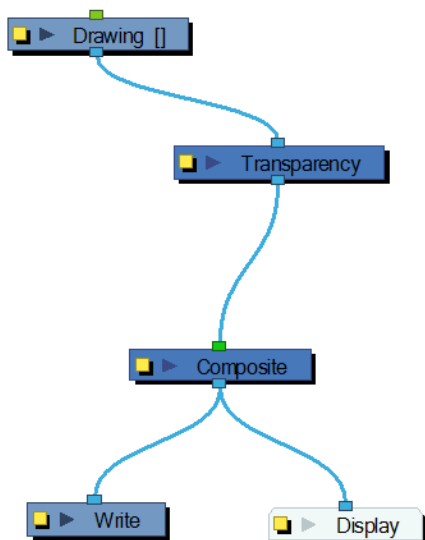
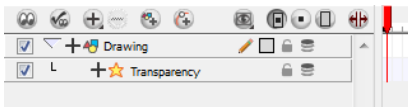
## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

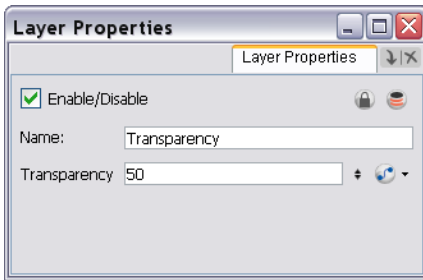
# Transparency



The Transparency effect is used to make an image partially transparent. The Transparency effect is useful when fading images in and out, such as a phantom or to make something partially see-through, such as a window.



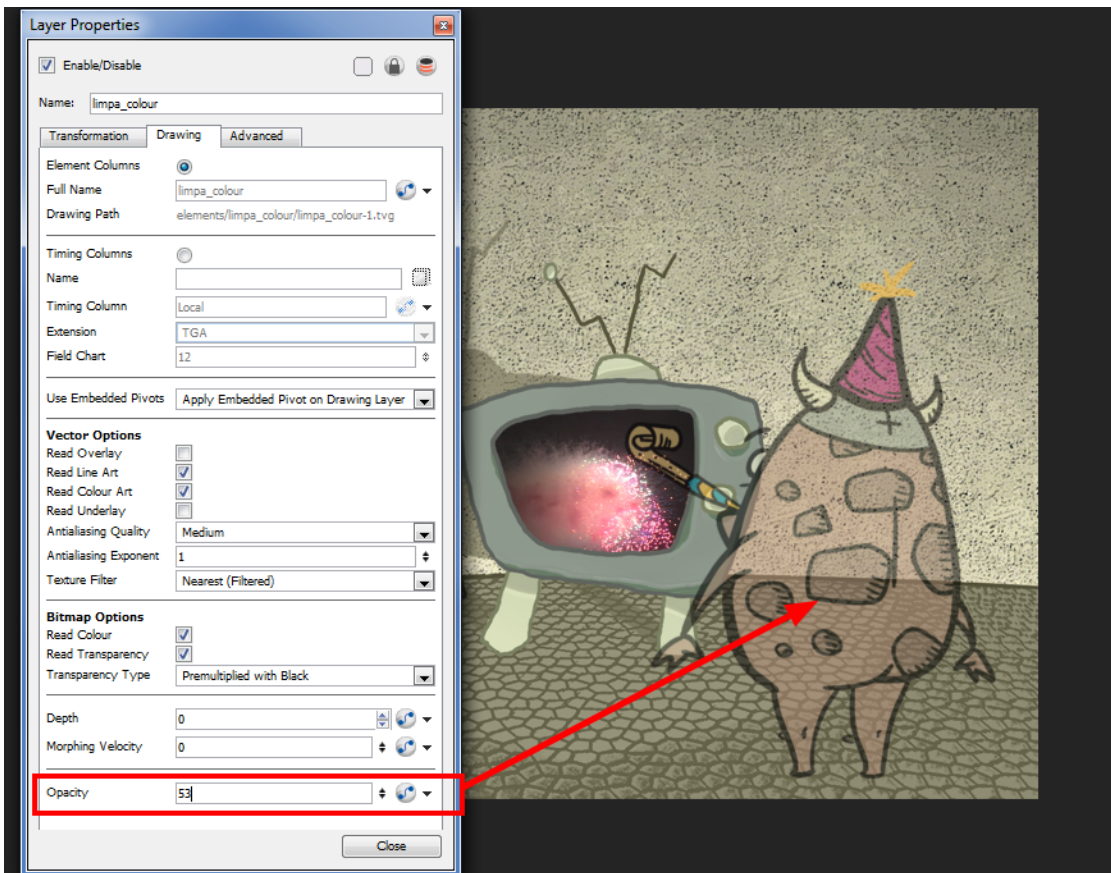
Use the **Transparency** editor to control how translucent the element should be.



You can enter a value in the Transparency field or change the transparency value over time by linking it to a function curve. Entering a value of one hundred into the Transparency field will make the element 100% transparent, in other words, invisible. Entering a value of 0 will render the element completely opaque.



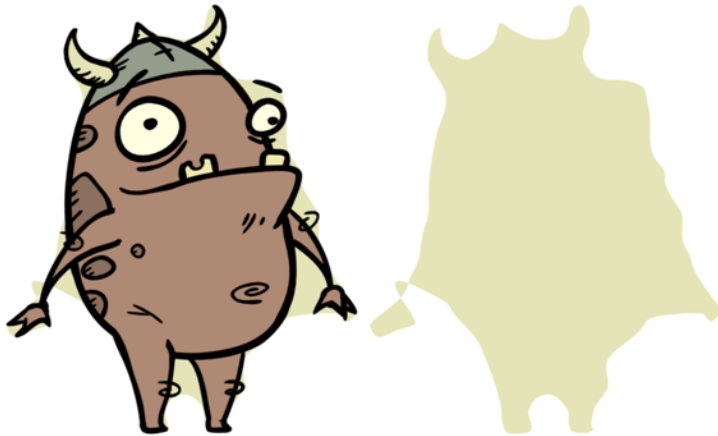
It is also possible to adjust a layer/module's transparency directly in the Layer Properties window without using the Transparency module. In the layer's properties, go to the Drawing tab and adjust the Opacity parameter. This parameter is visible in OpenGL mode.



## Related Topics

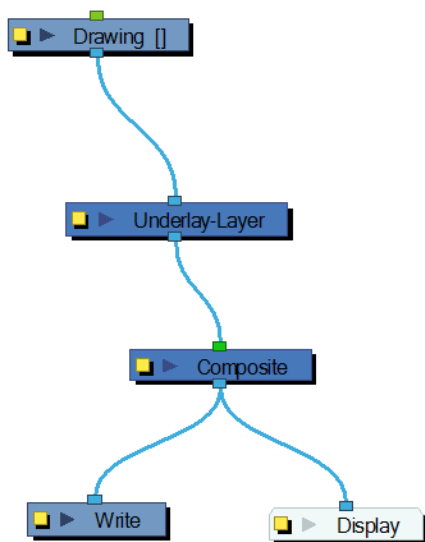
- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

# Underlay Layer

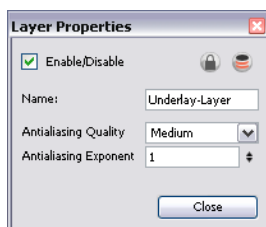


Use the Underlay Layer effect to read only the Underlay layer in an element. Place a Underlay Layer module after a drawing module in the Network view to display only the module's Underlay layer output. The Underlay Layer module can only be connected after a vector drawing layer or a vector type Composite module. Any bitmap information will not be processed.

This effect will only work if the user drew or painted something into the Underlay layer of the drawing.



Use the Underlay Layer editor to control how the Underlay layer is rendered by the module.





- **Antialiasing Quality:** Smoothness setting applied to the Underlay layer. Choose from Low (no antialiasing), Medium Low, Medium and High (extensive antialiasing). The higher the quality of the chosen setting, the greater the amount of antialiasing that is applied. Higher quality images require more time to render and more memory from your system.
- **Antialiasing Exponent:** Controls the amount of area around the Underlay layer edges that is used in the antialiasing process. A higher value uses less area, resulting in sharper edges, while a lower value uses more area, resulting in softer edges. If the Antialiasing Quality value is set to Low (no antialiasing), this value is ignored.


## Related Topics

- [Using Effects](#) on page 1092

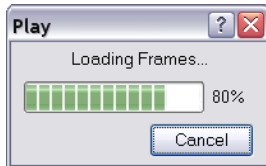
# Previewing and Playing Back Effects


To preview your effects, you will have to perform a quick render. Effects must be calculated before they can be viewed in real time.

**To preview your effects:**

1. In the Playback toolbar, press the **Render and Play**  button.

The Play module opens and loads the frames.



2. Once the frames are loaded, press the **Play**  button in the Play window.

## Preview Resolution

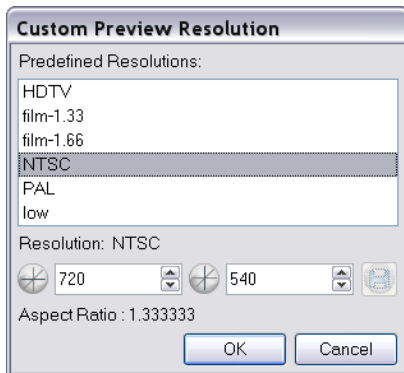
To make your previews calculate faster, you may want to render them out at a smaller resolution. You can use the Preview Resolution command so you will not have to modify the resolution of your scene every time you make a check preview.

The Preview Resolution command allows you to quickly ask for a preview at either a quarter, half or three-quarter of the scene resolution. You can even customize the preview resolution size.

**To use the Preview Resolution command:**

1. In the top menu, select **View > Preview Resolution**.
2. From the drop-down menu, select either **Same as Scene Resolution**, **3/4 of Scene Resolution**, **1/2 of Scene Resolution**, **1/3 of Scene Resolution**, **1/4 of Scene Resolution** or **Custom**.

If you selected the Custom option, the Custom Preview Resolution dialog box opens.



3. In the dialog box, select a resolution from the presets or type a new X-Y value.
4. Click on the **OK** button.
5. Preview your effects animation.

## Related Topics

- [Previewing Effects](#) on page 1085

# Extra Commands

These are some useful commands you can find only in Animate Pro.

---

Recalculate All	Use the Recalculate All command to refresh the network and re-render the display when the Camera View is in render mode.	In the select Network View menu, select <b>Scene &gt; Render &gt; Recalculate All.</b>
Recalculate Selected	Use the Recalculate Selected command to refresh the network and re-render the display of selected elements when the Camera View is in render mode.	In the Network View menu, select <b>Scene &gt; Render &gt; Recalculate Selected.</b>
Auto Render Write	Use the Auto Render Write command to render a frame each time the current frame is changed.  You must have a Write module in your network to use this command.	In the Network View menu, select <b>Scene &gt; Render &gt; Auto Render Write.</b>
Print Network	Use the Print Network command to print the Network view.	Select <b>File &gt; Print &gt; Network.</b>  In the Network View menu, select <b>File &gt; Print.</b>

---

## Related Topics

- [Previewing and Playing Back Effects](#) on page 1202

# Effects Preferences

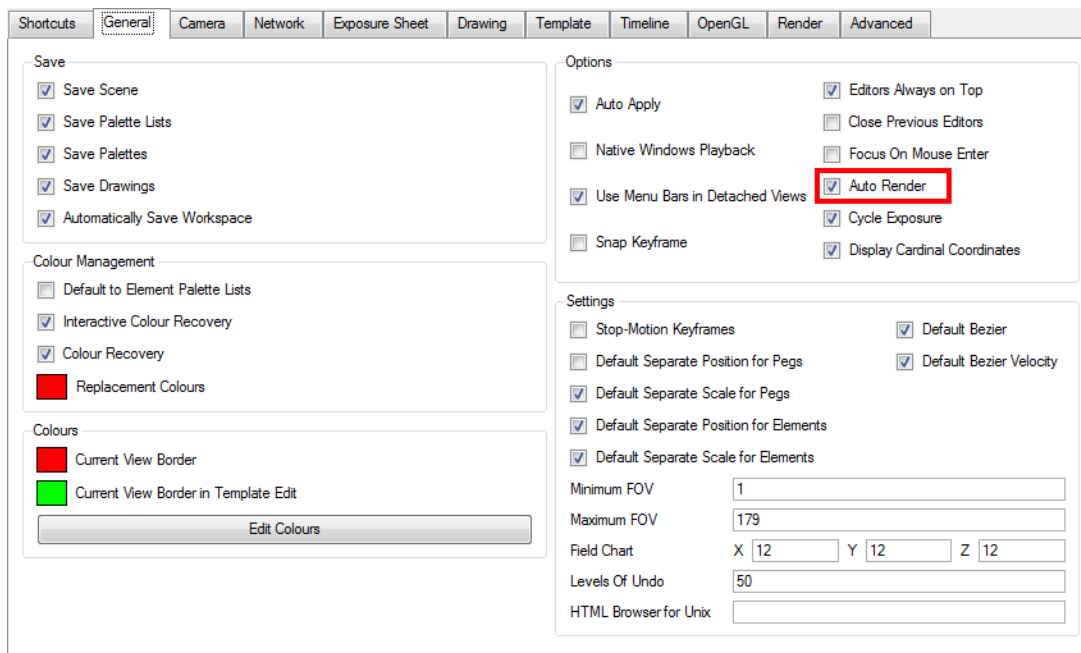
Animate Pro has a series of preferences you can adjust to make you work more efficient.

- [General](#) below
- [OpenGL](#) on the next page

To open the Preferences panel:

- Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- Press [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).

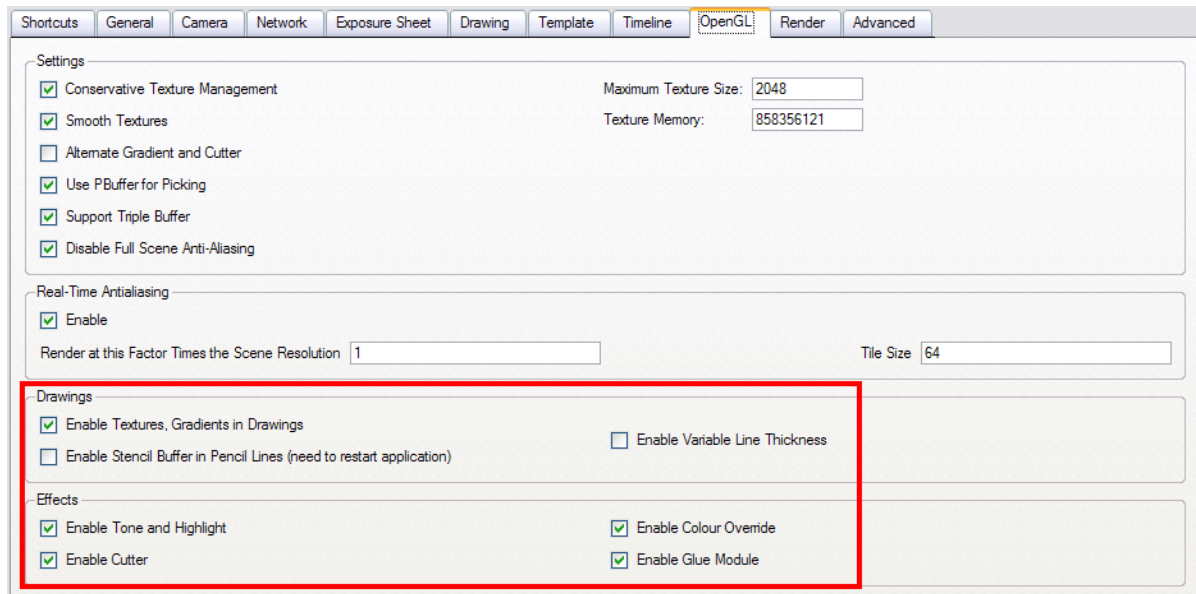
## General



## Options

- **Auto-Render:** Automatically enables the Auto-Render option.

# OpenGL



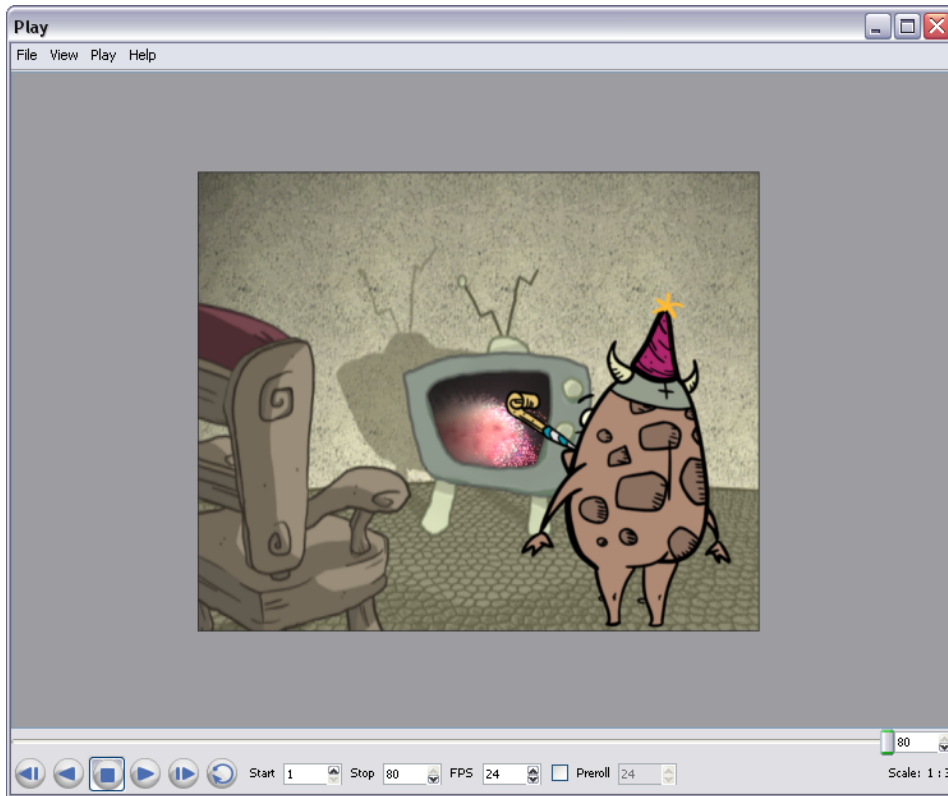
## Drawings

- **Enable Textures and Gradients in Drawings:** Shows zones and lines painted with texture or gradient colour pots. When disabled, zones and lines painted with textures and gradients will be filled with solid colours. Textures and gradients require more time and memory to display, so enabling this effect module can slow the performance of Animate Pro.
- **Enable Stencil Buffer on Pencil Lines:** When this option is enabled, the pencil lines are displayed normally. The lines will be opaque (unless there are transparencies). Disabling this option will reduce rendering times, but will display additive opacities for overlapping pencil lines and unevenly filled curved pencil lines.

## Effects

- **Enable Tone and Highlight:** Turns the Tone and Highlight effects on and off in the Camera, Top and Side views.
- **Enable Cutter:** Turns the rendering of Cutter effects on and off in the Camera, Top and Side views.
- **Enable Colour-Override:** Turns the rendering of the Colour-Override effects on and off in the Camera, Top and Side views.
- **Enable Glue:** Turns the rendering of the Glue effects on and off in the Camera, Top and Side views.

# Chapter 19: Export



Now that you have finished your animation, it is time to render your movie. Depending on whether you plan to further edit your movie in a third party software, composite the movie in a larger body of work or put it up directly on the web, Toon Boom Animate Pro supports several formats for all your rendering needs.

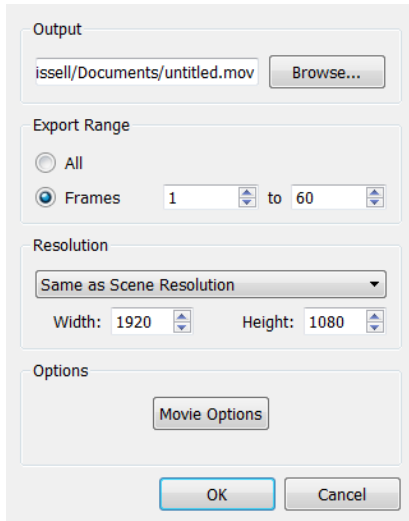
## Topics Covered

- [Exporting a QuickTime Movie on the next page](#)
- [Exporting an SWF Movie \(Flash\) on page 1213](#)
- [Exporting OpenGL Frames on page 1215](#)
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences on page 1217](#)
- [Export Preferences on page 1234](#)

# Exporting a QuickTime Movie

To export a QuickTime Movie:

1. From the top menu, select **File > Export > Movie**.  
The Export to QuickTime Movie dialog box opens.



2. From the dialog box, click **Browse** to choose a destination path to where your movie will be saved and an appropriate filename for the export.
3. Click **Save** when you are finished.
4. The Display Source section is where you can select which Display module you want to use to render out your project. If there is no Display module in the scene, the drop-down list will indicate Display All and will render out the scene in the same order as the Timeline view. It is always recommended to render out from the Display module, located under the final Composite module, unless you want to render out a specific section displayed by a particular Display module.

In the drop-down list, select the desired Display module.



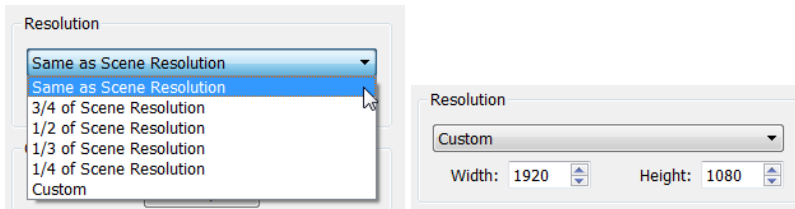
Refer to [Display Concepts on page 621](#) to learn more about Display modules.

5. From the Export Range section, decide whether you would like to export the entire scene (All) or just a selected frame range. If you decide on the latter, be sure to enter in the frame range in the fields provided.

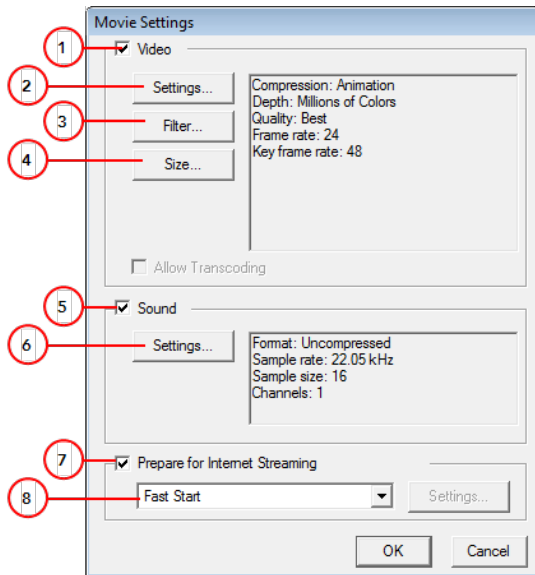


6. In the Resolution section, choose a preferred resolution ratio from the drop-down menu or select Custom to enable the custom Width and Height fields and type a specific size.



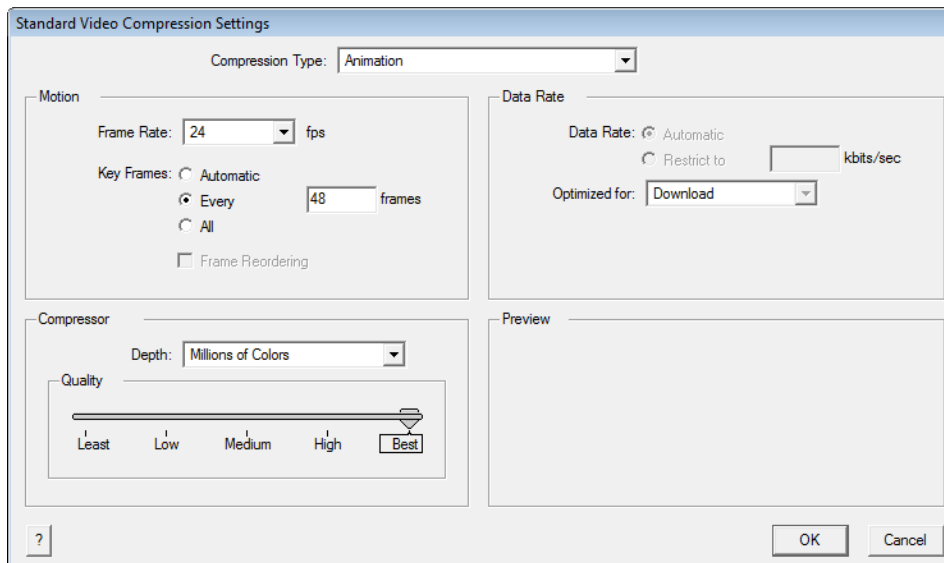


7. In the Options section, click on the Movie Options button.



- **1. Video:** Check this box to enable the customization of the video settings, filters and size.
    - **2. Settings:** Opens the Standard Video Compression Settings dialog box (see below).
    - **3. Filter:** Opens the Choose Video Filter dialog box, where you can select from a range of filters to apply to your video export.
    - **4. Size:** Opens the Export Size Settings dialog box. The size settings are overridden by the Animate Pro's scene settings.
  - **5. Sound:** Check this box to enable the customization of the sound settings.
    - **6. Settings:** Opens the Sound Settings dialog box (see below).
  - **7. Prepare for Internet Streaming:** Check this box to enable the customization of the internet streaming options.
    - **8. Internet Streaming drop-down:** Select from the drop-down menu options for the type of streaming best suited for your needs.
8. In the **Video** section, click on the Settings button.

The Standard Video Compression Settings dialog box opens.



- From the Compression Type drop-down menu, select a codec.



The availability of certain Compression Settings depends on the Compression Type selected. For example, Animation is the default compression type and as a result the Data Rate option is greyed out.

- In the Motion section, choose your Frames per second from the drop-down menu.

By default, it will be set to match the frames-per-second (fps) of your Animate Pro project. If you choose a lower frame rate, your export play back will be faster than your actual project. The reverse is also true for a higher frame rate.

- From the same section decide whether you would like key frames inserted by checking the **Key frame every** box, and if so, the number per frame.

This is the option is recommended by QuickTime. A further description of this topic is cited below.

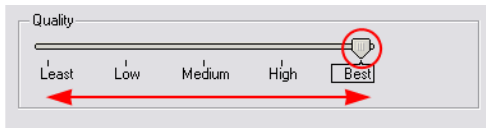
*Many compressors use "frame differencing" to compress moving images.*

*Frame differencing is the process of determining what information has changed from a starting frame (called a "key frame") to subsequent frames. The key frame contains all of the information for an image. Subsequent frames contain only the information that has changed.*

*Depending on the compressor you use, you can specify how often you want key frames to occur. If you don't have enough key frames, the quality of your movie might be lower because most frames are generated from others. However, more key frames result in a larger movie with a higher data rate. With some compressors, an additional key frame is inserted automatically if too much of the image has changed from one frame to the next.*

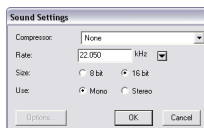
*A good rule of thumb for general use is to have one key frame every 5 seconds (multiply the frames per second by 5). If you are creating a file for RTSP streaming and have concerns about the reliability of the delivery network (as with the public Internet), you may want to increase key frame frequency to one key frame every 1 or 2 seconds.*

- From the Compressor section, choose a Depth based on your movie's needs, for example, Millions of Colours+ houses an alpha channel.
- In the Quality section, use the slider to choose a quality setting. Remember that the better the quality of the export, the larger the file.



14. From the **Data Rate** section, either choose to allow the program to automatically select the most optimal bit rate, or enter in a Restricted rate to save space and allow for faster downloading at a cost to the quality of your export.
15. In the same section, from the Optimized for drop-down list, select the intended viewing method for your export.
16. Click the OK button when you are finished.
17. From the Movie Settings dialog box, click-on the **Sound Settings** button.

The Sound Settings dialog box opens.



18. From the Compressor drop-down menu, choose a compression type.

The default setting is None. This will preserve your original sound file, without the loss of information. However, an uncompressed sound file will inevitably add "weight" to the overall size of your video export.

19. Select a **Rate** by pressing the down arrow button next to kHz.

It is best to check and match the original properties of your sound file. For example, if your file has an audio sample rate of 48 kHz and you choose a conversion rate of 22.05 kHz, the sound will play at the same speed, but with higher frequencies missing.

For a standard film sound quality, choose **44.1 kHz**, or **48 kHz** for DVD quality. Anything less will make the sound "dull" or less bright. For things like recorded voice this doesn't matter so much, but for music it can make an audible difference.

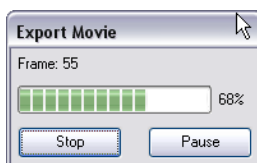
If file size is a consideration, such as with videos for the internet, then a lower rate might be more practical.

20. Next, choose the **Size** and the **Use**, which are related. Once again, it is advisable to check your original sound file properties. If the file was recorded in one channel (mono), there is little point in choosing the two channel (stereo) option.

Although Mono can support a 16-bit channel, the extra information is unnecessary. Mono is generally paired with 8-bit and Stereo with 16-bit.

21. Click **OK** when you are done.
22. In the Export to QuickTime Movie dialog box, click **OK**.

A progress bar appears.



23. Browse to the location on your computer where you saved your QuickTime video and double-click on it to view your export.



If you feel that your exported video is either too small or too large, change your project size from the top menu under **Scene > Scene Settings**. This will change the size of the video output.

## Related Topics

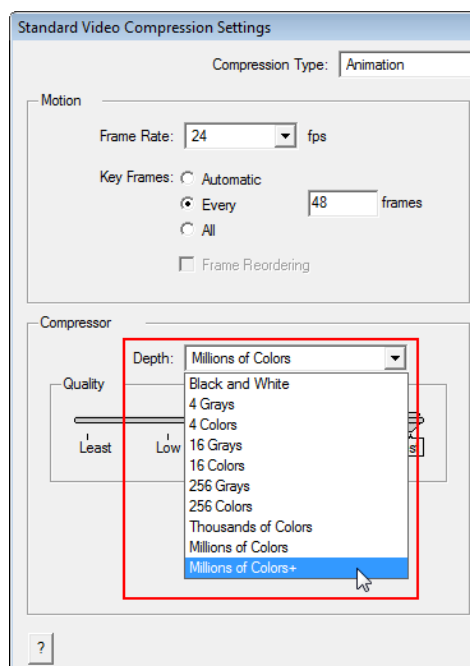
- [Exporting a QuickTime Movie with Transparency below](#)
- [Export on page 1207](#)

# Exporting a QuickTime Movie with Transparency

To render out a QuickTime movie with transparency, you need to set the Depth to Millions of Colours +.

**To set the depth to Millions of Colours:**

- ▶ In the Standard Video Compression Settings dialog box, select **Millions of Colours** from the Depth drop-down menu.






Refer to [Exporting a QuickTime Movie on page 1208](#) to learn how to access the Standard Video Compression Settings dialog box.

## Related Topics

- [Exporting a QuickTime Movie on page 1208](#)
- [Export on page 1207](#)

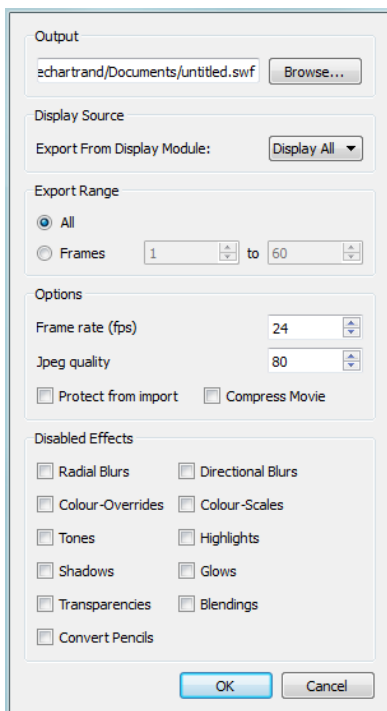
# Exporting an SWF Movie (Flash)

The SWF export now supports both bitmap effects (which can be previewed in Render View  mode) and SWF Blend Modes (vector effects which can be previewed in OpenGL View  mode). If you have not already done so, you should preview the SWF by using the SWF preview  button to see what the two types of effects look like when blended together. Once you are satisfied with the results, continue to the Export to SWF Movie procedure.

## To export an SWF movie:

1. From the top menu, select **File > Export > SWF**.

The Export to Flash Movie (SWF) dialog box opens.



2. To choose an appropriate filename and a destination path where your movie will be saved to, from the dialog box, click **Browse**.
3. In the Display Source section, select which Display module to read from in the Export From Display Module drop-down menu.
4. From the Export Range section, decide whether you would like to export all the frames of your movie or just a selected frame range. If you decide on the latter, be sure to enter in the frame range in the fields provided.



5. In the Options section, enter your Frames rate (fps) into the field provided. By default, it will be set to match the fps of your Animate Pro project. If you choose a lower frame rate, your export play back will be faster than your actual project. The reverse is also true for a higher frame rate.
6. In the same section, select the **JPEG quality**.
  - 100 = full quality
  - 50 = average quality at about 1/5th of the size.
  - 25 = medium quality where loss of high image resolution starts to occur.
  - 10 = low quality where “macro-blocking” or large pixelation become obvious.
  - 1 = lowest quality where there is extreme loss of colour and detail and where the image becomes nearly unrecognizable.
7. If you want to protect your movie to be imported in another application, enable the **Protect from Import** option.
8. Enable the **Compress Movie** option if you want to get a lighter format. The movie may lose some quality, but in turn create a lighter file.
9. In the Disabled Effects section, check the boxes of the vector-based effects that you would NOT like to see in the SWF render.

Note that certain Animate Pro effects will not be listed in this section as they are not vector-based and therefore not available for SWF export. These effects will not appear in the SWF render.
10. In the Disabled Effects section, enable the **Convert Pencils** option to avoid transforming your pencil lines to fills. If this option is enabled, the pencil lines will remain pencil lines.
11. Press **OK** when you are finished.
12. Browse to the location on your computer where you saved your Flash Movie and double-click on it to view your export.

## Related Topics

- [Export on page 1207](#)

# Exporting OpenGL Frames

Use the **Export OpenGL Frames** dialog box to select the frames you want to render from the OpenGL Camera view, then save the rendered frames as image files or as a QuickTime movie.



Frames saved from OpenGL view have neither anti-aliasing nor special effects. To render final frames with effects, export Images or a Movie.

## To export OpenGL Frames:

1. From the top menu, select **File > Export > OpenGL Frames**.

The screenshot shows the 'Export OpenGL Frames' dialog box with the following settings:

- Output:** Location is empty, Filename is 'preview'.
- Resolution:** 'Scene Resolution' is selected. Custom Width is 1920 and Height is 1080.
- Format:** 'Frames' is selected. Suffix is '01' and Drawing Type is 'TGA'.
- Range:** 'Current Frame' is selected. The 'Selected Frames' list contains 1, 2, 3, and 4.
- Display:** 'Display' is selected.

2. In the Output section, in the Location field, click **Browse** to select a folder for the frames.
3. In the Filename field, enter a name (prefix) for the frames or revert to the default name by clicking **Default**.
4. In the Format section, decide if you want to export individual image frames or a movie.
  - Suffix: From the drop-down list, select the desired suffix. If you intend to render only a few frames, you might decide to go with 1 or 01, whereas if you intend to render 1000 frames you might choose to select 0001.
  - Drawing Type: From the drop-down list, select the file type you want to render, such as TGA or SGI.
5. In the Movie section:
  - Movie options: Click on this button to customize the Audio and Video settings for the \*.mov export.



Refer to [Exporting a QuickTime Movie](#) on page 1208 for a more detailed description of the Movie options.

6. From the Resolution section, select the resolution you would like for your export. If you are running some quick tests, then you might want to cut down the resolution to save time and space. You also have the option to set a Custom width and height to produce smaller or larger frames.
7. In the Range section, decide whether you want to render all your frames, a range of frames, the current frame or selected frames.
8. Use the Display drop-down menu to select which Display module you want to use to render out your OpenGL frames from. It is always recommended to render out from the Display module, located under the final Composite module, unless you want to render out a specific section displayed by a particular Display module.



Refer to [Display Concepts on page 621](#) to learn more about Display modules.

---

9. Click **OK**.

## Related Topics

- [Export on page 1207](#)
- [Exporting a QuickTime Movie on page 1208](#)



# Rendering Movies and Image Sequences

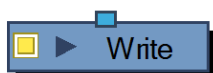
The Network view allows you to make advanced connections and isolate certain portions of your project, it also allows you to do multiple exports either from the entire network or specific sections.

For such a process, use the Write module in the Module Library view.

## Related Topics

- [Write Module](#) below
- [Multiple Renders](#) on page 1222
- [Rendering Images and Movies from the Network](#) on page 1232
- [Export](#) on page 1207

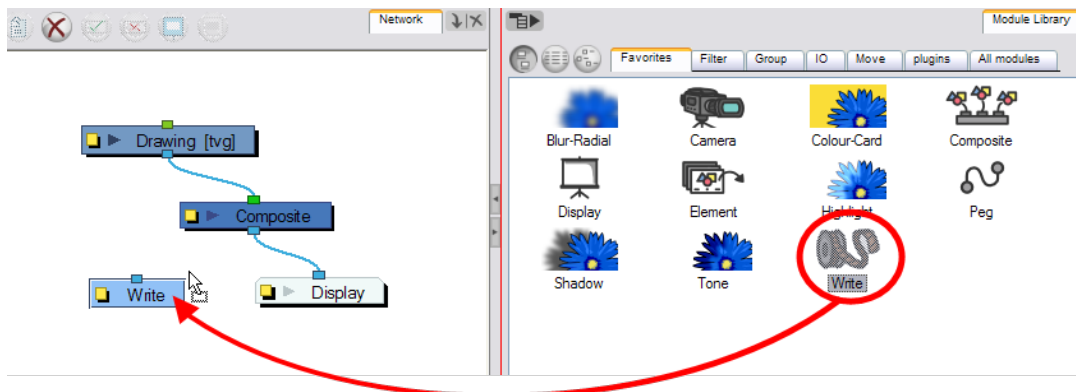
## Write Module



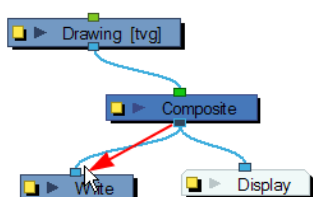
The Write module is used to render and output the connected image information.

To add a Write module:

1. In the Module Library, go to the IO tab.
2. Select the Write module and drag it to the Network view.



3. In the Network view, connect either the final Composite module or any other module which outputs an image you want to render out to the Write module.



Using the Write module, you can export your project in both QuickTime movie and image sequences. You can export one format at a time, or both simultaneously.

- [Image Sequences](#) below
- [QuickTime Movie](#) on page 1220

## Related Topics

- [Export](#) on page 1207
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences](#) on the previous page
- [Image Sequences](#) below
- [QuickTime Movie](#) on page 1220

## Image Sequences

To export an image sequence, you need to adjust a few settings in the Write module's properties.

You can export your image sequences as several different formats:

- TVG  
TVG (Toon Boom Vector Graphic) is the Toon Boom vector proprietary format.
- TGA (TGA1, TGA3, TGA4)  
Select TGA4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- SGI (SGI1, SGI3, SGI4)  
Select SGI4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- SGIDP (SGIDP1, SGIDP3, SGIDP4)  
Select SGIDP4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- OMFJPEG
- PSD (PSD1, PSD3, PSD4)  
Select PSD4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- PSDDP (PSDDP1, PSDDP3, PSDDP4)  
Select PSDDP4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- YUV
- PAL
- SCAN
- PNG (PNG4)  
Select PNG4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).



PNG4 is the recommended format to export an image sequence with transparency.

---

- JPG

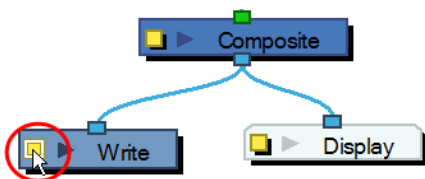
- BMP (BMP4)  
Select BMP4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- IFF (IFF\_16)
- OPT (OPT1, OPT3, OPT4)  
Select OPT4 to export your sequence with an alpha channel (transparency).
- VAR
- TIFF
- DPX (DPX3\_8, DPX3\_10, DPX3\_12, DPX3\_16, DPX3\_10\_INVERTED\_CHANNELS, DPX3\_12\_INVERTED\_CHANNELS)
- PDF



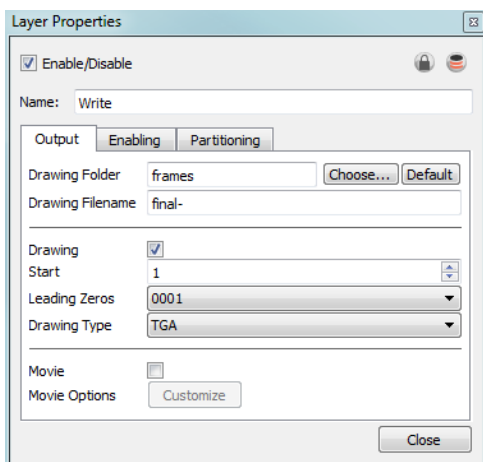
The formats used if you need to output a vector format are TVG and PDF. You can also export a SWF movie.

### To set the Write Module to export an image sequence:

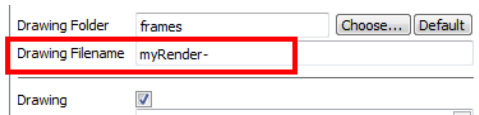
1. In the Network view, open the Write module's editor by clicking on its Properties button.



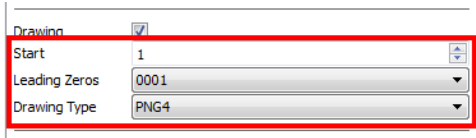
2. In the Output tab, select the Drawings option to create an image sequence.



3. Click **Choose** and browse to the directory where you want to save the output.
  - You can also use the default directory to save in the default **Frames** folder included in the scene directory.
4. In the Filename field, type the image sequence's name prefix. It is very important to leave the hyphen (-) symbol at the end of the name to separate the image name from the image number.



5. In the **Start** field, select the starting number for the image sequence.
6. In the **Leading Zeros** field, select the number of digits you want to see after the sequence prefix.



7. In the Drawing Type field, select the file format you want to output your project to.



When the file format includes a "4" at the end of its name, it means that an alpha channel will be created.

8. Click **Close**.

The project will not start rendering yet, since these are only the settings. You can still modify your scene.

## Related Topics

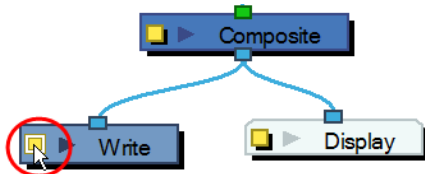
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences on page 1217](#)
- [Write Module on page 1217](#)
- [QuickTime Movie below](#)

## QuickTime Movie

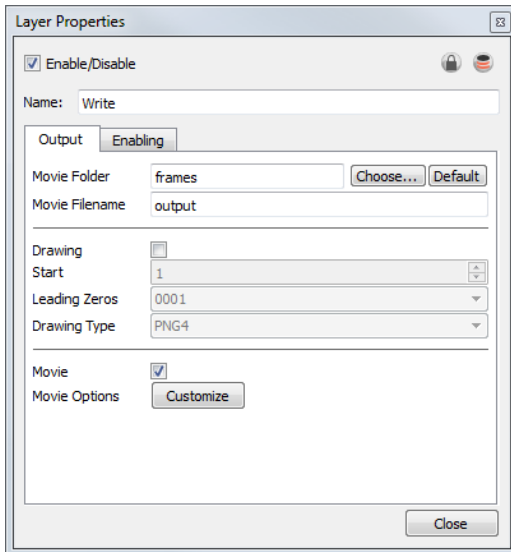
To export a QuickTime movie, you need to adjust few settings in the Write module's Properties.

**To export a QuickTime movie from a Write module:**

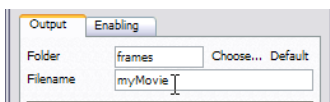
1. In the Network view, open the Write module's editor by clicking on its Properties button.



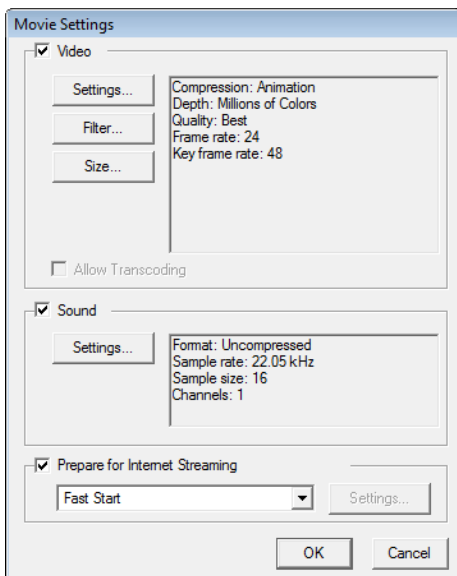
2. In the Output tab, select the Movie option to create a movie file.



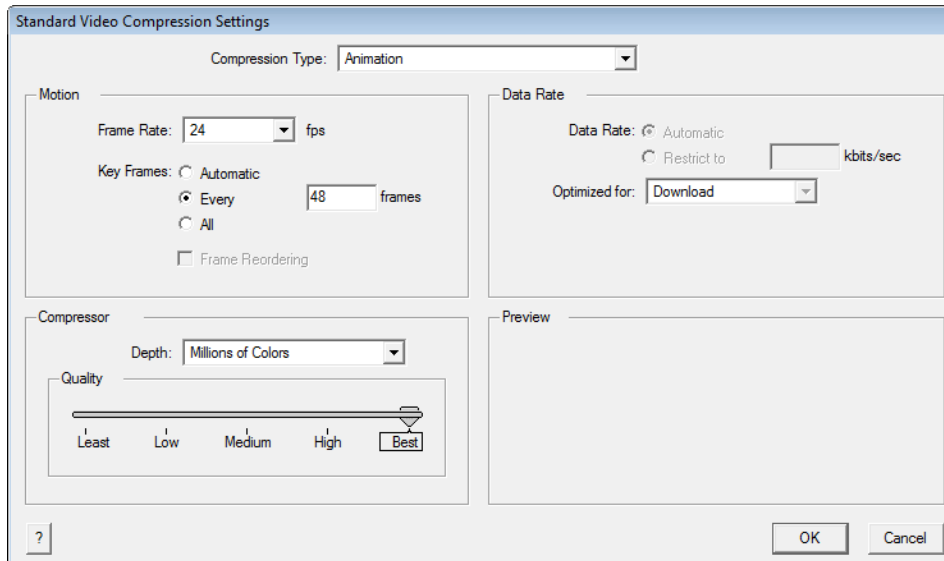
3. Click Choose and browse to the desired directory to save the output.
  - ▶ You can also use the default directory to save in the default Frames folder included in the scene folder.
4. In the File name field, name the output file. You do not need to write the file format extension.



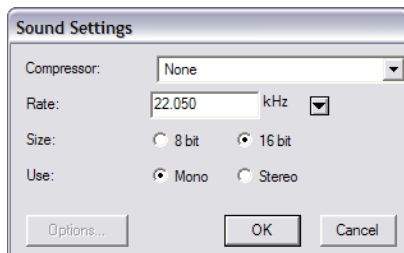
5. In the Movie Options field, click Customize to open the Movie Settings dialog box.



6. In the Movie Settings dialog box, in the Video section, click on the Settings button to set your video options.



7. Click OK.
8. In the Movie Settings dialog box, in the Sound section, click Settings to set your audio options.



9. Click OK and Close.

The project will not start rendering yet. These are only the settings. You can still modify your scene.

## Related Topics

- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences on page 1217](#)
- [Write Module on page 1217](#)
- [Image Sequences on page 1218](#)

## Multiple Renders

Animate Pro allows you to simultaneously render many formats and resolutions for a scene. This saves a tremendous amount of time, as you do not have to return between each render to start a new one.

To use Multiple Renders you have to connect as many Write modules as are needed to match the required number of exports. Then, adjust each Write module's settings to create image sequences or movies.



YOU MUST GIVE DIFFERENT NAMES TO EACH OUTPUT FILE. This is especially important if you save them all in the same directory, so that they do not overwrite each other.

When you have multiple Write modules in a scene, it is useful to rename them according to their output settings such as: `low_resolution_movie` or `HDTV_sequence`.

This topic is divided as follows:

- [Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions](#) below
- [Connecting the Required Modules](#) on page 1229

## Related Topics

- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences](#) on page 1217
- [Write Module](#) on page 1217
- [Rendering Images and Movies from the Network](#) on page 1232

## Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions

To export different resolutions concurrently, you need to create a combination of:

- [Write Module](#) below
- [Scale-Output Module](#) below
- [Crop Module](#) on page 1225

## Write Module

To learn more about the Write module, refer to the following sections:

- [Write Module](#) on page 1217
- [Multiple Renders](#) on the previous page

## Related Topics

- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences](#) on page 1217
- [Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions](#) above
- [Scale-Output Module](#) below
- [Crop Module](#) on page 1225

## Scale-Output Module



Once your Write modules are connected, you need some Scale modules to change the resolution output of the Write module. For example, if you export in a high resolution and a low resolution, you need one Scale-Output module.

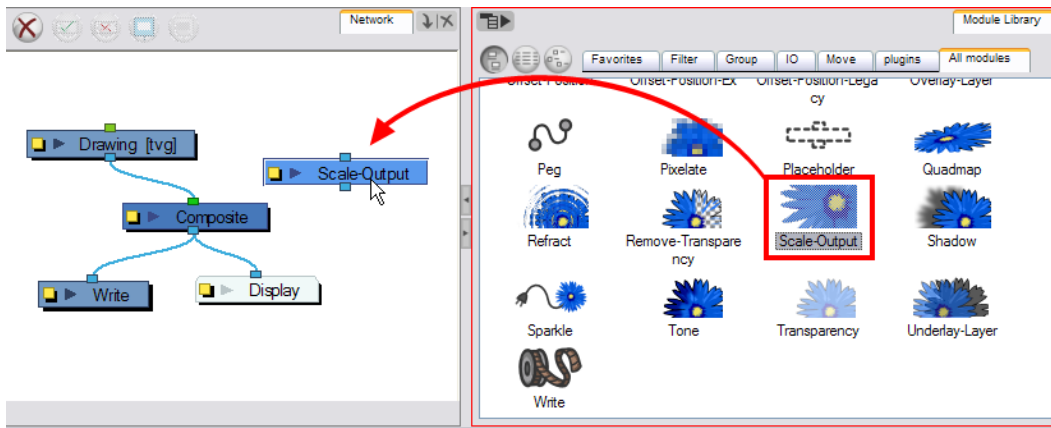
Set the project's resolution to the highest resolution needed for this export and use the **Scale-Output** modules to scale down the other outputs.



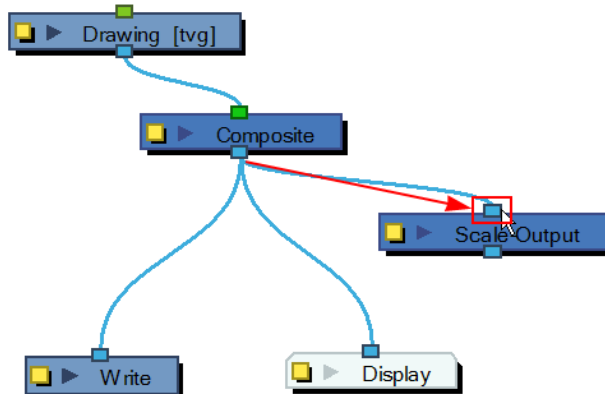
DO NOT scale up the output size, that will not provide a good result. It is also better to use the Scale-Output module to scale down in a same aspect ratio so that it does not distort the image.

**To add a Scale-Output Module:**

1. In the Module Library view, select a **Scale-Output** module and drag it to the Network view.

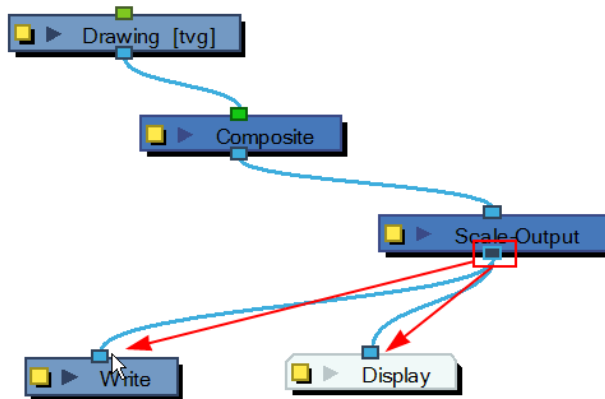


2. In the Network view, connect the Composite module to the Input port of the Scale-Output module.



3. In the Network view, connect the Scale-Output module to the input ports of both the Display module and the Write module.



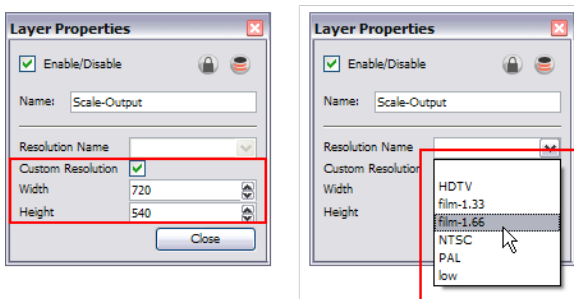


### To set the Scale Module:

1. In the Network view, open the Scale-Output module's editor by clicking on its Properties button.



2. In the Layer Properties dialog box, select a resolution from the suggested Resolution Name list or type new resolution values to indicate the resolution to scale to.



3. Click Close.

## Related Topics

- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences on page 1217](#)
- [Multiple Renders on page 1222](#)
- [Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions on page 1223](#)
- [Write Module on page 1223](#)
- [Crop Module below](#)

## Crop Module



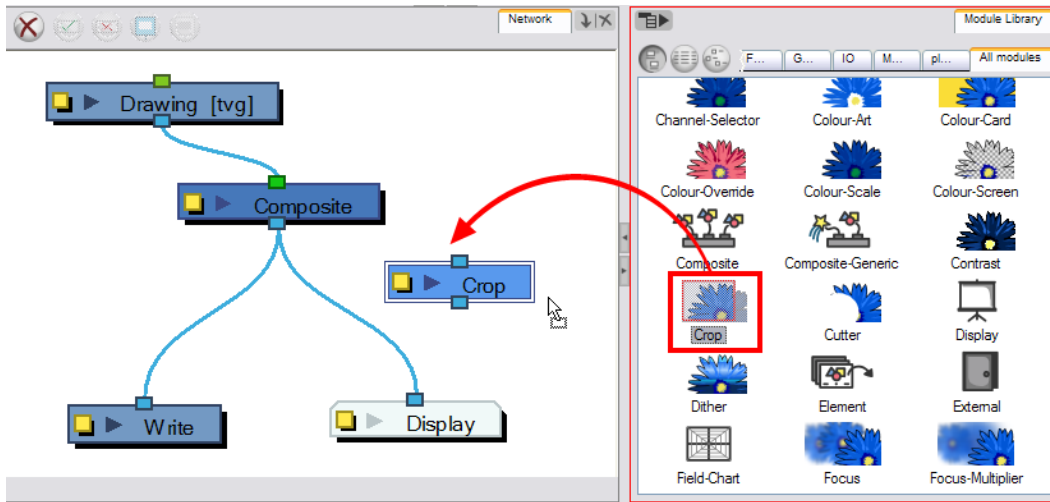
To output two files with different aspect ratios, such as 16:9 and 4:3, you can use the Crop module. This module is used to crop the final image in order to discard excess information without distorting the render.



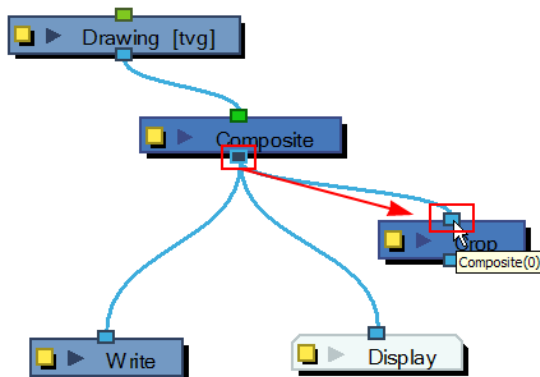
If you start with a higher resolution and want to crop down to a lower resolution, such as HDTV to NTSC, you will need to combine the Crop module with a Scale module.

### To add a Crop Module:

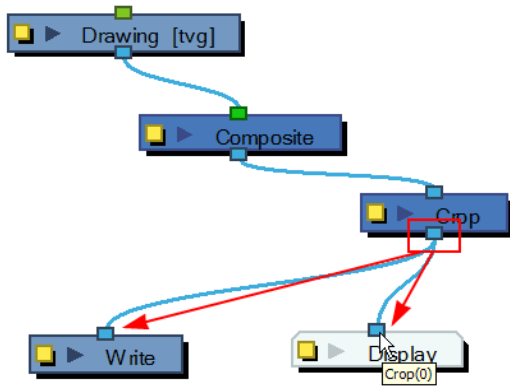
1. In the Module Library view, select a **Crop** module and drag it to the Network view.



2. In the Network view, connect the Composite module to the Input port of the Crop module.



3. In the Network view, connect the Crop module to the input ports of both the Display module and the Write module.

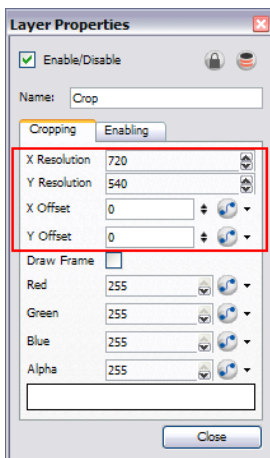






### To set the Crop Module:

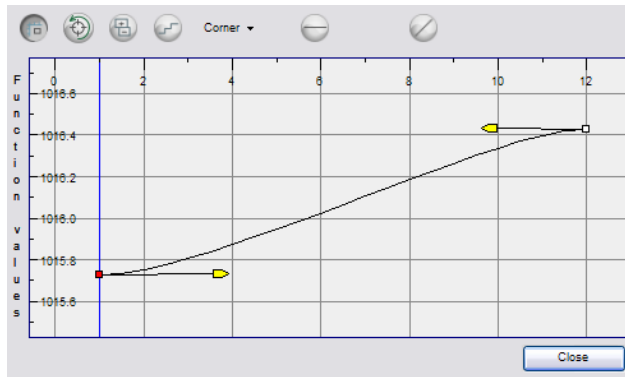
1. In the Network view, open the Crop module's editor by clicking on the module's Properties button.



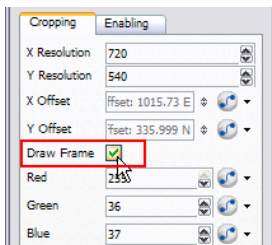
2. In the Layer Properties dialog box, type new resolution values to indicate the resolution to crop to.



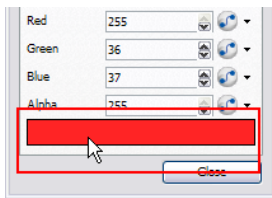
3. You can manually enter the X-Y Offset, or move it in the Camera view. Select the right Display module in the Display toolbar. In the Advanced Animation toolbar, select the **Translate**  tool and with the middle mouse button, move the crop area. If the **Animate**  mode is enabled, the position of the crop area will be animated over time.
4. If you want to create a Pan and Scan effect (panning the cropped selection over time to show more information), you can create a function to animate the cropped selection. Click on the **Function Arrow**  button beside the Local dialog box to create a Bezier or ease curve.
5. If you created a function curve to animate the cropped selection, click again on the **Function**  button and edit the curve by adding keyframes and moving the selection box in the Camera view.



6. Enable the Draw Frame option if, instead of cropping the images, you prefer to have Animate Pro draw the frame over the rendered scene.

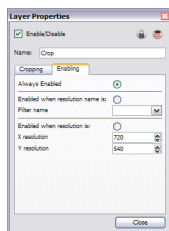


7. Click in the colour rectangle to adjust the frame colour as desired if you have enabled the Draw Frame option.



8. Click on the Close button.

The Crop module also has an advanced Enabling tab. Use the Enabling tab to determine when the Crop module should be activated.



- **Always Enabled:** Select this to have the Crop module always produce output.
- **Enabled when resolution name is:** Select this to activate the Crop module only when the resolution of the scene matches the value selected from the Filter Name menu. These listed resolutions come from the Resolution/Frame Rate dialog box.
- **Enabled when resolution is:** Select this to activate the Crop module whenever the scene's resolution matches the values entered in the X resolution and Y resolution fields.

## Related Topics

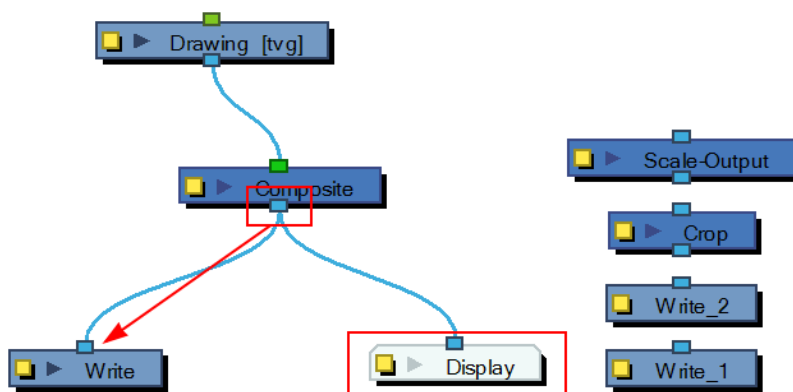
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences](#) on page 1217
- [Multiple Renders](#) on page 1222
- [Modules Used to Export to Different Resolutions](#) on page 1223
- [Write Module](#) on page 1223
- [Scale-Output Module](#) on page 1223

## Connecting the Required Modules

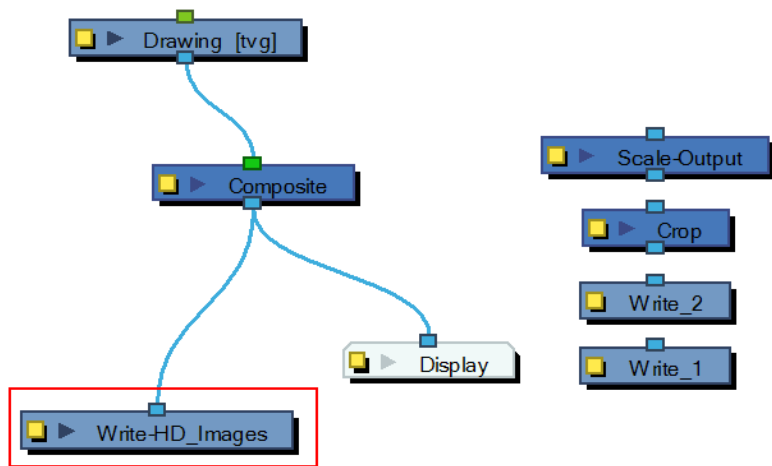
Once you know the type of render you want to do, you will need to retrieve your modules from the Module Library and connect them to the scene's network.

To connect multiple renders:

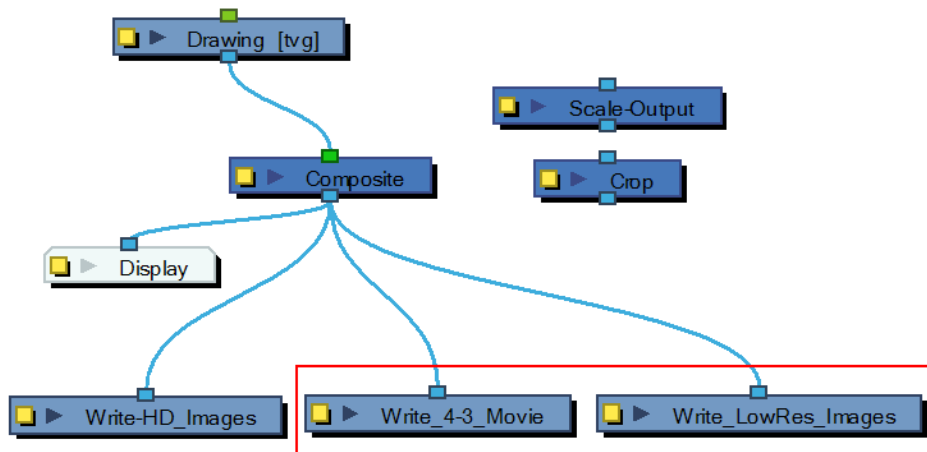
1. In the Module Library view, retrieve the necessary Write, Scale-Output and Crop modules.



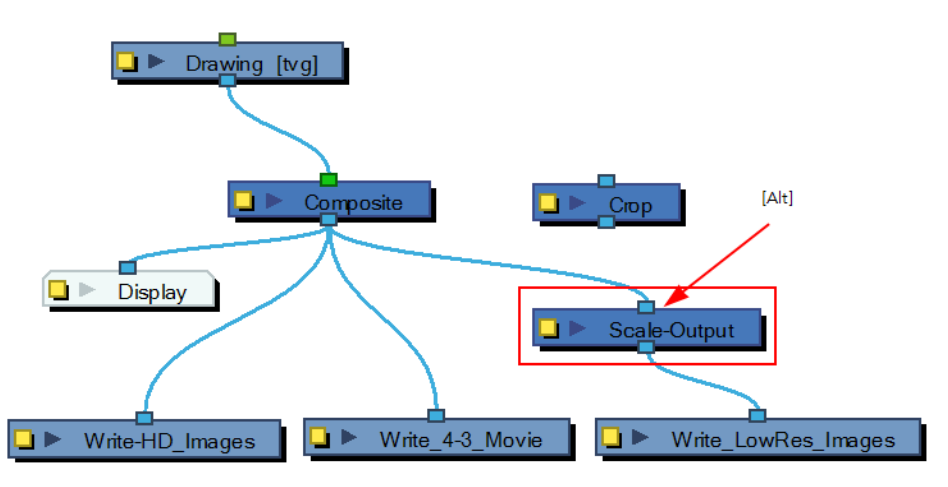
2. Connect the final Composite module to the first Write module. (Make sure that you have a Display module reading the same information.)
3. Open the Write module's Editor by clicking on its Properties button.
4. Name the Write module according to the render type that you are planning to do.
5. Set the Write module parameters.



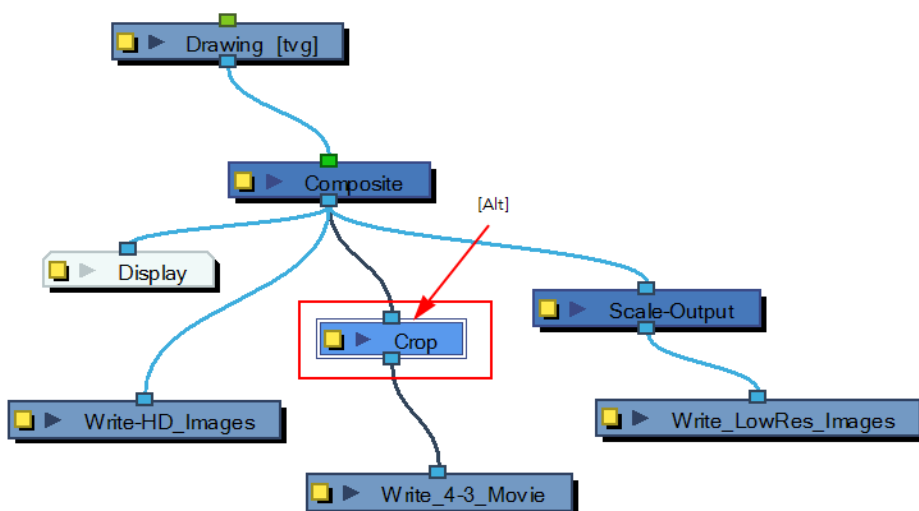
6. Connect the other Write modules and repeat Step 2 to Step 5.



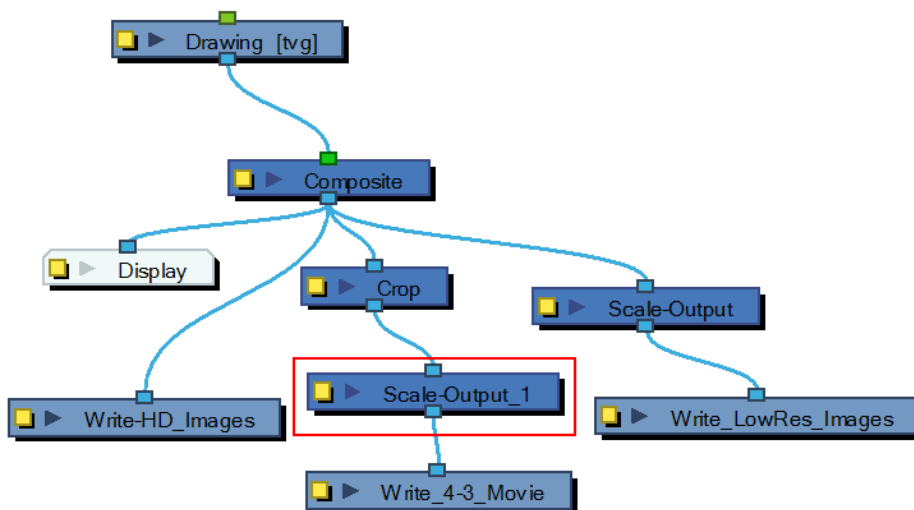
7. Using the [Alt] key, insert the Scale-Output modules between the final Composite module and their corresponding Write module.



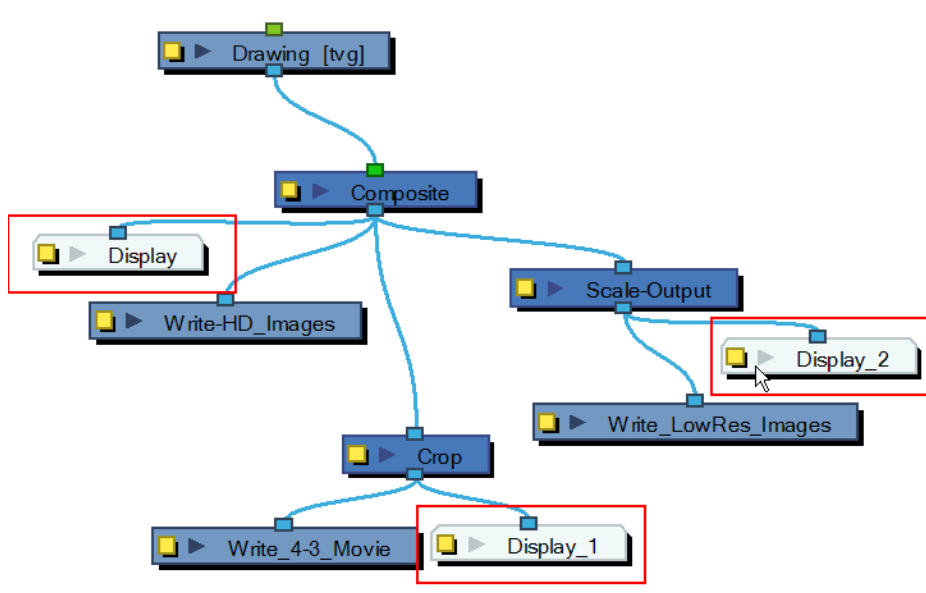
8. Using the [Alt] key, insert the Crop modules between the final Composite module and their corresponding Write or Scale module.



- ▶ If the output from the Crop module has to be scaled down, use a Scale-Output module.



9. Connect a Display module to each Scale-Output or Crop module to be able to see each final image in your Camera view.



## Related Topics

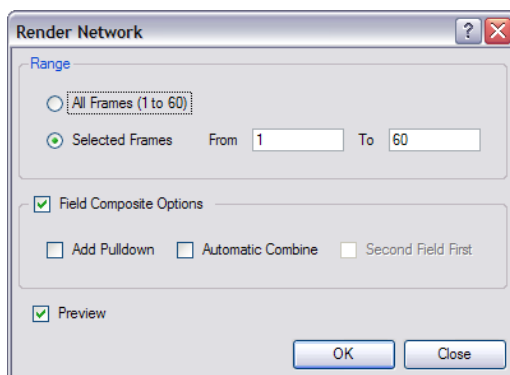
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences](#) on page 1217
- [Multiple Renders](#) on page 1222

# Rendering Images and Movies from the Network

If you want to render from your Write module, you will need to use the Render Network option found in the File menu.

To render from the Write module:

1. Select **File > Export > Render Network**. The [Ctrl] + [Shift] + [Y] (Windows) or [⌘] + [Shift] + [Y] (Mac OS X).



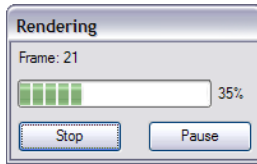
(Stand-alone mode)

2. In the Range section, select the frame range to render.
3. Enable the Preview option if you want to automatically see the image sequence result once the render is done. (The preview will not show up for a QuickTime movie.)
4. Select **Field Composite** if you want Animate Pro to render the final images as fields for display on interlaced monitors.



5. Click **OK**.

All renders start.



## Related Topics

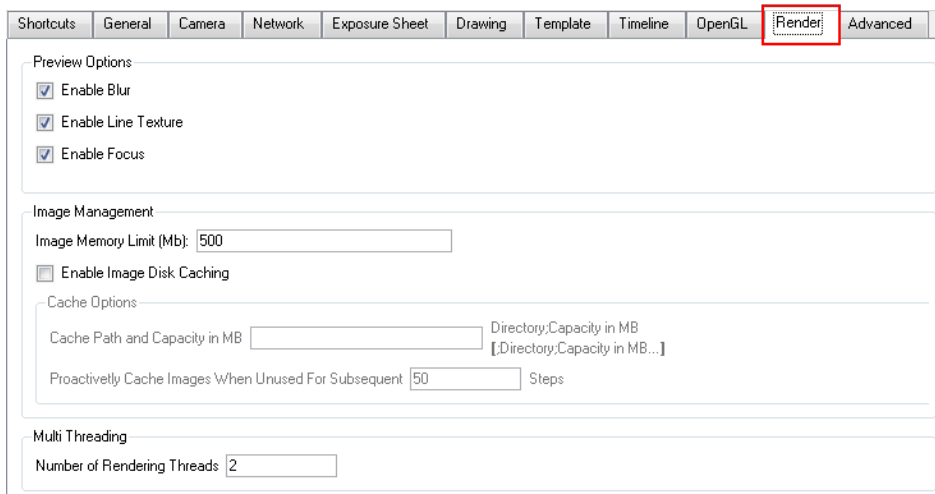
- [Rendering Movies and Image Sequences on page 1217](#)

# Export Preferences

In Animate Pro, you will find preferences related to the rendering under the **Render** tab.

To open the Preferences panel:

- ▶ Windows: Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Animate Pro > Preferences**.
- ▶ The [Ctrl] + [U] (Windows) or [⌘] + [U] (Mac OS X).



## Preview Options

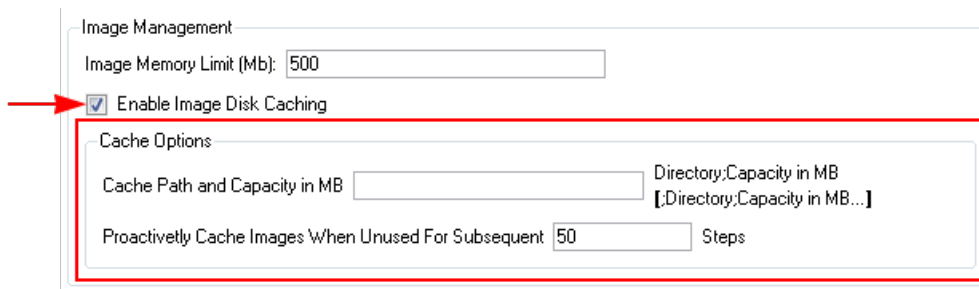
- **Enable Blur:** Renders blur effects derived from the Blur-Directional Module, Blur-Radial Module, and the Blur-Variable Module in the Render View window.
- **Enable Line Texture:** Renders line texture in the Render View.
- **Enable Focus:** Renders focus effects from the Focus-Apply and Focus-Set modules.

## Image Management

- **Image Memory Limit (MB):** During soft rendering, Animate Pro produces intermediate images. Roughly one image per module per frame. This process is called rendering steps. These produced images can come to hold considerable amount of memory and they are discarded once they are of no use in the rendering. Specifying a maximum memory limit in this field will discard the image once it reaches this limit.
- **Enable Image Disk Caching:** When this option is enabled, the images will be off-loaded to disk instead of being erased from memory. The off-load process occurs as soon as the image is no longer used during the current frame rendering, instead of waiting for the memory limit to be reached. This way, images do not need to be recalculated and instead, they are automatically restored from disk, considerably speeding up the interactive rendering process. During batch rendering, off-loading the image to disk after each usage reduces the average memory (RAM) usage.

# Cache Options

When the **Enable Image Disk Caching** option is enabled, the following becomes available:



- **Cache Path and Capacity in MB:**
  - If this field is left empty, Animate Pro's temporary directory will be used to off-load intermediate images. There is no disk usage limit for the temporary directory.
  - When you specify a folder, you must type in the capacity (in MB) inside the path. Use the following method: path;capacity in MB;  
ex: C:\user\tmp\_image\_folder;2000;  
**Note:** The specified folder must already exist. If there is an error in the path, Animate Pro's temporary directory will be used. You can also specify a RAM drive in the path.
- **Proactively Cache Images When Unused For Subsequent \_\_ Steps:** This option will allow off-loading of intermediate images if they are unused for the specified number of steps.
  - A value of **0** disables the option.
  - A value of **1** forces the off-load of all images immediately after their creation and usage.
  - The recommended value is **50**.
  - If you are using a fine resolution of 2k pixels or more, the specified value should be smaller.
  - Small networks should not use this feature.

# Multi Threading



The **Multi Threading** preference is used to specify the level of parallel processing done during the final image calculation (soft-rendering). Allowing parallel processing speeds up the soft-render process. You can specify the number of parallel processes in the **Number of Rendering Threads** field:

- Entering a thread number value of **1** disables the multi threading process because it specifies that only one rendering thread will be used during the process.
- The maximum number of threads value is **64**.
- The recommended starting value is **2** threads per CPU core. Meaning that if you are using a 2 Quad Core CPU, the preferences should initially be set to **16** threads.

## Related Topics

- [Export on page 1207](#)



# Chapter 20: Scripting

Qt Script provides access to many of the functions supported in the interface. With Qt Script, you can automate a number of Animate Pro functions to speed the completion of various repetitive tasks.

To use scripts prepared by other users or for other scenes, you must first export the scripts from the originating scene and then import the scripts into a target scene.

You can add buttons to the Scripting Tools toolbar so that you can access them easily. They will appear to the right of the default Scripting Toolbar buttons.



To find more information about methods and functions for writing your own script, refer to the scripting help included in the software:

- Windows: C:\Program Files (x86)\Toon Boom Animation\Toon Boom Animate Pro 3\help\en\script\index.html
- Mac OS X: /Applications/Toon Boom Animate Pro 3/Documentation.localized/script/index.html

---

## Topics Covered

- [Creating a Qt Script on page 1](#)
- [Importing Scripts on page 1](#)
- [Linking a Script to a Toolbar Button on page 1](#)

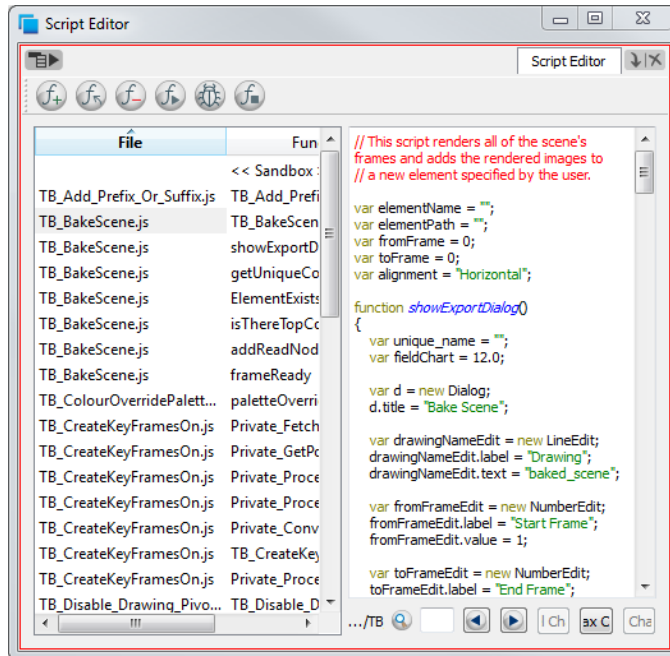
# Creating a Qt Script



Use the Script Editor to create Qt scripts for Animate Pro.

**To create a script:**

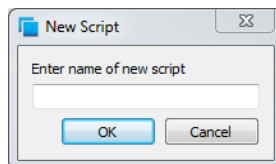
1. Open the Script Editor window by going to the top menu and selecting **Windows > Script Editor**.

The Script Editor view opens.

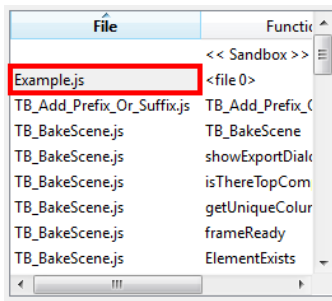


2. From the View menu  select **File > New Script** or from the Script Editor toolbar, click on the **New Script**  button. (If you do not see the Script Editor toolbar, go to the top menu and select **Windows > Toolbars > Script Editor**).

The New Script dialog box appears.





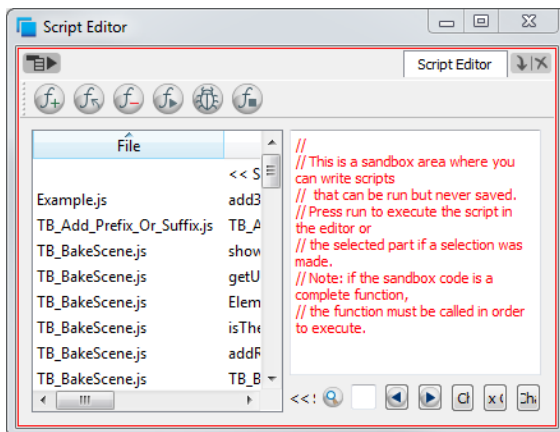
3. Enter a name in the Enter name of new script field, along with the file extension \*.js and click on **OK**.  
The name of your script appears in the File column of the Script Editor view.



- Click in the right side of the Script Editor and start writing your script. Try the following script:

```
function add3dPathCol ()
{
    column.add("ColumnName", "3DPATH");
}
```



- To test your script, select the function you would like to run from the File column, then, from the Script Editor toolbar, click on the **Run**  button, or from the **View** menu  select **Play/Debug > Run**.
  - You may receive the message: **Only functions that have been saved or are explicitly called will be executed.** This usually occurs if you did not select the function you wished to run from the File column before running the script. In this case, click on the **Save Changes** button, then try running your script again.
  - You may also see this message on the right side of the Script Editor:





This is because the software jumped to the <<Sandbox>> item in the Function column. The <<Sandbox>> is provided to test scripts without saving them. Simply click on your newly created script and then try running it again.

A new 3Dpath column (or 3 separate x, y and z path columns and a velocity column) will appear in your Xsheet view with the name ColumnName.

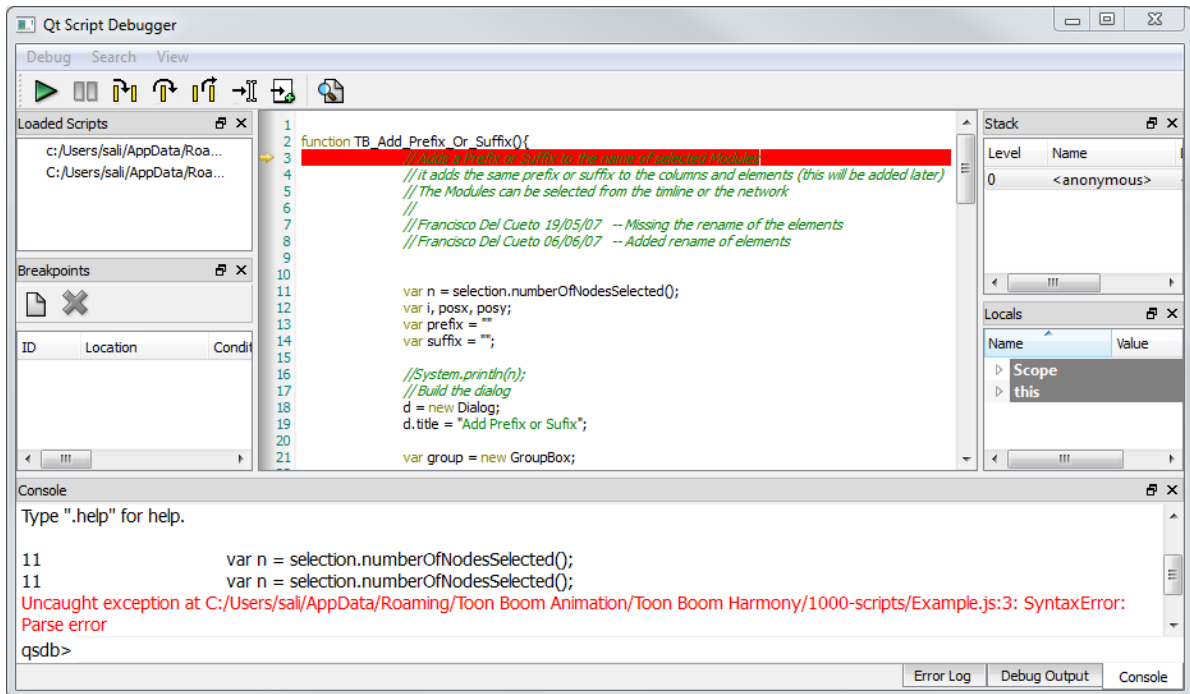
#### To delete a script:

- In the Script Editor, in the File column, select the script that you would like to delete.
- From the Script Editor toolbar, click on the **Delete Script**  button or from the **View** menu , select **File > Delete Script**.

## To troubleshoot errors in your script:

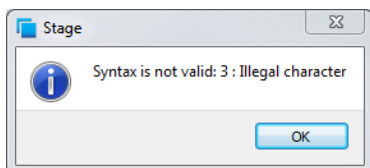
- **Debug:** Select the function first, then from the Script Editor toolbar, click on the **Debug**  button, or from the View menu , select **Play/Debug > Debug**.

The Qt Script Debugger opens.



- **Syntax Check:** Click on the **Syntax Check** button.

A window will pop-up with syntax information.







# Importing Scripts

To use scripts prepared by other users, transfer the \*.js files from the computer where the scripts were created to the one that you intend to use. Then use the Script Editor to import the \*.js files from where they are saved on your computer.

Scripts that you have created for one scene or project will be available for all other projects created on the same computer, with no need for any kind of transfer or import.

## To import a script:

1. On the computer that contains the \*.js files, open My Computer (Windows) or Finder (Mac OS X), then follow this path:
  - ▶ Windows: C:\Program Files (x86)\Toon Boom Animation\Toon Boom Animate Pro 3\resources\scripts
  - ▶ Mac OS X: Home > Library > Preferences > Toon Boom Animation > Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 > 1000-scripts
2. Copy the \*.js files that you would like to transfer to another computer onto a USB key, or use another transfer method of your choice.
3. Transfer and save the \*.js files onto the computer that you intend to use. Be sure that you save them in a logical location. You can save them directly in the locations indicated in Step 1, in which case they will automatically appear in the Script Editor. If for some reason you do not wish to mix them up with the default scripts, save them to a different location and continue following the steps below.
4. Open a new, or existing, scene in Animate Pro.
5. In the Script Editor, click on the **Import Scripts**  button, or from the View menu , select **File >**

### Import Script.

A browser window will open and allow you to browse to the location on the server where the \*.js files are saved.

6. Select the \*.js file and click on the **Open** button.

The script is imported and appears in the File list of the Script Editor.

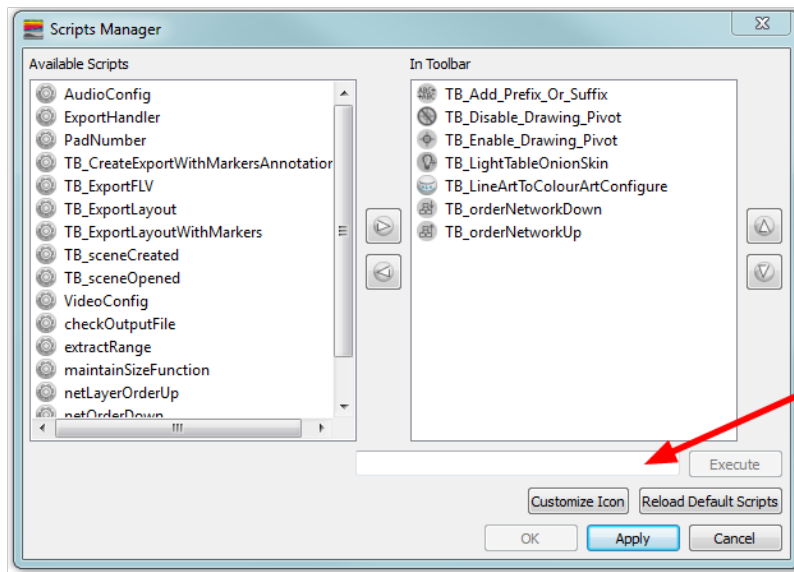
# Linking a Script to a Toolbar Button

You can add buttons to the Scripting Tools toolbar so that you can access them easily. They will appear to the right of the default Scripting Toolbar buttons.


## To link a script to a toolbar button:

1. In the Scripting Tools toolbar, click on the **Manage Scripts**  button.

A dialog box containing all of the available scripts opens.



You can select a script from this dialog box and run it immediately by clicking on the Execute button. The field displays the name of the currently selected script.

2. In the Available Scripts list, select the script you want to link to a toolbar button.
3. Click on the **Right Arrow**  button to add the script to the In Toolbar list.
4. Click on **OK** to add the button and close the dialog box.

# Chapter 21: Keyboard Shortcuts for Animate Pro

This document lists default keyboard shortcuts for Animate Pro.



The Animate Pro keyboard shortcuts set is used throughout the Animate Pro documentation.

To use a shortcut, press the key and the character simultaneously. The sign + sign is not part of the sequence. If there is no shortcut allocated to a command it is left blank.

General					
COMMAND	FLASH		Animate Pro		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Add Frame After Selection	Ctrl+H	^+H	Ctrl+H	^+H	
Add Frame At End					
Add Frame At Start					
Add Frame Before Selection	Ctrl+G	⌘+G	Ctrl+G	⌘+G	
Auto Render	Ctrl+Alt+-R	⌘+Alt+R	Ctrl+Alt+-R	⌘+Alt+R	
Auto Render Write	Ctrl+W	⌘+W	Ctrl+W	⌘+W	
Bounding Box Selection Style	Ctrl+Alt+-Shift+B	⌘+Alt+Shift+B			
Copy	Ctrl+C	⌘+C	Ctrl+C	⌘+C	
Create Empty Drawing	Alt+Shift+-R	Alt+Shift+-R	Alt+Shift+-R	Alt+Shift+-R	
Cut	Ctrl+X	⌘+X	Ctrl+X	⌘+X	
Delete	Del	Del	Del	Del	
Delete (secondary)	Backspace	Back-	Back-	Backspace	

<b>General</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>Animate Pro</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
key)		space	space	e	
Deselect All	Esc	Esc	Esc	Esc	
Duplicate Drawings	Alt+Shift+- D	Alt+Shift- +D	Alt+Shift- +D	Alt+Shift +D	
Export Layout					
First Frame	Home	Home	<	<	
Free Pan And Zoom	Space	Space	Space	Space	
Get Rights to Modify Drawings	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	
Go to Next Column	J	J	J	J	
Go to Next Drawing	G	G	G	G	
Go to Previous Column	H	H	H	H	
Go to Previous Drawing	F	F	F	F	
Go to the Eighth Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Fifth Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the First Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Fourth Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Ninth Drawing in Drawing View					

General					
COMMAND	FLASH		Animate Pro		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Go to the Second Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Seventh Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Sixth Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Tenth Drawing in Drawing View					
Go to the Third Drawing in Drawing View					
Help	F1	F1	F1	F1	
Import Movie					
Invert Selection	Ctrl+Shift-+I	⌘+Shift-+I	⌘+Shift-+I		
Jog Backward					
Jog Forward					
Last Frame	End	End	>	>	
Look at Selected					
Move Backward					
Move Forward					
New	Ctrl+N	⌘+N	Ctrl+N	⌘+N	
Next Frame	.	.	.	.	
Open	Ctrl+O	⌘+O	Ctrl+O	⌘+O	
Paste	Ctrl+V	⌘+V	Ctrl+V	⌘+V	
Paste Special	Ctrl+Shift-+B	⌘+Shift-+B	Ctrl+B	⌘+B	

<b>General</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>Animate Pro</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
Paste Special Again	Ctrl+Alt+-B	⌘ +Alt+B	Ctrl+Shift-+B	⌘ +Shift+B	
Preferences	Ctrl+U	⌘ +U	Ctrl+U	⌘ +U	
Preview Manager					
Previous Frame	,	,	,	,	
Quick Close-up	Shift+Z	Shift+Z	Shift+Z	Shift+Z	
Read Changed Drawings	Ctrl+;	⌘ +;	Ctrl+;	⌘ +;	
Recentre	F12	⌘ +F12	N	N	
Record and Play					
Redo	Ctrl+Y	⌘ +Y	Ctrl+Shift-+Z	⌘ +Shift+Z	
Release Rights to Modify Drawings	Alt+Shift+-L	Alt+Shift-+L	Alt+Shift-+L	Alt+Shift+L	
Remove All Drawings	Esc	Esc	Esc	Esc	
Remove Art Outside Selection	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	
Remove Art Outside Selection (Backspace)	Shift+Bac-kspace	Shift+Bac-kspace	Shift+Bac-kspace	Shift+Bac-kspace	
Rename Drawings	Ctrl+Shift-+D	⌘ +Shift+-D	Ctrl+D	⌘ +D	
Rename Drawings with Prefix					
Render and Play					
Render Network	Ctrl+Shift-+Y	⌘ +Shift+-Y	Ctrl+Shift-+Y	⌘ +Shift+Y	
Reset Pan	Shift+N	Shift+N	Shift+N	Shift+N	
Reset Rotation	Shift+X	Shift+X	Shift+X	Shift+X	

General					
COMMAND	FLASH		Animate Pro		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Reset View	Shift+M	Shift+M	Shift+M	Shift+M	
Reset Zoom					
Rotate View CCW					
Rotate View CW					
Save	Ctrl+S	⌘ +S	Ctrl+S	⌘ +S	
Select All	Ctrl+A	⌘ +A	Ctrl+A	⌘ +A	
Select Child					
Select Child Skipping Effects	Shift+B	Shift+B	Shift+B	Shift+B	
Select Group Content					
Select Next Brother	?	?	?	?	
Select Parent					
Select Parent Skipping Effects	B	B	B	B	
Select Previous Brother	/	/	/	/	
Show Colour Model	Shift+K	Shift+K	Shift+K	Shift+K	
Shuttle Backward					
Shuttle Forward					
Shuttle Reset					
Test SWF Movie					
Toggle Auto-Apply					
Toggle Auto-Get-Rights-to-Modify-Palette-Lists					
Toggle Auto-Get-					

<b>General</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>Animate Pro</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
Rights-to-Modify-Palettes					
Toggle Auto-Lock					
Toggle Editor	Shift+E	Shift+E	Shift+E	Shift+E	
Toggle Full Screen	Ctrl+F	⌘ +F	Ctrl+F	⌘ +F	
Toggle Playback	Return	Return	Shift+Return	Shift+Return	
Toggle Show Locked Drawings in Outline					
Toggle Velocity Editor	Shift+V	Shift+V	Shift+V	Shift+V	
Undo	Ctrl+Z	⌘ +Z	Ctrl+Z	⌘ +Z	
Unload Model	Del	Del	Del	Del	
Zoom In	Ctrl+=	⌘ +=	2	2	
Zoom Out	Ctrl+-	⌘ +-	1	1	
<b>Camera</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
Add all to Onion Skin	Alt+Shift+O	Alt+Shift+O	Alt+Shift+O	Alt+Shift+O	
Add to Onion Skin	Shift+S	Shift+S	Shift+S	Shift+S	
Animate					
Bitmap Image Quality	Ctrl+Q	^+Q	Ctrl+Q	^+Q	
Camera Show	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	



Camera					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
hidden					
Camera Substitute Drawing Previous	[	[	[	[	
Centre On Selection	Shift+O	Shift+O	Shift+O	Shift+O	
Create Drawing from Drawing Selection	F9	⌘ +F9	F9	⌘ +F9	
Create Symbol	F8	F8	F8	F8	
Distribute to Layers					
Duplicate Symbol					
Enable/Disable Playback	Alt+P	Alt+P	Alt+P	Alt+P	
Enter Selected Symbol	Ctrl+E	⌘ +E	Ctrl+E	⌘ +E	
Expand Symbol	Ctrl+B	⌘ +B	Shift+F8	Shift+F8	
Export Images			Ctrl + Shift + Y	⌘ +Y	
Flip Horizontal	4	4	4	4	
Flip Scale X					
Flip Scale Y					
Flip Vertical	5	5	5	5	

Camera					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Hide All Control Parameters	Shift+C	Shift+C	Shift+C	Shift+C	
Hide Selected	Alt+H	Alt+H	Alt+H	Alt+H	
Insert Control Point	P	P	P	P	
Insert Keyframe	Ctrl+F6	⌘ +F6	F6	F6	
Insert Keyframe and Duplicate Drawings	F6	F6			
Insert Position Keyframe					
Inverse Kinematics Tool	Alt+8	Alt+8	Shift+I	Shift+I	
Lock All	Ctrl+Shift+L	⌘ +Shift+L	Ctrl+Shift+L	⌘ +Shift+L	
Lock All Others	Ctrl+Alt+Shift+O	⌘ +Alt+Shift+O	Ctrl+Alt+Shift+O	⌘ +Alt+Shift+O	
Lock Selection	Ctrl+Alt+L	⌘ +Alt+L	Ctrl+Alt+L	⌘ +Alt+L	
Maintain Size Tool	Alt+6	Alt+6	Alt+6	Alt+6	
Remove all Onion Skin	Ctrl+Shift+O	⌘ +Shift+O	Ctrl+Shift+O	⌘ +Shift+O	
Remove Selection from Onion Skin					

Camera					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Remove Unselected from Onion Skin					
Reset All Transformations	Ctrl+Alt+Z	⌘ +Alt+Z	Shift+R	Shift+R	
Reset All Transformations Except Z					
Reset Transformation	Ctrl+Shift+Z	⌘ +Shift+Z	R	R	
Return To Parent Symbol	Ctrl+Shift+E	⌘ +Shift+E	Ctrl+Shift+E	⌘ +Shift+E	
Rotate Tool	Alt+3	Alt+3	Alt+3	Alt+3	
Scale Tool	Alt+4	Alt+4	Alt+4	Alt+4	
Select Control Point	T	T	T	T	
Select Next Control Point	'	'	'	'	
Select Previous Control Point	;	;	;	;	
Show/Hide Control Parameters	Shift+F11	⌘ +F11	Shift+F11	⌘ +F11	
Show/Hide Transform Tool					

Camera					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Controls					
Skew Tool	Alt+5	Alt+5	Alt+5	Alt+5	
Spline Offset Tool	Alt+9	Alt+9	Alt+8	Alt+8	
Substitute Drawing Next	]	]	]	]	
Substitute Drawing Prev	[	[	[	[	
Toggle Between Line and Curve					
Toggle Lock In Time	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	
Toggle Snap Keyframe	X	X	X	X	
Transform Tool	Alt+Q	Alt+Q	Shift+T	Shift+T	
Translate Tool	Alt+2	Alt+2	Alt+2	Alt+2	
Unlock All	Ctrl+Alt+Shift+L	⌘+Alt+Shift+L	Ctrl+Alt+Shift+L	⌘+Alt+Shift+L	
Unlock Selection	Ctrl+Shift+K	⌘+Shift+K	Ctrl+Shift+K	⌘+Shift+K	

Timeline					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Centre On Selection	O	O	O	O	
Clear Exposure					
Clear Exposure and Pull	Z	Z	Z	Z	
Collapse All Layers	0	0	0	0	
Collapse or Expand an Layer	Ctrl+I	⌘+I	Ctrl+I	⌘+I	
Convert Morphing to Drawings					
Create Morphing	Alt+M	Alt+M	Alt+M	Alt+M	
Decrease Exposure	-	-	-	-	
Delete Keyframe	Shift+F6	Shift+F6	F7	F7	
Delete Morphing					
Disable All Other Layers					
Disable Layers	D	D	D	D	
Enable All Elements					
Enable Layers	A	A	A	A	
Enable or Disable					

Timeline					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Elements					
Expand All Layers	9	9	9	9	
Extend Exposure	F5	F5	F5	F5	
Flip Horizontal					
Flip Vertical					
Go to Next Global Frame	Alt+.	Alt+.	Ctrl+Shift+C	⌘ +Shift+C	
Go to Next Keyframe	,	,	,	,	
Go to Previous Global Frame	Alt+,	Alt+,	Ctrl+Shift+X	⌘ +Shift+X	
Go to Previous Keyframe	;	;	;	;	
Group Selection	Ctrl+G	⌘ +G	Ctrl+G	⌘ +G	
Group Selection With Composite	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	
Insert Blank Frame	X	X	Shift+J	Shift+J	
Insert Camera					

Timeline					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Insert Drawing	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	
Insert Group	Alt+G	Alt+G	Alt+G	Alt+G	
Insert Keyframe	Ctrl+F6	⌘ +F6	F6	F6	
Insert Keyframe and Duplicate Drawings	F6	F6			
Insert Morphing Keyframe					
Insert Parent Peg	Ctrl+Alt+P	Shift+P	Shift+P	Shift+P	
Insert Peg	Ctrl+P	⌘ +P	Ctrl+P	⌘ +P	
Insert Quadmap					
Insert Sound					
Lock All			Ctrl+Shift+L	⌘ +Shift+L	
Lock All Others			Ctrl+Alt+Shift+O	⌘ +Alt+Shift+O	
Lock Selection			Ctrl+Alt+L	⌘ +Alt+L	
Paste Cycle	Ctrl+/ /	⌘ +/ /	Ctrl+/ /	⌘ +/ /	
Paste mode: Cycle through presets					

Timeline					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Paste mode: Set all					
Paste mode: Set exposures only					
Paste mode: Set key frames only					
Paste Reverse	Ctrl+.	⌘ +.	Ctrl+.	⌘ +.	
Select Children					
Set Exposure					
Set Exposure to 1					
Set Exposure to 2					
Set Exposure to 3					
Set Motion Keyframe	Ctrl+K	⌘ +K	Ctrl+K	⌘ +K	
Set Stop- Motion Keyframe	Ctrl+L	⌘ +L	Ctrl+L	⌘ +L	
Show Effects					
Show Group					



Timeline					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Show Manager					
Show Sound Columns					
Show/Hide Functions	Alt+F	Alt+F	Alt+F	Alt+F	
Substitute Drawing Next	]	]	]	]	
Substitute Drawing Previous	[	[	[	[	
Unlock All			Ctrl+Alt+Shift+L	⌘+Alt+Shift+L	
Unlock Selection			Ctrl+Shift+K	⌘+Shift+K	
View Mode Next					
View Mode Normal					
View Mode Selected					
View Mode Tagged					

<b>Network View</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
Centre on Selection	O	O	O	O	
Create Composite	Ctrl+H	^+H	Ctrl+H	^+H	
Create Display	Ctrl+Alt+Y	⌘ +Alt+Y	Ctrl+Y	⌘ +Y	
Create Group	Alt+G	Alt+G	Alt+G	Alt+G	
Create Parent Peg	Ctrl+Shift+P	⌘ +Shift+P	Ctrl+Shift+P	⌘ +Shift+P	
Create Peg	Ctrl+P	⌘ +P	Ctrl+P	⌘ +P	
Create Read	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	
Disable Module	D	D	D	D	
Enable Module	A	A	A	A	
Enter Group	Ctrl+Return	⌘ +Return	Ctrl+Return	⌘ +Return	
Exit Group	Backspace	Backspace	Backspace	Backspace	
Group	Ctrl+G	⌘ +G	Ctrl+G	⌘ +G	
Group with Composite	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	
Hide All thumbnails	Alt+T	Alt+T	Alt+T	Alt+T	
Move To Parent	Ctrl+Shift+U	⌘ +Shift+U	Ctrl+Shift+U	⌘ +Shift+U	
Show/Hide Navigator	Ctrl+Shift+W	⌘ +Shift+W	Ctrl+Shift+W	⌘ +Shift+W	
Show/Hide Selected thumbnails	T	T	T	T	

**Xsheet**

COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Add Columns	Shift+C	Shift+C	Shift+C	Shift+C	
Add Drawing Column	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	Ctrl+R	⌘ +R	
Clear Exposure and Pull	Z	Z	Z	Z	
Clear Selected Cells					
Clone Selected Columns					
Collapse					
Collapse All	0	0	0	0	
Decrease Exposure	-	-	-	-	
Delete Selected Columns					
Delete Selected Drawings					
Duplicate Selected Columns	Ctrl+D	⌘ +D			
Enable/Disable Playback					
Expand					
Expand All	9	9	9	9	
Fill Randomly					
Fill Selection	Ctrl+T	⌘ +T	Ctrl+T	⌘ +T	
Gestural Drag Mode					
Hide Selected Column	Alt+H	Alt+H	Alt+H	Alt+H	
Increase Exposure	+	+	+	+	

<b>Xsheet</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	<b>Win/Linux</b>	<b>Mac OS X</b>	
Insert Blank Cell	X	X	Shift+J	Shift+J	
Insert Keyframe	Ctrl+F6	⌘ +F6	F6	F6	
Insert/Overwrite Mode	I	I	I	I	
Mark As Breakdown					
Mark As In-between					
Mark As Key					
Paste Cycle	Ctrl+/,	⌘ +/,	Ctrl+/,	⌘ +/,	
Paste Reverse	Ctrl+.	⌘ +.	Ctrl+.	⌘ +.	
Preview	Alt+P	Alt+P	Alt+P	Alt+P	
Remove Frames					
Sequence Fill	Ctrl+M	⌘ +M	Ctrl+M	⌘ +M	
Set Custom Hold Cell					
Set Custom Hold 1 Cell	Ctrl+1	⌘ +1	Ctrl+1	⌘ +1	
Set Custom Hold 2 Cells	Ctrl+2	⌘ +2	Ctrl+2	⌘ +2	
Set Custom Hold 3 Cells	Ctrl+3	⌘ +3	Ctrl+3	⌘ +3	
Set Custom Hold 4 Cells	Ctrl+4	⌘ +4	Ctrl+4	⌘ +4	
Show Column Types					
Show Hidden Columns	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	Alt+Shift+H	
Thumbnails					
Zoom Extents					

---

**Colour Management**


---

COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Get Rights To Modify All Palettes	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	Alt+L	
Palette Go to Next Colour					
Palette Go to Previous Colour					

---



---

**Drawing Mode**


---

COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Activate Magnifier					
Apply Tool to All Drawings	Ctrl+Alt+A	⌘ +Alt+A	Alt+A	Alt+A	
Apply Tool to All Visible Layers	Shift+Q	Shift+Q	Shift+Q	Shift+Q	
Auto-Create Colour Art from Brush	Shift+F2	Shift+F2	Shift+F2	Shift+F2	
Apply Tool to Line and Colour Art			Shift + Q	⌘ + Q	
Auto-Matte					
Automatically Fill Inside Regions	Ctrl+Shift+R	⌘ +Shift+R	Ctrl+Shift+R	⌘ +Shift+R	
Bring	Ctrl+Up	⌘ +Up	Ctrl+PgUp	⌘ +PgUp	

---

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Forward					
Bring To Front	Ctrl+Shift+Up	⌘ +Shift+Up	Ctrl+Shift+PgUp	⌘ +Shift+PgUp	
Brush Tool			Alt+B	Alt+B	
Brush Tool (General)	Alt+B	Alt+B			
Close Drawing List	Alt+J	Alt+J	Alt+J	Alt+J	
Close Gap Interactive Tool	Shift+F10		Shift+F10		
Close Gap Tool	Alt+C	Alt+C	Alt+C	Alt+C	
Contour Editor Tool	Alt+A	Alt+A	Alt+Q	Alt+Q	
Convert Brush Strokes to Pencil Lines	^	^	^	^	
Convert Pencil Lines to Brush Strokes	&	&	&	&	
Convert Strokes to Pencil Lines	Shift+F12		Shift+F12		
Create Breaking Triangles					
Create Colour Art from Line Art	*	*	*	*	
Crop Brush					

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Textures					
Cutter Tool			Alt+T	Alt+T	
Decrement Brush Size			Shift+ P	⌘ +P	
Delete All Morphing Hints	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	Shift+Del	
Drawing Pivot Tool			Shift + P		
Dropper Tool	Alt+I	Alt+I	Alt+D	Alt+D	
Edit Texture/Gradient Tool	Shift+F3	Shift+F3	Shift+F3	Shift+F3	
Ellipse Tool	Alt+O	Alt+O	Alt+=	Alt+=	
Enable Morphing Pencil Hint Mode					
Eraser Tool	Alt+E	Alt+E	Alt+E	Alt+E	
First Frame					
Flatten	Alt+Shift+F	Alt+Shift+F	Alt+Shift+F	Alt+Shift+F	
Flatten and Remove Extra Strokes	Ctrl+Shift+F	⌘ +Shift+F	Ctrl+Shift+F	⌘ +Shift+F	
Flatten Latest	F2	F2	F2	F2	
Flip Horizontal					
Flip Vertical					
Go to Next					

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Morphing Frame					
Go to Previous Morphing Frame					
Group	Ctrl+G	⌘+G	Ctrl+G	⌘+G	
Hand Tool					
Hide Line Texture	Ctrl+Alt+H	⌘+Alt+H	Ctrl+Shift+H	⌘+Shift+H	
Increment Brush Size					
Ink Tool					
Join Pencil Lines			Alt + Shift + J	Alt + Shift + J	
Light Table	Shift+L	Shift+L	Shift+L	Shift+L	
Line Tool	Alt+N	Alt+N	Alt+\	Alt+\	
Merge Pencil Lines					
Morphing Tool	F3	F3	F3	F3	
Onion Skin: 1 Next	Ctrl+1	⌘+1	Ctrl+1	⌘+1	
Onion Skin: 1 Previous	!	!	!	!	
Onion Skin: 2 Next	Ctrl+2	⌘+2	Ctrl+2	⌘+2	
Onion Skin: 2 Previous	@	@	@	@	
Onion Skin: 3 Next	Ctrl+3	⌘+3	Ctrl+3	⌘+3	
Onion Skin:	#	#	#	#	



Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
3 Previous					
Onion Skin: Add 1 next					
Onion Skin: Add 1 Previous					
Onion Skin: No Next	Ctrl+`	⌘+`	Ctrl+`	⌘+`	
Onion Skin: No Previous	~	~	~	~	
Onion Skin: Reduce 1 Next					
Onion Skin: Reduce 1 Previous					
Optimize	Ctrl+Alt+S hift+C	⌘+Alt+S hift+C	Ctrl+Alt+Shif t+C	⌘+Alt+Shif t+C	
Paint and Remove Texture	Ctrl+Shift+F6	⌘+Shift+F6	Shift+F6	Shift+F6	
Paint Tool			Alt+I	Alt+I	
Paint Tool (General)	Alt+K	Alt+K			
Paint Unpainted Tool			Alt+Y	Alt+Y	
Pencil Editor Tool			Alt+W	Alt+W	
Pencil Tool	Alt+Y	Alt+Y	Alt+/ P	Alt+/ P	
Permanent Selection	Ctrl+Shift+P	⌘+Shift+P	Ctrl+Shift+P	⌘+Shift+P	
Perspective	Alt+0	Alt+0	Alt+0	Alt+0	

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Tool					
Polyline Tool	Alt+P	Alt+P	Alt+_	Alt+_	
Preview Line and Colour Arts	Shift+P	Shift+P	P	P	
Real-Time Antialiasing	Ctrl+Alt+S hift+A	⌘ +Alt+S hift+A	Ctrl+Alt+A	⌘ +Alt+A	
Rectangle Tool	Alt+R	Alt+R	Alt+7	Alt+7	
Reduce Drawing Texture Resolution					
Remove Dirt	Shift+D	Shift+D	Shift+D	Shift+D	
Remove Hair					
Remove Selected Drawing					
Removes art inside selection					
Removes art inside selection on all drawings					
Removes art outside selection					
Removes art outside selection on all					

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
drawings					
Repaint Brush Tool			Alt+X	Alt+X	
Repaint Tool			Alt+R	Alt+R	
Reposition All Drawings Tool					
Resize Pencil Style Tool	○	○	○	○	
Rotate 180					
Rotate 90 CCW	Ctrl+7	⌘ +7	Ctrl+7	⌘ +7	
Rotate 90 CW	Ctrl+9	⌘ +9	Ctrl+9	⌘ +9	
Rotate View Tool					
Select Delete Morphing Hint Mode	Del	Del	Del	Del	
Select Morphing Appearing Point Mode					
Select Morphing Contour Hint Mode	Ctrl+Shift+ H	⌘ +Shift+ H	F7	F7	
Select Morphing Vanishing Point	F10		F10		

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Mode					
Select Morphing Zone Hint Mode					
Select Strokes With Current Colour	Ctrl+Shift+A	⌘ +Shift+A	Ctrl+Shift+A	⌘ +Shift+A	
Select Tool	Alt+V	Alt+V	Alt+S	Alt+S	
Send Backward	Ctrl+Down	⌘ +Down	Ctrl+PgDown	⌘ +PgDown	
Send To Back	Ctrl+Shift+Down	⌘ +Shift+Down	Ctrl+Shift+PgDown	⌘ +Shift+PgDown	
Shift Trace Drawing Move Down					
Shift Trace Drawing Move Up					
Shift Trace Drawing Reset Position					
Shift Trace Drawing Toggle Peg State					
Shift Trace Drawing Toggle Visibility					
Shift Trace Move Tool					

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Shift Trace Rotate Tool					
Shift Trace Scale Tool					
Shift Trace Toggle Manipulator					
Shift Trace Toggle View					
Show Grid	Ctrl+'	⌘ +'	Ctrl+'	⌘ +'	
Show Grid Outline Only	Ctrl+Alt+ G	⌘ +Alt+G			
Show Other Morphing Key Drawing	=	=	Ctrl+Shift+M	⌘ +Shift+M	
Show Scan Info Panel					
Show Strokes	D	D	K	K	
Show Symbol Pivot					
Show/Hide Contour Editor Controls	Alt+F5	Alt+F5	Alt+F5	Alt+F5	
Show/Hide Onion Skin	Ctrl+Alt+ O	⌘ +Alt+O	Alt+O	Alt+O	
Smooth	Alt+Shift+ S	Alt+Shift+ S	Alt+Shift+S	Alt+Shift+S	

Drawing Mode					
COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Smooth Editor Tool					
Snap and Align	Ctrl+Alt+,	⌘ +Alt+,	Ctrl+Alt+,	⌘ +Alt+,	
Snap to Contour	Ctrl+Alt+;	⌘ +Alt+;	Ctrl+Alt+;	⌘ +Alt+;	
Snap to Grid	Ctrl+Alt+'	⌘ +Alt+'	Ctrl+Alt+'	⌘ +Alt+'	
Split Pencil Line			Alt + Shift + K	Alt + Shift + K	
Stroke Tool	Alt+V	Alt+V	Alt+V	Alt+V	
Suggest Morphing Hints					
Switch to Line Art/Colour Art	L	L	L	L	
Switch To Overlay/Underlay Layer	:	:	:	:	
Text Tool	Alt+T	Alt+T	Alt+9	Alt+9	
Toggle Backlight	Ctrl+Shift+C	⌘ +Shift+C	Alt+Shift+B	Alt+Shift+B	
Toggle Line Building Mode					
Toggle Morphing Key Drawings	F4	F4	F4	F4	
Toggle	Shift+S	Shift+S	Shift+S	Shift+S	

**Drawing Mode**

COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Protect Colours					
Ungroup	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	Ctrl+Shift+G	⌘ +Shift+G	
Unpaint Tool			Alt+U	Alt+U	
Zoom Tool	Alt+Z	Alt+Z	Alt+Z	Alt+Z	

**Function Editor**

COMMAND	FLASH		HARMONY		CUSTOM
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Edit Next Function	PgDown	PgDown	PgDown	PgDown	
Edit Previous Function	PgUp	PgUp	PgUp	PgUp	
Insert Point					
Lock/Unlock Point					
Select Left Handle	[	[	[	[	
Select Right Handle	]	]	]	]	
Toggle Grid	G	G	G	G	
Toggle Stop-Motion Segment	S	S	S	S	
Zoom In X	4	4	4	4	
Zoom In Y	6	6	6	6	
Zoom Out X	3	3	3	3	
Zoom Out Y	5	5	5	5	

<b>Library</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Details					
List					
Refresh	F5	F5	F5	F5	
Rename					
Thumbnails					

<b>Tagging</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Tag Selection					
Untag All					
Untag All Others					
Untag Selection					

<b>Deformation</b>					
<b>COMMAND</b>	<b>FLASH</b>		<b>HARMONY</b>		<b>CUSTOM</b>
	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	Win/Linux	Mac OS X	
Add Articulation Module					
Add Bone Module					
Add Curve Module					
Add Deformation Composite					



**Deformation****COMMAND****FLASH****HARMONY****CUSTOM**

Win/Linux

Mac OS X

Win/Linux

Mac OS X

Module

Add Offset  
ModuleAdd Root  
ModuleConvert Elliptic  
ROI to ShapeShow Current  
Deformers**Particle****COMMAND****FLASH****HARMONY****CUSTOM**

Win/Linux

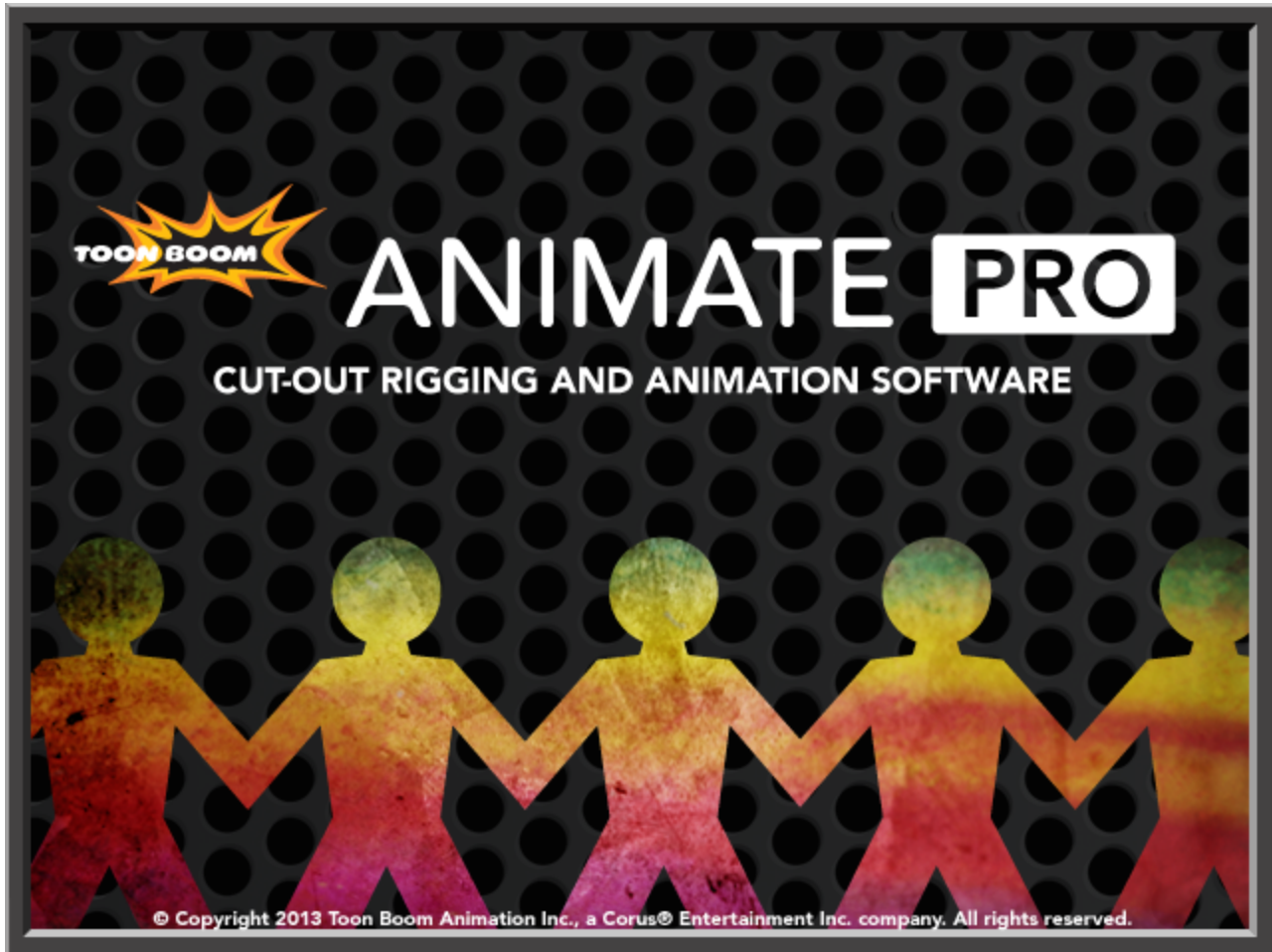
Mac OS X

Win/Linux

Mac OS X

Show Particles as  
Dots

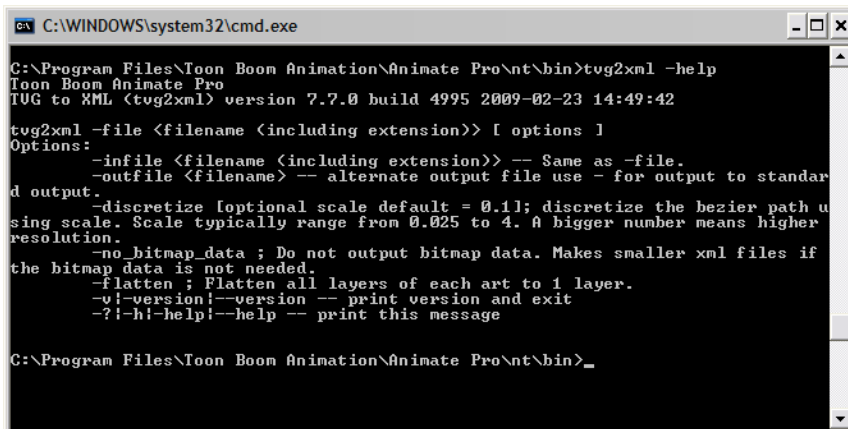




# Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 Toon Boom Utilities Guide



# Chapter 1: Introduction to Utilities



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Program Files\Toon Boom Animation\Animate Pro\nt\bin>tvg2xml -help
Toon Boom Animate Pro
TUG to XML (tvg2xml) version 7.7.0 build 4995 2009-02-23 14:49:42

tvg2xml -file <filename (including extension)> [ options ]
Options:
  -infile <filename (including extension)> -- Same as -file.
  -outfile <filename> -- alternate output file use - for output to standard output.
  -discretize [optional scale default = 0.1]; discretize the bezier path using scale. Scale typically range from 0.025 to 4. A bigger number means higher resolution.
  -no_bitmap_data ; Do not output bitmap data. Makes smaller xml files if the bitmap data is not needed.
  -flatten ; Flatten all layers of each art to 1 layer.
  -v|--version|--version -- print version and exit
  -h|--help|--help -- print this message

C:\Program Files\Toon Boom Animation\Animate Pro\nt\bin>_
```

Toon Boom provides utilities that you can use in Command Prompt and Shells to provide more flexibility and control over the different command options in Toon Boom Animate Pro.

## Topics Covered

- [Running a Utility](#) on page 1279
- [Pdfimport Utility](#) on page 1282
- [Swf2tvg Utility](#) on page 1287
- [Swfimport Utility](#) on page 1289
- [uinfo Utility](#) on page 1290
- [utransform Utility](#) on page 1291



# Running a Utility

Toon Boom includes a number of command line utilities that you can use to convert image formats, bitmap or vector, into other image formats.

These command line utilities are found in your Toon Boom application folder.

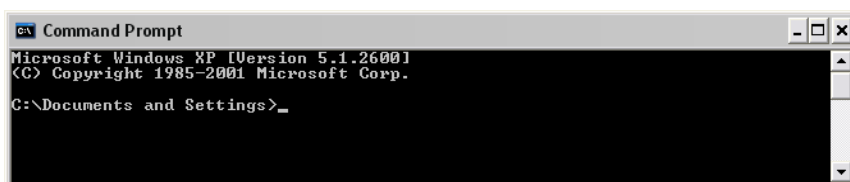
For example, for Toon Boom Animate Pro 3:

- Using **Windows**, these utilities are located in: `\Program Files\Toon Boom Animation\Toon Boom Animate Pro 3\nt\bin`
- Using **Mac OS X**, these utilities are located in: `/Applications/Toon Boom Animate Pro 3/tba/macosx/bin`

To run these utilities, use a Command Prompt or a Terminal window. All of these utilities work on input files that are processed using options you specify to produce an output.

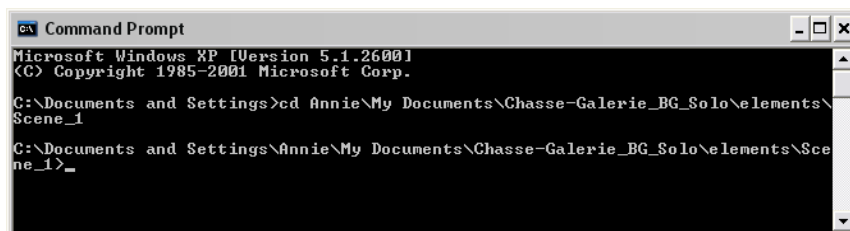
**To run a command line utility:**

1. Open a Command Prompt (Windows) or Terminal (Mac OS X) window.
  - Using Windows, click on the **Start** menu and select **Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt**.



- Using Mac OS X, open a **Finder** window and select **Applications > Utilities > Terminal**

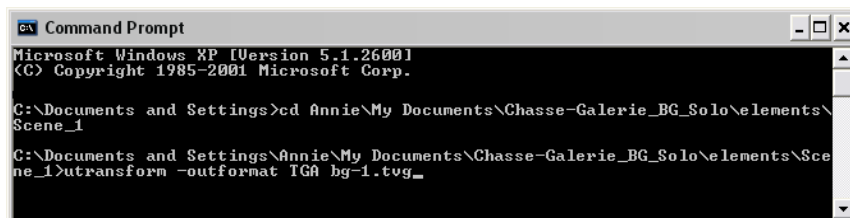
2. In the Command Prompt or Terminal window, switch to the directory that contains the image files that you want to process (element's folder).



3. Type the name of the utility that you want to launch, the options and the name of the file you want to process. The options must be preceded by a dash (-).

Here is an example of how to launch `utransform` using Windows:

- `utransform -outformat TGA bg-1.tvg`



Here is an example of how to launch `utransform` using Mac OS X:

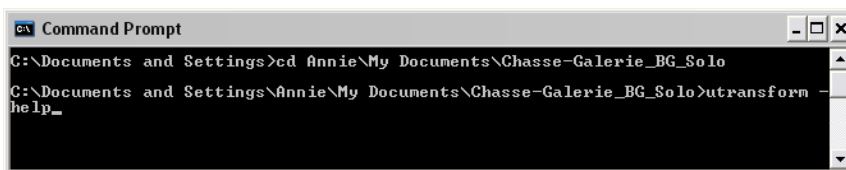
- `utransform -outformat TGA bg-1.tvg`



If another version of Toon Boom Animate Pro is still installed on the system, the utility application should be launched from the \bin folder. This will make sure that the correct version of the utility is used.

---

- If using Windows: `\Program Files\Toon Boom Animate Pro 3\nt\bin\utransform -outformat`
  - If using Mac OS X: `\Finder\Applications\Toon Boom Animate Pro 3\tba\macosx\bin>./utransform -outformat`
4. For help with the options and syntax of the utilities, open the help. To do this, type `-help` after the name of the utility on the command line.
- type: `utransform -help`





# Chapter 3: Utilities

This chapter describes all of the utilities, options and their uses:

- [Pdfimport Utility](#) on the next page
- [Swf2tvg Utility](#) on page 1287
- [Swfimport Utility](#) on page 1289
- [uinfo Utility](#) on page 1290
- [utransform Utility](#) on page 1291

# Pdfimport Utility

The Pdfimport utility is used to import a .PDF or an .AI file as a template without going through the interface. It allows more control and option flexibility over the imported file.

Here is the format you must follow when using Pdfimport:

```
Pdfimport [options] pdf or ai files
```

The available Pdfimport options are:

COMMAND	ACTION
AVAILABLE OPTIONS	
-outdir output_folder	This option defines the folder where the output files will be saved. The defined path is not relative.
-outtemplate output_folder.tpl	This option defines the template name for the converted pages. The defined path can be relative.
-PDF_SUPPORT_CMYK	This option will automatically convert CMYK colours to RGB. Otherwise, CMYK colours would import as a red colour.
-PDF_SEPARATE_LAYERS	This option will use the Illustrator top level groups as separate drawing names.
-PDF_FLATTEN	Use this option to perform a flatten on each drawings while importing.
Description of switches:	
-outtemplate output_folder.tpl	Output template name for converted pages.
-outdir dir	This option defines the output folder for the templates (the defined folder must already exist.)
-usage	This option will display the usage.
-? -h -help --help	This option will display the help information.
-v -version --version n	This option will display the version information.



- The -outdir and -outtemplate options are exclusive; they cannot be used together.
- You can only specify one file with the outtemplate option.
- If the CMYK colours option is not enabled, the application will output the following error message:  
CMYK: Unsupported colorSpace
- Pdfimport does not overwrite existing templates, but will overwrite files in outdir.

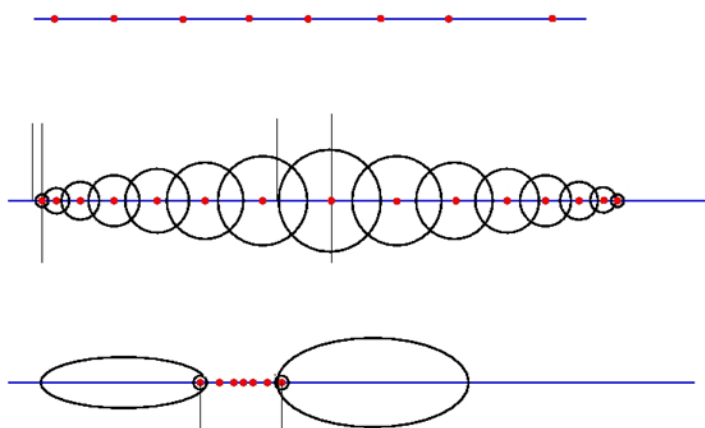
## How to Vectorize With Bubbles

Vectorizing with bubbles allows the user to modify the original LineArt of a drawing by randomly inserting bubble shapes.

The command inserts bubbles starts from the circle with the smallest radius (`min_radius`), with the centre on one colour art point. The command then adds subsequent circles on the remaining colour art points, increasing their radius each time. The command adds new circles in ascending order of radius until the bubbles reach the maximum size specified by the `max_radius` parameter.

The command inserts the first and last circle at the minimum radius (specified by the `min_radius` parameter) and randomly assigns the height of the middle circle based on the `bubble_length` parameter.

For each bubble that appears, the command selects a random number of colour art points to set the distance between bubbles. The `bubble_gap` specifies the maximum number of such points, with the minimum being zero.



## Examples

### Drawing With Uniform Line Thickness

The initial drawing has a uniform thickness. Use it to view and compare the results of the following bubbles options.



- **Example 1**

The drawing has been vectorized using the command options:

```
-create_bubbles -bubble_gap 3 -bubble_length 16 -max_radius
```



- **Example 2**

The drawing has been vectorized using the command options:

```
-create_bubbles -bubble_gap 3 -bubble_length 4 -max_radius 3.5
```



- **Example 3**

The drawing has been vectorized using the command options:

```
-create_bubbles -bubble_gap 3 -bubble_length 16 -max_radius 3.5
```



- **Example 4**

The drawing has been vectorized using the options:

```
-create_bubbles -bubble_gap 3 -bubble_length 4 -max_radius 3.0 -  
uniform_gap -uniform_height
```



# Swf2tvg Utility

The Swf2tvg utility is used to import an SWF file into your scene without using the interface. This will create a .tvg file for each frame. Use the different commands to control the options.

Here is the format you must follow when using Swf2tvg:

```
Swf2Tvg -palette <palette_file> -usage -help -use_different_palettes
-base_name <base_out_name> -outdir <output directory> -bbox_recenter
-ignore_position -start_index <number> file1 [file2] [file3]
```

Here are the available Swf2tvg options:

COMMAND	ACTION
DESCRIPTION OF SWITCHES	
-palette <palette_file>	This option is used to add the colours of the SWF file to the palette file and save it.
-use_different_palettes	This option is used to create a new palette for each SWF file and <b>DOES NOT</b> save any palette.
-base_name <name>	Use this option to automatically rename all generated drawings name-x.tvg where x is an increasing index.
-start_index <index>	Use this option to define the starting index to name the drawings.  The default value is 1.
-outdir <dir>	Use this option to define the output directory for all generated drawings.
-use_place_objects	This option will transform and position the imported drawings following the position on the stage in the Flash project. This option uses the information that is contained in the SWF PLACE_OBJECT record.  Note: this option does not use -start_index.
-frame_alias <list>	This option uses the comma separated list of names to generate timing information.  This is mainly to convert models.  e.g. -frame_alias FR_%.2d,3Q_%.2d,BK_%.2d"
-base_color_index <index>	Use this option to base the colour index in higher 32 bits.
-bbox_recenter	This option centres drawings according to their bounding box.  This option implies -ignore_position.

COMMAND	ACTION
-ignore_position	Use this option to ignore all sceneplanning information.
-usage	This option will display the usage.
-? -h -help --help	This option will display the help information.
-v -version --version	This option will display the version information.

---



- If -outdir is not specified, the files will be written in the SWF file current directory.
  - You can specify any SWF file or PLT file. The PLT files will be read and used to match colours but will not be modified. The only palette modified is the palette specified by the -palette switch.
-



# Swfimport Utility

The Swfimport utility is used to create a template from a SWF file.

Here is the format you must follow when using Swfimport:

```
SwfImport [options] swf_files
```

Here are the available Swfimport options:

COMMAND	ACTION
AVAILABLE OPTIONS	
-outdir output_folder	This option specifies the output folder for the generated templates
-applycolourtransform	This option will apply colour transforms from SWF onto the drawings.
-paletteName name_of_palette	Use this option to specify the name of the palette file to use with colour recovery.
DESCRIPTION OF SWITCHES	
-outdir dir	This option specifies the output folder for the templates (The specified folder must already exist.)
-usage	This option will display the usage.
-? -h -help --help	This option will display the help information.
-v -version --version	This option will display the version information.



Swfimport does not overwrite templates.

# uinfo Utility

The uinfo utility is used to display the following information about a specified bitmap file.

- Name
- Resolution
- Format
- Channels
- Bites per Channels

Here is the format you must follow when using uinfo:

```
uinfo program input_files
```

---

COMMAND	ACTION
AVAILABLE OPTIONS	
-? -h -help --help	This option will display the help information.
-v -version --version	This option will display the version information.

---

# utransform Utility

The utransform program converts vector images to pixmaps, and between different pixmap file formats. For example, you can use utransform to convert a TGA to an SGI file. Or, you can convert a TVG file to a Photoshop PSD file.

Here is the format you must follow when using utransform:

```
$ utransform -file [file name, including extension] [options]
```

Here are the available utransform options:

COMMAND	ACTION
OPTIONS	
-outformat <format>	This is the file type you want to output with utransform.  The following are the file formats supported by utransform: TGA, TGA1, TGA3, TGA4, SGI, SGI1, SGI3, SGI4, SGIDP3, SGIDP4, OMFJPEG, OPT, OPT1, OPT3, OPT4, PSD, PSD1, PSD3, PSD4, PSDDP3, PSDDP4, YUV, PAL, and SCAN.
-outfile <name>	This option is for the file name of the output file.  If you are processing multiple files, you will not be able to control their final name. If not specified, the files created by utransform will have the same file name as the original. The only difference will be the file extension.
-debug	This option will display information on the different steps of the process as well as the messages related to errors that might have occurred.
-? -h -help --help	This option will display the help information.
-v --version --version	This option will display the version information.
IMAGE OPTIONS	
-resolution <w> <h>	This option manages vector and pixmap input files. It indicates the height and width of the output file.
-resolution scan	This option will use the scan info to determine the drawing resolution when unvectorizing from the Control Centre.
-scale <s>	Use this option to scale the height and the width of the output file by the value you enter.  The resolution of the image must be able to accommodate the new image size.

COMMAND	ACTION
-xscale <s>	Use this option to scale the width of the output file.  The resolution of the image must be able to accommodate the new image size.
-yscale <s>	Use this option to scale the height of the output file.  The resolution of the image must be able to accommodate the new image size.
-turn <degrees>	Use this option to rotate the output file by the amount of degree entered.
-ps <in> <out>	Use this option to convert the shape of the pixel.  This option inputs and outputs pixel shapes for formats other than YUV and PAL.  The possible values are: square, NTSC and PAL.
-bgcolor <r> <g> <b>	This option defines the background colour for TVG images.  The range is either 0-1 (a percentage of 255) or 0 - 255. The default value is white.
-bgalpha <a>	This is the alpha value of the background.  The range is either 0-1 or 0 - 255. The default value is opaque (255).
<b>VECTOR OPTIONS</b>	
-antialiasing <quality><exponent>	quality = low, medium-low, medium or high exponent = between 0-3  This option is for converting vector images to pixmaps.  You can specify the quality of the anti-aliasing process (low, medium-low, medium or high) or the exponent (between 0-3).
-nolinetexture	This disables the generation of line textures from TVG files.
-nolineart	Use this option to exclude line art from the output file.
-nocolorart	Use this option to exclude colour art from output file.
-move <x> <y>	Use this option to recentre the output file, output pixels or world units for TVG output  Note: Useful values for TVG output might be 714.285000 in x or 535.713750 in y
-flatten	Use this option to flatten the drawing and merge its

COMMAND	ACTION
	textures. By default the output file format is TVG.
-bboxtvgincrease	This option will increase the .tvg bonding box size. The default value is 5 (percent).
-normalize	This option normalizes the TVG. This implies that the outformat is TVG. If the TVG has a different scaling than 1, it will scale the coordinates and set the scaling to 1.0.
-setfieldsize <f>	Use this option to set the internal scaling of the TVG to an exact field size.
VECTOR TO VECTOR OPTIONS	
-centreline	Use this option to extract the centreline of the drawing's line art.
-closegap	Use this option to perform Close gap.
-gaplength	Use this option to define a Close gap length value. The default value is 10.
-hairpasses	Use this option to set the number of pass to perform for the remove hair option. The default value is 2.
-hairlength	Use this option to define the value for the hair length. The default is 20.
-keepcolorart	Use this option to keep the existing colour art and extract the centreline over it.
-showstrokes	Use this option to show the contour of line art and centrelines in special colours.
-thickness	Use this option to define the thickness in pixels of the strokes to show.
-fieldsize <fs>	Use this option to set the field size for PDF output. The default field size is 12.
-lineartstrokescolor <r> <g> <b> <a>	Use this option to define the red, green, blue, alpha values for the line art stroke colour.
-colorartstrokescolor <r> <g> <b> <a>	Use this option to define the red, green, blue, alpha values for the colour art stroke colour.
-nofitcolorart	Use this option if you do NOT want to generate Bezier curves for colour art.

COMMAND	ACTION
-tvversion <version>	<p>This option will convert to older/supported vector format product version:</p> <p>v720 = 1005</p> <p>v710 = 1005</p> <p>v702 = 1004 (Early version of 7.0.2 were using 1003.)</p> <p>v700 = 1003</p>
<b>ALIGNMENT OPTIONS</b>	
-align <RULE>	<p>Use this option to generate a bitmap that will fit inside Animate Pro with a read module aligned with a defined rule.</p> <p>RULE can be: AS_IS, CENTER_TB, CENTER_LR, CENTER_FIRST_PAGE_HORIZONTAL, CENTER_FIRST_PAGE_VERTICAL, TOP, BOTTOM, LEFT, RIGHT.</p>
-dpi <dpi>	<p>Use this option to define the output resolution for the bitmap image in dots per inch.</p> <p>The default resolution is 75 dpi.</p>
-sar <scene_aspect_ratio>	<p>This option sets the scene aspect ratio, the default is 1.33333. Use 1.7777777 for 16/9 scenes. The scene aspect ratio can be read from the scene alignment dialog. Beware, that this is not the ratio of the scene resolution.</p>

## Output a Layout to a Bitmap Format



Once your backgrounds are done in a Toon Boom application, you are ready to paint them. You can paint your backgrounds within the software, or export them to a third-party bitmap software to paint.

There are two techniques for exporting vector black and white backgrounds:

- Render Network
- utransform and Exporting a Panoramic Background

## Render Network

To export your background image, you can add a Write module to your network and use the Render Network option to export the frame where your background is. The background image will be exported and cropped to the scene resolution.

If you have a panoramic background, use the utransform utility to export your image.



Refer to the Toon Boom Animate Pro User Guide to learn how to render your background from your network.

---

## utransform and Exporting a Panoramic Background

The utransform utility is able to do some format conversions and limited image processing.

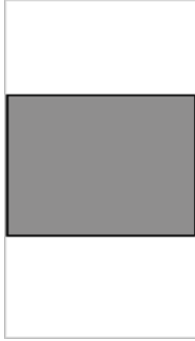
By default, the utransform utility will convert the strokes and colour zones that are within the 12 field chart. If you have extra artwork outside of the 12 field, you will have to scale down the drawing using the utransform utility in order to fit it in the 12 field zone, and enlarge the bitmap export resolution.

The panoramic background export will work with the alignment rule of your background drawing in your Toon Boom software.

There are several alignment rules to consider:

- Centre Top and Bottom
- Centre Left and Right
- Centre First Page Horizontal
- Centre First Page Vertical
- Left
- Right
- Top
- Bottom

### Centre Top and Bottom



The Centre Top and Bottom rule is used for a vertical pan background where the default scene's 12 field is placed at the centre of the drawing.

### Centre Left and Right



The **Centre Left and Right** rule is used for a horizontal pan background where the default scene's 12 field is placed at the centre of the drawing.

### Centre First Page Horizontal



The Centre First Page Horizontal rule is used for a horizontal pan background where the default scene's 12 field is placed at the far left of the drawing.

### Centre First Page Vertical



The Centre First Page Vertical rule is used for a vertical pan background where the default scene's 12 field is placed at the very bottom of the drawing.



**Left**

The Left rule is the default alignment for drawings. It aligns the drawings with the left side of the scene's alignment rectangle. Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their heights to the alignment rectangle of the scene.

**Right**

The Right rule aligns the drawings with the right side of the alignment rectangle. Animate Pro scales the drawings to match their heights to the alignment rectangle of the scene.

**Top**

The Top rule aligns with drawings with the top of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate scales the drawings to match their widths to the width of the alignment rectangle of the scene.

**Bottom**

The Bottom rule aligns the drawings with the bottom of the alignment rectangle. Toon Boom Animate scales the drawings to match the drawings' width to the width of the alignment rectangle of the scene.

## As Is

The As Is alignment rule is used when you have artwork outside every edge of the 12 field size, such as a Safety Paint edge.

To properly export your background and re-import it so that it fits precisely into your scene, you have to provide transform with the exact resolution that you want the file to be, since you are passing from a vector based image to a bitmap image.

There are a few rules that will help you understand the calculation that you must perform:

- 1 field width equals one inch.
- A 12 field chart has a twelve inch width.
- If you scale your drawing down to fit in the 12 field, you will have to enlarge the output resolution so that the final image has the same size as the original drawing (*which is not problematic since the source is vector-based*).
- When you re-import your painted background, the bitmap file will be fitted in the 12 field size. You will have increased the field size so that it fits the original image size.

To find the scale and DPI that you will need to export your image, you will need the following information:

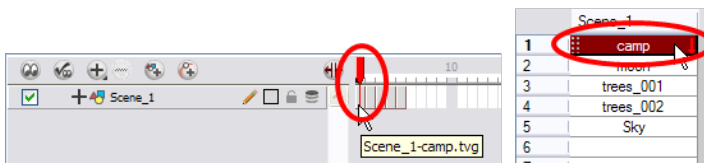
- The field size of the drawing.
- The scene resolution.



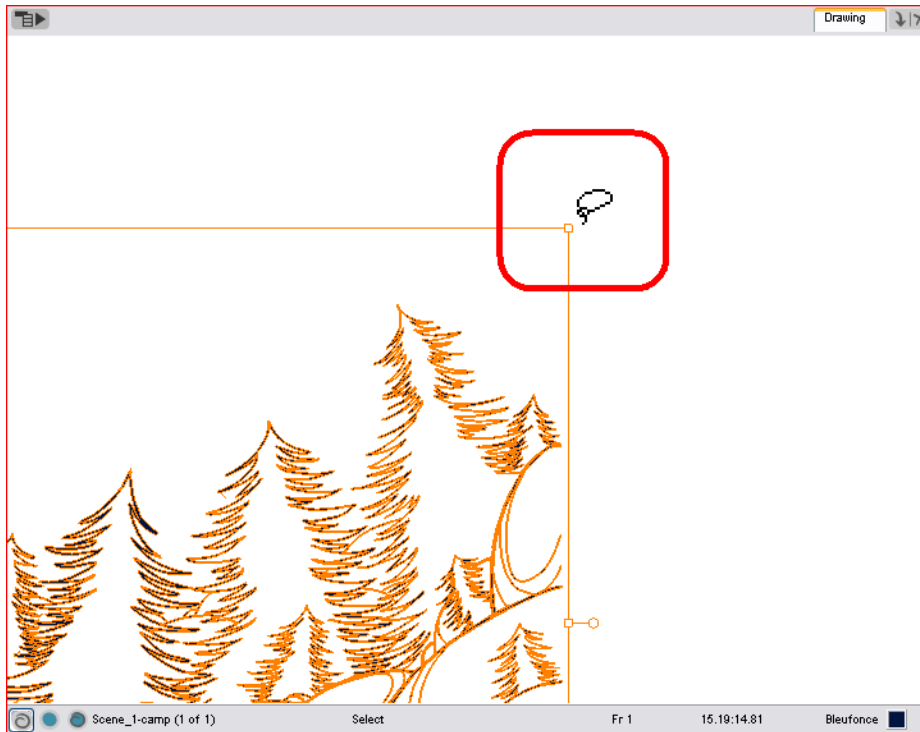
Note that this process will work with a 12x12 scene alignment and when using Animate Pro.

To export a .tvg file to bitmap using the As Is alignment:

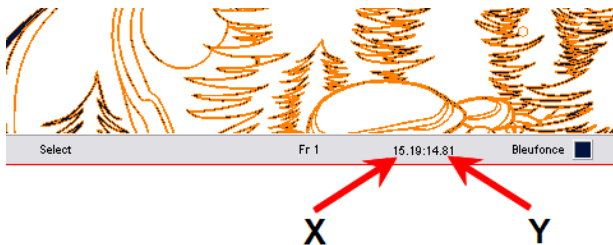
1. In the Timeline or Xsheet view, select the cell that contains the drawing that you want to export.



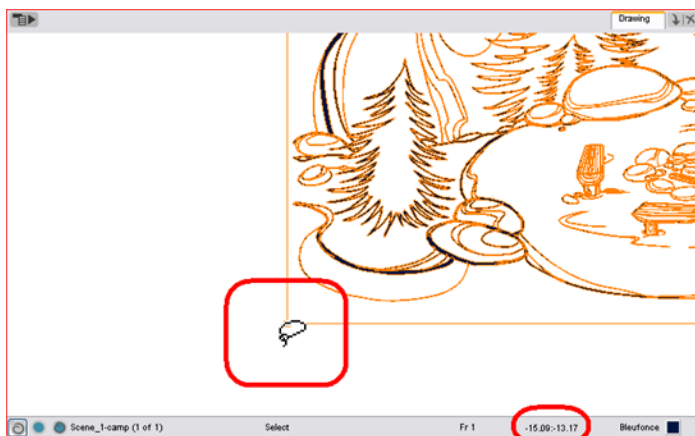
2. In the Tools toolbar, choose the **Select** tool. The default keyboard shortcut is [Alt]+[V].
3. In the Drawing view, select all of your drawing strokes. Select **Edit > Select All**. The [Ctrl] + [A] (Windows) or [⌘] + [A] (Mac OS X).
4. In the Drawing view, place your mouse cursor over the top, right corner.



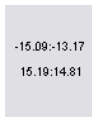
5. From the Drawing view's bottom toolbar, note the X and Y field chart information.



6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for the bottom, left corner.



7. Once you have all of your field information, select the greatest X and Y values. These will give you the total field size of your drawing. This also tells you the width of your drawing, in inches (1 field width is equal to one inch).



Biggest X: 15.19  
Biggest Y: 14.81

8. Divide the X and Y field values by 12 to know how much to scale the image to fit it in the 12 field.

$X/12$  = how much bigger your drawing is than the 12 field

$Y/12$  = How much bigger your drawing is than the 12 field

X: 15.19    Y: 14.81

$$15.19/12 = 1.27$$

$$14.81/12 = 1.23$$

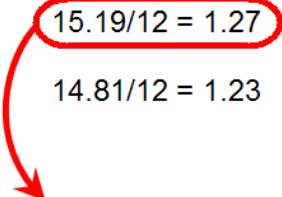
9. Once you have both scaling values, calculate your official scaling value by dividing 1 by the greater of the two values. This will give you the official scaling value to enter into your utransform command line.

$1/(X/12)$  or  $1/(Y/12)$  = Scaling Value

X: 15.19    Y: 14.81

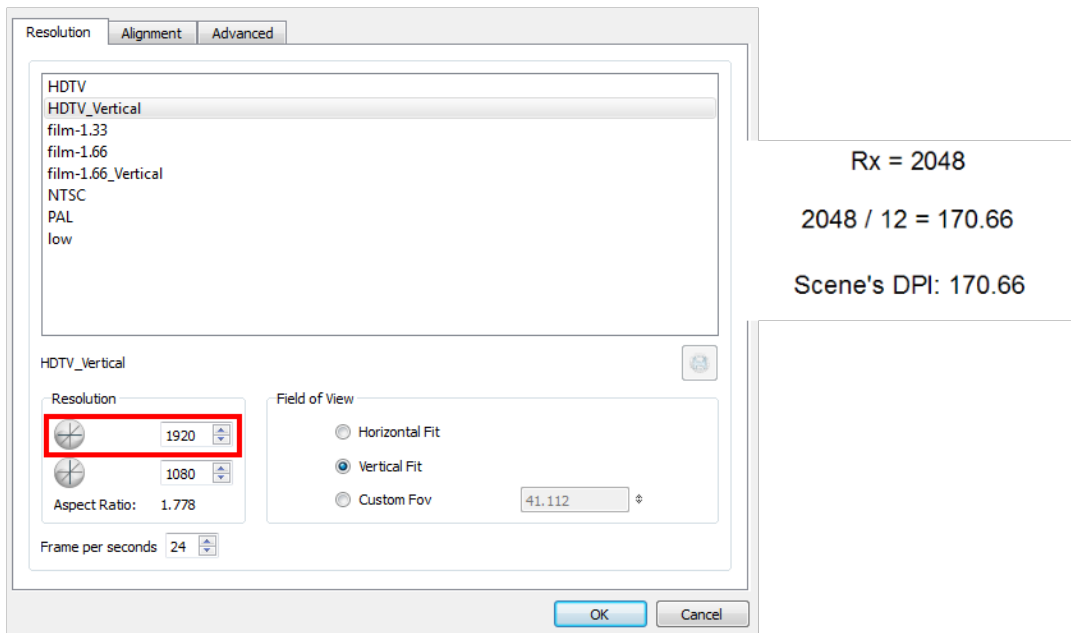
$$15.19/12 = 1.27$$

$$14.81/12 = 1.23$$


$$1/1.27=0.79$$

10. To enlarge the output resolution, you will have to give a precise amount of DPI. In this case, divide your scene resolution width (Rx) by 12 (fields) to know how many pixels per inch you have.

$Rx/12$  = Pixels per inch.



11. Once you have your scene's DPI, you need to enlarge it to re-scale your output to the correct size, since we scaled down the drawing strokes. To do so, multiply the scene's DPI by how much larger the drawing is than the 12 field (X/12) or (Y/12).

$(R_x/12) \times (X/12)$  or  $(Y/12) =$  Amount of DPI needed for the drawing output

$$R_x / 12 = 170.66$$

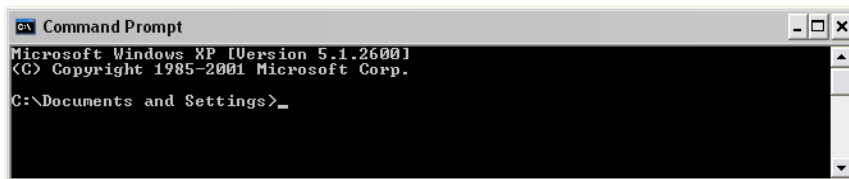
$$X / 12 = 1.27$$

$$170.66 \times 1.27 =$$

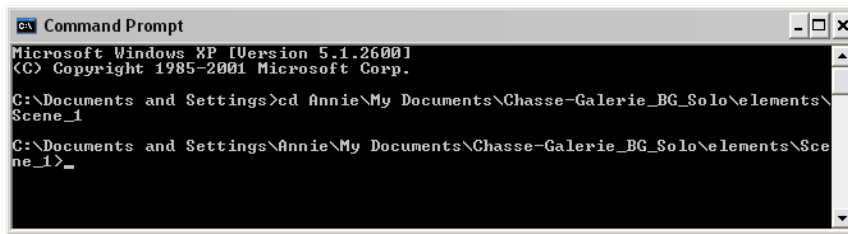
$$216.74$$

amount of DPI  
needed for drawing  
output : 216.74

12. Once the values are calculated, open the command prompt to launch utransform.



13. In the Command Prompt, go to the scene's element directory that contains the \*.tvg drawing that you want to convert.



```

Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

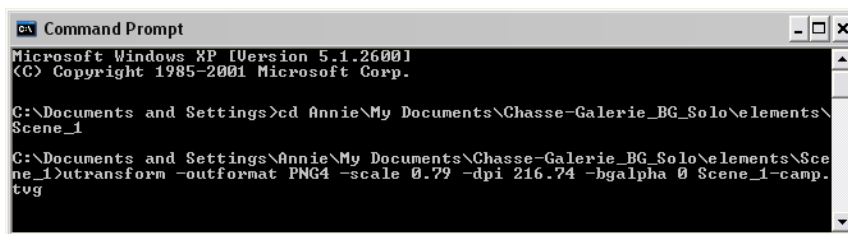
C:\Documents and Settings>cd Annie\My Documents\Chasse-Galerie_BG_Solo\elements\
Scene_1
C:\Documents and Settings\Annie\My Documents\Chasse-Galerie_BG_Solo\elements\Sc
ene_1>_

```

- ▶ Use the `cd` command to go back up one directory.
- ▶ Use the `cd \directory name` command to enter a new directory.
- ▶ Use the `dir` command to see the directories available.

14. Once in your scene's element directory, type:

- ▶ For Windows: `utransform -outformat file_format_you_need -scale scale_value -dpi dpi_value -balpha 0 file_name.tvg`



```

Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

C:\Documents and Settings>cd Annie\My Documents\Chasse-Galerie_BG_Solo\elements\
Scene_1
C:\Documents and Settings\Annie\My Documents\Chasse-Galerie_BG_Solo\elements\Sc
ene_1>utransform -outformat PNG4 -scale 0.79 -dpi 216.74 -balpha 0 Scene_1-camp.
tv

```

- ▶ For Mac OS X: `./utransform -outformat file_format_you_need -scale scale_value -dpi dpi_value -balpha 0 file_name.tvg`

Here is an example of what your command line should look like:

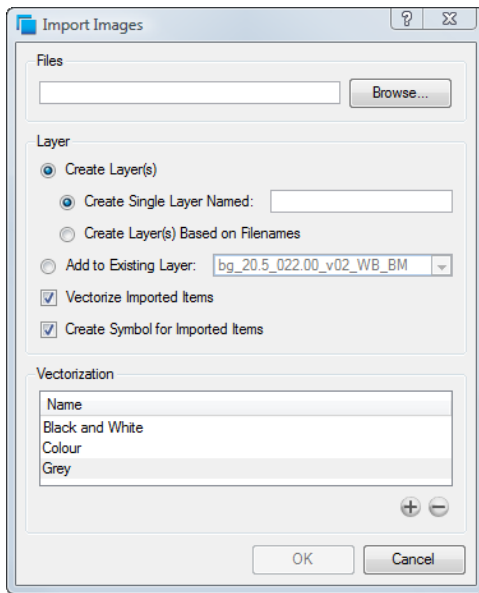
- ▶ For Windows: `utransform -outformat PNG4 -scale 0.75 -dpi 227.55 -balpha 0 bg-1.tvg`
- ▶ For Mac OS X: `./utransform -outformat PNG4 -scale 0.75 -dpi 227.55 -balpha 0 bg-1.tvg`

15. In the operating system, browse to the scene's element folder and open the new bitmap file to paint in third-party software.

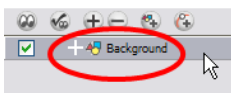
To import a utransform bitmap background back in Toon Boom Animate Pro:

1. Open the Toon Boom Animate Pro scene where the background needs to be imported.
2. To import a bitmap:
  - ▶ In the top menu, select **File > Import > Images**.

The Import Drawings dialog box opens.



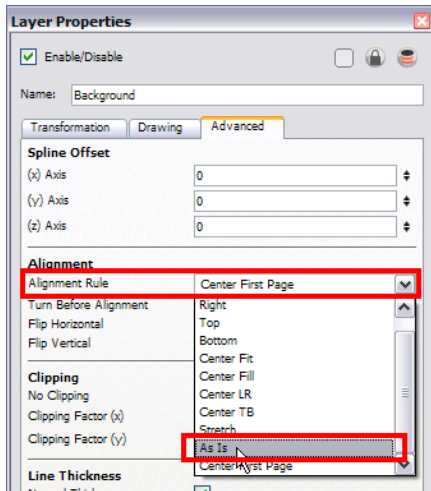
3. Click on the **Browse** button and select your bitmap background file.
4. Click on the **Open** button.
5. You can import the image into an existing element or create a new element.
  - ▶ To import the image into an existing layer, select **Add to Existing Layer** and select the appropriate element from the list.
  - ▶ To import the image into a new element, select **Create Layer(s) > Create Single Layer Named** and type a name for the element in the Name field.
6. Disable the **Vectorize Imported Items** option.
7. Click on the **OK** button.
8. Open the background's layer properties:



- ▶ In the **Timeline** view, double-click on the background's module.
- ▶ In the **Network** view, click on the background module's yellow square.

The **Layer Properties** dialog box opens.

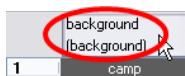
9. In the **Advanced** tab, set the alignment rule to **As Is**.



10. Click on the **OK** button.

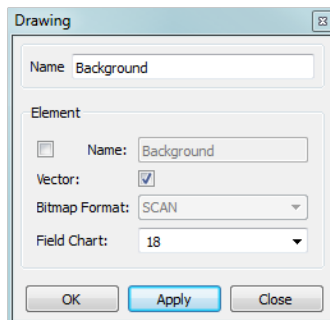
11. Open the column editor:

- ▶ In the **Timeline** view, select the background's layer, right-click and select **Column Properties**.
- ▶ In the **Xsheet** view, double-click on the background column's header



12. Take your previous (X/12) or (Y/12) value and multiply it by the scene's field to find the correct field size. Enter this into the Field Chart field.

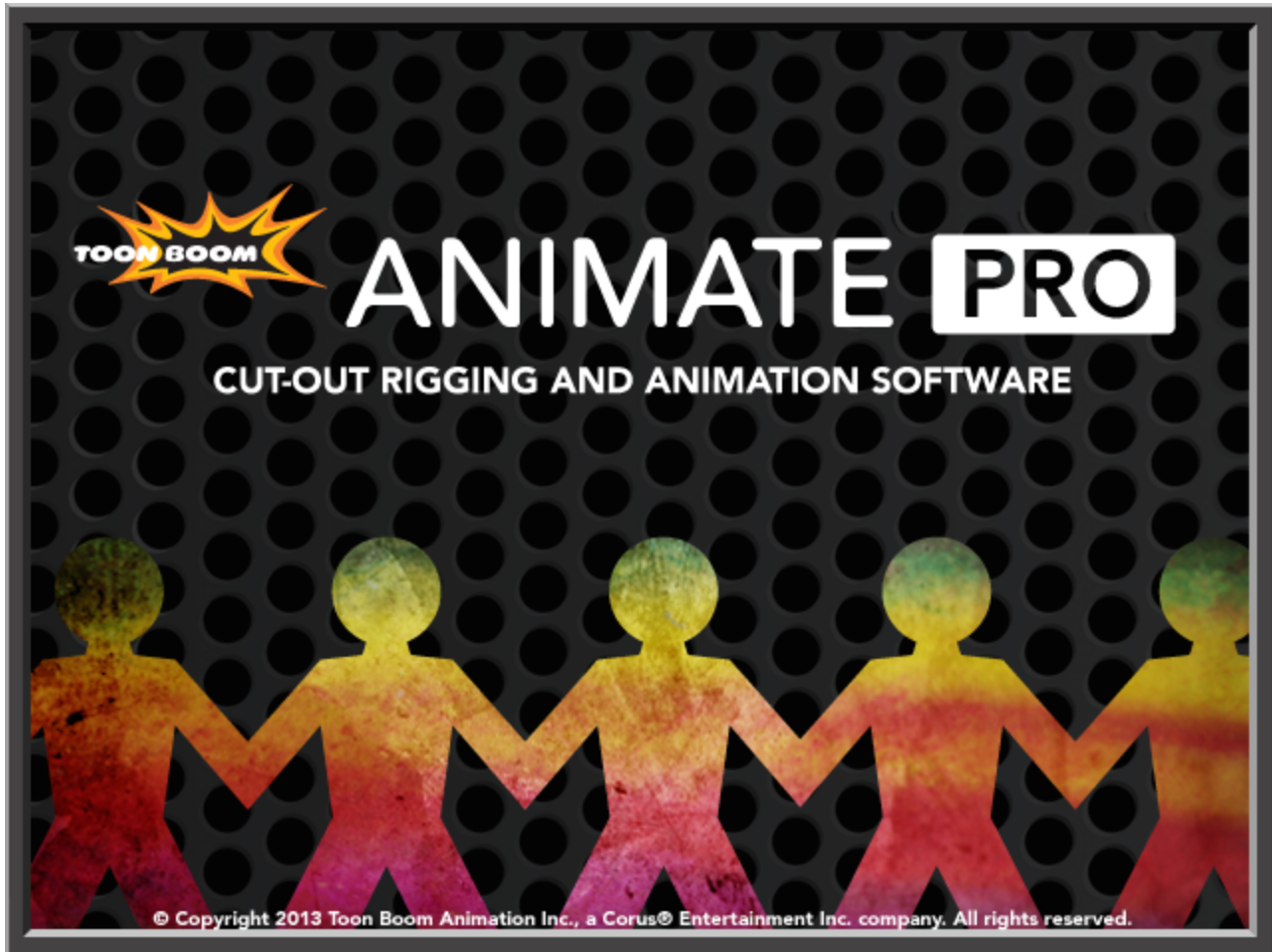
- ▶ (X/12) or (Y/12) x Scene's field
- ▶ To see the Field Chart field, you must enable the **Advanced Element Mode** preference found in the Advanced section of the Preferences panel.



Here is an example of what it should look like:  $1.5 \times 12 = 18$

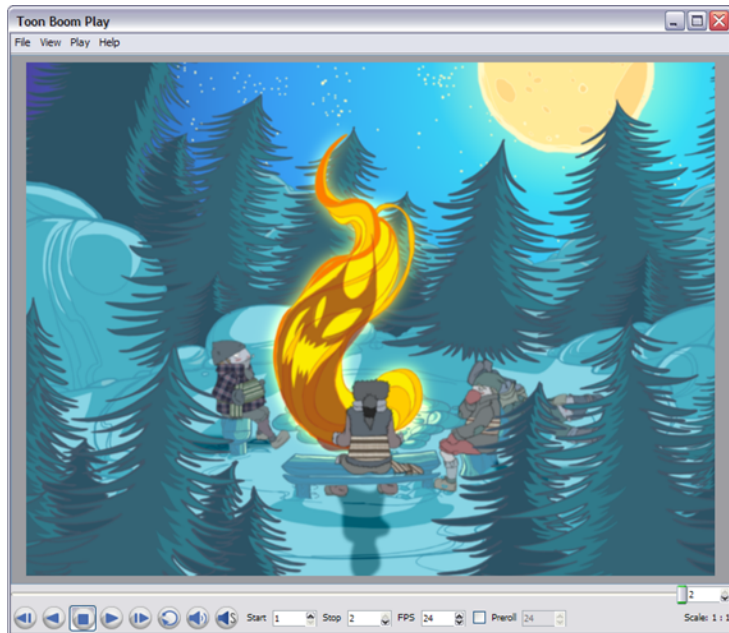
13. Click on the **OK** button.





# Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 Toon Boom Play User Guide

# Chapter 1: Using Toon Boom Play



Toon Boom provides you with a module specifically for playing back and viewing your animated projects once they have been rendered out into image sequences. The module is known as Toon Boom Play.

Toon Boom Play opens directly from your program menu to load your final render and it is also used when playing back a scene with effects in Animate Pro.

## Topics Covered


- [Launching Toon Boom Play on the facing page](#)
- [About Toon Boom Play on page 1308](#)
- [Loading an Image Sequence on page 1311](#)

# Launching Toon Boom Play

Before using Toon Boom Play, you have to start the program. You can run the software on Mac OS X or Windows operating systems.

To open Toon Boom Play, do one of the following:

- ▶ Mac OS X: Select **Applications > Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 > HarmonyPlay**
- ▶ Windows: Select **Start > Programs > Toon Boom Animate Pro 3 > Player**

In Animate Pro, if you want to playback your scene to see your effects and final images, just click on the **Render and Play**  button. The Toon Boom Play module will open, calculate and load your final images.

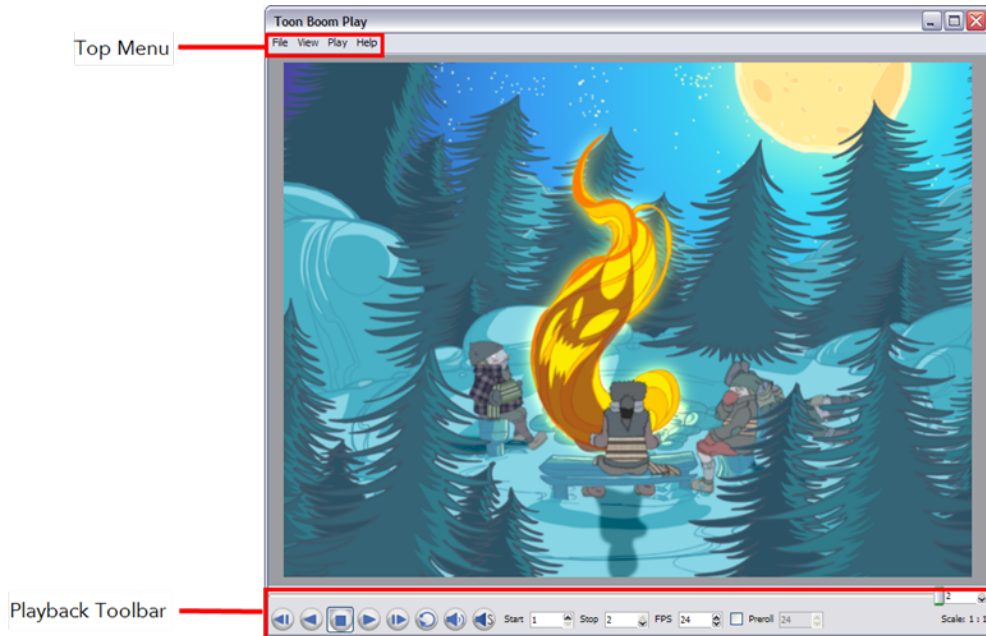
## Related Topics

- [About Toon Boom Play on the next page](#)

# About Toon Boom Play

Toon Boom Play is a very simple application to use. The two main items you will see in the interface are:

- [Top Menu](#) below
- [Playback Toolbar](#) on the facing page



## Top Menu

In the top menu, you will find all the necessary commands for loading and previewing image sequences.

The Top menu is divided as follows:

- **Windows**

File View Play Help

- File
- View
- Play
- Help

- **Mac OS X**

Play File View Play Help

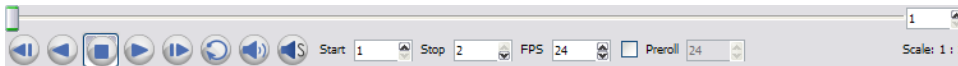
- Play
- File
- View
- Play
- Help



For more details about the commands found in these menus, refer to [Toon Boom Play Commands on page 1313](#).

## Playback Toolbar

Use the Playback toolbar (located at the bottom of the player interface) to play your animation, loop your playback, navigate through your frames and change the playback speed.



The **Playback** toolbar contains a number of buttons and options, these are:

- **First Frame**  button

Click on this to go back to the first loaded frame of the animation. You can also do this from the top menu by selecting **Play > First Frame**.

- **Play Scene Backward**  button

Click on this to play the scene in reverse. It will start from the current frame and move in backwards to the first frame. Or select **Play > Play Scene Backward** from the top menu.

- **Play**  button

Click on this to play the animation. Or select **Play > Play Scene Forward** from the top menu.

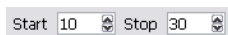
- **Last Frame**  button

Click on this to go to the last loaded frame of the animation. Or select **Play > Last Frame** from the top menu.

- **Loop**  button

Click on this to repeat your playback indefinitely. Or select **Play > Loop** from the top menu.

- **Start and Stop** fields



Enter values in these fields to change the playback frame range.

- **FPS** field



Enter a new value (in frames per second) in this field to change the playback speed.

- **Frame Slider**

Move this slider left or right to scroll backwards or forwards through the playback frames.

- **Preroll** check box

Click in the check box to enable the **Preroll** option and then enter the number of blank frames in the **Preroll** field. These frames will be added at the start of the playback.

- **Scale** information



This indicates the ratio of the playback size you are currently viewing compared to the image Toon Boom Play's actual size.



The following buttons and menu commands are only used when Toon Boom Play is launched from Toon Boom Animate Pro:

---

- **Sound**  button

Click on this to enable sound in the playback. Or select **Play > Enable Sound** from the top menu.

- **Sound Scrubbing**  button

Click on this to enable sound scrubbing in the playback or select **Play > Enable Sound Scrubbing** from the top menu.

## Related Topics

- [Toon Boom Play Commands on page 1313](#)

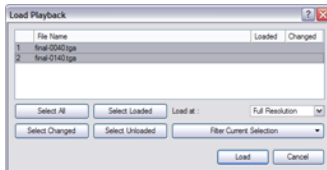
# Loading an Image Sequence

The main operation you will do in Toon Boom Play is loading image sequences.

To load and playback an image sequence:

1. Select **File > Load**.
  - **Load from Folder:**
2. In the **Browse** window, select the folder containing the image sequence to load.
3. Click on the **OK** button.

The Load Playback dialog box opens.



4. In the **Load Playback** dialog box, select the images you want to load, use one of the following options:

- **Select All:**

Click on this to select all the files in the list.

- **Select Loaded:**

Click on this if you want to reload images that are already loaded in the player.

- **Select Changed:**

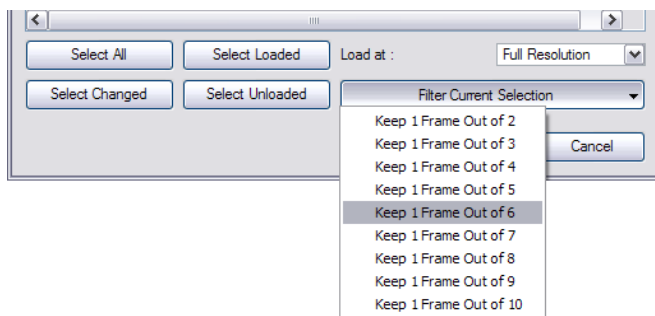
Click on this if you want to reload only the images that were modified since they were loaded.

- **Select Unloaded:**

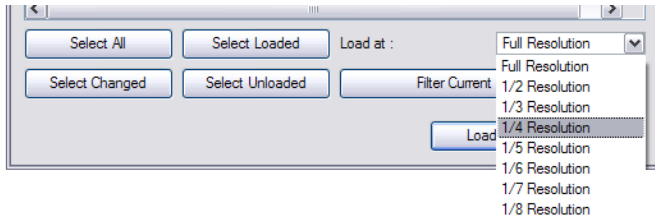
Click on this to load all the images in the list that are not currently loaded in the player.


- **Filter Current Selection:**

Click on this to select a series of frames from the ones selected. For example, to load one out of six frames instead of the whole sequence, in the drop-down menu, select the **Keep 1 Frame Out of 6** option.



5. To load images faster, or to fit them on your screen, load the images at a smaller resolution. In the Load At drop-down menu, select the image resolution.



6. Click on the **Load** button to load the selected images.
7. Once the images are loaded, click on the **Play**  button to playback your image sequence.

## Related Topics

- [Toon Boom Play Commands on the facing page](#)



# Toon Boom Play Commands

The load and playback commands are located in the top menu. Each command is described in this section.

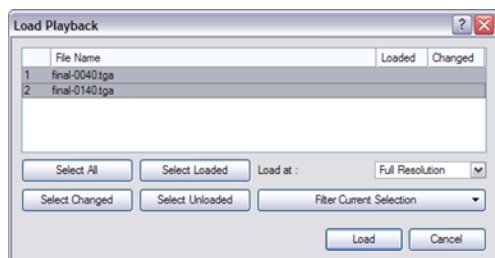
- [File](#) below
- [View on the next page](#)
- [Play on page 1315](#)
- [Help on page 1317](#)
- [Mac OS X Play on page 1317](#)

## File

This section describes the File menu commands.

### Load From Folder

This command opens the Load Playback dialog box where you can select one or more images to load in the player.

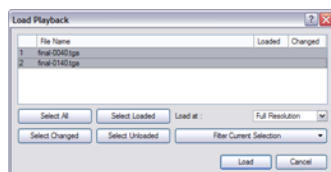


### Reload Frames

This command opens the Load Playback dialog box and indicates which frames are loaded. You can select which frames you want to reload. Use the Reload command to load frames that are currently opened in the player and that were modified since they were loaded.

### Unload Frames

This command opens the Unload Playback dialog box and indicates which frames are loaded. You can select which frames you want to unload.



## Quit Play

This command exits the application. On Mac OS X, this command is located in the Mac OS X Play menu.

## View

This section describes the **View** menu commands.

### Zoom In

This command zooms in to the loaded images to view them closer. In lower right hand corner of the interface, you can see the relative zoom level compared to the image's original resolution.

The [2].

### Zoom Out

This command zooms out of the loaded images to view them smaller. In lower right-hand corner of the interface, you can see the relative zoom level compared to the image's original resolution.

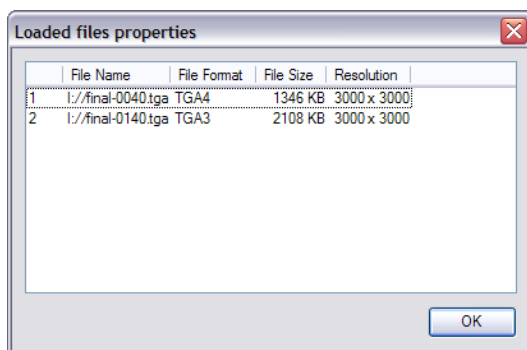
The [1].

### Reset Zoom

This command resets the zoom level to 100% or Loaded File Properties

## Loaded File Properties

This command opens the **Loaded File Properties** dialog box. This displays the format, path and resolution information of each loaded image.



## Image

This command displays the images in normal mode with all their colours.



## Matte

This command displays the image's matte, also known as the alpha channel. All transparent zones are displayed as black and all fully opaque zones are displayed as white. Zones that are semi-transparent are displayed as grey.



## Play

This section describes the Play menu commands.

### Enable Sound

Use the Enable Sound command to include the soundtrack during playback. This command is only available when the application is launched from Animate Pro.

### Enable Sound

Use the Enable Sound command to include the soundtrack during playback. This command is only available when the application is launched from Animate Pro.

## Enable Sound Scrubbing

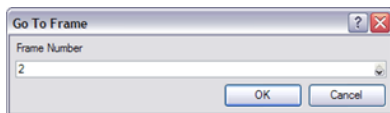
Use the Enable Sound Scrubbing command to listen to your sound frame-by-frame. This command is only available when the application is launched from Animate Pro.

## First Frame

Use the First Frame command to set your current frame to the first frame of the loaded image sequence.

## Go to Frame

The Go to Frame command sets your current frame to any frame you input in the Go to Frame dialog box.



## Last Frame

The Last Frame command sets your current frame to the last frame of the image sequence.

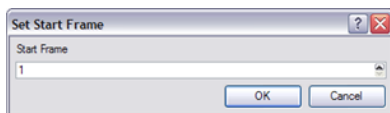
## Next Frame

The Next Frame command sets the current frame to its following frame.

## Previous Frame

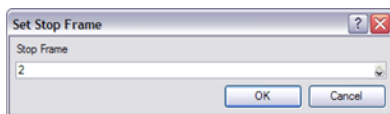
The Previous Frame command sets the current frame to its previous frame.

## Start Frame



Use the Start Frame command to control the starting frame of the playback range.

## Stop Frame



Use the Stop Frame command to control the end frame of the playback range.

## Loop

The Loop command repeats the scene when it reaches the last frame during playback.

## Play Scene Backward

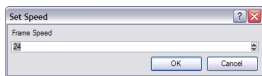
The Play Scene Backward command plays the animation from the current frame to the first frame.

## Play Scene Forward

The Play Scene Forward command plays the animation from the current frame to the last frame.

## Playback Speed

The Playback Speed allows you to change the frame rate of the playback.



## Stop

Use the Stop command to stop the playback.

## Help

This section describes the Help menu commands.

### Help

This command opens the [Toon Boom Online Help](#) where you can find useful indexed and searchable information on the operation of the Toon Boom Play module.

### About

This command opens the About dialog box providing information related to the application version.

On Mac OS X, this command is located in the Mac OS X Play menu.

## Mac OS X Play

This section describes the Mac OS X play menu commands.

Note: This menu is only available for the Mac OS X version.

## About

This command opens the **About** dialog box providing information related to the application version.

On Mac OS X, this command is located in the **Help** menu.

## Quit Play

This command exits the application. On Windows, this command is located in the **File** menu.